

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

---

**Form F-1**  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT  
UNDER  
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

---

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
(EXACT NAME OF REGISTRANT AS SPECIFIED IN ITS CHARTER)

**Not Applicable**  
(Translation of Registrant's Name into English)

<b>United Kingdom</b> (State or other Jurisdiction of Incorporation or Organization)	<b>2834</b> (Primary Standard Industrial Classification Code Number)	<b>Not Applicable</b> (I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)
---	--	---

**3 More London Riverside**  
**London SE1 2RE UK**  
**Tel: +44 203 283 4200**  
(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of Registrant's principal executive offices)

---

**National Corporate Research, Ltd.**  
**10 East 40th Street, 10th Floor**  
**New York, New York 10016**  
**+1 800 221-0102**  
(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

**Copies of all communications, including communications sent to agent for service, should be sent to:**

**Peter N. Handrinos**  
**Nathan Ajiashvili**  
**Latham & Watkins LLP**  
**200 Clarendon Street**  
**Boston, Massachusetts**  
**02116**  
**+1 617 948-6000**

**Claire A. Keast-Butler**  
**Latham & Watkins LLP**  
**99 Bishopsgate**  
**London EC2M 3XF**  
**United Kingdom**  
**+44 20 7710-1000**

**Jonathan Parry**  
**White & Case LLP**  
**5 Old Broad Street**  
**London EC2N 1DW**  
**United Kingdom**  
**+44 20 7532-1000**

**Divakar Gupta**  
**Brent B. Siler**  
**Charles S. Kim**  
**Cooley LLP**  
**1114 Avenue of the Americas**  
**New York, New York 10036**  
**+1 212 479-6000**

**Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public:**  
**As soon as practicable after this Registration Statement becomes effective.**

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box.

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

---

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

---

TITLE OF EACH CLASS OF SECURITIES TO BE REGISTERED	PROPOSED MAXIMUM AGGREGATE OFFERING PRICE <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	AMOUNT OF REGISTRATION FEE <sup>(4)</sup>
Ordinary shares, nominal value £0.05 per share <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 86,250,000	\$ 9,997

---

- (1) All ordinary shares are represented by American Depositary Shares, or ADSs, in the U.S. offering, with each ADS representing \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares. ADSs issuable upon deposit of the ordinary shares registered hereby are registered pursuant to a separate Registration Statement on Form F-6.
  - (2) Estimated solely for the purpose of calculating the amount of the registration fee pursuant to Rule 457(o) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.
  - (3) Includes (a) additional ordinary shares which the underwriters have the option to purchase and (b) ordinary shares which are being offered in a private placement in Europe and other countries outside of the United States and Canada but which may be resold from time to time in the United States in transactions requiring registration under the Securities Act or exemption therefrom. The total number of ordinary shares in the U.S. offering and the European private placement is subject to reallocation between them. All or part of the ordinary shares may be represented by ADSs in the U.S. offering.
  - (4) Calculated pursuant to Rule 457(o) based on an estimate of the proposed maximum aggregate offering price.
- 

**The Registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the Registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

---

---

The information in this preliminary prospectus is not complete and may be changed. This preliminary prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state or jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, Dated April 3, 2017

PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS

## Ordinary Shares

(including Ordinary Shares in the form of American Depositary Shares)



# Verona Pharma

£                      per Ordinary Share  
\$                      per American Depositary Share

We are offering \_\_\_\_\_ of our ordinary shares in a global offering.

We are offering \_\_\_\_\_ American Depositary Shares, or ADSs, through the underwriters named in this prospectus, or the U.S. offering. Each ADS represents \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares. This is our initial public offering of our ADSs, and no public market currently exists for our ADSs. We have applied to list our ADSs on The NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol "VRNA."

We are offering \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares through the underwriters named in this prospectus in Europe and countries outside of the United States and Canada in a concurrent private placement, or the European private placement.

The closing of each of the U.S. offering and the European private placement will be conditioned upon the other. The total number of ordinary shares in the U.S. offering and the European private placement is subject to reallocation between them.

Our ordinary shares trade on AIM, a market of the London Stock Exchange, under the symbol "VRP." On \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM was £ \_\_\_\_\_ per share (equivalent to \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ADS based on an exchange rate of £1.00 to \$ \_\_\_\_\_).

Investing in our ordinary shares and ADSs involves risks. See "Risk Factors" beginning on page 11 of this prospectus.

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 and, as such, will be eligible for reduced public company disclosure requirements. Please see "Prospectus Summary—Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Foreign Private Issuer" for additional information.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed on the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

	PER SHARE	PER ADS	TOTAL
Public offering price	£	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions <sup>(1)</sup>	£	\$	\$
Proceeds to Verona Pharma plc, before expenses	£	\$	\$

(1) See "Underwriting" for additional information regarding underwriting compensation.

Each of our chairman of the board of directors and an existing shareholder have indicated an interest in purchasing up to approximately £ \_\_\_\_\_ of our ordinary shares, in a private placement separate from the global offering, or the shareholder private placement, contingent on and concurrent with the completion of the global offering at a price per share equal to the offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement. However, indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and we could determine to sell more, less or no shares to these shareholders and these shareholders could determine to purchase more, less or no shares in the proposed shareholder private placement. The underwriters will serve as placement agents for such shareholder private placement and receive a placement agent fee equal to a percentage of the total purchase price of the private placement shares, which percentage will be equal to the percentage discount the underwriters will receive on shares sold in this global offering. The closing of this global offering is not conditioned upon the closing of such shareholder private placement.

Delivery of our ADSs in the U.S. offering is expected to be made on or about \_\_\_\_\_, 2017. Delivery of our ordinary shares in the European private placement is expected to be made on or about \_\_\_\_\_, 2017. We have granted the underwriters an option for a period of 30 days to purchase an additional \_\_\_\_\_ ADSs in the U.S. offering and \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares in the European private placement. If the underwriters exercise these options in full, the total underwriting discounts and commissions payable by us will be \$ \_\_\_\_\_, and the total proceeds to us, before expenses, will be \$ \_\_\_\_\_.

**Jefferies**

**Stifel**

**Wedbush PacGrow**

**SunTrust Robinson Humphrey**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<a href="#">About This Prospectus</a>	<a href="#">ii</a>
<a href="#">Presentation of Financial Information</a>	<a href="#">ii</a>
<a href="#">Prospectus Summary</a>	<a href="#">1</a>
<a href="#">Risk Factors</a>	<a href="#">11</a>
<a href="#">Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements</a>	<a href="#">55</a>
<a href="#">Market and Industry Data</a>	<a href="#">56</a>
<a href="#">Trademarks, Service Marks and Tradenames</a>	<a href="#">56</a>
<a href="#">Exchange Rate Information</a>	<a href="#">57</a>
<a href="#">Price Range of Our Ordinary Shares</a>	<a href="#">58</a>
<a href="#">Use of Proceeds</a>	<a href="#">59</a>
<a href="#">Dividend Policy</a>	<a href="#">61</a>
<a href="#">Capitalization</a>	<a href="#">62</a>
<a href="#">Dilution</a>	<a href="#">63</a>
<a href="#">Selected Consolidated Financial Data</a>	<a href="#">66</a>
<a href="#">Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	<a href="#">67</a>
<a href="#">Business</a>	<a href="#">78</a>
<a href="#">Management</a>	<a href="#">121</a>
<a href="#">Principal Shareholders</a>	<a href="#">136</a>
<a href="#">Related Party Transactions</a>	<a href="#">140</a>
<a href="#">Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association</a>	<a href="#">143</a>
<a href="#">Description of American Depositary Shares</a>	<a href="#">161</a>
<a href="#">Shares and ADSs Eligible for Future Sale</a>	<a href="#">171</a>
<a href="#">Material Tax Considerations</a>	<a href="#">173</a>
<a href="#">Underwriting</a>	<a href="#">181</a>
<a href="#">Expenses of The Global Offering</a>	<a href="#">190</a>
<a href="#">Legal Matters</a>	<a href="#">191</a>
<a href="#">Auditors</a>	<a href="#">191</a>
<a href="#">Experts</a>	<a href="#">191</a>
<a href="#">Service of Process and Enforcement of Liabilities</a>	<a href="#">191</a>
<a href="#">Where You Can Find More Information</a>	<a href="#">194</a>
<a href="#">Index to Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	<a href="#">F-1</a>

---

**We are responsible for the information contained in this prospectus and any free-writing prospectus we prepare or authorize. We have not, and the underwriters have not, authorized anyone to provide you with different information, and we and the underwriters take no responsibility for any other information others may give you. We are not, and the underwriters are not, making an offer to sell our ADSs or ordinary shares in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should not assume that the information contained in this prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front cover of this prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or the sale of any ADSs or ordinary shares.**

For investors outside the United States: Neither we nor the underwriters have done anything that would permit the global offering or possession or distribution of this prospectus in any jurisdiction, other than the United States, where action for that purpose is required. Persons outside the United States who come into possession of this prospectus must inform themselves about, and observe any restrictions relating to, the global offering of our ADSs and ordinary shares and the distribution of this prospectus outside the United States.

We are a public limited company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales and a majority of our outstanding securities are owned by non-U.S. residents. Under the rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, we are currently eligible for treatment as a "foreign private issuer." As a foreign private issuer, we will not be required to file periodic reports and financial statements with the SEC as frequently or as promptly as domestic registrants whose securities are registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

Unless otherwise indicated or the context otherwise requires, all references in this prospectus to the terms "Verona," the "Company," "we," "us" and "our" refer to Verona Pharma plc and our wholly owned subsidiaries Verona Pharma, Inc. and Rhinopharma Limited.

## PRESENTATION OF FINANCIAL INFORMATION

This prospectus includes our audited consolidated financial statements as of and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards, or IFRS, as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board, or IASB. We refer to these consolidated financial statements collectively as the "Annual Consolidated Financial Statements." None of our financial statements were prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP.

Our financial information is presented in pounds sterling. For the convenience of the reader, we have translated some of our financial information into U.S. dollars. Unless otherwise indicated, these translations were made at the rate of £1.00 to \$1.2337, the noon buying rate of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York on December 30, 2016. Such U.S. dollar amounts are not necessarily indicative of the amounts of U.S. dollars that could actually have been purchased upon exchange of pounds sterling at the dates indicated. All references in this prospectus to "\$" mean U.S. dollars and all references to "£" and "GBP" mean pounds sterling.

We have made rounding adjustments to some of the figures included in this prospectus. Accordingly, numerical figures shown as totals in some tables may not be an arithmetic aggregation of the figures that preceded them.

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

*This summary highlights information contained elsewhere in this prospectus. This summary may not contain all the information that may be important to you, and we urge you to read this entire prospectus carefully, including "Risk Factors," "Business," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and our consolidated financial statements, including the notes thereto, before deciding to invest in our ADSs or ordinary shares.*

### Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing innovative therapeutics for the treatment of respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs. Our product candidate, RPL554, is a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of the enzymes phosphodiesterase 3 and 4, or PDE3 and PDE4, that acts as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory agent in a single compound. We believe RPL554 has the potential to be the first novel class of bronchodilator in over 40 years. We have completed eight Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials for RPL554, with 282 subjects enrolled. In our clinical trials, treatment with RPL554 has been observed to result in statistically significant improvements in lung function as compared to placebo and has shown clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvements in lung function when added to two commonly used bronchodilators as compared to either bronchodilator administered as a single agent. Statistically significant means that there is a low statistical probability, typically less than 5%, that the observed results occurred by chance alone. RPL554 also has shown anti-inflammatory effects and been well tolerated in our clinical trials, and has not been observed to result in the gastrointestinal or other side effects commonly associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market for the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, or COPD.

We are developing RPL554 for the treatment of patients with COPD. We believe there is an urgent and unmet medical need for new and more effective treatments for COPD to reduce the number and burden of symptoms, reduce acute periods of worsening symptoms, or exacerbations, and establish a consistent and durable treatment response. We are also developing RPL554 for the treatment of cystic fibrosis, or CF, a fatal inherited disease where we believe the bronchodilatory and anti-inflammatory effects of RPL554 may be beneficial. We believe RPL554, if approved, has the potential to become an important and novel treatment and standard of care for COPD and CF patients. We may also explore, alone or with a collaborator, the development of RPL554 to treat asthma and other respiratory diseases.

We are developing RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD patients as a single agent and add-on therapy and for the treatment of CF. We also are developing RPL554 in a nebulized formulation as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other commonly used therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD.

To evaluate RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD, we plan to commence a four-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2017, which will evaluate RPL554 as a single agent as compared to placebo in approximately 400 patients. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the second half of 2018. We also plan to commence a single-dose pharmacokinetic, or PK, trial in approximately 12 healthy volunteers in the United States in mid-2017. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. A PK trial involves the study of the process of bodily absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of a drug. In February 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom in approximately 30 patients with COPD to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to tiotropium, a commonly used long-acting bronchodilator. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. We also plan to commence a 12-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2018 to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator in approximately 400 patients.

To evaluate RPL554 in a nebulized formulation as an add-on therapy for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD, we intend to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States in the second half of 2018 in approximately 150 patients.

In March 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a single-dose PK and pharmacodynamics, or PD, trial in the United Kingdom evaluating RPL554 in up to ten CF patients and expect to report top-line data from this trial in the first half of 2018. A PD trial involves the study of the biochemical and physiological effects of a drug and its mechanisms of action, including the correlation of the drug's actions and effects with its mechanism of action. The results of this clinical trial will support dose selection for a proof-of-concept Phase 2b trial in approximately 100 patients with CF, which we plan to commence in 2018.

In addition to our nebulized formulation of RPL554, we are developing RPL554 in both dry powder inhaler, or DPI, and metered dose inhaler, or MDI, formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. We may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases.

According to the World Health Organization, over one billion people suffer from chronic respiratory diseases. Among the most common of these afflictions is COPD, which is a progressive respiratory disease for which there is no cure. COPD damages the airways and the lungs and leads to shortness of breath, impacting a person's ability to perform daily activities. In some cases, patients experience acute exacerbations, which are estimated to cause approximately 1.5 million emergency department visits, 687,000 hospitalizations and 129,000 deaths per year in the United States alone. According to the World Health Organization, COPD is the third leading cause of death globally, with 210 million people worldwide suffering from the disease. Global sales of drugs currently indicated for COPD were \$10.6 billion in 2016 and are expected to grow to \$15.6 billion in 2019.

According to the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation, more than 30,000 people in the United States and more than 70,000 people worldwide are living with CF and approximately 1,000 new cases of CF are diagnosed each year. CF is the most common fatal inherited disease in the United States and Europe. CF causes impaired lung function and is commonly associated with repeat and persistent lung infections due to the inability to clear thickened phlegm, or mucus, from the lung. This condition often results in frequent exacerbations and hospitalizations. There is no cure for CF and the median age of death for CF patients is 37 years. CF is considered a rare, or orphan, disease by both the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, and the European Medicines Agency, or EMA.

By inhibiting PDE3 and PDE4, RPL554 increases the levels of two critical intracellular messengers, resulting in bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory effects. RPL554 also stimulates the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator, or CFTR, which is an ion channel in the epithelial cells lining the airways. Mutations in the CFTR protein result in poorly or non-functioning ion channels, which cause CF and are potentially important in COPD. Dual inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 has been observed to be more effective than inhibition of either PDE alone at relaxing airway smooth muscle cells and suppressing the activation and functions of pro-inflammatory cells residing in the lung, both of which are recognized to play a significant role in COPD and CF.

In our clinical trials, RPL554 has shown rapid onset and durable bronchodilation in healthy subjects and patients with COPD when inhaled from a nebulizer. In addition, RPL554 has been observed to be complementary and additive when administered as an add-on therapy to other currently marketed bronchodilators. Our most recent clinical trial of RPL554 was a Phase 2a clinical trial in 36 patients with COPD. Our primary objective in this clinical trial was to evaluate the improvement in lung function, as measured by the maximal volume of air a person can forcefully exhale in one second, or FEV<sub>1</sub>, and the duration of action of RPL554. We evaluated RPL554 administered as a single agent as compared to placebo and two commonly used bronchodilators, albuterol, also known as salbutamol and marketed as

Ventolin, and ipratropium, marketed as Atrovent. We also evaluated RPL554 administered as an add-on therapy to either albuterol or ipratropium, in each case as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone.

We have worldwide commercialization rights for RPL554. We have raised £74.6 million in gross proceeds from investors since our listing on AIM in 2006, of which £44.7 million was raised in our most recent private placement of equity securities in July 2016 with a number of European and U.S.-based healthcare specialist investment firms. Members of our management team and board of directors have extensive experience in large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies in respiratory product development from drug discovery through commercialization and have played important roles in the development and commercialization of several approved respiratory treatments, including Symbicort, Daliresp/Daxas, Spiriva and Flutiform.

**Product Candidate Pipeline**

The following table depicts the potential indications for RPL554 and their current development status:

Indication	RPL554 Formulation	Pre-clinical	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3	Anticipated Milestones
Maintenance treatment of COPD	Nebulizer					<p>Commence 4-week Phase 2b clinical trial in the second half of 2017 and U.S. PK trial in mid-2017</p> <p>Report Phase 2a top-line data in the fourth quarter of 2017</p>
Treatment of acute COPD	Nebulizer					Commence Phase 2 clinical trial in the second half of 2018
CF	Nebulizer					Report Phase 2a top-line data in the first half of 2018
Maintenance treatment of COPD	DPI/MDI					Finalize formulation and commence pre-clinical studies in 2018
Treatment of asthma	DPI/MDI					Finalize formulation and commence pre-clinical studies in 2018

**Our Strategy**

We intend to become a leading biopharmaceutical company focused on the treatment of respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs. The key elements of our strategy to achieve this goal include:

- **Rapidly advance the development of nebulized RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD.** We are developing RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD. We plan to commence a four-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2017, which will evaluate RPL554 as a single agent as compared to placebo in approximately 400 patients. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the second half of 2018. We also plan to commence a single-dose PK trial in approximately 12 healthy volunteers in the United States in mid-2017. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. In February 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom in approximately 30 patients with COPD to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to tiotropium, a commonly used long-acting bronchodilator. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. We also plan to commence a 12-week

Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2018 to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator in approximately 400 patients.

- **Rapidly advance the development of nebulized RPL554 for the treatment of acute exacerbations of COPD.** We also are developing RPL554 as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other commonly used therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. We plan to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States for RPL554 in this indication in approximately 150 patients in the second half of 2018.
- **Develop RPL554 for the treatment of CF.** In March 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a single-dose trial in the United Kingdom evaluating RPL554 in up to ten CF patients to evaluate the PK and PD profile and tolerability of RPL554, as well as examine the effect on lung function. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the first half of 2018. The results of this clinical trial will support dose selection for a proof-of-concept Phase 2b trial in approximately 100 patients with CF, which we plan to commence in 2018.
- **Develop DPI and MDI formulations of RPL554.** In addition to our nebulized formulation of RPL554, we are developing RPL554 in both DPI and MDI formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. We believe the development of DPI and MDI formulations has the potential to significantly increase the market opportunity for RPL554, if approved, for the maintenance treatment of COPD. In addition, we may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma. Following the completion of our DPI and MDI formulation process, we plan to commence pre-clinical studies for RPL554 in these formulations in 2018.
- **Pursue development of RPL554 in other forms of respiratory disease.** We believe that RPL554's properties as an inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4 give it broad potential applicability in the treatment of other respiratory diseases. We may explore development of RPL554 to treat other forms of respiratory disease following development of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD and CF.
- **Seek strategic collaborative relationships.** We may seek strategic collaborations with market-leading biopharmaceutical companies to develop and commercialize RPL554. We believe these collaborations could provide significant funding to advance the development of RPL554 while allowing us to benefit from the development or commercialization expertise of our collaborators.
- **Acquire or in-license product candidates for the treatment of respiratory diseases.** We plan to leverage our respiratory disease expertise to identify and in-license or acquire additional clinical-stage product candidates that we believe have the potential to become novel treatments for respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs.

#### Corporate Information

We were incorporated in February 2005 under the laws of England and Wales with the Registrar of Companies of England and Wales under the name Isis Resources plc. In September 2006, we acquired Rhinopharma Limited, or Rhinopharma, a private company incorporated in Canada, and changed our name to Verona Pharma plc. Our principal office is located at 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE, United Kingdom, and our telephone number is +(44) 203 283 4200. Since September 2006, our ordinary shares have traded on AIM, a market of the London Stock Exchange, under the symbol "VRP." Our website address is [www.veronapharma.com](http://www.veronapharma.com). The information contained on, or that can be accessed from, our website does not form part of this prospectus. Our agent for service of process in the United States is National Corporate Research, Ltd.

## **Risks Associated with Our Business**

Our business is subject to a number of risks of which you should be aware before making an investment decision. You should carefully consider all of the information set forth in this prospectus and, in particular, should evaluate the specific factors set forth under "Risk Factors" in deciding whether to invest in our ADSs or ordinary shares. Among these important risks are the following:

- We have a limited operating history, have never generated any product revenue, have incurred significant operating losses since our inception, expect to incur significant operating losses for the foreseeable future and may never achieve or maintain profitability.
- We will need additional funding to complete the development and commercialization of RPL554, if approved, and if we are unable to raise capital when needed, we could be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our product development programs or commercialization efforts.
- We depend heavily on the success of RPL554, our only product candidate, and we cannot give any assurance that RPL554 will receive regulatory approval for any indication, which is necessary before it can be commercialized.
- We may encounter regulatory changes that delay or impede our development and commercialization efforts.
- We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties to conduct our clinical trials and to manufacture our product candidates for pre-clinical and clinical testing, and those third parties may not perform satisfactorily, which could delay our product development activities.
- If we are unable to adequately protect our technology, or to secure and maintain freedom to operate or issued patents protecting our product candidates, others could preclude us from commercializing our technology and products or compete against us more directly.
- We face significant competition from other biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies.
- Our future growth and ability to compete depends on retaining our key personnel and recruiting additional qualified personnel.
- If we are classified as a passive foreign investment company in any taxable year, it may result in adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. holders of our ADSs or ordinary shares.
- As a foreign private issuer, we are exempt from a number of rules under the U.S. securities laws and NASDAQ Stock Market corporate governance rules and are permitted to file less information with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, than U.S. companies, which may limit the information available to holders of our ADSs and ordinary shares.

## **Implications of Being an Emerging Growth Company and a Foreign Private Issuer**

### ***Emerging Growth Company***

We are an "emerging growth company" as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act. As such, we may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other publicly traded entities that are not emerging growth companies. These exemptions include:

- the option to present only two years of audited financial statements and only two years of related Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations in this prospectus;
- not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002;
- not being required to comply with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, or PCAOB, regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor's report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements (i.e., an auditor discussion and analysis);

- not being required to submit certain executive compensation matters to stockholder advisory votes, such as "say-on-pay," "say-on-frequency" and "say-on-golden parachutes;" and
- not being required to disclose certain executive compensation related items such as the correlation between executive compensation and performance and comparisons of the chief executive officer's compensation to median employee compensation.

As a result, we do not know if some investors will find our ADSs or ordinary shares less attractive. The result may be a less active trading market for our ADSs and ordinary shares, and the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares may become more volatile.

Section 107 of the JOBS Act also provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of the extended transition period provided in Section 13(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, for complying with new or revised accounting standards. In other words, an emerging growth company can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We are choosing to irrevocably opt out of this extended transition period and as a result, we will comply with new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for non-emerging growth companies. Under federal securities laws, our decision to opt out of the extended transition period is irrevocable.

We will remain an emerging growth company until the earliest of: (i) the last day of the first fiscal year in which our annual gross revenues exceed \$1 billion; (ii) the last day of the fiscal year following the fifth anniversary of the completion of the global offering; (iii) the date that we become a "large accelerated filer" as defined in Rule 12b-2 under the Exchange Act, which would occur if the market value of our common equity held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of the last business day of our most recently completed second fiscal quarter; or (iv) the date on which we have issued more than \$1 billion in non-convertible debt securities during any three-year period.

#### ***Foreign Private Issuer***

Upon the completion of the global offering, we will report under the Exchange Act as a non-U.S. company with foreign private issuer status. Even after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, as long as we qualify as a foreign private issuer under the Exchange Act we will be exempt from certain provisions of the Exchange Act that are applicable to U.S. domestic public companies, including:

- the sections of the Exchange Act regulating the solicitation of proxies, consents or authorizations in respect of a security registered under the Exchange Act;
- the sections of the Exchange Act requiring insiders to file public reports of their stock ownership and trading activities and liability for insiders who profit from trades made in a short period of time; and
- the rules under the Exchange Act requiring the filing with the SEC of quarterly reports on Form 10-Q containing unaudited financial and other specific information, or current reports on Form 8-K, upon the occurrence of specified significant events.

Both foreign private issuers and emerging growth companies also are exempt from certain more stringent executive compensation disclosure rules. Thus, even if we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, but remain a foreign private issuer, we will continue to be exempt from the more stringent compensation disclosures required of companies that are neither an emerging growth company nor a foreign private issuer.

**The Global Offering**

Global offering	ordinary shares offered by us, consisting of ordinary shares represented by ADSs offered in the U.S. offering and ordinary shares offered in the European private placement. The closing of each of the U.S. offering and the European private placement is conditioned upon the other. The total number of ordinary shares in the U.S. offering and European private placement is subject to reallocation between these offerings as permitted under the applicable laws and regulations.
U.S. offering	ADSs, each representing                      ordinary shares
European private placement	ordinary shares
Ordinary shares to be outstanding immediately after the global offering and the shareholder private placement	ordinary shares
Option to purchase additional ADSs in the U.S. offering	We have granted the underwriters an option to purchase up to an additional                      ADSs from us within 30 days of the date of this prospectus.
Option to purchase additional ordinary shares in the European private placement	We have granted the underwriters an option to purchase up to an additional                      ordinary shares from us within 30 days of the date of this prospectus.
Offering price	On                      , 2017, the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM was £                      per share (equivalent to \$                      per ADS based on an exchange rate of £1.00 to \$                      ). For a discussion of the factors considered in determining the initial public offering price of our ADSs and ordinary shares, see "Underwriting" in this prospectus.
American Depositary Shares	Each ADS represents                      ordinary shares, nominal value £0.05 per share. As an ADS holder you will not be treated as one of our shareholders and you will not have shareholder rights. You will have the rights of an ADS holder or beneficial owner (as applicable) as provided in the deposit agreement among us, the depositary and holders and beneficial owners of ADSs from time to time. To better understand the terms of our ADSs, see "Description of American Depositary Shares." We also encourage you to read the deposit agreement, the form of which is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.
Depositary	Citibank N.A.

Use of proceeds	We estimate that the net proceeds to us from the global offering and shareholder private placement will be approximately \$ million (or approximately \$ million if the underwriters exercise in full their options to purchase an additional ADSs and ordinary shares), based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS in the U.S. offering and an assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share in the European private placement and shareholder private placement, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions, estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We intend to use the net proceeds from the global offering and shareholder private placement, together with our cash and cash equivalents, to fund our planned clinical trials of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD and CF, current and future research and development activities and for working capital and other general corporate purposes. See "Use of Proceeds."
Risk factors	See "Risk Factors" and the other information included in this prospectus for a discussion of factors you should consider before deciding to invest in our ADSs or ordinary shares.
Proposed NASDAQ trading symbol for ADSs	"VRNA"
AIM trading symbol	"VRP"

The number of our ordinary shares to be outstanding after the global offering and the shareholder private placement is based on 51,361,064 ordinary shares outstanding as of March 31, 2017 and excludes:

- 2,804,000 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding as of March 31, 2017 at a weighted average exercise price of £1.90 per share;
- 2,332,106 ordinary shares that may be issued under our equity incentive plans as of March 31, 2017; and
- 12,646,370 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of warrants outstanding as of March 31, 2017 at a weighted average exercise price of £1.7174 per share.

Unless otherwise indicated, all information contained in this prospectus assumes or gives effect to:

- a 50-for-one share consolidation in which we consolidated every 50 existing ordinary shares, nominal value £0.001 per share, in our issued share capital into one ordinary share, nominal value £0.05 per share, effected February 10, 2017;
- no exercise of the outstanding options or warrants described above after March 31, 2017; and
- no exercise by the underwriters of their options to purchase additional ADSs and ordinary shares.

Each of our chairman of the board of directors and an existing shareholder have indicated an interest in purchasing up to approximately £ of our ordinary shares, in a private placement separate from the global offering, contingent on and concurrent with the completion of the global offering at a price per share equal to the offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement. However, indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and we could determine to sell more, less or no shares to these shareholders and these shareholders could determine to purchase more, less or no shares in the proposed shareholder private placement. The underwriters will serve as placement agents for such shareholder private placement and receive a placement agent fee equal to a percentage of the total purchase price of the private placement shares, which percentage will be equal to the percentage discount the underwriters will receive on shares sold in this global offering. The closing of this global offering is not conditioned upon the closing of such shareholder private placement.

**Summary Consolidated Financial Data**

The following tables set forth our summary consolidated financial data for the periods indicated. We have derived the consolidated statement of comprehensive income data for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 and the consolidated statement of financial position data as of December 31, 2016 from our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results that should be expected for any future period. You should read the following summary consolidated financial data together with the Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus and the sections titled "Exchange Rate Information" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations."

We maintain our books and records in pounds sterling, and we prepare our financial statements in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB. We report our financial results in pounds sterling. For the convenience of the reader, we have translated pound sterling amounts as of December 31, 2016 and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 into U.S. dollars at the noon buying rate of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York on December 30, 2016, which was £1.00 to \$1.2337. These translations should not be considered representations that any such amounts have been, could have been or could be converted into U.S. dollars at that or any other exchange rate as of that or any other date.

	Year Ended December 31,			
	2015		2016	
	(£)	(\$)	(£)	(\$)
	(in thousands, except per ordinary share data)			
<b>Consolidated statement of comprehensive income data:</b>				
Research and development costs	(7,269)	(8,968)	(4,522)	(5,579)
General and administrative costs	(1,706)	(2,105)	(2,498)	(3,082)
Operating loss	(8,975)	(11,072)	(7,020)	(8,661)
Finance income	45	55	1,841	2,272
Finance expense	(72)	(89)	(794)	(979)
Loss before taxation	(9,002)	(11,106)	(5,973)	(7,368)
Taxation — credit	1,509	1,862	954	1,177
Loss for the year	(7,493)	(9,244)	(5,018)	(6,191)
Other comprehensive income:				
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	4	5	43	53
Total comprehensive loss attributable to owners of the company	(7,489)	(9,239)	(4,976)	(6,139)
Loss per ordinary share — basic and diluted	(0.37)	(0.46)	(0.15)	(0.19)

	As of December 31, 2016,			
	Actual		As Adjusted <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	
	(£)	(\$)	(£)	(\$)
(in thousands)				
<b>Consolidated statement of financial position data:</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	39,785	49,083		
Total assets	46,143	56,926		
Share premium	58,527	72,204		
Total liabilities	11,674	14,403		
Accumulated loss	(28,728)	(35,442)		
Total equity	34,468	42,524		

- (1) The as adjusted statement of financial position data give effect to the sale by us of (i) ADSs in the U.S. offering, (ii) ordinary shares in the European private placement, and (iii) ordinary shares in the shareholder private placement at the assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS and the assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share, which reflects the last reported sale price of £ per ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions, estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us.
- (2) This as adjusted information is illustrative only and will depend on the actual offering price and other terms of the global offering determined at pricing. Each \$1.00 (£ ) increase or decrease in the assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, would increase or decrease the as adjusted amount of each of cash and cash equivalents, total assets and total equity by \$ million (£ million), assuming that the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us in the global offering, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 in the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease the as adjusted amount of each of cash and cash equivalents, total assets and total equity by \$ million (£ million), assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or in the assumed offering price per ordinary share and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions.

## RISK FACTORS

*You should carefully consider the risks and uncertainties described below and the other information in this prospectus before making an investment in our ADSs or ordinary shares. Our business, financial condition, results of operations, or prospects could be materially and adversely affected if any of these risks occurs, and as a result, the market price of our ADSs or ordinary shares could decline and you could lose all or part of your investment. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. See "Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements." Our actual results could differ materially and adversely from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors.*

### Risks Related to Our Business and Industry

#### **We have a limited operating history and have never generated any product revenue.**

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history, and have incurred significant operating losses since our inception. We had net losses of £7.5 million and £5.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, we had an accumulated loss of £28.7 million. Our losses have resulted principally from expenses incurred in research and development of RPL554, our only product candidate, and from general and administrative costs that we have incurred while building our business infrastructure. We expect to continue to incur significant operating losses for the foreseeable future as we expand our research and development efforts and seek to obtain regulatory approval and commercialization for RPL554. We anticipate that our expenses will increase substantially as we:

- conduct our ongoing Phase 2a clinical trial and initiate and conduct our planned Phase 2b and PK clinical trials and any other future clinical trials of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD;
- develop RPL554 as DPI and MDI formulations for maintenance treatment of COPD, asthma and other respiratory diseases;
- conduct our ongoing Phase 2a clinical trial and any future clinical trials of RPL554 for the treatment of CF;
- seek to discover and develop or in-license additional respiratory product candidates;
- seek regulatory approvals of RPL554;
- potentially establish a sales, marketing and distribution infrastructure and scale-up manufacturing capabilities to commercialize RPL554, if approved;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- secure, maintain or obtain freedom to operate for our in-licensed technologies and products;
- add clinical, scientific, operational, financial and management information systems and personnel, including personnel to support our product development and potential future commercialization efforts; and
- expand our operations in the United States and the United Kingdom.

Our expenses may also increase substantially if we experience any delays or encounter any issues with any of the above, including, but not limited to, failed pre-clinical studies or clinical trials, complex results, safety issues or other regulatory challenges.

We have devoted substantially all of our financial resources and efforts to the research and development and pre-clinical studies and clinical trials of RPL554. We are in the early stages of development of RPL554, and we have not completed development of any product candidate or any drugs.

To become and remain profitable, we must succeed in developing, and eventually commercializing, products that generate significant revenue. This will require us to be successful in a range of challenging activities,

## [Table of Contents](#)

including completing clinical trials of RPL554, discovering and developing additional product candidates, obtaining regulatory approval for RPL554 and any future product candidates that successfully complete clinical trials, establishing manufacturing and marketing capabilities and ultimately selling any products for which we may obtain regulatory approval. We are only in the preliminary stages of most of these activities. We may never succeed in these activities and, even if we do, we may never generate revenue that is significant enough to achieve profitability.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with pharmaceutical product development, we are unable to accurately predict the timing or amount of increased expenses or when, or if, we will be able to achieve profitability. If we are required by the FDA, the EMA, or other regulatory authorities to perform studies in addition to those we currently anticipate, or if there are any delays in completing our clinical trials or the development of RPL554 or any other product candidates, our expenses could increase and revenue could be further delayed.

Even if we do generate product royalties or product sales, we may never achieve or sustain profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. Our failure to sustain profitability would depress the market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares and could impair our ability to raise capital, expand our business, diversify our product offerings or continue our operations. A decline in the market price of our ADSs or ordinary shares also could cause you to lose all or a part of your investment.

**We will need additional funding to complete development of RPL554 and any future product candidates, and to commercialize our products, if approved. If we are unable to raise capital when needed, we could be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our product development programs or commercialization efforts.**

We expect our expenses to increase in connection with our ongoing activities, particularly as we conduct our planned Phase 2 clinical trials and any other future clinical trials of RPL554 and develop RPL554 for other indications. In addition, if we obtain regulatory approval for RPL554 or any other product candidates, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses related to product manufacturing, marketing, sales and distribution. Furthermore, upon the closing of the global offering, we expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a public company in the United Kingdom and the United States and maintaining a listing on both AIM and NASDAQ. Accordingly, we will need to obtain substantial additional funding in connection with our continuing operations. If we are unable to raise capital when needed or on attractive terms, we could be forced to delay, reduce or eliminate our research and development programs or any future commercialization efforts.

We expect that our existing cash, cash equivalents and investments, together with anticipated net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement, will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements through . We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could use our capital resources sooner than we currently expect, or our operating plan may change as a result of many factors unknown to us. These factors, among others, may necessitate that we seek additional capital sooner than currently planned. In addition, we may seek additional capital due to favorable market conditions or strategic considerations, even if we believe we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans.

Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- the cost, progress and results of our ongoing Phase 2a clinical trials, our planned Phase 2b and PK clinical trials and any other future clinical trials of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD and CF;
- the cost of manufacturing clinical and commercial supplies of RPL554;
- the scope, progress, results and costs of pre-clinical development, laboratory testing and clinical trials for RPL554 in other indications and for the development of DPI and MDI formulations of RPL554 for maintenance treatment of COPD and potentially asthma and other respiratory diseases;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- the costs, timing and outcome of regulatory review of RPL554, including post-marketing studies that could be required by regulatory authorities;
- the costs, timing and outcome of potential future commercialization activities, including manufacturing, marketing, sales and distribution, for RPL554;
- the costs and timing of preparing, filing and prosecuting patent applications, maintaining and enforcing our intellectual property rights and defending any intellectual property-related claims, including any claims by third parties that we are infringing upon their intellectual property rights;
- the timing and amount of revenue, if any, received from commercial sales of RPL554;
- the sales price and availability of adequate third-party coverage and reimbursement for RPL554;
- the effect of competing technological and market developments; and
- the extent to which we acquire or invest in businesses, products and technologies, including entering into licensing or collaboration arrangements for RPL554, although we currently have no commitments or agreements to complete any such transactions.

Any additional fundraising efforts may divert our management from their day-to-day activities, which may adversely affect our ability to develop and commercialize RPL554. In addition, we cannot guarantee that future financing will be available in sufficient amounts or on terms acceptable to us, if at all. Moreover, the terms of any financing may adversely affect our business, the holdings or the rights of our shareholders, or the value of our ordinary shares or ADSs.

If we are unable to obtain funding on a timely basis, we may be required to significantly curtail, delay or discontinue our research and development programs relating to RPL554 or any commercialization efforts, be unable to expand our operations, or be unable to otherwise capitalize on our business opportunities, as desired, which could harm our business and potentially cause us to discontinue operations.

**We depend heavily on the success of RPL554, our only product candidate under development. We cannot give any assurance that RPL554 will receive regulatory approval for any indication, which is necessary before it can be commercialized. If we, and any collaborators with whom we may enter into agreements for the development and commercialization of RPL554, are unable to commercialize RPL554, or experience significant delays in doing so, our ability to generate revenue and our financial condition will be adversely affected.**

We do not currently generate any revenues from sales of any products, and we may never be able to develop or commercialize a marketable product. We have invested substantially all of our efforts and financial resources in the development of RPL554, and we do not have any other product candidate currently under development. Our ability to generate royalty and product revenues, which we do not expect will occur for at least the next several years, if ever, will depend heavily on the successful development and eventual commercialization of RPL554, if approved, which may never occur. RPL554 will require additional clinical development, management of clinical, pre-clinical and manufacturing activities, regulatory approval in multiple jurisdictions, procurement of manufacturing supply, commercialization, substantial additional investment and significant marketing efforts before we generate any revenues from product sales. We are not permitted to market or promote RPL554 or any product candidates in the United States, Europe or other countries before we receive regulatory approval from the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities, and we may never receive such regulatory approval for RPL554 or any future product candidate. We have not submitted a New Drug Application, or NDA, to the FDA, a Marketing Authorization Application, or MAA, to the EMA or comparable applications to other regulatory authorities and do not expect to be in a position to do so in the foreseeable future. The success of RPL554 will depend on many factors, including the following:

- we may not be able to demonstrate that RPL554 is safe and effective as a treatment for our targeted indications to the satisfaction of the applicable regulatory authorities;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- the applicable regulatory authorities may require additional clinical trials of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD, which would increase our costs and prolong our development;
- the results of clinical trials of RPL554 may not meet the level of statistical or clinical significance required by the applicable regulatory authorities for marketing approval;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may disagree with the number, design, size, conduct or implementation of our planned clinical trials;
- the contract research organizations, or CROs, that we retain to conduct clinical trials may take actions outside of our control that materially adversely impact our clinical trials;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may not find the data from pre-clinical studies and clinical trials sufficient to demonstrate that the clinical and other benefits of RPL554 outweigh its safety risks;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data from our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials or may require that we conduct additional studies;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may not accept data generated at our clinical trial sites;
- if we submit an NDA to the FDA, and it is reviewed by an advisory committee, the FDA may have difficulties scheduling an advisory committee meeting in a timely manner or the advisory committee may recommend against approval of our application or may recommend that the FDA require, as a condition of approval, additional pre-clinical studies or clinical trials, limitations on approved labeling or distribution and use restrictions;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may require development of a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy, or REMS, as a condition of approval;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may identify deficiencies in the manufacturing processes or facilities of our third-party manufacturers;
- the applicable regulatory authorities may change its approval policies or adopt new regulations;
- if we license RPL554 to others, the efforts of those parties in completing clinical trials of, receiving regulatory approval for and commercializing, RPL554;
- through our clinical trials, we may discover factors that limit the commercial viability of RPL554 or make the commercialization of RPL554 unfeasible;
- if we retain rights under a collaboration agreement for RPL554, our efforts in completing pre-clinical studies and clinical trials of, receiving marketing approvals for, establishing commercial manufacturing capabilities for and commercializing, RPL554; and
- if approved, acceptance of RPL554 by patients, the medical community and third-party payors, effectively competing with other therapies, a continued acceptable safety profile following approval and qualifying for, maintaining, enforcing and defending our intellectual property rights and claims.

If we or our collaborators, as applicable, do not achieve one or more of these factors in a timely manner or at all, we could experience significant delays or an inability to successfully commercialize RPL554.

We cannot be certain that RPL554 or any future product candidates will be successful in clinical trials or receive regulatory approval. Further, RPL554 or any future product candidates may not receive regulatory approval even if they are successful in clinical trials. If we do not receive regulatory approvals for RPL554 or any future product candidates, we may not be able to continue our operations. Even if we successfully obtain regulatory approvals to manufacture and market RPL554 or any future product candidates, our revenues will be dependent, in part, upon the size of the markets in the territories for which we gain regulatory approval and have commercial rights. If the markets for patient subsets that we are targeting are not as significant as we estimate, we may not generate significant revenues from sales of such products, if approved.

We plan to seek regulatory approval to commercialize RPL554 both in the United States and the EU, and potentially in additional foreign countries. While the scope of regulatory approval is similar in many countries, to obtain separate regulatory approval in multiple countries requires us to comply with the

[Table of Contents](#)

numerous and varying regulatory requirements of such countries regarding safety and efficacy and governing, among other things, clinical trials and commercial sales, pricing and distribution of RPL554, and we cannot predict success in these jurisdictions.

**Our limited operating history may make it difficult for you to evaluate the success of our business to date and to assess our future viability.**

Since our inception in 2005, we have devoted substantially all of our resources to developing RPL554, building our intellectual property portfolio, developing our supply chain, planning our business, raising capital and providing general and administrative support for these operations. We have completed multiple Phase 1 and 2 clinical trials for RPL554, but we have not yet demonstrated our ability to successfully complete any Phase 3 or other pivotal clinical trials, obtain regulatory approvals, manufacture a commercial scale product or arrange for a third party to do so on our behalf or conduct sales and marketing activities necessary for successful product commercialization. Additionally, we are not profitable and have incurred losses in each year since our inception, and we expect our financial condition and operating results to continue to fluctuate significantly from quarter to quarter and year to year due to a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control. Consequently, any predictions you make about our future success or viability may not be as accurate as they could be if we had a longer operating history.

**Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our holders, including purchasers of our ADSs or ordinary shares in the global offering, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our technologies or product candidates.**

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial product revenues, we expect to finance our cash needs through a combination of securities offerings, debt financings, license and collaboration agreements and research grants. If we raise capital through securities offerings, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a holder of our ADSs or ordinary shares. Debt financing, if available, could result in fixed payment obligations, and we may be required to agree to certain restrictive covenants, such as limitations on our ability to incur additional debt, to acquire, sell or license intellectual property rights, to make capital expenditures, or to declare dividends, or other operating restrictions. If we raise additional funds through collaboration or licensing agreements, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams or product candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. In addition, we could also be required to seek funds through arrangements with collaborators or others at an earlier stage than otherwise would be desirable. If we raise funds through research grants, we may be subject to certain requirements, which may limit our ability to use the funds or require us to share information from our research and development. Raising additional capital through any of these or other means could adversely affect our business and the holdings or rights of our shareholders, and may cause the market price of our ADSs or ordinary shares to decline.

**Our business may become subject to economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations.**

As a company based in the United Kingdom, our business is subject to risks associated with conducting business internationally. Almost all of our suppliers and collaborative and clinical trial relationships are located outside the United States. Accordingly, our future results could be harmed by a variety of factors, including:

- economic weakness, including inflation, or political instability in particular non-U.S. economies and markets;
- differing regulatory requirements for drug approvals in non-U.S. countries;
- differing jurisdictions could present different issues for securing, maintaining or obtaining freedom to operate in such jurisdictions;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- potentially reduced protection for intellectual property rights;
- difficulties in compliance with non-U.S. laws and regulations;
- changes in non-U.S. regulations and customs, tariffs and trade barriers;
- changes in non-U.S. currency exchange rates of the euro and currency controls;
- changes in a specific country's or region's political or economic environment, including the implications of the recent decision of the eligible members of the U.K. electorate for the United Kingdom to withdraw from the EU;
- trade protection measures, import or export licensing requirements or other restrictive actions by U.S. or non-U.S. governments;
- differing reimbursement regimes and price controls in certain non-U.S. markets;
- negative consequences from changes in tax laws;
- compliance with tax, employment, immigration and labor laws for employees living or traveling abroad;
- workforce uncertainty in countries where labor unrest is more common than in the United States;
- difficulties associated with staffing and managing international operations, including differing labor relations;
- production shortages resulting from any events affecting raw material supply or manufacturing capabilities abroad; and
- business interruptions resulting from geo-political actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, typhoons, floods and fires.

### **The United Kingdom's withdrawal from the EU may have a negative effect on global economic conditions, financial markets and our business, which could reduce the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares.**

Following the vote of a majority of the eligible members of the electorate in the United Kingdom to withdraw from the EU in a national referendum held on June 23, 2016, the UK government served notice under Article 50 of the Treaty of the European Union on March 29, 2017 to formally initiate a withdrawal process. The United Kingdom and the EU have a two-year period under Article 50 to negotiate the terms for withdrawal. Any extension of the negotiation period for withdrawal will require the consent of all of the remaining 27 member states.

The referendum and withdrawal have created significant uncertainty about the future relationship between the United Kingdom and the EU. Lack of clarity about future U.K. laws and regulations as the United Kingdom determines which EU-derived laws and regulations to replace or replicate as part of a withdrawal, including financial laws and regulations, tax and free trade agreements, intellectual property rights, supply chain logistics, environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, immigration laws and employment laws, could decrease foreign direct investment in the United Kingdom, increase costs, depress economic activity and restrict our access to capital. If the United Kingdom and the EU are unable to negotiate acceptable withdrawal terms or if other EU member states pursue withdrawal, barrier-free access between the United Kingdom and other EU member states or among the European economic area overall could be diminished or eliminated. These developments, or the perception that any of them could occur, have had and may continue to have a significant adverse effect on global economic conditions and the stability of global financial markets, and could significantly reduce global market liquidity and restrict the ability of key market participants to operate in certain financial markets. Asset valuations, currency exchange rates and credit ratings may be especially subject to increased market volatility. Any of these factors could have a significant adverse effect on our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

**Exchange rate fluctuations may materially affect our results of operations and financial condition.**

Owing to the international scope of our operations, fluctuations in exchange rates, particularly between the pound sterling and the U.S. dollar, may adversely affect us. Although we are based in the United Kingdom, we source research and development, manufacturing, consulting and other services from the United States and the EU. Further, potential future revenue may be derived from abroad, particularly from the United States. As a result, our business and the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares may be affected by fluctuations in foreign exchange rates not only between the pound sterling and the U.S. dollar, but also the currencies of other countries, which may have a significant impact on our results of operations and cash flows from period to period. Currently, we do not have any exchange rate hedging arrangements in place.

**Risks Related to Development, Clinical Testing and Regulatory Approval**

**Our only product candidate, RPL554, is in early-stage clinical development. Clinical drug development is a lengthy and expensive process with uncertain timelines and uncertain outcomes. If clinical trials of RPL554 are prolonged or delayed, or if RPL554 in later stage clinical trials fails to show the desired safety and efficacy, we or our collaborators may be unable to obtain required regulatory approvals and be unable to commercialize RPL554 on a timely basis, or at all.**

To obtain the requisite regulatory approvals to market and sell RPL554, we or any collaborator for RPL554 must demonstrate through extensive pre-clinical studies and clinical trials that RPL554 is safe and effective in humans. Clinical testing is expensive and can take many years to complete, and its outcome is inherently uncertain. Failure can occur at any time during the clinical trial process. The results of pre-clinical studies and early-stage clinical trials of RPL554 may not be predictive of the results of later-stage clinical trials. Product candidates in later stages of clinical trials may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy traits despite having progressed through pre-clinical studies and initial clinical trials. A number of companies in the biopharmaceutical industry have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials due to lack of efficacy or adverse safety profiles, notwithstanding promising results in earlier trials. Our future clinical trial results may not be successful.

We may experience delays in our ongoing clinical trials and we do not know whether planned clinical trials will begin on time, need to be redesigned, enroll patients on time or be completed on schedule, if at all. Our clinical trials can be delayed, suspended, or terminated for a variety of reasons, including the following:

- delays in or failure to obtain regulatory approval to commence a trial;
- delays in or failure to reach agreement on acceptable terms with prospective CROs and clinical trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;
- delays in or failure to obtain institutional review board, or IRB, approval at each site;
- delays in or failure to recruit suitable patients to participate in a trial;
- failure to have patients complete a trial or return for post-treatment follow-up;
- clinical sites deviating from trial protocol or dropping out of a trial or committing gross misconduct or fraud;
- adding new clinical trial sites;
- unexpected technical issues during manufacture of RPL554 and the corresponding drug product;
- inability to manufacture sufficient quantities of RPL554 for use in clinical trials;
- third-party actions claiming infringement by RPL554 in clinical trials inside or outside of the United States and obtaining injunctions interfering with our progress;
- business interruptions resulting from geo-political actions, including war and terrorism, or natural disasters including earthquakes, typhoons, floods and fires;
- safety or tolerability concerns causing us or our collaborators, as applicable, to suspend or terminate a trial if we or our collaborators find that the participants are being exposed to unacceptable health risks;
- changes in regulatory requirements, policies and guidelines;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- lower than anticipated retention rates of patients and volunteers in clinical trials;
- our third-party research contractors failing to comply with regulatory requirements or to meet their contractual obligations to us in a timely manner, or at all;
- delays in establishing the appropriate dosage levels or frequency of dosing or treatment in clinical trials;
- difficulty in certain countries in identifying the sub-populations that we are trying to treat in a particular trial, which may delay enrollment and reduce the power of a clinical trial to detect statistically significant results;
- the quality or stability of RPL554 falling below acceptable standards for either safety or efficacy; and
- discoveries that may reduce the commercial viability of RPL554.

We could encounter delays if a clinical trial is suspended or terminated by us, by the IRBs of the institutions in which such trials are being conducted, by the Data Review Committee or Data Safety Monitoring Board for such trial or by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. Such authorities may impose such a suspension or termination due to a number of factors, including failure to conduct the clinical trial in accordance with regulatory requirements or our clinical protocols, inspection of the clinical trial operations or trial site by the FDA or other regulatory authorities resulting in the imposition of a clinical hold, unforeseen safety issues or adverse side effects, failure to demonstrate a benefit from using a drug, failure of our clinical trials to demonstrate adequate efficacy and safety, changes in governmental regulations or administrative actions or lack of adequate funding to continue the clinical trial.

Moreover, principal investigators for our clinical trials may serve as scientific advisors or consultants to us from time to time and receive compensation in connection with such services. Under certain circumstances, we may be required to report some of these relationships to the FDA or other regulatory authority. The FDA or other regulatory authority may conclude that a financial relationship between us and a principal investigator has created a conflict of interest or otherwise affected interpretation of the study. The FDA or other regulatory authority may therefore question the integrity of the data generated at the applicable clinical trial site and the utility of the clinical trial itself may be jeopardized. This could result in a delay in approval, or rejection, of our marketing applications by the FDA or other regulatory authority, as the case may be, and may ultimately lead to the denial of marketing approval of RPL554.

If we experience delays in the completion of any clinical trial of RPL554 or any clinical trial of RPL554 is terminated, the commercial prospects of RPL554 may be harmed, and our ability to generate product revenues from RPL554, if any, will be delayed. Moreover, any delays in completing our clinical trials will increase our costs, slow down the development and approval process of RPL554 and jeopardize our ability to commence product sales and generate revenue, if any. Significant clinical trial delays could also allow our competitors to bring products to market before we do or shorten any periods during which we have the exclusive right to commercialize RPL554 and could impair our ability to commercialize RPL554. In addition, many of the factors that cause, or lead to, a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of RPL554.

Clinical trials must be conducted in accordance with the laws and regulations of the FDA, EU rules and regulations and other applicable regulatory authorities' legal requirements, regulations or guidelines, and are subject to oversight by these governmental agencies and IRBs at the medical institutions where the clinical trials are conducted. In addition, clinical trials must be conducted with supplies of RPL554 produced under current good manufacturing practice, or cGMP, requirements and other regulations. Furthermore, we rely on CROs and clinical trial sites to ensure the proper and timely conduct of our clinical trials and while we have agreements governing their committed activities, we have limited influence over their actual performance. We depend on our collaborators and on medical institutions and CROs to conduct our clinical trials in compliance with good clinical practice, or GCP, requirements. To the extent our collaborators or the CROs fail to enroll participants for our clinical trials, fail to conduct the study to GCP standards or are delayed for a significant time in the execution of trials, including achieving full enrollment, we may be affected by increased costs, program delays or both. In addition, clinical trials that are conducted in countries outside the EU and the United States may subject us to further delays and expenses as a result of increased shipment costs, additional regulatory requirements and the engagement of non-EU and non-U.S. CROs, as well as expose us to risks associated with clinical investigators who are unknown to the FDA or the EMA, and different standards of diagnosis, screening and medical care.

**RPL554 may have serious adverse, undesirable or unacceptable side effects which may delay or prevent marketing approval. If such side effects are identified during the development of RPL554 or following approval, if any, we may need to abandon our development of RPL554, the commercial profile of any approved label may be limited, or we may be subject to other significant negative consequences following marketing approval, if any.**

Undesirable side effects that may be caused by RPL554 could cause us or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA, EMA or other comparable foreign authorities. We have completed eight Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials of RPL554. In these trials, some patients have experienced mild to moderate adverse reactions, including headache, dizziness, cough, heart palpitation, nausea, dry mouth, throat irritation, paresthesia (tingling) and rash. Results of our future clinical trials could reveal a high and unacceptable severity and prevalence of adverse side effects. In such an event, our trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA, EMA or other comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development of or deny approval of RPL554 for any or all targeted indications. The drug-related side effects could affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial or result in potential product liability claims. Additionally, if RPL554 receives marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable or unacceptable side effects caused by RPL554, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw approvals of such products and require us to take RPL554 off the market;
- regulatory authorities may require the addition of labeling statements, specific warnings, a contraindication or field alerts to physicians and pharmacies;
- regulatory authorities may require a medication guide outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients, or that we implement a REMS plan to ensure that the benefits of RPL554 outweigh its risks;
- we may be required to change the way RPL554 is administered, conduct additional clinical trials or change the labeling of RPL554;
- we may be subject to limitations on how we may promote RPL554;
- sales of RPL554 may decrease significantly;
- we may be subject to litigation or product liability claims; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us or any collaborators from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of RPL554 or could substantially increase commercialization costs and expenses, which in turn could delay or prevent us from generating significant revenue from the sale of RPL554.

**We depend on enrollment of patients in our clinical trials for RPL554. If we are unable to enroll patients in our clinical trials, or enrollment is slower than anticipated, our research and development efforts could be adversely affected.**

Successful and timely completion of clinical trials for RPL554 will require that we enroll a sufficient number of patient candidates. Trials may be subject to delays as a result of patient enrollment taking longer than anticipated or patient withdrawal. Patient enrollment depends on many factors, including the size and nature of the patient population, eligibility criteria for the trial, the proximity of patients to clinical sites, the design of the clinical protocol, the availability of competing clinical trials, the availability of new drugs approved for the indication the clinical trial is investigating and clinicians' and patients' perceptions as to the potential advantages of the drug being studied in relation to other available therapies. These factors may make it difficult for us to enroll enough patients to complete our clinical trials in a timely and cost-effective manner. Delays in the completion of any clinical trial of RPL554 will increase our costs, slow down our development and approval of RPL554 and delay or potentially jeopardize our ability to commence product sales and generate revenue. In addition, some of the factors that cause, or lead to, a delay in the

commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of RPL554.

**We may become exposed to costly and damaging liability claims, either when testing RPL554 in the clinic or at the commercial stage, and our product liability insurance may not cover all damages from such claims.**

We are exposed to potential product liability and professional indemnity risks that are inherent in the research, development, manufacturing, marketing and use of pharmaceutical products. Currently, we have no products that have been approved for commercial sale; however, the current and future use of RPL554 by us and any collaborators in clinical trials, and the sale of RPL554, if approved, in the future, may expose us to liability claims. These claims might be made by patients that use the product, healthcare providers, pharmaceutical companies, our collaborators or others selling RPL554. Any claims against us, regardless of their merit, could be difficult and costly to defend and could adversely affect the market for RPL554 or any prospects for commercialization of RPL554. In addition, regardless of the merits or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- decreased demand for RPL554;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- costs to defend related litigation;
- diversion of management's time and our resources;
- substantial monetary awards to trial participants or patients;
- regulatory investigation, product recalls or withdrawals, or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- loss of revenue; and
- the inability to commercialize or promote RPL554.

Although the clinical trial process is designed to identify and assess potential side effects, it is always possible that a drug, even after regulatory approval, may exhibit unforeseen side effects. If RPL554 were to cause adverse side effects during clinical trials or after approval, we may be exposed to substantial liabilities. Physicians and patients may not comply with any warnings that identify known potential adverse effects and patients who should not use RPL554.

Although we maintain product liability insurance for RPL554, it is possible that our liabilities could exceed our insurance coverage. We intend to expand our insurance coverage to include the sale of commercial products if we obtain marketing approval for RPL554. However, we may not be able to maintain insurance coverage at a reasonable cost or obtain insurance coverage that will be adequate to satisfy any liability that may arise. If a successful product liability claim or series of claims is brought against us for uninsured liabilities or in excess of insured liabilities, our assets may not be sufficient to cover such claims and our business operations could be impaired.

**The regulatory approval processes of the FDA, the EMA and comparable foreign authorities are lengthy, time consuming and inherently unpredictable, and if we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for RPL554, our business will be substantially harmed.**

The time required to obtain approval by the FDA, the EMA and comparable foreign authorities is unpredictable, but typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical trials and depends upon numerous factors, including substantial discretion of the regulatory authorities. In addition, approval policies, regulations, or the type and amount of clinical data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of a product candidate's clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions. We have not obtained regulatory approval for RPL554 and it is possible that RPL554 or any product candidates we may develop in the future will never obtain regulatory approval.

## [Table of Contents](#)

RPL554 could fail to receive regulatory approval for many reasons, including the following:

- the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design or implementation of our clinical trials;
- we may be unable to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that RPL554 is safe and effective for its proposed indication;
- the results of clinical trials may not meet the level of statistical significance required by the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities for approval;
- we may be unable to demonstrate that RPL554's clinical and other benefits outweigh its safety risks;
- the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data from pre-clinical studies or clinical trials or may find the data to be unacceptable;
- the data collected from clinical trials of RPL554 may not be sufficient to support the submission of an NDA in the United States, an MMA in the EU, or other comparable submission to obtain regulatory approval in other countries;
- the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may fail to approve the manufacturing processes or facilities of third-party manufacturers with which we contract for clinical and commercial supplies; and
- the approval policies or regulations of the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may significantly change in a manner rendering our clinical data insufficient for approval.

This lengthy approval process as well as the unpredictability of future clinical trial results may result in our failing to obtain regulatory approval to market RPL554. The FDA, the EMA and other regulatory authorities have substantial discretion in the approval process, and determining when or whether regulatory approval will be obtained for RPL554. Even if we believe the data collected from clinical trials of RPL554 are promising, such data may not be sufficient to support approval by the FDA, the EMA or any other regulatory authority.

In addition, even if we were to obtain approval for any jurisdiction, regulatory authorities may approve RPL554 for fewer or more limited indications than we request, may not approve the price we intend to charge for RPL554, may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials, or may approve RPL554 with a label that does not include the labeling claims necessary or desirable for the successful commercialization of RPL554. Any of the foregoing scenarios could materially harm the commercial prospects for RPL554.

**Even if RPL554 obtains regulatory approval, we will be subject to ongoing obligations and continued regulatory review, which may result in significant additional expense. Additionally, RPL554, if approved, could be subject to labeling and other restrictions and market withdrawal and we may be subject to penalties if we fail to comply with regulatory requirements or experience unanticipated problems with RPL554.**

If the FDA, the EMA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority approves RPL554, the manufacturing processes, labeling, packaging, distribution, adverse event reporting, storage, advertising, promotion and recordkeeping for RPL554 will be subject to extensive and ongoing regulatory requirements. These requirements include submissions of safety and other post-marketing information and reports, facility registration and drug listing, as well as continued compliance with cGMP requirements for the manufacture of RPL554 and GCP requirements for any clinical trials that we conduct post-approval, all of which may result in significant expense and limit our ability to commercialize RPL554. We and our contract manufacturers will also be subject to user fees and periodic inspection by the FDA, the EMA and other regulatory authorities to monitor compliance with these requirements and the terms of any product approval we may obtain. In addition, any regulatory approvals that we receive for RPL554 may also be subject to limitations on the approved indicated uses for which RPL554 may be marketed or to the conditions of approval, or contain requirements for potentially costly post-marketing testing, including Phase 4 clinical trials, and surveillance to monitor the safety and efficacy of RPL554.

If there are changes in the application of legislation or regulatory policies, or if problems are discovered with a product or the manufacture of RPL554, or if we or one of our distributors, licensees or co-marketers fails to comply with regulatory requirements, the regulators could take various actions. These include imposing fines on us, imposing restrictions on RPL554 or its manufacture and requiring us to recall or remove RPL554 from the market. The regulators could also suspend or withdraw our marketing authorizations, or require us to conduct additional clinical trials, change our product labeling or submit additional applications for marketing authorization. If any of these events occurs, our ability to sell RPL554 may be impaired, and we may incur substantial additional expense to comply with regulatory requirements.

**We may not be successful in our efforts to develop RPL554 for multiple indications, including CF or other respiratory diseases.**

Part of our strategy is to continue to develop RPL554 in indications other than COPD such as CF. Although our research and development efforts to date have suggested that RPL554 has the potential to treat CF, we may not be able to develop RPL554 in CF or any other disease, or development may not be successful. In addition, the potential use of RPL554 in other diseases may not be suitable for clinical development, including as a result of difficulties enrolling patients in any clinical studies we plan to initiate or the potential for harmful side effects or other characteristics that might suggest marketing approval and market acceptance are unlikely. If we do not continue to successfully develop and begin to commercialize RPL554 for multiple indications, we will face difficulty in obtaining product revenues in future periods, which could significantly harm our financial position.

**Even if we obtain marketing approval of RPL554 for any indication in a major pharmaceutical market such as the United States or EU, we may never obtain approval or commercialize RPL554 in other major markets, which would limit our ability to realize its full market potential.**

In order to market any products in a country or territory, we must establish and comply with numerous and varying regulatory requirements of such countries or territories regarding safety and efficacy. Clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries, and regulatory approval in one country does not mean that regulatory approval will be obtained in any other country. Approval procedures vary among countries and can involve additional product testing and validation and additional administrative review periods. Seeking regulatory approvals in all major markets could result in significant delays, difficulties and costs for us and may require additional pre-clinical studies or clinical trials which would be costly and time consuming. Regulatory requirements can vary widely from country to country and could delay or prevent the introduction of RPL554 in those countries. Satisfying these and other regulatory requirements is costly, time consuming, uncertain and subject to unanticipated delays. In addition, our failure to obtain regulatory approval in any country may delay or have negative effects on the process for regulatory approval in other countries. We currently do not have any product candidates approved for sale in any jurisdiction, whether in the EU, the United States or any other international markets, and we do not have experience in obtaining regulatory approval in international markets. If we fail to comply with regulatory requirements in international markets or to obtain and maintain required approvals, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of RPL554 will be compromised.

**Our employees and independent contractors, including principal investigators, consultants, vendors and collaboration partners may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements.**

We are exposed to the risk that our employees and independent contractors, including principal investigators, consultants, vendors and collaboration partners may engage in fraudulent conduct or other illegal activities. Misconduct by these parties could include intentional, reckless or negligent conduct or unauthorized activities that violate: (i) the laws and regulations of the FDA, EU rules and regulations and other similar regulatory requirements, including those laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to such authorities; (ii) manufacturing standards; (iii) federal and state data privacy,

## [Table of Contents](#)

security, fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations in the United States and abroad; or (iv) laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate financial information and data. Specifically, sales, marketing and business arrangements in the healthcare industry are subject to extensive laws and regulations intended to prevent fraud, misconduct, kickbacks, self-dealing and other abusive practices. These laws and regulations may restrict or prohibit a wide range of pricing, discounting, marketing and promotion, sales commission, customer incentive programs and other business arrangements. Activities subject to these laws could also involve the improper use or misrepresentation of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, creating fraudulent data in our pre-clinical studies or clinical trials or illegal misappropriation of drug product, which could result in regulatory sanctions and cause serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by employees and other third parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to comply with such laws or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person or government could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business and results of operations, including the imposition of significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, monetary fines, disgorgements, possible exclusion from participation in Medicare, Medicaid and other U.S. federal healthcare programs, individual imprisonment, other sanctions, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and future earnings, and curtailment of our operations.

**Interim "top-line" and preliminary data from our clinical trials that we announce or publish from time to time may change as more patient data become available and are subject to audit and verification procedures that could result in material changes in the final data.**

From time to time, we may publish interim "top-line" or preliminary data from our clinical studies. Interim data from clinical trials that we may complete are subject to the risk that one or more of the clinical outcomes may materially change as patient enrollment continues and more patient data become available. Preliminary or "top-line" data also remain subject to audit and verification procedures that may result in the final data being materially different from the preliminary data we previously published. As a result, interim and preliminary data should be viewed with caution until the final data are available. Adverse differences between preliminary or interim data and final data could significantly harm our business prospects.

### **Risks Related to Healthcare Laws and Other Legal Compliance Matters**

**Enacted and future legislation may increase the difficulty and cost for us to obtain marketing approval of and commercialize RPL554 and may affect the prices we may set.**

In the United States, the EU and other foreign jurisdictions, there have been, and we expect there will continue to be, a number of legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes to the healthcare system that could affect our future results of operations. In particular, there have been and continue to be a number of initiatives at the United States federal and state levels that seek to reduce healthcare costs and improve the quality of healthcare. For example, in March 2010, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act, or collectively the ACA, was enacted, which substantially changes the way healthcare is financed by both governmental and private insurers. Among the provisions of the ACA, those of greatest importance to the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries include the following:

- an annual, non-deductible fee payable by any entity that manufactures or imports certain branded prescription drugs and biologic agents, which is apportioned among these entities according to their market share in certain government healthcare programs;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must agree to offer 50% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries during their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D;
- new requirements to report certain financial arrangements with physicians and certain others, including reporting "transfers of value" made or distributed to prescribers and other healthcare providers and reporting investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members;
- an increase in the statutory minimum rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to 23.1% and 13.0% of the average manufacturer price for branded and generic drugs, respectively;
- a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected;
- extension of a manufacturer's Medicaid rebate liability to covered drugs dispensed to individuals who are enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs by, among other things, allowing states to offer Medicaid coverage to certain individuals with income at or below 133% of the federal poverty level, thereby potentially increasing a manufacturer's Medicaid rebate liability;
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research;
- creation of the Independent Payment Advisory Board, which, once empaneled, will have the authority to recommend certain changes to the Medicare program that could result in reduced payments for prescription drugs and those recommendations could have the effect of law unless overruled by a supermajority vote of Congress; and
- establishment of a Center for Medicare Innovation at the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending, potentially including prescription drug spending.

Since its enactment, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the ACA, and we expect there will be additional challenges and amendments to the ACA in the future. The new Presidential Administration and U.S. Congress will likely continue to seek to modify, repeal, or otherwise invalidate all, or certain provisions of, the ACA. It is uncertain the extent to which any such changes may impact our business or financial condition.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the ACA was enacted. On August 2, 2011, the Budget Control Act of 2011, among other things, created measures for spending reductions by Congress. A Joint Select Committee on Deficit Reduction, tasked with recommending a targeted deficit reduction of at least \$1.2 trillion for the years 2013 through 2021, was unable to reach required goals, thereby triggering the legislation's automatic reduction to several government programs. This includes aggregate reductions of Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year. These reductions went into effect on April 1, 2013 and, due to subsequent legislative amendments to the statute, will remain in effect through 2025 unless additional action is taken by Congress. On January 2, 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. These new laws may result in additional reductions in Medicare and other health care funding, which could have a material adverse effect on our customers and accordingly, our financial operations.

Moreover, payment methodologies may be subject to changes in healthcare legislation and regulatory initiatives. For example, CMS may develop new payment and delivery models, such as bundled payment models. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, has set a goal of moving 30% of

## [Table of Contents](#)

Medicare payments to alternative payment models by 2016 and 50% of Medicare payments into these alternative payment models by the end of 2018. In addition, recently there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products. We expect that additional U.S. federal healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that the U.S. federal government will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in reduced demand for RPL554 or additional pricing pressures.

Individual states in the United States have also become increasingly aggressive in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. Legally mandated price controls on payment amounts by third-party payors or other restrictions could harm our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects. In addition, regional healthcare authorities and individual hospitals are increasingly using bidding procedures to determine what pharmaceutical products and which suppliers will be included in their prescription drug and other healthcare programs. This could reduce the ultimate demand for RPL554 or put pressure on our product pricing.

In the EU, similar political, economic and regulatory developments may affect our ability to profitably commercialize RPL554, if approved. In addition to continuing pressure on prices and cost containment measures, legislative developments at the EU or member state level may result in significant additional requirements or obstacles that may increase our operating costs. The delivery of healthcare in the EU, including the establishment and operation of health services and the pricing and reimbursement of medicines, is almost exclusively a matter for national, rather than EU, law and policy. National governments and health service providers have different priorities and approaches to the delivery of health care and the pricing and reimbursement of products in that context. In general, however, the healthcare budgetary constraints in most EU member states have resulted in restrictions on the pricing and reimbursement of medicines by relevant health service providers. Coupled with ever-increasing EU and national regulatory burdens on those wishing to develop and market products, this could prevent or delay marketing approval of RPL554, restrict or regulate post-approval activities and affect our ability to commercialize RPL554, if approved. In international markets, reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly by country, and many countries have instituted price ceilings on specific products and therapies.

We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of government regulation that may arise from future legislation or administrative action, either in the United States or abroad. If we or our collaborators are slow or unable to adapt to changes in existing requirements or the adoption of new requirements or policies, or if we or our collaborators are not able to maintain regulatory compliance, RPL554 may lose any regulatory approval that may have been obtained and we may not achieve or sustain profitability.

### **Our business operations and current and future relationships with investigators, health care professionals, consultants, third-party payors and customers will be subject to applicable healthcare regulatory laws, which could expose us to penalties.**

Our business operations and current and future arrangements with investigators, healthcare professionals, consultants, third-party payors and customers, may expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations. These laws may constrain the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we conduct our operations, including how we research, market, sell and distribute RPL554, if approved. Such laws include:

- the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons or entities from knowingly and willfully soliciting, offering, receiving or providing any remuneration (including any kickback, bribe, or certain rebate), directly or indirectly, overtly or covertly, in cash or in kind, to induce or reward, or in return for, either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, lease, order or recommendation of, any good, facility, item or service, for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under U.S. federal and state healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid. A

## [Table of Contents](#)

person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation;

- the U.S. federal false claims and civil monetary penalties laws, including the civil False Claims Act, which, among other things, impose criminal and civil penalties, including through civil whistleblower or qui tam actions, against individuals or entities for knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the U.S. federal government, claims for payment or approval that are false or fraudulent, knowingly making, using or causing to be made or used, a false record or statement material to a false or fraudulent claim, or from knowingly making a false statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the U.S. federal government. In addition, the government may assert that a claim including items and services resulting from a violation of the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act;
- the U.S. federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, which imposes criminal and civil liability for, among other things, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, or knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false statement, in connection with the delivery of, or payment for, healthcare benefits, items or services; similar to the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act of 2009, or HITECH, and its implementing regulations, which also imposes certain obligations, including mandatory contractual terms, with respect to safeguarding the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information without appropriate authorization by covered entities subject to the rule, such as health plans, healthcare clearinghouses and healthcare providers as well as their business associates that perform certain services involving the use or disclosure of individually identifiable health information;
- the U.S. federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, which prohibits, among other things, the adulteration or misbranding of drugs, biologics and medical devices;
- the U.S. federal legislation commonly referred to as Physician Payments Sunshine Act, enacted as part of the ACA, and its implementing regulations, which requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics and medical supplies that are reimbursable under Medicare, Medicaid, or the Children's Health Insurance Program to report annually to the government information related to certain payments and other transfers of value to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by the physicians described above and their immediate family members;
- analogous state laws and regulations, including: state anti-kickback and false claims laws, which may apply to our business practices, including but not limited to, research, distribution, sales and marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including private insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the U.S. federal government, or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources; state laws and regulations that require drug manufacturers to file reports relating to pricing and marketing information, which requires tracking gifts and other remuneration and items of value provided to healthcare professionals and entities; and state laws governing the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not preempted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts; and
- European and other foreign law equivalents of each of the laws, including reporting requirements detailing interactions with and payments to healthcare providers.

Ensuring that our internal operations and future business arrangements with third parties comply with applicable healthcare laws and regulations will involve substantial costs. It is possible that governmental authorities will conclude that our business practices do not comply with current or future statutes,

## [Table of Contents](#)

regulations, agency guidance or case law involving applicable fraud and abuse or other healthcare laws and regulations. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other governmental laws and regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant penalties, including civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, fines, exclusion from U.S. government funded healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, or similar programs in other countries or jurisdictions, disgorgement, individual imprisonment, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations. If any of the physicians or other providers or entities with whom we expect to do business are found to not be in compliance with applicable laws, they may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from government funded healthcare programs and imprisonment, which could affect our ability to operate our business. Further, defending against any such actions can be costly, time-consuming and may require significant personnel resources. Therefore, even if we are successful in defending against any such actions that may be brought against us, our business may be impaired.

### **We are subject to environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, and we may become exposed to liability and substantial expenses in connection with environmental compliance or remediation activities.**

Our operations, including our research, development, testing and manufacturing activities, are subject to numerous environmental, health and safety laws and regulations. These laws and regulations govern, among other things, the controlled use, handling, release and disposal of and the maintenance of a registry for, hazardous materials and biological materials, such as chemical solvents, human cells, carcinogenic compounds, mutagenic compounds and compounds that have a toxic effect on reproduction, laboratory procedures and exposure to blood-borne pathogens. If we fail to comply with such laws and regulations, we could be subject to fines or other sanctions.

As with other companies engaged in activities similar to ours, we face a risk of environmental liability inherent in our current and historical activities, including liability relating to releases of or exposure to hazardous or biological materials. Environmental, health and safety laws and regulations are becoming more stringent. We may be required to incur substantial expenses in connection with future environmental compliance or remediation activities, in which case, our production and development efforts may be interrupted or delayed.

### **We are subject to anti-corruption laws, as well as export control laws, customs laws, sanctions laws and other laws governing our operations. If we fail to comply with these laws, we could be subject to civil or criminal penalties, other remedial measures and legal expenses.**

Our operations are subject to anti-corruption laws, including the U.K. Bribery Act 2010, or Bribery Act, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, or FCPA, and other anti-corruption laws that apply in countries where we do business and may do business in the future. The Bribery Act, FCPA and these other laws generally prohibit us, our officers and our employees and intermediaries from bribing, being bribed or making other prohibited payments to government officials or other persons to obtain or retain business or gain some other business advantage. We may in the future operate in jurisdictions that pose a high risk of potential Bribery Act or FCPA violations, and we may participate in collaborations and relationships with third parties whose actions could potentially subject us to liability under the Bribery Act, FCPA or local anti-corruption laws. In addition, we cannot predict the nature, scope or effect of future regulatory requirements to which any of our international operations might be subject or the manner in which existing laws might be administered or interpreted.

We also are subject to other laws and regulations governing any international operations, including regulations administered by the governments of the United Kingdom and the United States, and authorities in the EU, including applicable export control regulations, economic sanctions on countries and persons, customs requirements and currency exchange regulations, or, collectively, the Trade Control laws.

## [Table of Contents](#)

There is no assurance that we will be completely effective in ensuring our compliance with all applicable anti-corruption laws, including the Bribery Act, the FCPA or other legal requirements, including Trade Control laws. If we are not in compliance with the Bribery Act, the FCPA and other anti-corruption laws or Trade Control laws, we may be subject to criminal and civil penalties, disgorgement and other sanctions and remedial measures and legal expenses. Any investigation of any potential violations of the Bribery Act, the FCPA, other anti-corruption laws or Trade Control laws by U.K., U.S. or other authorities, even if it is ultimately determined that we did not violate such laws, could be costly and time-consuming, require significant personnel resources and harm our reputation.

We will seek to build and continuously improve our systems of internal controls and to remedy any weaknesses identified. There can be no assurance, however, that the policies and procedures will be followed at all times or effectively detect and prevent violations of the applicable laws by one or more of our employees, consultants, agents or collaborators and, as a result, we could be subject to fines, penalties or prosecution.

### **Risks Related to Commercialization**

#### **We operate in a highly competitive and rapidly changing industry, which may result in others discovering, developing or commercializing competing products before or more successfully than we do.**

The biopharmaceutical and pharmaceutical industries are highly competitive and subject to significant and rapid technological change. Our success is highly dependent on our ability to discover, develop and obtain marketing approval for new products on a cost-effective basis and to market them successfully. If RPL554 is approved for any indication, we will face intense competition from a variety of businesses, including large, fully integrated pharmaceutical companies, specialty pharmaceutical companies and biopharmaceutical companies, academic institutions, government agencies and other private and public research institutions in Europe, the United States and other jurisdictions. These organizations may have significantly greater resources than we do and conduct similar research, seek patent protection and establish collaborative arrangements for research, development, manufacturing and marketing of products that may compete with RPL554.

Given the number of products already on the market to treat COPD and CF, we expect to face intense competition if RPL554 is approved for these indications. Boehringer Ingelheim, GlaxoSmithKline, AstraZeneca, Mylan, Novartis, Vertex and Sunovion currently have treatments on the market for COPD and CF, and we anticipate that new companies will enter these markets in the future. If we successfully develop and commercialize RPL554, it will compete with existing therapies and new therapies that may become available in the future. The highly competitive nature of and rapid technological changes in the biopharmaceutical and pharmaceutical industries could render RPL554 obsolete, less competitive or uneconomical. Our competitors may, among other things:

- have significantly greater name recognition, financial, manufacturing, marketing, drug development, technical and human resources than we do, and future mergers and acquisitions in the biopharmaceutical and pharmaceutical industries may result in even more resources being concentrated in our competitors;
- develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, less expensive, more convenient or easier to administer, or have fewer or less severe effects;
- obtain quicker regulatory approval;
- establish superior proprietary positions covering our products and technologies;
- implement more effective approaches to sales and marketing; or
- form more advantageous strategic alliances.

Smaller and other early stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These third parties compete with us in

## [Table of Contents](#)

recruiting and retaining qualified scientific and management personnel, establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration and competing for other customers, for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs. In addition, our collaborators, if any, may decide to market and sell products that compete with RPL554. Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are more effective, have fewer or less severe side effects, are more convenient or are less expensive than RPL554. Our competitors may also obtain FDA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing or strengthening their market position before we are able to enter the market.

**We may be unable to obtain orphan drug designation from the FDA for RPL554 for the treatment of CF, and even if we do obtain such designations, we may be unable to obtain or maintain the benefits associated with orphan drug designation, including the potential for orphan drug exclusivity.**

Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may designate a product as an orphan drug if it is intended to treat a rare disease or condition, defined as one occurring in a patient population of fewer than 200,000 in the United States, or a patient population greater than 200,000 in the United States where there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing the drug will be recovered from sales in the United States. In the EU, the EMA's Committee for Orphan Medicinal Products, or COMP, grants orphan drug designation to promote the development of products that are intended for the diagnosis, prevention or treatment of a life-threatening or chronically debilitating condition affecting not more than five in 10,000 persons in the EU. Additionally, designation is granted for products intended for the diagnosis, prevention or treatment of a life-threatening, seriously debilitating or serious and chronic condition when, without incentives, it is unlikely that sales of the drug in the EU would be sufficient to justify the necessary investment in developing the drug or biological product or where there is no satisfactory method of diagnosis, prevention or treatment, or, if such a method exists, the medicine must be of significant benefit to those affected by the condition.

In the United States, orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as opportunities for grant funding towards clinical trial costs, tax credits for qualified clinical testing and user-fee waivers. In addition, if a product receives the first FDA approval of that drug for the indication for which it has orphan designation, the product is entitled to orphan drug exclusivity, which means the FDA may not approve any other application to market the same drug for the same indication for a period of seven years, except in limited circumstances, such as a showing of clinical superiority over the product with orphan exclusivity or where the manufacturer is unable to assure the availability of sufficient quantities of the orphan drug to meet the needs of patients with the rare disease or condition. Under the FDA's regulations, the FDA will deny orphan drug exclusivity to a designated drug upon approval if the FDA has already approved another drug with the same active ingredient for the same indication, unless the drug is demonstrated to be clinically superior to the previously approved drug. In the EU, orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as reduction of fees or fee waivers and ten years of market exclusivity following approval. This period may be reduced to six years if the orphan drug designation criteria are no longer met, including where it is shown that the product is sufficiently profitable not to justify maintenance of market exclusivity.

We plan to seek orphan drug designation from the FDA and the EMA for RPL554 for the treatment of CF. Even if we are able to obtain orphan designation for RPL554 in the United States and/or the EU, we may not be the first to obtain marketing approval for any particular orphan indication due to the uncertainties associated with developing pharmaceutical products, which could prevent us from marketing RPL554 if another company is able to obtain orphan drug exclusivity before we do. In addition, exclusive marketing rights in the United States may be unavailable if we seek approval for an indication broader than the orphan-designated indication or may be lost if the FDA later determines that the request for designation was materially defective or if we are unable to assure sufficient quantities of the product to meet the needs of

patients with the rare disease or condition following approval. Further, even if we obtain orphan drug exclusivity for RPL554, that exclusivity may not effectively protect RPL554 from competition because different drugs with different active moieties can be approved for the same condition. In addition, the FDA or the EMA can subsequently approve products with the same active moiety for the same condition if the FDA or the EMA concludes that the later drug is safer, more effective, or makes a major contribution to patient care. Orphan drug designation neither shortens the development time or regulatory review time of a drug nor gives the drug any advantage in the regulatory review or approval process. In addition, while we intend to seek orphan drug designation for RPL554 for the treatment of CF, we may never receive such designations.

There have been legal challenges to aspects of the FDA's regulations and policies concerning the exclusivity provisions of the Orphan Drug Act, and future challenges could lead to changes that affect the protections afforded our products in ways that are difficult to predict. In 2014, a U.S. district court invalidated the FDA's denial of orphan exclusivity to an orphan designated drug, which the FDA had based on its determination that the drug was not proven to be clinically superior to a previously approved "same drug." In response to the decision, the FDA released a policy statement stating that the court's decision is limited just to the facts of that particular case and that the FDA will continue to deny orphan drug exclusivity to a designated drug upon approval if the drug is the "same" as a previously approved drug, unless the drug is demonstrated to be clinically superior to that previously approved drug. In April 2016, another similar legal challenge was initiated against the FDA for its denial of orphan drug exclusivity to another designated drug. In the future, there is the potential for additional legal challenges to the FDA's orphan drug regulations and policies, and it is uncertain how ongoing and future challenges might affect our business.

**The successful commercialization of RPL554 will depend in part on the extent to which governmental authorities and health insurers establish adequate coverage, reimbursement levels and pricing policies. Failure to obtain or maintain adequate coverage and reimbursement for RPL554, if approved, could limit our ability to market those products and decrease our ability to generate revenue.**

The availability and adequacy of coverage and reimbursement by governmental healthcare programs such as Medicare and Medicaid, private health insurers and other third-party payors are essential for most patients to be able to afford prescription medications such as RPL554, assuming approval. Our ability to achieve acceptable levels of coverage and reimbursement for products by governmental authorities, private health insurers and other organizations will have an effect on our ability to successfully commercialize RPL554. Assuming we obtain coverage for RPL554 by a third-party payor, the resulting reimbursement payment rates may not be adequate or may require co-payments that patients find unacceptably high. We cannot be sure that coverage and reimbursement in the United States, the EU or elsewhere will be available for RPL554 or any product that we may develop, and any reimbursement that may become available may be decreased or eliminated in the future.

Third-party payors increasingly are challenging prices charged for pharmaceutical products and services, and many third-party payors may refuse to provide coverage and reimbursement for particular drugs when an equivalent generic drug or a less expensive therapy is available. It is possible that a third-party payor may consider RPL554 as substitutable and only offer to reimburse patients for the less expensive product. Even if we show improved efficacy or improved convenience of administration with RPL554, pricing of existing drugs may limit the amount we will be able to charge for RPL554. These payors may deny or revoke the reimbursement status of a given product or establish prices for new or existing marketed products at levels that are too low to enable us to realize an appropriate return on our investment in RPL554. If reimbursement is not available or is available only at limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize RPL554, and may not be able to obtain a satisfactory financial return on RPL554.

There is significant uncertainty related to the insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly approved products. In the United States, third-party payors, including private and governmental payors, such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs, play an important role in determining the extent to which new drugs and

## [Table of Contents](#)

biologics will be covered. The Medicare and Medicaid programs increasingly are used as models for how private payors and other governmental payors develop their coverage and reimbursement policies for drugs and biologics. Some third-party payors may require pre-approval of coverage for new or innovative devices or drug therapies before they will reimburse health care providers who use such therapies. It is difficult to predict at this time what third-party payors will decide with respect to the coverage and reimbursement for RPL554.

Obtaining and maintaining reimbursement status is time-consuming and costly. No uniform policy for coverage and reimbursement for products exists among third-party payors in the United States. Therefore, coverage and reimbursement for products can differ significantly from payor to payor. As a result, the coverage determination process is often a time-consuming and costly process that will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of RPL554 to each payor separately, with no assurance that coverage and adequate reimbursement will be applied consistently or obtained in the first instance. Furthermore, rules and regulations regarding reimbursement change frequently, in some cases at short notice, and we believe that changes in these rules and regulations are likely.

Outside the United States, international operations are generally subject to extensive governmental price controls and other market regulations, and we believe the increasing emphasis on cost-containment initiatives in Europe and other countries has and will continue to put pressure on the pricing and usage of RPL554. In many countries, the prices of medical products are subject to varying price control mechanisms as part of national health systems. Other countries allow companies to fix their own prices for medical products, but monitor and control company profits. Additional foreign price controls or other changes in pricing regulation could restrict the amount that we are able to charge for RPL554. Accordingly, in markets outside the United States, the reimbursement for RPL554 may be reduced compared with the United States and may be insufficient to generate commercially reasonable revenue and profits.

Moreover, increasing efforts by governmental and third-party payors in the United States and abroad to cap or reduce healthcare costs may cause such organizations to limit both coverage and the level of reimbursement for newly approved products and, as a result, they may not cover or provide adequate payment for RPL554. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of RPL554 due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations and additional legislative changes. The downward pressure on healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription drugs and surgical procedures and other treatments, has become very intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products.

### **RPL554 may not gain market acceptance, in which case our ability to generate product revenues will be compromised.**

Even if the FDA, the EMA or any other regulatory authority approves the marketing of RPL554, whether developed on our own or with a collaborator, physicians, healthcare providers, patients or the medical community may not accept or use RPL554. If RPL554 does not achieve an adequate level of acceptance, we may not generate significant product revenues or any profits from operations. The degree of market acceptance of RPL554 will depend on a variety of factors, including:

- the timing of market introduction;
- the number and clinical profile of competing products;
- the clinical indications for which RPL554 is approved;
- our ability to provide acceptable evidence of safety and efficacy;
- the prevalence and severity of any side effects;
- relative convenience and ease of administration;
- cost-effectiveness;
- marketing and distribution support;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- availability of adequate coverage, reimbursement and adequate payment from health maintenance organizations and other insurers, both public and private; and
- other potential advantages over alternative treatment methods.

If RPL554 fails to gain market acceptance, this will adversely impact on our ability to generate revenues. Even if RPL554 achieves market acceptance, the market may prove not to be large enough to allow us to generate significant revenues.

**We currently have no marketing, sales or distribution infrastructure. If we are unable to develop sales, marketing and distribution capabilities on our own or through collaborations, we may not be successful in commercializing RPL554.**

We have no marketing, sales or distribution capabilities and we have no experience with marketing, selling or distributing pharmaceutical products. If RPL554 is approved, we intend either to establish a sales and marketing organization with technical expertise and supporting distribution capabilities to commercialize RPL554, or to outsource this function to a third party. Either of these options would be expensive and time-consuming. Some or all of these costs may be incurred in advance of any approval of RPL554. In addition, we may not be able to hire a sales force that is sufficient in size or has adequate expertise in the medical markets that we intend to target. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities would adversely impact the commercialization of RPL554.

To the extent that we enter into collaboration agreements with respect to marketing, sales or distribution, our product revenue may be lower than if we directly marketed or sold RPL554, if approved. In addition, any revenue we receive will depend in whole or in part upon the efforts of these third-party collaborators, which may not be successful and are generally not within our control. If we are unable to enter into these arrangements on acceptable terms or at all, we may not be able to successfully commercialize RPL554. If we are not successful in commercializing RPL554, either on our own or through collaborations with one or more third parties, our future product revenue will suffer and we may incur significant additional losses.

### **Risks Related to Our Dependence on Third Parties**

**We rely, and expect to continue to rely, on third parties, including independent clinical investigators and CROs, to conduct our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or meet expected deadlines, we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for or commercialize RPL554 and our business could be substantially harmed.**

We have relied upon and plan to continue to rely upon third parties, including independent clinical investigators and third-party CROs, to conduct our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials and to monitor and manage data for our ongoing pre-clinical and clinical programs. We rely on these parties for execution of our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, and control only certain aspects of their activities. Nevertheless, we are responsible for ensuring that each of our studies and trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol and legal, regulatory and scientific standards, and our reliance on these third parties does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. We and our third-party contractors and CROs are required to comply with GCP requirements, which are regulations and guidelines enforced by the FDA, the Competent Authorities of the Member States of the European Economic Area, or EEA, and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for all of our products in clinical development. Regulatory authorities enforce these GCP requirements through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and trial sites. If we fail to exercise adequate oversight over any of our CROs or if we or any of our CROs fail to comply with applicable GCP requirements, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA, the EMA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require us to perform additional clinical trials before approving our marketing applications. We cannot assure you that upon a regulatory inspection of us or our CROs or other third parties performing services in connection with our clinical trials, such regulatory authority will determine that any of our clinical trials complies with GCP regulations. In addition, our clinical trials must be conducted with product produced under applicable

## [Table of Contents](#)

cGMP regulations. Our failure to comply with these regulations may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

Further, these investigators and CROs are not our employees and we will not be able to control, other than by contract, the amount of resources, including time, which they devote to RPL554 and clinical trials. If independent investigators or CROs fail to devote sufficient resources to the development of RPL554, or if their performance is substandard, it may delay or compromise the prospects for approval and commercialization of RPL554. In addition, the use of third-party service providers requires us to disclose our proprietary information to these parties, which could increase the risk that this information will be misappropriated.

Our existing and future CROs have or may have the right to terminate their agreements with us in the event of an uncured material breach. In addition, some of our CROs have an ability to terminate their respective agreements with us if it can be reasonably demonstrated that the safety of the subjects participating in our clinical trials warrants such termination, if we make a general assignment for the benefit of our creditors or if we are liquidated.

If any of our relationships with these third-party CROs terminate, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative CROs or to do so on commercially reasonable terms. If CROs do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations or meet expected deadlines, if they need to be replaced or if the quality or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols, regulatory requirements or for other reasons, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed or terminated and we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for or successfully commercialize RPL554. As a result, our results of operations and the commercial prospects for RPL554 would be harmed, our costs could increase and our ability to generate revenues could be delayed.

Switching or adding additional CROs involves additional cost and requires management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new CRO commences work. As a result, delays could occur, which could materially impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines.

### **If we fail to enter into new strategic relationships for RPL554, our business, research and development and commercialization prospects could be adversely affected.**

Our development program for RPL554 and the potential commercialization of RPL554 will require substantial additional cash to fund expenses. Therefore, we may decide to enter into collaborations with pharmaceutical or biopharmaceutical companies for the development and potential commercialization of RPL554. For example, we may seek a collaborator for development of a DPI or MDI formulation of RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD and potentially asthma and other respiratory diseases.

We face significant competition in seeking appropriate collaborators. Collaborations are complex and time-consuming to negotiate and document. We may also be restricted under existing and future collaboration agreements from entering into agreements on certain terms with other potential collaborators. We may not be able to negotiate collaborations on acceptable terms, or at all. If that were to occur, we may have to curtail the development of RPL554, reduce or delay its development program, delay its potential commercialization or reduce the scope of our sales or marketing activities, or increase our expenditures and undertake development or commercialization activities at our own expense. If we elect to increase our expenditures to fund development or commercialization activities on our own, we may need to obtain additional capital, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms or at all. If we do not have sufficient funds, we will not be able to bring RPL554 to market and generate product revenue. If we do enter into a collaboration agreement, we could be subject to the following risks, among others:

- we may not be able to control the amount and timing of resources that the collaborator devotes to the development of RPL554;
- the collaborator may experience financial difficulties;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- we may be required to relinquish important rights such as marketing, distribution and intellectual property rights;
- a collaborator could move forward with a competing product developed either independently or in collaboration with third parties, including our competitors;
- business combinations or significant changes in a collaborator's business strategy may adversely affect our willingness to complete our obligations under any arrangement; or
- the collaboration may not provide sufficient funds to be profitable for us after we fulfill our payment obligations under our agreement with Vernalis Development Limited, or Vernalis.

**We currently rely on third-party manufacturers and suppliers for production of RPL554. Our dependence on these third parties may impair the advancement of our research and development programs and the development of RPL554. Moreover, we intend to rely on third parties to produce commercial supplies of RPL554, if approved, and commercialization could be stopped, delayed or made less profitable if those third parties fail to obtain approval of the FDA or comparable regulatory authorities, fail to provide us with sufficient quantities of product or fail to do so at acceptable quality levels or prices or fail to otherwise complete their duties in compliance with their obligations to us or other parties.**

We have limited personnel with experience in manufacturing, and we do not own facilities for manufacturing RPL554. Instead, we rely on and expect to continue to rely on third-party contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, for the supply of cGMP-grade clinical trial materials and commercial quantities of RPL554, if approved. While we may contract with other CMOs in the future, we currently contract with only one pharmaceuticals CMO for the manufacture of RPL554 drug substance. For RPL554 drug product in our new nebulized suspension formulation, we currently have two CMOs. Reliance on third-party suppliers for RPL554 may expose us to more risk than if we were to manufacture RPL554 ourselves. The facilities used to manufacture RPL554 must be approved by the FDA pursuant to inspections that will be conducted after we submit an NDA to the FDA, and by comparable foreign regulatory authorities for approvals outside the United States. While we provide sponsor oversight of manufacturing activities, we do not and will not control the manufacturing process of, and are or will be essentially dependent on, our CMOs for compliance with cGMP requirements for the manufacture of RPL554. If a CMO cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the regulatory requirements of the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority, it will not be able to secure or maintain regulatory approval for its manufacturing facilities. In addition, we have very little control over the ability of a CMO to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of RPL554 or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would delay our development program and significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market RPL554, if approved. In addition, any failure to achieve and maintain compliance with these laws, regulations and standards could subject us to the risk that we may have to suspend the manufacturing of RPL554 or that obtained approvals could be revoked. Furthermore, third-party providers may breach existing agreements they have with us because of factors beyond our control. They may also terminate or refuse to renew their agreement because of their own financial difficulties or business priorities, at a time that is costly or otherwise inconvenient for us. If we were unable to find an adequate replacement or another acceptable solution in time, our clinical trials could be delayed or our commercial activities could be harmed. In addition, the fact that we are dependent on our suppliers, CMOs and other third parties for the manufacture, storage and distribution of RPL554 means that we are subject to the risk that RPL554 may have manufacturing defects that we have limited ability to prevent or control.

We rely on and will continue to rely on CMOs to purchase from third-party suppliers the materials necessary to produce RPL554 for our clinical trials. There are a limited number of suppliers for raw materials that we may use to manufacture RPL554 and there may be a need to assess alternate suppliers to prevent a possible disruption of the manufacture of the materials necessary to produce RPL554 for our clinical trials, and if approved, ultimately for commercial sale. Any disruption in our relationship with our current CMOs

could have a material impact on our ability to continue our clinical development of RPL554. We do not and will not have any control over the process or timing of the acquisition of these raw materials by any CMO. Moreover, we currently do not have any agreements for the commercial production of these raw materials. Supplies of raw material could be interrupted from time to time and, if interrupted, we cannot be certain that alternative supplies could be obtained within a reasonable timeframe, at an acceptable cost, or at all. Although we generally do not begin a clinical trial unless we believe we have on hand, or will be able to obtain, a sufficient supply of RPL554 to complete the clinical trial, any significant delay in the supply of RPL554, or the raw material components needed to produce RPL554, for an ongoing clinical trial due to the need to replace our CMO or a third-party supplier could considerably delay completion of our clinical trials, product testing and potential regulatory approval of RPL554. If our CMO or we are unable to purchase these raw materials after regulatory approval has been obtained for RPL554, the commercial launch of RPL554 would be delayed or there would be a shortage in supply, which would impair our ability to generate revenues from the sale of RPL554. In addition, growth in the costs and expenses of raw materials may impair our ability to cost-effectively manufacture RPL554.

We rely and will rely on CMOs and third-party suppliers to comply with and respect the proprietary rights of others in conducting their contractual obligations for us. If a CMO or third-party suppliers fail to acquire the proper licenses or otherwise infringe third-party proprietary rights in the course of providing services to us, we may have to find alternative CMOs or third-party suppliers, or defend against claims of infringement, either of which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market RPL554, if approved.

#### **Risks Related to Intellectual Property and Information Technology**

**We rely on patents and other intellectual property rights to protect RPL554, the enforcement, defense and maintenance of which may be challenging and costly. Failure to enforce or protect these rights adequately could harm our ability to compete and impair our business.**

Our commercial success depends in part on obtaining and maintaining patents and other forms of intellectual property rights for RPL554, formulations of RPL554, polymorphs, salts and analogs of RPL554, methods used to manufacture RPL554, methods for manufacturing of final drug product for different inhalation devices such as nebulizer, DPI, MDI, and the methods for treating patients with respiratory diseases using RPL554 alone or in combination with other available products, or on in-licensing such rights. Our RPL554 development program relies on the patents and patent applications assigned and know-how licensed from Vernalis Development Limited, or Vernalis. The registrations of the assignment of each of these patents and patent applications with the relevant authorities in certain jurisdictions in which the patent and patent applications are registered have been granted, but there is no assurance that any additional registrations will be effected in a timely manner or at all. Failure to protect or to obtain, maintain or extend adequate patent and other intellectual property rights could adversely affect our ability to develop and market RPL554.

The patent prosecution process is expensive and time-consuming, and we or our licensors, licensees or collaborators may not be able to prepare, file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost or in a timely manner or in all jurisdictions. It is also possible that we or our licensors, licensees or collaborators will fail to identify patentable aspects of inventions made in the course of development and commercialization activities before it is too late to obtain patent protection on them. Moreover, depending on the terms of any future in-licenses to which we may become a party, in some circumstances we may not have the right to control the preparation, filing and prosecution of patent applications, or to maintain the patents, covering technology in-licensed from third parties. Therefore, these patents and applications may not be prosecuted and enforced in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. Further, the issuance, scope, validity, enforceability and commercial value of our and our current or future licensors', licensees' or collaborators' patent rights are highly uncertain. Our and our licensors' pending and future patent applications may not result in patents being issued which protect our

technology or products, in whole or in part, or which effectively prevent others from commercializing competitive technologies and products. The patent examination process may require us or our licensors, licensees or collaborators to narrow the scope of the claims of our or our licensors', licensees' or collaborators' pending and future patent applications, which may limit the scope of patent protection that may be obtained. We cannot assure you that all of the potentially relevant prior art relating to our patents and patent applications has been found. If such prior art exists, it can invalidate a patent or prevent a patent from issuing from a pending patent application. Even if patents do successfully issue and even if such patents cover our RPL554, third parties may initiate an opposition, interference, re-examination, post-grant review, inter partes review, nullification or derivation action in court or before patent offices, or similar proceedings challenging the validity, enforceability or scope of such patents, which may result in the patent claims being narrowed or invalidated. Our and our licensors', licensees' or collaborators' patent applications cannot be enforced against third parties practicing the technology claimed in such applications unless and until a patent issues from such applications, and then only to the extent the issued claims cover the technology.

Because patent applications are confidential for a period of time after filing, and some remain so until issued, we cannot be certain that we or our licensors were the first to file any patent application related to RPL554. Furthermore, if third parties have filed such patent applications on or before March 15, 2013, the date on which the U.S. patent filing system changed from a first-to-invent to a first-to-file standard, an interference proceeding can be initiated by such third parties to determine who was the first to invent any of the subject matter covered by the patent claims of our applications. If third parties have filed such applications after March 15, 2013, a derivation proceeding can be initiated by such third parties to determine whether our invention was derived from theirs. Even where we have a valid and enforceable patent, we may not be able to exclude others from practicing our invention where the other party can show that they used the invention in commerce before our filing date or the other party benefits from a compulsory license.

**We may not identify relevant third-party patents or may incorrectly interpret the relevance, scope or expiration of a third-party patent which might adversely affect our ability to develop, manufacture and market RPL554.**

We cannot guarantee that any of our or our licensors' patent searches or analyses, including but not limited to the identification of relevant patents, the scope of patent claims or the expiration of relevant patents, are complete or thorough, nor can we be certain that we have identified each and every third-party patent and pending application in the United States and abroad that is relevant to or necessary for the commercialization of RPL554 in any jurisdiction. For example, U.S. applications filed before November 29, 2000 and certain U.S. applications filed after that date that will not be filed outside the United States remain confidential until patents issue. Patent applications in the United States and elsewhere are published approximately 18 months after the earliest filing for which priority is claimed, with such earliest filing date being commonly referred to as the priority date. Therefore, patent applications covering RPL554 could have been filed by others without our knowledge. Additionally, pending patent applications that have been published can, subject to certain limitations, be later amended in a manner that could cover RPL554 or the use of RPL554. The scope of a patent claim is determined by an interpretation of the law, the written disclosure in a patent and the patent's prosecution history. Our interpretation of the relevance or the scope of a patent or a pending application may be incorrect, which may negatively impact our ability to market RPL554. We may incorrectly determine that RPL554 is not covered by a third-party patent or may incorrectly predict whether a third party's pending application will issue with claims of relevant scope. Our determination of the expiration date of any patent in the United States or abroad that we consider relevant may be incorrect, which may negatively impact our ability to develop and market RPL554. Our failure to identify and correctly interpret relevant patents may negatively impact our ability to develop and market RPL554.

## [Table of Contents](#)

If we fail to identify and correctly interpret relevant patents, we may be subject to infringement claims. We cannot guarantee that we will be able to successfully settle or otherwise resolve such infringement claims. If we fail in any such dispute, in addition to being forced to pay damages, we may be temporarily or permanently prohibited from commercializing RPL554. We might, if possible, also be forced to redesign RPL554 so that we no longer infringe the third-party intellectual property rights. Any of these events, even if we were ultimately to prevail, could require us to divert substantial financial and management resources that we would otherwise be able to devote to our business.

### **We may be involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce patents covering RPL554, which could be expensive, time-consuming and unsuccessful, and issued patents could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged in court.**

To protect our competitive position, we may from time to time need to resort to litigation in order to enforce or defend any patents or other intellectual property rights owned by or licensed to us, or to determine or challenge the scope or validity of patents or other intellectual property rights of third parties. As enforcement of intellectual property rights is difficult, unpredictable, time-consuming and expensive, we may fail in enforcing our rights — in which case our competitors may be permitted to use our technology without being required to pay us any license fees. In addition, however, litigation involving our patents carries the risk that one or more of our patents will be held invalid (in whole or in part, on a claim-by-claim basis) or held unenforceable. Such an adverse court ruling could allow third parties to commercialize RPL554, and then compete directly with us, without payment to us. If we in-license intellectual property rights, our agreements may give our licensors the first right to control claims of third-party infringement, or to defend validity challenges. Therefore, these patents and patent applications may not be enforced or defended in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business.

If we were to initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering one of our products, the defendant could counterclaim that our patent is invalid or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States or in Europe, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity or unenforceability are commonplace. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, for example, lack of novelty, obviousness or non-enablement. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld relevant information from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability during patent litigation is unpredictable. With respect to the validity question, for example, we cannot be certain that there is no invalidating prior art, of which we and the patent examiner were unaware during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity or unenforceability, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on RPL554. Patents and other intellectual property rights also will not protect our technology if competitors design around our protected technology without infringing our patents or other intellectual property rights.

Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. There could also be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have an adverse effect on the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares.

### **Third parties may initiate legal proceedings alleging that we are infringing their intellectual property rights, the outcome of which would be uncertain and could have a negative impact on the success of our business.**

Our commercial success depends, in part, upon our ability, and the ability of our future collaborators, to develop, manufacture, market and sell our product candidates without alleged or actual infringement, misappropriation or other violation of the patents and proprietary rights of third parties. There have been many lawsuits and other proceedings involving patent and other intellectual property rights in the

## [Table of Contents](#)

biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, including patent infringement lawsuits, interferences, oppositions and reexamination proceedings before the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, and corresponding foreign patent offices. The various markets in which we plan to operate are subject to frequent and extensive litigation regarding patents and other intellectual property rights. In addition, many companies in intellectual property-dependent industries, including the biopharmaceutical and pharmaceutical industries, have employed intellectual property litigation as a means to gain an advantage over their competitors. Numerous U.S. and foreign issued patents and pending patent applications, which are owned by third parties, exist in the fields in which we are developing product candidates. Some claimants may have substantially greater resources than we do and may be able to sustain the costs of complex intellectual property litigation to a greater degree and for longer periods of time than we could. In addition, patent holding companies that focus solely on extracting royalties and settlements by enforcing patent rights may target us. As the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries expand and more patents are issued, the risk increases that RPL554 may be subject to claims of infringement of the intellectual property rights of third parties.

We may in the future become party to, or be threatened with, adversarial proceedings or litigation regarding intellectual property rights with respect to our current and future product candidates, including interference or derivation proceedings, post grant review and inter partes review before the USPTO or similar adversarial proceedings or litigation in other jurisdictions. Similarly, we or our licensors or collaborators may initiate such proceedings or litigation against third parties, for example, to challenge the validity or scope of intellectual property rights controlled by third parties. Third parties may assert infringement claims against us based on existing patents or patents that may be granted in the future, regardless of their merit. There is a risk that third parties may choose to engage in litigation with us to enforce or to otherwise assert their patent rights against us. Even if we believe such claims are without merit, a court of competent jurisdiction could hold that these third-party patents are valid, enforceable and infringed, and the holders of any such patents may be able to block our ability to commercialize such product candidate unless we obtained a license under the applicable patents, or until such patents expire or are finally determined to be invalid or unenforceable. Similarly, if any third-party patents were held by a court of competent jurisdiction to cover aspects of our compositions, formulations, or methods of treatment, prevention or use, the holders of any such patents may be able to block our ability to develop and commercialize the applicable product candidate unless we obtained a license or until such patent expires or is finally determined to be invalid or unenforceable. Such licenses may not be available on reasonable terms, or at all, or may be non-exclusive thereby giving our competitors access to the same technologies licensed to us.

If we fail in any such dispute, we may be forced to pay damages, including the possibility of treble damages in a patent case if a court finds us to have willfully infringed certain intellectual property rights. We or our licensees may be temporarily or permanently prohibited from commercializing RPL554 or from selling, incorporating, manufacturing or using our products in the United States and/or other jurisdictions that use the subject intellectual property. We might, if possible, also be forced to redesign RPL554 so that we no longer infringe the third-party intellectual property rights, which may result in significant cost or delay to us, or which redesign could be technically infeasible. Any of these events, even if we were ultimately to prevail, could require us to divert substantial financial and management resources that we would otherwise be able to devote to our business.

In addition, if the breadth or strength of protection provided by our or our licensors' or collaborators' patents and patent applications is threatened, it could dissuade companies from collaborating with us to license, develop or commercialize current or future product candidates.

### **We may be subject to claims challenging the inventorship of our patents and other intellectual property.**

Although we are not currently experiencing any claims challenging the inventorship of our patents or ownership of our intellectual property, we may in the future be subject to claims that former employees, collaborators or other third parties have an interest in our patents or other intellectual property as an

[Table of Contents](#)

inventor or co-inventor. While it is our policy to require our employees and contractors who may be involved in the conception or development of intellectual property to execute agreements assigning such intellectual property to us, we may be unsuccessful in executing such an agreement with each party who, in fact, conceives or develops intellectual property that we regard as our own. For example, the assignment of intellectual property rights may not be self-executing or the assignment agreements may be breached, or we may have inventorship disputes arise from conflicting obligations of consultants or others who are involved in developing RPL554. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these and other claims challenging inventorship. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights, such as exclusive ownership of, or right to use, valuable intellectual property. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management and other employees.

**Intellectual property litigation could cause us to spend substantial resources and distract our personnel from their normal responsibilities.**

Even if resolved in our favor, litigation or other legal proceedings relating to intellectual property claims may cause us to incur significant expenses and could distract our technical and management personnel from their normal responsibilities. In addition, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments and if securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, we could have a substantial adverse effect on the price of our ordinary shares or ADSs. Such litigation or proceedings could substantially increase our operating losses and reduce our resources available for development activities. We may not have sufficient financial or other resources to adequately conduct such litigation or proceedings. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of such litigation or proceedings more effectively than we can because of their substantially greater financial resources. Uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of patent litigation or other proceedings could have an adverse effect on our ability to compete in the marketplace.

**If we fail to comply with our obligations under our existing and any future intellectual property licenses with third parties, we could lose license rights that are important to our business.**

We are party to a license agreement with Vernalis, under which we in-license certain intellectual property and were assigned certain patents and patent applications related to our business. We may enter into additional license agreements in the future. We expect that any future license agreements would impose various diligence, milestone payment, royalty, insurance and other obligations on us. Any uncured, material breach under these license agreements could result in our loss of rights to practice the patent rights and other intellectual property licensed to us under these agreements, and could compromise our development and commercialization efforts for any current or future product candidates. Under our agreement with Vernalis, we may not abandon any of the assigned patents or allow any of the assigned patents to lapse without consent from Vernalis, which is not to be unreasonably delayed or withheld. If we do not obtain such consent in a timely manner or at all and such assigned patent rights lapse or are abandoned, our agreement with Vernalis may be terminated in its entirety. For example, if we decide for commercial reasons to let an assigned patent lapse in a country of little commercial importance, but Vernalis does not provide consent and such patent rights lapse, we may lose all intellectual property rights covering RPL554 in multiple markets. Moreover, our future licensors may own or control intellectual property that has not been licensed to us and, as a result, we may be subject to claims, regardless of their merit, that we are infringing or otherwise violating the licensor's rights.

**We may not be successful in maintaining necessary rights to RPL554 or obtaining other intellectual property rights important to our business through acquisitions and in-licenses.**

We currently own and have in-licensed rights to intellectual property, including patents, patent applications and know-how, relating to RPL554, and our success will likely depend on maintaining these rights. Because our programs may require the use of proprietary rights held by third parties, the growth of our business will

## [Table of Contents](#)

likely depend in part on our ability to acquire, in-license, maintain or use these proprietary rights. In addition, RPL554 may require specific formulations to work effectively and the rights to these formulations may be held by others. We may be unable to acquire or in-license any compositions, methods of use, processes, or other third-party intellectual property rights from third parties that we identify as necessary for RPL554. The licensing and acquisition of third-party intellectual property rights is a competitive area, and a number of more established companies also are pursuing strategies to license or acquire third-party intellectual property rights that we may consider attractive. These established companies may have a competitive advantage over us due to their size, cash resources and greater clinical development and commercialization capabilities.

In addition, companies that perceive us to be a competitor may be unwilling to assign or license rights to us. We may also be unable to license or acquire third-party intellectual property rights on a timely basis, on terms that would allow us to make an appropriate return on our investment, or at all. Even if we are able to obtain a license to intellectual property of interest, we may not be able to secure exclusive rights, in which case others could use the same rights and compete with us. If we are unable to successfully obtain a license to third-party intellectual property rights necessary for the development of RPL554 or a development program on acceptable terms, we may have to abandon development of RPL554 or that development program.

**If our trademarks and trade names are not adequately protected, then we may not be able to build name recognition in our markets of interest and our competitive position may be adversely affected.**

We do not currently own any registered trademarks. We may not be able to obtain trademark protection in territories that we consider of significant importance to us. If we register trademarks, our trademark applications may be rejected during trademark registration proceedings. Although we will be given an opportunity to respond to those rejections, we may be unable to overcome such rejections. In addition, any of our trademarks or trade names, whether registered or unregistered, may be challenged, opposed, infringed, cancelled, circumvented or declared generic or determined to be infringing on other marks. We may not be able to protect our rights to these trademarks and trade names, which we need to build name recognition by potential collaborators or customers in our markets of interest. Over the long term, if we are unable to establish name recognition based on our trademarks and trade names, then we may not be able to compete effectively and our business may be adversely affected. If other entities use trademarks similar to ours in different jurisdictions, or have senior rights to ours, it could interfere with our use of our current trademarks throughout the world.

**If we do not obtain protection under the Hatch-Waxman Amendments and similar non-U.S. legislation for extending the term of patents covering RPL554 and any other product candidates, our ability to compete effectively could be impaired.**

Patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, if all maintenance fees are timely paid, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years from its earliest U.S. non-provisional filing date. The issued patents covering the composition of matter for RPL554 expire in 2020, and our other issued patents will expire in 2031, subject to any patent extensions that may be available for such patents. If patents are issued on our pending patent applications, the resulting patents are projected to expire on dates ranging from 2031 to 2036. Various extensions may be available, but the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Even if patents covering RPL554 are obtained, once the patent life has expired for a product, we may be open to competition from competitive medications, including generic medications. Given the amount of time required for the development, testing and regulatory review of new product candidates, patents protecting such candidates might expire before or shortly after such candidates are commercialized. As a result, our owned and licensed patent portfolio may not provide us with sufficient rights to exclude others from commercializing products similar or identical to ours.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Depending upon the timing, duration and conditions of FDA marketing approval of RPL554, one or more of our U.S. patents may be eligible for limited patent term extension under the Drug Price Competition and Patent Term Restoration Act of 1984, referred to as the Hatch-Waxman Amendments and similar legislation in the EU. The Hatch-Waxman Amendments permit a patent term extension of up to five years for a patent covering an approved product as compensation for effective patent term lost during product development and the FDA regulatory review process. However, we may not receive an extension if we fail to apply within applicable deadlines, fail to apply prior to expiration of relevant patents or otherwise fail to satisfy applicable requirements. Moreover, the length of the extension could be less than we request. If we are unable to obtain patent term extension or the term of any such extension is less than we request, the period during which we can enforce our patent rights for that product will be shortened and our competitors may obtain approval to market competing products sooner. As a result, our revenue from applicable products could be reduced, possibly materially.

### **We enjoy only limited geographical protection with respect to certain patents and may face difficulties in certain jurisdictions, which may diminish the value of intellectual property rights in those jurisdictions.**

We generally file our first patent application, or priority filing, at the United Kingdom Intellectual Property Office. International applications under the Patent Cooperation Treaty, or PCT, are usually filed within twelve months after the priority filing. Based on the PCT filing, national and regional patent applications may be filed in additional jurisdictions where we believe RPL554 may be marketed or manufactured. We have so far not filed for patent protection in all national and regional jurisdictions where such protection may be available. Filing, prosecuting and defending patents covering RPL554 in all countries throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our intellectual property rights in some countries outside the United States can be less extensive than those in the United States. In addition, we may decide to abandon national and regional patent applications before grant. The grant proceeding of each national or regional patent is an independent proceeding which may lead to situations in which applications might in some jurisdictions be refused by the relevant patent offices, while granted by others. For example, unlike other countries, China has a heightened requirement for patentability, and specifically requires a detailed description of medical uses of a claimed drug. Furthermore, generic drug manufacturers or other competitors may challenge the scope, validity or enforceability of our or our licensors' patents, requiring us or our licensors to engage in complex, lengthy and costly litigation or other proceedings. Generic drug manufacturers may develop, seek approval for and launch generic versions of our products. It is also quite common that depending on the country, the scope of patent protection may vary for the same product candidate or technology.

Competitors may use our and our licensors' or collaborators' technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we and our licensors or collaborators have patent protection, but enforcement is not as strong as that in the United States. These products may compete with RPL554, and our and our licensors' or collaborators' patents or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from competing.

The laws of some jurisdictions do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws or rules and regulations in the United States and the EU, and many companies have encountered significant difficulties in protecting and defending such rights in such jurisdictions. The legal systems of certain countries, particularly certain developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patents, trade secrets and other intellectual property protection, which could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of our patents or marketing of competing products in violation of our proprietary rights generally. Proceedings to enforce our patent rights in foreign jurisdictions, whether or not successful, could result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business, could put our patents at risk of being invalidated or interpreted narrowly and our patent applications at risk of not issuing, and could provoke third parties to assert claims against us. We may not prevail in any lawsuits that we initiate and the

## [Table of Contents](#)

damages or other remedies awarded, if any, may not be commercially meaningful. Accordingly, our efforts to enforce our intellectual property rights around the world may be inadequate to obtain a significant commercial advantage from the intellectual property that we develop or license. Furthermore, while we intend to protect our intellectual property rights in our expected significant markets, we cannot ensure that we will be able to initiate or maintain similar efforts in all jurisdictions in which we may wish to market RPL554. Accordingly, our efforts to protect our intellectual property rights in such countries may be inadequate, which may have an adverse effect on our ability to successfully commercialize RPL554 in all of our expected significant foreign markets. If we or our licensors encounter difficulties in protecting, or are otherwise precluded from effectively protecting, the intellectual property rights important for our business in such jurisdictions, the value of these rights may be diminished and we may face additional competition from others in those jurisdictions.

Some countries have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled to grant licenses to third parties. In addition, some countries limit the enforceability of patents against government agencies or government contractors. In these countries, the patent owner may have limited remedies, which could materially diminish the value of such patent. If we or any of our licensors is forced to grant a license to third parties with respect to any patents relevant to our business, our competitive position may be impaired.

### **Intellectual property rights do not necessarily address all potential threats to our competitive advantage.**

The degree of future protection afforded by our intellectual property rights is uncertain because intellectual property rights have limitations, and may not adequately protect our business, or permit us to maintain our competitive advantage. The following examples are illustrative:

- Others may be able to make compounds that are the same as or similar to RPL554 but that are not covered by the claims of the patents that we own or have exclusively licensed.
- The patents of third parties may impair our ability to develop or commercialize RPL554.
- We or our licensors or any future strategic collaborators might not have been the first to conceive or reduce to practice the inventions covered by the issued patent or pending patent application that we own or have exclusively licensed.
- We or our licensors or any future strategic collaborators might not have been the first to file patent applications covering certain of our inventions.
- Others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies or duplicate any of our technologies without infringing our intellectual property rights.
- It is possible that our pending patent applications will not lead to issued patents.
- Issued patents that we own or have exclusively licensed may not provide us with any competitive advantage, or may be held invalid or unenforceable, as a result of legal challenges by our competitors.
- Our competitors might conduct research and development activities in countries where we do not have patent rights and then use the information learned from such activities to develop competitive products for sale in our major commercial markets.
- Third parties performing manufacturing or testing for us using our products or technologies could use the intellectual property of others without obtaining a proper license.
- We may not develop additional technologies that are patentable.

### **Changes in patent laws or patent jurisprudence could diminish the value of patents in general, thereby impairing our ability to protect RPL554 or any future product candidates.**

As is the case with other biopharmaceutical companies, our success is heavily dependent on intellectual property, particularly patents. Obtaining and enforcing patents in the biopharmaceutical industry involve both technological complexity and legal complexity. Therefore, obtaining and enforcing biopharmaceutical

patents is costly, time-consuming and inherently uncertain. In addition, the America Invents Act, or the AIA, which was passed in September 16, 2011, resulted in significant changes to the U.S. patent system.

An important change introduced by the AIA is that, as of March 16, 2013, the United States transitioned to a "first-to-file" system for deciding which party should be granted a patent when two or more patent applications are filed by different parties claiming the same invention. A third party that files a patent application in the United States Patent and Trademark Office, or USPTO, after that date but before us could therefore be awarded a patent covering an invention of ours even if we had made the invention before it was made by the third party. This will require us to be cognizant going forward of the time from invention to filing of a patent application, but circumstances could prevent us from promptly filing patent applications on our inventions.

Among some of the other changes introduced by the AIA are changes that limit where a patentee may file a patent infringement suit and providing opportunities for third parties to challenge any issued patent in the USPTO. This applies to all of our U.S. patents, even those issued before March 16, 2013. Because of a lower evidentiary standard in USPTO proceedings compared to the evidentiary standard in U.S. federal courts necessary to invalidate a patent claim, a third party could potentially provide evidence in a USPTO proceeding sufficient for the USPTO to hold a claim invalid even though the same evidence would be insufficient to invalidate the claim if first presented in a district court action.

Accordingly, a third party may attempt to use the USPTO procedures to invalidate our patent claims that would not have been invalidated if first challenged by the third party as a defendant in a district court action. It is not clear what, if any, impact the AIA will have on the operation of our business. However, the AIA and its implementation could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our or our licensors' or collaboration partners' patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our or our licensors' or collaboration partners' issued patents.

Additionally, the U.S. Supreme Court has ruled on several patent cases in recent years either narrowing the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances or weakening the rights of patent owners in certain situations. In addition to increasing uncertainty with regard to our ability to obtain patents in the future, this combination of events has created uncertainty with respect to the value of patents, once obtained. Depending on decisions by the U.S. Congress, the federal courts and the USPTO, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that could weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce our existing patents and patents that we might obtain in the future. Similarly, the complexity and uncertainty of European patent laws has also increased in recent years. In addition, the European patent system is relatively stringent in the type of amendments that are allowed during prosecution. Complying with these laws and regulations could limit our ability to obtain new patents in the future that may be important for our business.

**Confidentiality agreements with employees and others may not adequately prevent disclosure of trade secrets and protect other proprietary information.**

We consider proprietary trade secrets and confidential know-how and unpatented know-how to be important to our business. We may rely on trade secrets or confidential know-how to protect our technology, especially where patent protection is believed to be of limited value. However, trade secrets and confidential know-how are difficult to maintain as confidential.

To protect this type of information against disclosure or appropriation by competitors, our policy is to require our employees, consultants, contractors and advisors to enter into confidentiality agreements with us. We also seek to preserve the integrity and confidentiality of our data, trade secrets and know-how by maintaining physical security of our premises and physical and electronic security of our information technology systems. Monitoring unauthorized uses and disclosures is difficult, and we do not know whether the steps we have taken to protect our proprietary technologies will be effective. We cannot guarantee that

## [Table of Contents](#)

our trade secrets and other proprietary and confidential information will not be disclosed or that competitors will not otherwise gain access to our trade secrets. However, current or former employees, consultants, contractors and advisers may unintentionally or willfully disclose our confidential information to competitors, and confidentiality agreements may not provide an adequate remedy in the event of unauthorized disclosure of confidential information. Enforcing a claim that a third party obtained illegally and is using trade secrets and/or confidential know-how is expensive, time consuming and unpredictable. The enforceability of confidentiality agreements may vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction. Furthermore, if a competitor lawfully obtained or independently developed any of our trade secrets, we would have no right to prevent such competitor from using that technology or information to compete with us, which could harm our competitive position. Additionally, if the steps taken to maintain our trade secrets are deemed inadequate, we may have insufficient recourse against third parties for misappropriating the trade secret.

Failure to obtain or maintain trade secrets and confidential know-how trade protection could adversely affect our competitive position. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop substantially equivalent proprietary information and may even apply for patent protection in respect of the same. If successful in obtaining such patent protection, our competitors could limit our use of our trade secrets and/or confidential know-how.

### **We may be subject to claims by third parties asserting that our employees or we have misappropriated their intellectual property, or claiming ownership of what we regard as our own intellectual property.**

Many of our employees, including our senior management, were previously employed at universities or at other biopharmaceutical companies, including our competitors or potential competitors. Some of these employees executed proprietary rights, non-disclosure and non-competition agreements in connection with such previous employment. Although we try to ensure that our employees do not use the proprietary information or know-how of others in their work for us, we may be subject to claims that we or these employees have used or disclosed confidential information or intellectual property, including trade secrets or other proprietary information, of any such employee's former employer. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims.

If we fail in prosecuting or defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel or sustain damages. Such intellectual property rights could be awarded to a third party, and we could be required to obtain a license from such third party to commercialize our technology or products. Such a license may not be available on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Even if we successfully prosecute or defend against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and distract management.

### **Obtaining and maintaining our patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.**

Periodic maintenance and annuity fees on any issued patent are due to be paid to the USPTO and foreign patent agencies in several stages over the lifetime of the patent. The USPTO and various foreign governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. While an inadvertent lapse can in many cases be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with the applicable rules, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. Non-compliance events that could result in abandonment or lapse of a patent or patent application include failure to respond to official actions within prescribed time limits, non-payment of fees and failure to properly legalize and submit formal documents. If we or our licensors or collaboration partners fail to maintain the patents and patent applications covering RPL554, our competitors might be able to enter the market, which would hurt our competitive position and could impair our ability to successfully commercialize RPL554 in any indication for which it is approved.

**Our proprietary information, or that of our suppliers and any future collaborators, may be lost or we may suffer security breaches.**

In the ordinary course of our business, we collect and store sensitive data, including intellectual property, clinical trial data, proprietary business information and personally identifiable information of our clinical trial subjects and employees, in our data centers and on our networks. The secure processing, maintenance and transmission of this information is critical to our operations. Despite our security measures, our information technology and infrastructure may be vulnerable to attacks by hackers or breached due to employee error, malfeasance or other disruptions. Although to our knowledge we have not experienced any such material security breach to date, any such breach could compromise our networks and the information stored there could be accessed, publicly disclosed, lost or stolen. Any such access, disclosure or other loss of information could result in legal claims or proceedings, liability under laws that protect the privacy of personal information, regulatory penalties, disrupt our operations, damage our reputation, and cause a loss of confidence in us and our ability to conduct clinical trials, which could adversely affect our reputation and delay our clinical development of RPL554.

**Our information technology systems could experience serious disruptions that could distract our operations and cause delays in our research and development work.**

Our information technology and other internal infrastructure systems, including corporate firewalls, servers, leased lines and connection to the Internet, face the risk of systemic failure that could disrupt our operations. A significant disruption in the availability of our information technology and other internal infrastructure systems could cause interruptions in our collaborations and delays in our research and development work.

**Risks Related to Employee Matters and Managing Growth**

**Our future growth and ability to compete depends on retaining our key personnel and recruiting additional qualified personnel.**

Our success depends upon the continued contributions of our key management, scientific and technical personnel, many of whom have been instrumental for us and have substantial experience with RPL554 and related technologies. These key management individuals include our chief executive officer, Jan-Anders Karlsson, our chief medical officer, Kenneth Newman, our chief financial officer, Piers Morgan, our legal counsel, Claire Poll, and our senior vice president, chemistry manufacturing and controls, Peter Spargo.

The loss of key managers and senior scientists could delay our research and development activities. In addition, the competition for qualified personnel in the biopharmaceutical and pharmaceutical field is intense, and our future success depends upon our ability to attract, retain and motivate highly skilled scientific, technical and managerial employees. We face competition for personnel from other companies, universities, public and private research institutions and other organizations. If our recruitment and retention efforts are unsuccessful in the future, it may be difficult for us to achieve our product candidate development objectives, raise additional capital and implement our business strategy.

**We expect to expand our development, regulatory and sales and marketing capabilities, and as a result, we may encounter difficulties in managing our growth, which could disrupt our operations.**

We expect to experience significant growth in the number of our employees and the scope of our operations, particularly in the areas of drug development, regulatory affairs and sales and marketing. To manage our anticipated future growth, we must continue to implement and improve our managerial, operational and financial systems, expand our facilities and continue to recruit and train additional qualified personnel. Due to our limited financial resources and the limited experience of our management team in managing a company with such anticipated growth, we may not be able to effectively manage the expansion of our operations or recruit and train additional qualified personnel. The expansion of our operations may lead to significant costs and may divert our management and business development resources. Any inability to manage growth could delay the execution of our business plans or disrupt our operations.

## Risks Related to the Global Offering and Our ADSs and Ordinary Shares

### The price of our ADSs and ordinary shares may be volatile and may fluctuate due to factors beyond our control.

The trading market for publicly traded emerging biopharmaceutical and drug discovery and development companies has been highly volatile and is likely to remain highly volatile in the future. The market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares may fluctuate significantly due to a variety of factors, including:

- positive or negative results from, or delays in, testing and clinical trials by us, collaborators or competitors;
- delays in entering into collaborations and strategic relationships with respect to development or commercialization of RPL554 or entry into collaborations and strategic relationships on terms that are not deemed to be favorable to us;
- technological innovations or commercial product introductions by us or competitors;
- changes in government regulations;
- developments concerning proprietary rights, including patents and litigation matters;
- public concern relating to the commercial value or safety of RPL554;
- financing or other corporate transactions;
- publication of research reports or comments by securities or industry analysts;
- general market conditions in the pharmaceutical industry or in the economy as a whole;
- the loss of any of our key scientific or senior management personnel;
- sales of our ADSs or ordinary shares by us, our senior management and board members, holders of our ADSs or our shareholders in the future; or
- other events and factors, many of which are beyond our control.

These and other market and industry factors may cause the market price and demand for our ADSs and ordinary shares to fluctuate substantially, regardless of our actual operating performance, which may limit or prevent investors from readily selling their ADSs or ordinary shares and may otherwise negatively affect the liquidity of our ADSs and ordinary shares. In addition, the stock market in general, and biopharmaceutical companies in particular, have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of these companies. In the past, when the market price of a stock has been volatile, holders of that stock have sometimes instituted securities class action litigation against the issuer. If any of the holders of our ADSs or ordinary shares were to bring such a lawsuit against us, we could incur substantial costs defending the lawsuit and the attention of our senior management would be diverted from the operation of our business. Any adverse determination in litigation could also subject us to significant liabilities.

### We will incur increased costs as a result of operating as a public company in the United States, and our senior management will be required to devote substantial time to new compliance initiatives and corporate governance practices.

As a U.S. public company, and particularly after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we did not incur previously. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, the listing requirements of NASDAQ and other applicable securities rules and regulations impose various requirements on non-U.S. reporting public companies, including the establishment and maintenance of effective disclosure and financial controls and corporate governance practices. Our senior management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to these compliance initiatives. Moreover, these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time-consuming and costly. For example, we expect that these rules and regulations may make it more difficult and more expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, which in turn could make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified senior management personnel or members for our board of directors.

However, these rules and regulations are often subject to varying interpretations, in many cases due to their lack of specificity, and, as a result, their application in practice may evolve over time as new guidance is

[Table of Contents](#)

provided by regulatory and governing bodies. This could result in continuing uncertainty regarding compliance matters and higher costs necessitated by ongoing revisions to disclosure and governance practices.

Pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, or Section 404, we will be required to furnish a report by our senior management on our internal control over financial reporting. However, while we remain an emerging growth company, or EGC, we will not be required to include an attestation report on internal control over financial reporting issued by our independent registered public accounting firm. To prepare for eventual compliance with Section 404, once we no longer qualify as an EGC, we will be engaged in a process to document and evaluate our internal control over financial reporting, which is both costly and challenging. In this regard, we will need to continue to dedicate internal resources, potentially engage outside consultants and adopt a detailed work plan to assess and document the adequacy of internal control over financial reporting, continue steps to improve control processes as appropriate, validate through testing that controls are functioning as documented and implement a continuous reporting and improvement process for internal control over financial reporting. Despite our efforts, there is a risk that we will not be able to conclude, within the prescribed timeframe or at all, that our internal control over financial reporting is effective as required by Section 404. If we identify one or more material weaknesses, it could result in an adverse reaction in the financial markets due to a loss of confidence in the reliability of our financial statements.

**There has been no public market for our ADSs prior to the U.S. offering, and an active market may not develop in which investors can resell our ADSs.**

Prior to the U.S. offering, there has been no public market for our ADSs, although our ordinary shares have traded on AIM. We cannot predict the extent to which an active market for our ADSs will develop or be sustained after the U.S. offering, or how the development of such a market might affect the market price for our ADSs. The initial public offering price of our ADSs in the U.S. offering will be agreed upon between us and the underwriters based on a number of factors, including market conditions in effect at the time of the offering, which may not be indicative of the price at which our ADSs will trade following completion of the offering. Investors may not be able to sell their ADSs at or above the initial public offering price.

**The dual listing of our ordinary shares and our ADSs following the U.S. offering may adversely affect the liquidity and value of our ordinary shares and ADSs.**

Following the U.S. offering and after our ADSs begin trading on NASDAQ, our ordinary shares will continue to be admitted to trading on AIM. We cannot predict the effect of this dual listing on the value of our ADSs and ordinary shares. However, the dual listing of our ADSs and ordinary shares may dilute the liquidity of these securities in one or both markets and may adversely affect the development of an active trading market for our ADSs in the United States. The price of our ADSs could also be adversely affected by trading in our ordinary shares on AIM. Although our ordinary shares are currently admitted to trading on AIM, following the global offering, we may decide to cancel the admission of our ordinary shares to trading on AIM. Cancellation of the admission of our ordinary shares to trading on AIM would require the requisite consent of shareholders in a general meeting prescribed by AIM Rules for Companies, unless the London Stock Exchange agrees otherwise. We cannot predict the effect such cancellation would have on the market price of our ADSs or ordinary shares.

**Certain of our existing shareholders, members of our board of directors, and senior management will continue to own a majority of our ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) and as a result, will be able to exercise significant control over us, and your interests may conflict with the interests of our existing shareholders.**

As of \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, after giving effect to the closing of the global offering and the shareholder private placement, our senior management, board of directors and greater than 5% shareholders and their respective affiliates, in the aggregate, will own approximately \_\_\_\_\_% of our ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) assuming no exercise of outstanding options or warrants, and approximately \_\_\_\_\_% of our ordinary shares, assuming exercise of all outstanding warrants, which become

[Table of Contents](#)

exercisable upon the completion of the global offering. Depending on the level of attendance at our general meetings of shareholders, these shareholders either alone or voting together as a group may be in a position to determine or significantly influence the outcome of decisions taken at any such general meeting. Any shareholder or group of shareholders controlling more than 50% of the share capital present and voting at our general meetings of shareholders may control any shareholder resolution requiring a simple majority, including the appointment of board members, certain decisions relating to our capital structure, the approval of certain significant corporate transactions and amendments to our Articles of Association. Among other consequences, this concentration of ownership may have the effect of delaying or preventing a change in control and might therefore negatively affect the market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares.

**Future sales, or the possibility of future sales, of a substantial number of our ADSs or ordinary shares could adversely affect the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares.**

Future sales of a substantial number of our ADSs or ordinary shares, or the perception that such sales will occur, could cause a decline in the market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares. Based upon the number of shares outstanding as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, after giving effect to the closing of the global offering and the shareholder private placement, we will have \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares outstanding, assuming no exercise of outstanding options or warrants. ADSs and ordinary shares issued and sold in the global offering may be resold in the public market immediately without restriction, unless purchased by our affiliates. A significant portion of these ordinary shares and ADSs will be subject to the lock-up agreements described in the "Ordinary Shares and ADSs Eligible for Future Sale" and "Underwriting." If, after the end of such lock-up agreements, these shareholders sell substantial amounts of ordinary shares or ADSs in the public market, or the market perceives that such sales may occur, the market price of our ADSs or ordinary shares and our ability to raise capital through an issue of equity securities in the future could be adversely affected. We have also entered into a registration rights agreement pursuant to which we agreed under certain circumstances to file a registration statement to register the resale of the ordinary shares held by certain of our existing shareholders, as well as to cooperate in certain public offerings of such shares.

**If you purchase ordinary shares or ADSs in the global offering, you will suffer immediate dilution of your investment.**

We expect the initial public offering price of our ADSs in the U.S. offering and the offering price of our ordinary shares in the European private placement to be substantially higher than the net tangible book value per ADS and per ordinary share prior to the global offering. Therefore, if you purchase ordinary shares or ADSs in the global offering, you will pay a price per ordinary share and per ADS that substantially exceeds our net tangible book value per ADS and per ordinary share after the global offering. To the extent outstanding options or warrants are exercised for ordinary shares, you may experience further dilution. Based on the assumed initial public offering price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ADS and assumed offering price of £ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM on \_\_\_\_\_, 2017 and the exchange rate set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, you will experience immediate dilution of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ADS and £ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share, representing the difference between our net tangible book value per ADS and per ordinary share after giving effect to the global offering and the assumed offering price. See "Dilution."

**Because we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our ADSs or ordinary shares in the foreseeable future, capital appreciation, if any, will be your sole source of gains and you may never receive a return on your investment.**

Under current U.K. law, a company's accumulated realized profits must exceed its accumulated realized losses (on a non-consolidated basis) before dividends can be paid. Therefore, we must have distributable profits before issuing a dividend. We have not paid dividends in the past on our ordinary shares. We intend to retain earnings, if any, for use in our business and do not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, on our ADSs or ordinary shares will be your sole source of gains for the foreseeable future, and you will suffer a loss on your investment if you are unable to

[Table of Contents](#)

sell your ADSs or ordinary shares at or above the offering price. Investors seeking cash dividends should not purchase our ADSs or ordinary shares in the global offering.

**We have broad discretion in the use of the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement and may not use them effectively.**

Our senior management will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement and could spend the proceeds in ways that do not improve our results of operations or enhance the value of our ordinary shares or ADSs. The failure by our senior management to apply these funds effectively could result in financial losses, cause the price of our ADSs or ordinary shares to decline and delay the development of RPL554. Pending their use, we may invest the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement in a manner that does not produce income or that loses value.

**Securities traded on AIM may carry a higher risk than securities traded on other exchanges, which may impact the value of your investment.**

Our ordinary shares are currently traded on AIM. Investment in equities traded on AIM is sometimes perceived to carry a higher risk than an investment in equities quoted on exchanges with more stringent listing requirements, such as the main market of the London Stock Exchange, New York Stock Exchange or NASDAQ. This is because AIM imposes less stringent corporate governance and ongoing reporting requirements than those other exchanges. In addition, AIM requires only half-yearly, rather than quarterly, financial reporting. You should be aware that the value of our ordinary shares may be influenced by many factors, some of which may be specific to us and some of which may affect AIM-quoted companies generally, including the depth and liquidity of the market, our performance, a large or small volume of trading in our ordinary shares, legislative changes and general economic, political or regulatory conditions, and that the prices may be volatile and subject to extensive fluctuations. Therefore, the market price of our ordinary shares, our ADSs, or of the ordinary shares underlying our ADSs, may not reflect the underlying value of our company.

**Purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering may not have the same voting rights as the holders of our ordinary shares and may not receive voting materials in time to be able to exercise their right to vote.**

Except as described in this prospectus, holders of our ADSs will not be able to exercise voting rights attaching to the ordinary shares evidenced by our ADSs on an individual basis. Holders of our ADSs will appoint the depositary or its nominee as their representative to exercise the voting rights attaching to the ordinary shares represented by our ADSs. Purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering may not receive voting materials in time to instruct the depositary to vote, and it is possible that they, or persons who hold their ADSs through brokers, dealers or other third parties, will not have the opportunity to exercise a right to vote. Furthermore, the depositary will not be liable for any failure to carry out any instructions to vote, for the manner in which any vote is cast or for the effect of any such vote. As a result, purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering may not be able to exercise voting rights and may lack recourse if their ADSs are not voted as requested. In addition, in their capacity as ADS holders, purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering will not be able to call a shareholders' meeting.

**Purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering may not receive distributions on our ordinary shares represented by our ADSs or any value for them if it is illegal or impractical to make them available to holders of ADSs.**

The depositary for our ADSs has agreed to pay to purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering the cash dividends or other distributions it or the custodian receives on our ordinary shares or other deposited securities after deducting its fees and expenses. Purchasers of our ADSs will receive these distributions in proportion to the number of our ordinary shares their ADSs represent. However, in accordance with the limitations set forth in the deposit agreement, it may be unlawful or impractical to make a distribution available to holders of ADSs. We have no obligation to take any other action to permit the distribution of our ADSs, ordinary shares, rights or anything else to holders of our ADSs. This means that purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering may not receive the distributions we make on our ordinary shares or any value from

[Table of Contents](#)

them if it is unlawful or impractical to make them available to them. These restrictions may have a material adverse effect on the value of a purchaser's ADSs.

**Purchasers of ADSs in the U.S. offering may be subject to limitations on transfer of their ADSs.**

ADSs are transferable on the books of the depository. However, the depository may close its transfer books at any time or from time to time when it deems expedient in connection with the performance of its duties. In addition, the depository may refuse to deliver, transfer or register transfers of ADSs generally when our books or the books of the depository are closed, or at any time if we or the depository deems it advisable to do so because of any requirement of law or of any government or governmental body, or under any provision of the deposit agreement, or for any other reason in accordance with the terms of the deposit agreement.

**The rights of our shareholders may differ from the rights typically offered to shareholders of a U.S. corporation.**

We are incorporated under English law. The rights of holders of ordinary shares and, therefore, certain of the rights of holders of ADSs, are governed by English law, including the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, and by our Articles of Association. These rights differ in certain respects from the rights of shareholders in typical U.S. corporations. See "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association — Differences in Corporate Law" in this prospectus for a description of the principal differences between the provisions of the Companies Act 2006 applicable to us and, for example, the Delaware General Corporation Law relating to shareholders' rights and protections.

**Claims of U.S. civil liabilities may not be enforceable against us.**

We are incorporated under English law. Substantially all of our assets are located outside the United States. The majority of our senior management and board of directors reside outside the United States. As a result, it may not be possible for investors to effect service of process within the United States upon such persons or to enforce judgments obtained in U.S. courts against them or us, including judgments predicated upon the civil liability provisions of the U.S. federal securities laws.

The United States and the United Kingdom do not currently have a treaty providing for recognition and enforcement of judgments (other than arbitration awards) in civil and commercial matters. Consequently, a final judgment for payment given by a court in the United States, whether or not predicated solely upon U.S. securities laws, would not automatically be recognized or enforceable in the United Kingdom. In addition, uncertainty exists as to whether U.K. courts would entertain original actions brought in the United Kingdom against us or our directors or senior management predicated upon the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States. Any final and conclusive monetary judgment for a definite sum obtained against us in U.S. courts would be treated by the courts of the United Kingdom as a cause of action in itself and sued upon as a debt at common law so that no retrial of the issues would be necessary, provided that certain requirements are met. Whether these requirements are met in respect of a judgment based upon the civil liability provisions of the U.S. securities laws, including whether the award of monetary damages under such laws would constitute a penalty, is an issue for the court making such decision. If an English court gives judgment for the sum payable under a U.S. judgment, the English judgment will be enforceable by methods generally available for this purpose. These methods generally permit the English court discretion to prescribe the manner of enforcement.

As a result, U.S. investors may not be able to enforce against us or our senior management, board of directors or certain experts named herein who are residents of the United Kingdom or countries other than the United States any judgments obtained in U.S. courts in civil and commercial matters, including judgments under the U.S. federal securities laws.

**We qualify as a foreign private issuer and, as a result, we will not be subject to U.S. proxy rules and will be subject to Exchange Act reporting obligations that, to some extent, are more lenient and less frequent than those of a U.S. domestic public company.**

Upon the closing of the U.S. offering, we will report under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act, as a non-U.S. company with foreign private issuer status. Because we qualify as a foreign private issuer under the Exchange Act, we are exempt from certain provisions of the Exchange Act that are applicable to U.S. domestic public companies, including (i) the sections of the Exchange Act regulating the solicitation of proxies, consents or authorizations in respect of a security registered under the Exchange Act; (ii) the sections of the Exchange Act requiring insiders to file public reports of their stock ownership and trading activities and liability for insiders who profit from trades made in a short period of time; and (iii) the rules under the Exchange Act requiring the filing with the SEC of quarterly reports on Form 10-Q containing unaudited financial and other specified information, or current reports on Form 8-K, upon the occurrence of specified significant events. Although it is not required because we are a foreign private issuer, we intend to furnish quarterly unaudited financial information to the SEC on Form 6-K. In addition, foreign private issuers are not required to file their annual report on Form 20-F until 120 days after the end of each fiscal year, while U.S. domestic issuers that are accelerated filers are required to file their annual report on Form 10-K within 75 days after the end of each fiscal year. Foreign private issuers also are exempt from Regulation Fair Disclosure, aimed at preventing issuers from making selective disclosures of material information. As a result of the above, you may not have the same protections afforded to shareholders of companies that are not foreign private issuers.

**As a foreign private issuer and as permitted by the listing requirements of NASDAQ, we will rely on certain home country governance practices rather than the corporate governance requirements of NASDAQ.**

As a foreign private issuer, in accordance with the listing requirements of NASDAQ, we will follow our home country governance requirements and certain exemptions thereunder rather than the corporate governance requirements of NASDAQ.

For example, we are exempt from NASDAQ regulations that require a listed U.S. company to:

- have a majority of the board of directors consist of independent directors;
- require non-management directors to meet on a regular basis without management present;
- promptly disclose any waivers of the code for directors or executive officers that should address certain specified items;
- have an independent nominating committee;
- solicit proxies and provide proxy statements for all shareholder meetings; and
- seek shareholder approval for the implementation of certain equity compensation plans and issuances of ordinary shares.

For an overview of our corporate governance principles, see "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association — Articles of Association."

In accordance with our NASDAQ listing, our Audit Committee is required to comply with the provisions of Section 301 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and Rule 10A-3 of the Exchange Act, both of which also are applicable to NASDAQ-listed U.S. companies. Because we are a foreign private issuer, however, our Audit Committee is not subject to additional NASDAQ requirements applicable to listed U.S. companies, including an affirmative determination that all members of the Audit Committee are "independent" using more stringent criteria than those applicable to us as a foreign private issuer.

Because we are exempt from certain NASDAQ governance requirements, you may not have the same protections afforded to shareholders of companies that are subject to these NASDAQ requirements.

**We may lose our foreign private issuer status, which would then require us to comply with the Exchange Act's domestic reporting regime and cause us to incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses.**

As a foreign private issuer, we are not required to comply with all of the periodic disclosure and current reporting requirements of the Exchange Act applicable to U.S. domestic issuers. We may no longer be a

[Table of Contents](#)

foreign private issuer as of June 30, 2018 (the end of our second fiscal quarter in the fiscal year after the global offering), which would require us to comply with all of the periodic disclosure and current reporting requirements of the Exchange Act applicable to U.S. domestic issuers as of January 1, 2019. In order to maintain our current status as a foreign private issuer, either (a) a majority of our ADSs must be either directly or indirectly owned of record by non-residents of the United States or (b)(i) a majority of our executive officers or directors cannot be U.S. citizens or residents, (ii) more than 50 percent of our assets must be located outside the United States and (iii) our business must be administered principally outside the United States. If we lose our status as a foreign private issuer, we would be required to comply with the Exchange Act reporting and other requirements applicable to U.S. domestic issuers, which are more detailed and extensive than the requirements for foreign private issuers. We may also be required to make changes in our corporate governance practices in accordance with various SEC and NASDAQ rules. The regulatory and compliance costs to us under U.S. securities laws if we are required to comply with the reporting requirements applicable to a U.S. domestic issuer may be significantly higher than the cost we would incur as a foreign private issuer. As a result, we expect that a loss of foreign private issuer status would increase our legal and financial compliance costs and would make some activities highly time consuming and costly. We also expect that if we were required to comply with the rules and regulations applicable to U.S. domestic issuers, it would make it more difficult and expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These rules and regulations could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors.

**We are an "emerging growth company," and we cannot be certain if the reduced reporting requirements applicable to "emerging growth companies" will make our ADSs or ordinary shares less attractive to investors.**

We are an "emerging growth company," as defined in the JOBS Act. For as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404, exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. As an emerging growth company, we are required to report only two years of financial results and selected financial data compared to three and five years, respectively, for comparable data reported by other public companies. We may take advantage of these exemptions until we are no longer an emerging growth company. We could be an emerging growth company for up to five years, although circumstances could cause us to lose that status earlier, including if the aggregate market value of our ADSs and ordinary shares held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of any June 30 (the end of our second fiscal quarter) before that time, in which case we would no longer be an emerging growth company as of the following December 31 (our fiscal year-end). We cannot predict if investors will find our ADSs or ordinary shares less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions. If some investors find our ADSs or ordinary shares less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our ADSs or ordinary shares and the price of our ADSs or ordinary shares may be more volatile.

**If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial results or prevent fraud. As a result, shareholders could lose confidence in our financial and other public reporting, which would harm our business and the trading price of our ADSs or ordinary shares.**

Effective internal controls over financial reporting are necessary for us to provide reliable financial reports and, together with adequate disclosure controls and procedures, are designed to prevent fraud. Any failure to implement required new or improved controls, or difficulties encountered in their implementation could cause us to fail to meet our reporting obligations. In addition, any testing by us conducted in connection with Section 404, or any subsequent testing by our independent registered public accounting firm, may reveal deficiencies in our internal controls over financial reporting that are deemed to be material

## [Table of Contents](#)

weaknesses or that may require prospective or retroactive changes to our financial statements or identify other areas for further attention or improvement. Inadequate internal controls could also cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information, which could have a negative effect on the trading price of our ADSs or ordinary shares.

In connection with the preparation for this initial public offering, we reassessed our critical accounting policies to ensure compliance with IFRS. As part of this reassessment, we identified errors relating to the recognition of assumed liabilities and goodwill in connection with the acquisition of Rhinopharma in September 2006. We concluded that a lack of adequate controls surrounding our historic accounting for business combinations constituted a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, as defined in the standards established by the U.S. Public Accounting Oversight Board, or PCAOB. The PCAOB defines a material weakness as a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the company's annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected in a timely basis. We are currently in the process of remediating this material weakness and have taken steps that we believe will address the underlying causes of the material weakness by the hiring of our new chief financial officer and enhancing our financial reporting team's technical accounting knowledge associated with the accounting rules for business combinations. However, we cannot be certain that these efforts will be sufficient to remediate this material weakness or prevent future material weaknesses or significant deficiencies from occurring.

Management will be required to assess the effectiveness of our internal controls annually. However, for as long as we are an "emerging growth company" under the JOBS Act, our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal controls over financial reporting pursuant to Section 404. An independent assessment of the effectiveness of our internal controls could detect problems that our management's assessment might not. Undetected material weaknesses in our internal controls could lead to financial statement restatements requiring us to incur the expense of remediation and could also result in an adverse reaction in the financial markets due to a loss of confidence in the reliability of our financial statements.

**If securities or industry analysts do not publish research, or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research, about our business, the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares and our trading volume could decline.**

The trading market for our ADSs and ordinary shares will depend in part on the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. Securities and industry analysts do not currently, and may never, publish research on us. If no or too few securities or industry analysts commence coverage on us, the trading price for our ADSs and ordinary shares would likely be negatively affected. In the event securities or industry analysts initiate coverage, if one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our ADSs or ordinary shares or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of us or fail to publish reports on us regularly, demand for our ADSs or ordinary shares could decrease, which might cause the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares and trading volume to decline.

**We believe we will likely be classified as a passive foreign investment company for U.S. federal income tax purposes for the current year, which could result in adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences to U.S. investors in our ordinary shares or ADSs.**

Because we do not expect to earn revenue from our business operations during the current taxable year, and because our sole source of income currently is interest on bank accounts held by us, we believe we will likely be classified as a "passive foreign investment company," or PFIC, for the current taxable year. A non-U.S. company will be considered a PFIC for any taxable year if (i) at least 75% of its gross income is passive income (including interest income), or (ii) at least 50% of the value of its assets (based on an average of the quarterly values of the assets during a taxable year) is attributable to assets that produce or are held for the production of passive income. If we are classified as a PFIC in any year with respect to which a U.S. Holder (as defined below under "Material Tax Considerations — Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders") owns the ordinary shares or ADSs, we will continue to be treated as a

[Table of Contents](#)

PFIC with respect to such U.S. Holder in all succeeding years during which the U.S. Holder owns the ordinary shares or ADSs, regardless of whether we continue to meet the PFIC test described above, unless the U.S. Holder makes a specified election once we cease to be a PFIC. If we are classified as a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. Holder holds our ordinary shares or ADSs, certain adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences could apply to such U.S. Holder, including (i) the treatment of all or a portion of any gain on disposition as ordinary income, (ii) the application of a deferred interest charge on such gain and the receipt of certain dividends and (iii) the obligation to comply with certain reporting requirements. See "Material Tax Considerations — Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders — Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules."

## CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains statements that constitute forward-looking statements. Many of the forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus can be identified by the use of forward-looking words such as "anticipate," "believe," "could," "estimate," "expect," "intend," "plan," "potential" and "should," among others.

Forward-looking statements appear in a number of places in this prospectus and include, but are not limited to, statements regarding our intent, belief or current expectations. Forward-looking statements are based on our management's beliefs and assumptions and on information currently available to our management. Such statements are subject to substantial risks and uncertainties, and actual results may differ materially from those expressed or implied in the forward-looking statements due to various important factors, including, but not limited to, those identified under "Risk Factors." In light of the significant uncertainties in these forward-looking statements, you should not regard these statements as a guarantee by us or any other person that we will achieve our objectives and plans in any specified time frame, or at all.

Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- the development of RPL554, including statements regarding the expected initiation, timing, progress and availability of data from our clinical trials;
- the potential attributes and benefit of RPL554 and its competitive position;
- our ability to successfully commercialize RPL554, if approved;
- our expectations regarding the use of proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement;
- our estimates regarding expenses, future revenues, capital requirements and our need for additional financing;
- our ability to acquire or in-license new product candidates;
- potential collaborations; and
- the duration of our patent portfolio.

Forward-looking statements speak only as of the date they are made, and we do not undertake any obligation to update them in light of new information or future developments or to release publicly any revisions to these statements in order to reflect later events or circumstances or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events.

You should read this prospectus and the documents that we reference in this prospectus and have filed as exhibits to the registration statement, of which this prospectus is a part, completely and with the understanding that our actual future results may be materially different from what we expect. We qualify all of our forward-looking statements by these cautionary statements.

## **MARKET AND INDUSTRY DATA**

Certain industry data and market data included in this prospectus were obtained from independent third-party surveys, market research, publicly available information, reports of governmental agencies and industry publications and surveys. All of the market data used in this prospectus involves a number of assumptions and limitations, and you are cautioned not to give undue weight to such estimates. We believe that the information from these industry publications and surveys included in this prospectus is reliable. The industry in which we operate is subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in "Risk Factors". These and other factors could cause results to differ materially from those expressed in the estimates made by the independent parties and by us.

## **TRADEMARKS, SERVICE MARKS AND TRADENAMES**

Solely for convenience, the trademarks, service marks, logos and trade names referred to in this prospectus are without the ® and ™ symbols, but such references are not intended to indicate, in any way, that we will not assert, to the fullest extent under applicable law, our rights or the rights of the applicable licensors to these trademarks, service marks and trade names. This prospectus contains additional trademarks, service marks and trade names of others, which are the property of their respective owners. All trademarks, service marks and trade names appearing in this prospectus are, to our knowledge, the property of their respective owners. We do not intend our use or display of other companies' trademarks, service marks, copyrights or trade names to imply a relationship with, or endorsement or sponsorship of us by, any other companies.

### EXCHANGE RATE INFORMATION

Our business is primarily conducted in the United Kingdom, and we maintain our books and records in pounds sterling. On March 24, 2017, the exchange rate was £1.00 to \$1.2491. We have presented our financial data in this prospectus in pounds sterling. For the convenience of the reader, we have translated some of our financial information into U.S. dollars. Unless otherwise indicated, translations from pounds sterling to U.S. dollars were made at the rate of £1.00 to \$1.2337, the noon buying rate of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York on December 30, 2016. Such U.S. dollar amounts are not necessarily indicative of the amounts of U.S. dollars that could actually have been purchased upon exchange of pounds sterling at the dates indicated.

The following table presents information on the exchange rates between the pound sterling and the U.S. dollar for the periods indicated:

	Period-end <sup>(1)</sup>	Average for period <sup>(2)</sup>	Low	High
	(U.S. dollars per pound sterling)			
<b>Year Ended December 31:</b>				
2012	1.6262	1.5853	1.5301	1.6275
2013	1.6574	1.5641	1.4837	1.6574
2014	1.5578	1.6484	1.5517	1.7165
2015	1.4746	1.5284	1.4648	1.5882
2016	1.2337	1.3555	1.2155	1.4800
2017 (through March 24)	1.2491	1.2390	1.2118	1.2643

(1) In the event that the period end fell on a day for which data are not available, the exchange rate on the prior most recent business day is given.

(2) The average of the noon buying rate for pounds sterling on the last day of each full month during the relevant year or each business day during the relevant month indicated.

	Low	High
	(U.S. dollars per pound sterling)	
<b>Month Ended:</b>		
September 30, 2016	1.2959	1.3429
October 31, 2016	1.2155	1.2840
November 30, 2016	1.2218	1.2546
December 31, 2016	1.2222	1.2708
January 31, 2017	1.2118	1.2620
February 28, 2017	1.2427	1.2643
March 2017 (through March 24)	1.2152	1.2526

**PRICE RANGE OF OUR ORDINARY SHARES**

Our ordinary shares have been trading on AIM under the symbol "VRP" since September 19, 2006.

The following table presents, for the periods indicated, the reported high and low sale prices of our ordinary shares on AIM in pounds sterling and U.S. dollars. The price information below has been adjusted to reflect the 50-for-one share consolidation effected February 10, 2017. Price per ordinary share in U.S. dollars amounts below have been translated into U.S. dollars at the noon buying rate of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York on March 24, 2017 of £1.00 to \$1.2491.

	Price Per Ordinary Share £		Price Per Ordinary Share \$	
	High	Low	High	Low
<b>Year Ended December 31:</b>				
2012	2.8550	1.2500	3.5662	1.5614
2013	2.8750	0.8350	3.5912	1.0430
2014	2.2500	0.5000	2.8105	0.6246
2015	3.3530	0.5750	4.1882	0.7182
2016	2.1700	1.1500	2.7105	1.4365
2017 (through March 31)	1.7055	1.2400	2.1303	1.5489
<b>Quarterly:</b>				
First Quarter 2014	2.2500	1.0750	2.8105	1.3428
Second Quarter 2014	1.1900	0.5950	1.4864	0.7432
Third Quarter 2014	0.6950	0.5000	0.8681	0.6246
Fourth Quarter 2014	0.8600	0.5000	1.0742	0.6246
First Quarter 2015	1.4700	0.5750	1.8362	0.7182
Second Quarter 2015	3.3530	1.2380	4.1882	1.5464
Third Quarter 2015	2.6750	2.0000	3.3413	2.4982
Fourth Quarter 2015	2.2950	1.3000	2.8667	1.6238
First Quarter 2016	2.1700	1.1500	2.7105	1.4365
Second Quarter 2016	1.8885	1.3938	2.3589	1.7410
Third Quarter 2016	1.7000	1.4665	2.1234	1.8318
Fourth Quarter 2016	2.0450	1.5250	2.5544	1.9049
First Quarter 2017	1.7055	1.2400	2.1303	1.5489
<b>Most Recent Six Months:</b>				
October 2016	2.0450	1.5800	2.5544	1.9736
November 2016	2.0000	1.7500	2.4982	2.1859
December 2016	1.7245	1.5250	2.1541	1.9049
January 2017	1.7055	1.5000	2.1303	1.8737
February 2017	1.5000	1.2400	1.8737	1.5489
March 2017	1.5080	1.3820	1.8836	1.7263

On \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM was £ \_\_\_\_\_ per share (\$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share based on the exchange rate set forth above).

## USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate that the net proceeds to us from the global offering will be approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million (or approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million if the underwriters exercise in full their options to purchase an additional \_\_\_\_\_ ADSs and \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares), assuming an initial public offering price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ADS in the U.S. offering and an assumed offering price of £ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share in the European private placement, which reflect the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We expect to receive net proceeds of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ from the sale by us of ordinary shares in the shareholder private placement, after deducting estimated placement agent fees.

Each \$1.00 (£ \_\_\_\_\_) increase or decrease in the assumed offering price of £ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share would increase or decrease our net proceeds from the global offering by \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million (£ \_\_\_\_\_) after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and assuming that the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us, as set forth on the cover of this prospectus, remains the same. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) in the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us in the global offering, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease our net proceeds by approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_ million (£ \_\_\_\_\_ million) after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or in the assumed offering price per ordinary share.

We intend to use the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement, together with our existing cash and cash equivalents, as follows:

- approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_ to advance clinical development of RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD, which we expect will be sufficient to initiate and complete our two Phase 2b clinical trials and our PK clinical trial and to complete our Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom;
- approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_ to advance clinical development of RPL554 for the treatment of acute exacerbations of COPD, which we expect will be sufficient to initiate and complete our Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States;
- approximately \$ \_\_\_\_\_ to advance clinical development of RPL554 for the treatment of CF, which we expect will be sufficient to complete our Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom and to initiate and complete our Phase 2b proof-of-concept trial; and
- the remainder to fund our other current and future research and development activities and for working capital and other general corporate purposes.

This expected use of the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement represents our intentions based upon our current plans and business conditions. We may also use a portion of the net proceeds to in-license, acquire or invest in additional businesses, technologies, products or assets, although currently we have no specific agreements, commitments or understandings in this regard. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot predict with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds to be received upon the closing of the global offering and the shareholder private placement or the amounts that we will actually spend on the uses set forth above. Predicting the costs necessary to develop RPL554 and other product candidates can be difficult. The amounts and timing of our actual expenditures and the extent of clinical development may vary significantly depending on numerous factors, including the progress of our development efforts, the status of and results from pre-clinical studies and any ongoing clinical trials or clinical trials we may commence in the future, as well as any collaborations that we may enter into with third parties for RPL554 or other product candidates and any unforeseen cash needs. As a result, our management will retain broad discretion over the allocation of the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement.

[Table of Contents](#)

Based on our planned use of the net proceeds of the global offering, the shareholder private placement and our current cash and cash equivalents, we estimate that such funds will be sufficient to enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements through . We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be incorrect, and we could use our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect.

Pending their use, we plan to invest the net proceeds from the global offering and the shareholder private placement in short- and intermediate-term interest-bearing obligations and certificates of deposit.

## **DIVIDEND POLICY**

We have never paid or declared any cash dividends on our ordinary shares, and we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our ordinary shares in the foreseeable future. We intend to retain all available funds and any future earnings to fund the development and expansion of our business. Under English law, among other things, we may only pay dividends if we have sufficient distributable reserves (on a non-consolidated basis), which are our accumulated realized profits that have not been previously distributed or capitalized less our accumulated realized losses, so far as such losses have not been previously written off in a reduction or reorganization of capital.

## CAPITALIZATION

The table below sets forth our cash and cash equivalents and capitalization as of December 31, 2016 derived from our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus:

- on an actual basis; and
- on an as adjusted basis to give effect to (i) ADSs in the U.S. offering, (ii) the issuance and sale of ordinary shares in the European private placement at the assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS and assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share, and (iii) ordinary shares in the shareholder private placement, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions, estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

You should read this table in conjunction with our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus and "Exchange Rate Information," "Use of Proceeds," "Selected Consolidated Financial Data" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations."

	As of December 31, 2016			
	Actual		As Adjusted <sup>(1)</sup>	
	(in thousands)			
Cash and cash equivalents	£ 39,785	\$ 49,083	£	\$
Derivative financial instrument	£ 7,923	\$ 9,774	£	\$
Equity:				
Share capital	2,568	3,168		
Share premium	58,527	72,204		
Share-based payments reserve	2,102	2,593		
Accumulated loss	(28,728)	(35,442)		
Total equity	34,468	42,524		
Total capitalization	£ 42,391	\$ 52,298	£	\$

- <sup>(1)</sup> Each \$1.00 (£ ) increase or decrease in the assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS and the assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, would increase or decrease the as adjusted amount of each of cash and cash equivalents, total equity and total capitalization by \$ million (£ million), assuming the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us in the global offering, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 in the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease the as adjusted amount of each of cash and cash equivalents, total equity and total capitalization by \$ million (£ million), assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or in the assumed offering price per ordinary share and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions.

The table above excludes:

- 2,837,333 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding as of December 31, 2016 at a weighted average exercise price of £1.87 per share;
- 2,298,773 ordinary shares that may be issued under our equity incentive plans as of December 31, 2016; and
- 12,646,370 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of warrants outstanding as of December 31, 2016 at a weighted average exercise price of £1.7174 per share.

## DILUTION

If you invest in our ADSs or ordinary shares, your interest will be diluted to the extent of the difference between the offering price per ADS or ordinary share paid by purchasers in the global offering and our as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS or ordinary share after completion of the global offering.

At December 31, 2016, we had a historical net tangible book value of £32.2 million (\$39.7 million), corresponding to a net tangible book value of £ per ordinary share (equivalent to \$ per ADS). Net tangible book value per ordinary share represents the amount of our total assets less our total liabilities, excluding goodwill and other intangible assets, divided by the total number of our ordinary shares outstanding as of December 31, 2016.

After giving effect to the sale by us of (i) ADSs in the U.S. offering, (ii) ordinary shares in the European private placement and (iii) ordinary shares in the shareholder private placement, at the assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS and assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions, estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us, our as adjusted net tangible book value as of December 31, 2016 would have been £ million (\$ million), representing an as adjusted net tangible book value of £ per ordinary share (equivalent to \$ per ADS). This represents an immediate increase in net tangible book value of £ per ordinary share (equivalent to \$ per ADS) to existing shareholders and an immediate dilution of \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share, to new investors purchasing ADSs or ordinary shares in the global offering or the shareholder private placement. Dilution per ADS or ordinary share to new investors is determined by subtracting the as adjusted net tangible book value per ADS or ordinary share after the global offering and the shareholder private placement from the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or the assumed offering price per ordinary share, as applicable, paid by new investors.

The following table illustrates this dilution to new investors purchasing ADSs or ordinary shares in the global offering and the shareholder private placement.

	As of December 31, 2016	
	Ordinary Shares	ADSs
<b>Assumed offering price</b>		
Assumed offering price	£	\$
Net tangible book value per ordinary share or ADS	£	\$
Increase in net tangible book value per ordinary share or ADS attributable to the global offering and the shareholder private placement		
As adjusted net tangible book value per ordinary share or ADS after the global offering and the shareholder private placement		
Dilution per ADS or ordinary share to new investors in the global offering and the shareholder private placement	£	\$

If the underwriters exercise in full their options to purchase an additional ADSs and ordinary shares, our as adjusted net tangible book value after the global offering and the shareholder private placement would be £ per ordinary share (equivalent to \$ per ADS), representing an immediate increase in as adjusted net tangible book value of £ per ordinary share (equivalent to \$ per ADS).

[Table of Contents](#)

ADS), to existing shareholders and immediate dilution of \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share to new investors participating in the global offering or shareholder private placement, based on the assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS in the U.S. offering and the assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share in the European private placement and shareholder private placement, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017.

Each \$1.00 (£ ) increase or decrease in the assumed offering price of £ per our ordinary share, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, would increase or decrease the as adjusted net tangible book value after the global offering and shareholder private placement by \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share and the dilution to new investors in the global offering and shareholder private placement by \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share, after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions and assuming that the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same. An increase of 1,000,000 in the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us in the global offering, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase the as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering by \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share and decrease the dilution to new investors participating in the global offering or shareholder private placement by \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share, assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or in the assumed offering price per ordinary share and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions. A decrease of 1,000,000 in the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us in the global offering, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would decrease the as adjusted net tangible book value after the global offering and shareholder private placement by \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share, and increase the dilution to new investors participating in the global offering or shareholder private placement by \$ per ADS and £ per ordinary share, assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or in the assumed offering price per ordinary share and after deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions.

The following table summarizes, as of December 31, 2016, on the as adjusted basis described above, the number of ordinary shares purchased from us (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) the total consideration paid to us and the average price per ordinary share and per ADS paid by existing shareholders and by new investors purchasing ADSs or ordinary shares in the global offering and shareholder private placement. The table below is based on an assumed initial public offering price of \$ per ADS in the U.S. offering and an assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share in the European private placement and shareholder private placement, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, before deducting the estimated underwriting discounts and commissions, estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us:

	Ordinary Shares Purchased <sup>(1)</sup>		Total Consideration		Average Price per Ordinary Share	Average Price per ADS
	Number	Percent	Amount	Percent		
Existing shareholders			% \$		% \$	\$ —
New investors						
<b>Total</b>			% \$		%	

(1) Including ordinary shares represented by ADSs.

[Table of Contents](#)

Each \$1.00 (£ ) increase or decrease in the assumed offering price of £ per ordinary share (\$ per ordinary share), which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, would increase or decrease the total consideration paid by new investors by \$ million (£ million) and, in the case of an increase, would increase the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by percentage points and, in the case of a decrease, would decrease the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by percentage points, assuming that the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us in the global offering, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same. An increase or decrease of 1,000,000 in the number of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, would increase or decrease the total consideration paid by new investors by \$ million (£ million) and, in the case of an increase, would increase the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by percentage points and, in the case of a decrease, would decrease the percentage of total consideration paid by new investors by percentage points, assuming no change in the assumed initial public offering price per ADS or in the assumed offering price per ordinary share.

If the underwriters exercise in full their options to purchase an additional ADSs and ordinary shares, the following will occur:

- the percentage of our ordinary shares held by existing shareholders will decrease to % of the total number of our ordinary shares outstanding after the global offering and shareholder private placement; and
- the percentage of our ordinary shares held by new investors will increase to approximately % of the total number of our ordinary shares outstanding after the global offering.

The tables above are based on 51,361,063 ordinary shares outstanding as of December 31, 2016 and ordinary shares represented by our ADSs offered hereby. The tables above exclude:

- 2,837,333 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of share options outstanding as of December 31, 2016 at a weighted average exercise price of £1.87 per share;
- 2,298,773 ordinary shares that may be issued under our equity incentive plans as of December 31, 2016; and
- 12,646,370 ordinary shares issuable upon the exercise of warrants outstanding as of December 31, 2016 at a weighted average exercise price of £1.7174 per share.

Each of our chairman of the board of directors and an existing shareholder have indicated an interest in purchasing up to approximately £ of our ordinary shares, in a private placement separate from the global offering, contingent on and concurrent with the completion of the global offering at a price per share equal to the offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement. However, indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and we could determine to sell more, less or no shares to these shareholders and these shareholders could determine to purchase more, less or no shares in the proposed shareholder private placement. The underwriters will serve as placement agents for such shareholder private placement and receive a placement agent fee equal to a percentage of the total purchase price of the private placement shares, which percentage will be equal to the percentage discount the underwriters will receive on shares sold in this global offering. The closing of this global offering is not conditioned upon the closing of such shareholder private placement.

To the extent that stock options or warrants are exercised or we issue additional ADSs or ordinary shares in the future, there will be further dilution to investors participating in the global offering. In addition, we may choose to raise additional capital because of market conditions or strategic considerations, even if we believe that we have sufficient funds for our current or future operating plans. If we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the issuance of these securities could result in further dilution to our stockholders.

**SELECTED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL DATA**

You should read the following selected consolidated financial data together with the Annual Consolidated Financial Statements and the sections titled "Exchange Rate Information" and "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations." We have derived the consolidated statement of comprehensive income data for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 and the consolidated statement of financial position as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 from our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of the results that should be expected in any future period.

We maintain our books and records in pounds sterling, and we prepare our financial statements in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB. We report our financial results in pounds sterling. For the convenience of the reader, we have translated pound sterling amounts as of and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 into U.S. dollars at the noon buying rate of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York on December 30, 2016, which was £1.00 to \$1.2337. These translations should not be considered representations that any such amounts have been, could have been or could be converted into U.S. dollars at that or any other exchange rate as of that or any other date.

	Year Ended December 31,			
	2015		2016	
	(£)	(\$)	(£)	(\$)
	(in thousands, except per ordinary share data)			
<b>Consolidated statement of comprehensive income data:</b>				
Research and development costs	(7,269)	(8,968)	(4,522)	(5,579)
General and administrative costs	(1,706)	(2,105)	(2,498)	(3,082)
Operating loss	(8,975)	(11,072)	(7,020)	(8,661)
Finance income	45	55	1,841	2,272
Finance expense	(72)	(89)	(794)	(979)
Loss before taxation	(9,002)	(11,106)	(5,973)	(7,368)
Taxation — credit	1,509	1,862	954	1,177
Loss for the year	(7,493)	(9,244)	(5,018)	(6,191)
Other comprehensive income:				
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	4	5	43	53
Total comprehensive loss attributable to owners of the company	(7,489)	(9,239)	(4,976)	(6,139)
Loss per ordinary share — basic and diluted	(0.37)	(0.46)	(0.15)	(0.19)

	Year Ended December 31,			
	2015		2016	
	(£)	(\$)	(£)	(\$)
	(in thousands)			
<b>Consolidated statement of financial position data:</b>				
Cash and cash equivalents	3,524	4,348	39,785	49,083
Total assets	7,840	9,673	46,143	56,926
Share premium	26,650	32,878	58,527	72,204
Total liabilities	2,407	2,969	11,674	14,403
Accumulated loss	(23,752)	(29,303)	(28,728)	(35,442)
Total equity	5,434	6,704	34,468	42,524

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

*You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with the information in "Selected Consolidated Financial Data" and our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements, including the notes thereto. The following discussion is based on our financial information prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB, which may differ in material respects from generally accepted accounting principles in other jurisdictions, including generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, or U.S. GAAP. The following discussion includes forward-looking statements that involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions. Our actual results may differ materially from those anticipated in these forward-looking statements as a result of many factors, including but not limited to those described under "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this prospectus.*

*For the convenience of the reader, we have translated some pound sterling amounts as of and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 and into U.S. dollars at the noon buying rate of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York on December 30, 2016, which was £1.00 to \$1.2337. These translations should not be considered representations that any such amounts have been, could have been or could be converted into U.S. dollars at that or any other exchange rate as of that or any other date.*

### Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing innovative therapeutics for the treatment of respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs. Our product candidate, RPL554, is a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4, that acts as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory agent in a single compound. We are not aware of any therapy in a single compound approved by the FDA or the EMA for the treatment of respiratory diseases that acts as both a bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory agent. We believe RPL554 has the potential to be the first novel class of bronchodilator in over 40 years. We have completed eight Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials for RPL554, with 282 subjects enrolled. In our clinical trials, treatment with RPL554 has been observed to result in statistically significant improvements in lung function as compared to placebo. Our clinical trials also have shown clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvements in lung function when RPL554 is added to two commonly used bronchodilators as compared to either bronchodilator administered as a single agent. RPL554 also has shown anti-inflammatory effects and has been well tolerated in our clinical trials, and has not been observed to result in the gastrointestinal or other side effects commonly associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market for the treatment of COPD. We are developing RPL554 for the treatment of patients with COPD and for the treatment of patients with CF. We believe RPL554, if approved, has the potential to become an important and novel treatment and standard of care for COPD and CF patients. We may also explore, alone or with a collaborator, development of RPL554 to treat asthma and other respiratory diseases.

To evaluate RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD, we plan to commence a four-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2017, which will evaluate RPL554 as a single agent as compared to placebo in approximately 400 patients. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the second half of 2018. We also plan to commence a single-dose PK trial in approximately 12 healthy volunteers in the United States in mid-2017. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. In February 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom in approximately 30 patients with COPD to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to tiotropium, a commonly used long-acting bronchodilator. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. We also plan to commence a 12-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2018 to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator in approximately 400 patients.

## [Table of Contents](#)

To evaluate RPL554 in a nebulized formulation as an add-on therapy for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD, we intend to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States in the second half of 2018 in approximately 150 patients.

In March 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a single-dose PK and PD trial in the United Kingdom evaluating RPL554 in up to ten CF patients and expect to report top-line data from this trial in the first half of 2018. The results of this clinical trial will support dose selection for a proof-of-concept Phase 2b trial in approximately 100 patients with CF, which we plan to commence in 2018.

We do not have any approved products and, as a result, have not generated any revenue from product sales or otherwise. RPL554 is our only current product candidate and our ability to generate revenue sufficient to achieve profitability will depend on our successful development and eventual commercialization of RPL554, if approved, for one or more of its targeted indications. Since our inception, we have incurred significant operating losses. For the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 we incurred net losses of £7.5 million and £5.0 million, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, we had an accumulated loss of £28.7 million.

We expect to incur significant expenses and operating losses for the foreseeable future as we advance the clinical development of RPL554, and seek regulatory approval and pursue commercialization of RPL554, if approved. In addition, if we obtain regulatory approval for RPL554, we expect to incur significant commercialization expenses related to product manufacturing, marketing, sales and distribution. In addition, we may incur expenses in connection with the in-license or acquisition of additional product candidates and the potential clinical development of any such product candidates. Furthermore, upon the closing of the global offering, we expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a U.S. public company listed on the NASDAQ in addition to operating as a U.K. public company listed on AIM, including significant legal, accounting, investor relations and other expenses that we did not previously incur.

As a result of these anticipated expenditures, we will need additional financing to support our continuing operations. Until such time as we can generate significant revenue from product sales, if ever, we expect to finance our operations through a combination of public or private equity or debt financings or other sources, which may include collaborations with third parties. Adequate additional financing may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. Our inability to raise capital as and when needed would have a negative impact on our financial condition and our ability to pursue our business strategy. We will need to generate significant revenue to achieve profitability, and we may never do so.

We were incorporated in 2005 and are headquartered in the United Kingdom. Since 2006, our ordinary shares have traded on AIM, a market of the London Stock Exchange, under the symbol "VRP". We have raised £74.6 million in gross proceeds from investors since such listing, of which £44.7 million was raised in our most recent private placement of equity securities in July 2016 with a number of European and U.S.-based healthcare specialist investment firms.

### **License Agreement with Vernalis**

In February 2005, Rhinopharma entered into an assignment and license agreement with Vernalis, which we refer to as the Vernalis Agreement. In 2006, we acquired Rhinopharma and all of its rights and obligations under the Vernalis Agreement. Pursuant to the Vernalis Agreement, Vernalis assigned to us all of its rights to certain patents and patent applications relating to RPL554 and related compounds, or the Vernalis Patents. Vernalis also granted to us an exclusive, worldwide, royalty-bearing license to certain Vernalis know-how to develop, manufacture and commercialize products, or the Licensed Products, based on PDE inhibitors developed using Vernalis Patents, Vernalis know-how and the physical stock of certain compounds, including RPL554, in the treatment of human or animal allergic or inflammatory disorders.

Under the Vernalis Agreement, we are obligated to pay Vernalis a milestone payment of £5.0 million upon the first approval of any regulatory authority for the commercialization of any Licensed Product, and a portion equal to a percentage in the mid twenties of any consideration received from any of our

## [Table of Contents](#)

sublicensees for Vernalis Patents or Vernalis know-how, excluding royalties. We must also pay Vernalis, on a Licensed Product-by-Product and country-by-country basis, a low to mid-single digit percentage royalty based on net sales of each Licensed Product. See "Business — Vernalis Agreement" for further information regarding this agreement.

We have recorded a liability in our statement of financial position reflecting the contingent obligation we assumed from Rhinopharma to make payments to Vernalis under the Vernalis Agreement. Any change in the carrying value of this assumed contingent obligation in any reporting period is recorded as finance expense or finance income in our statement of comprehensive income. See "— Financial Operations Overview — Finance Income and Expense" and Note 2.13 of our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements.

### **Financial Operations Overview**

#### ***Revenue***

We do not have any approved products. Accordingly, we have not generated any revenue, and we do not expect to generate any revenue from the sale of any products unless or until we obtain regulatory approvals of and commercialize RPL554 or any other product candidate we may develop in the future, which may never occur.

#### ***Research and Development Costs***

Research and development costs include:

- employee-related expenses, such as salaries, share-based compensation, benefits and travel expense, for our research and development personnel;
- costs for production of drug substance by CMOs;
- fees and other costs paid to CROs and consultants to conduct our clinical trials and pre-clinical and non-clinical studies;
- costs of related facilities, materials and equipment;
- costs associated with obtaining and maintaining patents and other intellectual property; and
- amortization and depreciation of intangible and tangible fixed assets used to develop RPL554.

Research and development activities will continue to be central to our business model. Product candidates in later stages of clinical development, such as RPL554 for the treatment of COPD, generally have higher development costs than those in earlier stages of clinical development, primarily due to the increased size and duration of later-stage clinical trials. We expect our research and development costs to be significant over the next several years as we hire additional research and development personnel and increase compensation costs, advance the clinical development of RPL554, develop new formulations of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD, commence the clinical development of RPL554 for the treatment of CF and potentially pursue the development of RPL554 for other forms of respiratory disease, including asthma.

The successful development and commercialization of RPL554 is highly uncertain. At this time, we cannot reasonably estimate the nature, timing and estimated costs of the efforts that will be necessary to complete the development of, or the period, if any, in which material net cash inflows may commence from, RPL554 or any future product candidates. This is due to numerous risks and uncertainties associated with developing drugs, including the uncertainty of:

- the scope, rate of progress and expense of our research and development activities;
- the progress and results of clinical trials and pre-clinical and non-clinical studies;
- the terms and timing of regulatory approvals;
- the expense of filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing patent claims and other intellectual property rights; and
- the ability to market, commercialize and achieve market acceptance for RPL554 or any other future product candidate, if approved.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Any of these variables with respect to the development of RPL554 or any other future candidate that we may develop could result in a significant change in the costs and timing associated with the development of RPL554 or such future product candidate. For example, if the FDA, the EMA or other regulatory authority were to require us to conduct pre-clinical studies and clinical trials beyond those we currently anticipate will be required for the completion of clinical development or if we experience significant delays in enrollment in any clinical trials, we could be required to expend significant additional financial resources and time on the completion of our clinical development programs.

### **General and Administrative Costs**

Our general and administrative costs principally consist of salaries and related benefits, including share-based compensation, for personnel in our executive, finance and other administrative functions. Other general and administrative costs include facility-related costs and professional services fees for auditing, tax and general legal services, as well as expenses associated with the requirements of being a listed public company on AIM. We expect that our general and administrative costs will increase in the future as our business expands and we increase our headcount to support the expected growth in our operating activities. These increases will likely include increased costs related to the hiring of additional personnel and fees to outside consultants, lawyers and accountants, among other expenses. Additionally, we anticipate increased costs associated with being a U.S. public company, including expenses related to services associated with maintaining compliance with NASDAQ rules and SEC requirements, director compensation, insurance and investor relation costs. If RPL554 obtains regulatory approval for marketing, we expect that we will incur expenses associated with building a sales and marketing team. In addition, we expect to continue to grant share-based compensation awards to key management personnel and other employees.

### **Finance Income and Expense**

Finance income consists of interest earned on our cash and cash equivalents and any decrease in the carrying value resulting from the remeasurement of the assumed contingent obligation under the Vernalis Agreement and any decrease in the fair value of the derivative financial liability related to the 31,115,926 units issued by us to new and existing institutional and other investors in July 2016, or the July Placement.

Finance expense consists of any increase in the carrying value resulting from the remeasurement of the assumed contingent obligation under the Vernalis Agreement and any increase in the fair value of the derivative financial liability related to the July Placement. See "— License Agreement with Vernalis" and "Business — Vernalis Agreement" for further information regarding the Vernalis Agreement and see "Related Party Transactions — Ordinary Share and Warrant Placement" for further information regarding the July Placement.

### **Taxation**

As a U.K. resident trading entity, we are subject to U.K. corporate taxation. Due to the nature of our business, we have generated losses since inception. As a company that carries out extensive research and development activities, we benefit from the U.K. research and development tax credit regime and are able to surrender some of our trading losses that arise from our research and development activities for a cash rebate of up to 33.35% of eligible research and development expenditure. Qualifying expenditures largely comprise employment costs for research staff, consumables and certain internal overhead costs incurred as part of research projects. In the event we generate revenues in the future, we may benefit from the new "patent box" initiative that allows profits attributable to revenues from patents or patented products to be taxed at a lower rate than other revenue. This relief applies to profits earned from April 1, 2013 and following the transitional arrangements that will phase in the relief, the rate of tax for relevant streams of revenue for companies receiving this relief will be 10%.

**Results of Operations**

The following table sets forth our results of operations for the periods indicated.

	Year Ended December 31,			
	2015		2016	
	(in thousands)			
Research and development costs	£ (7,269)	\$ (8,968)	£ (4,522)	\$ (5,579)
General and administrative costs	(1,706)	(2,105)	(2,498)	(3,082)
Operating loss	(8,975)	(11,072)	(7,020)	(8,661)
Finance income	45	55	1,841	2,272
Finance expense	(72)	(89)	(794)	(979)
Loss before taxation	(9,002)	(11,106)	(5,973)	(7,368)
Taxation — credit	1,509	1,862	954	1,177
Loss for the year	(7,493)	(9,244)	(5,018)	(6,191)
Other comprehensive income:				
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	4	5	43	53
Total comprehensive loss attributable to owners of the company	£ (7,489)	\$ (9,239)	£ (4,976)	\$ (6,139)

**Comparison of Operations for the Years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016***Research and Development Costs*

Research and development costs were £4.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to £7.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2015, a decrease of £2.8 million. The decrease was attributable to a £3.6 million decrease in clinical trial expenses related to the completion of our Phase 2a clinical trials of RPL554 in late 2015 and early 2016, which were partially offset by a £0.7 million increase in research and development personnel costs and a £0.1 million increase in pre-clinical research, contract manufacturing, patent and other costs.

*General and Administrative Costs*

General and administrative costs were £2.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to £1.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2015, an increase of £0.8 million. The increase was attributable to a £0.2 million increase in personnel costs, a £0.3 million increase in professional service fees and expenses, and a £0.2 million increase in other facility and office related costs.

*Finance Income and Expense*

Finance income was £1.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 and £45 thousand for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase in finance income was primarily due to a decrease in the fair value of the warrant liability of £1.1 million caused by changes in the underlying assumptions for measuring the liability of the warrants issued in the July Placement, including the price and volatility of our ordinary shares and the unwinding of the expected life of the warrants.

Finance expense was £0.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 as compared to £0.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase was primarily due to the inclusion of the proportion of expenses incurred in connection with the July Placement which related to the issue of warrants, and which were recorded as a finance expense (the remainder of the July Placement expenses related to the equity issued and were recorded as a charge against share premium), as well as an increase in the calculated value of the assumed contingent obligation resulting from the Vernalis Agreement.

[Table of Contents](#)*Taxation*

Taxation for the year ended December 31, 2016 amounted to a credit of £1.0 million as compared to a credit of £1.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2015, a decrease in the credit amount of £0.5 million. The credits are obtained at a rate of 14.5% of 230% of our qualifying research and development expenditure, and the decrease in the credit amount was primarily attributable to our decreased expenditure on research and development.

**Liquidity and Capital Resources****Overview**

Since our inception, we have incurred significant operating losses. We anticipate that we will continue to incur losses for at least the next several years. We expect that our research and development and general and administrative costs will increase in connection with conducting clinical trials for RPL554 and seeking marketing approval for RPL554 in the United States and Europe as well as other jurisdictions. As a result, we will need additional capital to fund our operations, which we may obtain from additional financings, research funding, collaborations, contract and grant revenue or other sources.

We do not currently have any approved products and have never generated any revenue from product sales or otherwise. To date, we have financed our operations primarily through the issuances of our equity securities, including warrants. Since our inception, we raised gross proceeds of £74.6 million from private placements of equity securities. As of December 31, 2016, we had cash and cash equivalents of £39.8 million.

We have no ongoing material financing commitments, such as lines of credit or guarantees, that are expected to affect our liquidity over the next five years, other than leases.

**Cash Flows**

The table below summaries our cash flows for each of the periods presented.

---

	(in thousands)			
	Year Ended December 31,			
	2015		2016	
Net cash used in operating activities	£ (6,357)	\$ (7,842)	£ (5,588)	\$ (6,894)
Net cash used in investing activities	(92)	(114)	(41)	(51)
Net cash from financing activities	—	—	41,203	50,833
Net (decrease) increase in cash and cash equivalents	<u>£(6,449)</u>	<u>\$ (7,956)</u>	<u>£ 35,574</u>	<u>\$ 43,888</u>

---

The decrease in net cash used in operating activities to £5.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 from £6.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2015 was primarily due to a decrease in loss before taxation driven by lower research and development costs.

The decrease in net cash used in investing activities to £41 thousand for the year ended December 31, 2016 from £92 thousand for the year ended December 31, 2015 was primarily due to an increase in interest income received on the company cash balances during 2016.

The increase in net cash from financing activities to £41.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2016 from £nil for the year ended December 31, 2015 was due to the cash received from the sale of our equity securities and warrants in connection with the July Placement.

### **Operating and Capital Expenditure Requirements**

As of December 31, 2016, we had an accumulated loss of £28.7 million. We expect to continue to incur significant operating losses for the foreseeable future as we continue our research and development efforts and seek to obtain regulatory approval and commercialization of RPL554 and any future product candidate we develop.

We expect our expenses to increase substantially in connection with our ongoing development activities related to RPL554 and any future product candidates. In addition, upon the closing of the global offering, we expect to incur additional costs associated with operating as a U.S. public company listed on NASDAQ in addition to operating as a U.K. public company listed on AIM. We anticipate that our expenses will increase substantially if and as we:

- initiate and conduct our planned clinical trials for RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD and as a treatment for acute COPD;
- initiate and conduct our planned clinical trials for RPL554 for the treatment of CF;
- continue the research and development of other formulations of RPL554, including developing our DPI and MDI formulations of RPL554;
- initiate and progress pre-clinical studies relating to other potential indications of RPL554;
- seek to discover and develop additional product candidates;
- seek regulatory approvals for any of our product candidates that successfully completes clinical trials;
- potentially establish a sales, marketing and distribution infrastructure and scale-up manufacturing capabilities to commercialize any products for which we may obtain regulatory approval;
- maintain, expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio;
- add clinical, scientific, operational, financial and management information systems and personnel, including personnel to support our product development and potential future commercialization efforts and to support our operations as a U.S. public company listed on the NASDAQ; and
- experience any delays or encounter any issues from any of the above, including but not limited to failed studies, complex results, safety issues or other regulatory challenges.

We expect that our existing cash and cash equivalents, together with anticipated net proceeds from the global offering and shareholder private placement, will enable us to fund our operating expenses and capital expenditure requirements through . We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we may use our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development of RPL554 and any future product candidates and because the extent to which we may enter into collaborations with third parties for development of RPL554 is unknown, we are unable to estimate the amounts of increased capital outlays and operating expenses associated with completing the research and development of RPL554. Our future capital requirements for RPL554 or any future product candidates will depend on many factors, including:

- the progress, timing and completion of pre-clinical testing and clinical trials for RPL554 or any future product candidates and the potential that we may be required to conduct additional clinical trials for RPL554;
- the number of potential new product candidates we decide to in-license and develop;
- the costs involved in growing our organization to the size needed to allow for the research, development and potential commercialization of RPL554 or any future product candidates;
- the costs involved in filing patent applications and maintaining and enforcing patents or defending against claims or infringements raised by third parties;
- the time and costs involved in obtaining regulatory approvals for RPL554 or any future product candidate we develop and any delays we may encounter as a result of evolving regulatory requirements or adverse results with respect to RPL554 any future product candidates;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- any licensing or milestone fees we might have to pay during future development of RPL554 or any future product candidates;
- selling and marketing activities undertaken in connection with the anticipated commercialization of RPL554 or any future product candidates, if approved, and costs involved in the creation of an effective sales and marketing organization; and
- the amount of revenues, if any, we may derive either directly or in the form of royalty payments from future sales of RPL554 or any future product candidates, if approved.

Our commercial revenues, if any, will be derived from sales of products that we do not expect to be commercially available for many years, if ever. Accordingly, we will need to obtain substantial additional funds to achieve our business objective.

Adequate additional funds may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a shareholder. Any future debt financing or preferred equity financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends and may require the issuance of warrants, which could potentially dilute your ownership interests.

If we raised additional funds through collaborations, strategic alliances or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies, future revenue streams, research programs or product candidates or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity or debt financings when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our product development programs or any future commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market product candidates that we would otherwise prefer to develop and market ourselves.

### **Contractual Obligations and Commitments**

The table below summarizes our contractual obligations at December 31, 2016.

---

	Payments Due by Period				
	Total	Less than 1 year	1 - 3 years	3 - 5 years	More than 5 years
Operating lease obligations	£270	£270	£—	£—	£—
Total	£270	£270	£—	£—	£—

---

The table above does not include assumed contingent obligation payments we may be required to make under the Vernalis Agreement because the amount, timing and likelihood of payment are not known. Such additional payment obligations may be material. See sections titled "— License Agreement with Vernalis" and "Business — Vernalis Agreement."

In addition, we enter into contracts in the ordinary course of business with CROs to assist in the performance of our research and development activities and other services and products for operating purposes. These contracts generally provide for termination on notice, and therefore are cancelable contracts and not included in the table of contractual obligations and commitments.

## **Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

In connection with the preparation for this initial public offering, we reassessed our critical accounting policies to ensure compliance with IFRS. As part of this reassessment, we identified errors relating to the recognition of assumed liabilities and goodwill in connection with the acquisition of Rhinopharma in September 2006. These errors are discussed further in the notes to our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. The correction of these errors is reflected within our consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this prospectus and is reflected in our financial statements prepared for U.K. reporting requirements for the year ended December 31, 2016.

We concluded that a lack of adequate controls surrounding our historic accounting for business combinations constituted a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, as defined in the standards established by the U.S. Public Accounting Oversight Board, or the PCAOB. The PCAOB defines a material weakness as a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the company's annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected in a timely basis. We are currently in the process of remediating this material weakness and are taking steps that we believe will address the underlying causes of the material weakness by the hiring of our new chief financial officer and enhancing our financial reporting team's technical accounting knowledge associated with the accounting rules for business combinations. However, we cannot be certain that these efforts will be sufficient to remediate this material weakness or prevent future material weaknesses or significant deficiencies from occurring.

## **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We did not have during the periods presented, and we do not currently have, any off-balance sheet arrangements, as defined in the rules and regulations of the SEC.

## **Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk**

We are exposed to a variety of financial risks. Our overall risk management program seeks to minimize potential adverse effects of these financial risks on our financial performance.

### ***Credit Risk***

We consider all of our material counterparties to be creditworthy. We consider the credit risk for each of our counterparties to be low and do not have a significant concentration of credit risk at any of our counterparties.

### ***Liquidity Risk***

We manage our liquidity risk by maintaining adequate cash reserves at banking facilities, and by continuously monitoring our cash forecasts, our actual cash flows and by matching the maturity profiles of financial assets and liabilities.

### ***Market Risk***

Foreign currency risk reflects the risk that the value of a financial commitment or recognized asset or liability will fluctuate due to changes in foreign currency rates. Our financial position, as expressed in pounds sterling, are exposed to movements in foreign exchange rates against the U.S. dollar and the euro. Our main trading currencies are pounds sterling, the U.S. dollar and the euro. We are exposed to foreign currency risk as a result of operating transactions and the translation for foreign bank accounts. We monitor our exposure to foreign exchange risk. We have not entered into foreign exchange contracts to hedge against gains or losses from foreign exchange fluctuations.

Interest rate risk reflects the risk that the value of a financial instrument will fluctuate as a result of change in market interest rates on classes of financial assets and financial liabilities. We do not hold any derivative instruments to manage interest rate risk.

## **Critical Accounting Judgments and Estimates**

Our management's discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations is based on our financial statements, which we have prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements, as well as the reported revenues and expenses during the reporting periods. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions. There have been no material adjustments to prior period estimates for any of the periods included in this prospectus.

Our significant accounting policies are more fully described in the notes to our financial statements appearing elsewhere in this prospectus. We believe that the following accounting policies are the most critical to aid you in fully understanding and evaluating our financial condition and results of operations.

### ***Assumed Contingent Obligation***

A significant management estimate relates to the probability, amount and timing of any payment relating to the assumed contingent obligation under the Vernalis Agreement, a provision for which is recorded in our statement of financial position. See "— License Agreement with Vernalis," "Business — Vernalis Agreement" and Note 21 to our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus. A change in the probability and timing of any payment relating to the assumed contingent obligation could result in a significant fluctuation in our financial results in future periods.

### ***Share-Based Compensation***

We measure share options at fair value at their grant date in accordance with IFRS 2, "Share-based Payment." We calculate the fair value of the share options using either the Black-Scholes model, or for options with performance conditions, a simulation model. We charge the fair value to the statement of comprehensive income over the expected vesting period.

### ***Impairment of Intangible Assets***

Determining whether an intangible asset is impaired requires an estimation of whether there are any indications that its carrying value is not recoverable.

At each reporting date, we review the carrying value of our tangible and intangible assets to determine whether there is any indication that those assets have been impaired. If such an indication exists, the recoverable amount of the asset, being the higher of the asset's fair value less costs to sell and value in use, is compared to the asset's carrying value. Any excess of the asset's carrying value over its recoverable amount is expensed to the income statement.

### ***Valuation of Derivative Financial Liability***

In connection with the July Placement, we issued 31,115,926 warrants to new and existing institutional and other investors. Each warrant is entitled to purchase 0.4 of an ordinary share at a price of £1.7238. Each warrant is exercisable beginning upon the closing of the global offering and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the closing of the global offering.

We classify these warrants as a derivative financial liability to be presented on our consolidated statement of financial position. The fair value of these warrants is determined by applying the Black-Scholes model. Assumptions are made on inputs such as time to maturity, the share price, volatility and risk free rate, in order to determine the fair value per warrant. For valuation purposes at recognition of the liability, we used the closing share price of our ordinary shares as reported on AIM on July 29, 2016, the date of issuance of the warrants.

At the date of issuance of the warrants we calculated a fair value and recorded a derivative financial liability, which on initial recognition was offset against the share premium in relation to the funds received in connection with the July Placement. Subsequent updates to the fair value of the derivative financial liability will not result in changes to share premium, but will result in an adjusting entry in the consolidated

[Table of Contents](#)

derivative financial liability statement of comprehensive income. We will continue to adjust the derivative financial liability until the earlier of the exercise of the warrants or expiration of the warrants occurs.

**Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

We refer to Note 2 to our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended December 31, 2016 included elsewhere in this prospectus for a discussion of new standards and interpretations not yet adopted by us.

**JOBS Act**

In April 2012, the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012, or the JOBS Act, was enacted. Section 107(b) of the JOBS Act provides that an emerging growth company can take advantage of an extended transition period for complying with new or revised accounting standards. Thus, an emerging growth company can delay the adoption of certain accounting standards until those standards would otherwise apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this extended transition period, and, as a result, we will adopt new or revised accounting standards on the relevant dates on which adoption of such standards is required for other public companies.

## BUSINESS

### Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company focused on developing and commercializing innovative therapeutics for the treatment of respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs. Our product candidate, RPL554, is a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of the enzymes phosphodiesterase 3 and 4, or PDE3 and PDE4, that acts as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory agent in a single compound. We are not aware of any therapy in a single compound in clinical development or approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, or the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, for the treatment of respiratory diseases that acts as both a bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory agent. We believe RPL554 has the potential to be the first novel class of bronchodilator in over 40 years. We have completed eight Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials for RPL554, with 282 subjects enrolled. In our clinical trials, treatment with RPL554 has been observed to result in statistically significant improvements in lung function as compared to placebo. Statistically significant means that there is a low statistical probability, typically less than 5%, that the observed results occurred by chance alone. Our clinical trials also have shown clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvements in lung function when RPL554 is added to two commonly used bronchodilators as compared to either bronchodilator administered as a single agent. RPL554 also has shown anti-inflammatory effects and been well tolerated in our clinical trials, and has not been observed to result in the gastrointestinal or other side effects commonly associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market for the treatment of COPD. We are developing RPL554 for the treatment of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, or COPD, and for the treatment of patients with cystic fibrosis, or CF. We believe RPL554, if approved, has the potential to become an important and novel treatment and standard of care for these patients. We may also explore, alone or with a collaborator, the development of RPL554 to treat asthma and other respiratory diseases.

We are developing RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD patients. We also are developing RPL554 in a nebulized formulation as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other commonly used therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. Patients with more severe COPD, who tend to suffer more frequent exacerbations, generally prefer treatment with a nebulizer as they view its perceived benefits, including greater confidence in effective drug administration and a reduced need to visit health care providers, as outweighing its perceived disadvantages, which include length of treatment administration and required cleaning. In addition, use of a nebulizer is generally preferred when administering larger doses in the hospital setting. We also are developing our nebulized formulation of RPL554 for CF, which is a disease commonly treated with a nebulizer.

To evaluate RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD, we plan to commence a four-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2017, which will evaluate RPL554 as a single agent as compared to placebo in approximately 400 patients. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the second half of 2018. We also plan to commence a single-dose pharmacokinetic, or PK, trial in approximately 12 healthy volunteers in the United States in mid-2017. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. A PK trial involves the study of the process of bodily absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of a drug. In February 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom in approximately 30 patients with COPD to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to tiotropium, a commonly used long-acting bronchodilator. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. We also plan to commence a 12-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2018 to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator in approximately 400 patients. Our planned clinical trials for RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD will be designed to evaluate the effect on lung function, as measured by the maximal volume of air a person can forcefully exhale in one second, or FEV<sub>1</sub>, and duration of action of the product candidate. These clinical endpoints are commonly used in clinical trials for

[Table of Contents](#)

respiratory diseases and have been used by other companies in obtaining FDA approval of drugs addressing respiratory diseases.

To evaluate RPL554 in a nebulized formulation as an add-on therapy for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD, we intend to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States in the second half of 2018 in approximately 150 patients.

In March 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a single-dose PK and pharmacodynamics, or PD, trial in the United Kingdom evaluating RPL554 in up to ten CF patients and expect to report top-line data from this trial in the first half of 2018. A PD trial involves the study of the biochemical and physiological effects of a drug and its mechanism of action, including the correlation of the drug's actions and effects with its chemical structure. The results of this clinical trial will support dose selection for a proof-of-concept Phase 2b trial in approximately 100 patients with CF, which we plan to commence in 2018.

We also are developing RPL554 in both dry powder inhaler, or DPI, and metered dose inhaler, or MDI, formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. Handheld DPI and MDI devices are the most common forms of drug delivery in non-hospitalized patients with COPD and are well suited for maintenance therapy. We believe the development of DPI and MDI formulations has the potential to significantly increase the market opportunity for RPL554, if approved, for the maintenance treatment of COPD. In addition, we may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases. Following the completion of our DPI and MDI formulation process, we plan to commence pre-clinical studies for RPL554 in these formulations in 2018.

According to the World Health Organization, over one billion people suffer from chronic respiratory diseases. Among the most common of these afflictions is COPD, which is a progressive respiratory disease for which there is no cure. COPD damages the airways and the lungs and leads to shortness of breath, impacting a person's ability to perform daily activities. Chronic inflammation plays a central role in the pathology of the disease, and is particularly prominent in the airways of COPD patients. COPD includes chronic bronchitis, which refers to the inflammation of the lung and airways that results in coughing and sputum production, and emphysema, which refers to a destruction of distal lung tissue, or air sacs. In some cases, patients with COPD experience exacerbations, which are estimated to cause approximately 1.5 million emergency department visits, 687,000 hospitalizations and 129,000 deaths per year in the United States alone. According to the World Health Organization, COPD is the third leading cause of death globally, with 210 million people worldwide suffering from the disease. It is estimated that there are 24 million people with COPD in the United States, only half of whom have been diagnosed. Of those diagnosed with COPD in the United States, approximately 2 million suffer from severe or very severe forms of the disease. Total annual medical costs relating to COPD in the United States were estimated to be \$32 billion in 2010 and are projected to rise to \$49 billion in 2020. Global sales of drugs currently indicated for COPD were \$10.6 billion in 2016 and are expected to grow to \$15.6 billion in 2019.

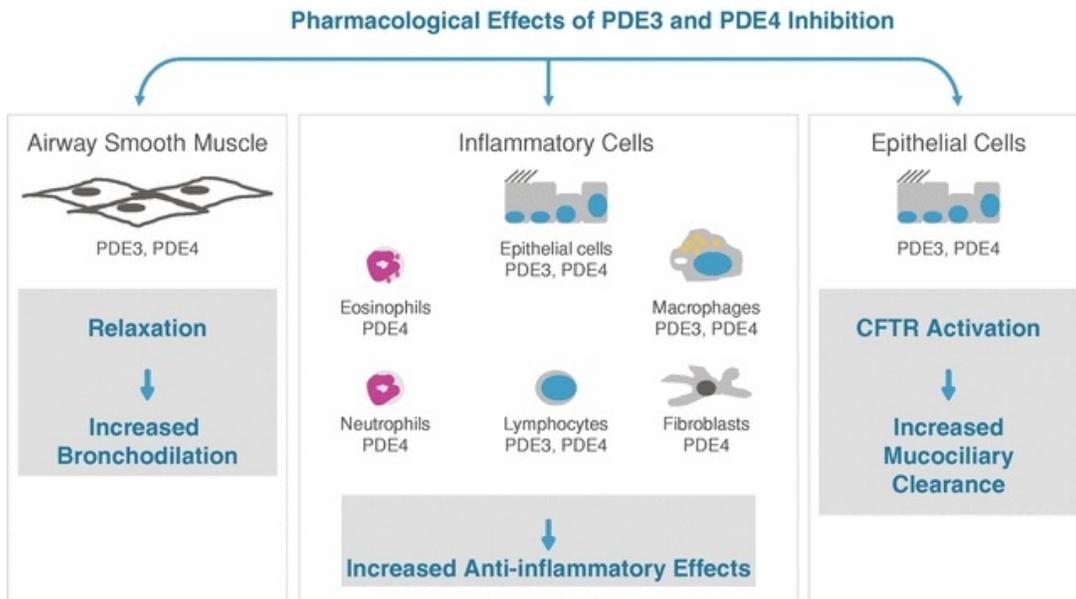
COPD patients are commonly treated with bronchodilators, which seek to relieve airway constriction and make it easier to breathe, and corticosteroids, which seek to reduce lung inflammation. For patients with more severe disease who experience recurrent exacerbations, and for whom inhaled corticosteroids are not effective, an oral formulation of a PDE4 inhibitor, which is an anti-inflammatory agent, may also be used as treatment. Despite the wide availability of these therapies, many COPD patients continue to suffer exacerbations and have continued respiratory symptoms, which limit their daily activities. Furthermore, current therapies have not demonstrated an ability to change the progressive decline in lung function or reduce the mortality associated with COPD. We believe there is an urgent and unmet medical need for new and more effective treatments for COPD to reduce the number and burden of symptoms, reduce exacerbations and establish a consistent and durable treatment response.

Cystic fibrosis is the most common fatal inherited disease in the United States and Europe. CF causes impaired lung function and is commonly associated with repeat and persistent lung infections due to the inability to clear thickened phlegm, or mucus, from the lung. This condition often results in frequent

exacerbations and hospitalizations. There is no cure for CF and the median age of death for CF patients is 37 years. CF is considered a rare, or orphan, disease by both the FDA and the EMA. According to the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation, more than 30,000 people in the United States and more than 70,000 people worldwide are living with CF and approximately 1,000 new cases of CF are diagnosed each year. The FDA and the EMA provide incentives for sponsors to develop products for orphan diseases, and we plan to seek orphan drug designation for RPL554 in treating CF. CF patients require lifelong treatment with multiple daily medications, frequent hospitalizations and, ultimately, lung transplants in some end-stage patients. The quality of life for CF patients is compromised as a result of spending significant time on self-care every day and frequent outpatient doctor visits and hospitalizations. CF patients take an average of seven medications daily. In the 12-month period ended June 30, 2016, global sales of drugs currently indicated for CF totaled \$4.1 billion. The global market for CF drugs is expected to increase to \$7.0 billion in 2020.

RPL554 is a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4. Phosphodiesterases, or PDEs, are well known and validated therapeutic targets, and many PDE inhibitors, with different specificities, are currently available in the market for other indications. PDE3 is present in airways and the lung, and inhibition of this enzyme is primarily responsible for the bronchodilatory action of RPL554. PDE4 is found in inflammatory and epithelial cells, and inhibition of this enzyme contributes to RPL554's anti-inflammatory activity. PDEs metabolize the critical signaling molecules, cyclic adenosine monophosphate, or cAMP, and cyclic guanosine monophosphate, or cGMP. By inhibiting PDE3 and PDE4, RPL554 increases the levels of cAMP and cGMP, resulting in bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory effects. RPL554 also stimulates the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator, or CFTR, which is an ion channel in the epithelial cells lining the airways. Mutations in the CFTR protein result in poorly or non-functioning ion channels, which cause CF and are potentially important in COPD. CFTR stimulation leads to improved electrolyte balance in the lung and thinning of the mucus, which facilitates mucociliary clearance and leads to improved lung function and potentially a reduction in lung infections. Dual inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 has been observed to be more effective than inhibition of either PDE alone at relaxing airway smooth muscle cells and suppressing the activation and functions of pro-inflammatory cells residing in the lung, both of which are commonly understood to play a significant role in COPD and CF.

The figure below illustrates the three key mechanisms of action of RPL554 in respiratory diseases:



## [Table of Contents](#)

In our clinical trials, RPL554 has shown rapid onset and durable bronchodilation in healthy subjects and patients with COPD when inhaled from a nebulizer. In addition, RPL554 has been observed to be complementary and additive when administered as an add-on therapy to other currently marketed bronchodilators. Our most recent clinical trial of RPL554 was a Phase 2a clinical trial in 36 patients with COPD. Our primary objective in this clinical trial was to evaluate the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, and the duration of action of RPL554. We evaluated RPL554 administered as a single agent as compared to placebo and two commonly used bronchodilators, albuterol, also known as salbutamol and marketed as Ventolin, and ipratropium, marketed as Atrovent. We also evaluated RPL554 administered as an add-on therapy to either albuterol or ipratropium, in each case as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone. We observed that RPL554 administered as a single agent produced statistically significant improvements in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, as compared to placebo, with a p-value of less than 0.001. P-value is a conventional statistical method for measuring the statistical significance of clinical results. A p-value of 0.05 or less represents statistical significance, meaning that there is a less than 1-in-20 likelihood that the observed results occurred by chance. We also observed clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, when RPL554 was administered as an add-on therapy to standard doses of albuterol and ipratropium as compared to standard doses of either bronchodilator alone. In this clinical trial, we observed the effect size, or peak improvement minus placebo improvement, was 51% higher for the add-on-therapy of RPL554 with albuterol as compared to albuterol alone, and 66% higher for the add-on-therapy of RPL554 with ipratropium as compared to ipratropium alone. In addition, RPL554 administered as an add-on therapy to either albuterol or ipratropium resulted in a statistically significant reduction in time of onset of bronchodilation as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone.

RPL554 also has shown anti-inflammatory effects. In a Phase 1 clinical trial, 21 healthy evaluable subjects were treated with either RPL554 or placebo once daily for six days before airway challenge with aerosolized lipopolysaccharide, or LPS. LPS challenge induces an inflammatory response in the lung with a large proportion of neutrophils, which is a common type of white blood cell widely recognized as the most important inflammatory cell in COPD. LPS challenge is a well-validated and commonly used measure to assess the anti-inflammatory effects of novel compounds and is of particular relevance to drugs used in the treatment of COPD. Subjects treated with RPL554 were observed to have significantly lower absolute numbers of neutrophils in sputum collected six hours after LPS challenge, and a significant reduction in the absolute numbers of other inflammatory cells, including lymphocytes, macrophages and eosinophils, at the same time point. Eosinophils are prevalent in the lungs of some patients with COPD and in the vast majority of patients with asthma. These observations suggest that RPL554 also has the potential to target the chronic inflammatory processes in COPD, CF and other respiratory diseases, including asthma.

In addition, based on our pre-clinical studies, we believe that RPL554 has the potential to reduce the deleterious inflammation in CF patients, which is largely driven by neutrophils, reduce airway obstruction through bronchodilation and enhance mucociliary clearance through stimulation of the CFTR on airway epithelial cells. We believe the bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory properties of RPL554, combined with its ability to decrease mucus viscosity thereby improving mucociliary clearance, suggest that inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 is an attractive therapeutic strategy to treat CF.

We have worldwide commercialization rights for RPL554. Our intellectual property portfolio includes five issued U.S. patents, four pending U.S. patent applications, 16 issued foreign patents in countries including China, Canada, Brazil, Japan, Mexico and Australia, and also including two issued European patents that have been validated in many European countries, including Germany, Italy, Spain, France and the United Kingdom, and 49 pending foreign applications in regions including Canada, Mexico, Asia and Europe, and also including two patent applications made under the Patent Cooperation Treaty, or PCT. These patents and patent applications include claims directed to RPL554 composition of matter, new dosage formulations and a crystalline polymorph, as well as methods of making and using RPL554 in the treatment of respiratory diseases, with expected expiry dates not earlier than between 2020 and 2037.

[Table of Contents](#)

We were incorporated in February 2005 and are headquartered in the United Kingdom. Since September 2006, our ordinary shares have traded on AIM, a market of the London Stock Exchange, under the symbol "VRP". We have raised £74.6 million in gross proceeds from investors since such listing, of which £44.7 million was raised in our most recent private placement of equity securities in July 2016 with a number of European and U.S.-based healthcare specialist investment firms. Members of our management team and board of directors have extensive experience in large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies in respiratory product development from drug discovery through commercialization and have played important roles in the development and commercialization of several approved respiratory treatments, including Symbicort, Daliresp/Daxas, Spiriva and Flutiform.

**Our Product Candidate Pipeline**

The following table depicts the potential indications for RPL554 and their current development status:

Indication	RPL554 Formulation	Pre-clinical	Phase 1	Phase 2	Phase 3	Anticipated Milestones	
Maintenance treatment of COPD	Nebulizer						Commence 4-week Phase 2b clinical trial in the second half of 2017 and U.S. PK trial in mid-2017  Report Phase 2a top-line data in the fourth quarter of 2017
Treatment of acute COPD	Nebulizer						Commence Phase 2 clinical trial in the second half of 2018
CF	Nebulizer						Report Phase 2a top-line data in the first half of 2018
Maintenance treatment of COPD	DPI/MDI						Finalize formulation and commence pre-clinical studies in 2018
Treatment of asthma	DPI/MDI						Finalize formulation and commence pre-clinical studies in 2018

**Our Strengths**

We believe that our company has the following key distinguishing characteristics:

- **Potential for multiple targeted indications, formulations and add-on therapies.** We are developing RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD patients, as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other commonly used therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD and the treatment of CF. We also are developing RPL554 in both DPI and MDI formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. In addition, we may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases. Based on the favorable properties of RPL554 that we have observed in our clinical trials, we believe RPL554 has broad potential applicability in the treatment of other respiratory diseases, either as a single agent or as an add-on therapy.

- **Observed clinical benefit as a single agent and as an add-on therapy with a favorable safety profile.** We have completed eight Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials for RPL554 with 282 subjects enrolled. We have observed statistically significant improvements in lung function as compared to placebo, as well as clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvements in lung function when RPL554 is added to two commonly used bronchodilators as compared to either bronchodilator administered as a single agent. In addition, we observed a more rapid time of onset of bronchodilation when RPL554 was administered as an add-on therapy to albuterol or ipratropium. RPL554 also has shown anti-inflammatory effects and been well tolerated in our clinical trials, and has not been observed to result in the gastrointestinal or other side effects commonly associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market approved for treatment of COPD. In addition, RPL554 has not been observed to result in any cardiovascular effects, other than a small increase in heart rate at the highest doses tested.
- **Differentiated mechanism of action in a single compound.** RPL554 is a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4 that acts as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory agent in a single compound and stimulates the CFTR. Dual inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 has been shown to be more effective than inhibition of either PDE alone at relaxing airway smooth muscle cells and suppressing the activation and functions of pro-inflammatory cells residing in the lung, both of which are commonly understood to play a significant role in COPD and CF. In addition, through this dual mechanism, RPL554 also stimulates the CFTR, which is important in the treatment of CF and potentially COPD. We believe that RPL554 has the potential to be a more effective and better tolerated treatment of COPD than existing treatments for COPD, including the approved PDE4 inhibitor.
- **Established regulatory pathway and well-defined clinical endpoints.** Our planned clinical trials for RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD will be designed to evaluate the effect on FEV<sub>1</sub> and duration of action of our product candidate. These clinical endpoints are commonly used in clinical trials for respiratory diseases and have been used by other companies in obtaining FDA approval of drugs addressing respiratory diseases.
- **Addressing significant market opportunities.** Despite the availability of bronchodilators and anti-inflammatory corticosteroid or PDE4 inhibitor treatments for COPD, many patients continue to suffer from significant symptoms and may experience acute exacerbations leading to hospitalization. Furthermore, current therapies have not demonstrated an ability to change the progressive decline in lung function or reduce the mortality associated with COPD. We believe a large market opportunity with significant unmet medical need exists in COPD. We believe the properties of RPL554 make it attractive as an important and novel potential treatment of patients with COPD, as well as for patients with CF and asthma. We plan to seek orphan drug designation of RPL554 for the treatment of CF.
- **Experienced management team.** Members of our management team and board of directors have extensive experience in large pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies in respiratory product development from drug discovery through commercialization and have played important roles in the development and commercialization of several approved respiratory treatments. We believe that the experience of our management team and our network of relationships within the industry and medical community provides us with insight into product development and identification of other opportunities in the respiratory field.

## Our Strategy

We intend to become a leading biopharmaceutical company focused on the treatment of respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs. The key elements of our strategy to achieve this goal include:

- **Rapidly advance the development of nebulized RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD.** We intend to develop RPL554 for the maintenance treatment of COPD. We plan to commence a four-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2017, which will evaluate RPL554 as a single agent as compared to placebo in approximately 400 patients. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the second half of 2018. We also plan to commence a single-dose PK trial in approximately 12 healthy volunteers in the United States in mid-2017. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. In February 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom in approximately 30 patients with COPD to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to tiotropium, a commonly used long-acting bronchodilator. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. We also plan to commence a 12-week Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial in the second half of 2018 to evaluate RPL554 as an add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator in approximately 400 patients.
- **Rapidly advance the development of nebulized RPL554 for the treatment of acute exacerbations of COPD.** We also are developing RPL554 as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other commonly used therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. We plan to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States for RPL554 for this indication in approximately 150 patients in the second half of 2018.
- **Develop RPL554 for the treatment of CF.** In March 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a single-dose trial in the United Kingdom of RPL554 in up to ten CF patients to evaluate the PK and PD profile and tolerability of RPL554, as well as examine the effect on lung function. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the first half of 2018. The results of this trial will support dose selection for a proof-of-concept Phase 2b trial in Europe in approximately 100 patients with CF, which we plan to commence in 2018.
- **Develop DPI and MDI formulations of RPL554.** In addition to our nebulized formulation of RPL554, we are developing RPL554 in both DPI and MDI formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. We believe the development of DPI and MDI formulations has the potential to significantly increase the market opportunity for RPL554, if approved, for the maintenance treatment of COPD. In addition, we may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases. Following the completion of our DPI and MDI formulation process, we plan to commence pre-clinical studies for RPL554 in these formulations in 2018.
- **Pursue development of RPL554 in other forms of respiratory disease.** We believe that RPL554's properties as an inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4 give it broad potential applicability in the treatment of other respiratory diseases. We may explore development of RPL554 to treat other forms of respiratory disease following development of RPL554 for the treatment of COPD and CF.
- **Seek strategic collaborative relationships.** We may seek strategic collaborations with market-leading biopharmaceutical companies to develop and commercialize RPL554. We believe these collaborations could provide significant funding to advance the development of RPL554 while allowing us to benefit from the development or commercialization expertise of our collaborators.
- **Acquire or in-license product candidates for the treatment of respiratory diseases.** We plan to leverage our respiratory disease expertise to identify and in-license or acquire additional clinical-stage product candidates that we believe have the potential to become novel treatments for respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs.

## **RPL554 for the Treatment of COPD**

### **Overview**

Our product candidate, RPL554, is a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4 that acts as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory agent in a single compound. We are not aware of any therapy in a single compound in clinical development or approved by the FDA or the EMA, for the treatment of respiratory diseases that acts as both a bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory agent. We believe RPL554 has the potential to be the first novel class of bronchodilator in over 40 years.

### **COPD Background**

COPD is a progressive respiratory disease for which there is no cure. COPD damages the airways and the lungs and leads to shortness of breath, impacting a person's ability to work, exercise, sleep and perform other daily activities. Part of the pathology of the disease is chronic airway inflammation and constriction of airway muscles. Airflow limitation in COPD patients results from mucosal and airway inflammation and edema, or excess fluid in the airway walls, bronchoconstriction, increased secretions in the airways and loss of elastic recoil, or the ease with which the lung rebounds after having been stretched by inhalation. COPD includes chronic bronchitis, which refers to the inflammation of the lung and airways that results in coughing and sputum production, and emphysema, which refers to a destruction of distal lung tissue, or air sacs. In some cases, hospitalized patients with COPD experience acute exacerbations, which include rapid and prolonged worsening of symptoms.

According to the World Health Organization, COPD is the third leading cause of death globally, with 210 million people worldwide suffering from the disease. The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, or CDC, estimates that there are 24 million people with COPD in the United States, only half of whom have been diagnosed. Of those diagnosed with COPD in the United States, approximately 2 million suffer from severe or very severe forms of the disease. Acute exacerbations of COPD are estimated to cause approximately 1.5 million emergency department visits, 687,000 hospitalizations and 129,000 deaths per year in the United States alone. According to the CDC, total annual medical costs relating to COPD in the United States were estimated to be \$32 billion in 2010, and are projected to rise to \$49 billion in 2020. An estimated 16.4 million days of work were lost due to COPD each year in the United States. Global sales of drugs currently indicated for COPD were \$10.6 billion in 2016 and are expected to grow to \$15.6 billion in 2019.

### **Current Treatment Landscape of COPD**

There are no approved therapies for COPD that alter the progression, rate of decline of lung function or mortality of the disease. The goal of current COPD treatments is to alleviate symptoms, decrease the frequency and severity of exacerbations, and reduce limitations on daily activities. COPD patients are commonly treated with bronchodilators, which seek to relieve airway constriction and make it easier to breathe, and corticosteroids, which seek to reduce lung inflammation. For patients with more severe disease who experience recurrent exacerbations, and for whom inhaled corticosteroids are not effective, an oral formulation of a PDE4 inhibitor, which is an anti-inflammatory agent, is available and may be used as treatment. Antibiotic therapy has also been shown to have a small but important effect on clinical recovery and outcome in hospitalized patients with bacterial infections that resulted in an acute exacerbation of COPD.

Despite the availability of bronchodilators, anti-inflammatory corticosteroids, an anti-inflammatory PDE4 inhibitor and antibiotics for treatment of COPD, many patients continue to suffer from significant symptoms and may experience acute exacerbations leading to increased doses of medication and hospitalization. Following an acute exacerbation of COPD and subsequent hospitalization, it may take many weeks for a patient's lung function to recover to pre-exacerbation levels. In addition, the rate of mortality of COPD patients within one year of hospitalization is approximately 20%, and patients with a need for hospital readmission have only a 20% five-year survival rate. Retrospective studies have demonstrated that more than 20% of patients discharged from hospital after an exacerbation of their COPD require readmission

## [Table of Contents](#)

within 30 days of discharge. This has medical implications for the patient and is a financial burden for the healthcare system. We believe that increasing awareness of the problem of COPD patients returning for hospital treatment within 30 days of discharge has triggered a strong interest from industry, regulators and healthcare administrators and payors in optimizing the treatment of acute COPD exacerbations, both in the hospital setting and after patients are discharged.

For many COPD patients, a better and more effective maintenance treatment is required that can control their symptoms and reduce the risk of acute exacerbations. For patients that require hospitalization, essentially the same treatment modalities are used as in non-hospitalized patient treatment, however, they are often treated with higher doses, including with corticosteroids that are administered systemically rather than locally by inhalation. Acute medical treatment of COPD exacerbations has not changed in decades, with older, short-acting nebulized bronchodilators still used as a mainstay bronchodilator treatment in the acute hospital setting. This is despite hospitalizations for COPD being long, at about five days, expensive, and with a high mortality rate and high probability of hospital readmission. We believe there is an unmet medical need for an improved treatment approach.

### *Bronchodilators*

Bronchodilators are the first-line therapy for the treatment of COPD patients. There are two existing classes of bronchodilators: beta2-agonists and anti-muscarinics. Long-acting versions of these bronchodilators, lasting 12 to 24 hours, are commonly used in the maintenance therapy of patients with COPD. Long-acting beta2-agonists, or LABAs, which are commonly used in combination with inhaled corticosteroids, include Advair (salmeterol and fluticasone), which had \$2.4 billion in global sales in 2015, and Symbicort (formoterol and budesonide), which had \$1.6 billion in global sales in 2015. Long-acting anti-muscarinics, or LAMAs, include Spiriva (tiotropium), which had \$3.9 billion in global sales in 2015. In the United States, nebulized LABAs, which are only indicated for COPD, generated sales of \$601 million in the 12-month period ending June 30, 2016. In addition to producing bronchodilation, beta2-agonists have been shown to improve mucociliary clearance in COPD patients, thereby potentially reducing mucus in the airways. LAMAs have a different mechanism of action and effect bronchodilation via different cell-surface receptors and through different intracellular pathways than LABAs. Studies with twice-daily LABAs indicate that clinically relevant improvements in dyspnea or health-related quality of life are only achieved by a minority of patients. Clinical data suggest that inhaled LAMAs may be somewhat more effective than LABAs in improving lung function of COPD patients. However, LAMAs have a relatively slow onset of action and both LABAs and LAMAs are contraindicated for acute use in the United States. Another limitation is a diminished effectiveness of beta2-agonists that can be experienced by some COPD patients over time. Some patients also have adrenergic side effects such as tremor or increased heart rate from existing beta2-agonists.

Short-acting versions of bronchodilators, lasting up to eight hours, are most commonly used to treat hospitalized patients who experience a worsening airway obstruction, including as a result of acute exacerbations of COPD. A short-acting beta2-agonist, or SABA, such as Ventolin (albuterol), which had \$820 million in global sales in 2015, and a short-acting anti-muscarinic, or SAMA, such as Atrovent (ipratropium), which had \$590 million in global sales in 2015, are typically used for relief of acute exacerbations of COPD. However, the response to bronchodilators can be highly variable in individual patients over time, and patients who are non-responders at one office visit may respond at a different visit. In addition, the frequent use of beta2-agonists can lead to reduced effectiveness of the drug due to the development of tolerance. As a consequence of this variability in responsiveness, a significant number of COPD patients are classified as non-responders to albuterol, the standard SABA used in the market. Based on screening visits in a large recent clinical trial conducted by GlaxoSmithKline, in which patients were treated with albuterol once every three months over a 12-month period, the rate of classification of patients as responders per treatment was 24% as measured by American Thoracic Society, or ATS, criteria. Classification as a responder pursuant to ATS criteria requires at least a 12% and 200 ml increase in FEV<sub>1</sub>. In addition, the rate of classification of patients as consistent responders, or responders at least three out of

## [Table of Contents](#)

four times over the 12-month treatment period, was 14% as measured by ATS criteria. In another large study conducted by Boehringer Ingelheim, even when albuterol was combined with ipratropium, the rate of classification of patients as responders pursuant to the ATS criteria was just over 50%.

Bronchodilators can be delivered in a nebulized form or by a DPI or MDI if patients are able to use proper technique, which may be difficult during an exacerbation. As a result, acute COPD exacerbations are often treated with a nebulizer. A nebulizer is both convenient and effective in delivering a large dose. Use of a nebulizer to provide bronchodilation enhances delivery of the therapeutic to the airways of the patient. Patients with more severe COPD, who tend to suffer more frequent exacerbations, generally prefer treatment with a nebulizer as they view its perceived benefits, including greater confidence in effective drug administration and a reduced need to visit health care providers, as outweighing its perceived disadvantages, which include length of treatment administration and required cleaning. In addition, use of a nebulizer is generally preferred when administering larger doses in the hospital setting.

Beta2-agonists and anti-muscarinics can be used as single agents for the treatment of COPD, but studies have shown that their combined use leads to greater bronchodilation than each used as a single agent because these classes of bronchodilators have different mechanisms of action to improve lung function. Based on these findings, novel drugs combining a LABA and a LAMA in one inhaler device are being brought to market, such as Novartis' Utibro Breezhaler (indacaterol and glycopyrrolate), which had \$260 million in global sales in 2015. However, many patients, and especially those with more severe disease, still need more effective bronchodilation to improve their symptoms. Additionally, LABAs and LAMAs, acting alone or in combination, do not treat the underlying inflammation present in COPD.

### *Corticosteroids*

Corticosteroids are used for treatment in a range of diseases for their anti-inflammatory effect. However, corticosteroids do not affect neutrophils, which are widely recognized as the most important inflammatory cells in COPD. Corticosteroids have shown limited efficacy and are not approved as a stand-alone treatment for COPD. Inhaled corticosteroids are commonly administered together with LABAs for the maintenance treatment of COPD. When administered with LABAs, corticosteroids have been shown to improve lung function and reduce exacerbation rates. However, recent studies have shown that removing inhaled corticosteroids from this treatment regimen does not lead to increases in exacerbations in a majority of patients, implying that the combination is not effective in all patients. In addition, inhaled corticosteroids have been shown to decrease the immune response in some patients, which results in an increased incidence of pneumonia.

In the treatment of acute COPD exacerbations, corticosteroids are often administered systemically, either through injection or orally, in addition to high-dose bronchodilators. In this setting, corticosteroids may be effective in improving symptoms and lung function, reducing the rate of treatment failure and shortening the length of hospital stay. However, when given systemically, corticosteroids are known to be associated with side effects such as compromised adrenal gland function and reduced bone density.

### *PDE4 Inhibitors*

PDE4 inhibitors have attracted recent attention for the treatment of COPD because PDE4 is broadly expressed in airways and in the lung. PDEs are well known and validated therapeutic targets, and many PDE inhibitors, with different specificities, are currently available in the market for other indications. PDE4 is found in inflammatory and epithelial cells, and inhibition of this enzyme contributes to RPL554's anti-inflammatory activity. PDE4 is the primary cAMP-hydrolyzing enzyme in inflammatory and immune cells, especially neutrophils, lymphocytes, macrophages and eosinophils, all of which are found in the lungs of COPD patients. Inhibition of PDE4 leads to elevated cAMP levels in these cells, which results in anti-inflammatory effects due to the down-regulation of the inflammatory response.

The recently approved oral PDE4 inhibitor, roflumilast, has shown clinical efficacy as an oral therapeutic in the reduction of COPD exacerbations in patients with severe COPD associated with chronic bronchitis and a

## [Table of Contents](#)

history of exacerbations. The drug is an anti-inflammatory compound that decreases inflammation in a different manner than corticosteroids. However, roflumilast has only shown a modest improvement in lung function in COPD patients as compared to commonly used bronchodilators as it is not a direct bronchodilator. In addition, because of roflumilast's systemic exposure as an oral PDE4 inhibitor, its use has been limited due to frequent adverse side effects such as back pain, decreased appetite, diarrhea, dizziness, flu-like symptoms, headache, weight loss, nausea and vomiting.

### *Antibiotics*

Antibiotic therapy has been shown to have a small but important effect on clinical recovery and outcome in patients with bacterial infections that resulted in an acute exacerbation of COPD. As a result, antibiotic therapy is often considered at the beginning of treatment of acute exacerbations of COPD. Hospitalized patients commonly receive intravenous treatment with an antibiotic and initial outpatient management of COPD may include oral antibiotics. However, the limited efficacy of and patient resistance to antibiotics represent significant drawbacks of this form of therapy for COPD patients.

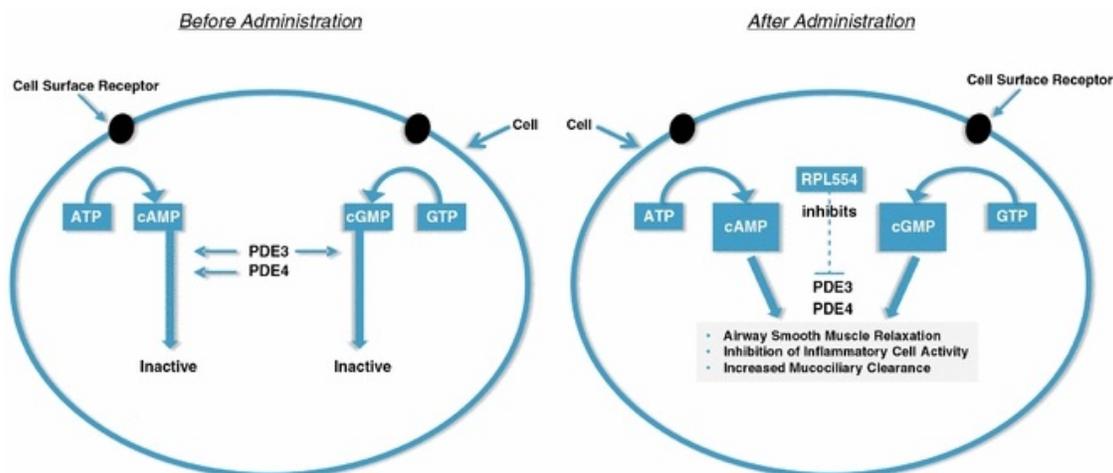
### **Our Solution**

We believe that RPL554, as a first-in-class, inhaled, dual inhibitor of PDE3 and PDE4, which acts as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory in a single compound, if approved, has the potential to become an important and novel treatment and standard of care for patients with COPD. We are not aware of any therapy in a single compound in clinical development or approved by the FDA or the EMA, for the treatment of COPD that acts as both a bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory agent. Based on our clinical trials, we believe RPL554 has the potential to be a best-in-class bronchodilator for the treatment of COPD, both as a monotherapy and as an add-on therapy to existing bronchodilators.

PDEs are a family of over ten intracellular enzymes that regulate important cellular pathways in many different cell types. PDEs metabolize the critical signaling molecules cAMP and cGMP. By inhibiting PDE3 and PDE4, RPL554 increases the levels of these intracellular messengers resulting in bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory effects. Dual inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 has been shown to be more effective than inhibition of either PDE alone at relaxing airway smooth muscle cells and suppressing the activation and functions of pro-inflammatory cells residing in the lung, both of which are commonly understood to play a significant role in COPD.

The figure below illustrates the mechanism of action of RPL554's dual inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 in the treatment of COPD.

### Mechanism of Action of RPL554 from PDE3 and PDE4 Inhibition



Previous attempts to develop PDE4 inhibitors for COPD, asthma and other indications have been limited by the resulting side effects, particularly to the gastrointestinal system, such as nausea, vomiting and weight loss. RPL554 is designed to maximize effectiveness and reduce the occurrence of adverse events by:

- relying on a chemical structure that is distinct from other PDE4 inhibitors and avoids gastrointestinal and other side effects typically associated with PDE4 inhibition;
- having high selectivity for PDE3 and PDE4 over other enzymes, including other PDE enzymes, and receptors to minimize off-target effects; and
- enabling delivery directly to the lung by inhalation, thereby maximizing pulmonary exposure to RPL554 while minimizing systemic distribution and related adverse events.

We believe RPL554 may offer significant advantages over currently approved therapies for COPD based on the following:

- **Clinical benefit as an add-on therapy and as a single agent with a favorable safety profile.** RPL554 has been evaluated in multiple randomized, controlled Phase 1 and Phase 2a clinical trials involving 282 subjects. In these trials, RPL554 has been observed to result in statistically significant improvements in lung function as compared to placebo. Our clinical trials also have shown clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvements in lung function when RPL554 is added to two commonly used bronchodilators as compared to either bronchodilator administered as a single agent. RPL554 has been well tolerated in our clinical trials, and has not been observed to result in the gastrointestinal or other side effects commonly associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market approved for the treatment of COPD. In addition, RPL554 has not been observed to result in any cardiovascular effects, other than a small increase in heart rate at the highest doses tested.
- **Bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory effects in one compound.** RPL554 utilizes a novel mechanism of action that inhibits PDE3 and PDE4 to act as both a bronchodilator and an anti-inflammatory agent in a single compound. We are not aware of any therapy in a single compound in clinical development or approved by the FDA or the EMA, for the treatment of COPD that acts as both a bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory agent. Inhibition of PDE3 is largely responsible for the bronchodilatory effects of RPL554, while the inhibition of PDE4 is largely responsible for the

anti-inflammatory effects. By simultaneously targeting PDE3 and PDE4, we believe that RPL554 results in a more profound effect that addresses both airway constriction and chronic inflammation, which are the hallmarks of COPD. As a result, we believe RPL554, if approved, has the potential to become an important and novel treatment and standard of care for patients with COPD.

- **Inhaled administration.** We are developing RPL554 as an inhaled therapy, which we believe is advantageous for the treatment of COPD patients because it delivers high concentrations of RPL554 directly to the patient's airways, thereby potentially improving efficacy while minimizing some of the side effects resulting from the systemic exposure associated with orally administered bronchodilators and anti-inflammatory drugs. For example, roflumilast, the only currently marketed PDE4 inhibitor approved for the treatment of COPD, is administered orally and has been associated with adverse side effects such as back pain, decreased appetite, diarrhea, dizziness, flu-like symptoms, headache, weight loss, nausea and vomiting. In our clinical trials, RPL554 has been well tolerated and has not been associated with many of the adverse effects associated with roflumilast. In this inhaled form, we believe RPL554, if approved, would provide significant advantages over orally administered therapies and potentially lead to better and more effective treatment of COPD.
- **Rapid onset of action.** In our Phase 2a clinical trial for RPL554 completed in February 2016, we observed a rapid onset of bronchodilation when RPL554 was administered as an add-on therapy to each of ipratropium and albuterol, two currently marketed short-acting bronchodilators. The time of onset of action of ipratropium was approximately 20 minutes, while the time of onset of action for RPL554 was approximately 15 minutes. When RPL554 was administered as an add-on therapy to ipratropium, the time of onset was reduced by 75% to approximately five minutes as compared to ipratropium alone, which is similar to albuterol alone. When RPL554 was administered as an add-on therapy to albuterol, the time to onset was more rapid than with albuterol alone. We believe RPL554 has the potential to provide significant benefits as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators in the treatment of acute exacerbations of COPD due to its effect on time of onset of action.

We are developing RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD patients and as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other current standard-of-care therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. In our planned clinical trials, we intend to explore the possibility that treatment with RPL554, when used for the maintenance treatment, has the potential to improve recovery rates as measured by improved lung function and, when used for the treatment of acute exacerbations of COPD, has the potential to reduce symptoms concomitantly with a reduction of the 30-day hospital readmission rates. No current medication has been shown to reduce this re-hospitalization rate and currently marketed long-acting bronchodilators are contraindicated for acute use in the United States. Furthermore, current therapies have not demonstrated an ability to change the progressive decline in lung function or reduce the mortality associated with COPD. We intend to explore opportunities for RPL554 for the maintenance treatment and in the hospital setting for acute exacerbations in our planned clinical trials.

In addition to our nebulized formulation of RPL554, we are developing RPL554 in both DPI and MDI formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. We may also explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases. DPI and MDI devices are the most common forms of drug delivery in non-hospitalized patients with COPD and are well-suited for the maintenance therapy of COPD patients. We believe the development of DPI and MDI formulations has the potential to significantly increase the market opportunity for RPL554, if approved, for the maintenance treatment of COPD. Following the completion of our DPI and MDI formulation process, we plan to commence pre-clinical studies for RPL554 in these formulations in .

#### **Clinical Development**

We have completed five Phase 1 and Phase 2a trials for RPL554 outside the United States, dosing 105 subjects with an initial proof-of-concept formulation. Data from the single and multiple dose trials using our initial proof-of-concept formulation suggest that RPL554, when inhaled across a range of doses, has the

[Table of Contents](#)

potential to be an effective bronchodilator in patients with COPD and other respiratory diseases, including asthma, and has broncho-protective properties, such as reducing the hypersensitivity of asthmatic airways to inhaled irritants. In these trials, we observed RPL554 having a rapid onset of action and the magnitude of improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, seemed to be at least as profound as that of other commonly used and approved bronchodilator drugs. We also observed that RPL554 had a potent anti-inflammatory effect in a number of pre-clinical studies and a clinical trial.

In 2014, we developed a new nebulized formulation of RPL554 for our ongoing development programs. We designed this formulation to have a broader dose range, improved PK profile and dosing regimen and neutral pH, as compared to the initial proof-of-concept formulation. This nebulized formulation of RPL554 is also stable and would be suitable for commercial use, if approved. We initiated the first Phase 1 clinical trial with this nebulized formulation in December 2014 and completed the trial in September 2015. The following table summarizes the Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials we have completed with our new nebulized formulation of RPL554, all of which have been conducted outside of the United States:

[Table of Contents](#)

Summary of Completed RPL554 Clinical Trials with New Nebulized Formulation			
Trial Description	Patient Population	RPL554 Dosage	Key Findings
Phase 2a trial to assess the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV <sub>1</sub> , of RPL554 as an add-on treatment to each of albuterol and ipratropium Completion date: February 2016	36 moderate-to-severe COPD patients, males and females, age 52 - 70  1 location; United Kingdom	Single dose of RPL554 of 6 mg alone and as an add-on treatment to albuterol or ipratropium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Well tolerated following single dose of 6 mg of RPL554 alone and as add-on treatment</li> <li>▪ RPL554 alone was as effective a bronchodilator as either albuterol (200 µg) or ipratropium (40 µg) and was statistically significant as compared to placebo</li> <li>▪ RPL554 produced significant additive bronchodilation (&gt;50% increase) when dosed with either albuterol (200 µg) or ipratropium (40 µg) as compared to albuterol or ipratropium, respectively, alone, and caused an additive and significant reduction in lung volumes and airway resistance</li> <li>▪ The time to onset of RPL554 when dosed with either albuterol (200 µg) or ipratropium (40 µg) was more rapid than with albuterol or ipratropium, respectively, alone</li> </ul>
Phase 2a trial to assess the effect of single doses of RPL554 compared to albuterol and placebo on lung function, as measured by FEV <sub>1</sub> , of patients with chronic asthma Completion date: January 2016	29 chronic asthmatic patients, males and females, age 20 - 62  2 locations; United Kingdom and Sweden	Single dose of 0.4 mg to 24 mg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Well tolerated following single dose of 0.4 mg to 24 mg</li> <li>▪ Improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, observed with a magnitude that was comparable to the maximum effect observed with a dose of 7.5 mg of nebulized albuterol, or three times the recommended dose of albuterol</li> </ul>
Phase 1 trial to assess the safety, tolerability and PK profile of single and multiple inhaled doses of RPL554 in healthy volunteers and stable COPD subjects  Completion date: September 2015	Part A: 50 (35 RPL554 / 15 placebo) healthy subjects, males, age 19 - 48  Part B: 30 (21 RPL554 / 9 placebo) healthy subjects, males, age 19 - 46  Part C: 32 (23 RPL554 / 9 placebo) moderate COPD patients, males and females, age 49 - 73  1 location; United Kingdom	Part A: Single dose of 1.5 mg to 24 mg  Part B: Multiple dose (twice daily for 5.5 days) of 6 mg to 24 mg  Part C: Multiple dose (twice daily for 5.5 days) of 1.5 mg to 12 mg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, observed in healthy subjects and COPD patients</li> <li>▪ Part A: RPL554 was well tolerated and there was a dose dependent increase in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, of up to 360 mL (9%) from baseline</li> <li>▪ Part B: RPL554 was well tolerated and there was a sustained increase in FEV<sub>1</sub></li> <li>▪ Part C: RPL554 was well tolerated and there was a significant increase in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, of up to 360 mL (24%) from baseline, with a duration of action of 12 hours</li> </ul>

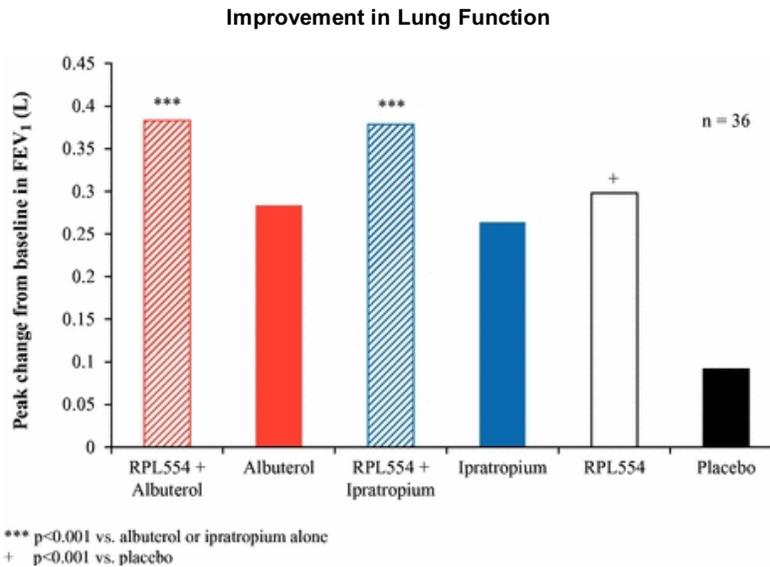
*Phase 2a Clinical Trials*

We have completed two Phase 2a clinical trials using our new nebulized formulation of RPL554.

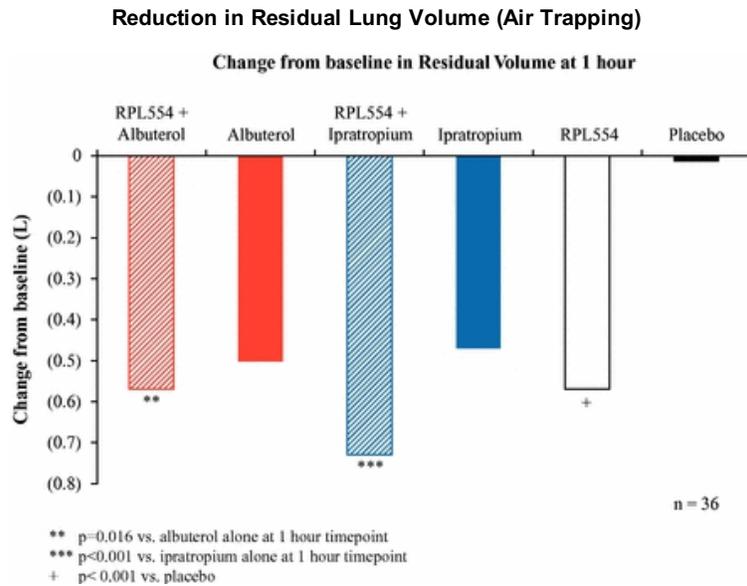
In February 2016, we completed a single-dose, double-blinded, placebo-controlled, six-way cross-over Phase 2a clinical trial for RPL554 conducted in the United Kingdom. A total of 36 patients were randomized to receive each of the six treatments, which were albuterol, ipratropium, RPL554, placebo,

RPL554 as an add-on therapy to albuterol and RPL554 as an add-on therapy to ipratropium. The primary objective of this trial was to establish the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, of RPL554 as an add-on therapy to albuterol (200 µg), as an add-on therapy to ipratropium (40 µg) and as a single agent, each as compared to standard doses of each of albuterol and ipratropium alone and to placebo. The testing dose level for RPL554 was 6 mg. The secondary objective of this trial was to measure the change in residual lung volume, a measure of the volume of air trapped in the lung, airway conductance, a measure of the ease with which air moves down the airways, time of onset of action and safety and tolerability of RPL554.

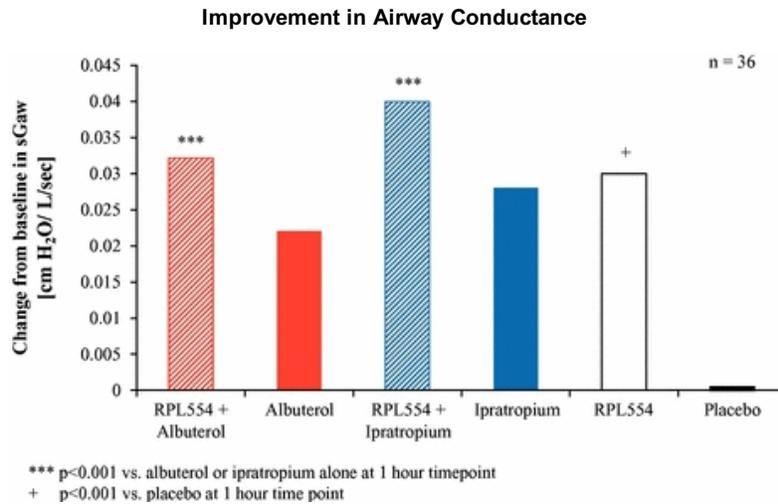
In this clinical trial, RPL554 produced clinically meaningful and statistically significant improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, as an add-on therapy to standard doses of each of albuterol and ipratropium as compared to standard doses of either bronchodilator alone. In this clinical trial, we observed the effect size, or peak improvement minus placebo improvement, was 51% higher for the add-on therapy of RPL554 with albuterol as compared to albuterol alone, and 66% higher for the add-on therapy of RPL554 with ipratropium as compared to ipratropium alone. We also observed in this trial that RPL554 as a single agent produced numerically greater improvements in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone, and statistically significant improvements as compared to placebo. These results are illustrated by the figure below.



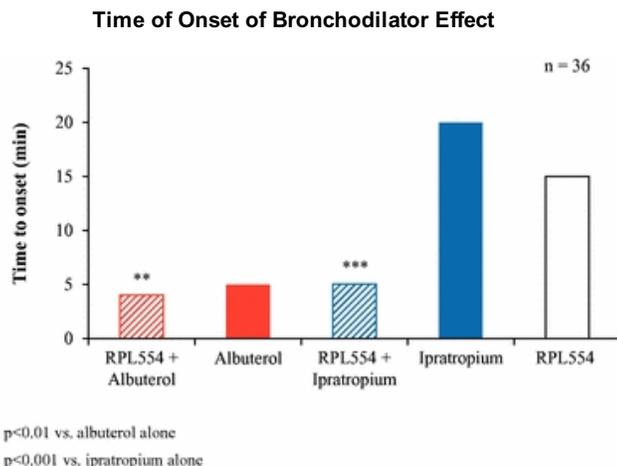
In addition, patients treated with RPL554 as a single agent experienced numerically greater improvements in residual lung volume as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone, and statistically significant improvements as compared to placebo. The add-on therapy of RPL554 with albuterol or ipratropium caused a statistically significant reduction in residual lung volume as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone, suggesting that RPL554 treatment may reduce dyspnea, or shortness of breath, a major debilitating symptom of COPD. This reduction in residual lung volume as measured in liters is illustrated in the figure below.



Another important parameter in COPD is the resistance of the airways to airflow. The inverse of this is airway conductance. Similar to the effect on residual lung volume, patients treated with RPL554 as a single agent experienced numerically greater increases in airway conductance as compared to each of albuterol and ipratropium, and statistically significant improvements as compared to placebo. We also observed, that the administration of RPL554 as an add-on therapy to either albuterol or ipratropium resulted in a statistically significant increase in airway conductance as compared to albuterol or ipratropium alone, as illustrated in the figure below.



In this trial, the time of onset of action of ipratropium was approximately 20 minutes. The time of onset of action for RPL554 alone was approximately 15 minutes. When RPL554 was administered as an add-on therapy to ipratropium, the time of onset was reduced to approximately 5 minutes, which is similar to albuterol. In both cases, RPL554 as an add-on therapy resulted in a statistically significant reduction in time of onset as compared to ipratropium or albuterol alone. The time of onset in minutes is shown in the figure below.

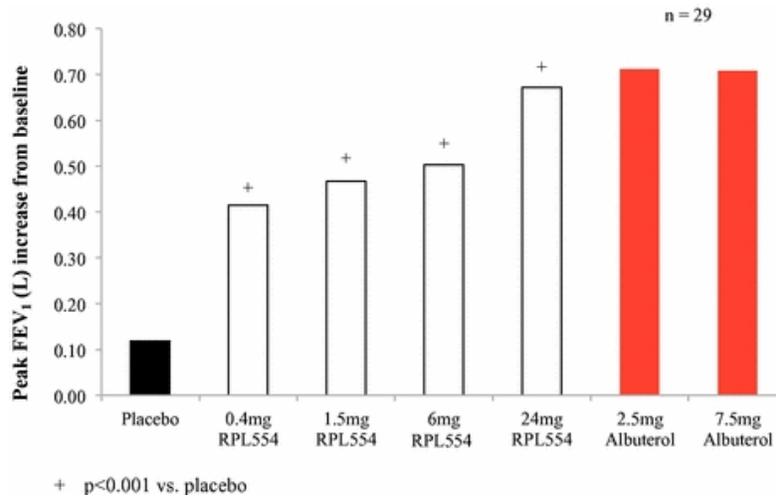


Consistent with prior trials, RPL554 was well tolerated both alone and as an add-on therapy and was not observed to increase the incidence of any adverse event over standard bronchodilators when used alone. In addition, we did not observe the gastrointestinal or other side effects associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market approved for the treatment of COPD. In this trial, RPL554 had no observed effect on cardiac function as measured by electrocardiograms, including QT intervals, a measure of time between certain waves in the heart's electrical cycle and measure of a potential cardiovascular adverse event. Finally, the serum levels of RPL554 were not affected by use of albuterol or ipratropium.

In January 2016, we completed a single-dose, double-blind, placebo-controlled, seven-way cross-over Phase 2a dose-finding trial of RPL554 in 29 male and female chronic asthma patients conducted in Sweden and the United Kingdom. The testing dose levels of RPL554 ranged from 0.4 mg to 24 mg, a sixty-fold range. The primary objective of this trial was to establish the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, of RPL554 as compared to albuterol and placebo. The secondary objective of this study was to assess the safety and tolerability of RPL554.

In this trial, all doses of RPL554 showed a dose-dependent and statistically significant improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, with a p-value of less than 0.001, as compared to placebo. The maximum improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, of RPL554 observed in this trial was comparable to the maximum effect observed with a dose of 7.5 mg, or three times the recommended dose, of nebulized albuterol. In this trial, RPL554 was well tolerated and there were no serious adverse events or adverse events of concern at any dose. RPL554 treatment resulted in no gastrointestinal adverse events or cardiovascular events of concern. The figure below illustrates improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, as compared to albuterol and placebo.

### Improvement in Lung Function Over a Sixty-fold Dose Range in Asthma Patients



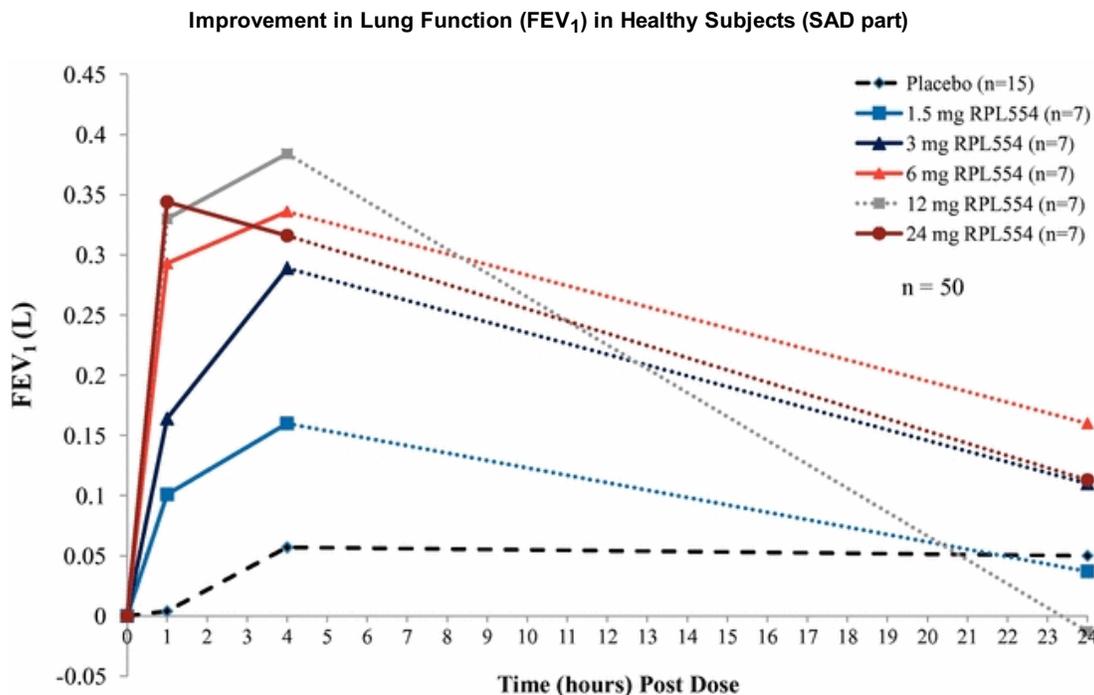
#### Phase 1 Clinical Trials

In September 2015, we completed a Phase 1 clinical trial that had three parts consisting of a single ascending dose, or SAD, trial in 50 healthy male subjects, a multiple ascending dose, or MAD, trial in 30 healthy male subjects and a MAD trial in 32 male and female patients with COPD. Doses in the SAD trial and the MAD trial with healthy subjects ranged from 6 mg to 24 mg, and doses in the MAD trial with COPD patients ranged from 1.5 mg to 12 mg. Each of the MAD trials continued for five and a half days with twice-daily dosing.

The primary objective of the SAD and MAD trials in healthy subjects was to assess the safety and tolerability of single and multiple doses of RPL554. The secondary objective of these trials was to measure the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, in healthy subjects receiving RPL554 as compared to placebo.

In the SAD and MAD trials in healthy subjects, RPL554 was well tolerated. In these trials, we also observed a longer residence time in the lung, lower peak plasma concentrations and a longer plasma half-life (10 to 12 hours) than our initial proof-of-concept formulation of RPL554, suggesting that twice-daily dosing is appropriate. The lung function testing in the SAD trial showed a dose-dependent improvement in lung

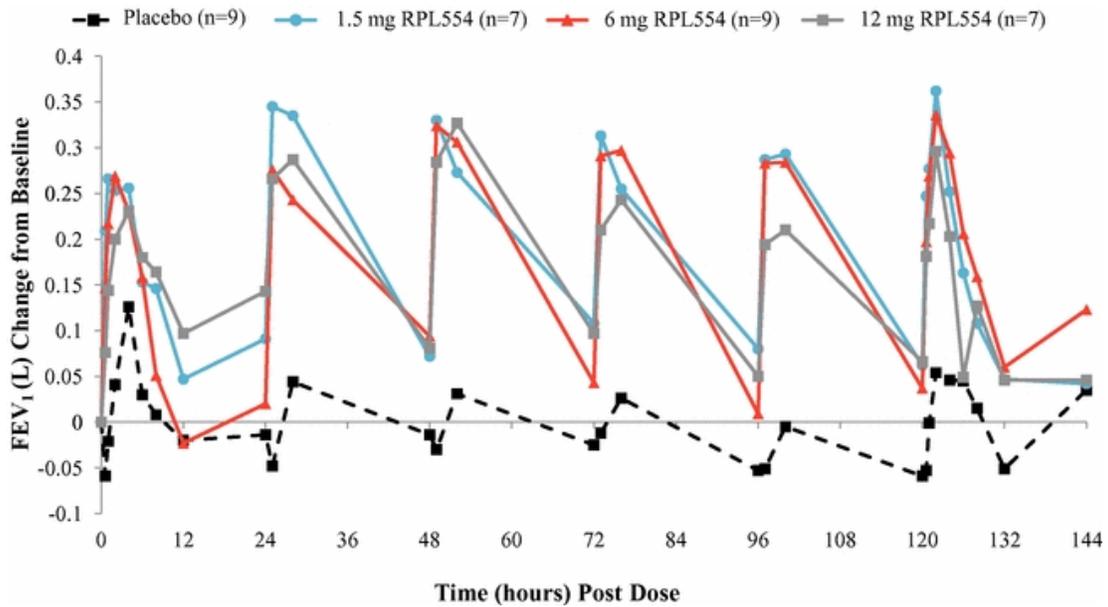
function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, in these healthy individuals, despite none of them having asthma or COPD, as illustrated in the figure below.



Similarly, in the MAD trial in 30 healthy male subjects, RPL554 continued to show an increase in lung function compared to baseline on each day of the study, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, in these healthy individuals, despite none of them having asthma or COPD.

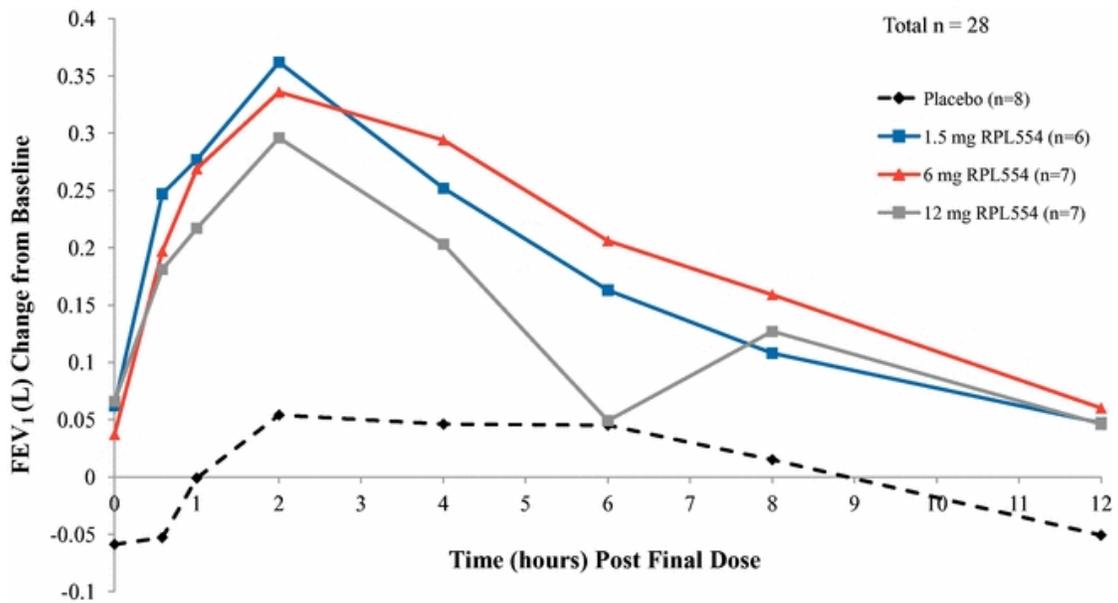
The primary objective of the third part of the trial, which was a MAD trial in 32 patients with moderate COPD, was to assess safety and tolerability and measure the PK profile of RPL554 in COPD patients receiving RPL554 as compared to placebo. The secondary objective was to assess the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, in these patients. In this clinical trial, RPL554 was well tolerated at all doses with no reports of serious adverse events or adverse events of concern. Specifically, we did not observe the gastrointestinal or other side effects associated with roflumilast, the only PDE4 inhibitor currently on the market approved for the treatment of COPD, and RPL554 was not observed to have any effect on cardiac function as measured by electrocardiograms, including QT intervals, and Holter monitoring, which uses a portable device that continuously measures and records the heart's activity for at least 24 hours. We also observed a statistically significant increase in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, with a p-value of less than 0.05, in patients receiving RPL554 in all dose groups as compared to placebo. The figure below illustrates a consistent increase in lung function compared to baseline with no evidence of reduction in effect level, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, on each day of the study.

**Improvement in Lung Function (FEV<sub>1</sub>) over Six Days of Dosing**

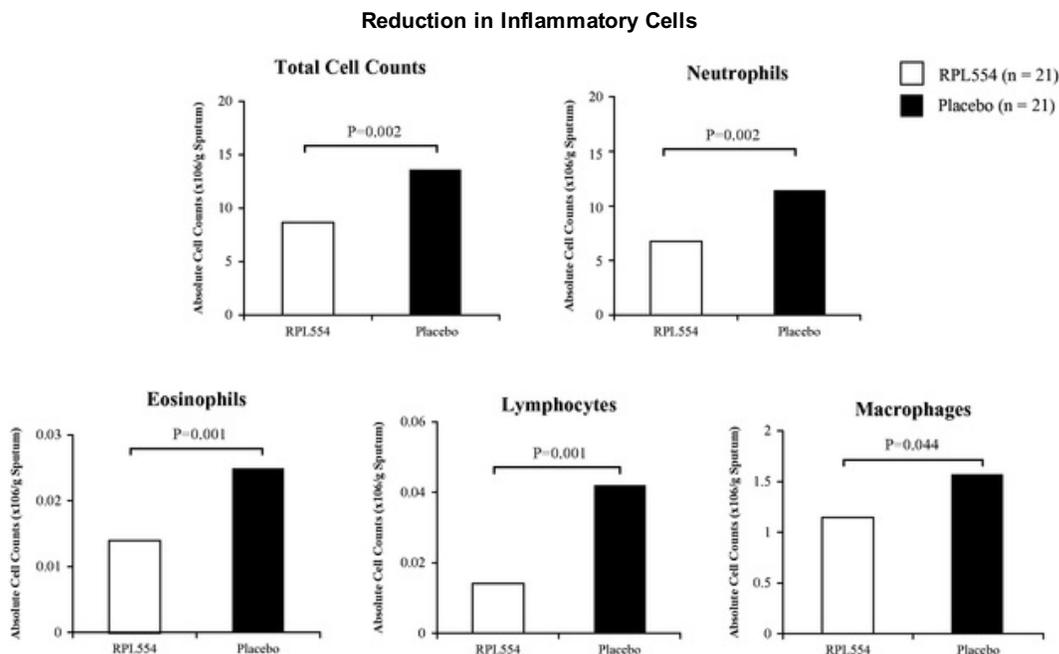


The figure below, which represents the effects of the final dose after five and a half days of treatment with RPL554, shows that patients with moderate COPD that were administered RPL554 experienced an improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, and that the improvement peaked at two hours and continued through the 12-hour measurement period.

**Improvement in Lung Function (FEV<sub>1</sub>) over 12 Hours in COPD Patients**



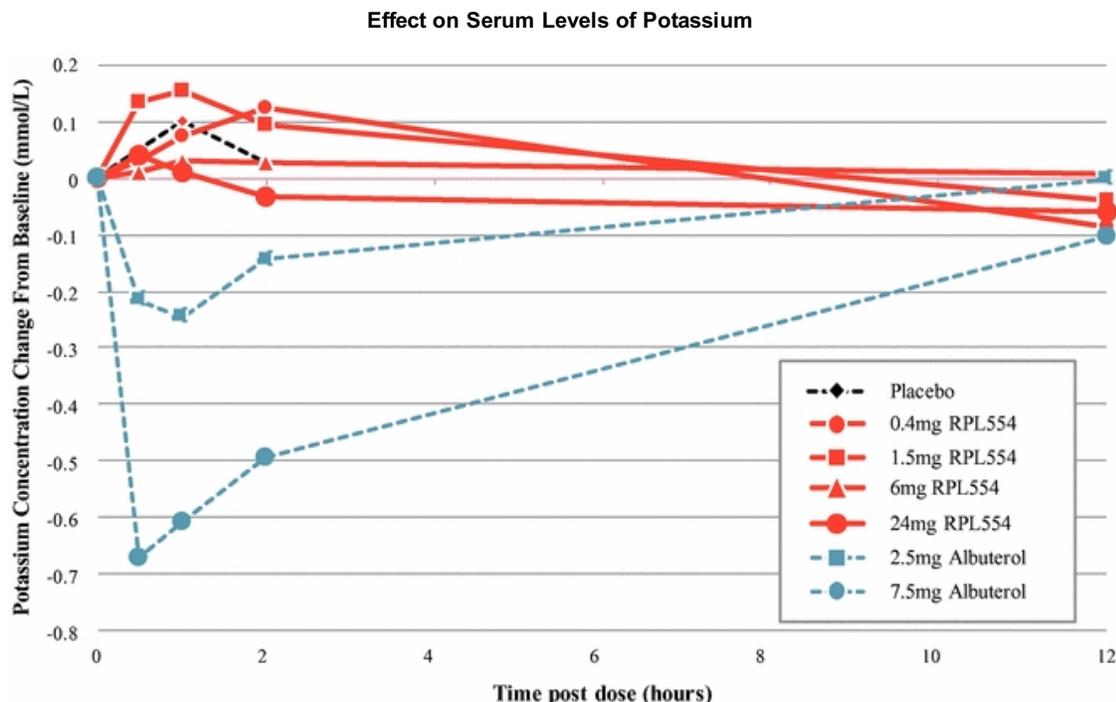
In May 2013, we completed a Phase 1 clinical trial in which 21 healthy evaluable subjects were treated with either our initial proof-of-concept formulation of RPL554 or placebo once daily for six days before airway challenge with aerosolized LPS. Subjects that were administered RPL554 had significantly lower absolute numbers of neutrophils in sputum collected six hours after LPS challenge, and a significant reduction in the absolute numbers of other inflammatory cells, including lymphocytes, macrophages and eosinophils, at the same time point. These observations suggest that RPL554 also has the potential to target the chronic inflammatory processes in COPD. The figure below illustrates the reduction in inflammatory cells observed in this trial as measured by absolute cell counts.



**Summary of Safety Results**

RPL554 was well tolerated in each of our eight Phase 1 and 2a clinical trials at dose levels ranging from 0.4 mg to 24 mg. RPL554 was well tolerated both when administered alone and as an add-on therapy to commonly used bronchodilators. In our completed clinical trials, we did not observe any gastrointestinal adverse events or cardiovascular effects, other than a small increase in heart rate at the highest doses tested. RPL554 had no observed effect on cardiac function as measured by electrocardiograms, including QT intervals, a measure of time between certain waves in the heart's electrical cycle and measure of a potential cardiovascular adverse event. In addition, we did not observe an increase in incidence of any adverse event over commonly used bronchodilators when RPL554 was used alone. In these trials, some subjects experienced mild to moderate adverse reactions, including headache, dizziness, cough, heart palpitation, nausea, dry mouth, parenthesis (tingling), nasopharyngitis (throat irritation) and rash, which occurred with comparable frequency to placebo. No subjects had a serious adverse event.

The figure below illustrates the effects of RPL554 and albuterol on serum levels of potassium:



#### Clinical Development Plans

We plan to conduct several trials to support our plans to develop RPL554 in a nebulized formulation for the maintenance treatment of COPD and as an add-on therapy to short-acting bronchodilators and other commonly used therapies for the treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. We also are developing RPL554 in both DPI and MDI formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. In addition, we may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases.

- **Maintenance treatment of COPD.** We plan to commence a Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial for RPL554 for the maintenance treatment in approximately 400 patients with COPD in Europe in the second half of 2017. The Phase 2b clinical trial will be a four-week double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel group trial. The primary endpoint is improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, after dosing with RPL554 or placebo. We expect to report top-line data from the Phase 2b trial in the second half of 2018.

We also plan to commence a Phase 2b dose-ranging clinical trial for RPL554 as an add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator for maintenance treatment in approximately 400 patients with COPD in the second half of 2018. This Phase 2b clinical trial will be a 12-week double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. The primary endpoint is improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, after dosing with RPL554 as an add-on treatment to tiotropium.

We also plan to commence a single-dose PK trial in mid-2017 in approximately 12 healthy volunteers in the United States. The primary endpoint is to determine the amount of drug that is swallowed which makes it into systemic circulation, or oral bioavailability. We expect to report top-line data from the PK trial in the fourth quarter of 2017.

[Table of Contents](#)

In February 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a clinical trial in the United Kingdom evaluating RPL554 in patients with COPD as an add-on therapy to tiotropium, an approved and widely used LAMA bronchodilator. Our Phase 2a clinical trial is a three day trial in approximately 30 COPD patients. This trial will evaluate the improvement in lung function, as measured by FEV<sub>1</sub>, and duration of effect of RPL554 or placebo as an add-on therapy to tiotropium. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the fourth quarter of 2017. The data from these trials will also help inform the clinical development of RPL554 in the acute setting.

- **Treatment of hospitalized patients with acute exacerbations of COPD.** We plan to commence a Phase 2 clinical trial in the United States for RPL554 for the treatment of acute COPD patients requiring hospitalization in 2018. We plan to enroll approximately 150 patients in this Phase 2 clinical trial, which will be a double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel group trial starting during the patients' hospitalization for COPD exacerbation and continuing for 30 days after discharge. RPL554 will be added to the standard-of-care treatment these patients receive. This trial will be designed to evaluate the efficacy and safety of RPL554 when administered for patients experiencing a COPD exacerbation requiring hospitalization.

The table below summarizes our planned clinical trial designs for RPL554 for the treatment of COPD.

<b>Trial Description</b>	<b>Trial Design</b>	<b>Patient Population</b>	<b>Primary Endpoint</b>	<b>Secondary Endpoints</b>	<b>Anticipated Milestones</b>
Phase 2a trial to determine efficacy and safety of RPL554 administered as add-on therapy to tiotropium for maintenance treatment of COPD	Double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-way cross-over, three-day trial  Dosing: Two doses (twice-daily)	Approximately 30 stable COPD patients, age 40 - 75, with FEV <sub>1</sub> between 40% and 80% of predicted normal levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub>: peak and AUC over 12 hours</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ PK profile</li> <li>▪ Safety</li> <li>▪ Plethysmography measuring the volume of air in the lungs</li> <li>▪ Cardiovascular effects</li> </ul>	Commenced in February 2017, with top-line data expected in the fourth quarter of 2017
Phase 1 PK trial to determine oral bioavailability of the compound	Dosing: Single dose	Approximately 12 healthy volunteers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Oral bioavailability</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Tolerability</li> <li>▪ Safety</li> </ul>	Planned commencement in mid-2017, with top-line data expected in the fourth quarter of 2017
Phase 2b trial to determine efficacy, safety and dose-response of RPL554 for maintenance treatment of COPD	Double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel group, four-week trial  Dosing: Four doses (twice-daily)	Approximately 400 COPD patients, age 40 - 75, with FEV <sub>1</sub> of 40% to 80% of predicted normal levels. All long-acting bronchodilators will be withheld	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub>: peak and AUC over 12 hours</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub> 24 hours after the previous dose, or FEV<sub>1</sub> trough</li> <li>▪ COPD daily symptoms</li> <li>▪ St George's Respiratory Questionnaire (SGRQ), a COPD health status score</li> <li>▪ Dyspnea scale</li> <li>▪ Safety</li> </ul>	Planned commencement in the second half of 2017, with top-line data expected in the second half of 2018

[Table of Contents](#)

<b>Trial Description</b>	<b>Trial Design</b>	<b>Patient Population</b>	<b>Primary Endpoint</b>	<b>Secondary Endpoints</b>	<b>Anticipated Milestones</b>
Phase 2b trial to determine efficacy, safety and dose-response of RPL554 administered as add-on therapy to a long-acting bronchodilator for maintenance treatment of COPD	Double-blind, placebo-controlled, 12-week trial  Dosing: Two to three doses (twice-daily)	Approximately 400 COPD patients, age 40 - 75, with moderate to very severe COPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub> 24 hours after the previous dose, or FEV<sub>1</sub> trough</li> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub> peak</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub>: AUC over 12 hours</li> <li>▪ COPD daily symptoms</li> <li>▪ St George's Respiratory Questionnaire (SGRQ), a COPD health status score</li> <li>▪ Dyspnea scale</li> <li>▪ Safety</li> <li>▪ COPD symptoms</li> </ul>	Planned commencement in the second half of 2018, with top-line data expected in 2020
Phase 2 trial to determine efficacy and safety of RPL554 for acute COPD exacerbation requiring hospitalization	Double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel group trial starting during hospitalization and continuing for 30 days after discharge  Dosing: Two doses (twice-daily)	Approximately 150 patients, age 40 - 80	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Length of stay in hospital</li> <li>▪ 30-day hospital re-admission rate</li> </ul>	Planned commencement in the second half of 2018, with top-line data expected in 2020

**Additional Development Programs**

In addition to our nebulized formulation of RPL554, we are developing RPL554 in both DPI and MDI formulations for the maintenance treatment of COPD. In addition, we may explore the development of RPL554 in these formulations for the treatment of asthma and other respiratory diseases. DPI and MDI inhaler devices are the most common forms of drug delivery in non-hospitalized patients with COPD and are well-suited for the maintenance therapy of COPD patients. We believe the development of DPI and MDI formulations has the potential to significantly increase the market opportunity for RPL554, if approved, for the maintenance treatment of COPD. Following the completion of our DPI and MDI formulation process, we plan to commence pre-clinical studies for RPL554 in these formulations in

**RPL554 for the Treatment of Cystic Fibrosis**

**Overview**

We plan to evaluate RPL554 for the treatment of CF. We believe RPL554, if approved, has the potential to be an important and novel treatment and standard of care for patients with CF based on its favorable properties observed to date.

**CF Background**

CF is the most common fatal inherited disease in the United States and Europe. CF causes impaired lung function and is commonly associated with repeat and persistent lung infections due to the inability to clear thickened mucus from the lung. This condition often results in frequent exacerbations and hospitalizations. There is no cure for CF and the median age of death for CF patients is 37 years. CF is considered a rare, or orphan, disease by both the FDA and the EMA. According to the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation, more than 30,000 people in the United States and more than 70,000 people worldwide are living with CF and approximately 1,000 new cases of CF are diagnosed each year. We plan to seek orphan drug designation for RPL554 in treating CF. CF patients require lifelong treatment with multiple daily medications, frequent hospitalizations and, ultimately, lung transplants in some end-stage patients. The quality of life for CF patients is compromised as a result of spending significant time on self-care every day and frequent

## [Table of Contents](#)

outpatient doctor visits and hospitalizations. CF patients take an average of seven medications daily. In the 12-month period ended June 30, 2016, global sales of drugs currently indicated for CF totaled \$4.1 billion. The global market for CF drugs is expected to increase to \$7.0 billion in 2020.

CF is caused by mutations in a gene that encodes the CFTR protein. The CFTR protein channel regulates the movement, or efflux, of specific ions such as chloride in and out of the cells of organs like the lungs, pancreas and gastrointestinal tract. Through regulation of these ions, the amount of salts in the fluid both inside and outside the cell remains balanced. In CF patients, however, the CFTR protein is defective and cannot perform its normal function of transporting ions across the cell membrane, resulting in an environment characterized by thick mucus in vital organs such as the lung, the pancreas and the gastrointestinal tract.

The lack of functional CFTR in CF patients is particularly problematic in the lungs, where the build-up of thick mucus obstructs parts of the lung, allows bacteria to grow unfettered and impairs the functionality of the local immune system. Of all the manifestations of CF, chronic pulmonary disease is the most critical and is characterized by a combination of airway obstruction, infection and inflammation such that more than 90% of all CF patients die of respiratory failure, and thus have a shortened life expectancy.

### ***Current Treatment Landscape of CF***

Until recently, approved therapies to treat CF patients have been designed to treat the symptoms of CF, by preventing and controlling infections that occur in the lungs, rather than address the underlying cause. Accordingly, antibiotics are frequently used along with mucus-thinning drugs. A significant portion of CF patients are prescribed bronchodilators, although no bronchodilator is currently approved by the FDA for the treatment of patients with CF. For patients with certain gene mutations, a new medication called ivacaftor, or Kalydeco, which is a CFTR potentiator, is used to improve CFTR function and thereby improve lung function. A combination drug consisting of ivacaftor and lumacaftor, or Orkambi, which is a CFTR corrector, can be used in a somewhat broader group of CF patients with partly different gene mutations. While not indicated specifically for CF, high doses of ibuprofen also have been studied in CF patients and have demonstrated some anti-inflammatory efficacy resulting in a beneficial effect on the annual rate of decline of FEV<sub>1</sub>. However, CF patients commonly experience adverse events from ibuprofen, including gastrointestinal and liver side effects, and as a result it is infrequently used. However, it demonstrates that an anti-inflammatory medication in CF might change the course of the disease. There is currently no anti-inflammatory medication which is approved to treat the underlying inflammation in CF.

Despite the recent approval of the two novel targeted therapies, Kalydeco and Orkambi, for patients with CF, only a subset of CF patients is indicated for treatment with these two therapies. As a result, we believe CF remains a significant unmet medical need. If we obtain orphan drug designation and FDA approval for this indication, RPL554 may be entitled to orphan drug exclusivity, which means the FDA may not approve any other application to market the same drug for this indication for a period of seven years, except in limited circumstances.

### ***Our Solution***

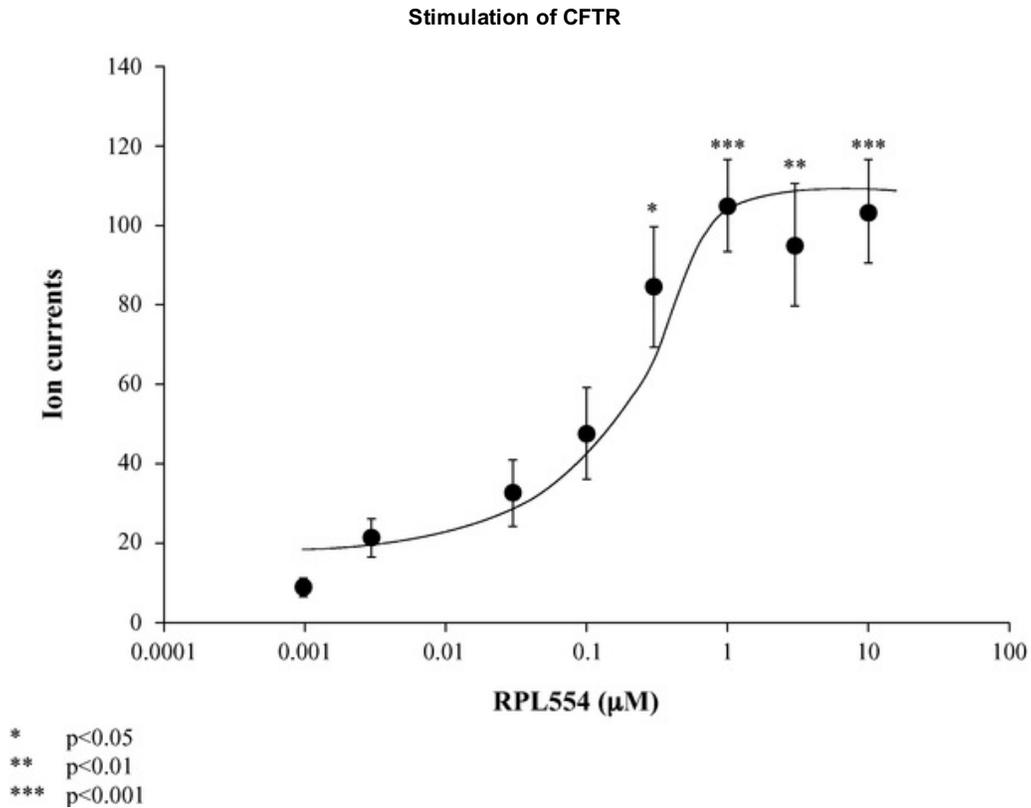
By inhibiting PDE3 and PDE4, RPL554 increases the levels of cAMP and CGMP, resulting in bronchodilator and anti-inflammatory effects, and stimulates the CFTR. CFTR stimulation leads to improved electrolyte balance in the lung and thinning of the mucus, which facilitates mucociliary clearance and leads to improved lung function and potentially a reduction in lung infections. Dual inhibition of PDE3 and PDE4 has been observed to be more effective than inhibition of either PDE alone at relaxing airway smooth muscle cells and suppressing the activation and functions of pro-inflammatory cells residing in the lung, both of which are commonly understood to play a significant role in CF.

In our pre-clinical studies, RPL554 has been observed to stimulate the CFTR, as well as increase ciliary beat frequency, a key parameter determining the rate of mucus clearance, in primary airway cells and to

improve electrolyte balance in the lung. Based on available data, we believe that RPL554 has the potential to inhibit deleterious inflammation, reduce airway obstruction through bronchodilation and enhance mucociliary clearance through stimulation of the CFTR on airway epithelial cells, thereby making it an attractive therapy for the treatment of CF.

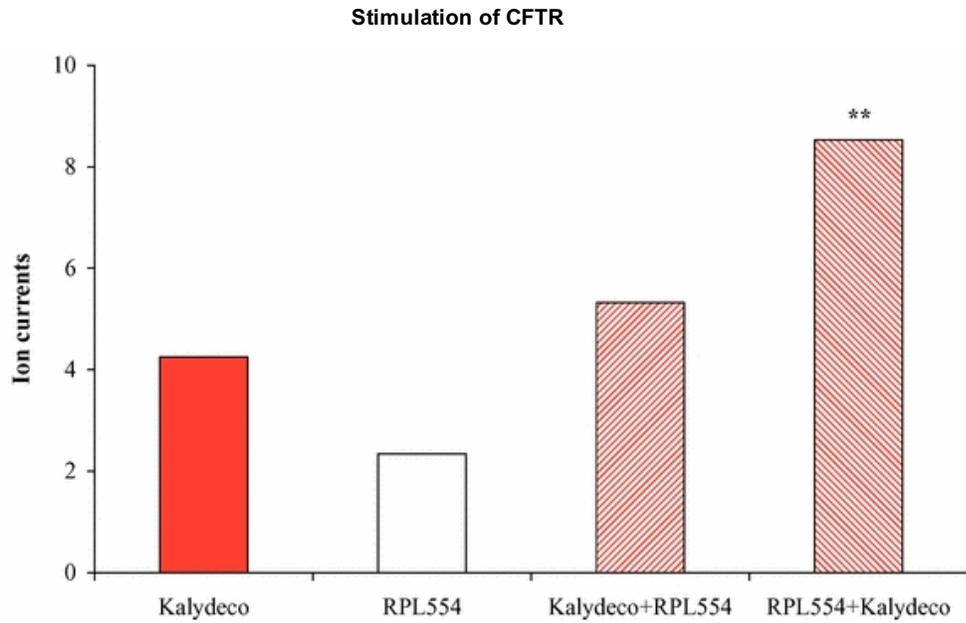
**Pre-clinical Studies**

In a series of pre-clinical studies we conducted, RPL554 was observed to stimulate the CFTR. As shown in the figure below, administration of increasing concentrations of RPL554 resulted in improvement in CFTR function, as measured by ion currents in a human bronchial-epithelial cell line.



Furthermore, in a pre-clinical study comparing RPL554 to Kalydeco, both compounds increased CFTR activity in cells from a CF patient with the mutation that is appropriate for treatment with Kalydeco. When RPL554 was administered before Kalydeco, it had an additive effect, which was smaller when the

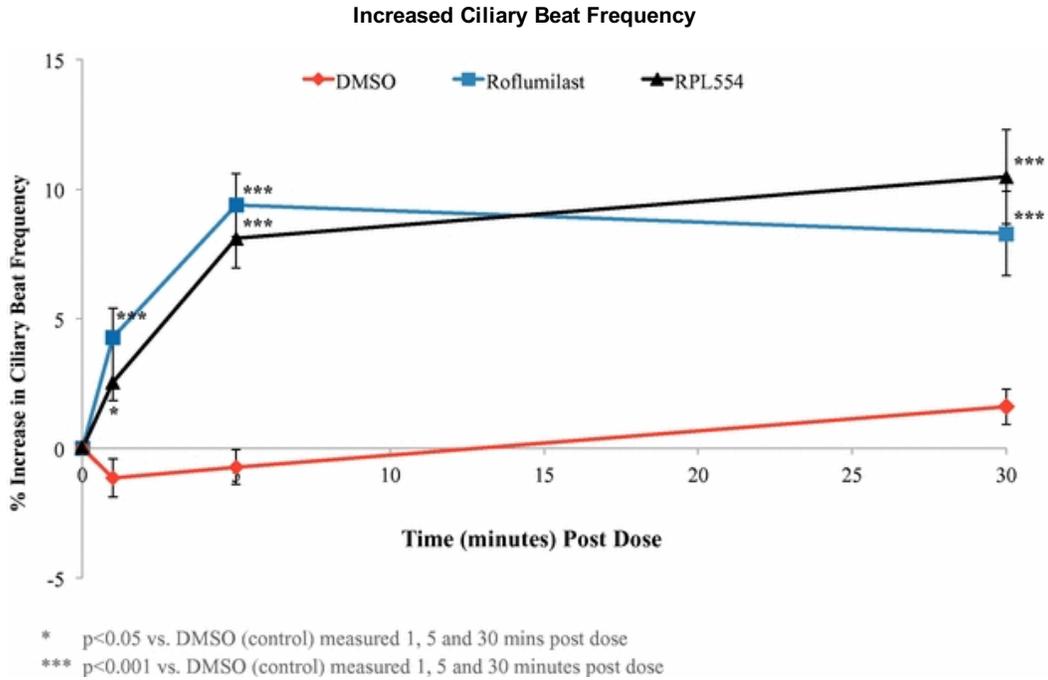
compounds were delivered in the reverse order. This stimulatory effect on the CFTR, as measured by ion currents, is shown in the figure below.



\*\* p<0.01 vs. Kalydeco alone

In addition, in a pre-clinical study RPL554 was observed to increase ciliary beat frequency in primary human airway cells at similar levels to the PDE4 inhibitor, roflumilast. We believe RPL554 may increase

ciliary beat frequency and therefore promote mucociliary clearance in CF patients. This is illustrated in the figure below.



We believe this pre-clinical data, combined with the anti-inflammatory and bronchodilator effects of RPL554, suggest that RPL554 is appropriate for clinical trials for, and may prove effective in the treatment of, CF patients.

#### **Clinical Development Plans**

In March 2017, we commenced a Phase 2a single-dose trial in the United Kingdom evaluating RPL554 in up to ten CF patients in the United Kingdom. This trial will evaluate the PK and PD profile and tolerability of RPL554 in patients with CF, as well as the effect on lung function. We expect to report top-line data from this trial in the first half of 2018. The results of this trial will support dose selection for a proof-of-concept Phase 2b trial in Europe in approximately 100 patients with CF, which we plan to commence in 2018.

[Table of Contents](#)

The table below summarizes our planned clinical trials for RPL554 for the treatment of CF.

<b>Trial Description</b>	<b>Trial Design</b>	<b>Patient Population</b>	<b>Primary Endpoints</b>	<b>Secondary Endpoints</b>	<b>Anticipated Milestones</b>
Phase 2a PK and PD trial to evaluate tolerability in CF patients and examine effect on lung function and inflammatory biomarkers	Double-blind, placebo-controlled, cross-over trial  Dosing: Single dose	Up to 10 CF patients, age 18 years and older, with FEV <sub>1</sub> > 40% of expected levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ PK profile</li> <li>▪ Safety</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub>: peak and AUC</li> </ul>	Commenced in March 2017, with top-line data expected in the first half of 2018
Phase 2b proof-of-concept trial to determine the efficacy and safety of RPL554 in CF patients	Double-blind, placebo-controlled, three way, parallel group trial  Dosing: Multiple dose (twice-daily)	Approximately 100 CF patients, age 18 and older, with FEV <sub>1</sub> of > 40% of expected levels  All CFTR mutations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub>: peak</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ FEV<sub>1</sub> trough</li> <li>▪ Inflammation biomarkers</li> <li>▪ Exacerbations</li> <li>▪ Safety</li> </ul>	Planned commencement in 2018

**Vernalis Agreement**

In February 2005, Rhinopharma Limited, or Rhinopharma, entered into an assignment and license agreement with Vernalis Development Limited, or Vernalis, which we refer to as the Vernalis Agreement. In 2006, we acquired Rhinopharma and all of its rights and obligations under the Vernalis Agreement. Pursuant to the Vernalis Agreement, Vernalis assigned to us all of its rights to certain patents and patent applications relating to RPL554 and related compounds, or the Vernalis Patents. We cannot further assign the Vernalis Patents to a third party without Vernalis' prior consent. Vernalis also granted to us an exclusive, worldwide, royalty-bearing license under certain Vernalis know-how to develop, manufacture and commercialize products, or the Licensed Products, based on PDE inhibitors developed using Vernalis Patents, Vernalis know-how and the physical stock of certain compounds, including RPL554, which we refer to as the Program IP, in the treatment of human or animal allergic or inflammatory disorders. Pursuant to the Vernalis Agreement, we must maintain the Vernalis Patents and use commercially reasonable and diligent efforts to develop and commercialize the Licensed Products.

Under the Vernalis Agreement, we are obligated to pay Vernalis a milestone payment of £5.0 million upon the first approval of any regulatory authority for the commercialization of any Licensed Product, and a portion equal to a percentage in the mid twenties of any consideration received from any of our sublicensees for Vernalis Patents or Vernalis know-how, excluding royalties. We must also pay Vernalis, on a Licensed Product-by-Licensed Product and country-by-country basis, a low to mid-single digit percentage royalty based on net sales of each Licensed Product for a period beginning with the first commercial sale of such Licensed Product in a country and ending on the later of the expiration of a certain number of years after such first commercial sale and if applicable the expiration of the last to expire valid claim in the Vernalis Patents covering the development, manufacture or commercialization of such Licensed Product in such country. Prior to the first commercial sale of each Licensed Product, such royalties also are due in the same percentages for any named patient sales.

The Vernalis Agreement continues until terminated by either party in accordance with its terms. Either party may terminate the Vernalis Agreement for an uncured material breach, bankruptcy or insolvency of the other party. We may terminate the Vernalis Agreement upon 90 days' prior written notice. Vernalis may terminate the Vernalis Agreement if we notify Vernalis of our intention to abandon any Vernalis Patents or allow any

## [Table of Contents](#)

Vernalis Patents to lapse. Upon termination of the Vernalis Agreement, we must cease use of any Program IP and assign the Vernalis Patents and any improvements thereto back to Vernalis.

### **Manufacturing**

We have no experience in product candidate formulation or manufacturing. We rely on, and expect to continue to rely, on third-party contract manufacturing organizations, or CMOs, for the supply of current good manufacturing practices specified by the FDA, or cGMP, clinical trial materials of RPL554 and any future product candidates, as well as for commercial quantities of RPL554 and any future product candidates, if approved. We currently do not have any agreements for the commercial production of raw materials. While we may contract with other CMOs in the future, we currently contract with only one pharmaceuticals CMO for the manufacture of RPL554 drug substance. For RPL554 drug product in our nebulized formulation, we currently have two CMOs. We believe that the RPL554 manufacturing process can be transferred to a number of other CMOs for the production of clinical and commercial supplies of RPL554 in the ordinary course of business.

Manufacturing of any product candidate is subject to extensive regulations that impose various procedural and documentation requirements governing recordkeeping, manufacturing processes and controls, personnel, quality control and quality assurance, among others. We expect that all of our CMOs will manufacture RPL554 under cGMP conditions. cGMP is a regulatory standard for the production of pharmaceuticals to be used in humans.

### **Commercialization, Sales and Marketing**

We have not yet defined our sales, marketing or commercialization strategy for RPL554. Our commercial strategy may include the use of strategic collaborators, distributors, a contract sales force, or the establishment of our own commercial and specialty sales force. We plan to further evaluate these alternatives as we continue the clinical development of RPL554.

### **Competition**

We consider RPL554's current closest potential competitors in the nebulized maintenance treatment of COPD in the U.S. market to be Brovana, a long-acting beta2-agonist bronchodilator marketed by Sunovion, and Perforomist, a long-acting beta2-agonist bronchodilator marketed by Mylan. Neither drug, however, provides an anti-inflammatory effect. We consider RPL554's current closest potential competitors in the DPI/MDI maintenance treatment of COPD to be Symbicort, a combination of a long-acting beta2-agonist bronchodilator and inhaled corticosteroid marketed by AstraZeneca, Spiriva, a long-acting anti-muscarinic bronchodilator marketed by Boehringer Ingelheim, Advair, a combination of a long-acting beta2-agonist bronchodilator and inhaled corticosteroid marketed by GlaxoSmithKline, Utibron Neohaler, a combination of a long-acting beta2-agonist and long-acting anti-muscarinic bronchodilator marketed by Novartis, Breo, a combination of a long-acting beta2-agonist bronchodilator and inhaled corticosteroid marketed by GlaxoSmithKline, and Anoro, a combination of a long-acting beta2-agonist bronchodilator and long-acting anti-muscarinic bronchodilator marketed by GlaxoSmithKline.

We compete directly with biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies that focus on the treatment of respiratory diseases. We also face competition from academic research institutions, governmental agencies and other various public and private research institutions. We expect to face increasingly intense competition as new technologies become available. Any product candidates, including RPL554, that we successfully develop and commercialize will compete with existing therapies and new therapies that may become available in the future.

Many of our competitors have significantly greater financial, manufacturing, marketing, drug development, technical and human resources than we do. Mergers and acquisitions in the pharmaceutical and biotechnology industries may result in even more resources being concentrated among a smaller number of

## [Table of Contents](#)

our competitors. Smaller or early stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These competitors also compete with us in recruiting and retaining top qualified scientific and management personnel and establishing clinical trial sites and patient registration for clinical trials, as well as in acquiring technologies complementary to, or necessary for, our programs.

The key competitive factors affecting the success of RPL554, if approved, are likely to be its efficacy, safety, dosing convenience, price, the effectiveness of companion diagnostics in guiding the use of related therapeutics, the level of generic competition and the availability of reimbursement from government and other third-party payors.

Our commercial opportunity could be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and commercialize products that are safer, more effective, less expensive, more convenient or easier to administer, or have fewer or less severe effects than any products that we may develop. Our competitors may also obtain FDA, EMA or other regulatory approval for their products more rapidly than we may obtain approval for ours, which could result in our competitors establishing a strong market position before we are able to enter the market. Even if RPL554 achieves marketing approval, it may be priced at a significant premium over competitive products if any have been approved by then.

### **Intellectual Property**

We strive to protect and enhance the proprietary technologies, inventions and improvements that we believe are important to our business, including seeking, maintaining and defending patent rights, whether developed internally or licensed from third parties. Our policy is to seek to protect our proprietary position by, among other methods, pursuing and obtaining patent protection in the United States and in jurisdictions outside of the United States related to our proprietary technology, inventions, improvements, platforms and our product candidates that are important to the development and implementation of our business.

As of March 31, 2017, our patent portfolio consisted of five issued U.S. patents, four pending U.S. patent applications, 16 issued foreign patents and 49 pending foreign applications including two patent applications made under the PCT. These patents and patent applications include claims directed to RPL554 composition of matter, new dosage formulations and a crystalline polymorph, as well as methods of making and using RPL554 in the treatment of respiratory diseases, with expected expiry dates not earlier than between 2020 and 2037.

The patent portfolio relating to RPL554 includes eight patent families:

- The first of these patent families relates to RPL554 per se. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family includes granted patents in Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe, Japan, Mexico as well as four granted patents in the United States. We expect patents in this family to expire in March 2020.
- The second of these patent families relates to a crystalline polymorph of RPL554. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included granted patents in Australia, China, Europe, Indonesia, Japan, Malaysia, Mexico, Russia, the United States and Taiwan and patent applications in Canada, Israel, Japan, South Korea, Philippines, Thailand and the Gulf Cooperation Council. We expect patents in this family to expire in August 2031.
- The third of these patent families relates to the combination of RPL554 with a beta-adrenergic receptor agonist. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included patent applications in Canada, Europe and the United States. We expect patents in this family to expire in March 2034.
- The fourth of these patent families relates to the combination of RPL554 with an M3-muscarinic receptor antagonist. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included patent applications in Australia, Canada, China, Europe, Israel, India, Japan, South Korea, Mexico, Russia, Thailand and the United States. We expect patents in this family to expire in March 2034.
- The fifth of these patent families relates to certain specific salts of RPL554. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included a pending PCT application designating all contracting states. We expect patents in this family to expire in February 2036.

## [Table of Contents](#)

- The sixth of these patent families relates to use of RPL554 to treat certain diseases associated with the function of CFTR (including CF). As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included patent applications in Australia, Canada, Europe, Israel, Mexico, Russia, the United States and South Africa. We expect patents in this family to expire in May 2035.
- The seventh of these patent families relates to an inhalable formulation of RPL554. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included patent applications in Australia, Brazil, Canada, China, Europe Indonesia, Israel, India, Japan, South Korea, Mexico, Malaysia, New Zealand, the Philippines, Singapore, South Africa, Thailand, and the United States. We expect patents in this family to expire in September 2035.
- The eighth of these patent families relates to a new compound related to RPL554 and to processes useful for the production of RPL554 and related compounds. As of March 31, 2017, this patent family included an unpublished Great Britain priority application. We expect patents in this family to expire in July 2037.

Individual patents extend for varying periods depending on the date of filing of the patent application or the date of patent issuance and the legal term of patents in the countries in which they are obtained. Generally, patents issued for regularly filed applications in the United States are granted a term of 20 years from the earliest effective non-provisional filing date. In addition, in certain instances, a patent term can be extended to recapture a portion of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, or the USPTO, delay in issuing the patent as well as a portion of the term effectively lost as a result of the FDA regulatory review period. However, as to the FDA component, the restoration period cannot be longer than five years and the total patent term including the restoration period must not exceed 14 years following FDA approval. The duration of foreign patents varies in accordance with provisions of applicable local law, but typically is also 20 years from the earliest effective filing date. However, the actual protection afforded by a patent varies on a product by product basis, from country to country and depends upon many factors, including the type of patent, the scope of its coverage, the availability of regulatory-related extensions, the availability of legal remedies in a particular country and the validity and enforceability of the patent.

Furthermore, we rely upon trade secrets and know-how and continuing technological innovation to develop and maintain our competitive position. We seek to protect our proprietary information, in part, using confidentiality agreements with our collaborators, employees and consultants and invention assignment agreements with our employees. We also have confidentiality agreements or invention assignment agreements with our collaborators and selected consultants. These agreements are designed to protect our proprietary information and, in the case of the invention assignment agreements, to grant us ownership of technologies that are developed through a relationship with a third party. These agreements may be breached, and we may not have adequate remedies for any breach. In addition, our trade secrets may otherwise become known or be independently discovered by competitors. To the extent that our collaborators, employees and consultants use intellectual property owned by others in their work for us, disputes may arise as to the rights in related or resulting know-how and inventions.

Our commercial success will also depend in part on not infringing upon the proprietary rights of third parties. It is uncertain whether the issuance of any third-party patent would require us to alter our development or commercial strategies, or our drugs or processes, obtain licenses or cease certain activities. Our breach of any license agreements or failure to obtain a license to proprietary rights that we may require to develop or commercialize our future drugs may have an adverse impact on us. If third parties have prepared and filed patent applications prior to March 16, 2013 in the United States that also claim technology to which we have rights, we may have to participate in interference proceedings in the USPTO, to determine priority of invention. For more information, please see "Risk Factors — Risks Related to Intellectual Property and Information Technology."

## **Government Regulation**

The FDA and comparable regulatory authorities in state and local jurisdictions and in other countries impose substantial and burdensome requirements upon companies involved in the clinical development, manufacture, marketing and distribution of drug such as those we are developing. These agencies and other federal, state and local entities regulate, among other things, the research and development, testing, manufacture, quality control, safety, effectiveness, labeling, storage, record keeping, approval, advertising and promotion, distribution, post-approval monitoring and reporting, sampling and export and import of our product candidates.

### ***U.S. Government Regulation***

In the United States, the FDA regulates drugs under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, or FDCA, and its implementing regulations.

The process of obtaining regulatory approvals and the subsequent compliance with applicable federal, state, local and foreign statutes and regulations requires the expenditure of substantial time and financial resources. Failure to comply with the applicable U.S. requirements at any time during the product development process, approval process or after approval, may subject an applicant to a variety of administrative or judicial sanctions, such as the FDA's refusal to approve pending NDAs, withdrawal of an approval, imposition of a clinical hold, issuance of warning letters, product recalls, product seizures, total or partial suspension of production or distribution, injunctions, fines, refusals of government contracts, restitution, disgorgement or civil or criminal penalties.

The process required by the FDA before a drug may be marketed in the United States generally involves the following:

- completion of pre-clinical laboratory tests, animal studies and formulation studies in compliance with the FDA's good laboratory practice, or GLP, regulations;
- submission to the FDA of an investigational new drug application, or IND, which must become effective before human clinical trials may begin;
- approval by an independent institutional review board, or IRB, at each clinical site before each trial may be initiated;
- performance of adequate and well-controlled human clinical trials in accordance with good clinical practice, or GCP, requirements to establish the safety and efficacy of the proposed drug product for each indication;
- submission to the FDA of an NDA;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA advisory committee review, if applicable;
- satisfactory completion of an FDA inspection of the manufacturing facility or facilities at which the product is produced to assess compliance with current good manufacturing practice, or cGMP, requirements and to assure that the facilities, methods and controls are adequate to preserve the drug's identity, strength, quality and purity; and
- FDA review and approval of the NDA.

### ***Pre-clinical Studies***

Pre-clinical studies include laboratory evaluation of product chemistry, toxicity and formulation, as well as animal studies to assess potential safety and efficacy. An IND sponsor must submit the results of the pre-clinical tests, together with manufacturing information, analytical data and any available clinical data or literature, among other things, to the FDA as part of an IND. Some pre-clinical testing may continue even after the IND is submitted. An IND automatically becomes effective 30 days after receipt by the FDA, unless before that time the FDA raises concerns or questions related to one or more proposed clinical trials and places the clinical trial on a clinical hold. In such a case, the IND sponsor and the FDA must resolve any outstanding concerns before the clinical trial can begin. As a result, submission of an IND may not result in the FDA allowing clinical trials to commence.

### **Clinical Trials**

Clinical trials involve the administration of the investigational new drug to human subjects under the supervision of qualified investigators in accordance with GCP requirements, which include the requirement that all research subjects provide their informed consent in writing for their participation in any clinical trial. Clinical trials are conducted under protocols detailing, among other things, the objectives or endpoints of the trial, the parameters to be used in monitoring safety, and the effectiveness criteria to be evaluated. A protocol for each clinical trial and any subsequent protocol amendments must be submitted to the FDA as part of the IND. In addition, an IRB at each institution participating in the clinical trial must review and approve the plan for any clinical trial before it commences at that institution. Information about certain clinical trials must be submitted within specific timeframes to the National Institutes of Health, or NIH, for public dissemination on their [www.clinicaltrials.gov](http://www.clinicaltrials.gov) website.

Human clinical trials are typically conducted in three sequential phases, which may overlap or be combined:

- Phase 1: The drug is initially introduced into healthy human subjects or patients with the target disease or condition and tested for safety, dosage tolerance, absorption, metabolism, distribution, excretion and, if possible, to gain an early indication of its effectiveness.
- Phase 2: The drug is administered to a limited patient population to identify possible adverse effects and safety risks, to preliminarily evaluate the efficacy of the product for specific targeted diseases and to determine dosage tolerance and optimal dosage.
- Phase 3: The drug is administered to an expanded patient population, generally at geographically dispersed clinical trial sites, in well-controlled clinical trials to generate enough data to statistically evaluate the efficacy and safety of the product for approval, to establish the overall risk-benefit profile of the product, and to provide adequate information for the labeling of the product.

Progress reports detailing the results of the clinical trials must be submitted at least annually to the FDA and more frequently if serious adverse events occur. Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 clinical trials may not be completed successfully within any specified period, or at all. Furthermore, the FDA or the sponsor may suspend or terminate a clinical trial at any time on various grounds, including a finding that the research subjects are being exposed to an unacceptable health risk. Similarly, an IRB can suspend or terminate approval of a clinical trial at its institution if the clinical trial is not being conducted in accordance with the IRB's requirements or if the drug has been associated with unexpected serious harm to patients.

### **Special Protocol Assessment**

The special protocol assessment, or SPA, process is designed to facilitate the FDA's review and approval of drugs by allowing the FDA to evaluate issues related to the adequacy of certain clinical trials, including Phase 3 clinical trials that are intended to form the primary basis for a drug product's efficacy claim in an NDA. Upon specific request by a clinical trial sponsor, the FDA will evaluate the protocol and respond to a sponsor's questions regarding, among other things, primary efficacy endpoints, trial conduct and data analysis, within 45 days of receipt of the request.

The FDA ultimately assesses whether the protocol design and planned analysis of the trial are acceptable to support regulatory approval of the product candidate with respect to effectiveness of the indication studied. All agreements and disagreements between the FDA and the sponsor regarding an SPA must be clearly documented in an SPA letter or the minutes of a meeting between the sponsor and the FDA.

Even if the FDA agrees to the design, execution and analyses proposed in protocols reviewed under the SPA process, the FDA may revoke or alter its agreement under the following circumstances:

- public health concerns emerge that were unrecognized at the time of the protocol assessment;
- the director of the review division determines that a substantial scientific issue essential to determining safety or efficacy has been identified after testing has begun;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- a sponsor fails to follow a protocol that was agreed upon with the FDA; or
- the relevant data, assumptions, or information provided by the sponsor in a request for SPA change, are found to be false statements or misstatements, or are found to omit relevant facts.

A documented SPA may be modified, and such modification will be deemed binding on the FDA review division, except under the circumstances described above, if FDA and the sponsor agree in writing to modify the protocol and such modification is intended to improve the study.

### ***Marketing Approval***

Assuming successful completion of the required clinical testing, the results of the pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, together with detailed information relating to the product's chemistry, manufacture, controls and proposed labeling, among other things, are submitted to the FDA as part of an NDA requesting approval to market the product for one or more indications. In most cases, the submission of an NDA is subject to a substantial application user fee. Under the Prescription Drug User Fee Act, or PDUFA, guidelines that are currently in effect, the FDA has a goal of ten months from the date of "filing" of a standard NDA for a new molecular entity to review and act on the submission. This review typically takes twelve months from the date the NDA is submitted to FDA because the FDA has approximately two months to make a "filing" decision.

In addition, under the Pediatric Research Equity Act of 2003, or PREA, as amended and reauthorized, certain NDAs or supplements to an NDA must contain data that are adequate to assess the safety and effectiveness of the drug for the claimed indications in all relevant pediatric subpopulations, and to support dosing and administration for each pediatric subpopulation for which the product is safe and effective. The FDA may, on its own initiative or at the request of the applicant, grant deferrals for submission of some or all pediatric data until after approval of the product for use in adults, or full or partial waivers from the pediatric data requirements.

The FDA may also require submission of a risk evaluation and mitigation strategy, or REMS, plan to ensure that the benefits of the drug outweigh its risks. The REMS plan could include medication guides, physician communication plans, assessment plans, and/or elements to assure safe use, such as restricted distribution methods, patient registries, or other risk minimization tools.

The FDA conducts a preliminary review of all NDAs within the first 60 days after submission, before accepting them for filing, to determine whether they are sufficiently complete to permit substantive review. The FDA may request additional information rather than accept an NDA for filing. In this event, the application must be resubmitted with the additional information. The resubmitted application is also subject to review before the FDA accepts it for filing. Once the submission is accepted for filing, the FDA begins an in-depth substantive review. The FDA reviews an NDA to determine, among other things, whether the drug is safe and effective and whether the facility in which it is manufactured, processed, packaged or held meets standards designed to assure the product's continued safety, quality and purity.

The FDA may refer an application for a novel drug to an advisory committee. An advisory committee is a panel of independent experts, including clinicians and other scientific experts, that reviews, evaluates and provides a recommendation as to whether the application should be approved and under what conditions. The FDA is not bound by the recommendations of an advisory committee, but it considers such recommendations carefully when making decisions.

Before approving an NDA, the FDA typically will inspect the facility or facilities where the product is manufactured. The FDA will not approve an application unless it determines that the manufacturing processes and facilities are in compliance with cGMP requirements and adequate to assure consistent production of the product within required specifications. Additionally, before approving an NDA, the FDA may inspect one or more clinical trial sites to assure compliance with GCP requirements.

## [Table of Contents](#)

After evaluating the NDA and all related information, including the advisory committee recommendation, if any, and inspection reports regarding the manufacturing facilities and clinical trial sites, the FDA may issue an approval letter, or, in some cases, a complete response letter. A complete response letter generally contains a statement of specific conditions that must be met in order to secure final approval of the NDA and may require additional clinical or pre-clinical testing in order for FDA to reconsider the application. Even with submission of this additional information, the FDA ultimately may decide that the application does not satisfy the regulatory criteria for approval. If and when those conditions have been met to the FDA's satisfaction, the FDA will typically issue an approval letter. An approval letter authorizes commercial marketing of the drug with specific prescribing information for specific indications.

Even if the FDA approves a product, it may limit the approved indications for use of the product, require that contraindications, warnings or precautions be included in the product labeling, require that post-approval studies, including Phase 4 clinical trials, be conducted to further assess a drug's safety after approval, require testing and surveillance programs to monitor the product after commercialization, or impose other conditions, including distribution and use restrictions or other risk management mechanisms under a REMS, which can materially affect the potential market and profitability of the product. The FDA may prevent or limit further marketing of a product based on the results of post-marketing studies or surveillance programs. After approval, some types of changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications, manufacturing changes, and additional labeling claims, are subject to further testing requirements and FDA review and approval.

### **Post-Approval Requirements**

Drugs manufactured or distributed pursuant to FDA approvals are subject to pervasive and continuing regulation by the FDA, including, among other things, requirements relating to recordkeeping, periodic reporting, product sampling and distribution, advertising and promotion and reporting of adverse experiences with the product. After approval, most changes to the approved product, such as adding new indications or other labeling claims are subject to prior FDA review and approval. There also are continuing, annual user fee requirements for any marketed products and the establishments at which such products are manufactured, as well as new application fees for supplemental applications with clinical data.

The FDA may impose a number of post-approval requirements as a condition of approval of an NDA. For example, the FDA may require post-marketing testing, including Phase 4 clinical trials, and surveillance to further assess and monitor the product's safety and effectiveness after commercialization.

In addition, drug manufacturers and other entities involved in the manufacture and distribution of approved drugs are required to register their establishments with the FDA and state agencies, and are subject to periodic unannounced inspections by the FDA and these state agencies for compliance with cGMP requirements. Changes to the manufacturing process are strictly regulated and often require prior FDA approval before being implemented. FDA regulations also require investigation and correction of any deviations from cGMP requirements and impose reporting and documentation requirements upon the sponsor and any third-party manufacturers that the sponsor may decide to use. Accordingly, manufacturers must continue to expend time, money and effort in the area of production and quality control to maintain cGMP compliance.

Once an approval is granted, the FDA may withdraw the approval if compliance with regulatory requirements and standards is not maintained or if problems occur after the product reaches the market. Later discovery of previously unknown problems with a product, including adverse events of unanticipated severity or frequency, or with manufacturing processes, or failure to comply with regulatory requirements, may result in mandatory revisions to the approved labeling to add new safety information; imposition of post-market studies or clinical trials to assess new safety risks; or imposition of distribution or other restrictions under a REMS program. Other potential consequences include, among other things:

- restrictions on the marketing or manufacturing of the product, complete withdrawal of the product from the market or product recalls;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- fines, warning letters or holds on post-approval clinical trials;
- refusal of the FDA to approve pending NDAs or supplements to approved NDAs, or suspension or revocation of product approvals;
- product seizure or detention, or refusal to permit the import or export of products; or
- injunctions or the imposition of civil or criminal penalties.

The FDA strictly regulates marketing, labeling, advertising and promotion of products that are placed on the market. Drugs may be promoted only for the approved indications and in accordance with the provisions of the approved label. The FDA and other agencies actively enforce the laws and regulations prohibiting the promotion of off-label uses, and a company that is found to have improperly promoted off-label uses may be subject to significant liability.

### **Foreign Government Regulation**

To the extent that any of our product candidates, once approved, are sold in a foreign country, we may be subject to similar foreign laws and regulations, which may include, for instance, applicable post-marketing requirements, including safety surveillance, anti-fraud and abuse laws and implementation of corporate compliance programs and reporting of payments or other transfers of value to healthcare professionals.

In order to market our future products in the EEA (which is comprised of the 28 Member States of the EU plus Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) and many other foreign jurisdictions, we must obtain separate regulatory approvals. More concretely, in the EEA, medicinal products can only be commercialized after obtaining a Marketing Authorization, or MA. There are two types of marketing authorizations:

- the Community MA, which is issued by the European Commission through the Centralized Procedure, based on the opinion of the Committee for Medicinal Products for Human Use of the European Medicines Agency, or EMA, and which is valid throughout the entire territory of the EEA. The Centralized Procedure is mandatory for certain types of products, such as biotechnology medicinal products, orphan medicinal products and medicinal products indicated for the treatment of AIDS, cancer, neurodegenerative disorders, diabetes, auto-immune and viral diseases. The Centralized Procedure is optional for products containing a new active substance not yet authorized in the EEA, or for products that constitute a significant therapeutic, scientific or technical innovation or which are in the interest of public health in the EU; and
- National MAs, which are issued by the competent authorities of the Member States of the EEA and only cover their respective territory, are available for products not falling within the mandatory scope of the Centralized Procedure. Where a product has already been authorized for marketing in a Member State of the EEA, this National MA can be recognized in another Member State through the Mutual Recognition Procedure. If the product has not received a National MA in any Member State at the time of application, it can be approved simultaneously in various Member States through the Decentralized Procedure.

Under the above described procedures, before granting the MA, the EMA or the competent authorities of the Member States of the EEA make an assessment of the risk-benefit balance of the product on the basis of scientific criteria concerning its quality, safety and efficacy.

In the EEA, new products authorized for marketing, or reference products, qualify for eight years of data exclusivity and an additional two years of market exclusivity upon marketing authorization. The data exclusivity period prevents generic or biosimilar applicants from relying on the pre-clinical and clinical trial data contained in the dossier of the reference product when applying for a generic or biosimilar marketing authorization in the EU during a period of eight years from the date on which the reference product was first authorized in the EU. The market exclusivity period prevents a successful generic or biosimilar applicant from commercializing its product in the EU until 10 years have elapsed from the initial authorization of the reference product in the EU. The 10-year market exclusivity period can be extended to a maximum of eleven years if, during the first eight years of those 10 years, the marketing authorization

## [Table of Contents](#)

holder obtains an authorization for one or more new therapeutic indications which, during the scientific evaluation prior to their authorization, are held to bring a significant clinical benefit in comparison with existing therapies.

In the EEA, marketing authorization applications for new medicinal products not authorized have to include the results of studies conducted in the pediatric population, in compliance with a pediatric investigation plan, or PIP, agreed with the EMA's Pediatric Committee, or PDCO. The PIP sets out the timing and measures proposed to generate data to support a pediatric indication of the drug for which marketing authorization is being sought. The PDCO can grant a deferral of the obligation to implement some or all of the measures of the PIP until there are sufficient data to demonstrate the efficacy and safety of the product in adults. Further, the obligation to provide pediatric clinical trial data can be waived by the PDCO when these data is not needed or appropriate because the product is likely to be ineffective or unsafe in children, the disease or condition for which the product is intended occurs only in adult populations, or when the product does not represent a significant therapeutic benefit over existing treatments for pediatric patients. Once the marketing authorization is obtained in all Member States of the EU and study results are included in the product information, even when negative, the product is eligible for six months' supplementary protection certificate extension. For orphan-designated medicinal products, the 10-year period of market exclusivity is extended to 12 years.

### ***Other U.S. Healthcare Laws***

In addition to FDA restrictions on marketing of pharmaceutical and biological products, other U.S. federal and state healthcare regulatory laws restrict business practices in the pharmaceutical industry, which include, but are not limited to, state and federal anti-kickback, false claims, data privacy and security and physician payment and drug pricing transparency laws.

The U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits, among other things, any person or entity from knowingly and willfully offering, paying, soliciting, receiving or providing any remuneration, directly or indirectly, overtly or covertly, to induce or in return for purchasing, leasing, ordering, or arranging for or recommending the purchase, lease, or order of any good, facility, item or service reimbursable, in whole or in part, under Medicare, Medicaid or other federal healthcare programs. The term "remuneration" has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value. The Anti-Kickback Statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between pharmaceutical manufacturers on the one hand and prescribers, purchasers, formulary managers and beneficiaries on the other. Although there are a number of statutory exceptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting some common activities from prosecution, the exceptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly. Practices that involve remuneration that may be alleged to be intended to induce prescribing, purchases, or recommendations may be subject to scrutiny if they do not meet the requirements of a statutory or regulatory exception or safe harbor. Failure to meet all of the requirements of a particular applicable statutory exception or regulatory safe harbor does not make the conduct per se illegal under the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute. Instead, the legality of the arrangement will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis based on a cumulative review of all its facts and circumstances. Several courts have interpreted the statute's intent requirement to mean that if any one purpose of an arrangement involving remuneration is to induce referrals of federal healthcare covered business, the statute has been violated.

Additionally, the intent standard under the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute was amended by the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, or collectively, the ACA, to a stricter standard such that a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. In addition, the ACA codified case law that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal civil False Claims Act. The majority of states also have anti-kickback laws, which establish similar prohibitions and in some cases may apply to items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The federal false claims and civil monetary penalties laws, including the civil False Claims Act, prohibit any person or entity from, among other things, knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, a false, fictitious or fraudulent claim for payment to, or approval by, the federal government, knowingly making, using, or causing to be made or used a false record or statement material to a false or fraudulent claim to the federal government, or from knowingly making a false statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the U.S. federal government. A claim includes "any request or demand" for money or property presented to the U.S. government. Actions under the civil False Claims Act may be brought by the Attorney General or as a qui tam action by a private individual in the name of the government. Violations of the civil False Claims Act can result in very significant monetary penalties and treble damages. Several pharmaceutical and other healthcare companies have been prosecuted under these laws for, among other things, allegedly providing free product to customers with the expectation that the customers would bill federal programs for the product. Other companies have been prosecuted for causing false claims to be submitted because of the companies' marketing of products for unapproved, or off-label, uses. In addition, the civil monetary penalties statute imposes penalties against any person who is determined to have presented or caused to be presented a claim to a federal health program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent. Many states also have similar fraud and abuse statutes or regulations that apply to items and services reimbursed under Medicaid and other state programs, or, in several states, apply regardless of the payor.

Violations of fraud and abuse laws, including federal and state anti-kickback and false claims laws, may be punishable by criminal and civil sanctions, including fines and civil monetary penalties, the possibility of exclusion from federal healthcare programs (including Medicare and Medicaid), disgorgement and corporate integrity agreements, which impose, among other things, rigorous operational and monitoring requirements on companies. Similar sanctions and penalties, as well as imprisonment, also can be imposed upon executive officers and employees of such companies. Given the significant size of actual and potential settlements, it is expected that the government authorities will continue to devote substantial resources to investigating healthcare providers' and manufacturers' compliance with applicable fraud and abuse laws.

The federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, created additional federal criminal statutes that prohibit, among other actions, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program, including private third-party payors, knowingly and willfully embezzling or stealing from a healthcare benefit program, willfully obstructing a criminal investigation of a healthcare offense and knowingly and willfully falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. Similar to the U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute, the ACA broadened the reach of certain criminal healthcare fraud statutes created under HIPAA by amending the intent requirement such that a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation.

In addition, there has been a recent trend of increased federal and state regulation of payments made to physicians and certain other healthcare providers. The ACA imposed, among other things, new annual reporting requirements through the Physician Payments Sunshine Act for covered manufacturers for certain payments and "transfers of value" provided to physicians and teaching hospitals, as well as ownership and investment interests held by physicians and their immediate family members. Failure to submit timely, accurately and completely the required information for all payments, transfers of value and ownership or investment interests may result in civil monetary penalties of up to an aggregate of \$150,000 per year and up to an aggregate of \$1 million per year for "knowing failures." Covered manufacturers must submit reports by the 90th day of each subsequent calendar year. In addition, certain states require implementation of compliance programs and compliance with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, impose restrictions on marketing practices and/or tracking and reporting of gifts, compensation and other remuneration or items of value provided to physicians and other healthcare professionals and entities.

## [Table of Contents](#)

We may also be subject to data privacy and security regulation by both the federal government and the states in which we conduct our business. HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, or HITECH, and their respective implementing regulations, including the Final HIPAA Omnibus Rule published on January 25, 2013, impose specified requirements relating to the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information held by covered entities and their business associates. Among other things, HITECH made HIPAA's security standards directly applicable to "business associates," defined as independent contractors or agents of covered entities that create, receive, maintain or transmit protected health information in connection with providing a service for or on behalf of a covered entity. HITECH also increased the civil and criminal penalties that may be imposed against covered entities, business associates and possibly other persons, and gave state attorneys general new authority to file civil actions for damages or injunctions in federal courts to enforce the federal HIPAA laws and seek attorney's fees and costs associated with pursuing federal civil actions. In addition, state laws govern the privacy and security of health information in certain circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and may not have the same requirements, thus complicating compliance efforts.

### **Coverage and Reimbursement**

Significant uncertainty exists as to the coverage and reimbursement status of any pharmaceutical or biological products for which we obtain regulatory approval. In the United States and markets in other countries, patients who are prescribed treatments for their conditions and providers performing the prescribed services generally rely on third-party payors to reimburse all or part of the associated healthcare costs. Patients are unlikely to use our products unless coverage is provided and reimbursement is adequate to cover a significant portion of the cost of our products. Sales of any products for which we receive regulatory approval for commercial sale will therefore depend, in part, on the availability of coverage and adequate reimbursement from third-party payors. Third-party payors include government authorities, managed care plans, private health insurers and other organizations.

In the United States, the process for determining whether a third-party payor will provide coverage for a pharmaceutical or biological product typically is separate from the process for setting the price of such product or for establishing the reimbursement rate that the payor will pay for the product once coverage is approved. Third-party payors may limit coverage to specific products on an approved list, also known as a formulary, which might not include all of the FDA-approved products for a particular indication. A decision by a third-party payor not to cover our product candidates could reduce physician utilization of our products once approved and have a material adverse effect on our sales, results of operations and financial condition. Moreover, a third-party payor's decision to provide coverage for a pharmaceutical or biological product does not imply that an adequate reimbursement rate will be approved. Adequate third-party reimbursement may not be available to enable us to maintain price levels sufficient to realize an appropriate return on our investment in product development. Additionally, coverage and reimbursement for products can differ significantly from payor to payor. One third-party payor's decision to cover a particular medical product or service does not ensure that other payors will also provide coverage for the medical product or service, or will provide coverage at an adequate reimbursement rate. As a result, the coverage determination process will require us to provide scientific and clinical support for the use of our products to each payor separately and will be a time-consuming process.

In the EEA, governments influence the price of products through their pricing and reimbursement rules and control of national health care systems that fund a large part of the cost of those products to consumers. Some jurisdictions operate positive and negative list systems under which products may only be marketed once a reimbursement price has been agreed to by the government. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval, some of these countries may require the completion of clinical trials that compare the cost effectiveness of a particular product candidate to currently available therapies. Other member states allow companies to fix their own prices for medicines, but monitor and control company profits. The downward

## [Table of Contents](#)

pressure on health care costs in general, particularly prescription products, has become very intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products. In addition, in some countries, cross border imports from low-priced markets exert a commercial pressure on pricing within a country.

The containment of healthcare costs has become a priority of federal, state and foreign governments, and the prices of pharmaceutical or biological products have been a focus in this effort. Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the prices charged for medical products and services, examining the medical necessity and reviewing the cost-effectiveness of pharmaceutical or biological products, medical devices and medical services, in addition to questioning safety and efficacy. If these third-party payors do not consider our products to be cost-effective compared to other available therapies, they may not cover our products after FDA approval or, if they do, the level of payment may not be sufficient to allow us to sell our products at a profit.

### **Healthcare Reform**

A primary trend in the U.S. healthcare industry and elsewhere is cost containment. Government authorities and other third-party payors have attempted to control costs by limiting coverage and the amount of reimbursement for particular medical products. For example, in March 2010, the ACA was enacted, which, among other things, increased the minimum Medicaid rebates owed by most manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program; introduced a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected; extended the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program to utilization of prescriptions of individuals enrolled in Medicaid managed care plans; imposed mandatory discounts for certain Medicare Part D beneficiaries as a condition for manufacturers' outpatient drugs coverage under Medicare Part D; subjected drug manufacturers to new annual fees based on pharmaceutical companies' share of sales to federal healthcare programs; created a new Patient Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research; creation of the Independent Payment Advisory Board, once empaneled, will have authority to recommend certain changes to the Medicare program that could result in reduced payments for prescription drugs; and establishment of a Center for Medicare Innovation at the CMS to test innovative payment and service delivery models to lower Medicare and Medicaid spending. Since its enactment, the U.S. federal government has delayed or suspended implementation of certain provisions of the ACA. In addition, there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the ACA, and we expect there will be additional challenges and amendments to the ACA in the future. For example, in January 2017, the U.S. House of Representatives and Senate passed legislation, which, if signed into law, would repeal certain aspects of the ACA. In addition, Congress could consider subsequent legislation to replace those elements of the ACA if so repealed.

We expect that the ACA, as well as other healthcare reform measures that may be adopted in the future, may result in more rigorous coverage criteria and lower reimbursement, and additional downward pressure on the price that we receive for any approved product. Any reduction in reimbursement from Medicare or other government-funded programs may result in a similar reduction in payments from private payors. Moreover, recently there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reforms may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability or commercialize our drugs.

Additionally, on August 2, 2011, the Budget Control Act of 2011 created measures for spending reductions by Congress. A Joint Select Committee on Deficit Reduction, tasked with recommending a targeted deficit reduction of at least \$1.2 trillion for the years 2013 through 2021, was unable to reach required goals, thereby triggering the legislation's automatic reduction to several government programs. This included aggregate reductions of Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year, which went into effect on

## [Table of Contents](#)

April 1, 2013 and, due to subsequent legislative amendments to the statute, will stay in effect through 2025 unless additional action is taken by Congress. On January 2, 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several types of providers, including hospitals, imaging centers and cancer treatment centers, and increased the statute of limitations period for the government to recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. More recently, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny recently over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products, which have resulted in several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed bills designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for pharmaceutical products.

We expect that additional state and federal healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that federal and state governments will pay for healthcare products and services, which could result in reduced demand for our products once approved or additional pricing pressures.

### **Employees**

As of March 31, 2017, we had 12 employees. None of our employees is subject to a collective bargaining agreement or represented by a trade or labor union.

### **Facilities**

Our principal office is located at 3 More London Riverside, London EC2N 1DW, United Kingdom, where we lease office space. We lease a portion of this office space under two leases that terminate on November 30, 2017 and the remainder of the office space under a lease that terminates on December 31, 2017. We also lease office space in White Plains, New York. We intend to add new facilities as we add employees, and we believe that suitable additional or substitute space will be available as needed to accommodate any such expansion of our operations.

### **Legal Proceedings**

We are not subject to any material legal proceedings.

## MANAGEMENT

### Executive Officers and Directors

The following table presents information about our executive officers and directors, including their ages as of the date of this prospectus:

Name	Age	Position
<b>Executive Officers</b>		
Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D.	62	Chief Executive Officer and Director
Piers Morgan	50	Chief Financial Officer
Kenneth Newman, M.D.	59	Chief Medical Officer
Peter Spargo, Ph.D.	55	Senior Vice President, Chemistry Manufacturing and Controls
Claire Poll	50	Legal Counsel
Richard Hennings	47	Commercial Director
<b>Non-Executive Directors</b>		
David Ebsworth, Ph.D.	62	Chairman of the Board
Ken Cunningham, M.D.	64	Director
Rishi Gupta	39	Director
Patrick Humphrey, D.Sc. <sup>(4)</sup>	71	Director
Mahendra Shah, Ph.D.	72	Director
Andrew Sinclair, Ph.D.	45	Director
Vikas Sinha	53	Director
Anders Ullman, Ph.D.	61	Director

(1) Audit Committee member

(2) Remuneration Committee member

(3) Governance Committee member

(4) Pat Humphrey will resign from our board of directors, effective on April 15, 2017.

The current business addresses for our executive officers and board of directors is c/o Verona Pharma plc, 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE, the United Kingdom.

The following are brief biographies of our executive officers and directors:

**Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D.** Dr. Karlsson has served as our Chief Executive Officer and on our board of directors since June 2012. From January 2005 to May 2012, Dr. Karlsson was the Chief Executive Officer of S\*BIO Pte Ltd, a biotechnology company in Singapore. Previously to S\*BIO, Dr. Karlsson was Executive Vice President and head of Pharma Global Research at Bayer HealthCare AG in Germany. Dr. Karlsson received an M.Sc. in pharmacy from Uppsala University and a Doctor of Medical Science (Ph.D.) in clinical experimental pharmacology from the University of Lund.

**Piers Morgan.** Mr. Morgan has served as our Chief Financial Officer since September 2016. From November 2015 to September 2016, Mr. Morgan was an independent consultant. From May 2014 to November 2015, Mr. Morgan was the Chief Executive Officer of C4X Discovery plc, a biotechnology company. Prior to C4X, Mr. Morgan co-founded uniQure N.V., a biotechnology company, in Amsterdam, where he served as Chief Financial Officer from December 2009 to May 2014. Mr. Morgan is a member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales and received an M.A. in law and management studies from the University of Cambridge.

**Kenneth Newman, M.D.** Dr. Newman has served as our Chief Medical Officer since January 2015. From December 2013 to December 2014, Dr. Newman was Chief Development Officer at Mesoblast Inc., a biotechnology company. From 2010 to November 2013, Dr. Newman was Chief Medical Officer of Acton Pharmaceuticals, Inc., a specialty respiratory pharmaceutical company, which was acquired by Meda Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Dr. Newman received an M.D. from the University of Texas Health Science Center at Houston and an M.B.A. in management from the University of Cincinnati College of Business.

**Peter Spargo, Ph.D.** Dr. Spargo has served as our Senior Vice President, Chemistry Manufacturing and Controls since May 2014. From January to October 2015, Dr. Spargo also served as Senior Vice President, CMC at Spinifex Pharmaceuticals Inc., a biotechnology company, that was acquired by Novartis International AG. From 2011 to 2013, Dr. Spargo was Senior Vice President, CMC at Creabilis SA, a pharmaceutical company. Dr. Spargo received an M.A. in natural sciences and a Ph.D. in synthetic organic chemistry from Cambridge University.

**Claire Poll.** Ms. Poll has served as Legal Counsel since September 2016. From September 2015 to August 2016, Ms. Poll served as an advisor to us on legal, general corporate and financing matters. She also served as an Executive Director on our board of directors from September 2006 until September 2015. Ms. Poll received a Bachelor of Laws from the University of Western Australia and a Diploma in Applied Finance and Investment from the Securities Institute of Australia.

**Richard Hennings.** Mr. Hennings has served as our Commercial Director since March 2017. From May 2016 to March 2017, Mr. Hennings was the Global Marketing Director for AstraZeneca UK Limited, a biopharmaceutical company. Since July 2015, Mr. Hennings has been a director of Hennings Consulting Ltd., where he consults with healthcare organizations on commercial strategy. From January 2012 to June 2015, Mr. Hennings held various positions at Gilead Sciences, Inc., a biopharmaceutical company, most recently as Commercial Director — EMEA Planning & Operations. Mr. Hennings received a bachelor's degree in applied chemistry from the University of Portsmouth.

**David Ebsworth, Ph.D.** Dr. Ebsworth has served as the Non-Executive Chairman of our board of directors since December 2014. From October 2009 to August 2014, Dr. Ebsworth served as Chief Executive Officer of Vifor Pharma, based in Zürich, the specialty pharma division of Galenica AG Group, a pharmaceutical wholesaler and retailer, and as a member of Galenica's Executive Committee. In 2012, Dr. Ebsworth was also named as Chief Executive Officer of Galenica and as Chairman of Galenica's Executive Committee, positions he held until August 2014. Dr. Ebsworth received a Ph.D. in industrial relations from the University of Surrey.

**Ken Cunningham, M.D.** Dr. Cunningham has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since September 2015. Dr. Cunningham serves as the non-executive chairman of the board of directors of Abzena plc and non-executive member of the board of directors of Xention Pharma Ltd. Dr. Cunningham received an M.D. from St. Mary's, Imperial College, London University.

**Rishi Gupta.** Mr. Gupta has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since July 2016. Since 2002, Mr. Gupta has held various positions at OrbiMed Advisors LLC, a global healthcare investment firm, where he is currently a Private Equity Partner. Mr. Gupta currently is a member of the board of directors of Symbiomix Therapeutics, LLC, Dimension Therapeutics, Inc., Avitide, Inc. and Turnstone Biologics Inc. Mr. Gupta received an A.B. in biochemical sciences from Harvard College and a J.D. from the Yale Law School.

**Patrick Humphrey, OBE, Ph.D., D.Sc.** Dr. Humphrey has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since September 2009. From 2001 to 2008, Dr. Humphrey was Executive Vice President and Head of Research at Theravance, Inc. prior to its name change to Innoviva Inc. Dr. Humphrey received a Ph.D. in Pharmacology at St. Mary's Hospital Medical School in London and a Doctorate of Science from London University. Mr. Humphrey will retire from our board of directors effective on April 15, 2017.

## [Table of Contents](#)

**Mahendra Shah, Ph.D.** Dr. Shah has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since July 2016. Since March 2010, Dr. Shah has served as a Managing Director of Vivo Capital, a healthcare investment firm. Dr. Shah is also the founder and Executive Chair of Semnur Pharmaceuticals, Inc., a specialty pharmaceutical company. Dr. Shah serves as a member of the board of directors of Fortis Inc., Crinetics Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Essentialis Therapeutics LLC, and Impel Neuropharma, Inc. In addition, Dr. Shah serves on the board of directors of private companies in the biopharmaceutical and biotechnology industries. Dr. Shah received his Ph.D. in industrial pharmacy from St. John's University and a Master's Degree in Pharmacy from L.M. College of Pharmacy in Gujarat, India.

**Andrew Sinclair, Ph.D.** Dr. Sinclair has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since July 2016. Since 2008, Dr. Sinclair has held various positions at Abingworth LLP, a life sciences investment group, where he is currently a Partner and Portfolio Manager. Dr. Sinclair is a member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales and received a Ph.D. in chemistry and genetic engineering at the BBSRC Institute of Plant Science, Norwich, and a B.Sc. in microbiology from King's College London.

**Vikas Sinha.** Mr. Sinha has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since September 2016. From 2005 to 2016, Mr. Sinha has served as the Chief Financial Officer of Alexion Pharmaceuticals, Inc., a biotechnology company. Mr. Sinha holds a master's degree in business administration from the Asian Institute of Management. He is also a qualified chartered accountant from the Institute of Chartered Accountants of India and a Certified Public Accountant in the United States.

**Anders Ullman, M.D., Ph.D.** Dr. Ullman has served as a Non-Executive Director on our board of directors since September 2015. From 2013 to 2014, Dr. Ullman was the Executive Vice President and Head of Research and Development in the BioScience business unit of Baxter International Inc., a healthcare company, which became Baxalta Inc. From 2007 to 2013, Dr. Ullman was Executive Vice President, Head of Research and Development at Nycomed Pharma Private Limited, which was acquired by Takeda Pharmaceutical Company Limited. Dr. Ullman received an M.D. and a Ph.D. in clinical pharmacology from the University of Gothenburg.

### **Foreign Private Issuer Exemption**

As a "foreign private issuer," as defined by the SEC, although we are permitted to follow certain corporate governance practices of England and Wales, instead of those otherwise required under the NASDAQ for domestic issuers, we intend to follow the NASDAQ corporate governance rules applicable to foreign private issuers. While we voluntarily follow most NASDAQ corporate governance rules, we intend to take advantage of the following limited exemptions:

- Exemption from filing quarterly reports on Form 10-Q or provide current reports on Form 8-K disclosing significant events within four days of their occurrence.
- Exemption from Section 16 rules regarding sales of ordinary shares by insiders, which will provide less data in this regard than shareholders of U.S. companies that are subject to the Exchange Act.
- Exemption from the NASDAQ rules applicable to domestic issuers requiring disclosure within four business days of any determination to grant a waiver of the code of business conduct and ethics to directors and officers. Although we will require board approval of any such waiver, we may choose not to disclose the waiver in the manner set forth in the NASDAQ rules, as permitted by the foreign private issuer exemption.
- Exemption from the requirement that our board have a compensation committee that is composed entirely of independent directors with a written charter addressing the committee's purpose and responsibilities.
- Exemption from the requirements that director nominees are selected, or recommended for selection by our board, either by (1) independent directors constituting a majority of our board's independent directors in a vote in which only independent directors participate, or (2) a committee comprised

## [Table of Contents](#)

solely of independent directors, and that a formal written charter or board resolution, as applicable, addressing the nominations process is adopted.

Furthermore, NASDAQ Rule 5615(a)(3) provides that a foreign private issuer, such as we, may rely on home country corporate governance practices in lieu of certain of the rules in the NASDAQ Rule 5600 Series and Rule 5250(d), provided that we nevertheless comply with NASDAQ's Notification of Noncompliance requirement (Rule 5625), the Voting Rights requirement (Rule 5640) and that we have an audit committee that satisfies Rule 5605(c)(3), consisting of committee members that meet the independence requirements of Rule 5605(c)(2)(A)(ii). Although we are permitted to follow certain corporate governance rules that conform to U.K. requirements in lieu of many of the NASDAQ corporate governance rules, we intend to comply with the NASDAQ corporate governance rules applicable to foreign private issuers. Accordingly, our shareholders will not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the corporate governance requirements of NASDAQ. We may utilize these exemptions for as long as we continue to qualify as a foreign private issuer.

### **Composition of our Board of Directors**

Our board of directors currently consists of nine members. Our board of directors has determined that, of our nine directors, do not have a relationship that would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of director and that each of these directors is "independent" as that term is defined under the rules of NASDAQ. There are no family relationships among any of our directors or executive officers.

In accordance with our Articles of Association, one-third of our directors retire from office at every annual general meeting of shareholders. Retiring directors are eligible for re-election and, if no other director is elected to fill his or her position and the director is willing, shall be re-elected by default. See "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association — Articles of Association — Directors — Rotation of Directors."

We have relationship agreements with entities affiliated with each of Mr. Gupta and Drs. Shah and Sinclair, pursuant to which each such individual has been designated as a member of our board of directors. The relationship agreements will continue in effect after the global offering. See "Related Party Transactions — Relationship Agreements" for a description of these agreements.

### **Committees of our Board of Directors**

Our board of directors has three standing committees: an Audit Committee, a Remuneration Committee and a Governance Committee.

#### ***Audit Committee of the Board***

The audit committee, which consists of assists the board in overseeing our accounting and financial reporting processes and the audits of our financial statements. serves as Chairman of the committee. The audit committee consists exclusively of members of our board who are financially literate, and is considered an "audit committee financial expert" as defined by applicable SEC rules and has the requisite financial sophistication as defined under the applicable NASDAQ rules and regulations. Our board has determined that all of the members of the audit committee satisfy the "independence" requirements set forth in Rule 10A-3 under the Exchange Act. The audit committee will be governed by a charter that complies with NASDAQ rules.

The audit committee's responsibilities will include:

- recommending the appointment of the independent auditor to the general meeting of shareholders;
- the appointment, compensation, retention and oversight of any accounting firm engaged for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or performing other audit services;
- pre-approving the audit services and non-audit services to be provided by our independent auditor before the auditor is engaged to render such services;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- evaluating the independent auditor's qualifications, performance and independence, and presenting its conclusions to the full board on at least an annual basis;
- reviewing and discussing with the executive officers, the board and the independent auditor our financial statements and our financial reporting process; and
- approving or ratifying any related person transaction (as defined in our related person transaction policy) in accordance with our related person transaction policy.

The audit committee will meet as often as one or more members of the audit committee deem necessary, but in any event will meet at least \_\_\_\_\_ times per year. The audit committee will meet at least once per year with our independent accountant, without our executive officers being present.

### **Remuneration Committee of the Board**

The remuneration committee, which consists of \_\_\_\_\_, assists the board in determining executive officer compensation. \_\_\_\_\_ serves as Chairman of the committee. Under SEC and NASDAQ rules, there are heightened independence standards for members of the remuneration committee, including a prohibition against the receipt of any compensation from us other than standard board member fees. Although foreign private issuers are not required to meet this heightened standard, all of our expected remuneration committee members meet this heightened standard.

The remuneration committee's responsibilities will include:

- identifying, reviewing and proposing policies relevant to executive officer compensation;
- evaluating each executive officer's performance in light of such policies and reporting to the board;
- analyzing the possible outcomes of the variable remuneration components and how they may affect the remuneration of the executive officers;
- recommending any equity long-term incentive component of each executive officer's compensation in line with the remuneration policy and reviewing our executive officer compensation and benefits policies generally; and
- reviewing and assessing risks arising from our compensation policies and practices.

### **Governance Committee of the Board**

The governance committee, which consists of \_\_\_\_\_, assists our board in identifying individuals qualified to become members of our board and executive officers consistent with criteria established by our board and in developing our corporate governance principles. \_\_\_\_\_ will serve as Chairman of the governance committee.

The governance committee's responsibilities will include:

- drawing up selection criteria and appointment procedures for board members;
- reviewing and evaluating the size and composition of our board and making a proposal for a composition profile of the board at least annually;
- recommending nominees for election to our board and its corresponding committees;
- assessing the functioning of individual members of board and executive officers and reporting the results of such assessment to the board; and
- developing and recommending to the board rules governing the board, reviewing and reassessing the adequacy of such rules governing the board and recommending any proposed changes to the board.

### **Code of Business Conduct and Ethics**

Upon the closing of the global offering, we will adopt a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics that will cover a broad range of matters including the handling of conflicts of interest, compliance issues and other corporate policies such as equal opportunity and non-discrimination standards.

**Compensation****Executive Officer Remuneration**

The following table sets forth the approximate remuneration paid during the year ended December 31, 2016 to our current executive officers.

<b>Name and Principal Position</b>	<b>Salary (£)</b>	<b>Bonus<sup>(1)</sup> (£)</b>	<b>Option Awards<sup>(2)</sup> (£)</b>	<b>All Other Compensation (£)</b>	<b>Total (£)</b>
Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D., Chief Executive Officer	220,833	230,000	281,479	87,974 <sup>(3)</sup>	820,286
Piers Morgan <sup>(4)</sup> Chief Financial Officer	52,778	15,750	49,360	12,251 <sup>(5)</sup>	130,139
Kenneth Newman, M.D. Chief Medical Officer	258,369	93,216	145,643	39,972 <sup>(6)</sup>	537,200
Peter Spargo, Ph.D. Senior Vice President of Chemistry Manufacturing and Controls	127,521	44,650	56,591	22,639 <sup>(7)</sup>	251,401
Claire Poll Legal Counsel	46,667	16,300	40,480	130,076 <sup>(8)</sup>	233,523
Richard Hennings <sup>(9)</sup> Commercial Director	—	—	—	—	—

(1) Amount shown reflects bonuses awarded for achievement of performance goals in 2016.

(2) Amount shown represents the aggregate grant date fair value of option awards granted in 2016 measured using the Black Scholes model. For a description of the assumptions used in valuing these awards, see note 19 to our Annual Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this prospectus.

(3) Amount shown represents National Insurance and health benefits payments and pension contributions made by us.

(4) Mr. Morgan began his employment with us on September 26, 2016.

(5) Amount shown represents National Insurance and pension contributions made by us.

(6) Amount shown represents health benefits payments made by us.

(7) Amount shown represents National Insurance payments made by us.

(8) Amount shown represents National Insurance payments made by us (from start of her employment on October 1, 2016) and consulting fees earned by Ms. Poll in 2016 for corporate managerial services provided to us as a consultant. These fees were paid in accordance with the letter agreement that we entered into with Ms. Poll on September 21, 2015, which is further described below in the section entitled "— Executive Officer Employment Agreements — Claire Poll."

(9) Mr. Hennings began his employment with us on March 27, 2017.

**Executive Officer Employment Agreements***Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D.*

We entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Karlsson on April 30, 2012, which was subsequently amended. This agreement, as amended, entitles Dr. Karlsson to receive an annual base salary of £250,000, or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing, and a target annual bonus opportunity of 66% of his annual base salary (potentially extending to up to 132%), with the amount of any such bonus based on annual performance criteria to be agreed between us and Dr. Karlsson. By June 1, 2017, Dr. Karlsson is required to invest an amount equal to £130,000 in our company through the purchase of our ordinary shares. Dr. Karlsson is also entitled to participate in a workplace pension scheme that we contribute to on his behalf. See "— Pension, Retirement or Similar Benefits" below.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Either party may terminate the employment agreement by giving the other party not less than 12 months' written notice, provided that we may terminate Dr. Karlsson at any time with immediate effect for cause or by giving written notice to Dr. Karlsson that we shall pay, in lieu of notice, his basic salary during the 12 months following termination, a pro-rated full discretionary bonus and any other contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The employment agreement provides that, upon a change of control, Dr. Karlsson is entitled to receive his full discretionary bonus (without an obligation to purchase ordinary shares) and full accelerated vesting of any outstanding, unvested equity awards under our share and share option schemes. See "— Equity Compensation Arrangements" below. If payments to Dr. Karlsson would constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, and would be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, then such payment would be reduced to either (i) the largest portion of the payment that would result in no portion of the payment being subject to the excise tax or (ii) the largest portion of the payment, whichever of (i) or (ii) would result in Dr. Karlsson's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the payment. Additionally, in order to minimize the effect of the different rates of U.S. and U.K. income tax rates, Dr. Karlsson is entitled to receive a payment from us to leave him in a net after-tax position substantially equivalent to what he would experience if he were only subject to U.K. taxes during the period of his employment with us. Dr. Karlsson's employment agreement also contains restrictive covenants pursuant to which he has agreed to refrain from competing with us or soliciting our customers or prospective customers for a period of six months following his termination of employment.

### *Kenneth Newman, M.D.*

We entered into an offer letter with Dr. Newman on December 15, 2014, which was subsequently amended, pursuant to which he agreed to serve as our Chief Medical Officer, effective January 1, 2015. This agreement entitles Dr. Newman to receive an annual base salary of \$340,000 and a target annual bonus opportunity of 40% of his annual base salary, with the amount of any such bonus based on performance criteria for our company and his individual performance, as determined by the board of directors in its sole discretion. Dr. Newman's offer letter also entitled him to receive a stock option to purchase 250,000 of our ordinary shares, which vests in full upon the earlier of (a) the third anniversary of the grant date or (b) a change of control. The offer letter with Dr. Newman also provides that, for so long as Dr. Newman is eligible for medical continuation coverage under the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act, or COBRA, from his previous employer or until we establish a health insurance plan in which he is eligible to participate, Dr. Newman will receive reimbursement for monthly premiums paid for such medical continuation coverage and reimbursement for any premiums he pays for private long-term disability insurance (up to \$800 per month).

If Dr. Newman's employment is terminated by us without "Cause" or by Dr. Newman for "Good Reason" (as each such term is defined in his offer agreement), then, subject to his signing and not revoking a general release of claims, he is entitled to receive (i) six months of base salary continuation, (ii) six months of continued payment of premiums for continued medical coverage under COBRA, (iii) a pro-rated portion of the annual bonus that he otherwise would have earned in the year of termination based on actual performance in such year and (iv) if the date of termination occurs within the six-month period immediately preceding the third anniversary of the date of grant of the stock option to purchase 250,000 of our ordinary shares, such stock option will vest in full. The offer agreement also provides that, if Dr. Newman's employment is terminated by us without Cause or by Dr. Newman for Good Reason, in either case within 12 months following a change of control, then, subject to his signing and not revoking a general release of claims, he is entitled to receive (i) nine months of base salary continuation, (ii) nine months of continued payment of premiums for continued medical coverage under COBRA, and (iii) a pro-rated portion of the annual bonus that he would otherwise have earned in the year of termination based on actual performance in such year. If payments to Dr. Newman would constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and would be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, then such payment would be reduced to either (i) the largest portion of the payment that would result in no portion of the payment being subject to the excise tax or (ii) the largest portion of the payment, whichever

[Table of Contents](#)

of (i) or (ii) would result in Dr. Newman's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the payment.

*Piers Morgan*

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Morgan on September 24, 2016, which was subsequently amended, pursuant to which he agreed to serve as our Chief Financial Officer. This agreement entitles Mr. Morgan to receive an annual base salary of £200,000, or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing, and a target annual bonus opportunity of 35% (potentially extending to up to 50%) of his salary, with the amount of any such bonus based on performance criteria for our company and his individual performance, as determined by our board of directors in its sole discretion. Within 12 months after receiving any such bonus payment, Mr. Morgan is expected to invest an amount equal to 25% of the bonus (net of income tax paid by Mr. Morgan) in our company through the purchase of our ordinary shares. Pursuant to this agreement, on September 16, 2016, Mr. Morgan received an option to purchase 300,000 of our ordinary shares with an exercise price of £2.04 per ordinary share, which vests in equal proportions on the first, second and third anniversary of the grant date of September 26, 2016.

Either party may terminate the employment agreement by giving the other party not less than six months' written notice, provided that we may terminate Mr. Morgan at any time with immediate effect for cause or by giving written notice to Mr. Morgan that we shall pay, in lieu of notice, his basic salary during the six months following termination, a pro-rated full discretionary bonus and any other contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The employment agreement provides that, upon a change of control, Mr. Morgan is entitled to receive his full discretionary bonus (without an obligation to purchase ordinary shares) and full accelerated vesting of any outstanding, unvested equity awards under our share and share option schemes. If payments to Mr. Morgan would constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and would be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, then such payment would be reduced to either (i) the largest portion of the payment that would result in no portion of the payment being subject to the excise tax or (ii) the largest portion of the payment, whichever of (i) or (ii) would result in Mr. Morgan's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the payment. Additionally, in order to minimize the effect of the different rates of U.S. and U.K. income tax rates, Mr. Morgan is entitled to receive a payment from us to leave him in a net after-tax position substantially equivalent to what he would experience if he were only subject to U.K. taxes during the period of his employment with us. Mr. Morgan's employment agreement also contains restrictive covenants pursuant to which he has agreed to refrain from competing with us or soliciting our customers or prospective customers for a period of six months following his termination of employment.

*Peter Spargo, Ph.D.*

We entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Spargo on April 1, 2014, which was subsequently amended. Pursuant to this agreement, Dr. Spargo agreed to serve as our Senior Vice President, Chemistry Manufacturing and Controls, effective April 1, 2014. This agreement, as amended, entitles Dr. Spargo to receive an annual base salary of £154,570 and a target annual bonus opportunity of up to 35% of his annual base salary, with the amount of any such bonus based primarily on annual performance criteria to be agreed between us and Dr. Spargo.

Either party may terminate the employment agreement by giving the other party not less than six months' written notice, provided that we may terminate Dr. Spargo at any time with immediate effect for cause or by giving written notice to Dr. Spargo that we shall pay, in lieu of notice, his basic salary during the six months following termination, a pro-rated full discretionary bonus and any other contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The employment agreement provides that, upon a change of control, Dr. Spargo is entitled to receive his full discretionary bonus and full accelerated vesting of any outstanding, unvested equity awards under our share and share option schemes. If payments to Dr. Spargo would constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and would be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, then such payment would be reduced to either (i) the largest portion of the payment that would result in no portion of the payment being subject to the

## [Table of Contents](#)

excise tax or (ii) the largest portion of the payment, whichever of (i) or (ii) would result in Dr. Spargo's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the payment. Dr. Spargo's employment agreement also contains restrictive covenants pursuant to which he has agreed to refrain from competing with us or soliciting our customers or prospective customers for a period of six months following his termination of employment.

### *Claire Poll*

We entered into an agreement for consulting services with Ms. Poll on March 28, 2007, or the Poll Consulting Agreement, pursuant to which Ms. Poll provided corporate managerial services to us. We also entered into an agreement for director services with Ms. Poll on March 28, 2007 pursuant to which Ms. Poll served on our board of directors or the Poll Director Services Agreement. Pursuant to a letter agreement that we entered into with Ms. Poll on September 21, 2015, Ms. Poll retired from our board of directors and the Poll Director Services Agreement was terminated, effective September 10, 2015. The letter agreement further provided that an annual aggregate remuneration of £70,000 payable under both the Poll Consulting Agreement and Poll Director Services Agreement would be paid under the Poll Consulting Agreement.

We entered into an employment agreement with Ms. Poll on October 1, 2016 pursuant to which Ms. Poll agreed to serve as our Legal Counsel. This agreement entitles Ms. Poll to receive an annual base salary of £140,000, or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing, and a target annual bonus opportunity of 35% of her annual base salary, with the amount of any such bonus based primarily on annual performance criteria to be agreed to between us and Ms. Poll. Pursuant to this agreement, on September 13, 2016, Ms. Poll received an option to purchase a total of 200,000 of our ordinary shares with an exercise price of £1.89 per ordinary share, which vests in equal proportions on the first three anniversaries of the date of grant.

Either party may terminate the employment agreement by giving the other party not less than six months' written notice, provided that we may terminate Ms. Poll at any time with immediate effect for cause or by giving written notice to Ms. Poll that we shall pay, in lieu of notice, her basic salary during the six months following termination, a pro-rated full discretionary bonus and any other contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The employment agreement provides that, upon a change of control, Ms. Poll is entitled to receive her full discretionary bonus and full accelerated vesting of any outstanding, unvested equity awards under our share and share option schemes. If payments to Ms. Poll would constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and would be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, then such payment would be reduced to either (i) the largest portion of the payment that would result in no portion of the payment being subject to the excise tax or (ii) the largest portion of the payment, whichever of (i) or (ii) would result in Ms. Poll's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the payment. Ms. Poll's employment agreement also contains restrictive covenants pursuant to which she has agreed to refrain from competing with us or soliciting our customers or prospective customers for a period of six months following her termination of employment.

### *Richard Hennings*

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Hennings on March 27, 2017. This agreement entitles Mr. Hennings to receive an annual base salary of £155,000, or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing, and a target annual bonus opportunity of up to 35% of his annual base salary, with the amount of any such bonus based on annual performance criteria to be agreed between us and Mr. Hennings. Mr. Hennings is also entitled to participate in a workplace pension scheme that we contribute to on his behalf. See "— Pension, Retirement or Similar Benefits" below. Pursuant to his employment agreement, Mr. Hennings is also entitled to receive (a) an option to purchase a total of 160,000 of our ordinary shares with an exercise price equal to our NASDAQ listing price on the date of grant and (b) restricted share units with a grant date fair value of approximately £40,000.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Either party may terminate the employment agreement by giving the other party not less than six months' written notice. The employment agreement provides that, upon a change of control, Mr. Hennings is entitled to receive his full discretionary bonus and full accelerated vesting of any outstanding, unvested equity awards under our share and share option schemes. If payments to Mr. Hennings would constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and would be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code, then such payment would be reduced to either (i) the largest portion of the payment that would result in no portion of the payment being subject to the excise tax or (ii) the largest portion of the payment, whichever of (i) or (ii) would result in Mr. Hennings' receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the payment. Additionally, in order to minimize the effect of the different rates of US and UK income tax rates, Mr. Hennings is entitled to receive a payment from us to leave him in a net after-tax position substantially equivalent to what he would experience if he were only subject to UK taxes during the period of his employment with us. Mr. Hennings' employment agreement also contains restrictive covenants pursuant to which he has agreed to refrain from competing with us or soliciting our customers or prospective customers for a period of six months following his termination of employment.

### **Equity Compensation Arrangements**

We have issued option grants under two option schemes, the Unapproved Share Option Scheme, or the Unapproved Scheme, adopted by our board of directors on September 18, 2006, and the EMI Option Scheme, or the EMI Scheme, adopted by our board of directors on July 24, 2012. Discussions in this section regarding the Unapproved Scheme or the EMI Scheme that refer to our board of directors include any designated committee of our board of directors. Once the New Incentive Plan (as defined below) is adopted, no further awards will be made under either the unapproved Scheme or EMI Scheme.

#### *EMI Option Scheme*

Under the EMI Scheme, eligible employees are granted tax-efficient options to purchase our ordinary shares. Options may be granted to eligible employees who are contracted to work for us or a qualifying subsidiary for at least 25 hours a week, or, if less than 25 hours a week, for at least 75% of their working time. The options granted under the EMI Scheme are exercisable at a price and in accordance with a vesting schedule determined by our board of directors at the time of grant and expire 10 years from the date of grant.

#### *Unapproved Share Option Scheme*

Under the Unapproved Scheme, we grant non-tax-qualifying options to purchase our ordinary shares. Options may be granted to employees, directors or consultants to acquire our ordinary shares at a price determined by our board of directors. In general, the options granted under the Unapproved Scheme are exercisable at a price and in accordance with the vesting period determined by our board of directors at the date of grant and expire 10 years from the date of grant.

#### *Certain Transactions*

Under the EMI Scheme and the Unapproved Scheme, if certain changes are made in, or events occur with respect to, our ordinary shares (including any capitalization, sub-division, reduction or other variation of our ordinary shares), any outstanding awards may be adjusted in terms of the number of ordinary shares subject to an option and the exercise price as our board of directors may determine appropriate on a fair and reasonable basis. In the event of certain corporate transactions, including a change of control, scheme of arrangement, merger, demerger or liquidation, the vesting and exercisability of all options will accelerate and, to the extent not exercised, will lapse within certain time periods defined in the applicable plan rules.

#### *Amendment and Termination*

Our board of directors may at any time amend the rules of the EMI Scheme or the Unapproved Scheme in any manner, except that no amendment may be made if, in the reasonable opinion of our board of directors, it would materially abrogate or adversely affect the subsisting rights of an option holder regarding existing options, unless the amendment is made either (i) with the written consent of the number of option holders

[Table of Contents](#)

that hold options to acquire 50% of the ordinary shares that would be delivered if all options granted and subsisting under the scheme, as applicable, were exercised; or (ii) by a resolution at a meeting of option holders passed by not less than 50% of the option holders holding options under the scheme, as applicable, who attend and vote either in person or by proxy. The EMI Scheme and the Unapproved Scheme are discretionary and may be suspended or terminated by us at any time. Suspension or termination will not affect any options granted under the schemes to the extent that they are subsisting at the date of the suspension or termination.

The following table summarizes the options that we granted to our directors and executive officers under the EMI Scheme and Unapproved Scheme in 2016:

Name	Ordinary Shares Underlying Options	Exercise Price Per Share (£)	Grant Date	Expiration Date
Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D., M.D.	100,000	2.00	February 9, 2016	February 9, 2026
	100,000	3.30	February 9, 2016	February 9, 2026
	500,000	1.80	August 3, 2016	August 3, 2026
Piers Morgan	300,000	2.04	September 26, 2016	September 26, 2026
Kenneth Newman, M.D.	60,000	2.00	February 9, 2016	February 9, 2026
	200,000	1.80	August 3, 2016	August 3, 2026
Peter Spargo, Ph.D.	20,000	2.00	February 9, 2016	February 9, 2026
	100,000	1.80	August 3, 2016	August 3, 2026
Claire Poll	200,000	1.89	September 13, 2016	September 13, 2026
Richard Hennings	—	—	—	—
Patrick Humphrey	—	—	—	—
David Ebsworth	—	—	—	—
Anders Ullman	—	—	—	—
Ken Cunningham	—	—	—	—
Rishi Gupta	—	—	—	—
Mahendra Shah	—	—	—	—
Vikas Sinha	—	—	—	—
Andrew Sinclair	—	—	—	—

We intend to adopt the 2017 Incentive Award Plan, or the New Incentive Plan, which will be effective the day prior to the listing of our ADSs on NASDAQ, under which we may grant cash and equity-based incentive awards to eligible service providers in order to attract, retain and motivate the persons who make important contributions to us. The material terms of the New Incentive Plan are summarized below. Except where the context indicates otherwise, references hereunder to our ordinary shares shall be deemed to include a number of ADSs equal to an ordinary share.

#### **Eligibility and Administration**

Our employees, consultants and directors, and employees and consultants of our subsidiaries, will be eligible to receive awards under the New Incentive Plan. The New Incentive Plan will be administered by our board of directors, which may delegate its duties and responsibilities to one or more committees of our directors and/or officers (referred to collectively as the plan administrator below), subject to the limitations imposed under the New Incentive Plan, stock exchange rules and other applicable laws. The plan administrator will have the authority to take all actions and make all determinations under the New Incentive Plan, to interpret the New Incentive Plan and award agreements and to adopt, amend and repeal rules for the administration of the New Incentive Plan as it deems advisable. The plan administrator will also have the authority to determine which eligible service providers receive awards, grant awards, set the terms and conditions of all awards under the New Incentive Plan, including any vesting and vesting

[Table of Contents](#)

acceleration provisions, and designate whether such awards will cover our ordinary shares or ADSs, subject to the conditions and limitations in the New Incentive Plan.

**Sub-Plan**

The New Incentive Plan authorizes the administrator to establish one or more sub-plans. Immediately after the New Incentive Plan has been established, the administrator will establish a sub-plan. The sub-plan will incorporate all of the terms of the New Incentive Plan, except that only employees of ours (or our subsidiaries) will be eligible to receive awards under the sub-plan. Consultants and directors who are not also employees will not be eligible to receive awards under the sub-plan. Awards under the sub-plan will count towards the total number of shares available for issuance under the New Incentive Plan. The sub-plan will be an "employees' share scheme" for the purposes of the UK Companies Act 2006 and it is anticipated that all awards that are to be made to employees will be made under the sub-plan rather than the New Incentive Plan itself.

**Shares Available for Awards**

An aggregate of 6,333,000 of our ordinary shares will initially be available for issuance under the New Incentive Plan. The number of shares initially available for issuance will be increased by an annual increase on January 1 of each calendar year beginning in 2018 and ending in and including 2027 equal to the least of (A) 4% of our ordinary shares outstanding on the final day of the immediately preceding calendar year and (B) a smaller number of shares determined by our board of directors. Pursuant to the terms of the New Incentive Plan, awards may be issued under the New Incentive Plan covering ADSs in lieu of the number of our ordinary shares that such ADSs represent. No more than 5,000,000 shares may be issued under the New Incentive Plan upon the exercise of incentive options. Shares issued under the New Incentive Plan may be authorized but unissued shares, shares purchased on the open market, treasury shares or ADSs.

If an award under the New Incentive Plan, the EMI Option Scheme, the Unapproved Share Option Scheme or any prior equity incentive plan, expires, lapses or is terminated, exchanged for cash, surrendered, repurchased, canceled without having been fully exercised or forfeited, any unused shares subject to the award will, as applicable, become or again be available for new grants under the New Incentive Plan. Awards granted under the New Incentive Plan in substitution for any options or other equity or equity-based awards granted by an entity before the entity's merger or consolidation with us or our acquisition of the entity's property or stock will not reduce the shares available for grant under the New Incentive Plan, but will count against the maximum number of shares that may be issued upon the exercise of incentive options.

**Awards**

The New Incentive Plan provides for the grant of options, share appreciation rights, or SARs, restricted shares, dividend equivalents, restricted share units, or RSUs, and other share or cash based awards. All awards under the New Incentive Plan will be set forth in award agreements, which will detail the terms and conditions of awards, including any applicable vesting and payment terms and post-termination exercise limitations. A brief description of each award type follows.

*Options and SARs.* Options provide for the purchase of our ordinary shares in the future at an exercise price set on the grant date. SARs entitle their holder, upon exercise, to receive from us an amount equal to the appreciation of the shares subject to the award between the grant date and the exercise date. The plan administrator will determine the number of shares covered by each option and SAR, the exercise price of each option and SAR and the conditions and limitations applicable to the exercise of each option and SAR.

*Restricted Shares and Restricted Share Units.* Restricted shares are an award of nontransferable ordinary shares that remain forfeitable unless and until specified conditions are met and which may be subject to a purchase price. RSUs are contractual promises to deliver our ordinary shares in the future, which may also remain forfeitable unless and until specified conditions are met and may be accompanied by the right to receive the equivalent value of dividends paid on our ordinary shares prior to the delivery of the underlying shares. The plan administrator may provide that the delivery of the shares underlying RSUs will be deferred

## [Table of Contents](#)

on a mandatory basis or at the election of the participant. The terms and conditions applicable to restricted shares and RSUs will be determined by the plan administrator, subject to the conditions and limitations contained in the New Incentive Plan.

**Other Share or Cash Based Awards.** Other share or cash based awards are awards of cash, fully-vested our ordinary shares and other awards valued wholly or partially by referring to, or otherwise based on, our ordinary shares or other property. Other share or cash based awards may be granted to participants and may also be available as a payment form in the settlement of other awards, as standalone payments and as payment in lieu of compensation to which a participant is otherwise entitled. The plan administrator will determine the terms and conditions of other share or cash based awards, which may include any purchase price, performance goal, transfer restrictions and vesting conditions.

### **Performance Criteria**

The plan administrator may select performance criteria for an award to establish performance goals for a performance period. Performance criteria under the New Incentive Plan may include, but are not limited to, the following: net earnings or losses (either before or after one or more of interest, taxes, depreciation, amortization, and non-cash equity-based compensation expense); gross or net sales or revenue or sales or revenue growth; net income (either before or after taxes) or adjusted net income; profits (including but not limited to gross profits, net profits, profit growth, net operation profit or economic profit), profit return ratios or operating margin; budget or operating earnings (either before or after taxes or before or after allocation of corporate overhead and bonus); cash flow (including operating cash flow and free cash flow or cash flow return on capital); return on assets; return on capital or invested capital; cost of capital; return on shareholders' equity; total shareholder return; return on sales; costs, reductions in costs and cost control measures; expenses; working capital; earnings or loss per share; adjusted earnings or loss per share; price per share or dividends per share (or appreciation in or maintenance of such price or dividends); regulatory achievements or compliance; implementation, completion or attainment of objectives relating to research, development, regulatory, commercial, or strategic milestones or developments; market share; economic value or economic value added models; division, group or corporate financial goals; customer satisfaction/growth; customer service; employee satisfaction; recruitment and maintenance of personnel; human resources management; supervision of litigation and other legal matters; strategic partnerships and transactions; financial ratios (including those measuring liquidity, activity, profitability or leverage); debt levels or reductions; sales-related goals; financing and other capital raising transactions; cash on hand; acquisition activity; investment sourcing activity; and marketing initiatives, any of which may be measured in absolute terms or as compared to any incremental increase or decrease. Such performance goals also may be based solely by reference to the company's performance or the performance of a subsidiary, division, business segment or business unit of the company or a subsidiary, or based upon performance relative to performance of other companies or upon comparisons of any of the indicators of performance relative to performance of other companies. When determining performance goals, the plan administrator may provide for exclusion of the impact of an event or occurrence which the plan administrator determines should appropriately be excluded, including, without limitation, non-recurring charges or events, acquisitions or divestitures, changes in the corporate or capital structure, events unrelated to the business or outside of the control of management, foreign exchange considerations, and legal, regulatory, tax or accounting changes.

### **Certain Transactions**

In connection with certain corporate transactions and events affecting our ordinary shares, including a change in control, another similar corporate transaction or event, another unusual or nonrecurring transaction or event affecting us or its financial statements or change in any applicable laws or accounting principles, the plan administrator has broad discretion to take action under the New Incentive Plan to prevent the dilution or enlargement of intended benefits, facilitate the transaction or event or give effect to the change in applicable laws or accounting principles. This includes canceling awards for cash or property, accelerating the vesting of awards, providing for the assumption or substitution of awards by a successor entity, adjusting the number and type of shares subject to outstanding awards and/or with respect to which

[Table of Contents](#)

awards may be granted under the New Incentive Plan and replacing or terminating awards under the New Incentive Plan. In addition, in the event of certain non-reciprocal transactions with our shareholders, the plan administrator will make equitable adjustments to the New Incentive Plan and outstanding awards as it deems appropriate to reflect the transaction. Pursuant to the terms of their individual employment agreements, awards granted under the New Incentive Plan to certain of our executives may become fully vested and exercisable upon a change in control.

**Plan Amendment and Termination**

Our board of directors may amend or terminate the New Incentive Plan at any time; however, no amendment, other than an amendment that increases the number of shares available under the New Incentive Plan, may materially and adversely affect an award outstanding under the New Incentive Plan without the consent of the affected participant and shareholder approval will be obtained for any amendment to the extent necessary to comply with applicable laws. Further, the plan administrator cannot, without the approval of our shareholders, amend any outstanding option or SAR to reduce its price per share or cancel any outstanding option or SAR in exchange for cash or another award under the New Incentive Plan with an exercise price per share that is less than the exercise price per share of the original option or SAR. The New Incentive Plan will remain in effect until the tenth anniversary of its effective date unless earlier terminated by our board of directors. No awards may be granted under the New Incentive Plan after its termination.

**Non-U.S. Participants, Claw-Back Provisions, Transferability and Participant Payments**

The plan administrator may modify awards granted to participants who are non-U.S. nationals or employed outside the United States or establish sub-plans or procedures to address differences in laws, rules, regulations or customs of such foreign jurisdictions. All awards will be subject to any company claw-back policy as set forth in such claw-back policy or the applicable award agreement. Except as the plan administrator may determine or provide in an award agreement, awards under the New Incentive Plan are generally non-transferrable, except by will or the laws of descent and distribution, or, subject to the plan administrator's consent, pursuant to a domestic relations order, and are generally exercisable only by the participant. With regard to tax withholding obligations arising in connection with awards under the New Incentive Plan, and exercise price obligations arising in connection with the exercise of options under the New Incentive Plan, the plan administrator may, in its discretion, accept cash, wire transfer or cheque, our ordinary shares that meet specified conditions, a promissory note, a "market sell order," such other consideration as the plan administrator deems suitable or any combination of the foregoing.

**Non-Employee Directors Remuneration**

The following table sets forth the remuneration paid during 2016 to our current non-employee directors:

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>Annual Fees (£)</b>	<b>Total (£)</b>
Patrick Humphrey	30,000	30,000
David Ebsworth	124,000	124,000
Anders Ullman	30,000	30,000
Ken Cunningham	30,000	30,000
Rishi Gupta	12,500	12,500
Mahendra Shah	12,500	12,500
Vikas Sinha	9,083	9,083
Andrew Sinclair	12,500	12,500

---

### **Non-Employee Director Service Contracts**

The remuneration of the non-executive directors is determined by our board as a whole, based on a review of current practices in other companies. We have entered into service contracts with our directors for their services, which are subject to a three-month termination period.

### **Pension, Retirement or Similar Benefits**

We operate a defined contribution pension scheme which is available to all employees. The total amount set aside or accrued by us to provide pension, retirement or similar benefits to our current directors and our executive officers with respect to 2016 was £16,417, which represents contributions made by us in 2016 in respect of a defined contribution scheme in which Dr. Karlsson and Mr. Morgan participated.

### **Employees**

As of December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, we had 11, nine and seven employees, respectively. All of our employees were based in the United Kingdom, except that, as of December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, we had one to four employees based outside of the United Kingdom. All of our employees were engaged in either administrative or research & development functions. None of our employees are covered by a collective bargaining agreement.

### **Insurance and Indemnification**

To the extent permitted by the U.K. Companies Act 2006, we are empowered to indemnify our directors against any liability they incur by reason of their directorship. We maintain directors' and officers' insurance to insure such persons against certain liabilities. We expect to enter into a deed of indemnity with each of our directors and executive officers.

In addition to such indemnification, we provide our directors and executive officers with directors' and officers' liability insurance.

Insofar as indemnification of liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to our board, executive officers, or persons controlling us pursuant to the foregoing provisions, we have been informed that, in the opinion of the SEC, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is therefore unenforceable.

## PRINCIPAL SHAREHOLDERS

The following table sets forth information relating to the beneficial ownership of our ordinary shares as of March 31, 2017 by:

- each person, or group of affiliated persons, that beneficially owns 3% or more of our outstanding ordinary shares;
- each member of our board of directors and each of our other executive officers; and
- all board members and executive officers as a group.

The number of ordinary shares beneficially owned by each entity, person, board member or executive officer is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC, and the information is not necessarily indicative of beneficial ownership for any other purpose. Under such rules, beneficial ownership includes any shares over which the individual has sole or shared voting power or investment power as well as any shares that the individual has the right to acquire within 60 days of March 31, 2017 through the exercise of any option, warrant or other right. Except as otherwise indicated, and subject to applicable community property laws, the persons named in the table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all ordinary shares held by that person.

The percentage of ordinary shares beneficially owned before the global offering and shareholder private placement is computed on the basis of 51,361,064 of our ordinary shares outstanding as of March 31, 2017. The percentage of ordinary shares beneficially owned after the offering is based on the number of our ordinary shares outstanding before the offering as provided above plus (i) ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) that we are offering in the global offering, and assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional ADSs or ordinary shares from us and (ii) ordinary shares, based on the assumed offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement of £ , which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on , 2017, we may issue and sell in the shareholder private placement. Ordinary shares that a person has the right to acquire within 60 days of March 31, 2017 are deemed outstanding for purposes of computing the percentage ownership of the person holding such rights, but are not deemed outstanding for purposes of computing the percentage ownership of any other person, except with respect to the percentage ownership of all board members and executive officers as a group. We have included in these calculations ordinary shares which are subject to outstanding warrants that become exercisable upon the closing of the global offering. As of March 31, 2017, 1,696,191 ordinary shares, representing 3.30% of our issued and outstanding ordinary shares, were held by three U.S. record holders. Unless otherwise indicated below, the address for each beneficial owner listed is c/o Verona Pharma plc, 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE UK.

Name and address of beneficial owner	Number of Shares Beneficially Owned Before Offering	Percentage of Shares Beneficially Owned	
		Before Offering	After Offering
<b>3% or Greater Shareholders:</b>			
Novo A/S <sup>(1)</sup>	8,233,691	15.5%	
Vivo Capital affiliates <sup>(2)</sup>	8,177,785	15.4	%
OrbiMed Private Investments VI, LP <sup>(3)</sup>	6,537,786	12.3	
Growth Equity Opportunities Fund IV, LLC <sup>(4)</sup>	6,193,691	11.7	
Abingworth Bioventures VI, LP <sup>(5)</sup>	4,914,774	9.3	
Arix Bioscience Holdings Ltd affiliates <sup>(6)</sup>	3,916,493	7.5	
Aviva plc and subsidiaries <sup>(7)</sup>	3,288,448	6.4	
Biodiscovery 4 FCPI <sup>(8)</sup>	3,096,846	5.9	
Tekla Capital affiliates <sup>(9)</sup>	3,096,845	5.9	
Aisling Capital IV, LP <sup>(10)</sup>	2,064,563	4.0	
BBHISL Nominees Ltd. A/C 121624 <sup>(11)</sup>	2,028,708	3.9	
HSBC Global Custody Nominee (UK) Ltd A/C: 944287 <sup>(12)</sup>	1,801,618	3.5	
<b>Executive Officers and Directors:</b>			
Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D. <sup>(13)</sup>	499,150	*	
Piers Morgan	—	—	
Kenneth Newman, M.D. <sup>(14)</sup>	186,667	*	
Claire Poll <sup>(15)</sup>	170,000	*	
Richard Hennings	—	—	
Peter Spargo, Ph. D. <sup>(16)</sup>	86,333	*	
Ken Cunningham, M.D.	—	—	
David Ebsworth, Ph.D. <sup>(17)</sup>	109,201	*	
Rishi Gupta	—	—	
Patrick Humphrey, D.Sc. <sup>(18)</sup>	20,000	*	
Mahendrah Shah, Ph.D.	—	—	
Andrew Sinclair, Ph.D. <sup>(19)</sup>	—	—	
Vikas Sinha	—	—	
Anders Ullman, Ph.D.	—	—	
All executive officers and directors as a group (14 persons)	1,071,351	2.1	

\* Indicates beneficial ownership of less than 1% of the total outstanding ordinary shares.

(1) Consists of (a) 6,464,065 ordinary shares held directly by Novo A/S, or Novo, and (b) warrants to purchase 1,769,626 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Novo. The board of directors of Novo A/S, or the Novo Board, has shared investment and voting control over the securities held by Novo and may exercise such control only with the support of a majority of the Novo Board. As such, no individual member of the Novo Board is deemed to hold any beneficial ownership or reportable pecuniary interest in the securities held by Novo. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on January 11, 2017. Novo's mailing address is Tuborg Havnevej 19, Hellerup, G7 2900, Denmark.

(2) Consists of (a) 1,252,791 ordinary shares held directly by Vivo Ventures Fund VI, L.P., or Vivo VI, (b) warrants to purchase 370,871 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Vivo VI, (c) 9,178 ordinary shares held directly by Vivo Ventures VI Affiliates Fund, L.P., or Vivo Affiliates VI, (d) warrants to purchase 2,717 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Vivo Affiliates VI, (e) 4,940,206 ordinary shares held directly by Vivo Ventures Fund VII L.P., or Vivo VII, (f) warrants to purchase 1,462,477 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Vivo VII, (g) 107,671 ordinary shares held directly by Vivo Ventures VII Affiliates Fund, L.P., or Vivo Affiliates VII, and (h) warrants to purchase 31,874 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Vivo Affiliates VII. Vivo Ventures VI, LLC, or Vivo Ventures VI, is the sole general partner

## [Table of Contents](#)

of Vivo VI and Vivo Affiliates VI. Vivo Ventures VII, LLC, or Vivo Ventures VII, is the sole general partner of Vivo VII and Vivo Affiliates VII. Vivo Ventures VI and Vivo Ventures VII disclaim beneficial ownership of all shares held by Vivo VI, Vivo Affiliates VI, Vivo VII and Vivo Affiliates VII except to the extent of any pecuniary interest therein. The managing members of Vivo Ventures VI are Drs. Albert Cha, Edgar Engleman and Frank Kung, each of whom may be deemed to have shared voting and dispositive power of the shares held by Vivo VI and Vivo Affiliates VI. The managing members of Vivo Ventures VII are Drs. Albert Cha, Edgar Engleman, Frank Kung, Chen Yu and Mr. Shan Fu, each of whom may be deemed to have shared voting and dispositive power of the shares held by Vivo VII and Vivo Affiliates VII. Mahendra Shah, the Managing Director of Vivo Capital, is a member of our Board of Directors and disclaims beneficial ownership of these shares except to the extent of his pecuniary interest arising as a result of his employment by Vivo Capital. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and Forms TR-1 provided to us on August 3, 2016. Vivo Capital's mailing address is 505 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 200, Palo Alto, CA 94301.

- (3) Consists of (a) 4,669,847 ordinary shares held directly by OrbiMed Private Investments VI, LP, or OrbiMed VI, and (b) warrants to purchase 1,867,939 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by OrbiMed VI. OrbiMed Capital GP VI LLC, or GP VI, is the general partner of OrbiMed VI. OrbiMed Advisors LLC, or OrbiMed Advisors, is the managing member of GP VI. Samuel D. Isaly is the managing member of and owner of a controlling interest in OrbiMed Advisors. By virtue of such relationships, GP VI, OrbiMed Advisors and Mr. Isaly may be deemed to have voting and investment power with respect to the shares held by OrbiMed VI and as a result may be deemed to have beneficial ownership of such shares. Rishi Gupta, an employee of OrbiMed Advisors, is a member of our Board of Directors. Each of GP VI, OrbiMed Advisors, Mr. Isaly and Mr. Gupta disclaims beneficial ownership of the shares held by OrbiMed VI, except to the extent of its or his pecuniary interest therein, if any. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on August 1, 2016. OrbiMed Advisors' mailing address is 601 Lexington Avenue, 54<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, NY 10022.
- (4) Consists of (a) 4,424,065 ordinary shares held directly by Growth Equity Opportunities Fund IV, LLC, or GEO, and (b) warrants to purchase 1,769,626 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by GEO. New Enterprise Associates 15, L.P., or NEA 15, is the sole member of GEO. NEA Partners 15, L.P., NEA Partners 15, is the sole general partner of NEA 15. NEA 15 GP, LLC, or NEA 15 LLC, is the sole general partner of NEA Partners 15. Peter J. Barris, Forest Baskett, Anthony Florence, Jr., Krishnu Kolluri, David M. Mott, Scott D. Sandell, Peter Sonsini, Jon Sakoda, Ravia Viswanthan and Henry Weller are the managers of NEA 15 LLC. NEA 15, NEA Partners 15, NEA 15 LLC and the managers of NEA 15 LLC share voting and dispositive power with regard to the securities held by GEO. Each of NEA 15, NEA Partners 15 and NEA 15 LLC as well as each of the managers of NEA 15 LLC disclaims beneficial ownership of all shares held by GEO except to the extent of their actual pecuniary interest therein. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on August 1, 2016. GEO's mailing address is 1954 Greenspring Drive, Suite 600, Timonium, MD 21093-4135.
- (5) Consists of (a) 3,510,553 ordinary shares held directly by Abingworth Bioventures VI, LP, or Abingworth VI, and (b) warrants to purchase 1,404,221 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Abingworth VI. Abingworth Bioventures VI GP LP, or Abingworth GP VI, serves as general partner of Abingworth VI. Abingworth General Partner VI LLP, or Abingworth General Partner VI, serves as general partner of Abingworth GP VI. Abingworth General Partner VI has delegated to Abingworth LLP, all investment and dispositive power over the securities held by Abingworth VI. An Abingworth LLP investment committee comprised of Stephen Bunting, Timothy Haines, Kurt von Emster and Genghis Lloyd-Harris approves investment and voting decisions of Abingworth VI by a majority vote, and no individual member has the sole control or voting power over the securities held by Abingworth VI. Abingworth GP VI, Abingworth General Partner VI, Abingworth LLP and each of Stephen Bunting, Timothy Haines, Kurt von Emster and Genghis Lloyd-Harris disclaim beneficial ownership of securities held by Abingworth VI, except to the extent, if any of their pecuniary interest therein. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on August 1, 2016. Abingworth VI's mailing address is 38 Jermyn Street, London SW1Y 6DN, United Kingdom.
- (6) Consists of (a) 1,290,352 ordinary shares held directly by Arix Bioscience Holdings Ltd, or Arix, (b) warrants to purchase 516,141 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Arix and (c) 2,110,000 ordinary shares held directly by Wales Life Sciences Investment Fund, or WLSIF. Arthurian Life Sciences Ltd, or Arthurian, is the general partner of WLSIF and a wholly owned subsidiary of Arix. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on August 3, 2016 and January 3, 2017. Arix's mailing address is 20 Berkeley Square, London W1J 6EQ, United Kingdom.
- (7) Aviva Group Holdings Limited, or Aviva Holdings, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aviva plc. Aviva Investors Holdings Limited, or Aviva Investors, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aviva Holdings. Aviva Investors Global Services Limited, or Aviva Global Services, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aviva Investors. Aviva Life Holdings UK Limited, or Aviva Life, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aviva Holdings. Friends Life FPG Limited, or Friends FPG, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aviva Life. Friends

## Table of Contents

Life FPL Limited, or Friends FPL, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Friends FPG. Friends Life Limited, or Friends Life, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Friends FPL. Friends Life and Pensions Limited, or Friends Pensions, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Friends Life. Friends Provident International Limited, or Friends Provident, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Friends Pensions. The voting rights for these common shares are controlled and managed by Aviva Global Services and Friends Provident. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on August 5, 2016. Aviva plc's mailing address is St. Helen's, 1 Undershaft, London EC3P 3DQ, United Kingdom.

- (8) Consists of (a) 2,212,033 ordinary shares held directly by Biodiscovery 4 FCPI, or Biodiscovery, and (b) warrants to purchase 884,813 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Biodiscovery. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Form TR-1 provided to us on August 2, 2016.
- (9) Consists of (a) 1,282,978 ordinary shares held directly by Tekla World Healthcare Fund, or Tekla World, (b) warrants to purchase 513,192 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Tekla World, (c) 929,053 ordinary shares held directly by Tekla Life Science Investors, or Tekla Life, and (d) warrants to purchase 371,622 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Tekla Life. Tekla Capital Management LLC, or Tekla Capital, is an investment adviser registered pursuant to Section 203 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and is the investment adviser of Tekla World and Tekla Life, each of which is a registered investment company pursuant to Section 8 of the Investment Company Act of 1940. Each of Tekla Capital and Daniel R. Omstead, through his control of Tekla Capital, has sole power to dispose of the shares beneficially owned by Tekla World and Tekla Life. Neither Tekla Capital nor Daniel R. Omstead has the sole power to vote or direct the vote of the shares beneficially owned by Tekla World and Tekla Life, which power resides in each fund's Board of Trustees. Tekla Capital carries out the voting of the shares under written guidelines established by each fund's Board of Trustees. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us and a Schedule 13G filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 13, 2017. Tekla Capital's mailing address is 100 Federal Street, 19th Floor, Boston, MA 02110.
- (10) Consists of (a) 1,474,688 ordinary shares held directly by Aisling Capital IV, LP, or Aisling, and (b) warrants to purchase 589,875 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by Aisling. This information is based on information known to us.
- (11) Consists of (a) 1,805,944 ordinary shares held directly by BBHISL Nominees Ltd. A/C 121624, or BBHISL and (b) warrants to purchase 222,764 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering held directly by BBHISL. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us.
- (12) Consists of (a) 1,376,000 ordinary shares held directly by HSBC Global Custody Nominee (UK) Ltd A/C: 944287, or Hargreave Hale, and (b) warrants to purchase 425,618 ordinary shares that vest upon closing of the global offering held directly by Hargreave Hale. Beneficial ownership information is based on information known to us.
- (13) Consists of (a) 89,150 ordinary shares and (b) 410,000 options to purchase ordinary shares that are or will be immediately exercisable within 60 days of March 31, 2017.
- (14) Consists of 186,667 options to purchase ordinary shares that are or will be immediately exercisable within 60 days of March 31, 2017.
- (15) Consists of (a) 95,000 ordinary shares and (b) 75,000 options to purchase ordinary shares that are or will be immediately exercisable within 60 days of March 31, 2017.
- (16) Consists of (a) 13,000 ordinary shares and (b) 73,333 options to purchase ordinary shares that are or will be immediately exercisable within 60 days of March 31, 2017.
- (17) Consists of (a) 104,285 ordinary shares, (b) warrants to purchase 4,916 ordinary shares that vest upon the closing of the global offering and (c) \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares that Dr. Ebsworth has indicated an interest in purchasing in the shareholder private placement, based on the assumed offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement of £ \_\_\_\_\_, which reflects the last reported sale price of our ordinary shares on AIM and the exchange rate on \_\_\_\_\_, 2017.
- (18) Consists of 20,000 options to purchase ordinary shares that are or will be immediately exercisable within 60 days of March 31, 2017.
- (19) Dr. Sinclair is a Partner and Portfolio Manager at Abingworth LLP. Dr. Sinclair does not have voting or dispositive power over any of the shares directly held by Abingworth VI referenced in footnote (6) above. Dr. Sinclair's business address is 38 Jermyn Street, London SW1Y 6DN, United Kingdom.

## RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

The following is a description of related party transactions we have entered into since January 1, 2014 with any members of our board of directors or executive officers and the holders of more than 5% of our ordinary shares.

### Shareholder Private Placement

Each of our chairman of the board of directors and an existing shareholder have indicated an interest in purchasing up to approximately £ of our ordinary shares, in a private placement separate from the global offering, contingent on and concurrent with the completion of the global offering at a price per share equal to the offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement. However, indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and we could determine to sell more, less or no shares to these shareholders and these shareholders could determine to purchase more, less or no shares in the proposed shareholder private placement. The underwriters will serve as placement agents for such shareholder private placement and receive a placement agent fee equal to a percentage of the total purchase price of the private placement shares, which percentage will be equal to the percentage discount the underwriters will receive on shares sold in this global offering. The closing of this global offering is not conditioned upon the closing of such shareholder private placement.

### Ordinary Share and Warrant Placement

In July 2016, we issued an aggregate of 31,115,926 Units to new and existing institutional and other investors at a price of £1.4365 per Unit for an aggregate purchase price of £44.7 million, or the July Placement. Each Unit represented one ordinary share and a warrant to purchase 0.4 of an ordinary share at a price of £1.7238. Each warrant is exercisable beginning upon the closing of the global offering and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the closing of the global offering.

The following table sets forth the aggregate number of our ordinary shares issued to our 5% or greater shareholders and their affiliates and one of our directors in the July Placement.

<b>Participants<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Ordinary Shares</b>	<b>Warrants</b>
Arix Bioscience plc	1,290,352	516,140
Vivo Capital affiliates <sup>(2)</sup>	4,669,846	1,867,939
OrbiMed Private Investments VI, LP <sup>(3)</sup>	4,669,847	1,867,939
Growth Equity Opportunities Fund IV, LLC	4,424,065	1,769,626
Novo A/S	4,424,065	1,769,626
Abingworth Bioventures VII LP <sup>(4)</sup>	3,510,553	1,404,221
David Ebsworth	104,284	4,916

(1) For further information, see "Principal Shareholders."

(2) Includes Vivo Ventures Fund VII, L.P., Vivo Ventures VII Affiliates Fund, L.P., Vivo Ventures Fund VI, L.P., and Vivo Ventures Fund VI Affiliates Fund, L.P., or collectively, Vivo Capital. Mahendra Shah, a member of our board of directors, is a Managing Director of Vivo Capital.

(3) Rishi Gupta, a member of our board of directors, is a Private Equity Partner at OrbiMed LLC.

(4) Andrew Sinclair, a member of our board of directors, is a Partner and Portfolio Manager at Abingworth LLP.

### Registration Rights Agreement

In connection with the July Placement, we entered into a registration rights agreement that provided certain shelf and demand registration rights to Abingworth Bioventures VII LP, or Abingworth, Growth Equity Opportunities Fund IV, LLC, OrbiMed Private Investments VI, LP, or OrbiMed, and Vivo Capital, with respect

to our ordinary shares currently held by them and issuable to them upon the exercise of our warrants, which rights are described below.

#### ***Shelf Registration Rights***

At any time beginning not later than the later of (i) 180 days following the date of this prospectus or (ii) five business days after the expiration of the lock-up agreement entered into by our directors, officers, and securityholders in connection with the global offering, or the Commencement Date, we are required to file a shelf registration covering the resale of all of the registrable securities under the registration rights agreement pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act (or any successor or similar rule), to use commercially reasonable efforts to have the registration statement declared effective as promptly as practicable and to maintain an effective shelf registration until all of the registrable securities pursuant to the registration rights agreement shall have been sold under such shelf registration or cease to be registrable securities. These registration rights are subject to specified conditions and limitations.

#### ***Demand Registration Rights***

At any time after the Commencement Date, the holders of at least a majority of the registrable securities have the right to demand that we effect an underwritten public offering of the registrable securities pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act. These registration rights are subject to specified conditions and limitations including the right of the underwriters, if any, to limit the number of shares included in any such registration under specified circumstances. Upon such a request, we are required to use commercially reasonable efforts to effect the public offering.

#### ***Expenses of Registration***

We will pay all expenses relating to any registration under the registration rights agreement, other than selling commission, discounts or brokerage fees and stock transfer taxes, subject to specified conditions and limitations.

#### ***Termination of Registration Rights***

The registration rights granted under the registration rights agreement shall terminate upon the earlier to occur of (i) the fifth anniversary of the closing of the global offering and (ii) the date on which there are no registrable securities remaining pursuant to the registration rights agreement.

#### ***Relationship Agreements***

In June 2016, we entered into relationship agreements with each of Vivo Capital, OrbiMed, Arix Bioscience plc and Arthurian Life Sciences SPV GP Limited, or Arix and Arthurian, and Abingworth, each of which hold 5% or more of our ordinary shares, pursuant to which our relationship with such parties is regulated and their influence over our corporate actions and activities, and the outcome of general matters pertaining to us, are limited. Pursuant to the relationship agreements, we also agreed to appoint representatives designated by Vivo Capital, OrbiMed, Arix and Arthurian, and Abingworth to our board of directors, who are Dr. Mahendra Shah, Mr. Rishi Gupta, Dr. Ken Cunningham and Dr. Andrew Sinclair, respectively. The relationship Agreement with Arix and Arthurian was terminated in January 2017. The obligations of the parties under the remaining respective relationship agreements will continue in effect after the global offering, and the respective appointment rights under the remaining relationship agreements will automatically terminate upon (i) Vivo Capital, OrbiMed or Abingworth (or any of their associates), as applicable, ceasing to beneficially hold 6.5% of our issued ordinary shares, or (ii) our ordinary shares ceasing to be admitted to AIM. In addition, each of the relationship agreements will automatically terminate upon the first date which Vivo Capital, OrbiMed, or Abingworth, as applicable, cease to have certain rights and obligations under the relationship agreements.

#### ***Management Rights Letter***

In June 2016, we entered into a management rights letter with Novo A/S, or Novo, which holds more than 5% of our ordinary shares, pursuant to which Novo may designate a non-voting observer to our board of

[Table of Contents](#)

directors. This agreement will terminate upon the earlier of the closing of the global offering or when Novo ceases to hold 50% of our ordinary shares held by Novo upon the closing of the July Placement.

**Agreement with Arthurian Life Sciences**

In March 2014, we entered into a subscription and shareholders agreement, or the Arthurian Agreement, with Arthurian pursuant to which Arthurian purchased through the Wales Life Sciences Investment Fund LP, or WLSIF, 4,200,000 ordinary shares at a price per share of £1.1 for total aggregate proceeds of £4.6 million. Under the Arthurian Agreement, we agreed to locate and conduct some of our business in Wales and to engage Simbec-Orion Group, or Simbec-Orion, a contract research organization, to conduct three of our clinical studies.

**Agreements with Our Executive Officers & Directors**

We have entered into employment agreements with certain of our executive officers and service agreements with our non-employee directors. See "Management — Compensation."

**Indemnification Agreements**

In connection with the global offering, we will enter into indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers. See "Management — Insurance and Indemnification."

**Related Person Transaction Policy**

Prior to the closing of the global offering, we intend to enter into a related person transaction policy.

## DESCRIPTION OF SHARE CAPITAL AND ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

### General

We were incorporated as a public limited company with the legal name Isis Resources plc under the laws of England and Wales on February 24, 2005 with the company number 5375156. In September 2006, we acquired Rhinopharma Limited, a company incorporated under the laws of the province of British Columbia, Canada and changed our name to Verona Pharma plc. Our registered office is One Central Square, Cardiff, CF10 1FS. The principal legislation under which we operate and our shares are issued is the Companies Act 2006.

As of 2017, our issued share capital was . The nominal value of our ordinary shares is £0.05 per share. Each issued ordinary share is fully paid. Upon the closing of the global offering and the shareholder private placement, our issued share capital will be

### Ordinary Shares

In accordance with the Articles, the following summarizes the rights of holders of our ordinary shares:

- each holder of our ordinary shares is entitled to one vote per ordinary share on all matters to be voted on by shareholders generally;
- the holders of the ordinary shares shall be entitled to receive notice of, attend, speak and vote at our general meetings; and
- holders of our ordinary shares are entitled to receive such dividends as are recommended by our directors and declared by our shareholders.

### Registered Shares

We are required by the Companies Act 2006 to keep a register of our shareholders. Under English law, the ordinary shares are deemed to be issued when the name of the shareholder is entered in our share register. The share register therefore is prima facie evidence of the identity of our shareholders, and the shares that they hold. The share register generally provides limited, or no, information regarding the ultimate beneficial owners of our ordinary shares. Our share register is maintained by our registrar, Computershare Investor Services plc.

Holders of our ADSs will not be treated as one of our shareholders and their names will therefore not be entered in our share register. The depository, the custodian or their nominees will be the holder of the shares underlying our ADSs. For discussion on our ADSs and ADS holder rights see "Description of American Depository Shares" in this prospectus. Holders of our ADSs have a right to receive the ordinary shares underlying their ADSs as discussed in "Description of American Depository Shares" in this prospectus.

Under the Companies Act 2006, we must enter an allotment of shares in our share register as soon as practicable and in any event within two months of the allotment. We will perform all procedures necessary to update the share register to reflect the ordinary shares being sold in the global offering and shareholder private placement, including updating the share register with the number of ordinary shares to be issued to the depository upon the closing of the U.S. offering. We also are required by the Companies Act 2006 to register a transfer of shares (or give the transferee notice of and reasons for refusal) as soon as practicable and in any event within two months of receiving notice of the transfer.

We, any of our shareholders or any other affected person may apply to the court for rectification of the share register if:

- the name of any person, without sufficient cause, is wrongly entered in or omitted from our register of members; or

- there is a default or unnecessary delay in entering on the register the fact of any person having ceased to be a member or on which we have a lien, provided that such refusal does not prevent dealings in the shares taking place on an open and proper basis.

### **Preemptive Rights**

English law generally provides shareholders with preemptive rights when new shares are issued for cash; however, it is possible for the articles of association, or shareholders in general meeting, to exclude preemptive rights. Such an exclusion of preemptive rights may be for a maximum period of up to five years from the date of adoption of the articles of association, if the exclusion is contained in the articles of association, or from the date of the shareholder resolution, if the exclusion is by shareholder resolution. In either case, this exclusion would need to be renewed by our shareholders upon its expiration (i.e., at least every five years). On July 22, 2016, our shareholders approved the exclusion of preemptive rights for a period of five years from the date of approval, which exclusion will need to be renewed upon expiration (i.e., at least every five years) to remain effective, but may be sought more frequently for additional five-year terms (or any shorter period). On February 8, 2017, our shareholders approved the exclusion of preemptive rights for the allotment of ordinary shares in connection with the global offering.

### **Options**

As of March 31, 2017, there are options to purchase 2,804,000 ordinary shares outstanding with a weighted average exercise price of £1.90 per share. The options lapse after ten years from the date of the grant.

### **Warrants**

As of March 31, 2017, there are warrants to subscribe for 12,646,370 ordinary shares outstanding, exercisable at a weighted average exercise price of £1.7174 per share. In connection with the July Placement, we issued warrants to purchase up to 12,446,370 ordinary shares at an exercise price of £1.7238 per ordinary share. Each warrant is exercisable beginning upon the closing of the global offering and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the closing of the global offering. On August 6, 2014, we issued warrants to subscribe for 200,000 ordinary shares to our nominated advisor, which are exercisable at a weighted average exercise price of £1.315 per share and expire on August 5, 2018.

### **Capital Reorganization**

On February 10, 2017, we effected a 50-for-one share consolidation in which we consolidated every 50 existing ordinary shares of nominal value £0.001 each in our issued share capital into one ordinary shares of nominal value £0.05 each.

### **Articles of Association**

#### ***Shares and Rights Attaching to Them***

##### *Objects*

The objects of our company are unrestricted.

##### *Share Rights*

Subject to any special rights attaching to shares already in issue, our shares may be issued with or have attached to them any preferred, deferred or other special rights or privileges or be subject to such restrictions as we may resolve by ordinary resolution of the shareholders or decision of our board.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *Voting Rights*

Without prejudice to any special rights, privileges or restrictions as to voting rights attached to any shares forming part of our share capital from time to time, the voting rights attaching to shares are as follows:

- on a show of hands, every shareholder who (being an individual) is present in person and (being a corporation) is present by a duly authorized representative shall have one vote;
- on a show of hands, each proxy present in person has one vote for and one vote against a resolution if the proxy has been duly appointed by more than one shareholder and the proxy has been instructed by one or more of those shareholders to vote for the resolution and by one or more other of those shareholders to vote against it;
- on a show of hands, each proxy present in person has one vote for and one vote against a resolution if the proxy has been duly appointed by more than one shareholder entitled to vote on the resolution and either: (1) the proxy has been instructed by one or more of those shareholders to vote for the resolution and has been given any discretion by one or more other of those shareholders to vote and the proxy exercises that discretion to vote against it; or (2) the proxy has been instructed by one or more of those shareholders to vote against the resolution and has been given any discretion by one or more other of those shareholders to vote and the proxy exercises that discretion to vote for it; and
- on a poll every shareholder who is present in person or by proxy shall have one vote for each share of which he is the holder.

At any general meeting a resolution put to the vote of the meeting shall be decided on a show of hands unless a poll is demanded. Subject to the provisions of the Companies Act 2006, as described in "Differences in Corporate Law — Voting Rights" in this prospectus, a poll may be demanded by:

- the chairman of the meeting;
- at least five shareholders present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote;
- any shareholder(s) present in person or by proxy and representing in the aggregate not less than one-tenth of the total voting rights of all shareholders having the right to attend and vote at the meeting (excluding the shares held in treasury); or
- any shareholder(s) present in person or by proxy and holding shares conferring a right to attend and vote at the meeting on which there have been paid up sums in the aggregate equal to not less than one-tenth of the total sums paid up on all shares conferring that right (excluding the shares held in treasury).

### *Restrictions on Voting*

No shareholder shall be entitled to vote at any general meeting or at any separate class meeting in respect of any share held by him unless all calls or other sums payable by him in respect of that share have been paid.

The board may from time to time make calls upon the shareholders in respect of any money unpaid on their shares and each shareholder shall (subject to at least 14 days' notice specifying the time or times and place of payment) pay at the time or times so specified the amount called on his shares.

### *Dividends*

We may by ordinary resolution of shareholders declare dividends out of profits available for distribution in accordance with the respective rights of shareholders but no such dividend shall exceed the amount recommended by the directors. The board may from time to time pay shareholders such interim dividends as appear to the board to be justified by our profits and, if at any time, our share capital is divided into different classes the board may pay such interim dividends in respect of those shares which confer on the holders thereof deferred or non-preferential rights with regard to dividends.

Subject to any special rights attaching to or the terms of issue of any share, all dividends shall be declared and paid according to the amounts paid up on the shares and shall be apportioned and paid pro rata

[Table of Contents](#)

according to the amounts paid up on the shares during any part or parts of the period in respect of which the dividend is paid.

No dividend or other moneys payable by us on or in respect of any share shall bear interest against us. Any dividend unclaimed after a period of 12 years from the date such dividend became due for payment shall, if the Board so resolved, be forfeited and shall revert to us.

Dividends may be declared or paid in any currency and the board may decide the rate of exchange for any currency conversions that may be required, and how any costs involved are to be met, in relation to the currency of any dividend.

Any general meeting declaring a dividend may by ordinary resolution of shareholders, upon the recommendation of the board, direct payment or satisfaction of such dividend wholly or in part by the distribution of specific assets other than cash, and in particular of paid up shares or debentures of any other company. The directors may, if authorized by ordinary resolution of shareholders, offer any holders of ordinary shares the right to elect to receive in lieu of a dividend an allotment of ordinary shares credited as fully paid up, subject to such exclusions as the Board may deem necessary or desirable.

No shareholder shall be entitled to receive any dividend or other distribution in respect of any share held by him unless all calls or other sums payable by him in respect of that share have been paid.

*Change of Control*

There is no specific provision in our articles of association that would have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change of control.

*Distributions on Winding Up*

On a winding up, the liquidator may, with the consent by a special resolution of shareholders and any other resolution of the shareholders (excluding us to the extent we are a shareholder by virtue only of our holding of shares as treasury shares) in proportion to their shareholdings in specie or in kind or sanction of the court required by the Companies Act 2006 and/or the Insolvency Act 1986, divide amongst the shareholders the whole or any part of our assets (whether they shall consist of property of the same kind or not) and may set such values as he deems fair upon any property to be divided and may determine how such division shall be carried out as between the shareholders or different classes of shareholder. The liquidator may vest the whole or any part of such assets in trustees upon such trusts for the benefit of the shareholders as the liquidator shall think fit, but no shareholder shall be compelled to accept any shares or other assets upon which there is any liability or potential liability.

*Variation of Rights*

All or any of the rights and restrictions attached to any class of shares issued may be altered, added to or revoked with the consent in writing of the holders of not less than three-fourths in nominal value of the issued shares of that class (excluding any shares held as treasury shares) or by special resolution passed at a separate general meeting of the holders of such shares, subject to the Companies Act 2006 and the terms of their issue. The Companies Act 2006 provides a right to object to the variation of the share capital by the shareholders who did not vote in favor of the variation. Should an aggregate of 15% of the shareholders of the issued shares in question apply to the court to have the variation cancelled, the variation shall have no effect unless and until it is confirmed by the court.

*Alteration to Share Capital*

We may, by ordinary resolution of shareholders, consolidate and divide all or any of our share capital into shares of larger amount than our existing shares, or sub-divide our shares or any of them into shares of a smaller amount. We may, by special resolution of shareholders, confirmed by the court, reduce our share capital or any capital redemption reserve or any share premium account in any manner authorized by the Companies Act 2006. We may redeem or purchase all or any of our shares as described in "—Other U.K. Law Considerations — Purchase of Own Shares".

[Table of Contents](#)

*Pre-emption Rights*

In certain circumstances, our shareholders may have statutory pre-emption rights under the Companies Act 2006 in respect of the allotment of new shares as described in "— Preemptive Rights" and "— Differences in Corporate Law — Pre-emptive Rights" in this prospectus.

**Transfer of Shares**

Any certificated shareholder may transfer all or any of his shares by an instrument of transfer in the usual common form or in any other manner which is permitted by the Companies Act 2006 and approved by the board. Any written instrument of transfer shall be signed by or on behalf of the transferor and (in the case of a partly paid share) the transferee.

All transfers of uncertificated shares shall be made in accordance with and subject to the provisions of the Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001 and the facilities and requirements of its relevant system. The Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001 permit shares to be issued and held in uncertificated form and transferred by means of a computer-based system.

The board may decline to register any transfer of any share:

- which is not a fully paid share;
- to a person known to be a minor, bankrupt or person who is mentally disordered or a patient for the purpose of any statute relating to mental health;
- to an entity which is not a natural or legal person;
- unless any written instrument of transfer, duly stamped, is lodged with us at our registered office or such other place as the board may appoint accompanied by the certificate for the shares to which it relates;
- unless there is provided such evidence as the board may reasonably require to show the right of the transferor to make the transfer and if the instrument of transfer is executed by some other person on his behalf, the authority of that person to do so;
- where the transfer is in respect of more than one class of share; and
- in the case of a transfer to joint holders, the number of joint holders to whom the share is to be transferred exceeds four.

If the board declines to register a transfer it shall, as soon as practicable and in any event within two months after the date on which the transfer is lodged, send to the transferee notice of the refusal, together with reasons for the refusal.

**CREST**

To be traded on AIM, securities must be able to be transferred and settled through the CREST system. CREST is a computerized paperless share transfer and settlement system which allows securities to be transferred by electronic means, without the need for a written instrument of transfer. The Articles are consistent with CREST membership and, amongst other things, allow for the holding and transfer of shares in uncertificated form.

**Shareholder Meetings**

*Annual General Meetings*

In accordance with the Companies Act 2006, we are required in each year to hold an annual general meeting in addition to any other general meetings in that year and to specify the meeting as such in the notice convening it. The annual general meeting shall be convened whenever and wherever the board sees fit, subject to the requirements of the Companies Act 2006, as described in "— Differences in Corporate Law — Annual General Meeting" and "— Differences in Corporate Law — Notice of General Meetings" in this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

*Notice of General Meetings*

The arrangements for the calling of general meetings are described in "— Differences in Corporate Law — Notice of General Meetings" in this prospectus.

*Quorum of General Meetings*

No business shall be transacted at any general meeting unless a quorum is present. At least two shareholders present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote shall be a quorum for all purposes.

*Class Meetings*

The provisions in the Articles relating to general meetings apply to every separate general meeting of the holders of a class of shares except that:

- the quorum for such class meeting shall be two holders in person or by proxy representing not less than one-third in nominal value of the issued shares of the class (excluding any shares held in treasury);
- at the class meeting, a holder of shares of the class present in person or by proxy may demand a poll and shall on a poll be entitled to one vote for every share of the class held by him; and
- if at any adjourned meeting of such holders a quorum is not present at the meeting, one holder of shares of the class present in person or by proxy at an adjourned meeting constitutes a quorum.

**Directors**

*Number of Directors*

We may not have less than two directors on the board of directors. We may, by ordinary resolution of the shareholders, vary the minimum and maximum number of directors from time to time.

*Appointment of Directors*

Subject to the provisions of the Articles, we may, by ordinary resolution of the shareholders, elect any person to be a director, either to fill a casual vacancy or as an addition to the existing board. However, any person that is not a director retiring from the existing board must be recommended by a shareholder not less than seven and not more than 21 days before the day of the appointment in order to be eligible for election.

Without prejudice to the power to appoint any person to be a director by shareholder resolution, the board has power to appoint any person to be a director, either to fill a casual vacancy or as an addition to the existing board but so that the total number of directors does not exceed the maximum number fixed by or in accordance with the Articles.

Any director appointed by the board will hold office only until the earlier to occur of the close of the next following annual general meeting and someone being appointed in his stead at that meeting. Such a director is eligible for re-election at that meeting but shall not be taken into account in determining the directors or the number of directors who are to retire by rotation at such meeting.

*Rotation of Directors*

At every annual general meeting, one-third of the directors or, if their number is not a multiple of three, then the number nearest to and not exceeding one-third, shall retire from office.

The directors to retire on each occasion shall be those subject to retirement by rotation who have been longest in office since their last election, but as between persons who became or were re-elected directors on the same day those to retire shall (unless they otherwise agree amongst themselves) be determined by lot.

A director who retires at the annual general meeting shall be eligible for re-election.

The shareholders may, at the meeting at which a director retires, fill the vacated office by electing a person and in default the retiring director shall, if willing to continue to act, be deemed to have been re-elected,

[Table of Contents](#)

unless at such meeting it is expressly resolved not to fill such vacated office or unless a resolution for the re-election of such director shall have been put to the meeting and lost.

*Directors' Interests*

The directors may authorize, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any matter proposed to them which would otherwise result in a director infringing his duty to avoid a situation in which he has, or can have, a direct or indirect interest that conflicts, or possibly may conflict, with our interests. A director shall not, save as otherwise agreed by him, be accountable to us for any benefit which he derives from any matter authorized by the directors and any contract, transaction or arrangement relating thereto shall not be liable to be avoided on the grounds of any such benefit.

Subject to the requirements under sections 175, 177 and 182 of the Companies Act 2006, a director who is any way, whether directly or indirectly, interested in a proposed or existing transaction or arrangement with us shall declare the nature of his interest at a meeting of the directors.

In the case of interests arising where a director is in any way, directly or indirectly, interested in (a) a proposed transaction or arrangement with us or (b) a transaction or arrangement that has been entered into by us and save as otherwise provided by the Articles, such director shall not vote at a meeting of the board or of a committee of the board on any resolution concerning such matter in which he has a material interest (otherwise than by virtue of his interest in shares, debentures or other securities of, or otherwise in or through, us) unless his interest or duty arises only because the case falls within one or more of the following paragraphs:

- the resolution relates to the giving of any security, guarantee or indemnity to the director in respect of money lent or obligations incurred by the director at the request of or for the benefit of us or our subsidiaries;
- the resolution relates to the giving to a third party of a security or indemnity in respect of a debt or obligation of ours or any of our subsidiaries for which the director or a person connected with him has assumed responsibility in whole or part under a guarantee or indemnity or by the giving of security;
- his interest arises by virtue of any offer of shares or debentures or other securities by us or our subsidiaries for subscription or purchase in which offer the director is or may be entitled to participate as a holder of securities or in the director is interested as a participant in the underwriting or sub-underwriting thereof;
- the resolution relates in any way to any other company in which he is interested, directly or indirectly and whether as an officer or shareholder or otherwise howsoever, provided that he and any persons connected with him do not to his knowledge hold an interest in shares representing one per cent or more of any class of the equity share capital of such company or of the voting rights available to shareholder of such company;
- the resolution relates in any way to an arrangement in whole or in part for the benefit of our employees or any employees of our subsidiaries which does not award him as such any privilege or benefit not generally awarded to the employees to whom such arrangement relates;
- the resolution relates to the adoption, modification or operation of a superannuation fund or retirement, death or disability benefits scheme or employees' share scheme under which he may benefit and which has been approved by or is subject to and conditional upon approval by the UK tax authorities for taxation purposes and which does not award him any privilege or benefit not awarded to the employee to whom the scheme relates; or
- the resolution relates in any way to the purchase or maintenance for the directors of insurance against any liability which by virtue of any rule of law would otherwise attach to all or any of them in respect of any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to us or any of our subsidiaries.

## [Table of Contents](#)

A director shall not be counted in the quorum present at a meeting in relation to a resolution on which he is not entitled to vote.

If a question arises at a meeting of the board or of a committee of the board as to the right of a director to vote or be counted in the quorum, and such question is not resolved by his voluntarily agreeing to abstain from voting or not to be counted in the quorum, the question shall be determined by a majority of votes of the remaining directors present at the meeting or if there is an equality of votes, the Chairman shall have a second or casting vote and his ruling in relation to any director other than himself shall be final and conclusive except in a case where the nature or extent of the interest of the director concerned has not been fairly disclosed.

### *Directors' Fees and Remuneration*

Each of the directors shall be paid a fee at such rate as may from time to time be determined by the board (or for the avoidance of doubt any duly authorized committee of the board) provided that the aggregate of all such fees so paid to directors shall not exceed £500,000 per annum, or such higher amount as may from time to time be determined by ordinary resolution of shareholders.

Each director may be paid his traveling, hotel and incidental expenses of attending and returning from meetings of the board or committees of the board or general meetings or separate meetings of the holders class of shares or of debentures and shall be paid all expenses properly incurred by him in the conduct of the Company's business or in the discharge of his duties as a director. Any director who, by request, performs special or extra services which in the opinion of the board go beyond the ordinary duties of a director may be paid such extra remuneration as the board may determine.

An executive director shall receive such remuneration as the board may determine, and either in addition to or in lieu of his remuneration as a director as detailed above.

### *Borrowing Powers*

The board may exercise all the powers to borrow money and to mortgage or charge our undertaking, property and assets (present or future) and uncalled capital or any part thereof and to issue debentures and other securities, whether outright or as collateral security for any debt, liability or obligation of us or of any third party.

### *Indemnity*

Every director, alternate director, other officer or auditor of our group may be indemnified against all costs, charges, expenses, losses and liabilities incurred by him in connection with any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust by him in relation to us or in relation to the actual or purported execution or discharge of his duties or the exercise or purported exercise of his powers or otherwise in relation to such members of our group.

### ***Other U.K. Law Considerations***

#### *Notification of Voting Rights*

A shareholder in a public company incorporated in the United Kingdom whose shares are admitted to trading on AIM is required pursuant to Rule 5 of the Disclosure and Transparency Rules of the U.K. Financial Conduct Authority to notify us of the percentage of his voting rights if the percentage of voting rights which he holds as a shareholder or through his direct or indirect holding of financial instruments (or a combination of such holdings) reaches, exceeds or falls below 3%, 4%, 5%, and each 1% threshold thereafter up to 100% as a result of an acquisition or disposal of shares or financial instruments.

#### *Mandatory Purchases and Acquisitions*

Pursuant to Sections 979 to 991 of the Companies Act 2006, where a takeover offer has been made for us and the offeror has acquired or unconditionally contracted to acquire not less than 90% in value of the shares to which the offer relates and not less than 90% of the voting rights carried by those shares, the offeror may give notice to the holder of any shares to which the offer relates which the offeror has not

## [Table of Contents](#)

acquired or unconditionally contracted to acquire that he wishes to acquire, and is entitled to so acquire, those shares on the same terms as the general offer. The offeror would do so by sending a notice to the outstanding minority shareholders telling them that it will compulsorily acquire their shares. Such notice must be sent within three months of the last day on which the offer can be accepted in the prescribed manner. The squeeze-out of the minority shareholders can be completed at the end of six weeks from the date the notice has been given, subject to the minority shareholders failing to successfully lodge an application to the court to prevent such squeeze-out any time prior to the end of those six weeks following which the offeror can execute a transfer of the outstanding shares in its favor and pay the consideration to us, which would hold the consideration on trust for the outstanding minority shareholders. The consideration offered to the outstanding minority shareholders whose shares are compulsorily acquired under the Companies Act 2006 must, in general, be the same as the consideration that was available under the takeover offer.

### *Sell Out*

The Companies Act 2006 also gives our minority shareholders a right to be bought out in certain circumstances by an offeror who has made a takeover offer for all of our shares. The holder of shares to which the offer relates, and who has not otherwise accepted the offer, may require the offeror to acquire his shares if, prior to the expiry of the acceptance period for such offer, (i) the offeror has acquired or unconditionally agreed to acquire not less than 90% in value of the voting shares, and (ii) not less than 90% of the voting rights carried by those shares. The offeror may impose a time limit on the rights of minority shareholders to be bought out that is not less than three months after the end of the acceptance period. If a shareholder exercises his rights to be bought out, the offeror is required to acquire those shares on the terms of this offer or on such other terms as may be agreed.

### *Disclosure of Interest in Shares*

Pursuant to Part 22 of the Companies Act 2006, we are empowered by notice in writing to any person whom we know or have reasonable cause to believe to be interested in our shares, or at any time during the three years immediately preceding the date on which the notice is issued has been so interested, within a reasonable time to disclose to us particulars of that person's interest and (so far as is within his knowledge) particulars of any other interest that subsists or subsisted in those shares.

Under the Articles, if a person defaults in supplying us with the required particulars in relation to the shares in question, or default shares within the prescribed period, the directors may by notice direct that:

- in respect of the default shares, the relevant member shall not be entitled to attend or vote (either in person or by proxy) at any general meeting or of a general meeting of the holders of a class of shares or upon any poll or to exercise any right conferred by the default shares;
- where the default shares represent at least 0.25% of their class, (a) any dividend or other money payable in respect of the default shares shall be retained by us without liability to pay interest, and/or (b) no transfers by the relevant member of any default shares may be registered (unless the member himself is not in default and the member proves to the satisfaction of the Board that no person in default as regards supplying such information is interested in any of the default shares); and/or
- any shares held by the relevant member in uncertificated form shall be converted into certificated form and that member shall not after that be entitled to convert all or any shares held by him into uncertificated form (unless the member himself is not in default as regards supplying the information required and the member proves to the satisfaction of the board that, after due and careful inquiry, the member is satisfied that none of the shares he is proposing to convert into uncertificated form is a default share).

### *Purchase of Own Shares*

Under English law, a limited company may only purchase its own shares out of the distributable profits of the company or the proceeds of a fresh issue of shares made for the purpose of financing the purchase,

## [Table of Contents](#)

provided that they are not restricted from doing so by their articles. A limited company may not purchase its own shares if, as a result of the purchase, there would no longer be any issued shares of the company other than redeemable shares or shares held as treasury shares. Shares must be fully paid in order to be repurchased.

Subject to the above, we may purchase our own shares in the manner prescribed below. We may make a market purchase of our own fully paid shares pursuant to an ordinary resolution of shareholders. The resolution authorizing the purchase must:

- specify the maximum number of shares authorized to be acquired;
- determine the maximum and minimum prices that may be paid for the shares; and
- specify a date, not being later than five years after the passing of the resolution, on which the authority to purchase is to expire.

We may purchase our own fully paid shares otherwise than on a recognized investment exchange pursuant to a purchase contract authorized by resolution of shareholders before the purchase takes place. Any authority will not be effective if any shareholder from whom we propose to purchase shares votes on the resolution and the resolution would not have been passed if he had not done so. The resolution authorizing the purchase must specify a date, not being later than five years after the passing of the resolution, on which the authority to purchase is to expire.

### *Distributions and Dividends*

Under the Companies Act 2006, before a company can lawfully make a distribution or dividend, it must ensure that it has sufficient distributable reserves (on a non-consolidated basis). The basic rule is that a company's profits available for the purpose of making a distribution are its accumulated, realized profits, so far as not previously utilized by distribution or capitalization, less its accumulated, realized losses, so far as not previously written off in a reduction or reorganization of capital duly made. The requirement to have sufficient distributable reserves before a distribution or dividend can be paid applies to us and to each of our subsidiaries that has been incorporated under English law.

It is not sufficient that we, as a public company, have made a distributable profit for the purpose of making a distribution. An additional capital maintenance requirement is imposed on us to ensure that the net worth of the company is at least equal to the amount of its capital. A public company can only make a distribution:

- if, at the time that the distribution is made, the amount of its net assets (that is, the total excess of assets over liabilities) is not less than the total of its called up share capital and undistributable reserves; and
- if, and to the extent that, the distribution itself, at the time that it is made, does not reduce the amount of the net assets to less than that total.

### *City Code on Takeovers and Mergers*

As a public company incorporated in England and Wales with our registered office in England and Wales which has shares admitted to AIM, we are subject to the U.K. City Code on Takeovers and Mergers, or the City Code, which is issued and administered by the U.K. Panel on Takeovers and Mergers, or the Panel. The City Code provides a framework within which takeovers of companies subject to it are conducted. In particular, the City Code contains certain rules in respect of mandatory offers. Under Rule 9 of the City Code, if a person:

- acquires an interest in our shares which, when taken together with shares in which he or persons acting in concert with him are interested, carries 30% or more of the voting rights of our shares; or
- who, together with persons acting in concert with him, is interested in shares that in the aggregate carry not less than 30% and not more than 50% of the voting rights of our shares, and such persons, or any person acting in concert with him, acquires additional interests in shares that increase the percentage of shares carrying voting rights in which that person is interested,

[Table of Contents](#)

the acquirer and depending on the circumstances, its concert parties, would be required (except with the consent of the Panel) to make a cash offer for our outstanding shares at a price not less than the highest price paid for any interests in the shares by the acquirer or its concert parties during the previous 12 months.

*Exchange Controls*

There are no governmental laws, decrees, regulations or other legislation in the United Kingdom that may affect the import or export of capital, including the availability of cash and cash equivalents for use by us, or that may affect the remittance of dividends, interest, or other payments by us to non-resident holders of our ordinary shares or ADSs, other than withholding tax requirements. There is no limitation imposed by English law or in the Articles on the right of non-residents to hold or vote shares.

**Differences in Corporate Law**

*The applicable provisions of the Companies Act 2006 differ from laws applicable to U.S. corporations and their shareholders. Set forth below is a summary of certain differences between the provisions of the Companies Act 2006 applicable to us and the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware relating to shareholders' rights and protections. This summary is not intended to be a complete discussion of the respective rights and it is qualified in its entirety by reference to Delaware law and English law.*

---

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Number of Directors	Under the Companies Act 2006, a public limited company must have at least two directors and the number of directors may be fixed by or in the manner provided in a company's articles of association.	Under Delaware law, a corporation must have at least one director and the number of directors shall be fixed by or in the manner provided in the bylaws.
Removal of Directors	Under the Companies Act 2006, shareholders may remove a director without cause by an ordinary resolution (which is passed by a simple majority of those voting in person or by proxy at a general meeting) irrespective of any provisions of any service contract the director has with the company, provided 28 clear days' notice of the resolution has been given to the company and its shareholders. On receipt of notice of an intended resolution to remove a director, the company must forthwith send a copy of the notice to the director concerned. Certain other procedural requirements under the Companies Act 2006 must also be followed such as allowing the director to make representations against his or her removal either at the meeting or in writing.	Under Delaware law, any director or the entire board of directors may be removed, with or without cause, by the holders of a majority of the shares then entitled to vote at an election of directors, except (a) unless the certificate of incorporation provides otherwise, in the case of a corporation whose board of directors is classified, shareholders may effect such removal only for cause, or (b) in the case of a corporation having cumulative voting, if less than the entire board of directors is to be removed, no director may be removed without cause if the votes cast against his removal would be sufficient to elect him if then cumulatively voted at an election of the entire board of directors, or, if there are classes of directors, at an election of the class of directors of which he is a part.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Vacancies on the Board of Directors	Under English law, the procedure by which directors, other than a company's initial directors, are appointed is generally set out in a company's articles of association, provided that where two or more persons are appointed as directors of a public limited company by resolution of the shareholders, resolutions appointing each director must be voted on individually.	Under Delaware law, vacancies and newly created directorships may be filled by a majority of the directors then in office (even though less than a quorum) or by a sole remaining director unless (a) otherwise provided in the certificate of incorporation or by-laws of the corporation or (b) the certificate of incorporation directs that a particular class of stock is to elect such director, in which case a majority of the other directors elected by such class, or a sole remaining director elected by such class, will fill such vacancy.
Annual General Meeting	Under the Companies Act 2006, a public limited company must hold an annual general meeting in each six-month period following the company's annual accounting reference date.	Under Delaware law, the annual meeting of stockholders shall be held at such place, on such date and at such time as may be designated from time to time by the board of directors or as provided in the certificate of incorporation or by the bylaws.
General Meeting	<p>Under the Companies Act 2006, a general meeting of the shareholders of a public limited company may be called by the directors.</p> <p>Shareholders holding at least 5% of the paid-up capital of the company carrying voting rights at general meetings (excluding any paid up capital held as treasury shares) can require the directors to call a general meeting and, if the directors fail to do so within a certain period, may themselves convene a general meeting.</p>	Under Delaware law, special meetings of the stockholders may be called by the board of directors or by such person or persons as may be authorized by the certificate of incorporation or by the bylaws.

[Table of Contents](#)

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Notice of General Meetings	<p>Under the Companies Act 2006, 21 clear days' notice must be given for an annual general meeting and any resolutions to be proposed at the meeting. Subject to a company's articles of association providing for a longer period, at least 14 clear days' notice is required for any other general meeting. In addition, certain matters, such as the removal of directors or auditors, require special notice, which is 28 clear days' notice. The shareholders of a company may in all cases consent to a shorter notice period, the proportion of shareholders' consent required being 100% of those entitled to attend and vote in the case of an annual general meeting and, in the case of any other general meeting, a majority in number of the members having a right to attend and vote at the meeting, being a majority who together hold not less than 95% in nominal value of the shares giving a right to attend and vote at the meeting.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, unless otherwise provided in the certificate of incorporation or bylaws, written notice of any meeting of the stockholders must be given to each stockholder entitled to vote at the meeting not less than ten nor more than 60 days before the date of the meeting and shall specify the place, date, hour, and purpose or purposes of the meeting.</p>
Proxy	<p>Under the Companies Act 2006, at any meeting of shareholders, a shareholder may designate another person to attend, speak and vote at the meeting on their behalf by proxy.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, at any meeting of stockholders, a stockholder may designate another person to act for such stockholder by proxy, but no such proxy shall be voted or acted upon after three years from its date, unless the proxy provides for a longer period. A director of a Delaware corporation may not issue a proxy representing the director's voting rights as a director.</p>

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Pre-emptive Rights	<p>Under the Companies Act 2006, "equity securities", being (i) shares in the company other than shares that, with respect to dividends and capital, carry a right to participate only up to a specified amount in a distribution ("ordinary shares") or (ii) rights to subscribe for, or to convert securities into, ordinary shares, proposed to be allotted for cash must be offered first to the existing equity shareholders in the company in proportion to the respective nominal value of their holdings, unless an exception applies or a special resolution to the contrary has been passed by shareholders in a general meeting or the articles of association provide otherwise in each case in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act 2006.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, shareholders have no preemptive rights to subscribe to additional issues of stock or to any security convertible into such stock unless, and except to the extent that, such rights are expressly provided for in the certificate of incorporation.</p>
Authority to Allot	<p>Under the Companies Act 2006, the directors of a company must not allot shares or grant of rights to subscribe for or to convert any security into shares unless an exception applies or an ordinary resolution to the contrary has been passed by shareholders in a general meeting or the articles of association provide otherwise in each case in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act 2006.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, if the corporation's charter or certificate of incorporation so provides, the board of directors has the power to authorize the issuance of stock. It may authorize capital stock to be issued for consideration consisting of cash, any tangible or intangible property or any benefit to the corporation or any combination thereof. It may determine the amount of such consideration by approving a formula. In the absence of actual fraud in the transaction, the judgment of the directors as to the value of such consideration is conclusive.</p>
Liability of Directors and Officers	<p>Under the Companies Act 2006, any provision, whether contained in a company's articles of association or any contract or otherwise, that purports to exempt a director of a company, to any extent, from any liability that would otherwise attach to him in connection with any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the company is void.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, a corporation's certificate of incorporation may include a provision eliminating or limiting the personal liability of a director to the corporation and its stockholders for damages arising from a breach of fiduciary duty as a director. However, no provision can limit the liability of a director for:</p>

**England and Wales**

Any provision by which a company directly or indirectly provides an indemnity, to any extent, for a director of the company or of an associated company against any liability attaching to him in connection with any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust in relation to the company of which he is a director is also void except as permitted by the Companies Act 2006, which provides exceptions for the company to (a) purchase and maintain insurance against such liability; (b) provide a "qualifying third party indemnity" (being an indemnity against liability incurred by the director to a person other than the company or an associated company or criminal proceedings in which he is convicted); and (c) provide a "qualifying pension scheme indemnity" (being an indemnity against liability incurred in connection with the company's activities as trustee of an occupational pension plan).

**Delaware**

- any breach of the director's duty of loyalty to the corporation or its stockholders;
- acts or omissions not in good faith or that involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- intentional or negligent payment of unlawful dividends or stock purchases or redemptions; or
- any transaction from which the director derives an improper personal benefit.

Voting Rights

Under English law, unless a poll is demanded by the shareholders of a company or is required by the chairman of the meeting or the company's articles of association, shareholders shall vote on all resolutions on a show of hands. Under the Companies Act 2006, a poll may be demanded by (a) not fewer than five shareholders having the right to vote on the resolution; (b) any shareholder(s) representing not less than 10% of the total voting rights of all the shareholders having the right to vote on the resolution (excluding any voting rights attaching to treasury shares); or (c) any shareholder(s) holding shares in the company conferring a right to vote on the resolution (excluding any voting rights attaching to treasury shares) being shares on which an aggregate sum has been paid up equal to not less than 10% of the total sum paid up on all the shares conferring that right. A company's articles of association may provide more extensive rights for shareholders to call a poll.

Delaware law provides that, unless otherwise provided in the certificate of incorporation, each stockholder is entitled to one vote for each share of capital stock held by such stockholder.

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Shareholder Vote on Certain Transactions	<p>Under English law, an ordinary resolution is passed on a show of hands if it is approved by a simple majority (more than 50%) of the votes cast by shareholders present (in person or by proxy) and entitled to vote. If a poll is demanded, an ordinary resolution is passed if it is approved by holders representing a simple majority of the total voting rights of shareholders present, in person or by proxy, who, being entitled to vote, vote on the resolution. Special resolutions require the affirmative vote of not less than 75% of the votes cast by shareholders present, in person or by proxy, at the meeting.</p> <p>The Companies Act 2006 provides for schemes of arrangement, which are arrangements or compromises between a company and any class of shareholders or creditors and used in certain types of reconstructions, amalgamations, capital reorganizations or takeovers. These arrangements require:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ the approval at a shareholders' or creditors' meeting convened by order of the court, of a majority in number of shareholders or creditors representing 75% in value of the capital held by, or debt owed to, the class of shareholders or creditors, or class thereof present and voting, either in person or by proxy; and</li><li>▪ the approval of the court.</li></ul>	<p>Generally, under Delaware law, unless the certificate of incorporation provides for the vote of a larger portion of the stock, completion of a merger, consolidation, sale, lease or exchange of all or substantially all of a corporation's assets or dissolution requires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ the approval of the board of directors; and</li><li>▪ approval by the vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding stock or, if the certificate of incorporation provides for more or less than one vote per share, a majority of the votes of the outstanding stock of a corporation entitled to vote on the matter.</li></ul>

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Standard of Conduct for Directors	<p>Under English law, a director owes various statutory and fiduciary duties to the company, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ to act in the way he considers, in good faith, would be most likely to promote the success of the company for the benefit of its members as a whole;</li><li>▪ to avoid a situation in which he has, or can have, a direct or indirect interest that conflicts, or possibly conflicts, with the interests of the company;</li><li>▪ to act in accordance with the company's constitution and only exercise his powers for the purposes for which they are conferred;</li><li>▪ to exercise independent judgment;</li><li>▪ to exercise reasonable care, skill and diligence;</li><li>▪ not to accept benefits from a third party conferred by reason of his being a director or doing, or not doing, anything as a director; and</li><li>▪ a duty to declare any interest that he has, whether directly or indirectly, in a proposed or existing transaction or arrangement with the company.</li></ul>	<p>Delaware law does not contain specific provisions setting forth the standard of conduct of a director. The scope of the fiduciary duties of directors is generally determined by the courts of the State of Delaware. In general, directors have a duty to act without self-interest, on a well-informed basis and in a manner they reasonably believe to be in the best interest of the stockholders.</p> <p>Directors of a Delaware corporation owe fiduciary duties of care and loyalty to the corporation and to its shareholders. The duty of care generally requires that a director act in good faith, with the care that an ordinarily prudent person would exercise under similar circumstances. Under this duty, a director must inform himself of all material information reasonably available regarding a significant transaction. The duty of loyalty requires that a director act in a manner he reasonably believes to be in the best interests of the corporation. He must not use his corporate position for personal gain or advantage. In general, but subject to certain exceptions, actions of a director are presumed to have been made on an informed basis, in good faith and in the honest belief that the action taken was in the best interests of the corporation. However, this presumption may be rebutted by evidence of a breach of one of the fiduciary duties. Delaware courts have also imposed a heightened standard of conduct upon directors of a Delaware corporation who take any action designed to defeat a threatened change in control of the corporation.</p> <p>In addition, under Delaware law, when the board of directors of a Delaware corporation approves the sale or break-up of a corporation, the board of directors may, in certain circumstances, have a duty to obtain the highest value reasonably available to the shareholders.</p>

	<u>England and Wales</u>	<u>Delaware</u>
Stockholder Suits	<p>Under English law, generally, the company, rather than its shareholders, is the proper claimant in an action in respect of a wrong done to the company or where there is an irregularity in the company's internal management. Notwithstanding this general position, the Companies Act 2006 provides that (i) a court may allow a shareholder to bring a derivative claim (that is, an action in respect of and on behalf of the company) in respect of a cause of action arising from a director's negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust and (ii) a shareholder may bring a claim for a court order where the company's affairs have been or are being conducted in a manner that is unfairly prejudicial to some of its shareholders.</p>	<p>Under Delaware law, a stockholder may initiate a derivative action to enforce a right of a corporation if the corporation fails to enforce the right itself. The complaint must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ state that the plaintiff was a stockholder at the time of the transaction of which the plaintiff complains or that the plaintiff's shares thereafter devolved on the plaintiff by operation of law; and</li><li>▪ allege with particularity the efforts made by the plaintiff to obtain the action the plaintiff desires from the directors and the reasons for the plaintiff's failure to obtain the action; or</li><li>▪ state the reasons for not making the effort.</li></ul> <p>Additionally, the plaintiff must remain a stockholder through the duration of the derivative suit. The action will not be dismissed or compromised without the approval of the Delaware Court of Chancery.</p>

## DESCRIPTION OF AMERICAN DEPOSITARY SHARES

### American Depositary Shares

Citibank, N.A., or Citibank, has agreed to act as the depository for the ADSs. Citibank's depository offices are located at 388 Greenwich Street, New York, New York 10013. ADSs represent ownership interests in securities that are on deposit with the depository. ADSs may be represented by certificates that are commonly known as American Depositary Receipts, or ADRs. The depository typically appoints a custodian to safekeep the securities on deposit. In this case, the custodian is Citibank, N.A., London Branch, located at 25 Canada Square, Canary Wharf, London, E14 5LB, United Kingdom.

We have appointed Citibank as depository pursuant to a deposit agreement. A copy of the deposit agreement is on file with the SEC under cover of a registration statement on Form F-6. You may obtain a copy of the deposit agreement from the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549 and from the SEC's website ([www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov)). Please refer to registration number 333-\_\_\_\_\_ when retrieving such copy.

We are providing you with a summary description of the material terms of the ADSs and of your material rights as an owner of ADSs. Please remember that summaries by their nature lack the precision of the information summarized and that the rights and obligations of an owner of ADSs will be determined by reference to the terms of the deposit agreement and not by this summary. We urge you to review the deposit agreement in its entirety.

Each ADS represents the right to receive, and to exercise the beneficial ownership interests in, \_\_\_\_\_ ordinary shares that are on deposit with the depository and/or custodian. An ADS also represents the right to receive, and to exercise the beneficial interests in, any other property received by the depository or the custodian on behalf of the owner of the ADS but that has not been distributed to the owners of ADSs because of legal restrictions or practical considerations. We and the depository may agree to change the ADS-to-Share ratio by amending the deposit agreement. This amendment may give rise to, or change, the depository fees payable by ADS owners. The custodian, the depository and their respective nominees will hold all deposited property for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of ADSs. The deposited property does not constitute the proprietary assets of the depository, the custodian or their nominees. Beneficial ownership in the deposited property will under the terms of the deposit agreement be vested in the beneficial owners of the ADSs. The depository, the custodian and their respective nominees will be the record holders of the deposited property represented by the ADSs for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the corresponding ADSs. A beneficial owner of ADSs may or may not be the holder of ADSs. Beneficial owners of ADSs will be able to receive, and to exercise beneficial ownership interests in, the deposited property only through the registered holders of the ADSs, the registered holders of the ADSs (on behalf of the applicable ADS owners) only through the depository, and the depository (on behalf of the owners of the corresponding ADSs) directly, or indirectly, through the custodian or their respective nominees, in each case upon the terms of the deposit agreement.

If you become an owner of ADSs, you will become a party to the deposit agreement and therefore will be bound to its terms and to the terms of any ADR that represents your ADSs. The deposit agreement and the ADR specify our rights and obligations as well as your rights and obligations as owner of ADSs and those of the depository. As an ADS holder you appoint the depository to act on your behalf in certain circumstances. The deposit agreement and the ADRs are governed by New York law. However, our obligations to the holders of ordinary shares will continue to be governed by the laws of England and Wales, which may be different from the laws in the United States.

In addition, applicable laws and regulations may require you to satisfy reporting requirements and obtain regulatory approvals in certain circumstances. You are solely responsible for complying with such reporting requirements and obtaining such approvals. Neither the depository, the custodian, us or any of their or our

[Table of Contents](#)

respective agents or affiliates shall be required to take any actions whatsoever on your behalf to satisfy such reporting requirements or obtain such regulatory approvals under applicable laws and regulations.

As an owner of ADSs, we will not treat you as one of our shareholders and you will not have direct shareholder rights. The depositary will hold on your behalf the shareholder rights attached to the ordinary shares underlying your ADSs. As an owner of ADSs you will be able to exercise the shareholders rights for the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs through the depositary only to the extent contemplated in the deposit agreement. To exercise any shareholder rights not contemplated in the deposit agreement you will, as an ADS owner, need to arrange for the cancellation of your ADSs and become a direct shareholder.

As an owner of ADSs, you may hold your ADSs either by means of an ADR registered in your name, through a brokerage or safekeeping account, or through an account established by the depositary in your name reflecting the registration of uncertificated ADSs directly on the books of the depositary (commonly referred to as the direct registration system or DRS). The direct registration system reflects the uncertificated (book-entry) registration of ownership of ADSs by the depositary. Under the direct registration system, ownership of ADSs is evidenced by periodic statements issued by the depositary to the holders of the ADSs. The direct registration system includes automated transfers between the depositary and The Depository Trust Company, or DTC, the central book-entry clearing and settlement system for equity securities in the United States. If you decide to hold your ADSs through your brokerage or safekeeping account, you must rely on the procedures of your broker or bank to assert your rights as ADS owner. Banks and brokers typically hold securities such as the ADSs through clearing and settlement systems such as DTC. The procedures of such clearing and settlement systems may limit your ability to exercise your rights as an owner of ADSs. Please consult with your broker or bank if you have any questions concerning these limitations and procedures. All ADSs held through DTC will be registered in the name of a nominee of DTC. This summary description assumes you have opted to own the ADSs directly by means of an ADS registered in your name and, as such, we will refer to you as the "holder." When we refer to "you," we assume the reader owns ADSs and will own ADSs at the relevant time.

The registration of the ordinary shares in the name of the depositary or the custodian shall, to the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, vest in the depositary or the custodian the record ownership in the applicable ordinary shares with the beneficial ownership rights and interests in such ordinary shares being at all times vested with the beneficial owners of the ADSs representing the ordinary shares. The depositary or the custodian shall at all times be entitled to exercise the beneficial ownership rights in all deposited property, in each case only on behalf of the holders and beneficial owners of the ADSs representing the deposited property.

**Dividends and Other Distributions**

As a holder of ADSs, you generally have the right to receive the distributions we make on the securities deposited with the custodian. Your receipt of these distributions may be limited, however, by practical considerations and legal limitations. Holders of ADSs will receive such distributions under the terms of the deposit agreement in proportion to the number of ADSs held as of the specified record date, after deduction the applicable fees, taxes and expenses.

***Distributions of Cash***

Whenever we make a cash distribution for the securities on deposit with the custodian, we will deposit the funds with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of the deposit of the requisite funds, the depositary will arrange for the funds to be converted into U.S. dollars and for the distribution of the U.S. dollars to the holders, subject to the laws and regulations of England and Wales.

The conversion into U.S. dollars will take place only if practicable and if the U.S. dollars are transferable to the United States. The depositary will apply the same method for distributing the proceeds of the sale of any property (such as undistributed rights) held by the custodian in respect of securities on deposit.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The distribution of cash will be made net of the fees, expenses, taxes and governmental charges payable by holders under the terms of the deposit agreement. The depositary will hold any cash amounts it is unable to distribute in a non-interest bearing account for the benefit of the applicable holders and beneficial owners of ADSs until the distribution can be effected or the funds that the depositary holds must be escheated as unclaimed property in accordance with the laws of the relevant states of the United States.

### ***Distributions of Shares***

Whenever we make a free distribution of ordinary shares for the securities on deposit with the custodian, we will deposit the applicable number of ordinary shares with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of such deposit, the depositary will either distribute to holders new ADSs representing the ordinary shares deposited or modify the ADS-to-ordinary shares ratio, in which case each ADS you hold will represent rights and interests in the additional ordinary shares so deposited. Only whole new ADSs will be distributed. Fractional entitlements will be sold and the proceeds of such sale will be distributed as in the case of a cash distribution.

The distribution of new ADSs or the modification of the ADS-to-ordinary shares ratio upon a distribution of ordinary shares will be made net of the fees, expenses, taxes and governmental charges payable by holders under the terms of the deposit agreement. In order to pay such taxes or governmental charges, the depositary may sell all or a portion of the new ordinary shares so distributed.

No such distribution of new ADSs will be made if it would violate a law (e.g., the U.S. securities laws) or if it is not operationally practicable. If the depositary does not distribute new ADSs as described above, it may sell the ordinary shares received upon the terms described in the deposit agreement and will distribute the proceeds of the sale as in the case of a distribution of cash.

### ***Distributions of Rights***

Whenever we intend to distribute rights to purchase additional ordinary shares, we will give prior notice to the depositary and we will assist the depositary in determining whether it is lawful and reasonably practicable to distribute rights to purchase additional ADSs to holders.

The depositary will establish procedures to distribute rights to purchase additional ADSs to holders and to enable such holders to exercise such rights if it is lawful and reasonably practicable to make the rights available to holders of ADSs, and if we provide all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement (such as opinions to address the lawfulness of the transaction). You may have to pay fees, expenses, taxes and other governmental charges to subscribe for the new ADSs upon the exercise of your rights. The depositary is not obligated to establish procedures to facilitate the distribution and exercise by holders of rights to purchase new ordinary shares other than in the form of ADSs.

The depositary will *not* distribute the rights to you if:

- we do not timely request that the rights be distributed to you or we request that the rights not be distributed to you; or
- we fail to deliver satisfactory documents to the depositary; or
- it is not reasonably practicable to distribute the rights.

The depositary will sell the rights that are not exercised or not distributed if such sale is lawful and reasonably practicable. The proceeds of such sale will be distributed to holders as in the case of a cash distribution. If the depositary is unable to sell the rights, it will allow the rights to lapse.

### ***Elective Distributions***

Whenever we intend to distribute a dividend payable at the election of shareholders either in cash or in additional shares, we will give prior notice thereof to the depositary and will indicate whether we wish the elective distribution to be made available to you. In such case, we will assist the depositary in determining whether such distribution is lawful and reasonably practicable.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The depositary will make the election available to you only if it is reasonably practicable and if we have provided all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement. In such case, the depositary will establish procedures to enable you to elect to receive either cash or additional ADSs, in each case as described in the deposit agreement.

If the election is not made available to you, you will receive either cash or additional ADSs, depending on what a shareholder in England and Wales would receive upon failing to make an election, as more fully described in the deposit agreement.

### **Other Distributions**

Whenever we intend to distribute property other than cash, ordinary shares or rights to purchase additional ordinary shares, we will notify the depositary in advance and will indicate whether we wish such distribution to be made to you. If so, we will assist the depositary in determining whether such distribution to holders is lawful and reasonably practicable.

If it is reasonably practicable to distribute such property to you and if we provide all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement, the depositary will distribute the property to the holders in a manner it deems practicable.

The distribution will be made net of fees, expenses, taxes and governmental charges payable by holders under the terms of the deposit agreement. In order to pay such taxes and governmental charges, the depositary may sell all or a portion of the property received.

The depositary will *not* distribute the property to you and will sell the property if:

- we do not request that the property be distributed to you or if we ask that the property not be distributed to you; or
- we do not deliver satisfactory documents to the depositary; or
- the depositary determines that all or a portion of the distribution to you is not reasonably practicable.

The proceeds of such a sale will be distributed to holders as in the case of a cash distribution.

### **Redemption**

Whenever we decide to redeem any of the securities on deposit with the custodian, we will notify the depositary in advance. If it is practicable and if we provide all of the documentation contemplated in the deposit agreement, the depositary will provide notice of the redemption to the holders.

The custodian will be instructed to surrender the shares being redeemed against payment of the applicable redemption price. The depositary will convert the redemption funds received into U.S. dollars upon the terms of the deposit agreement and will establish procedures to enable holders to receive the net proceeds from the redemption upon surrender of their ADSs to the depositary. You may have to pay fees, expenses, taxes and other governmental charges upon the redemption of your ADSs. If less than all ADSs are being redeemed, the ADSs to be retired will be selected by lot or on a *pro rata* basis, as the depositary may determine.

### **Changes Affecting Ordinary Shares**

The ordinary shares held on deposit for your ADSs may change from time to time. For example, there may be a change in nominal or par value, split-up, cancellation, consolidation or any other reclassification of such ordinary shares or a recapitalization, reorganization, merger, consolidation or sale of assets of the Company.

If any such change were to occur, your ADSs would, to the extent permitted by law, represent the right to receive the property received or exchanged in respect of the ordinary shares held on deposit. The depositary may in such circumstances deliver new ADSs to you, amend the deposit agreement, the ADRs and the applicable Registration Statement(s) on Form F-6, call for the exchange of your existing ADSs for new ADSs

[Table of Contents](#)

and take any other actions that are appropriate to reflect as to the ADSs the change affecting the Shares. If the depositary may not lawfully distribute such property to you, the depositary may sell such property and distribute the net proceeds to you as in the case of a cash distribution.

**Issuance of ADSs upon Deposit of Ordinary Shares**

Upon completion of the U.S. offering, the ordinary shares being offered pursuant to this prospectus will be deposited by us with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of such deposit, the depositary will issue ADSs to the underwriters named in this prospectus. After the completion of the U.S. offering, the ordinary shares that are being offered for sale pursuant to this prospectus will be deposited by us with the custodian. Upon receipt of confirmation of such deposit, the depositary will issue ADSs to the underwriters named in this prospectus.

After the closing of this offer, the depositary may create ADSs on your behalf if you or your broker deposit ordinary shares with the custodian. The depositary will deliver these ADSs to the person you indicate only after you pay any applicable issuance fees and any charges and taxes payable for the transfer of the ordinary shares to the custodian. Your ability to deposit ordinary shares and receive ADSs may be limited by U.S. and England and Wales legal considerations applicable at the time of deposit.

The issuance of ADSs may be delayed until the depositary or the custodian receives confirmation that all required approvals have been given and that the ordinary shares have been duly transferred to the custodian. The depositary will only issue ADSs in whole numbers.

When you make a deposit of ordinary shares, you will be responsible for transferring good and valid title to the depositary. As such, you will be deemed to represent and warrant that:

- the ordinary shares are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid, non-assessable and legally obtained;
- all preemptive (and similar) rights, if any, with respect to such ordinary shares have been validly waived or exercised;
- you are duly authorized to deposit the ordinary shares;
- the ordinary shares presented for deposit are free and clear of any lien, encumbrance, security interest, charge, mortgage or adverse claim, and are not, and the ADSs issuable upon such deposit will not be, "restricted securities" (as defined in the deposit agreement); and
- the ordinary shares presented for deposit have not been stripped of any rights or entitlements.

If any of the representations or warranties are incorrect in any way, we and the depositary may, at your cost and expense, take any and all actions necessary to correct the consequences of the misrepresentations.

**Transfer, Combination and Split Up of ADRs**

As an ADR holder, you will be entitled to transfer, combine or split up your ADRs and the ADSs evidenced thereby. For transfers of ADRs, you will have to surrender the ADRs to be transferred to the depositary and also must:

- ensure that the surrendered ADR is properly endorsed or otherwise in proper form for transfer;
- provide such proof of identity and genuineness of signatures as the depositary deems appropriate;
- provide any transfer stamps required by the State of New York or the United States; and
- pay all applicable fees, charges, expenses, taxes and other government charges payable by ADR holders pursuant to the terms of the deposit agreement, upon the transfer of ADRs.

To have your ADRs either combined or split up, you must surrender the ADRs in question to the depositary with your request to have them combined or split up, and you must pay all applicable fees, charges and expenses payable by ADR holders, pursuant to the terms of the deposit agreement, upon a combination or split up of ADRs.

### **Withdrawal of Ordinary Shares Upon Cancellation of ADSs**

As a holder, you will be entitled to present your ADSs to the depository for cancellation and then receive the corresponding number of underlying ordinary shares at the custodian's offices. Your ability to withdraw the ordinary shares held in respect of the ADSs may be limited by U.S. and England and Wales considerations applicable at the time of withdrawal. In order to withdraw the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs, you will be required to pay to the depository the fees for cancellation of ADSs and any charges and taxes payable upon the transfer of the ordinary shares. You assume the risk for delivery of all funds and securities upon withdrawal. Once canceled, the ADSs will not have any rights under the deposit agreement.

If you hold ADSs registered in your name, the depository may ask you to provide proof of identity and genuineness of any signature and such other documents as the depository may deem appropriate before it will cancel your ADSs. The withdrawal of the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs may be delayed until the depository receives satisfactory evidence of compliance with all applicable laws and regulations. Please keep in mind that the depository will only accept ADSs for cancellation that represent a whole number of securities on deposit.

You will have the right to withdraw the securities represented by your ADSs at any time except as a result of:

- temporary delays that may arise because (i) the transfer books for the ordinary shares or ADSs are closed, or (ii) ordinary shares are immobilized on account of a shareholders' meeting or a payment of dividends;
- obligations to pay fees, taxes and similar charges; and/or
- restrictions imposed because of laws or regulations applicable to ADSs or the withdrawal of securities on deposit.

The deposit agreement may not be modified to impair your right to withdraw the securities represented by your ADSs except to comply with mandatory provisions of law.

### **Voting Rights**

As a holder, you generally have the right under the deposit agreement to instruct the depository to exercise the voting rights for the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs. The voting rights of holders of ordinary shares are described in "Description of Share Capital and Articles of Association — Articles of Association" in this prospectus.

At our request, the depository will distribute to you any notice of shareholders' meeting received from us together with information explaining how to instruct the depository to exercise the voting rights of the securities represented by ADSs.

If the depository timely receives voting instructions from a holder of ADSs, it will endeavor to vote the securities (in person or by proxy) represented by the holder's ADSs as follows:

- *In the event of voting by show of hands*, the depository will vote (or cause the custodian to vote) all ordinary held on deposit at that time in accordance with the voting instructions received from a majority of holders of ADSs who provide timely voting instructions.
- *In the event of voting by poll*, the depository will vote (or cause the custodian to vote) the ordinary shares held on deposit in accordance with the voting instructions received from the holders of ADSs.

Securities for which no voting instructions have been received will not be voted (except as otherwise contemplated herein). Please note that the ability of the depository to carry out voting instructions may be limited by practical and legal limitations and the terms of the securities on deposit. We cannot assure you that you will receive voting materials in time to enable you to return voting instructions to the depository in a timely manner.

## Fees and Charges

As an ADS holder, you will be required to pay the following fees under the terms of the deposit agreement:

<u>Service</u>	<u>Fee</u>
Issuance of ADSs (e.g., an issuance of ADS upon a deposit of ordinary shares or upon a change in the ADS(s)-to-ordinary shares ratio), excluding ADS issuances as a result of distributions of ordinary shares	Up to \$0.05 per ADS issued
Cancellation of ADSs (e.g., a cancellation of ADSs for delivery of deposited property or upon a change in the ADS(s)-to-ordinary shares ratio)	Up to \$0.05 per ADS cancelled
Distribution of cash dividends or other cash distributions (e.g., upon a sale of rights and other entitlements)	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held
Distribution of ADSs pursuant to (i) stock dividends or other free stock distributions, or (ii) exercise of rights to purchase additional ADSs	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held
Distribution of securities other than ADSs or rights to purchase additional ADSs (e.g., upon a spin-off)	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held
ADS Services	Up to \$0.05 per ADS held on the applicable record date(s) established by the depositary

As an ADS holder you will also be responsible to pay certain charges such as:

- taxes (including applicable interest and penalties) and other governmental charges;
- the registration fees as may from time to time be in effect for the registration of ordinary shares on the share register and applicable to transfers of ordinary shares to or from the name of the custodian, the depositary or any nominees upon the making of deposits and withdrawals, respectively;
- certain cable, telex and facsimile transmission and delivery expenses;
- the expenses and charges incurred by the depositary in the conversion of foreign currency;
- the fees and expenses incurred by the depositary in connection with compliance with exchange control regulations and other regulatory requirements applicable to ordinary shares, ADSs and ADRs; and
- the fees and expenses incurred by the depositary, the custodian, or any nominee in connection with the servicing or delivery of deposited property.

ADS fees and charges payable upon (i) the issuance of ADSs, and (ii) the cancellation of ADSs are charged to the person to whom the ADSs are issued (in the case of ADS issuances) and to the person whose ADSs are cancelled (in the case of ADS cancellations). In the case of ADSs issued by the depositary into DTC, the ADS issuance and cancellation fees and charges may be deducted from distributions made through DTC, and may be charged to the DTC participant(s) receiving the ADSs being issued or the DTC participant(s) holding the ADSs being cancelled, as the case may be, on behalf of the beneficial owner(s) and will be charged by the DTC participant(s) to the account of the applicable beneficial owner(s) in accordance with the procedures and practices of the DTC participants as in effect at the time. ADS fees and charges in respect of distributions and the ADS service fee are charged to the holders as of the applicable ADS record date. In the case of distributions of cash, the amount of the applicable ADS fees and charges is deducted from the funds being distributed. In the case of (i) distributions other than cash and (ii) the ADS service

## [Table of Contents](#)

fee, holders as of the ADS record date will be invoiced for the amount of the ADS fees and charges and such ADS fees and charges may be deducted from distributions made to holders of ADSs. For ADSs held through DTC, the ADS fees and charges for distributions other than cash and the ADS service fee may be deducted from distributions made through DTC, and may be charged to the DTC participants in accordance with the procedures and practices prescribed by DTC and the DTC participants in turn charge the amount of such ADS fees and charges to the beneficial owners for whom they hold ADSs.

In the event of refusal to pay the depositary fees, the depositary may, under the terms of the deposit agreement, refuse the requested service until payment is received or may set off the amount of the depositary fees from any distribution to be made to the ADS holder. Certain of the depositary fees and charges (such as the ADS services fee) may become payable shortly after the closing of the ADS offering. Note that the fees and charges you may be required to pay may vary over time and may be changed by us and by the depositary. You will receive prior notice of such changes. The depositary may reimburse us for certain expenses incurred by us in respect of the ADR program, by making available a portion of the ADS fees charged in respect of the ADR program or otherwise, upon such terms and conditions as we and the depositary agree from time to time.

### **Amendments and Termination**

We may agree with the depositary to modify the deposit agreement at any time without your consent. We undertake to give holders 30 days' prior notice of any modifications that would materially prejudice any of their substantial rights under the deposit agreement. We will not consider to be materially prejudicial to your substantial rights any modifications or supplements that are reasonably necessary for the ADSs to be registered under the Securities Act or to be eligible for book-entry settlement, in each case without imposing or increasing the fees and charges you are required to pay. In addition, we may not be able to provide you with prior notice of any modifications or supplements that are required to accommodate compliance with applicable provisions of law.

You will be bound by the modifications to the deposit agreement if you continue to hold your ADSs after the modifications to the deposit agreement become effective. The deposit agreement cannot be amended to prevent you from withdrawing the ordinary shares represented by your ADSs (except as permitted by law).

We have the right to direct the depositary to terminate the deposit agreement. Similarly, the depositary may in certain circumstances on its own initiative terminate the deposit agreement. In either case, the depositary must give notice to the holders at least 30 days before termination. Until termination, your rights under the deposit agreement will be unaffected.

### **Termination**

After termination, the depositary will continue to collect distributions received (but will not distribute any such property until you request the cancellation of your ADSs) and may sell the securities held on deposit. After the sale, the depositary will hold the proceeds from such sale and any other funds then held for the holders of ADSs in a non-interest bearing account. At that point, the depositary will have no further obligations to holders other than to account for the funds then held for the holders of ADSs still outstanding (after deduction of applicable fees, taxes and expenses).

In connection with the termination of the deposit agreement, the depositary may, independently and without the need for any action by us, make available to holders a means to withdraw the ordinary shares and other deposited securities represented by their ADSs and to direct the deposit of such ordinary shares and other deposited securities into an unsponsored American depositary shares program established by the depositary, upon such terms and conditions as the depositary may deem reasonably appropriate, subject however, in each case, to satisfaction of the applicable registration requirements by the unsponsored American depositary shares program under the Securities Act, and to receipt by the depositary of payment of the applicable fees and charges of, and reimbursement of the applicable expenses incurred by, the depositary.

## **Books of Depositary**

The depositary will maintain ADS holder records at its depositary office. You may inspect such records at such office during regular business hours but solely for the purpose of communicating with other holders in the interest of business matters relating to the ADSs and the deposit agreement.

The depositary will maintain in New York facilities to record and process the issuance, cancellation, combination, split-up and transfer of ADSs. These facilities may be closed from time to time, to the extent not prohibited by law.

## **Transmission of Notices, Reports and Proxy Soliciting Material**

The depositary will make available for your inspection at its office all communications that it receives from us as a holder of deposited securities that we make generally available to holders of deposited securities. Subject to the terms of the deposit agreement, the depositary will send you copies of those communications or otherwise make those communications available to you if we ask it to.

## **Limitations on Obligations and Liabilities**

The deposit agreement limits our obligations and the depositary's obligations to you. Please note the following:

- We and the depositary are obligated only to take the actions specifically stated in the deposit agreement without negligence or bad faith.
- The depositary disclaims any liability for any failure to carry out voting instructions, for any manner in which a vote is cast or for the effect of any vote, provided it acts in good faith and in accordance with the terms of the deposit agreement.
- The depositary disclaims any liability for any failure to determine the lawfulness or practicality of any action, for the content of any document forwarded to you on our behalf or for the accuracy of any translation of such a document, for the investment risks associated with investing in ordinary shares, for the validity or worth of the ordinary shares, for any tax consequences that result from the ownership of ADSs, for the credit-worthiness of any third party, for allowing any rights to lapse under the terms of the deposit agreement, for the timeliness of any of our notices or for our failure to give notice.
- We and the depositary will not be obligated to perform any act that is inconsistent with the terms of the deposit agreement.
- We and the depositary disclaim any liability if we or the depositary are prevented or forbidden from or subject to any civil or criminal penalty or restraint on account of, or delayed in, doing or performing any act or thing required by the terms of the deposit agreement, by reason of any provision, present or future of any law or regulation, or by reason of present or future provision of any provision of our Articles of Association, or any provision of or governing the securities on deposit, or by reason of any act of God or war or other circumstances beyond our control.
- We and the depositary disclaim any liability by reason of any exercise of, or failure to exercise, any discretion provided for in the deposit agreement or in our Articles of Association or in any provisions of or governing the securities on deposit.
- We and the depositary further disclaim any liability for any action or inaction in reliance on the advice or information received from legal counsel, accountants, any person presenting Shares for deposit, any holder of ADSs or authorized representatives thereof, or any other person believed by either of us in good faith to be competent to give such advice or information.
- We and the depositary also disclaim liability for the inability by a holder to benefit from any distribution, offering, right or other benefit that is made available to holders of ordinary shares but is not, under the terms of the deposit agreement, made available to you.
- We and the depositary may rely without any liability upon any written notice, request or other document believed to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper parties.

[Table of Contents](#)

- We and the depositary also disclaim liability for any consequential or punitive damages for any breach of the terms of the deposit agreement.
- No disclaimer of any Securities Act liability is intended by any provision of the deposit agreement.

**Pre-Release Transactions**

Subject to the terms and conditions of the deposit agreement, the depositary may issue to broker/dealers ADSs before receiving a deposit of ordinary shares or release ordinary shares to broker/dealers before receiving ADSs for cancellation. These transactions are commonly referred to as "pre-release transactions," and are entered into between the depositary and the applicable broker/dealer. The deposit agreement limits the aggregate size of pre-release transactions (not to exceed 30% of the ordinary shares on deposit in the aggregate) and imposes a number of conditions on such transactions (e.g., the need to receive collateral, the type of collateral required, the representations required from brokers, etc.). The depositary may retain the compensation received from the pre-release transactions.

**Taxes**

You will be responsible for the taxes and other governmental charges payable on the ADSs and the securities represented by the ADSs. We, the depositary and the custodian may deduct from any distribution the taxes and governmental charges payable by holders and may sell any and all property on deposit to pay the taxes and governmental charges payable by holders. You will be liable for any deficiency if the sale proceeds do not cover the taxes that are due.

The depositary may refuse to issue ADSs, to deliver, transfer, split and combine ADRs or to release securities on deposit until all taxes and charges are paid by the applicable holder. The depositary and the custodian may take reasonable administrative actions to obtain tax refunds and reduced tax withholding for any distributions on your behalf. However, you may be required to provide to the depositary and to the custodian proof of taxpayer status and residence and such other information as the depositary and the custodian may require to fulfill legal obligations. You are required to indemnify us, the depositary and the custodian for any claims with respect to taxes based on any tax benefit obtained for you.

**Foreign Currency Conversion**

The depositary will arrange for the conversion of all foreign currency received into U.S. dollars if such conversion is practical, and it will distribute the U.S. dollars in accordance with the terms of the deposit agreement. You may have to pay fees and expenses incurred in converting foreign currency, such as fees and expenses incurred in complying with currency exchange controls and other governmental requirements.

If the conversion of foreign currency is not practical or lawful, or if any required approvals are denied or not obtainable at a reasonable cost or within a reasonable period, the depositary may take the following actions in its discretion:

- Convert the foreign currency to the extent practical and lawful and distribute the U.S. dollars to the holders for whom the conversion and distribution is lawful and practical.
- Distribute the foreign currency to holders for whom the distribution is lawful and practical.
- Hold the foreign currency (without liability for interest) for the applicable holders.

**Governing Law/Waiver of Jury Trial**

The deposit agreement and the ADRs will be interpreted in accordance with the laws of the State of New York. The rights of holders of ordinary shares (including ordinary shares represented by ADSs) is governed by the laws of England and Wales.

AS A PARTY TO THE DEPOSIT AGREEMENT, YOU WAIVE YOUR RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF THE DEPOSIT AGREEMENT OR THE ADRs AGAINST US AND/OR THE DEPOSITARY.

## ORDINARY SHARES AND ADSs ELIGIBLE FOR FUTURE SALE

Prior to the U.S. offering, there has been no market for our ADSs. Upon completion of the U.S. offering, we will have ADSs outstanding, representing of our ordinary shares. Some of our ADSs and ordinary shares are subject to contractual and legal restrictions on resale as described below. There may be sales of substantial amounts of our ADSs or ordinary shares in the public market after such restrictions lapse, which could adversely affect prevailing market prices of our ADSs.

We expect ADSs and ordinary shares, or ADSs and ordinary shares if the underwriters exercise in full their options to purchase an additional ADSs and ordinary shares, sold in the global offering will be freely transferable without restriction, except for any shares purchased by one of our existing "affiliates," as that term is defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act. We expect the remaining ADSs and ordinary shares will be subject to the contractual 180-day lock-up period described below.

### Rule 144

In general, a person who has beneficially owned our ordinary shares or ADSs for at least six months would be entitled to sell such securities, provided that (i) such person is not deemed to have been one of our affiliates at the time of, or at any time during the 90 days preceding, a sale and (ii) we are subject to the Exchange Act periodic reporting requirements for at least 90 days before the sale. Persons who have beneficially owned our ordinary shares or ADSs for at least six months but who are our affiliates at the time of, or any time during the 90 days preceding, a sale, would be subject to additional restrictions, by which such person would be entitled to sell within any three month period only a number of securities that does not exceed the greater of either of the following:

- 1% of the number of our ordinary shares then outstanding, which will equal approximately ordinary shares immediately after the global offering and the shareholder private placement, assuming no exercise of the underwriters' option to purchase additional ordinary shares; or
- the average weekly trading volume of our ordinary shares in the form of ADSs on NASDAQ during the four calendar weeks preceding the filing of a notice on Form 144 with respect to the sale;

provided, in each case, that we are subject to the Exchange Act periodic reporting requirements for at least 90 days before the sale. Such sales both by affiliates and by non-affiliates must also comply with the manner of sale, current public information and notice provisions of Rule 144 to the extent applicable.

### Rule 701

In general, under Rule 701, any of our employees, board members, executive officers, consultants or advisors who purchases ordinary shares from us in connection with a compensatory share or option plan or other written agreement before the effective date of the global offering is entitled to resell such shares 90 days after the effective date of the global offering in reliance on Rule 144, without having to comply with the holding period requirements or other restrictions contained in Rule 701.

The SEC has indicated that Rule 701 will apply to typical share options granted by an issuer before it becomes subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act, along with the shares acquired upon exercise of such options, including exercises after the date of this prospectus. Securities issued in reliance on Rule 701 are restricted securities and, subject to the lock-up restrictions described below, beginning 90 days after the date of this prospectus, may be sold by persons other than "affiliates," as defined in Rule 144, subject only to the manner of sale provisions of Rule 144 and by "affiliates" under Rule 144 without compliance with its one-year minimum holding period requirement.

## **Regulation S**

Regulation S provides generally that sales made in offshore transactions are not subject to the registration or prospectus-delivery requirements of the Securities Act.

### **Registration Rights**

We have entered into a registration rights agreement in which we agreed under certain circumstances to file a registration statement to register the resale of the shares held by certain of our existing shareholders, as well as to cooperate in certain public offerings of such shares. Registration of these shares under the Securities Act would result in these shares becoming freely tradable without restriction under the Securities Act immediately upon the effectiveness of the registration, except for shares purchased by affiliates. See "Related Party Transactions — Registration Rights Agreement."

### **Lock-up Agreements**

All of our board members and executive officers and certain other holders of our ordinary shares and other securities have agreed, subject to limited exceptions, not to offer, pledge, announce the intention to sell, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase or otherwise dispose of, directly or indirectly, or enter into any swap or other agreement that transfers, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of our ADSs or ordinary shares or such other securities for a period of 180 days after the date of this prospectus, without the prior written consent of Jefferies LLC and Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated. See "Underwriting."

## MATERIAL TAX CONSIDERATIONS

### Material U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations for U.S. Holders

The following is a description of the material U.S. federal income tax consequences to the U.S. Holders described below of owning and disposing of our ordinary shares or ADSs. It is not a comprehensive description of all tax considerations that may be relevant to a particular person's decision to acquire securities. This discussion applies only to a U.S. Holder that holds our ordinary shares or ADSs as a capital asset for tax purposes (generally, property held for investment). In addition, it does not describe all of the tax consequences that may be relevant in light of a U.S. Holder's particular circumstances, including state and local tax consequences, estate tax consequences, alternative minimum tax consequences, the potential application of the Medicare contribution tax, and tax consequences applicable to U.S. Holders subject to special rules, such as:

- banks, insurance companies, and certain other financial institutions;
- U.S. expatriates and certain former citizens or long-term residents of the United States;
- dealers or traders in securities who use a mark-to-market method of tax accounting;
- persons holding ordinary shares or ADSs as part of a hedging transaction, "straddle," wash sale, conversion transaction or integrated transaction or persons entering into a constructive sale with respect to ordinary shares or ADSs;
- persons whose "functional currency" for U.S. federal income tax purposes is not the U.S. dollar;
- brokers, dealers or traders in securities, commodities or currencies;
- tax-exempt entities or government organizations;
- S corporations, partnerships, or other entities or arrangements classified as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes;
- regulated investment companies or real estate investment trusts;
- persons who acquired our ordinary shares or ADSs pursuant to the exercise of any employee stock option or otherwise as compensation;
- persons that own or are deemed to own ten percent or more of our voting shares; and
- persons holding our ordinary shares or ADSs in connection with a trade or business, permanent establishment, or fixed base outside the United States.

If an entity that is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds ordinary shares or ADSs, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner will generally depend on the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. Partnerships holding ordinary shares or ADSs and partners in such partnerships are encouraged to consult their tax advisers as to the particular U.S. federal income tax consequences of holding and disposing of ordinary shares or ADSs.

The discussion is based on the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code, administrative pronouncements, judicial decisions, final, temporary and proposed Treasury Regulations, and the income tax treaty between the United Kingdom and the United States (the "Treaty") all as of the date hereof, changes to any of which may affect the tax consequences described herein — possibly with retroactive effect.

A "U.S. Holder" is a holder who, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, is a beneficial owner of ordinary shares or ADSs who is eligible for the benefits of the Treaty and is:

- (1) a citizen or individual resident of the United States;
- (2) a corporation, or other entity taxable as a corporation, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state therein or the District of Columbia; or
- (3) an estate or trust the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source.

[Table of Contents](#)

U.S. Holders are encouraged to consult their tax advisers concerning the U.S. federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of owning and disposing of ordinary shares or ADSs in their particular circumstances.

The discussion below assumes that the representations contained in the deposit agreement are true and that the obligations in the deposit agreement and any related agreement will be complied with in accordance with their terms. Generally, a holder of an ADS should be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as holding the ordinary shares represented by the ADS. Accordingly, no gain or loss will be recognized upon an exchange of ADSs for ordinary shares. The U.S. Treasury has expressed concerns that intermediaries in the chain of ownership between the holder of an ADS and the issuer of the security underlying the ADS may be taking actions that are inconsistent with the beneficial ownership of the underlying security. Accordingly the creditability of foreign taxes, if any, as described below, could be affected by actions taken by intermediaries in the chain of ownership between the holders of ADSs and our Company if as a result of such actions the holders of ADSs are not properly treated as beneficial owners of the underlying ordinary shares.

***Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules***

Because we do not expect to earn revenue from our business operations during the current taxable year, and because our sole source of income currently is interest on bank accounts held by us, we believe we will likely be a PFIC for the current taxable year. A non-U.S. corporation will be classified as a PFIC for any taxable year in which, after applying certain look-through rules, either:

- at least 75% of its gross income is passive income (such as interest income); or
- at least 50% of its gross assets (determined on the basis of a quarterly average) is attributable to assets that produce passive income or are held for the production of passive income.

We will be treated as owning our proportionate share of the assets and earning our proportionate share of the income of any other corporation, the equity of which we own, directly or indirectly, 25% or more (by value).

A separate determination must be made after the close of each taxable year as to whether we are a PFIC for that year. As a result, our PFIC status may change. While it is possible we may not meet the PFIC test described above once we start generating substantial revenue from our business operations, the analysis is factual and it is possible we may continue to be a PFIC for future years. In particular, the total value of our assets for purposes of the asset test generally will be calculated using the market price of the ordinary shares or ADSs, which may fluctuate considerably. Fluctuations in the market price of the ordinary shares or ADSs may result in our being a PFIC for any taxable year.

If we are classified as a PFIC in any year with respect to which a U.S. Holder owns the ordinary shares or ADSs, we will continue to be treated as a PFIC with respect to such U.S. Holder in all succeeding years during which the U.S. Holder owns the ordinary shares or ADSs, regardless of whether we continue to meet the tests described above unless (1) we cease to be a PFIC and the U.S. Holder has made a "deemed sale" election under the PFIC rules, or (2) the U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election (defined below) with respect to taxable years in which we are a PFIC. If such election is made, you will be deemed to have sold the ordinary shares or ADSs you hold at their fair market value and any gain from such deemed sale would be subject to the rules described below. After the deemed sale election, so long as we do not become a PFIC in a subsequent taxable year, your ordinary shares or ADSs with respect to which such election was made will not be treated as shares in a PFIC and you will not be subject to the rules described below with respect to any "excess distribution" you receive from us or any gain from an actual sale or other disposition of the ordinary shares or ADSs. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors as to the possibility and consequences of making a deemed sale election if we cease to be a PFIC and such election becomes available.

## [Table of Contents](#)

For each taxable year we are treated as a PFIC with respect to you, you will be subject to special tax rules with respect to any "excess distribution" you receive and any gain you recognize from a sale or other disposition (including a pledge) of ordinary shares or ADSs, unless you make a QEF Election or a mark-to-market election as discussed below. Distributions you receive in a taxable year that are greater than 125% of the average annual distributions you received during the shorter of the three preceding taxable years or your holding period for the ordinary shares or ADSs will be treated as an excess distribution. Under these special tax rules:

- the excess distribution or gain will be allocated ratably over your holding period for the ordinary shares or ADSs;
- the amount allocated to the current taxable year, and any taxable year prior to the first taxable year in which we became a PFIC, will be treated as ordinary income; and
- the amount allocated to each other year will be subject to the highest tax rate in effect for that year and the interest charge generally applicable to underpayments of tax will be imposed on the resulting tax attributable to each such year.

The tax liability for amounts allocated to years prior to the year of disposition or "excess distribution" cannot be offset by any net operating losses for such years, and gains (but not losses) realized on the sale of the ordinary shares or ADSs cannot be treated as capital, even if you hold the ordinary shares or ADSs as capital assets.

If we are a PFIC, a U.S. Holder will generally be subject to similar rules with respect to distributions we receive from, and our dispositions of the stock of, any of our direct or indirect subsidiaries that also are PFICs, as if such distributions were indirectly received by, and/or dispositions were indirectly carried out by, such U.S. Holder. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the application of the PFIC rules to our subsidiaries.

U.S. Holders can avoid the interest charge on excess distributions or gain relating to the ordinary shares or ADSs by making a mark-to-market election with respect to the ordinary shares or ADSs, provided that the ordinary shares or ADSs are "marketable." Ordinary shares or ADSs will be marketable if they are "regularly traded" on certain U.S. stock exchanges or on a foreign stock exchange that meets certain conditions. For these purposes, the ordinary shares or ADSs will be considered regularly traded during any calendar year during which they are traded, other than in de minimis quantities, on at least 15 days during each calendar quarter. Any trades that have as their principal purpose meeting this requirement will be disregarded. Our ADSs will be listed on the NASDAQ, which is a qualified exchange for these purposes. Consequently, if our ADSs remain listed on the NASDAQ and are regularly traded, and you are a holder of ADSs, we expect the mark-to-market election would be available to you if we are a PFIC (which we believe likely for the current year). Each U.S. Holder should consult its tax advisor as to the whether a mark-to-market election is available or advisable with respect to the ordinary shares or ADSs.

A U.S. Holder that makes a mark-to-market election must include in ordinary income for each year an amount equal to the excess, if any, of the fair market value of the ordinary shares or ADSs at the close of the taxable year over the U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the ordinary shares or ADSs. An electing holder may also claim an ordinary loss deduction for the excess, if any, of the U.S. Holder's adjusted basis in the ordinary shares or ADSs over the fair market value of the ordinary shares or ADSs at the close of the taxable year, but this deduction is allowable only to the extent of any net mark-to-market gains for prior years. Gains from an actual sale or other disposition of the ordinary shares or ADSs will be treated as ordinary income, and any losses incurred on a sale or other disposition of the shares will be treated as an ordinary loss to the extent of any net mark-to-market gains for prior years. Once made, the election cannot be revoked without the consent of the IRS unless the ordinary shares or ADSs cease to be marketable.

However, a mark-to-market election generally cannot be made for equity interests in any lower-tier PFICs that we own, unless shares of such lower-tier PFIC are themselves "marketable." We believe that

## [Table of Contents](#)

Rhinopharma Limited will likely be treated as a lower-tier PFIC. As a result, even if a U.S. Holder validly makes a mark-to-market election with respect to our ordinary shares or ADSs, the U.S. Holder may continue to be subject to the PFIC rules (described above) with respect to its indirect interest in any of our investments that are treated as an equity interest in a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors as to the availability and desirability of a mark-to-market election, as well as the impact of such election on interests in any lower-tier PFICs.

Alternatively, a U.S. Holder can make an election, if we provide the necessary information, to treat us and each lower-tier PFIC as a qualified electing fund (a "QEF Election") in the first taxable year we (and our relevant subsidiaries) are treated as a PFIC with respect to the holder. If such election remains in place while we and any lower-tier PFIC subsidiaries are PFICs, we and our subsidiaries will not be treated as PFICs with respect to such U.S. Holder when we cease to be a PFIC. A U.S. Holder must make the QEF Election for each PFIC by attaching a separate properly completed IRS Form 8621 for each PFIC to the holder's timely filed U.S. federal income tax return. We will provide the information necessary for a U.S. Holder to make a QEF Election with respect to us and will cause each lower-tier PFIC which we control to provide such information with respect to such lower-tier PFIC.

If a U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election with respect to a PFIC, the holder will be currently taxable on its pro rata share of the PFIC's ordinary earnings and net capital gain (at ordinary income and capital gain rates, respectively) for each taxable year that the entity is classified as a PFIC. If a U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election with respect to us, any distributions paid by us out of our earnings and profits that were previously included in the holder's income under the QEF Election would not be taxable to the holder. A U.S. Holder will increase its tax basis in its ordinary shares or ADSs by an amount equal to any income included under the QEF Election and will decrease its tax basis by any amount distributed on the ordinary shares or ADSs that is not included in the holder's income. In addition, a U.S. Holder will recognize capital gain or loss on the disposition of ordinary shares or ADSs in an amount equal to the difference between the amount realized and the holder's adjusted tax basis in the ordinary shares or ADSs. U.S. Holders should note that if they make QEF Elections with respect to us and lower-tier PFICs, they may be required to pay U.S. federal income tax with respect to their ordinary shares or ADSs for any taxable year significantly in excess of any cash distributions received on the ordinary shares or ADSs for such taxable year. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding making QEF Elections in their particular circumstances.

Unless otherwise provided by the U.S. Treasury, each U.S. shareholder of a PFIC is required to file an annual report containing such information as the U.S. Treasury may require. A U.S. Holder's failure to file the annual report will cause the statute of limitations for such U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax return to remain open with regard to the items required to be included in such report until three years after the U.S. Holder files the annual report, and, unless such failure is due to reasonable cause and not willful neglect, the statute of limitations for the U.S. Holder's entire U.S. federal income tax return will remain open during such period. U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisors regarding the requirements of filing such information returns under these rules.

### **Taxation of Distributions**

Subject to the discussion above under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," distributions paid on ordinary shares or ADSs, other than certain *pro rata* distributions of ordinary shares or ADSs, will generally be treated as dividends to the extent paid out of our current or accumulated earnings and profits (as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles). Because we do not calculate our earnings and profits under U.S. federal income tax principles, we expect that distributions generally will be reported to U.S. Holders as dividends. Subject to applicable limitations, dividends paid to certain non-corporate U.S. Holders may be taxable at preferential rates applicable to "qualified dividend income." However, the qualified dividend income treatment may not apply if we are treated as a PFIC with respect to the U.S. Holder. The amount of a dividend will include any amounts withheld by us in respect of United Kingdom income taxes. The amount of the dividend will be treated as foreign-source dividend income to U.S. Holders and will not be eligible for the dividends-received deduction generally available to U.S. corporations under

## [Table of Contents](#)

the Code. Dividends will generally be included in a U.S. Holder's income on the date of the U.S. Holder's receipt of the dividend. The amount of any dividend income paid in foreign currency will be the U.S. dollar amount calculated by reference to the exchange rate in effect on the date of actual or constructive receipt, regardless of whether the payment is in fact converted into U.S. dollars. If the dividend is converted into U.S. dollars on the date of receipt, a U.S. Holder should not be required to recognize foreign currency gain or loss in respect of the dividend income. A U.S. Holder may have foreign currency gain or loss if the dividend is converted into U.S. dollars after the date of receipt. Such gain or loss would generally be treated as U.S.-source ordinary income or loss. The amount of any distribution of property other than cash (and other than certain pro rata distributions of ordinary shares or ADSs or rights to acquire ordinary shares or ADSs) will be the fair market value of such property on the date of distribution.

For foreign tax credit purposes, our dividends will generally be treated as passive category income. Subject to applicable limitations, some of which vary depending upon the U.S. Holder's particular circumstances, any United Kingdom income taxes withheld from dividends on ordinary shares or ADSs at a rate not exceeding the rate provided by the Treaty will be creditable against the U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability. The rules governing foreign tax credits are complex and U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisers regarding the creditability of foreign taxes in their particular circumstances. In lieu of claiming a foreign tax credit, U.S. Holders may, at their election, deduct foreign taxes, including any United Kingdom income tax, in computing their taxable income, subject to generally applicable limitations under U.S. law. An election to deduct foreign taxes instead of claiming foreign tax credits applies to all foreign taxes paid or accrued in the taxable year.

### ***Sale or Other Taxable Disposition of Ordinary Shares and ADSs***

Subject to the discussion above under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," gain or loss realized on the sale or other taxable disposition of ordinary shares or ADSs will be capital gain or loss, and will be long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. Holder held the ordinary shares or ADSs for more than one year. The amount of the gain or loss will equal the difference between the U.S. Holder's tax basis in the ordinary shares or ADSs disposed of and the amount realized on the disposition, in each case as determined in U.S. dollars. This gain or loss will generally be U.S.-source gain or loss for foreign tax credit purposes. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

If the consideration received by a U.S. Holder is not paid in U.S. dollars, the amount realized will be the U.S. dollar value of the payment received determined by reference to the spot rate of exchange on the date of the sale or other disposition. However, if the ordinary shares or ADSs are treated as traded on an "established securities market" and you are either a cash basis taxpayer or an accrual basis taxpayer that has made a special election (which must be applied consistently from year to year and cannot be changed without the consent of the IRS), you will determine the U.S. dollar value of the amount realized in a non-U.S. dollar currency by translating the amount received at the spot rate of exchange on the settlement date of the sale. If you are an accrual basis taxpayer that is not eligible to or does not elect to determine the amount realized using the spot rate on the settlement date, you will recognize foreign currency gain or loss to the extent of any difference between the U.S. dollar amount realized on the date of sale or disposition and the U.S. dollar value of the currency received at the spot rate on the settlement date.

**WE STRONGLY URGE YOU TO CONSULT YOUR TAX ADVISOR REGARDING THE IMPACT OF OUR PFIC STATUS ON YOUR INVESTMENT IN THE ORDINARY SHARES OR ADSs AS WELL AS THE APPLICATION OF THE PFIC RULES TO YOUR INVESTMENT IN THE ORDINARY SHARES OR ADSs.**

### ***Information Reporting and Backup Withholding***

Payments of dividends and sales proceeds that are made within the United States or through certain U.S.-related financial intermediaries generally are subject to information reporting, and may be subject to backup withholding, unless (i) the U.S. Holder is a corporation or other exempt recipient or (ii) in the case of backup withholding, the U.S. Holder provides a correct taxpayer identification number and certifies that it is not subject to backup withholding.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Backup withholding is not an additional tax. The amount of any backup withholding from a payment to a U.S. Holder will be allowed as a credit against the holder's U.S. federal income tax liability and may entitle it to a refund, provided that the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

### **Information with Respect to Foreign Financial Assets**

Certain U.S. Holders who are individuals (and, under proposed regulations, certain entities) may be required to report information relating to the ordinary shares or ADSs, subject to certain exceptions (including an exception for ordinary shares or ADSs held in accounts maintained by certain U.S. financial institutions). U.S. Holders should consult their tax advisers regarding their reporting obligations with respect to their ownership and disposition of the ordinary shares or ADSs.

### **United Kingdom Taxation**

The following paragraphs are intended as a general guide to current U.K. tax law and HM Revenue & Customs published practice applying as at the date of this prospectus (both of which are subject to change at any time, possibly with retrospective effect) relating to the holding of ordinary shares or ADSs. They do not constitute legal or tax advice and do not purport to be a complete analysis of all U.K. tax considerations relating to the holding of ordinary shares or ADSs. They relate only to persons who are absolute beneficial owners of ordinary shares or ADSs (and where the ordinary shares or ADSs are not held through an Individual Savings Account or a Self-Invested Personal Pension) and who are resident for tax purposes in (and only in) the U.K. ("U.K. Holders") (except to the extent that the position of non-U.K. resident persons is expressly referred to).

These paragraphs may not relate to certain classes of U.K. Holders, such as (but not limited to):

- persons who are connected with the Company;
- insurance companies;
- charities;
- collective investment schemes;
- pension schemes;
- brokers or dealers in securities or persons who hold ordinary shares or ADSs otherwise than as an investment;
- persons who have (or are deemed to have) acquired their ordinary shares or ADSs by virtue of an office or employment or who are or have been officers or employees of the Company or any of its affiliates; and
- individuals who are subject to U.K. taxation on a remittance basis.

These paragraphs do not describe all of the circumstances in which holders of ordinary shares or ADSs may benefit from an exemption or relief from U.K. taxation. It is recommended that all holders of Ordinary Shares or ADSs obtain their own tax advice. In particular, non-U.K. resident or domiciled persons are advised to consider the potential impact of any relevant double tax agreements.

These paragraphs assume that a holder of ADSs is the beneficial owner of the underlying ordinary shares and any dividends paid in respect of the underlying ordinary shares (where the dividends are regarded for U.K. purposes as that person's own income) for U.K. direct tax purposes.

### **Dividends**

#### *Withholding Tax*

Dividends paid by the Company will not be subject to any withholding or deduction for or on account of U.K. tax, irrespective of the residence or particular circumstances of the holders of ordinary shares or ADSs.

#### *Income Tax*

An individual U.K. Holder may, depending on his or her particular circumstances, be subject to U.K. tax on dividends received from the Company. An individual holder of ordinary shares or ADSs who is not resident

## [Table of Contents](#)

for tax purposes in the U.K. should not be chargeable to U.K. income tax on dividends received from the Company unless he or she carries on (whether solely or in partnership) any trade, profession or vocation in the U.K. through a branch or agency to which the ordinary shares or ADSs are attributable (subject to certain exceptions for trading through independent agents, such as some brokers and investment managers).

All individual U.K. Holders will receive a tax-free allowance of £5,000 per annum (announced to reduce to £2,000 from April 2018). Dividend income in excess of this tax-free allowance will be charged at 7.5% for basic rate taxpayers, 32.5% for higher rate taxpayers, and 38.1% for additional rate taxpayers. Dividend income is treated as the top slice of the total income chargeable to U.K. income tax.

### *Corporation Tax*

Corporate U.K. Holders should not be subject to U.K. corporation tax on any dividend received from the Company so long as the dividends qualify for exemption, which should be the case, although certain conditions are met (including anti-avoidance conditions).

### **Chargeable Gains**

A disposal of ordinary shares or ADSs by a U.K. Holder may, depending on the U.K. Holder's circumstances and subject to any available exemptions or reliefs, give rise to a chargeable gain or an allowable loss for the purposes of U.K. capital gains tax and corporation tax on chargeable gains.

If an individual U.K. Holder who is subject to U.K. income tax at either the higher or the additional rate becomes liable to U.K. capital gains tax on the disposal of ordinary shares or ADSs, the current applicable rate would be 20%. For an individual U.K. Holder who is subject to U.K. income tax at the basic rate and liable to U.K. capital gains tax on such disposal, the current applicable rate would be 10%, save to the extent that any capital gains exceed the unused basic rate tax band. In that case, the current rate applicable to the excess would be 20%.

If a corporate U.K. Holder becomes liable to U.K. corporation tax on the disposal of ordinary shares or ADSs, the main rate of U.K. corporation tax (20% in 2016/17 and 19% in 2017/18) would apply. An indexation allowance may be available to such a holder to give an additional deduction based on the indexation of its base cost in the shares by reference to U.K. retail price inflation over its holding period. An indexation allowance can only reduce a gain on a future disposal, and cannot create a loss.

A holder of ordinary shares or ADSs which is not resident for tax purposes in the U.K. should not normally be liable to U.K. capital gains tax or corporation tax on chargeable gains on a disposal of ordinary shares or ADSs. However, an individual holder of ordinary shares or ADSs who has ceased to be resident for tax purposes in the U.K. for a period of less than five years and who disposes of ordinary shares or ADSs during that period may be liable on his or her return to the U.K. to U.K. tax on any capital gain realized (subject to any available exemption or relief).

Any gains or losses in respect of currency fluctuations relating to the ordinary shares or ADSs would be brought into account on the disposal.

### **Stamp Duty and Stamp Duty Reserve Tax ("SDRT")**

*The discussion below relates to holders of ordinary shares or ADSs wherever resident.*

#### *Transfer of Ordinary Shares*

Neither U.K. stamp duty nor SDRT should arise on transfers of ordinary shares on AIM (including instruments transferring ordinary shares or agreement to transfer ordinary shares) based on the following assumptions:

- that the ordinary shares are admitted to trading on AIM but are not listed on any market (with the term "listed" being construed in accordance with section 99A of the U.K. Finance Act 1986); and
- that AIM continues to be accepted as a "recognised growth market" (as construed in accordance with section 99A of the U.K. Finance Act 1986).

[Table of Contents](#)

In the event that either of the above assumptions does not apply, transfers of, or agreements to transfer, ordinary shares may give rise to U.K. stamp duty or SDRT in certain circumstances.

*Transfers of ADSs*

No U.K. stamp duty will in practice be payable on a written instrument transferring an ADS or on a written agreement to transfer an ADS, provided that the instrument of transfer or the agreement to transfer is executed and remains at all times outside the U.K. Where these conditions are not met, the transfer of, or agreement to transfer, an ADS could, depending on the circumstances, attract a charge to U.K. stamp duty at the rate of 0.5% of the value of the consideration.

No SDRT will be payable in respect of agreement to transfer an ADS.

## UNDERWRITING

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the underwriting agreement, dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, among us and Jefferies LLC and Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated, as the representatives of the underwriters named below and the joint book-running managers of the global offering, we have agreed to sell to the underwriters, and each of the underwriters has agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase from us, the respective number of ADSs and ordinary shares shown opposite its name below:

<u>UNDERWRITER</u>	<u>NUMBER OF ADSs</u>	<u>NUMBER OF ORDINARY SHARES</u>
Jefferies LLC		
Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated		
Wedbush Securities Inc.		
SunTrust Robinson Humphrey, Inc.		
Total		

The underwriting agreement provides that the obligations of the several underwriters are subject to certain conditions precedent such as the receipt by the underwriters of officers' certificates and legal opinions and approval of certain legal matters by their counsel. The underwriting agreement provides that the underwriters will purchase all of the ADSs and ordinary shares offered by this prospectus if any of them are purchased. If an underwriter defaults, the underwriting agreement provides that the purchase commitments of the non-defaulting underwriters may be increased or the underwriting agreement may be terminated. We have agreed to indemnify the underwriters and certain of their controlling persons against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, and to contribute to payments that the underwriters may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

The underwriters have advised us that, following the completion of the U.S. offering and the European private placement, they currently intend to make a market in our ADSs and ordinary shares as permitted by applicable laws and regulations. However, the underwriters are not obligated to do so, and the underwriters may discontinue any market-making activities at any time without notice in their sole discretion. Accordingly, no assurance can be given as to the liquidity of the trading markets for our ADSs or ordinary shares that you will be able to sell any of the ADSs or ordinary shares held by you at a particular time or that the prices that you receive when you sell will be favorable.

The underwriters are offering our ADSs and ordinary shares subject to their acceptance of our ADSs and ordinary shares from us and subject to prior sale. The underwriters reserve the right to withdraw, cancel or modify offers to the public and to reject orders in whole or in part. In addition, the underwriters have advised us that they do not intend to confirm sales to any account over which they exercise discretionary authority.

### Commission and Expenses

The underwriters have advised us that they propose to offer our ADSs and ordinary shares to the public at the initial public offering price per ADS and offering price per ordinary share set forth on the cover page of this prospectus and to certain dealers, which may include the underwriters, at that price less a concession not in excess of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ADS and £ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share. The underwriters may allow, and certain dealers may reallow, a discount from the concession not in excess of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per ADS and £ \_\_\_\_\_ per ordinary share to certain brokers and dealers. After the global offering, the offering price, concession and reallowance to dealers may be reduced by the representatives. No such reduction will change the amount of proceeds to be received by us as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table shows the offering price, the underwriting discounts and commissions that we are to pay the underwriters and the proceeds, before expenses, to us in connection with the global offering. Such amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the underwriters' options to purchase additional ADSs and ordinary shares.

---

	PER ADS	PER ORDINARY SHARE	TOTAL	
			No exercise	Full exercise
Offering price	\$	£	\$	\$
Underwriting discounts and commissions paid by us	\$	£	\$	\$
Proceeds to us, before expenses	\$	£	\$	\$

---

We estimate expenses payable by us in connection with the global offering, other than the underwriting discounts and commissions referred to above, will be approximately \$ . We have also agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain expenses, including up to an aggregate of \$ in connection with the clearance of the global offering with the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, or FINRA, as set forth in the underwriting agreement.

Sales of our ordinary shares made outside of the United States may be made by affiliates of the underwriters.

Each of our chairman of the board of directors and an existing shareholder have indicated an interest in purchasing up to approximately £ of our ordinary shares, in a private placement separate from the global offering, contingent on and concurrent with the completion of the global offering at a price per share equal to the offering price per ordinary share in the European private placement. However, indications of interest are not binding agreements or commitments to purchase, and we could determine to sell more, less or no shares to these shareholders and these shareholders could determine to purchase more, less or no shares in the proposed shareholder private placement. The underwriters will serve as placement agents for such shareholder private placement and receive a placement agent fee equal to a percentage of the total purchase price of the private placement shares, which percentage will be equal to the percentage discount the underwriters will receive on shares sold in this global offering. The closing of this global offering is not conditioned upon the closing of such shareholder private placement.

### **Determination of Offering Price**

Prior to the U.S. offering, there has not been a public market for our ADSs. Consequently, the initial public offering price for our ADSs will be determined by negotiations between us and the representatives. Among the factors to be considered in these negotiations will be prevailing market conditions, the trading price of our ordinary shares on AIM, our financial information, market valuations of other companies that we and the underwriters believe to be comparable to us, estimates of our business potential, the present state of our development and other factors deemed relevant.

We offer no assurances that the initial public offering price will correspond to the price at which our ADSs will trade in the public market subsequent to the global offering or that an active trading market for our ADSs will develop and continue after the U.S. offering.

### **Listing**

Our ordinary shares trade on AIM, a market of the London Stock Exchange, under the symbol "VRP." We have applied to have our ADSs approved for listing on The NASDAQ Global Market under the trading symbol "VRNA."

## Stamp Taxes

If you purchase ADSs or ordinary shares offered in this prospectus, you may be required to pay stamp taxes and other charges under the laws and practices of the country of purchase, in addition to the offering price listed on the cover page of this prospectus.

## Option to Purchase Additional ADSs and Ordinary Shares

We have granted to the underwriters options, exercisable for 30 days from the date of this prospectus, to purchase, from time to time, in whole or in part, up to an aggregate of \_\_\_\_\_ additional ADSs and up to an aggregate of \_\_\_\_\_ additional ordinary shares from us at the respective offering prices set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, less underwriting discounts and commissions. If the underwriters exercise their options, each underwriter will be obligated, subject to specified conditions, to purchase a number of additional ADSs and ordinary shares proportionate to that underwriter's initial purchase commitment as indicated in the table above. These options may be exercised only if the underwriters sell more ADSs and ordinary shares than the total number set forth on the cover page of this prospectus.

## No Sales of Similar Securities

We, our board members and executive officers and certain other holders of our ordinary shares and other securities have agreed, subject to specified exceptions, not to directly or indirectly:

- sell, offer, contract or grant any option to sell (including any short sale), pledge, transfer, establish an open "put equivalent position" within the meaning of Rule 16a-1(h) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended; or
- otherwise dispose of any ordinary shares or ADSs, options or warrants to acquire ordinary shares or ADSs, or securities exchangeable or exercisable for or convertible into ordinary shares or ADSs currently or hereafter owned either of record or beneficially; or
- publicly announce an intention to do any of the foregoing for a period of 180 days after the date of this prospectus without the prior written consent of the representatives.

This restriction terminates after the close of trading of our ADSs and ordinary shares on AIM and including the 180th day after the date of this prospectus.

In addition, we have instructed Citibank, N.A., as depositary, not to accept for deposit of any ordinary shares or issue any ADSs for 180 days after the date of this prospectus (other than in connection with the global offering).

The representatives may, in their sole discretion and at any time or from time to time before the termination of the 180-day period release all or any portion of the securities subject to lock-up agreements. There are no existing agreements between the underwriters and any of our shareholders who will execute a lock-up agreement, providing consent to the sale of ADSs or ordinary shares prior to the expiration of the lock-up period.

## Stabilization

The underwriters have advised us that they, pursuant to Regulation M under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, certain persons participating in the global offering may engage in short sale transactions, stabilizing transactions, syndicate covering transactions or the imposition of penalty bids in connection with the global offering. These activities may have the effect of stabilizing or maintaining the market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market. Establishing short sales positions may involve either "covered" short sales or "naked" short sales.

"Covered" short sales are sales made in an amount not greater than the underwriters' option to purchase additional ADSs and ordinary shares in the global offering. The underwriters may close out any covered

## [Table of Contents](#)

short position by either exercising their option to purchase additional ADSs and ordinary shares or purchasing our ADSs and ordinary shares in the open market. In determining the source of ADSs and ordinary shares to close out the covered short position, the underwriters will consider, among other things, the price of ADSs and ordinary shares available for purchase in the open market as compared to the price at which they may purchase ADSs and ordinary shares through the option to purchase additional ADSs and ordinary shares.

Naked short sales are sales in excess of the option to purchase additional ADSs and ordinary shares. The underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing ADSs and ordinary shares in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the global offering.

A stabilizing bid is a bid for the purchase of ADSs and ordinary shares on behalf of the underwriters for the purpose of fixing or maintaining the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares. A syndicate covering transaction is the bid for or the purchase of ADSs and ordinary shares on behalf of the underwriters to reduce a short position incurred by the underwriters in connection with the global offering. Similar to other purchase transactions, the underwriter's purchases to cover the syndicate short sales may have the effect of raising or maintaining the market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares or preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of our ADSs and ordinary shares. As a result, the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares may be higher than the price that might otherwise exist in the open market. A penalty bid is an arrangement permitting the underwriters to reclaim the selling concession otherwise accruing to a syndicate member in connection with the global offering if our ADSs and ordinary shares originally sold by such syndicate member are purchased in a syndicate covering transaction and therefore have not been effectively placed by such syndicate member.

Neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the direction or magnitude of any effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of our ADSs and ordinary shares. The underwriters are not obligated to engage in these activities and, if commenced, any of the activities may be discontinued at any time.

The underwriters may also engage in passive market making transactions in our ADSs on The NASDAQ Global Market in accordance with Rule 103 of Regulation M during a period before the commencement of offers or sales of ADSs in the U.S. offering and extending through the completion of distribution. A passive market maker must display its bid at a price not in excess of the highest independent bid of that security. However, if all independent bids are lowered below the passive market maker's bid, that bid must then be lowered when specified purchase limits are exceeded.

### **Electronic Distribution**

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available by e-mail or on the web sites or through online services maintained by one or more of the underwriters or their affiliates. In those cases, prospective investors may view offering terms online and may be allowed to place orders online. The underwriters may agree with us to allocate a specific number of ADSs or ordinary shares for sale to online brokerage account holders. Any such allocation for online distributions will be made by the underwriters on the same basis as other allocations. Other than the prospectus in electronic format, the information on the underwriters' web sites and any information contained in any other web site maintained by any of the underwriters is not part of this prospectus, has not been approved and/or endorsed by us or the underwriters and should not be relied upon by investors.

### **Other Activities and Relationships**

The underwriters and certain of their affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory,

## [Table of Contents](#)

investment management, investment research, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. The underwriters and certain of their affiliates have, from time to time, performed, and may in the future perform, various commercial and investment banking and financial advisory services for us and our affiliates, for which they received or will receive customary fees and expenses.

In the ordinary course of their various business activities, the underwriters and certain of their affiliates may make or hold a broad array of investments and actively trade debt and equity securities (or related derivative securities) and financial instruments (including bank loans) for their own account and for the accounts of their customers, and such investment and securities activities may involve securities and/or instruments issued by us and our affiliates. If the underwriters or their respective affiliates have a lending relationship with us, they routinely hedge their credit exposure to us consistent with their customary risk management policies. The underwriters and their respective affiliates may hedge such exposure by entering into transactions which consist of either the purchase of credit default swaps or the creation of short positions in our securities or the securities of our affiliates, including potentially our ADSs and ordinary shares offered hereby. Any such short positions could adversely affect future trading prices of the ADSs and ordinary shares offered hereby. The underwriters and certain of their respective affiliates may also communicate independent investment recommendations, market color or trading ideas and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or instruments and may at any time hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

### **Disclaimers About Non-U.S. Jurisdictions**

#### **Canada**

##### *(A) Resale Restrictions*

The distribution of our ADSs in Canada is being made only in the provinces of Ontario, Quebec, Alberta and British Columbia on a private placement basis exempt from the requirement that we prepare and file a prospectus with the securities regulatory authorities in each province where trades of these securities are made. Any resale of our ADSs in Canada must be made under applicable securities laws which may vary depending on the relevant jurisdiction, and which may require resales to be made under available statutory exemptions or under a discretionary exemption granted by the applicable Canadian securities regulatory authority. Purchasers are advised to seek legal advice prior to any resale of the securities.

##### *(B) Representations of Canadian Purchasers*

- By purchasing our ADSs in Canada and accepting delivery of a purchase confirmation, a purchaser is representing to us and the dealer from whom the purchase confirmation is received that:
- the purchaser is entitled under applicable provincial securities laws to purchase our ADSs without the benefit of a prospectus qualified under those securities laws as it is an "accredited investor" as defined under National Instrument 45-106 — Prospectus Exemptions,
- the purchaser is a "permitted client" as defined in National Instrument 31-103 — Registration Requirements, Exemptions and Ongoing Registrant Obligations,
- where required by law, the purchaser is purchasing as principal and not as agent, and
- the purchaser has reviewed the text above under Resale Restrictions.

##### *(C) Conflicts of Interest*

Canadian purchasers are hereby notified that each of the underwriters is relying on the exemption set out in section 3A.3 or 3A.4, if applicable, of National Instrument 33-105 — Underwriting Conflicts from having to provide certain conflict of interest disclosure in this document.

[Table of Contents](#)

*(D) Statutory Rights of Action*

Securities legislation in certain provinces or territories of Canada may provide a purchaser with remedies for rescission or damages if the prospectus (including any amendment thereto) such as this document contains a misrepresentation, provided that the remedies for rescission or damages are exercised by the purchaser within the time limit prescribed by the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory. The purchaser of these securities in Canada should refer to any applicable provisions of the securities legislation of the purchaser's province or territory for particulars of these rights or consult with a legal advisor.

*(E) Enforcement of Legal Rights*

All of our directors and officers as well as the experts named herein may be located outside of Canada and, as a result, it may not be possible for Canadian purchasers to effect service of process within Canada upon us or those persons. All or a substantial portion of our assets and the assets of those persons may be located outside of Canada and, as a result, it may not be possible to satisfy a judgment against us or those persons in Canada or to enforce a judgment obtained in Canadian courts against us or those persons outside of Canada.

*(F) Taxation and Eligibility for Investment*

Canadian purchasers of our ADSs should consult their own legal and tax advisors with respect to the tax consequences of an investment in our ADSs in their particular circumstances and about the eligibility of our ADSs for investment by the purchaser under relevant Canadian legislation.

**Australia**

This prospectus is not a disclosure document for the purposes of Australia's Corporations Act 2001 (Cth) of Australia, or Corporations Act, has not been lodged with the Australian Securities & Investments Commission and is only directed to the categories of exempt persons set out below. Accordingly, if you receive this prospectus in Australia:

A. You confirm and warrant that you are either:

- a "sophisticated investor" under section 708(8)(a) or (b) of the Corporations Act;
- a "sophisticated investor" under section 708(8)(c) or (d) of the Corporations Act and that you have provided an accountant's certificate to the Company which complies with the requirements of section 708(8)(c)(i) or (ii) of the Corporations Act and related regulations before the offer has been made;
- a person associated with the Company under Section 708(12) of the Corporations Act; or
- a "professional investor" within the meaning of section 708(11)(a) or (b) of the Corporations Act.

To the extent that you are unable to confirm or warrant that you are an exempt sophisticated investor, associated person or professional investor under the Corporations Act any offer made to you under this prospectus is void and incapable of acceptance.

B. You warrant and agree that you will not offer any of the securities issued to you pursuant to this prospectus for resale in Australia within 12 months of those securities being issued unless any such resale offer is exempt from the requirement to issue a disclosure document under section 708 of the Corporations Act.

**European Economic Area**

In relation to each member state of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive, or each referred as a "Relevant Member State", an offer to the public of any ADSs or ordinary

[Table of Contents](#)

shares which are the subject of the global offering contemplated by this prospectus may not be made in that Relevant Member State except that an offer to the public in that Relevant Member State of any ADSs or ordinary shares may be made at any time under the following exemptions under the Prospectus Directive, if they have been implemented in that Relevant Member State:

- (a) to any legal entity which is a "qualified investor" as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- (b) to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), as permitted under the Prospectus Directive, subject to obtaining the prior consent of the underwriters or the underwriters nominated by us for any such offer; or
- (c) in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive;

Provided that no such offer of ADSs or ordinary shares shall require us or any of the underwriters to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision, the expressions "offer ADSs to the public" in relation to our ADSs and "offer ordinary shares to the public" in relation to our ordinary shares in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and our ADSs or ordinary shares to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe to our ADSs or ordinary shares, as the same may be varied in that Relevant Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Relevant Member State and the expression "Prospectus Directive" means Directive 2003/71/EC (and amendments thereto, including the 2010 PD Amending Directive, to the extent implemented in the Relevant Member State), and includes any relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State and the expression "2010 PD Amending Directive" means Directive 2010/73/EU.

***People's Republic of China***

This prospectus may not be circulated or distributed in the PRC and our ADSs may not be offered or sold, and will not offer or sell to any person for re-offering or resale directly or indirectly to any resident of the PRC except pursuant to applicable laws and regulations of the PRC. For the purpose of this paragraph, PRC does not include Taiwan and the special administrative regions of Hong Kong and Macau.

***Hong Kong***

No securities have been offered or sold, and no securities may be offered or sold, in Hong Kong, by means of any document, other than to persons whose ordinary business is to buy or sell shares or debentures, whether as principal or agent; or to "professional investors" as defined in the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571) of Hong Kong, or the SFO, and any rules made under that Ordinance; or in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a "prospectus" as defined in the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32) of Hong Kong, or the CO, or which do not constitute an offer or invitation to the public for the purpose of the CO or the SFO. No document, invitation or advertisement relating to the securities has been issued or may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public of Hong Kong (except if permitted under the securities laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to securities which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to "professional investors" as defined in the SFO and any rules made under that Ordinance.

This prospectus has not been registered with the Registrar of Companies in Hong Kong. Accordingly, this prospectus may not be issued, circulated or distributed in Hong Kong, and the securities may not be offered for subscription to members of the public in Hong Kong. Each person acquiring the securities will be required, and is deemed by the acquisition of the securities, to confirm that he is aware of the restriction on offers of the securities described in this prospectus and the relevant offering documents and that he is

[Table of Contents](#)

not acquiring, and has not been offered any securities in circumstances that contravene any such restrictions.

***Israel***

This document does not constitute a prospectus under the Israeli Securities Law, 5728-1968, or the Securities Law, and has not been filed with or approved by the Israel Securities Authority. In Israel, this prospectus is being distributed only to, and is directed only at, and any offer of our ADSs is directed only at, (i) a limited number of persons in accordance with the Israeli Securities Law and (ii) investors listed in the first addendum, or the Addendum, to the Israeli Securities Law, consisting primarily of joint investment in trust funds, provident funds, insurance companies, banks, portfolio managers, investment advisors, members of the Tel Aviv Stock Exchange, underwriters, venture capital funds, entities with equity in excess of NIS 50 million and "qualified individuals," each as defined in the Addendum (as it may be amended from time to time), collectively referred to as qualified investors (in each case, purchasing for their own account or, where permitted under the Addendum, for the accounts of their clients who are investors listed in the Addendum). Qualified investors are required to submit written confirmation that they fall within the scope of the Addendum, are aware of the meaning of same and agree to it.

***Japan***

The global offering has not been and will not be registered under the Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan (Law No. 25 of 1948 of Japan, as amended), or FIEL, and the underwriters will not offer or sell any securities, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan (which term as used herein means any person resident in Japan, including any corporation or other entity organized under the laws of Japan), or to others for re-offering or resale, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to, or for the benefit of, any resident of Japan, except pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of, and otherwise in compliance with, the FIEL and any other applicable laws, regulations and ministerial guidelines of Japan.

***Singapore***

This prospectus has not been and will not be lodged or registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the securities may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the securities be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore, or the SFA, (ii) to a relevant person pursuant to Section 275(1), or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275, of the SFA, or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA.

Where the securities are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

- (a) a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or
- (b) a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an individual who is an accredited investor, securities (as defined in Section 239(1) of the SFA) of that corporation or the beneficiaries' rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferred within six months after that corporation

[Table of Contents](#)

or that trust has acquired the securities pursuant to an offer made under Section 275 of the SFA except:

- (i) to an institutional investor or to a relevant person defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA, or to any person arising from an offer referred to in Section 275(1A) or Section 276(4)(i)(B) of the SFA;
- (ii) where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer;
- (iii) where the transfer is by operation of law;
- (iv) as specified in Section 276(7) of the SFA; or
- (v) as specified in Regulation 32 of the Securities and Futures (Offers of Investments) (Shares and Debentures) Regulations 2005 of Singapore.

**Switzerland**

The securities may not be publicly offered in Switzerland and will not be listed on the SIX Swiss Exchange, or the SIX, or on any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. This prospectus has been prepared without regard to the disclosure standards for issuance prospectuses under art. 652a or art. 1156 of the Swiss Code of Obligations or the disclosure standards for listing prospectuses under art. 27 ff. of the SIX Listing Rules or the listing rules of any other stock exchange or regulated trading facility in Switzerland. Neither this prospectus nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the securities or the offering may be publicly distributed or otherwise made publicly available in Switzerland.

Neither this prospectus nor any other offering or marketing material relating to the offering, the Company or the securities have been or will be filed with or approved by any Swiss regulatory authority. In particular, this prospectus will not be filed with, and the offer of securities will not be supervised by, the Swiss Financial Market Supervisory Authority FINMA, and the offer of securities has not been and will not be authorized under the Swiss Federal Act on Collective Investment Schemes, or the CISA. The investor protection afforded to acquirers of interests in collective investment schemes under the CISA does not extend to acquirers of securities.

**United Kingdom**

This prospectus is only being distributed to, and is only directed at, persons in the United Kingdom that are qualified investors within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive that also are (i) investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended, or the Order, and/or (ii) high net worth entities falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated (each such person being referred to as a "relevant person").

This prospectus and its contents are confidential and should not be distributed, published or reproduced (in whole or in part) or disclosed by recipients to any other persons in the United Kingdom. Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this document or any of its contents. Any investment or investment activity to which this prospectus relates is available only to relevant persons and will be engaged in only with relevant persons.

**EXPENSES OF THE GLOBAL OFFERING**

We estimate that our expenses in connection with the global offering, other than underwriting discounts and commissions, will be as follows:

---

<u>Expenses</u>	<u>Amount</u>
Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	\$ 9,997
FINRA filing fee	13,438
The NASDAQ Global Market listing fee	*
Printing and engraving expenses	*
Legal fees and expenses	*
Accounting fees and expenses	*
Miscellaneous costs	*
Total	<u>\$ *</u>

---

\* To be filed by amendment

All amounts in the table are estimates except the SEC registration fee, The NASDAQ Global Market listing fee and the FINRA filing fee. We will pay all of the expenses of the global offering.

## **LEGAL MATTERS**

The validity of our ADSs and ordinary shares and certain other matters of English law and U.S. federal law will be passed upon for us by Latham & Watkins LLP. Legal counsel to the underwriters in connection with the global offering are White & Case LLP with respect to English law and Cooley LLP, New York, New York, with respect to U.S. federal law.

## **AUDITORS**

At the annual general meeting on June 11, 2015, UHY Hacker Young, our auditor for the financial year ended December 31, 2014, did not offer themselves for re-election, and our shareholders appointed PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP as our auditor for the year ending December 31, 2015 as proposed by our board of directors. Accordingly UHY Hacker Young was not re-elected for another term as our independent registered public accounting firm.

The report of UHY Hacker Young for the financial year ended December 31, 2014 did not contain any adverse opinion or disclaimer of opinion and was not qualified or modified as to uncertainty, audit scope or accounting principles. There was no disagreement whatsoever relating to the year ended December 31, 2014 with UHY Hacker Young on any matter of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure, or auditing scope or procedure, which disagreement, if not resolved to the satisfaction of the former auditor, would have caused them to make reference to the subject matter of the disagreement in connection with their report, or any "reportable event" as described in Item 16F(a)(1)(v) of Form 20-F. The report of UHY Hacker Young for the financial year ended December 31, 2014 is not included in this prospectus.

We have provided a copy of the above statements to UHY Hacker Young and requested that UHY Hacker Young furnish us with a letter addressed to the SEC stating whether or not they agree with the above disclosure. A copy of that letter, dated December 20, 2016, is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part.

## **EXPERTS**

The financial statements as of December 31, 2015 and 2016 and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016 included in this prospectus have been so included in reliance on the report of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, given on the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The registered business address of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP is 1 Embankment Place, London, WC2N 6RH, United Kingdom.

## **SERVICE OF PROCESS AND ENFORCEMENT OF LIABILITIES**

We are incorporated and currently existing under the laws of England and Wales. In addition, certain of our directors and officers reside outside of the United States and most of the assets of our non-U.S. subsidiaries are located outside of the United States. As a result, it may be difficult for investors to effect service of process on us or those persons in the United States or to enforce in the United States judgments obtained in United States courts against us or those persons based on the civil liability or other provisions of the United States securities laws or other laws.

[Table of Contents](#)

In addition, uncertainty exists as to whether the courts of England and Wales would:

- recognize or enforce judgments of United States courts obtained against us or our directors or officers predicated upon the civil liabilities provisions of the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States; or
- entertain original actions brought in England and Wales against us or our directors or officers predicated upon the securities laws of the United States or any state in the United States.

We have been advised by Latham & Watkins LLP that there is currently no treaty between (i) the United States and (ii) England and Wales providing for reciprocal recognition and enforcement of judgments of United States courts in civil and commercial matters (although the U.S. and the United Kingdom are both parties to the New York Convention on the Recognition and Enforcement of Foreign Arbitral Awards) and that a final judgment for the payment of money rendered by any general or state court in the United States based on civil liability, whether or not predicated solely upon the United States securities laws, would not be automatically enforceable in England and Wales. We have also been advised by Latham & Watkins LLP that any final and conclusive monetary judgment for a definite sum obtained against us in United States courts would be treated by the courts of England and Wales as a cause of action in itself and sued upon as a debt at common law so that no retrial of the issues would be necessary, provided that:

- the relevant U.S. court had jurisdiction over the original proceedings according to English conflicts of laws principles at the time when proceedings were initiated;
- England and Wales courts had jurisdiction over the matter on enforcement and we either submitted to such jurisdiction or were resident or carrying on business within such jurisdiction and were duly served with process;
- the U.S. judgment was final and conclusive on the merits in the sense of being final and unalterable in the court that pronounced it and being for a definite sum of money;
- the judgment given by the courts was not in respect of penalties, taxes, fines or similar fiscal or revenue obligations (or otherwise based on a U.S. law that an English court considers to relate to a penal, revenue or other public law);
- the judgment was not procured by fraud;
- recognition or enforcement of the judgment in England and Wales would not be contrary to public policy or the Human Rights Act 1998;
- the proceedings pursuant to which judgment was obtained were not contrary to natural justice;
- the U.S. judgment was not arrived at by doubling, trebling or otherwise multiplying a sum assessed as compensation for the loss or damages sustained and not being otherwise in breach of Section 5 of the UK Protection of Trading Interests Act 1980, or is a judgment based on measures designated by the Secretary of State under Section 1 of that Act;
- there is not a prior decision of an English court or the court of another jurisdiction on the issues in question between the same parties; and
- the English enforcement proceedings were commenced within the limitation period.

Whether these requirements are met in respect of a judgment based upon the civil liability provisions of the United States securities laws, including whether the award of monetary damages under such laws would constitute a penalty, is an issue for the court making such decision.

Subject to the foregoing, investors may be able to enforce in England and Wales judgments in civil and commercial matters that have been obtained from U.S. federal or state courts. Nevertheless, we cannot assure you that those judgments will be recognized or enforceable in England and Wales.

If an English court gives judgment for the sum payable under a U.S. judgment, the English judgment will be enforceable by methods generally available for this purpose. These methods generally permit the English court discretion to prescribe the manner of enforcement. In addition, it may not be possible to obtain an

[Table of Contents](#)

English judgment or to enforce that judgment if the judgment debtor is or becomes subject to any insolvency or similar proceedings, or if the judgment debtor has any set-off or counterclaim against the judgment creditor. Also note that, in any enforcement proceedings, the judgment debtor may raise any counterclaim that could have been brought if the action had been originally brought in England unless the subject of the counterclaim was in issue and denied in the U.S. proceedings.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement (including amendments and exhibits to the registration statement) on Form F-1 under the Securities Act. This prospectus, which is part of the registration statement, does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement. For further information, we refer you to the registration statement and the exhibits and schedules filed as part of the registration statement. If a document has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement, we refer you to the copy of the document that has been filed. Each statement in this prospectus relating to a document filed as an exhibit is qualified in all respects by the filed exhibit.

Upon completion of the U.S. offering, we will become subject to the informational requirements of the Exchange Act. Accordingly, we will be required to file reports and other information with the SEC, including annual reports on Form 20-F and reports on Form 6-K. You may inspect and copy reports and other information filed with the SEC at the Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Information on the operation of the Public Reference Room may be obtained by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330. In addition, the SEC maintains an Internet website that contains reports and other information about issuers, like us, that file electronically with the SEC. The address of that website is [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

As a foreign private issuer, we are exempt under the Exchange Act from, among other things, the rules prescribing the furnishing and content of proxy statements, and our board members, executive officers, and principal shareholders are exempt from the reporting and short-swing profit recovery provisions contained in Section 16 of the Exchange Act. In addition, we will not be required under the Exchange Act to file periodic reports and financial statements with the SEC as frequently or as promptly as U.S. companies whose securities are registered under the Exchange Act.

We will send our transfer agent a copy of all notices of our general meetings of shareholders and other reports, communications and information that are made generally available to shareholders. The transfer agent has agreed to mail to all shareholders a notice containing the information (or a summary of the information) contained in any notice of a meeting of our shareholders received by the transfer agent and will make available to all shareholders such notices and all such other reports and communications received by the transfer agent.

**INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**Consolidated financial statements  
as of and for the years ended December 31, 2015 and 2016**

<a href="#">Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>	<a href="#">F-2</a>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income</a>	<a href="#">F-3</a>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statement of Financial Position</a>	<a href="#">F-4</a>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows</a>	<a href="#">F-5</a>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statement of Changes in Equity</a>	<a href="#">F-6</a>
<a href="#">Notes to the Financial Statements</a>	<a href="#">F-7</a>

---

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Verona Pharma Plc:

In our opinion, the accompanying consolidated statement of financial position and the related consolidated statements of comprehensive income (loss), of changes in equity and of cash flows, present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Verona Pharma Plc and its subsidiaries as at December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2016 in conformity with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits of these statements in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, and evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

We draw attention to note 23 of the consolidated financial statements which describes the share consolidation the Company effected on February 8, 2017. Management have reflected this share consolidation in the accompanying financial statements to give retroactive effect to the loss per share amounts.

As discussed in Note 2.2 to the consolidated financial statements, the company restated its comparative financial statements to correct an error in 2015.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP  
Reading, United Kingdom  
March 2, 2017

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME**  
**FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2015 AND 2016**

	<b>Notes</b>	<b>Restated Year ended December 31, 2015</b>	<b>Year ended December 31, 2016</b>
		<b>£</b>	<b>£</b>
Research and development costs		(7,268,847)	(4,521,820)
General and administrative costs		(1,705,944)	(2,498,349)
<b>Operating loss</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>(8,974,791)</b>	<b>(7,020,169)</b>
Finance income	9	44,791	1,841,282
Finance expense	9	(72,291)	(793,690)
<b>Loss before taxation</b>		<b>(9,002,291)</b>	<b>(5,972,577)</b>
Taxation — credit	10	1,509,448	954,184
<b>Loss for the year</b>		<b>(7,492,843)</b>	<b>(5,018,393)</b>
<b>Other comprehensive income:</b>			
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations		3,784	42,559
<b>Total comprehensive loss attributable to owners of the Company</b>		<b>(7,489,059)</b>	<b>(4,975,834)</b>
Loss per ordinary share — basic and diluted (pence)	5	(37.1)	(15.0)

---

The accompanying notes form an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION**  
**AS OF DECEMBER 31, 2015 AND 2016**

	<b>Notes</b>	<b>Restated As of December 31, 2015 £</b>	<b>As of December 31, 2016 £</b>
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Non-current assets:</b>			
Property, plant and equipment	14	13,163	13,838
Intangible assets	15	1,813,756	1,876,684
Goodwill	16	441,000	441,000
		<u>2,267,919</u>	<u>2,331,522</u>
<b>Current assets:</b>			
Prepayments and other receivables	11	513,300	2,958,587
Current tax receivable		1,534,788	1,067,460
Cash and cash equivalents	12	3,524,387	39,785,098
		<u>5,572,475</u>	<u>43,811,145</u>
<b>Total assets</b>		<u>7,840,394</u>	<u>46,142,667</u>
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>			
<b>Capital and reserves attributable to equity holders:</b>			
Share capital	17	1,009,923	2,568,053
Share premium		26,650,098	58,526,502
Share-based payment reserve		1,525,897	2,101,790
Accumulated loss		<u>(23,752,204)</u>	<u>(28,728,038)</u>
<b>Total equity</b>		<u>5,433,714</u>	<u>34,468,307</u>
<b>Current liabilities:</b>			
Trade and other payables	13	1,798,682	2,823,489
Tax payable—U.S. Operations		14,057	126,063
Derivative financial instrument	21	—	7,922,603
<b>Total current liabilities</b>		<u>1,812,739</u>	<u>10,872,155</u>
<b>Non-current liabilities:</b>			
Assumed contingent obligation	20	593,941	802,205
<b>Total non-current liabilities</b>		<u>593,941</u>	<u>802,205</u>
<b>Total equity and liabilities</b>		<u>7,840,394</u>	<u>46,142,667</u>

The financial statements on pages F-3 to F-37 were approved by the Company's board of directors on February 27, 2017 and signed on its behalf by Dr. Jan-Anders Karlsson, Chief Executive Officer of the Company.

The accompanying notes form an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS**  
**FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2015 AND 2016**

	Restated Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
	£	£
<b>Cash used in operating activities:</b>		
Loss before taxation	(9,002,291)	(5,972,577)
Finance income	(44,791)	(1,841,282)
Finance expense	72,291	793,690
Share-based payment charge	398,943	575,893
Decrease / (increase) in prepayments and other receivables	57,633	(1,808,832)
Increase in trade and other payables	1,274,370	1,067,595
Depreciation of property, plant and equipment	9,689	10,051
Loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment	—	2,625
Loss on disposal of intangible assets	134,532	8
Amortization of intangible assets	43,428	51,571
Cash used in operating activities	(7,056,196)	(7,121,258)
Cash inflow from taxation	699,519	1,533,287
<b>Net cash used in operating activities</b>	<b>(6,356,677)</b>	<b>(5,587,971)</b>
<b>Cash flow from investing activities:</b>		
Interest received	50,592	86,542
Purchase of plant and equipment	(1,193)	(13,351)
Payment for patents and computer software	(141,878)	(114,506)
<b>Net cash used in investing activities</b>	<b>(92,479)</b>	<b>(41,315)</b>
<b>Cash flow from financing activities:</b>		
Gross proceeds from issue of shares and warrants	—	44,750,364
Transaction costs on issue of shares and warrants	—	(2,910,461)
Transaction costs on upcoming Global Offering	—	(636,455)
<b>Net cash generated from financing activities</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>41,203,448</b>
<b>Net (decrease) / increase in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>(6,449,156)</b>	<b>35,574,162</b>
Cash and cash equivalents at the beginning of the year	9,969,759	3,524,387
Effect of exchange rates on cash and cash equivalents	3,784	686,549
<b>Cash and cash equivalents at the end of the period</b>	<b>3,524,387</b>	<b>39,785,098</b>

The accompanying notes form an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY**  
**FOR THE YEARS ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2015 AND 2016**

	<u>Share Capital</u> £	<u>Share Premium</u> £	<u>Share-based Expenses</u> £	<u>Total Accumulated Losses</u> £	<u>Total Equity</u> £
<b>Balance at January 1, 2015</b>					
<b>(Restated)</b>	1,009,923	26,650,098	1,126,954	(16,263,145)	12,523,830
Loss for the year	—	—	—	(7,492,843)	(7,492,843)
Other comprehensive income for the year:					
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	—	—	—	3,784	3,784
Total comprehensive loss for the period	—	—	—	(7,489,059)	(7,489,059)
Share-based payments	—	—	398,943	—	398,943
<b>Balance at December 31, 2015</b>					
<b>(Restated)</b>	1,009,923	26,650,098	1,525,897	(23,752,204)	5,433,714
<b>Balance at January 1, 2016</b>	1,009,923	26,650,098	1,525,897	(23,752,204)	5,433,714
Loss for the year	—	—	—	(5,018,393)	(5,018,393)
Other comprehensive income for the year:					
Exchange differences on translating foreign operations	—	—	—	42,559	42,559
Total comprehensive loss for the period	—	—	—	(4,975,834)	(4,975,834)
New share capital issued	1,555,796	34,151,439	—	—	35,707,235
Transaction costs on share capital issued	—	(2,325,035)	—	—	(2,325,035)
Share options exercised during the period	2,334	50,000	—	—	52,334
Share-based payments	—	—	575,893	—	575,893
<b>Balance at December 31, 2016</b>	<u>2,568,053</u>	<u>58,526,502</u>	<u>2,101,790</u>	<u>(28,728,038)</u>	<u>34,468,307</u>

The currency translation reserve for 2015 and 2016 was not considered material and as such was not presented in a separate reserve but was included in the total accumulated losses reserve.

The accompanying notes form an integral part of these consolidated financial statements.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**1. General information**

Verona Pharma plc (the "Company") and its subsidiaries (together, the "Group") are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical group focused on developing and commercializing innovative therapeutics for the treatment of respiratory diseases with significant unmet medical needs.

The Company is a public limited company, which is listed on the Alternative Investment Market of the London Stock Exchange and incorporated and domiciled in the United Kingdom.

The Company has two subsidiaries, Verona Pharma, Inc. and Rhinopharma Limited ("Rhinopharma"), both of which are wholly owned.

On February 8, 2017, our shareholders approved a 50-for-1 consolidation of its shares. Earnings per share information in these consolidated financial statements has been retrospectively adjusted, to reflect the consolidation as if it had occurred at the beginning of the earliest period presented. Prior to the consolidation the total number of issued shares as at December 31, 2016 would read as 2,568,053,160 shares and after the consolidation this number would read as 51,361,063 shares.

**2. Accounting policies**

A summary of the principal accounting policies, all of which have been applied consistently throughout the year, is set out below.

**2.1 Basis of preparation**

The consolidated financial statements of the Group have been prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ("IFRS") as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board. The consolidated financial statements have been prepared under the historical cost convention, with the exception of derivative financial instruments which have been measured at fair value.

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with IFRS requires the use of certain critical accounting estimates. It also requires management to exercise its judgement in the process of applying the Group's accounting policies. The areas involving a higher degree of judgement or complexity, or areas where assumptions and estimates are significant to the consolidated financial statements are disclosed in note 4.

**Going concern**

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Group had a loss of £5,018 thousand (2015: £7,493 thousand). As of December 31, 2016, the Group had net assets of £34,468 thousand (2015: £5,434 thousand) of which £39,785 thousand (2015: £3,524 thousand) was cash and cash equivalents.

The operation of the Group is currently being financed from funds that the Company raised from share placings. On July 29, 2016, the Company raised gross proceeds of £44.7 million from a placing, subscription and open offer (the "July Placement"). These funds are expected to be used primarily to support the development of RPL554 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease ("COPD") as well as corporate and general administrative expenditures.

The Directors believe that the Group has sufficient funds to complete the current clinical trials, to cover corporate and general administration costs and for it to comply with all commitments for at least 12 months

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

from the end of the reporting period and, accordingly, are satisfied that the going concern basis remains appropriate for the preparation of these consolidated financial statements.

**Business combination**

The Group applies the acquisition method to account for business combinations regardless of whether equity instruments or other assets are acquired. The consideration transferred for the acquisition of a subsidiary is the fair value of the assets transferred, the liabilities incurred to the former owners of the acquiree and the equity interests issued by the Group. The consideration transferred includes the fair value of any asset or liability resulting from a contingent consideration arrangement and the fair value of any pre-existing equity interest in the subsidiary. The excess of the cost of acquisition over the fair value of the Group's share of the identifiable net assets acquired is recorded as goodwill. Goodwill arising on acquisitions is capitalized and is subject to an impairment review, both annually and when there are indications that the carrying value may not be recoverable.

Identifiable assets acquired and liabilities and contingent liabilities assumed in a business combination are measured initially at their fair values at the acquisition date. Acquisition-related costs are expensed as incurred and included in administrative expenses.

**Basis of consolidation**

These consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Verona Pharma plc and its wholly owned subsidiaries Verona Pharma, Inc. and Rhinopharma. The acquisition method of accounting was used to account for the acquisition of Rhinopharma.

Inter-company transactions, balances and unrealized gains on transactions between Group companies are eliminated.

Verona Pharma Inc. and Rhinopharma adopt the same accounting policies as the Company.

**2.2 Correction of errors in 2015 comparative figures**

**Acquisition of Rhinopharma Limited**

On September 19, 2006, the Group acquired Rhinopharma for a total consideration of £1,520 thousand payable in ordinary shares. Net assets of £51 thousand were recorded as part of the acquisition, resulting in excess consideration of £1,469 thousand, which was classified in its entirety as goodwill in the statement of financial position.

During 2016, the Company identified an error relating to the accounting for this acquisition. After further due diligence it has been identified that the excess consideration should have been recorded as an in-process research and development intangible ("IP R&D") and a corresponding deferred tax liability should have been recorded in relation to this intangible. In addition, there was a financial liability in relation to an assumed contingent obligation that Rhinopharma held with Vernalis plc ("Vernalis") that was not identified and fair valued at the date of the acquisition. The intangible asset and the financial liability should have been recognized at fair value on the acquisition date. The impact of these as of the time of the acquisition was as follows:

- Reclassification from goodwill to IP R&D of £1,469 thousand;

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

- Recognition of a deferred tax liability of £441 thousand; and
- Recognition of goodwill of £441 thousand.

The assumed contingent obligation was deemed to be insignificant at the acquisition date and therefore not recognized.

Subsequent to the business combination the following should have been applied:

Goodwill and IP R&D are not amortized as explained in the accounting policy in note 2.8 and should be annually tested for impairment. The cash generating unit ("CGU") has been tested for impairment annually and no impairment has been recorded.

The assumed contingent obligation is subsequently carried at amortized cost using the effective interest method. Further, since 2006, a corresponding deferred tax asset has been recognized in relation to Verona Pharma plc losses which offset the deferred tax liability.

The financial statements have been restated retrospectively for these errors. The entries to the 2015 opening Consolidated Statement of Financial Position as of January 1, 2015 are:

- an IP R&D asset of £1,469 thousand;
- an assumed contingent obligation of £522 thousand;
- a decrease in goodwill of £1,028 thousand; and
- a reduction in accumulated loss of £81 thousand.

The entries to the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position on December 31, 2015 as a result of the errors identified, are:

- an IP R&D asset of £1,469 thousand;
- an assumed contingent obligation of £594 thousand;
- a decrease in goodwill of £1,028 thousand; and
- a reduction in accumulated loss of £81 thousand.

As a consequence the net impact on the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income for 2015 is:

- a £72 thousand finance expense in respect of the movement in the value of the assumed contingent obligation. Further details are set out in note 20 to these consolidated financial statements.

The following tables set forth a summary of the restatements performed:

**January 1, 2015**

<b>Financial statement element</b>	<b>Pre restatement £'000</b>	<b>Correction amount</b>	<b>Post restatement £'000</b>
Intangibles — IP R&D	—	1,469	1,469
Assumed contingent obligation	—	(522)	(522)
Goodwill	1,469	(1,028)	441
Accumulated loss	15,733	81	15,814

## VERONA PHARMA PLC

## NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

## 2. Accounting policies (Continued)

December 31, 2015

Financial statement element	Pre restatement £'000	Correction amount	Post restatement £'000
Intangibles — IP R&D	—	1,469	1,469
Assumed contingent obligation	—	(594)	(594)
Goodwill	1,469	(1,028)	441
Accumulated loss	23,096	81	23,177
Finance expense	—	72	72

## Reclassifications

During the period, five reclassifications have been made to the December 31, 2015 primary statements as follows:

- Taxation recoverable amounting to £1,535 thousand has been reclassified from prepayments and other receivables to current tax receivable.
- Computer software with a net book value of £1 thousand has been reclassified from property, plant and equipment to intangible assets
- Exchange differences arising on translating foreign operations have been reclassified from research and development to other comprehensive gains due to an error in the prior period amounting to £4 thousand.
- Transfers of previously expensed share-based payment charges upon lapse of options between the share-based payment reserve and the total accumulated losses have been reclassified amounting to £503 thousand.
- U.S. taxation payable amounting to £14 thousand has been reclassified from trade and other payables to tax payable — U.S. operations.

The following table sets forth a reconciliation of accumulated loss before restatements and reclassifications to the accumulated loss following the restatements and reclassifications.

January 1, 2015

Accumulated loss before restatements/reclassification	£'000 15,733
Impact of business combination restatement	81
Accumulated loss following restatement above	15,814
Impact of reclassification from the share based payment reserve	449
Accumulated losses per the statement of changes in equity	<u>16,263</u>

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

**December 31, 2015**

	<u>£'000</u>
Accumulated loss before restatements/reclassification	23,096
Impact of business combination restatement	81
Accumulated loss following restatement above	<u>23,177</u>
Assumed contingent obligation income statement charge	72
Impact of reclassification from the share based payment reserve	503
Accumulated losses per the statement of changes in equity	<u>23,752</u>

IAS 8 requires the disclosure of an opening balance sheet when an error has occurred before the earliest period presented. Management has judged that this disclosure gives sufficient information for a user to understand the impact on the opening balance sheet. Management has also judged, due to the nature of this adjustment, which is mainly a balance sheet gross up, that not including the full opening balance sheet would not be misleading to the user.

**2.3 Foreign currency translation**

Items included in the Group's consolidated financial statements are measured using the currency of the primary economic environment in which the Group operates ("the functional currency"). The consolidated financial statements are presented in pounds sterling ("£"), which is the functional and presentational currency of the Company and the presentational currency of the Group.

Transactions in foreign currencies are recorded using the rate of exchange ruling at the date of the transaction. Monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are translated using the rate of exchange ruling at the balance sheet date and the gains or losses on translation are included in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income. Non-monetary items that are measured in terms of historical cost in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rates at the dates of the original transactions. Non-monetary items measured at fair value in a foreign currency are translated using the exchange rates at the date when the fair value was determined.

The assets and liabilities of foreign operations are translated into pounds sterling at the rate of exchange ruling at the balance sheet date. Income and expenses are translated at weighted average exchange rates for the period. The exchange differences arising on translation for consolidation are recognized in Other Comprehensive Income.

**2.4 Cash and cash equivalents**

Cash and cash equivalents includes cash in hand, deposits held at call with banks, and other short-term highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less.

**2.5 Deferred taxation**

Deferred tax is provided in full, using the liability method, on temporary differences arising between the tax bases of assets and liabilities and their carrying amounts in the consolidated financial statements. Deferred

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

tax is determined using tax rates (and laws) that have been enacted or substantially enacted by the balance sheet date and expected to apply when the related deferred tax is realized or the deferred liability is settled.

Deferred tax assets are recognized to the extent that it is probable that the future taxable profit will be available against which the temporary differences can be utilized.

**2.6 Research and development costs**

Capitalization of expenditure on product development commences from the point at which technical feasibility and commercial viability of the product can be demonstrated and the Group is satisfied that it is probable that future economic benefits will result from the product once completed. No such costs have been capitalized to date, given the early stage of the Group's product candidate development.

Expenditure on research and development activities that do not meet the above criteria is charged to the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income as incurred.

**2.7 Property, plant and equipment**

Property, plant and equipment are stated at cost, net of depreciation and any provision for impairment. Cost includes the original purchase price of the asset and the costs attributable to bringing the asset to its working condition for its intended use. Depreciation is calculated so as to write off the cost less their estimated residual values, on a straight-line basis over the expected useful economic lives of the assets concerned. The principal annual periods used for this purpose are:

Computer hardware	3 years
Office equipment	5 years

**2.8 Intangible assets and goodwill**

(a) Goodwill

Goodwill arises on the acquisition of subsidiaries and represents the excess of the consideration transferred over the fair value of the identifiable net assets acquired.

(b) Patents

Patent costs associated with the preparation, filing, and obtaining of patents are capitalized and amortized on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful lives of the patents of ten years.

(c) Computer software

Amortization is calculated so as to write off the cost less estimated residual values, on a straight-line basis over the expected useful economic life of two years.

(d) In-process research & development

IP R&D assets acquired through business combinations which, at the time of acquisition, have not reached technical feasibility are recognized at fair value. The amounts are capitalized and are not amortized but are

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

subject to impairment testing until completion, abandonment of the projects or when the research findings are commercialized through a revenue generating project. The Group determines whether intangible assets (including goodwill) are impaired on an annual basis and this requires the estimation of the higher of fair value less costs of disposal and value in use. Upon successful completion or commercialization of the relevant project, IP R&D will be reclassified to developed technology. The Group will make a determination as to the then useful life of the developed technology, generally determined by the period in which the substantial majority of the cash flows are expected to be generated, and begin amortization. In case of abandonment the asset will be impaired.

**2.9 Impairment of intangible assets, goodwill and non-financial assets**

Goodwill and intangible assets that have an indefinite useful life and intangible assets not ready to use are not subject to amortization. These assets are tested annually for impairment or more frequently if impairment indicators exist. Non-financial assets that are subject to amortization are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount may not be recoverable. An impairment loss is recognized for the amount by which the asset's carrying amount exceeds its recoverable amount. The recoverable amount is the higher of an asset's fair value (less costs of disposal) and value in use.

For the purpose of assessing impairment, assets are grouped at the lowest levels for which there are separately identifiable cash flows, which are largely independent of the cash flows from other assets or group of assets (i.e. CGU).

Goodwill is allocated to CGUs for the purpose of impairment testing. The allocation is made to those CGUs or groups of CGUs that are expected to benefit from the business combination in which the goodwill arose. The units or group of units are identified at the lowest level at which goodwill is monitored for internal management purposes, being the operating segments.

The Group is a single cash generating unit. Goodwill that arose on the acquisition of Rhinopharma has been thus allocated to this single CGU. IP R&D is tested for impairment at this level as well, since it is the lowest level at which independent cash flows can be identified.

Non-financial assets, other than goodwill, that have been previously impaired are reviewed for possible reversal of the impairment at each subsequent reporting date.

**2.10 Employee Benefits**

**(a) Pension**

The Group operates a defined contribution pension scheme for UK employees. Contributions payable for the year are charged to the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income. The contributions are recognized as employee benefit expense when they are due. Differences between contributions payable in the year and contributions actually paid are shown as either accruals or prepayments in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. The Group has no further payment obligation once the contributions have been paid.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

**(b) Bonus plans**

The Company recognizes a liability and an expense for bonus plans if contractually obligated or if there is a past practice that has created a constructive obligation.

**2.11 Share-based payments**

The Group operates a number of equity-settled, share-based compensation schemes. The fair value of share-based payments under such schemes is expensed on a straight-line basis over the vesting period, based on the Group's estimate of shares that will eventually vest.

Where equity settled transactions are entered into with third party service providers, fair value is determined by reference to the value of the services provided in lieu of payment. The expense is measured based on the services received at the date of receipt of those services and is charged to the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income over the period for which the services are received and a corresponding credit is made to reserves. For other equity-settled transactions fair value is determined using the Black-Scholes model and requires several assumptions and estimates as disclosed in note 20.

**2.12 Provisions**

Provisions are recognized when the Group has a present legal or constructive obligation as a result of past events, it is probable that an outflow of resources will be required to settle the obligation, and the amount can be reliably estimated. Provisions are measured at the present value of the expenditures expected to be required to settle the obligation using a pre-tax rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the obligation.

**2.13 Assumed contingent obligation related to the business combinations**

On September 19, 2006, the Group acquired Rhinopharma for a total consideration of £1,520 thousand payable in ordinary shares. In addition, the Group assumed certain contingent obligations owed by Rhinopharma to Vernalis under an assignment and license agreement (the "assumed contingent consideration") following the sale of IP by Vernalis to Rhinopharma. Pursuant to the agreement, Vernalis (i) assigned to the Company all of its rights to certain patents and patent applications relating to RPL554 and related compounds (the "Vernalis Patents") and (ii) granted to the Company an exclusive, worldwide, royalty-bearing license under certain Vernalis know-how to develop, manufacture and commercialize products (the "Licensed Products") developed using Vernalis Patents, Vernalis know-how and the physical stock of certain compounds.

The assumed contingent obligation comprises (a) a milestone payment on obtaining the first approval of any regulatory authority for the commercialization of a Licensed Product; (b) low-to-mid single digit royalties based on the future sales performance of all Licensed Products; and (c) a portion equal to a mid-twenty percent of any consideration received from any sub-licensees for the Vernalis Patents and for Vernalis know-how.

On the date of acquisition the fair value of the assumed contingent obligation was estimated as the expected value of the milestone payment, royalty payments and sub-license payments, based on management's estimate of the likely probability of success. The risk-weighted value of the assumed contingent arrangement was then discounted back to its net present value applying an effective interest rate

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

of 12%. The initial fair value of the assumed contingent obligation as of December 31, 2006 was deemed to be insignificant at the date of the acquisition, so it was not recorded.

The amount of royalties payable under the agreement is based on the future sales performance of certain products, and so the total amount payable is unlimited. The level of sales that may be achieved under the agreement is inherently uncertain and difficult to predict and the range of outcomes cannot be reliably estimated.

The value of this assumed contingent obligation is measured at amortized cost using the effective interest rate method, and is re-measured for changes in estimated cash flows, which may include charges based upon management's assessment as to the timing or the probability of achieving the various outcomes which trigger payment, or due to the time value of money, or due to changes in exchange rates, which affect the expected value of future net sales made in foreign currencies. The assumed contingent obligation is accounted for as a liability, and any adjustments made to the value of the liability will be recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income for the period.

**2.14 Government and other grants**

The Group may receive government, regional or charitable grants to support its research efforts in defined projects where these grants provide for reimbursement of approved costs incurred as defined in the respective grants. Income in respect of such grants would include contributions towards the costs of research and development. Income would be recognized when costs under each grant are incurred in accordance with the terms and conditions of the grant and the collectability of the receivable is reasonably assured. Government, regional and charitable grants relating to costs would be deferred and recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income over the period necessary to match them with the costs they are intended to compensate. When the cash in relation to recognized government, regional or charitable grants is not yet received the amount is included as a receivable on the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position.

Where the grant income is directly related to the specific items of expenditure incurred, the income would be netted against such expenditure. Where the grant income is not a specific reimbursement of expenditure incurred, the Group would include such income under "Other income" in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income. Grants or investment credits may be repayable if the Group successfully commercializes a relevant program that was funded in whole or in part by the grant or investment credit within a particular timeframe. Prior to successful commercialization, the Group would not make any provision for repayment.

**2.15 Financial instruments — initial recognition and subsequent measurement**

***Initial Recognition***

The Company classifies a financial instrument, or its component parts as a financial liability, a financial asset or an equity instrument in accordance with the substance of the contractual arrangement and the definitions of a financial liability, a financial asset and an equity instrument.

The Company evaluates the terms of the financial instrument to determine whether it contains an asset, a liability or an equity component. Such components shall be classified separately as financial assets, financial liabilities or equity instruments.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

A financial instrument is any contract that gives rise to a financial asset of one entity and a financial liability or equity instrument of another entity.

(a) Financial assets, initial recognition and measurement

All financial assets, such as receivables and deposits, are recognized initially at fair value plus transaction costs, for all financial assets not recorded at fair value through profit or loss. Financial assets carried at fair value through profit or loss are initially recognized at fair value, and transaction costs are expensed in the income statement.

(b) Financial liabilities, initial recognition and measurement

Financial liabilities are classified, at initial recognition, as financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss, loans and borrowings, or payables, as appropriate. All financial liabilities are recognized initially at fair value and, in the case of loans and borrowings and payables, net of directly attributable transaction costs.

The Company's financial liabilities include trade and other payables and derivative financial instruments.

(c) Subsequent measurement

The measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities depends on their classification.

Financial liabilities at fair value through profit or loss include financial liabilities held for trading and financial liabilities designated upon initial recognition as at fair value through profit or loss. These are subsequently measured at fair value with any gains or losses recognized in profit or loss. All other financial liabilities are measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method

Financial assets such as receivables and deposits are subsequently measured at amortized cost. The Company does not hold any financial assets at fair value through profit or loss or available for sale financial assets.

(d) Derivative financial instruments

Derivatives are initially recognized at fair value on the date a derivative contract is entered into and are subsequently re-measured at fair value at the end of each reporting date. The Company holds only one type of derivative financial instrument, the warrants, as explained in Note 2.16.

The full fair value of the derivative is classified as a non-current asset or liability when the item is more than 12 months and as a current asset or liability when the remaining maturity of the item is less than 12 months.

Changes in fair value of a derivative financial liability when related to a financing arrangement are recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income within Finance income or Finance expense. Fair value gains or losses on derivatives used for non-financing arrangements are recognized in other operating income or expense.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**2. Accounting policies (Continued)**

**2.16 Warrants**

Warrants issued by the Company to investors as part of a share subscription are compound financial instruments where the warrant meets the definition of a financial liability.

The financial liability component is initially measured at fair value in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position. Equity is measured at the residual between the subscription price for the entire instrument and the liability component. Subsequently the financial liability component is subsequently remeasured depending on its classification. Equity is not subsequently remeasured.

**2.17 Transaction costs**

Qualifying transaction costs are often incurred in anticipation of an issuance of equity instruments and may cross reporting periods. The entity defers these costs on the balance sheet until the equity instrument is recognised. Deferred costs are subsequently reclassified as a deduction from equity when the equity instruments are recognised, to the extent that the costs are directly attributable to the equity transaction. If the equity instruments are not subsequently issued, the transaction costs are expensed. Any costs not directly attributable to the equity transaction are expensed.

Transaction costs that relate to the issue of a compound financial instrument are allocated to the liability and equity components of the instrument in proportion to the allocation of proceeds. Where the liability component is held at fair value through profit or loss, the transaction costs are expensed to the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income. For liabilities held at amortized cost, transaction costs are deducted from the liability and subsequently amortized. The amount of transaction costs accounted for as a deduction from equity in the period is disclosed separately in accordance with IAS 1.

**2.18 New standards, amendments and interpretations adopted by the Group**

The following amendment has been adopted by the Group for the first time for the financial year beginning on or after January 1, 2016. It did not materially impact the Group's results:

- Annual Improvements 2014 (2012-2014 cycle)

**2.19 New standards, amendments and interpretations issued but not effective for the financial year beginning January 1, 2016 and not early adopted**

A number of new standards and amendments to standards and interpretations have been issued but are not yet effective for annual periods beginning after January 1, 2017 (noted below), and have not been adopted in preparing these consolidated financial statements.

- IFRS 9 "Financial instruments" (effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2018)
- IFRS 15 "Revenue from contracts with customers" (effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2018)
- IFRS 16 "Leases" (effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2019)

IFRS 9 is not expected to have a material impact on the accounting for the assumed contingent obligation or the derivative financial instrument. IFRS 15 and 16 will have an immaterial impact on the financial statements of the Company as the Company is not currently revenue generating and does not have any leases of over one year.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC****NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)****FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016****3. Financial Instruments****3.1 Financial Risk Factors**

The Company's activities have exposed it to a variety of financial risks: market risk (including currency risk and interest rate risk), credit risk, and liquidity risk. The Company's overall risk management program is focused on preservation of capital and the unpredictability of financial markets and has sought to minimize potential adverse effects on the Company's financial performance and position.

**(a) Currency risk**

Foreign currency risk reflects the risk that the Group's net assets will be negatively impacted due to fluctuations in exchange rates. The Group has not entered into foreign exchange contracts to hedge against gains or losses from foreign exchange fluctuations. As of December 31, 2016, cash and cash equivalents included £282 thousand, US\$13,110 thousand, and SEK 20 thousand, and accounts payable and accrued liabilities included balances of £211 thousand and US\$80 thousand.

Foreign currency denominated trade payables are short term in nature (generally 30 to 45 days). The Group has a U.S.-operation, whose net assets are exposed to foreign currency translation risk.

**(b) Credit risk**

Credit risk reflects the risk that the Group may be unable to recover contractual receivables. The Group is still in the development stage; therefore, no policies are required at this time to mitigate this risk.

For banks and financial institutions, only independently rated parties with a minimum rating of "B+" are accepted. The Directors recognize that this is an area in which they may need to develop specific policies should the Group become exposed to further financial risks as the business develops.

As of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, the majority of cash and cash equivalents were placed at the following banks:

	<u>Year ended December 31, 2015</u>	<u>Credit rating</u>	<u>Year ended December 31, 2016</u>	<u>Credit rating</u>
	<u>£'000</u>		<u>£'000</u>	
<b>Banks</b>				
Royal Bank of Scotland	63	A3	11,287	A3
Lloyds Bank	3,460	A1	28,447	A1
Wells Fargo <sup>(1)</sup>	1	Aa1	51	Aa2
<b>Total</b>	<u>3,524</u>		<u>39,785</u>	

(1) The Wells Fargo account holds the operating account for the Verona Pharma Inc. U.S. operations.

**(c) Management of capital**

The Group considers capital to be its equity reserves. At the current stage of the Group's life cycle, the Group's objective in managing its capital is to ensure funds raised meet the research and operating requirements until the next development stage of the Group's suite of projects.

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

3. Financial Instruments (Continued)

The Group ensures it is meeting its objectives by reviewing its Key Performance Indicators ("KPIs") to ensure the research activities are progressing in line with expectations, costs are controlled and unused funds are placed on deposit to conserve resources and increase returns on surplus cash held.

(d) Interest rate risk

As of December 31, 2016, the Group had cash deposits of £39,785 thousand (2015: £3,524 thousand). The rates of interest received during 2016 ranged between 0.0% and 0.5%. The Group's exposure to interest rate risk, which is the risk that the interest received will fluctuate as a result of changes in market interest rates on classes of financial assets and financial liabilities, was as follows:

Financial asset	December 31, 2016	
	Floating interest rate	Fixed Interest rate
	£	£
Cash deposits	11,338,225	28,446,873

(e) Liquidity risk

The Group prepares periodic working capital forecasts for the foreseeable future, allowing an assessment of the cash requirements of the Group, to manage liquidity risk. The following table provides an analysis of the remaining contractually agreed cash flows for the Group's non-derivative financial liabilities on an undiscounted basis, which therefore differs from both the carrying value and fair value. Balances due within 12 months equal their carrying value balances as the impact of discounting is not significant.

	LESS THAN 1 YEAR £	BETWEEN 1 AND 2 YEARS £	BETWEEN 2 AND 5 YEARS £	OVER 5 YEARS <sup>(1)</sup> £
<b>At December 31, 2015</b>				
Trade payables	1,108,991	—	—	—
Corporation tax payable — US operation	14,057	—	—	—
Trade payables due to related parties	172,955	—	—	—
Other payables	40,907	—	—	—
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,336,910</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>

(1) This table excludes a milestone payment, which may fall due under the assumed contingent obligation, of £5 million and sales based royalties.

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

3. Financial Instruments (Continued)

	LESS THAN 1 YEAR	BETWEEN 1 AND 2 YEARS	BETWEEN 2 AND 5 YEARS	OVER 5 YEARS <sup>(1)</sup>
	£	£	£	£
<b>At December 31, 2016</b>				
Trade payables	592,931	—	—	—
Corporation tax payable — US operation	126,063	—	—	—
Trade payables due to related parties	—	—	—	—
Other payables	180,567	—	—	—
<b>Total</b>	<u>899,561</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>

(1) This table excludes a milestone payment which may fall due under the assumed contingent obligation, of £5 million and sales based royalties.

3.2 Fair value estimation

The carrying amounts of cash and cash equivalents, receivables, accounts payable, accrued liabilities and the assumed contingent obligation, approximate to fair value due to their short-term nature.

For financial instruments that are measured in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position at fair value, IFRS 7 requires disclosure of fair value measurements by level of the following fair value measurement hierarchy:

- Quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities (level 1);
- Inputs other than quoted prices included within level 1 that are observable for the asset or liability, either directly or indirectly (level 2); and
- Inputs for the asset or liability that are not based on observable market data (level 3).

For the year ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 fair value adjustments to financial instruments through profit and loss resulted in the recognition of finance income of £1,068 thousand and £nil respectively.

The fair value of financial instruments that are not traded in an active market is determined by using valuation techniques. These valuation techniques maximize the use of observable market data where it is available and rely as little as possible on entity specific estimates. If all significant inputs required to ascertain the fair value of an instrument are observable, the instrument is included in level 2. If one or more of the significant inputs are not based on observable market data, the instrument is included in level 3. The carrying amount of a financial asset or financial liability is a reasonable approximation of the fair value and therefore information about the fair values of each class has not been disclosed.

	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
	£	£	£	£
<b>At December 31, 2016</b>				
Derivative financial instrument	—	—	7,922,603	7,922,603
<b>Total</b>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>7,922,603</u>	<u>7,922,603</u>

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

3. Financial Instruments (Continued)

Movements in Level 3 items during the year ended December 31, 2016 are as follows:

	Derivative financial instrument	Total
	£	£
<b>At January 1, 2016</b>	—	—
Initial recognition of derivative financial instrument	8,990,794	8,990,794
Fair value adjustments recognized in profit or loss	(1,068,191)	(1,068,191)
<b>At December 31, 2016</b>	<u>7,922,603</u>	<u>7,922,603</u>

Further details relating to the derivative financial instrument are set out in notes 4 and 21 of these financial statements.

In determining the fair value of the derivative financial instrument the Company applied the Black Scholes model; key inputs include the share price at reporting date, estimations on timelines, volatility and risk-free rates. These assumptions and the impact of changes in these assumptions, where material, are disclosed in note 21.

4. Critical accounting estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with IFRS requires the use of accounting estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of income and expenses during the reporting period. Although these estimates are based on management's best knowledge of current events and actions, actual results ultimately may differ from those estimates. IFRS also requires management to exercise its judgement in the process of applying the Group's accounting policies.

The areas involving a higher degree of judgement or complexity, or areas where assumptions and estimates are significant to the consolidated financial statements are as follows:

(a) Impairment of intangible assets

The Group is required to test goodwill and the IP R&D annually for impairment in accordance with the accounting policy in note 2.9. Goodwill and the IP R&D are tested for impairment at the Group level, which is viewed as a single CGU in accordance with the accounting policy in note 2.9.

The Group determines the recoverable amount of the single CGU and compares it to its carrying amount. Impairment is recognized when the carrying amount exceeds the recoverable amount of the CGU.

Determining the recoverable amount of the CGU, containing goodwill and IP R&D for impairment purposes requires estimation.

Since the Group is a single CGU, the entity measures its recoverable amount with reference to the market capitalization of the Group, as an indication of the fair value less costs of disposal. Details of the Group's impairment assessment for the CGU containing goodwill and IP R&D are disclosed in notes 15 and 16.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**4. Critical accounting estimates (Continued)**

(b) Share-based payments

The Group records charges for share-based payments. For option based share-based payments management estimates certain factors used in the option pricing model, including volatility, vesting date of options and number of options likely to vest. If these estimates vary from actual occurrence, this will impact the value of the equity carried in reserves. Further details of the Group's estimation of share-based payments are disclosed in note 19.

(c) Assumed contingent obligation

The Group has a material obligation for the future payment of royalties and milestones associated with contractual obligations on RPL554, a development product acquired as part of the acquisition of Rhinopharma. The estimation of the fair value of the assumed contingent obligation requires the selection of an appropriate valuation model at the date of acquisition, consideration as to the inputs necessary for the valuation model chosen, the estimation of the likelihood that the regulatory milestone will be achieved and fair value of the future cash flows (for further detail see note 20). The estimates for the assumed contingent obligation are based on a discounted cash flow model. Key assessments and judgements included in the calculation of deferred consideration are:

- development, regulatory and marketing risks associated with progressing the product to market approval in key target territories;
- market size and product acceptance by clinicians, patients and reimbursement bodies;
- gross and net selling price;
- costs of manufacturing, product distribution and marketing support;
- launch of competitive products; and
- discount rate and time to crystallization of contingent consideration.

In accordance with IAS 39 ("Financial Instruments Recognition and Measurement" (para AG8)), when there is a change in the projected cash flows, the assumed contingent obligation will be remeasured with the change in value going through the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income. The assumed contingent obligation is measured at amortized cost with the discount unwinding in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income throughout the year. Actual outcomes could differ significantly from the estimates made.

The value of the assumed contingent obligation as of December 31, 2016 amounts to £802 thousand. (2015: £594 thousand. The increase in value of the assumed contingent obligation during 2016 amounted to £208 thousand (2015: 72 thousand) and was recorded as finance expense. Periodic remeasurement is triggered by changes in updated timelines of achieving commercialization and updated probabilities of success resulting from clinical programs. The discount percentage applied is 12%.

(d) Valuation of the July 2016 warrants

The fair value is determined by applying the Black-Scholes valuation model and requires several assumptions and estimates as disclosed in note 4(d) and 12.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**4. Critical accounting estimates (Continued)**

Pursuant to the July Placement, the Company issued 31,115,926 units to new and existing investors at the placing price of £1.4365 per unit. Each unit comprises one ordinary share and one warrant. The warrants entitle the investors to subscribe for in aggregate a maximum of 12,446,370 ordinary shares.

In accordance with IAS 32 and Company accounting policy as disclosed in note 2.17, the Company classified the warrants as a derivative financial liability to be presented on the Company's Consolidated Statement of Financial Position.

The fair value of these warrants is determined by applying the Black-Scholes model. Assumptions are made on inputs such as time to maturity, the share price, volatility and risk free rate, in order to determine the fair value per warrant. For further details please see note 21.

Transaction costs arising on the issues of these shares and warrants are allocated to the equity and warrant liability components in proportion to the allocation of proceeds.

**5. Earnings per share**

Basic loss per ordinary share of 15.0p (2015: 37.1p) for the Group is calculated by dividing the loss for the year ended December 31, 2016 by the weighted average number of ordinary shares in issue of 33,499,413 as of December 31, 2016 (2015: 20,198,469). Potential ordinary shares are not treated as dilutive as the entity is loss making and such shares would be anti-dilutive.

Prior to the 50-for-1 consolidation of shares (as described in Note 1) the above numbers would read as follows: Basic loss per share of 0.30p (2015: 0.74p) for the Group is calculated by dividing the loss for the year ended December 31, 2016 by the weighted average number of ordinary shares in issue of 1,674,970,686 as of December 31, 2016 (2015: 1,009,923,481).

**6. Segmental reporting**

During 2016, there has been a change to management's assessment of the operating and reporting segments of the Group and how the Chief Operating Decision Maker reviews management information. Management has concluded that the Group's activities now consist of one operating and reportable segment: Drug development. Previously management had two reporting segments: Clinical research for RPL554 and Basic research, which contained VRP700 and NAIP. During the year ended December 31, 2015, the Group abandoned the development of the product candidates VRP700 and NAIP. As a consequence, management information is only prepared and reviewed for RPL554, resulting in a single operating and reportable segment.

All non-current assets are based in the United Kingdom.

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

7. Operating loss

	<u>Year ended</u> <u>December 31, 2015</u>	<u>Year ended</u> <u>December 31, 2016</u>
	£	£
<b>Operating Loss is stated after charging:</b>		
<b>Research and development costs:</b>		
Employee benefits (note 8)	1,322,109	2,036,505
Amortization of patents (note 15)	43,262	50,972
Loss on disposal of patents (note 15)	134,532	8
Other research and development expenses	5,768,944	2,434,335
Total research and development costs	<u>7,268,847</u>	<u>4,521,820</u>
<b>General and administrative costs:</b>		
Employee benefits (note 8)	624,821	865,250
Legal and professional fees	608,447	884,040
Amortization of computer software (note 15)	166	599
Loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment (note 14)	—	2,625
Depreciation of property, plant and equipment (note 14)	9,689	10,051
Operating lease charge — land and buildings	156,632	168,763
Loss / (gain) on variations in foreign exchange rate	20,732	139,091
Other general and administrative expenses	285,457	427,930
Total general and administrative costs	<u>1,705,944</u>	<u>2,498,349</u>
Operating loss	<u>8,974,791</u>	<u>7,020,169</u>

During the periods indicated, the Group obtained the services from and paid the fees of the Group's auditors and their associates as detailed below:

	<u>Year ended</u> <u>December 31, 2015</u>	<u>Year ended</u> <u>December 31, 2016</u>
	£	£
Audit of Verona Pharma plc and consolidated financial statements	25,000	80,000
Audit related services	—	525,000
IT services review	9,972	—
<b>Total</b>	<u>34,972</u>	<u>605,000</u>

For the year ended December 31, 2016, audit related services include assurance reporting on historical financial information included in the Company's U.S. initial public offering registration statement that was confidentially filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission on November 23, 2016. As per December 31, 2016 an amount of £466 thousand in relation to these services was booked in deferred IPO costs as they will be offset against share premium on completion of the plans to conduct a registered initial public offering in the United States (the "Global Offering") (see note 11).

## VERONA PHARMA PLC

## NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

## FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

## 8. Directors' emoluments and staff costs

	Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
The average number of employees of the Group during the year:	8	7

	Year ended December 31, 2015 £	Year ended December 31, 2016 £
<b>Aggregate emoluments of directors:</b>		
Salaries and other short-term employee benefits	854,012	1,068,529
Incremental payment for additional services	89,051	44,000
Pension costs	37,989	18,882
Total directors' emoluments	981,052	1,131,411
Share-based payment charge	231,790	256,615
Directors' emoluments including share-based payment charge	1,212,842	1,388,026

	Year ended December 31, 2015 £	Year ended December 31, 2016 £
<b>Aggregate other staff costs:</b>		
Wages and salaries	539,802	1,027,339
Social security costs	41,966	97,827
Incremental payment for additional services	—	57,917
Share-based payment charge	137,393	319,278
Pension costs	14,927	11,368
Total other staff costs	734,088	1,513,729

The Group operates a defined contribution pension scheme for U.K. employees and executive directors. The total pension cost during the year ended December 31, 2016 was £30 thousand (2015: £53 thousand). There were no prepaid or accrued contributions to the scheme at December 31, 2016.

## 9. Finance income and expense

	Year ended December 31, 2015 £	Year ended December 31, 2016 £
<b>Finance income:</b>		
Interest received on cash balances	44,791	86,542
Foreign exchange gain on translating foreign currency denominated bank balances	—	686,549
Fair value adjustment on derivative financial instruments (note 21)	—	1,068,191
Total finance income	44,791	1,841,282

## VERONA PHARMA PLC

## NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

## FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

## 9. Finance income and expense (Continued)

	Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
	£	£
<b>Finance expense:</b>		
Transaction costs allocated to the issue of warrants (note 21)	—	585,425
Remeasurement of assumed contingent arrangement (note 20)	9,239	123,554
Unwinding of discount factor related to the assumed contingent arrangement (note 20)	63,052	84,711
<b>Total finance expense</b>	<u>72,291</u>	<u>793,690</u>

## 10. Taxation

	Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
	£	£
<b>Analysis of tax credit for the year</b>		
Current tax:		
UK and US tax	(1,520,732)	(937,772)
Adjustment in respect of prior periods	11,284	(16,412)
<b>Total tax credit</b>	<u>(1,509,448)</u>	<u>(954,184)</u>
<b>Factors affecting the tax charge for the year</b>		
Loss on ordinary activities	(9,002,291)	(5,972,577)
Multiplied by standard rate of corporation tax of 20% (2015: 20.25%)	(1,822,964)	(1,194,515)
Effects of:		
Non-deductible expenses	113,529	78,489
Research and development incentive	(599,368)	(427,304)
Timing differences not recognized	(1,880)	(4,131)
Difference in overseas tax rates	—	55,581
Tax losses carried forward not recognized	789,951	554,108
	<u>(1,520,732)</u>	<u>(937,772)</u>
Adjustment in respect of prior periods	11,284	(16,412)
<b>Total tax credit</b>	<u>(1,509,448)</u>	<u>(954,184)</u>

UK corporation tax is charged at 20% (2015: 20.25%) and U.S. federal tax at 35% (2015: 35%).

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

10. Taxation (Continued)

Deferred tax

The following tables represent deferred tax balances recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Financial Position, and the movements in both the deferred tax asset and the deferred tax liability.

	Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
	£	£
Deferred tax assets	265,000	249,749
Deferred tax liabilities	(265,000)	(249,749)
Net balances	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>

	Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
	£	£
<b>Movements on the deferred tax asset</b>		
January 1	294,000	265,000
Impact of rate changes	(29,000)	(15,251)
December 31	<u>265,000</u>	<u>249,749</u>

	Year ended December 31, 2015	Year ended December 31, 2016
	£	£
<b>Movements on the deferred tax liability</b>		
January 1	(294,000)	(265,000)
Impact of rate changes	29,000	15,251
December 31	<u>(265,000)</u>	<u>(249,749)</u>

Factors that may affect future tax charges

The Group has UK tax losses available for offset against future profits in the UK. However an additional deferred tax asset has not been recognized in respect of such items due to uncertainty of future profit streams. As of December 31, 2016, the unrecognized deferred tax asset at 17% is estimated to be £3,149 thousand (2015: £2,819 thousand at 18%).

11. Prepayments and other receivables

	As of December 31, 2015	As of December 31, 2016
	£	£
Prepayments and accrued income	196,313	1,360,812
Deferred IPO costs	—	1,526,829
Other receivables	316,987	70,946
Total prepayments and other receivables	<u>513,300</u>	<u>2,958,587</u>

Deferred IPO costs relate to the Global Offering. These costs will be offset against share premium in the period in which the Global Offering is completed.

## VERONA PHARMA PLC

## NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

## FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

## 11. Prepayments and other receivables (Continued)

The prepayments balance includes prepayments for insurance and clinical activities.

There are no impaired assets within prepayments and other receivables.

## 12. Cash and cash equivalents

	As of December 31, 2015	As of December 31, 2016
	£	£
Cash at bank and in hand	3,524,387	39,785,098

The increase in cash during 2016 resulted from the July Placement.

## 13. Trade and other payables

	As of December 31, 2015	As of December 31, 2016
	£	£
Trade payables	1,108,991	718,994
Trade payables due to related parties	172,955	—
Other payables	40,907	54,504
Accruals	475,829	2,049,991
Total trade and other payables	1,798,682	2,823,489

As of December 31, 2016 accruals include £890 thousand related to expenses associated with the Global Offering.

## 14. Property, plant and equipment

	Computer hardware	Office equipment	Total
	£	£	£
<b>Cost</b>			
At January 1, 2015	41,302	36,461	77,763
Additions	1,193	—	1,193
At December 31, 2015	42,495	36,461	78,956
<b>Accumulated depreciation</b>			
At January 1, 2015	35,890	20,214	56,104
Charge for the year	2,664	7,025	9,689
At December 31, 2015	38,554	27,239	65,793
<b>Net book value</b>			
At December 31, 2015	3,941	9,222	13,163

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

14. Property, plant and equipment (Continued)

	<u>Computer hardware</u> £	<u>Office equipment</u> £	<u>Total</u> £
<b>Cost</b>			
At January 1, 2016	42,495	36,461	78,956
Additions	13,351	—	13,351
Disposals	(38,845)	(36,461)	(75,306)
At December 31, 2016	<u>17,001</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>17,001</u>
<b>Accumulated depreciation</b>			
At January 1, 2016	38,554	27,239	65,793
Charge for the year	3,027	7,024	10,051
Disposals	(38,418)	(34,263)	(72,681)
At December 31, 2016	<u>3,163</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>3,163</u>
<b>Net book value</b>			
At December 31, 2016	<u>13,838</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>13,838</u>

15. Intangible assets

	<u>IP R&amp;D</u> £	<u>Computer software</u> £	<u>Patents</u> £	<u>Total</u> £
<b>Cost</b>				
At January 1, 2015	1,469,112	23,934	515,569	2,008,615
Additions	—	637	141,239	141,876
Disposal	—	—	(174,944)	(174,944)
At December 31, 2015	<u>1,469,112</u>	<u>24,571</u>	<u>481,864</u>	<u>1,975,547</u>
<b>Accumulated amortization</b>				
At January 1, 2015	—	23,746	135,029	158,775
Charge for year	—	166	43,262	43,428
Disposal	—	—	(40,412)	(40,412)
At December 31, 2015	<u>—</u>	<u>23,912</u>	<u>137,879</u>	<u>161,791</u>
<b>Net book value</b>				
At December 31, 2015	<u>1,469,112</u>	<u>659</u>	<u>343,985</u>	<u>1,813,756</u>

## VERONA PHARMA PLC

## NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

## FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

## 15. Intangible assets (Continued)

	<u>IP R&amp;D</u>	<u>Computer</u>	<u>Patents</u>	<u>Total</u>
	<u>£</u>	<u>software</u>	<u>£</u>	<u>£</u>
	<u>£</u>	<u>£</u>	<u>£</u>	<u>£</u>
<b>Cost</b>				
At January 1, 2016	1,469,112	24,571	481,864	1,975,547
Additions	—	4,750	109,757	114,507
Disposal	—	(23,982)	—	(23,982)
At December 31, 2016	<u>1,469,112</u>	<u>5,339</u>	<u>591,621</u>	<u>2,066,072</u>
<b>Accumulated amortization</b>				
At January 1, 2016	—	23,912	137,879	161,791
Charge for year	—	599	50,972	51,571
Disposal	—	(23,974)	—	(23,974)
At December 31, 2016	<u>—</u>	<u>537</u>	<u>188,851</u>	<u>189,388</u>
<b>Net book value</b>				
At December 31, 2016	<u>1,469,112</u>	<u>4,802</u>	<u>402,770</u>	<u>1,876,684</u>

Intangible assets comprise patents, computer software and an IP R&D asset that arose on the acquisition of Rhinopharma and investment in patents to protect RPL554.

IP R&D is currently not amortized and is reviewed for impairment on an annual basis or where there is an indication that the assets might be impaired until the asset is brought into use.

Patents are amortized over a period of ten years and are regularly reviewed for impairment to ensure the carrying amount exceeds the recoverable amount in accordance with note 2.9.

Recognizing that the Company is still in pre-revenue phase and that the research projects are not yet ready for commercial use, the Company assesses the recoverable amount of the CGU containing the IP R&D with reference to the Company's market capitalization as of December 31, 2016, the date of testing of goodwill impairment. The market capitalization of the Company was approximately £80 million as of December 31, 2016, compared to the Company's net assets of £34.5 million. Therefore, no impairment was recognized.

## 16. Goodwill

	<u>As of</u>	<u>As of</u>
	<u>December 31, 2015</u>	<u>December 31, 2016</u>
	<u>£</u>	<u>£</u>
Goodwill at January 1 and December 31	<u>441,000</u>	<u>441,000</u>

Goodwill represents the excess of the purchase price over the fair value of the net assets acquired in connection with the acquisition of Rhinopharma in September 2006. Goodwill is not amortized, but is tested annually for impairment. Annual impairment testing is performed by comparing the expected recoverable amount of the CGU to the carrying amount of the CGU to which goodwill has been allocated to the carrying amount of the CGU. See notes 2.9, 4 and 15 to these consolidated financial statements.

## VERONA PHARMA PLC

## NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

## FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

## 17. Share Capital

The movements in the Company's share capital are summarized below:

Date	Description	Number of shares	Share Capital amounts in £
January 1, 2015	Brought forward	1,009,923,481	1,009,923
<b>December 31, 2015</b>		<b>1,009,923,481</b>	<b>1,009,923</b>
July 29, 2016	Issuance of shares	1,555,796,345	1,555,796
September 12, 2016	Exercise of options	166,667	167
October 24, 2016	Exercise of options	166,667	167
December 28, 2016	Exercise of options	2,000,000	2,000
<b>December 31, 2016</b>		<b>2,568,053,160</b>	<b>2,568,053</b>

As disclosed in note 23, on February 8, 2017 the board of the Company approved a share consolidation where every 50 existing ordinary shares of £0.001 were consolidated into one ordinary share of £0.05. The retrospective effect of this share consolidation on the Company's share capital movements during the year is summarized below:

Date	Description	Number of shares	Share Capital amounts in £
January 1, 2015	Brought forward	20,198,469	1,009,923
<b>December 31, 2015</b>		<b>20,198,469</b>	<b>1,009,923</b>
July 29, 2016	Issuance of shares	31,115,926	1,555,796
September 12, 2016	Exercise of options	3,334	167
October 24, 2016	Exercise of options	3,334	167
December 28, 2016	Exercise of options	40,000	2,000
<b>December 31, 2016</b>		<b>51,361,063</b>	<b>2,568,053</b>

The total number of authorized ordinary shares, with a nominal value of £0.05 each, is 200,000,000 (share capital of £10,000,000). All 51,361,063 ordinary shares at December 31, 2016 are allotted, unrestricted, called up and fully paid.

On July 29, 2016, the Company issued 31,115,926 units to new and existing investors at the placing price of £1.4365 per unit. Each unit comprises one ordinary share and one warrant (with an entitlement to subscribe for 0.4 of an ordinary share at a per share exercise price of 120% of the placing price or £1.7238). The warrants entitle the investors to subscribe for in aggregate a maximum of 12,446,370 shares. The gross proceeds received of £44.7 million were in exchange for both ordinary shares and the warrants. During 2016, the Company issued 46,666 ordinary shares (2015: nil) upon exercise of employee share options.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**18. Related parties transactions**

The Company entered into relationship agreements with Vivo Capital Fund VIII ("Vivo Capital"), Orbimed Private Investments VI L.P. ("Orbimed"), Abingworth Bioventures VI L.P. ("Abingworth") and Arix Bioscience plc ("Arix"), Arthurian Life Sciences SPV GP Limited, ("Arthurian"). As agreed in these relationship agreements, the above parties invested in the Company as part of the July Placement, and the Company agreed to appoint representatives designated by Vivo Capital, OrbiMed, Arix and Arthurian, and Abingworth to the board of directors, who are Dr. Mahendra Shah, Mr. Rishi Gupta, Dr. Ken Cunningham and Dr. Andrew Sinclair, respectively.

These agreements will continue in effect after the consummation of the Global Offering, except that the appointment rights within the relationship agreement with Arix and Arthurian have been terminated. The respective appointment rights under the remaining relationship agreements will automatically terminate upon (i) Vivo Capital, OrbiMed or Abingworth (or any of their associates), as applicable, ceasing to beneficially hold 6.5% of the issued ordinary shares, or (ii) the ordinary shares ceasing to be admitted to AIM.

The Company also has a management rights agreement with Novo A/S under which Novo A/S is entitled to appoint an observer to the Board until the earlier to occur of the Company's intended NASDAQ listing or a sale by Novo A/S of 50% of its shares in the Company.

The Company entered into a shareholder agreement with the Wales Life Sciences Investment Fund ("WLSIF") in connection with the March 2014 financing under which the Company has certain obligations to the WLSIF, including the obligation to maintain the registered office in Wales and to carry out certain other activities in Wales.

For the year ended December 31, 2015, the Company was charged £2,376 thousand by Simbec-Orion in respect of clinical and pre-clinical support and research services, a group of which Prof. Trevor Jones is a Director. As of December 31, 2015, the Company owed £173 thousand to this related party. Prof. Trevor Jones was a Director of the Company until September 2015. During 2016, there were no transactions with Simbec-Orion or any other related parties. As of December 31, 2016, there were no outstanding balances to related parties.

The Directors have authority and responsibility for planning, directing and controlling the activities of the Group and they therefore comprise key management personnel as defined by IAS 24, ("Related Party Disclosures"). Remuneration of Directors and senior management is disclosed in the Directors' emoluments report in note 8.

**19. Share-based payments charge**

In accordance with IFRS 2 "Share Based Payments," the cost of equity-settled transactions is measured by reference to their fair value at the date at which they are granted. Where equity-settled transactions were entered into with third party service providers, fair value is determined by reference to the value of the services provided. For other equity-settled transactions fair value is determined using the Black-Scholes model. The cost of equity-settled transactions is recognized over the period until the award vests. No expense is recognized for awards that do not ultimately vest. At each reporting date, the cumulative expense

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**19. Share-based payments charge (Continued)**

recognized for equity-based transactions reflects the extent to which the vesting period has expired and the number of awards that, in the opinion of the Directors at that date, will ultimately vest.

The costs of equity-settled share-based payments to employees are recognized in the Statement of Comprehensive Loss, together with a corresponding increase in equity during the vesting period. During the twelve months ended December 31, 2016, the Company recognized a share-based payment expense of £576 thousand (2015: £399 thousand). The charge is included within both general and administrative costs as well as in research and development costs and represents the current year's allocation of the expense for relevant share options.

The Company grants share options under an Unapproved Share Option Scheme (the "Unapproved Scheme") and under its tax efficient EMI Option Scheme (the "EMI Scheme"). Under the Unapproved Scheme, options are granted to employees, directors and consultants to acquire shares at a price to be determined by the Directors which is typically set at a price that is above the share price at the date of the grant. In general, options are granted at a premium to the share price at the date of grant and vest over a period of three years from the date of the grant in two different methods. The first method is with one half vesting over 24 months and the other half vesting over 36 months. The second method is one third vesting over one year, the second third vesting over two years and the final third vesting over three years. The vesting period is defined as the period between the date of grant and the date when the options become exercisable. The options are exercisable during a period ending ten years after the date of grant. Options also are issued to advisors under the Unapproved Scheme. Such options generally vest immediately and are exercisable between one and two years after grant. Under the EMI Scheme, options are granted to employees and directors who are contracted to work at least 25 hours a week for the Company or for at least 75% of their working time. The options granted under the EMI Scheme are exercisable at a price that is above the share price at the date of the grant and in accordance with a vesting schedule determined by the Directors at the time of grant and have an exercise period of ten years from the date of grant.

In the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company granted 32,000 (2015: 102,000) share options under the EMI Scheme and 1,670,000 (2015: 550,000) share options under the Unapproved Scheme. The total fair values were estimated either by reference to the fair value of the services provided in respect of equity-settled transactions that were entered into with third-party service providers, or using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model for other equity-settled transactions and amounted to £1,927 thousand (2015: £371 thousand). The cost is amortized over the vesting period of the options on a straight-line basis.

Prior to the July Placement, management determined to take an option's contractual maximum life as an input into the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. Starting from the July Placement and in line with the continued development of the Company's clinical trials, the Company determined the time to maturity to be used in the valuation model to be better represented by the weighted-average life of the options granted.

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

19. Share-based payments charge (Continued)

The following assumptions were used for the Black-Scholes valuation of share options granted in 2015 and 2016. For the options granted under the Unapproved Scheme the table indicates the ranges used in determining the fair-market values, aligning with the various dates of the underlying grants. The volatility is calculated using historic weekly averages of the Company's share price over a period that is in line with the expected life of the options.

	EMI Scheme Employees	Unapproved Scheme Employees
<b>Issued in 2015</b>		
Options granted	102,000	550,000
Risk-free interest rate	1.42%	1.42%
Expected life of options	10 years	10 years
Annualized volatility	76.5%	76.5%
Dividend rate	0.00%	0.00%
<b>Issued in 2016</b>		
Options granted	32,000	1,670,000
Risk-free interest rate	1.42%	0.23% - 1.42%
Expected life of options	10 years	5.5 - 10 years
Annualized volatility	88.0%	74.3% - 88.0%
Dividend rate	0.00%	0.00%

The Company had the following share options movements in the year ended December 31, 2016:

Year of issue	Exercise price (£)	At January 1, 2016	Options granted	Options exercised	Options forfeited	Options expired	At December 31, 2016	Expiry date
2006	2.50	160,000	—	—	—	(160,000)	—	September 18, 2016*
2012	2.50 - 7.50	100,000	—	—	—	—	100,000	June 1, 2022
2013	2.40	100,000	—	—	—	(100,000)	—	January 31, 2016**
2013	2.00	100,000	—	—	—	—	100,000	April 15, 2023
2013	2.00	20,000	—	—	—	—	20,000	June 1, 2023***
2013	2.00	160,000	—	—	—	—	160,000	July 29, 2023
2014	1.75	110,000	—	—	—	—	110,000	May 15, 2024
2014	1.75	70,000	—	—	(6,667)	—	63,333	May 15, 2024***
2014	1.10	120,000	—	(40,000)	(80,000)	—	—	September 26, 2024***
2014	1.10 - 1.75	200,000	—	—	—	—	200,000	August 6, 2018****
2015	1.25	102,000	—	(6,666)	(13,334)	—	82,000	January 29, 2025***
2015	1.25	550,000	—	—	(40,000)	—	510,000	January 29, 2025
2016	2.00	—	260,000	—	—	—	260,000	February 2, 2026
2016	2.00	—	32,000	—	(10,000)	—	22,000	February 2, 2026***
2016	1.80	—	810,000	—	—	—	810,000	August 3, 2026
2016	1.89	—	300,000	—	—	—	300,000	September 13, 2026
2016	2.04	—	300,000	—	—	—	300,000	September 16, 2026
<b>Total</b>		<u>1,792,000</u>	<u>1,702,000</u>	<u>(46,666)</u>	<u>(150,001)</u>	<u>(260,000)</u>	<u>3,037,333</u>	

\* 200,000 directors' options with an expiry date on September 18, 2011 were extended for five years to September 18, 2016 (40,000 of these options expired during 2015)

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)**

**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016**

**19. Share-based payments charge (Continued)**

- \*\* Options granted to agents upon closing of a placing or financing facility.
- \*\*\* Options granted under the EMI Scheme.
- \*\*\*\* Valued based on fair value of services received.

The average fair value at grant date, by year of grant and plan, of the exercisable options as per December 31, 2016 is presented in the below table.

<u>Year of issue</u>	<u>EMI Scheme</u>	<u>Unapproved Scheme</u>
2012	0.63 - 1.20	—
2013	0.83	0.79 - 0.95
2014	0.76	0.23 - 0.76
2015	0.57	0.57
2016	1.35	0.93 - 1.35

Outstanding and exercisable share options by scheme as of December 31, 2016:

<u>Plan</u>	<u>Outstanding</u>	<u>Exercisable</u>	<u>Weighted average exercise price in £ for Outstanding</u>	<u>Weighted average exercise price in £ for Exercisable</u>
Unapproved	2,790,000	616,667	1.78	1.65
EMI	247,333	180,666	2.90	3.37
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,037,333</b>	<b>797,333</b>	<b>1.87</b>	<b>2.04</b>

The options outstanding at December 31, 2016 had a weighted average remaining contractual life of 8.2 years (2015: 6.6 years). For 2015 and 2016, the number of options granted and expired and the weighted average exercise price of options were as follows:

	<u>Number of options</u>	<u>Weighted average exercise price (£)</u>
<b>At January 1, 2015</b>	<b>1,203,114</b>	<b>2.12</b>
Options granted in 2015:		
Employees	312,000	1.25
Directors	340,000	1.25
Options expired in the year	(63,114)	2.71
<b>At December 31, 2015</b>	<b>1,792,000</b>	<b>1.78</b>
<b>Exercisable at December 31, 2015</b>	<b>846,666</b>	<b>2.24</b>

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

19. Share-based payments charge (Continued)

	Number of options	Weighted average exercise price (£)
<b>At January 1, 2016</b>	1,792,000	1.78
Options granted in 2016:		
Employees	1,002,000	1.92
Directors	700,000	2.05
Options exercised in the year	(46,666)	1.12
Options forfeited in the year	(150,001)	1.24
Options expired in the year	(260,000)	2.46
<b>At December 31, 2016</b>	<u>3,037,333</u>	1.87
<b>Exercisable at December 31, 2016</b>	<u>797,333</u>	2.04

20. Assumed contingent obligation related to the business combination

The value of the assumed contingent obligation as of December 31, 2016 amounts to £802 thousand. (2015: £594 thousand). The increase in value of the assumed contingent obligation during 2016 amounted to £208 thousand (2015: £72 thousand) and was recorded as finance expense. Periodic remeasurement is triggered by changes in updated timelines of achieving commercialization and updated probabilities of success resulting from clinical programs. In 2016 remeasurement was triggered by the success of the results of the Company's Phase 2a clinical trials which were presented in March 2016. The discount percentage applied is 12%.

	2015 £	2016 £
January 1, 2016	521,650	593,941
Re-measurement of assumed contingent obligation	9,239	123,554
Unwinding of discount factor	63,052	84,710
December 31, 2016	<u>593,941</u>	<u>802,205</u>

The table below describes the reported change to the value of the liability during 2016 of £208 thousand (2015: £72 thousand) compared to what this number would be following the presented variations to the underlying assumptions:

	2015 £	2016 £
Change in value of the assumed contingent obligation, in £ thousand	£ 72	£ 208
1% lower discount rate %	£ 73	£ 216
1% higher discount rate %	£ 71	£ 201
10% lower revenue assumption	£ 69	£ 202
10% higher revenue assumption	£ 75	£ 215
1% lower risk assumption	£ 70	£ 216
1% higher risk assumption	£ 75	£ 201

**VERONA PHARMA PLC****NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)****FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016****21. Warrants**

Pursuant to the July Placement the Company issued 31,115,926 units to new and existing investors at the placing price of £1.4365 per unit. Each unit comprises one ordinary share and one warrant.

The warrant holders can subscribe for 0.4 of an ordinary share at a per share exercise price of 120% of the placing price or £1.7238. The warrant holders can opt for a cashless exercise of their warrants. The warrant holders can choose to exchange the warrants held for reduced number of warrants exercisable at nil consideration. The reduced number of warrants is calculated based on a formula considering the share price and the exercise price of the shares. The warrants were therefore classified as a derivative financial liability, since their exercise might result into a variable number of shares to be issued.

The warrants entitle the investors to subscribe for in aggregate a maximum of 12,446,370 shares. The warrants can be exercised on the earlier of the consummation of the Global Offering or the first anniversary of the grant, and the exercise period shall end on the fifth anniversary of such date.

The ordinary share and warrant were accounted for as a compound financial instrument. The warrants component of the instrument issued at the July Placement were classified as a derivative financial liability and were initially measured at fair value of £8,991 thousand. The residual amount of proceeds totaling £35,707,235 has been recognized within equity. Subsequently the financial liability was re-measured at the reporting date at fair value through profit or loss. A change in fair value of £1,068 thousand is recognized in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income within finance income.

The residual value of the proceeds less the fair value of the financial instrument of £8,991 thousand was attributed to the equity component of the instrument.

The total of transaction costs the Company incurred for the above transactions amounted to £2,910 thousand of which £585 thousand was allocated to the warrants and the remaining £2,325 thousand has been presented as a reduction to share premium, by reference to the proceeds allocated to each component. The amount assigned to the financial liability of the warrants was subsequently presented as finance expense in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income.

The table below presents the assumptions in applying the Black-Scholes model to determine the fair value of the warrants at date of recognition and the reporting date of December 31, 2016. For valuation purposes at recognition the Company used the closing share price on July 29, 2016.

<b>Issued in 2016</b>	<b>At recognition on July 29, 2016</b>	<b>At December 31, 2016</b>
Warrants	12,446,370	12,446,370
Exercise price	£1.7238	£1.7238
Risk-free interest rate	0.039%	0.088%
Expected life of options	2.86 years	2.43 years
Annualized volatility	82.61%	73.53%
Dividend rate	0.00%	0.00%

The figures disclosed above relating to the issue of the shares and warrants have been retrospectively adjusted to reflect the 50-for-1 share consolidation as described in note 23. The original number of units issued to new and existing investors was 1,555,796,345 units at a placing price of 2.873 pence per unit

VERONA PHARMA PLC

NOTES TO THE CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Continued)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2016

21. Warrants (Continued)

and an exercise price of 3.4476 pence per share. This entitled the investors to subscribe for in aggregate a maximum of 622,318,538 shares.

As per the reporting date the Company updated the underlying assumptions and calculated a fair value of these warrants amounting to £7,923 thousand. The variance of £1,068 thousand is recorded as finance income in the Consolidated Statement of Comprehensive Income.

	<u>Derivative financial instrument</u>	<u>Total</u>
	£	£
<b>At January 1, 2016</b>	—	—
Derivative Financial instrument issued following the July Placement	8,990,794	8,990,794
Fair value adjustments recognized in profit or loss	<u>(1,068,191)</u>	<u>(1,068,191)</u>
<b>At December 31, 2016</b>	<u>7,922,603</u>	<u>7,922,603</u>

For the amount recognized at December 31, 2016, the effect, when some of these underlying parameters would deviate up or down, is presented in the below table.

	<u>Volatility (up / down 10% pts)</u>	<u>Time to maturity (up / down 6 months)</u>
	£	£
Variable up	8,972,313	8,686,827
<b>Base case, reported fair value</b>	<b>7,922,603</b>	<b>7,922,603</b>
Variable down	6,825,999	7,046,248

22. Financial commitments

As of December 31, 2016, the Group was committed to making the following payments under non-cancellable operating leases related to its facilities.

	<u>Land and Buildings</u>	<u>Land and Buildings</u>
	<u>2015</u>	<u>2016</u>
	£	£
Operating leases which expire:		
Within one year	151,240	270,350
Beyond one year	—	—
Total	<u>151,240</u>	<u>270,350</u>

23. Events after the reporting date

On February 8, 2017 the board of the Company approved a share consolidation where every 50 existing ordinary shares of £0.001 each shall be consolidated into one ordinary share of £0.05. Prior to the consolidation the total number of issued shares as at December 31, 2016 would read as a total of 2,568,053,160 shares and after the consolidation this number would read as a total of 51,361,063 shares. Earnings per share information in these consolidated financial statements has been retrospectively adjusted, to reflect the consolidation as if it had occurred at the beginning of the earliest period presented.

---

**Ordinary Shares**  
**(including Ordinary Shares in the form**  
**of American Depositary Shares)**



**Verona Pharma**

---

**PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS**

---

**Jefferies**

**Stifel**

**Wedbush PacGrow**

**SunTrust Robinson Humphrey**

, 2017

Until , 2017 (25 days after the date of this prospectus), all dealers that buy, sell or trade ADSs or ordinary shares, whether or not participating in the global offering, may be required to deliver a prospectus. This delivery requirement is in addition to the dealers' obligation to deliver a prospectus when acting as underwriters and with respect to their unsold allotments or subscriptions.

---

---

## PART II — INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN THE PROSPECTUS

### Item 6. Indemnification of directors and officers

Members of the registrant's board of directors and its officers have the benefit of the following indemnification provisions in the registrant's Articles of Association:

Current and former members of the registrant's board of directors or officers shall be reimbursed for:

- (a) all costs, charges, losses, expenses and liabilities sustained or incurred in relation to his or her actual or purported execution of his or her duties in relation to the registrant, including any liability incurred in defending any criminal or civil proceedings; and
- (b) expenses incurred or to be incurred in defending any criminal or civil proceedings, in an investigation by a regulatory authority or against a proposed action to be taken by a regulatory authority, or in connection with any application for relief under the statutes of the United Kingdom and any other statutes that concern and affect the registrant as a company, or collectively the Statutes, arising in relation to the registrant or an associated company, by virtue of the actual or purposed execution of the duties of his or her office or the exercise of his or her powers.

In the case of current or former members of the registrant's board of directors, there shall be no entitlement to reimbursement as referred to above for (i) any liability incurred to the registrant or any associated company, (ii) the payment of a fine imposed in any criminal proceeding or a penalty imposed by a regulatory authority for non-compliance with any requirement of a regulatory nature, (iii) the defense of any criminal proceeding if the member of the registrant's board of directors is convicted, (iv) the defense of any civil proceeding brought by the registrant or an associated company in which judgment is given against the director, and (v) any application for relief under the statutes of the United Kingdom and any other statutes that concern and affect the registrant as a company in which the court refuses to grant relief to the director.

In addition, members of the registrant's board of directors and its officers who have received payment from the registrant under these indemnification provisions must repay the amount they received in accordance with the Statutes or in any other circumstances that the registrant may prescribe or where the registrant has reserved the right to require repayment.

The underwriting agreement the registrant will enter into in connection with the offering of ADSs being registered hereby provides that the underwriters will indemnify, under certain conditions, the registrant's board of directors and its officers against certain liabilities arising in connection with the U.S. offering.

### Item 7. Recent sales of unregistered securities

#### *Issuance of Capital Stock*

- On March 25, 2014, the registrant issued 12,746,496 ordinary shares to certain new and existing investors for aggregate consideration of £14.0 million.
- On July 29, 2016, the registrant issued 31,115,926 units, with each unit consisting of one ordinary share and a warrant to purchase 0.4 of an ordinary share, to certain new and existing investors for aggregate consideration of £44.7 million.

## [Table of Contents](#)

Since January 1, 2014, the registrant has granted stock options to purchase an aggregate of 2,654,000 ordinary shares with exercise prices ranging from £1.10 to £3.30 per share, to certain employees and directors in connection with services provided to the registrant by such parties, as follows:

<b>Grant Date</b>	<b>Number of options</b>	<b>Exercise price per share</b>
May 15, 2014	180,000	£ 1.75
November 11, 2014	120,000	£ 1.10
January 29, 2015	652,000	£ 1.25
February 9, 2016	192,000	£ 2.00
February 9, 2016	100,000	£ 3.30
August 3, 2016	810,000	£ 1.80
September 13, 2016	300,000	£ 1.89
September 26, 2016	300,000	£ 2.04

### **Warrants**

- On August 6, 2014, the registrant issued a warrant to purchase 200,000 ordinary shares to its nominated advisor at an exercise price of £1.10 for 133,333 ordinary shares and £1.75 for the remaining 66,667 ordinary shares.
- On July 29, 2016, the registrant issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 12,446,370 ordinary shares to certain new and existing investors at an exercise price of £1.7238.

All of the foregoing issuances were made outside of the United States pursuant to Regulation S or to U.S. entities pursuant to Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act.

### **Item 8. Exhibits and financial statements**

- (a) **Exhibits.** The exhibits to this registration statement are listed in the Exhibit Index to this registration statement and incorporated herein by reference.
- (b) **Financial Statement Schedules.** Schedules have been omitted because the information required to be set forth therein is not applicable or is shown in our combined financial statements or the notes thereto.

### **Item 9. Undertakings**

- (a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes to provide to the underwriters at the closing specified in the underwriting agreement, certificates in such denominations and registered in such names as required by the underwriter to permit prompt delivery to each purchaser.
- (b) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer, or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question of whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

[Table of Contents](#)

- (c) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that:
- (1) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
  - (2) For the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form F-1 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in London, the United Kingdom on April 3, 2017.

VERONA PHARMA PLC

By: /s/ JAN-ANDERS KARLSSON

Name: Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D.  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below hereby constitutes and appoints Jan-Anders Karlsson and Piers Morgan and each of them, individually, as his true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him and in his name, place and stead in any and all capacities, in connection with this registration statement, including to sign in the name and on behalf of the undersigned, this registration statement and any and all amendments thereto, including post-effective amendments and registrations filed pursuant to Rule 462 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto such attorneys-in-fact and agents full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the premises, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents, or his substitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons on April 3, 2017 in the capacities indicated:

<u>Name</u>	<u>Title</u>
<u>/s/ JAN-ANDERS KARLSSON</u> Jan-Anders Karlsson, Ph.D.	Chief Executive Officer and Member of the Board (Principal Executive Officer)
<u>/s/ PIERS MORGAN</u> Piers Morgan	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer)
<u>/s/ DAVID EBSWORTH</u> David Ebsworth, Ph.D.	Chairman of the Board
<u>/s/ KEN CUNNINGHAM</u> Ken Cunningham, M.D.	Member of the Board

[Table of Contents](#)

<u>Name</u>	<u>Title</u>
<hr/> <i>/s/</i> PATRICK HUMPHREY Patrick Humphrey, D.Sc.	Member of the Board
<hr/> <i>/s/</i> RISHI GUPTA Rishi Gupta	Member of the Board
<hr/> <i>/s/</i> ANDREW SINCLAIR Andrew Sinclair, Ph.D.	Member of the Board
<hr/> <i>/s/</i> VIKAS SINHA Vikas Sinha	Member of the Board
<hr/> <i>/s/</i> ANDERS ULLMAN Anders Ullman, M.D., Ph.D.	Member of the Board

**SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED U.S. REPRESENTATIVE OF REGISTRANT**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, the undersigned, the duly authorized representative in the United States of Verona Pharma plc has signed this registration statement on April 3, 2017.

By: /s/ COLLEEN A. DEVRIES

---

Name: Colleen A. DeVries  
Title: SVP on behalf of National Corporate  
Research, Ltd.

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Exhibit Description</b>
1.1*	Form of Underwriting Agreement
3.1	Articles of Association, as amended and as currently in effect
4.1*	Form of Deposit Agreement
4.2*	Form of American Depositary Receipt (included in Exhibit 4.1)
4.3	Form of Warrant issued to each of the investors named in Schedule A thereto
4.4	Warrant Instrument issued to NPlus1 Singer LLP
5.1	Opinion of Latham & Watkins LLP
10.1	Registration Rights Agreement dated July 29, 2016 by and among Registrant and the investors set forth therein
10.2†	Intellectual Property Assignment and Licence Agreement between Vernalis Development Limited and Rhinopharma Limited, as predecessor to Registrant, dated February 7, 2005
10.3	Lease by and between the Registrant and Regus Management (UK) Limited dated October 17, 2014 and related Renewal Agreements dated September 30, 2015 and October 1, 2016
10.3.1	Lease by and between the Registrant and Regus Management (UK) Limited dated October 26, 2016
10.3.2	Lease by and between the Registrant and Regus Management (UK) Limited dated October 26, 2016
10.4#	EMI Option Scheme
10.5#	Unapproved Share Option Scheme, as amended
10.6#	Employment Agreement, dated April 30, 2012, as amended, between Registrant and Jan-Anders Karlsson
10.7#	Offer Letter, dated December 15, 2014, as amended, between Registrant and Kenneth Newman
10.8#	Employment Agreement, dated September 24, 2016, between Registrant and Piers John Morgan
10.9#	Employment Agreement, dated October 1, 2016, between Registrant and Claire Poll
10.10#	Employment Agreement, dated October 1, 2016, as amended, between Registrant and Peter Spargo
10.11	Form of Indemnification Agreement for board members and executive officers
10.12	Relationship Agreement relating to Verona Pharma plc, dated July 29, 2016, by and among the Registrant, OrbiMed Private Investments VI, LP and NPlus1 Singer Advisory LLP
10.13	Relationship Agreement relating to Verona Pharma plc, dated July 29, 2016, by and among the Registrant, Abingworth Bioventures VI LP and NPlus1 Singer Advisory LLP
10.14	Relationship Agreement relating to Verona Pharma plc, dated July 29, 2016, by and among the Registrant, Vivo Ventures Fund VII, L.P., Vivo Ventures VII Affiliates Fund, L.P., Vivo Ventures Fund VI, L.P., Vivo Ventures VI Affiliates Fund, L.P. and NPlus1 Singer Advisory LLP

[Table of Contents](#)

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Exhibit Description</b>
10.15#	Form of 2017 Incentive Award Plan and forms of award agreements thereunder, to be effective the day prior to the listing of our ADSs on NASDAQ
10.16#	Employment Agreement, dated March 27, 2017, between Registrant and Richard Hennings
16.1	Letter of UHY Hacker Young, dated December 20, 2016, regarding change in the Registrant's independent registered public accounting firm
21.1	List of Subsidiaries
23.1	Consent of independent registered public accounting firm
23.2	Consent of Latham & Watkins LLP (included in Exhibit 5.1)
24.1	Powers of Attorney (included on signature page to the registration statement)
99.1	Request for Waiver from Requirements of Form 20-F, Item 8.A.4, dated January 27, 2017
*	To be filed by amendment.
†	Portions of this exhibit (indicated by asterisks) have been omitted pursuant to a request for confidential treatment and this exhibit has been filed separately with the SEC.
#	Indicates senior management contract or compensatory plan.



No: 5375156

**THE COMPANIES ACT 2006**

---

**PUBLIC COMPANY LIMITED BY SHARES**

---

**ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION**

- of -

**Verona Pharma plc**

(as adopted by Special Resolution  
on 8<sup>th</sup> February 2017)

---

1	PRELIMINARY	1
2	BUSINESS	3
3	CAPITAL	3
4	SHARE RIGHTS	4
5	SHARE CERTIFICATES	5
6	CALLS ON SHARES	6
7	FORFEITURE	7
8	LIEN	9
9	TRANSFER OF SHARES	9
10	TRANSMISSION OF SHARES	11
11	FAILURE TO DISCLOSE INTERESTS IN SHARES	12
12	STOCK	17
13	ALTERATIONS TO CAPITAL	17
14	MODIFICATION OF CLASS RIGHTS	18
15	GENERAL MEETINGS	19
16	NOTICE OF GENERAL MEETINGS	19
17	PROCEEDINGS AT GENERAL MEETINGS	20
18	VOTES OF MEMBERS	23
19	TERMINATION OF PROXY'S AUTHORITY	27
20	CORPORATIONS ACTING BY REPRESENTATIVES AT MEETINGS	27
21	DIRECTORS	27
22	INTERESTS OF DIRECTORS	28
23	MANAGING AND OTHER EXECUTIVE DIRECTORS	34
24	POWERS OF DIRECTORS	34
25	POWERS OF BORROWING AND MORTGAGING	36
26	ROTATION, RETIREMENT AND REMOVAL OF DIRECTORS	36
27	PROCEEDINGS OF THE BOARD	38
28	ALTERNATE DIRECTORS	40
29	THE SEAL	41
30	SECRETARY	41
31	AUTHENTICATION OF DOCUMENTS	42
32	REGISTERS	42
33	DIVIDENDS	42
34	CAPITALISATION OF PROFITS AND RESERVES	46
35	ACCOUNTS	47
36	AUDIT	48
37	UNTRACED SHAREHOLDERS	48

---

38	NOTICES	49
39	WINDING UP	52
40	INDEMNITY	52
41	POWER TO APPOINT A PRESIDENT OF THE COMPANY	53
42	SHARE WARRANTS	53

---

**THE COMPANIES ACT 2006**

---

**PUBLIC COMPANY LIMITED BY SHARES**

---

**ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION**

- of -

**Verona Pharma plc**

(as adopted by Special Resolution  
on 8<sup>th</sup> February 2017)

---

**1 PRELIMINARY**

**1.1** The following regulations shall be the Articles of Association of the Company and the regulations contained in the Model Articles of Association applicable to the Company under or pursuant to the 2006 Act, or in Table A in the schedule to The Companies (Tables A to F) Regulations 1985 and in any Table A applicable to the Company under any former enactment relating to companies, shall not apply to the Company except in so far as they are repeated or contained in these Articles.

**1.2** In these Articles:

“**the 2006 Act**” means the Companies Act 2006 including any modification or re-enactment thereof for the time being in force;

“**these Articles**” means these Articles of Association as herein contained or as from time to time altered;

“**the Board**” means the board of Directors of the Company or the Directors present at a duly convened meeting of Directors at which a quorum is present;

“**certificated share**” means a share which is not an uncertificated share and references to a share held in certificated form shall be construed accordingly;

“**clear days**” means, in relation to the period of a notice, that period excluding the day when the notice is received or deemed to be received and the day for which it is given or on which it is to take effect;

“**the Company**” means Verona Pharma plc;

“**communications**” shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2000;

“**Depository**” means the holder of a share for the time being held on behalf of another person on the terms of a depository agreement or a depository receipt or a similar document;

“**the Directors**” means the directors for the time being of the Company;

“**electronic communication**” shall have the same meaning as in Section 1168 of the 2006 Act;

“**electronic form**” and “**electronic means**” have the meaning given to them in Section 1169 of the 2006 Act;

“**executed**” means executed under seal, under hand or in any other way;

“**General Meeting**” means a general meeting of the Members of the Company;

“**the Group**” means the Company and any company which is for the time being its holding company and any company which is for the time being a subsidiary of the Company or of such holding company;

“**the London Stock Exchange**” means the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**Member**” means in respect of any share in the Company the person or person named for the time being in the Register as the holder(s) thereof;

“**Month**” means calendar month;

“**NASDAQ**” means the market known as NASDAQ operated by The NASDAQ OMX Group, Inc.;

“**NASDAQ Rules**” means the rules of NASDAQ;

“**the Office**” means the registered office for the time being of the Company;

“**Ordinary Shares**” means ordinary shares of one twentieth of a pound Sterling (£0.05) each in the Company;

“**Paid Up**” means paid up and/or credited as paid up;

“**the Prescribed Rate**” means an annual rate of interest equal to four per cent. above the base lending rate (or any equivalent thereof or successor thereto) published from time to time by Barclays Bank plc in London, but not exceeding a maximum rate of 15 per cent. being the base lending rate in effect at the close of business in London on the day immediately preceding the day on which such rate falls to be determined;

“**recognised person**” means a recognised clearing house or a nominee of a recognised clearing house or of a recognised investment exchange who is designated as mentioned in Section 778(2) of the 2006 Act;

“**the Register**” means the register of Members of the Company;

“**the Regulations**” means the Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001 (SI 2001 No. 3755);

“**the relevant system**” means the computer-based system, and procedures, which enable title to units of a security to be evidenced and transferred without a written instrument, and which facilitate supplementary and incidental matters in accordance with the Regulations;

“**the Seal**” means the common seal of the Company;

“**the Secretary**” means the secretary of the Company and (subject to the provisions of the Act) any joint assistant or deputy secretary and any person

appointed by the Directors to perform any of the duties of the secretary;

“**the Statutes**” means the 2006 Act and every other statute (including any orders, regulations or other subordinate legislation made under them) for the time being in force concerning companies and affecting the Company;

“**Sterling**” and “£” means the lawful currency of the United Kingdom;

“**uncertificated**” means in relation to any share or other security of the Company that title to it is evidenced and transferred by means of the relevant system;

“**the United Kingdom**” means Great Britain and Northern Ireland; and

“**in Writing**” means written, printed, lithographed, or photographed, or visibly expressed in all or any of these or any other modes of representing or reproducing words, including materials transmitted by electronic communications which are capable of being printed out in hard copy plain text format.

- 1.3 Words importing the singular number only shall include the plural number, and vice versa.
- 1.4 Words importing the masculine gender only shall include the feminine gender.
- 1.5 Words importing persons shall include corporations.
- 1.6 The expressions “**share**” and “**shareholder**” shall include stock and stockholder. The expressions “**debenture**” and “**debenture holder**” shall include debenture stock and debenture stockholder.
- 1.7 Subject as aforesaid, any words or expressions defined in the Statutes or the Regulations shall (except where the subject or context forbids) bear the same meaning in these Articles.
- 1.8 References to any Statute, statutory provision or regulation shall be construed as relating to any statutory modification or reenactment for the time being in force.
- 1.9 The headings contained in these Articles are included for convenience only and shall not affect the construction of these Articles.
- 1.10 A special resolution shall be effective for any purpose for which an ordinary resolution is expressed to be required under any provisions of these Articles.

## 2 BUSINESS

- 2.1 Any branch or kind of business which by these Articles, is either expressly or by implication authorised to be undertaken by the Company may be undertaken by the Company at such time as the Board shall think fit, and further, may be suffered by them to be in abeyance, whether such branch or kind of business may have been actually commenced or not, so long as the Board may deem it expedient not to commence or proceed with such branch or kind of business.

## 3 CAPITAL

- 3.1 Without prejudice to any special rights or privileges, including those conferring rights of pre-emption, for the time being conferred on the holders

of any class of shares (which special rights shall not be modified, varied or abrogated except with such consent or sanction as is provided for by Article 14.1), any share in the Company (whether forming part of the present capital or not) may be issued with or have attached thereto such preferred, deferred, or other special rights or privileges, or subject to such conditions or restrictions, whether in regard to dividend, return of capital, voting or otherwise, as the Company may from time to time by ordinary resolution direct, or failing such direction or such specific direction, as the Board may determine.

3.2 The liability of the Members is limited to the amount, if unpaid, on the shares held by them.

#### 4 SHARE RIGHTS

- 4.1 Save as expressly permitted by Statutes the Company shall not give financial assistance, whether directly or indirectly, for the purpose of the acquisition of any shares in the Company or its holding company (if any) or for reducing or discharging any liability incurred for the purpose of any such acquisition.
- 4.2 Subject to the Statutes and to the authority of the Company in General Meeting required by the Statutes, the Directors shall have unconditional authority to allot, grant options or warrants over, offer or otherwise deal with or dispose of any unissued shares of the Company (whether forming part of the original or any increased capital) to such persons, at such times and generally on such terms and conditions as the Directors may determine.
- 4.3 The Company may in connection with the issue of any shares or sale for cash of treasury shares exercise all powers of paying commission and brokerage conferred or permitted by the Statutes. In addition to all other powers of paying commissions, the Company (or the Board on behalf of the Company) may exercise the powers conferred by the Statutes in applying its shares or capital moneys in paying commissions to persons subscribing or procuring subscriptions for shares of the Company or agreeing so to do, whether absolutely or conditionally, provided that the percentage rate or the amount of the commission paid or agreed to be paid shall be disclosed in the manner required by the Statutes and shall not exceed 10% of the price at which the shares in respect whereof the commission is paid are issued or an amount equivalent thereto. The Company (or the Board on behalf of the Company) may also, on any issue of shares, pay such brokerage as may be lawful.
- 4.4 If two or more persons are registered as joint holders of any share, any one of such persons may give effectual receipts for any dividend or other moneys payable in respect of such share.
- 4.5 The Company shall keep the Register and such other registers and associated indices in relation to its Members as may be required by the Statutes and shall maintain such registers and indices in accordance with the Statutes. Save as required by the Statutes or provided by these Articles or otherwise required by law, no person shall be recognised by the Company as holding any share upon any trust, and the Company shall not be bound by or required to recognise any equitable, contingent, future or partial interest in any share or (except only as by these Articles otherwise expressly provided or as by the Statutes required or pursuant to an order of Court) any right whatsoever in respect of any share, other than an absolute right to the entirety thereof in the registered holder.
- 4.6 Subject to the provisions of the Statutes and to any rights conferred on the holders of any other shares, the Company may:

- (a) with the sanction of a special resolution issue shares which are to be redeemed or are liable to be redeemed at the option of the Company or of the shareholder on such terms and in such manner as may be provided by these Articles save that the date on or by which, or dates between which, any such shares are to be or may be redeemed may be fixed by the Board (and if so fixed, the date or dates must be fixed before the shares are issued); and
- (b) with the authority of such ordinary or special resolution as may be required by the Statutes, purchase its own shares (including any redeemable shares) or enter into such agreement (contingent or otherwise) in relation to the purchase of all or any of its own shares on such terms and in such manner as may be approved by such resolution and permitted by the Statutes, provided that no purchase by the Company of its own shares will take place unless it has been sanctioned by the holders of any class of shares in the capital of the Company in accordance with Article 14.1.

## 5 SHARE CERTIFICATES

- 5.1 Every Member (except a recognised person in respect of whom the Company is not by law required to complete and have ready for delivery a certificate) shall without payment be entitled to receive within 2 months after the allotment of shares to him or lodgement of a transfer of shares duly stamped (or adjudicated as exempt from stamp duty) to or by him (or within such other period as the conditions of issue shall provide) one certificate for all the certificated shares of each class registered or remaining registered in his name, provided that in the case of joint holders the Company shall not be bound to issue more than one certificate to all the joint holders, and delivery of such certificate to any one of them shall be sufficient delivery to all. Any two or more certificates representing shares of any one class held by any Member may at his request be cancelled and a single new certificate for such shares issued in lieu without charge. In the case of shares held jointly by several persons any such request mentioned in this Article may only be made by the joint holder who is first named in the Register. Every definitive share certificate shall be issued under the Seal (or a securities seal or, in the case of shares on a branch register, an official seal for use in the relevant territory) any of which seals may be affixed by laser printer or in such other manner as the Board having regard to the terms of issue, the Statutes and the London Stock Exchange may authorise, or signed (whether personally or otherwise and including by facsimile signature, howsoever applied) by a director and the secretary or by two directors, and shall specify the number and class of shares to which it relates and the amount paid up thereon. No definitive certificate shall be issued representing shares of more than one class. Unless the Directors otherwise determine no definitive certificate shall be issued in respect of shares held by a recognised clearing house or a nominee of a recognised clearing house or a recognised investment exchange. Where a holder of any share has transferred a part of the shares comprised in his holding, he shall be entitled to a certificate for the balance without charge.
- 5.2 If any such certificate is worn out, defaced, destroyed or lost, it may be replaced by a new certificate without payment (other than exceptional out of pocket expenses) on such evidence being produced as the Board may require and, in the case of wearing out or defacement, on delivery up of the old certificate and in the case of destruction or loss on execution of such indemnity (if any) as the Board may require prior to the issue of a replacement certificate. The Company shall be entitled to destroy any old certificate which has been replaced.

- 5.3** The Board may by resolution decide, either generally or in any particular case or cases, that any signatures or certificates for shares or any form of security at any time issued by the Company need not be autographic but may be applied to the certificate by some mechanical means or may be printed on them or that the certificates need not be signed by any person.
- 5.4** The Directors are authorised:
- (a) to issue any securities of the Company which may be held, evidenced and transferred through a relevant system in uncertificated form; and
  - (b) to convert any securities of the Company into securities held in uncertificated form, and vice versa, in accordance with the Statutes and the Regulations.
- 5.5** Unless otherwise determined by the Directors and permitted by the Regulations, no person shall be entitled to receive a certificate in respect of any share for so long as the title to that share is evidenced otherwise than by a certificate and for so long as transfers of that share may be made otherwise than by a written instrument by virtue of the Regulations. The Directors shall have power to implement any arrangements they may, in their absolute discretion, think fit in relation to the evidencing and transfer of uncertificated shares (subject always to the Regulations and the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned).
- 5.6** Conversion of certificated shares into uncertificated shares and vice versa, may be made in such manner as the Directors may, in their absolute discretion, think fit (subject always to the Regulations and the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned).
- 5.7** The Company shall enter on the Register how many shares are held by each member in uncertificated form and in certificated form and shall maintain the Register in each case as is required by the Regulations and the relevant system concerned. Unless the Directors otherwise determine, holdings of the same holder or joint holders in certificated form and uncertificated form shall be treated as separate holdings.
- 5.8** A class of share shall not be treated as two classes by virtue only of that class comprising both certificated shares and uncertificated shares or as a result of any provision of these Articles or the Regulations which apply only in respect of certificated shares or uncertificated shares.
- 5.9** Neither the Company nor the relevant system shall be bound to register more than four persons as the joint holders of a share, except in the case of executors or trustees of a deceased member.
- 5.10** The provisions of Articles 5.1 and 5.2 shall not apply to uncertificated shares.

## **6 CALLS ON SHARES**

- 6.1** The Board may, subject to the provisions of these Articles and to any conditions of issue, from time to time make such calls upon the Members in respect of all moneys unpaid on their shares (whether on account of the nominal value of the shares or by way of premium) as it thinks fit, provided that no call on any share shall be payable within 1 month from the date fixed for the payment of the last preceding call and that 14 days' notice at least is given of each call specifying the time or times, place of payment and the amount called on the Members' shares, and each Member shall be liable to

pay the amount of every call so made upon him to the persons and at the times and places appointed by the Board.

- 6.2 A call may be made payable by instalments.
- 6.3 A call shall be deemed to have been made as soon as the resolution of the Board authorising such call shall have been passed and an entry in the minute book of a resolution of the Board making the call shall be conclusive evidence of the making of the call.
- 6.4 A call may be revoked or postponed as the Board may determine.
- 6.5 The joint holders of a share shall be jointly and severally liable to pay all calls and instalments in respect thereof.
- 6.6 If on the day appointed for payment thereof a call or instalment payable in respect of a share is not paid, the person from whom the amount of the call is due shall pay interest on such amount at the Prescribed Rate from the day appointed for payment thereof to the date of actual payment, but the Board shall have power to waive payment of or remit such interest or any part thereof.
- 6.7 Any sum which by the terms of issue of a share is made payable upon allotment or at any fixed date whether on account of the amount of the share or by way of premium shall for all purposes of these Articles be deemed to be a call duly made and payable on the date fixed for payment and in case of non-payment, the provisions of these Articles as to payment of interest and expenses forfeiture and the like and all other relevant provisions of the Statutes or of these Articles shall apply as if such sum were a call duly made and notified as hereby provided.
- 6.8 The Board may make arrangements upon the issue of shares for different conditions to apply as between the holders of such shares either as to the amount of calls to be paid or the time of payment of such calls with respect to such shares or both.
- 6.9 The Board may receive from any Member willing to advance the same, all or any part of the moneys due upon his shares beyond the sums actually called up thereon, and upon all or any of the moneys so advanced the Board may (until the same would, but for such advance, become presently payable) pay or allow such interest (not exceeding, without the consent of a General Meeting, the Prescribed Rate) as may be agreed between it and such Member, in addition to the dividend payable upon such part of the shares in respect of which such advance has been made as is actually called up. No sum paid up in advance of calls shall entitle the holder of a share in respect thereof to any portion of a dividend subsequently declared in respect of any period prior to the date upon which such sum would but for such payment become presently payable.
- 6.10 No Member shall be entitled to receive any dividend or to be present or vote at any General Meeting or upon a poll or to exercise any right or privilege as a Member, until he shall have paid all calls for the time being due and payable on every share held by him, whether alone or jointly with any other person, together with interest and expenses in respect of such calls.

## 7 FORFEITURE

- 7.1 If a Member or person entitled by transmission fails to pay in full any call or instalment of a call on or before the day appointed for payment thereof, the

Board may at any time thereafter serve a notice on him requiring payment of so much of the call or instalment as is unpaid, together with any interest and expenses which may have accrued or been incurred by the Company by way of such non-payment.

- 7.2** The notice shall name a further day (not being less than 14 days from the date of service of the notice) on or before which, and the place where, the payment required by the notice is to be made, and shall state that in the event of non-payment in accordance therewith the shares on which the call was made will be liable to be forfeited.
- 7.3** If the requirements of any such notice as aforesaid are not complied with, any share in respect of which such notice has been given may at any time thereafter, before payment of all calls and interest and expenses due in respect thereof has been made, be forfeited by a resolution of the Board to that effect. Such forfeiture shall include all dividends declared in respect of the forfeited share and not actually paid before forfeiture. The Board may accept a surrender of any share liable to be forfeited hereunder in lieu of forfeiture and the provisions of these Articles shall apply to any share so surrendered as if it had been forfeited.
- 7.4** Subject to the provisions of the Statutes a share so forfeited or surrendered shall become the property of the Company and may be sold, re-allotted or otherwise disposed of either to the person who was before such forfeiture or surrender the holder thereof or entitled thereto, or to any other person, upon such terms and in such manner as the Board shall think fit. At any time before a sale, re-allotment or disposal the forfeiture or surrender may be cancelled on such terms as the Board may think fit. Any share not disposed of in accordance with this Article within a period of 3 years from the date of forfeiture or surrender shall, at the expiry of that period, be cancelled in accordance with the provisions of the Statutes. The Board may, if necessary, authorise some person to transfer a forfeited or surrendered share to any such other person as aforesaid.
- 7.5** A Member whose shares have been forfeited or surrendered shall cease to be a Member in respect of such shares (and shall surrender to the Company for cancellation the certificate for such shares), but shall notwithstanding the forfeiture or surrender remain liable to pay to the Company all moneys which at the date of forfeiture or surrender were presently payable by him to the Company in respect of the shares with interest thereon at the Prescribed Rate, and he shall remain liable to satisfy all (if any) of the claims and demands which the Company might have enforced in respect of the time of the forfeiture or surrender without any reduction or allowance for the value of the shares at the time of forfeiture or surrender or for any consideration received on this disposal, but his liability shall cease if and when the Company shall have received payment in full of all such moneys in respect of the shares. The Board may, if it thinks fit, waive the payment of all or part of such money and/or the interest payable thereon.
- 7.6** The forfeiture or surrender of a share shall involve the extinction at the time of the forfeiture or surrender of all interest in and all claims and demands against the Company in respect of the share and all other rights and liabilities incidental to the share as between the holder whose share is forfeited or surrendered and the Company, except only such of those rights and liabilities as are by the Articles expressly saved, or as are by the Statutes given or imposed in the case of past members.

## 8 LIEN

- 8.1** The Company shall have a first and paramount lien upon every share (not being a fully paid share) registered in the name of any Member, either alone or jointly with any other person, for his or his estate's debts liabilities and engagements, whether solely or jointly with any other person, to or with the Company in respect of that share, whether the period for the payment, fulfilment or discharge thereof shall have actually arrived or not. Such lien shall extend to all dividends from time to time declared in respect of every such share and any interest payable on such share but the Board may at any time declare any share to be exempt, wholly or partially, from the provisions of this Article.
- 8.2** For the purposes of enforcing such lien the Company may sell in such manner as the Board thinks fit any share on which the Company has a lien, but no sale shall be made unless some sum in respect of which the lien exists is presently payable, nor until the expiration of 14 days after a notice in writing, stating and demanding payment of the sum presently payable, and giving notice of intention to sell in default, shall have been given to the holder for the time being of the share or the person entitled thereto by transmission.
- 8.3** The net proceeds of such sale after payment of the costs of such sale shall be applied in or towards payment or satisfaction of the debt or liability in respect whereof the lien exists, so far as the same is presently payable, and any residue shall (subject to a like lien for debts or liabilities not presently payable as existed upon the shares prior to the sale) be paid to the holder at the time of the sale. For giving effect to any such sale the Board may authorise some person to transfer the shares sold to the purchaser thereof.
- 8.4** A statutory declaration in writing (or the use of the alternative procedure laid down in the 2006 Act that the declarant is the Secretary or a Director of the Company and that a share has been duly forfeited or surrendered or sold to satisfy a lien of the Company on a date stated in the declaration shall be conclusive evidence of the facts therein stated as against all persons claiming to be entitled to the share and such declaration and the receipt of the Company for the consideration (if any) given for the share on the sale, re-allotment or disposal thereof together with the share certificate delivered to a purchaser or allottee thereof shall (subject to the execution of a transfer if the same be required) constitute a good title to the share, and the person to whom the share is sold, re-allotted or disposed of shall be registered as the holder of the share and shall not be bound to see to the application of the purchase money (if any) nor shall his title to the share be affected by any irregularity or invalidity in the proceedings with reference to the forfeiture, surrender, sale, re-allotment or disposal of the share.

## 9 TRANSFER OF SHARES

- 9.1** All transfers of uncertificated shares shall be made in accordance with and be subject to the Regulations and the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned and, subject thereto, in accordance with any arrangements made by the Directors pursuant to Articles 5.4 and 5.5.
- 9.2** Subject to the conditions and restrictions contained in these Articles, any Member may transfer all or any of his certificated shares by instrument of transfer but not more than one class of shares shall be transferred by one instrument of transfer.
- 9.3** Every transfer of a certificated share must be in writing in the usual common

---

form or in such other form as the Board may approve, and need not be under seal. The instrument of transfer of a certificated share shall be executed by or on behalf of the transferor and (except in the case of fully paid shares) by or on behalf of the transferee but need not be under seal.

- 9.4** In relation to all transfers of shares, the transferor shall be deemed to remain the holder of the shares concerned until the name of the transferee is entered in the Register in respect thereof.
- 9.5** The Directors may refuse to register any transfer of certificated shares unless the instrument of transfer:
- (a) is duly stamped and deposited at the office of the Registrar of the Company for the time being, (or such other place as the Directors may appoint) accompanied by the certificate for the shares to which it relates (except in the case of a transfer by a recognised person to whom a certificate has not been issued) and such other evidence as the Directors may reasonably require to show the right of the transferor to make the transfer; and
  - (b) is in respect of only one class of shares.
- 9.6** The Directors may, in their absolute discretion refuse to register any transfer of any share which is not fully paid or on which the Company has a lien provided that such refusal does not prevent dealings in the shares from taking place on an open and proper basis.
- 9.7** The Directors may also refuse to register a transfer of any share (whether a certificated share or not and whether fully paid or not):
- (a) to an entity which is not a natural or legal person;
  - (b) to a minor, to a person in respect of whom a receiving order or adjudication order in bankruptcy has been made which remains undischarged or to a person who is then suffering from mental disorder and where any of the events specified in Articles 26.1(c) or (d) have occurred in relation to him; or
  - (c) to be held jointly by more than 4 persons.
- 9.8** The Directors may also refuse to register a transfer of uncertificated shares in such other circumstances as may be permitted by the Regulations and the requirements of the relevant system concerned.

- 9.9** If the Board refuses to register a transfer of any shares it shall send to the transferee notice of the refusal, as required by Section 771 of the 2006 Act, within 2 months after the date on which, in respect of certificated shares, the transfer was lodged with the Company, or, in respect of uncertificated shares, the date on which the appropriate instruction was received by or on behalf of the Company, in each case in accordance with the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned.
- 9.10** No fee shall be charged for registration of a transfer, probate, letters of administration, certificate of marriage or death, stop notice, power of attorney or other document relating to or affecting the title to any share or for making any entry in the Register affecting the title to any share.
- 9.11** All instruments of transfer which are registered may be retained by the Company, but any instrument of transfer which the Board refuses to register

shall (except in case of fraud) be returned to the person depositing the same when refusal is given. Subject as hereinbefore provided the Company shall be entitled to destroy all instruments of transfer of shares and other supporting documents which have been registered at any time after the expiration of 6 years from the date of registration thereof and all dividend mandates and notification of changes of address or name and all registered share certificates which have been cancelled, and notifications of change of name or address, at any time after the expiration of 1 year from the date of cancellation thereof and it shall conclusively be presumed in favour of the Company that every instrument of transfer so destroyed was a valid and effective instrument duly and properly registered and that every share certificate so destroyed was a valid certificate duly and properly cancelled provided that:

- (a) the provisions aforesaid shall apply only to the destruction of documents in good faith and without express notice of any claim (regardless of the parties thereto) to which the document might be relevant;
- (b) nothing herein contained shall be construed as imposing on the Company any liability in respect of the destruction of any such documents earlier than as aforesaid or in any case where the conditions of Article 9.11(a) above are not fulfilled;
- (c) references herein to instruments of transfer shall include, in relation to uncertificated shares, instructions and/or notifications made in accordance with the relevant system concerned relating to the transfer of such shares;
- (d) in relation to uncertificated shares, the provisions herein shall apply only to the extent the same are consistent with the Regulations; and
- (e) references herein to the destruction of any documents include references to the disposal thereof in any manner.

Provided that the regulations made from time to time under the Statutes so permit, nothing in these Articles shall require title to any securities of the Company to be evidenced or transferred by any written instrument. The Board shall have the power to implement any arrangements it may think fit for such evidencing and transfer which accord with those regulations.

- 9.12** Nothing in these Articles shall preclude the Board, before an allottee has been entered in the Register as the holder, from recognising a renunciation of the allotment of any share by the allottee in favour of some other person and may accord to any allottee of a share a right to effect such renunciation upon and subject to such terms and conditions as the Directors may think fit to impose.

## **10 TRANSMISSION OF SHARES**

- 10.1** In case of the death of a Member the survivors or survivor where the deceased was a joint holder, and the executors or administrators of the deceased where he was a sole or only surviving holder, shall be the only persons recognised by the Company as having any title to his interest in the shares but nothing in these Articles shall release the estate of a deceased holder (whether sole or joint) from any liability in respect of any share held by him.
- 10.2** Any person becoming entitled to a share in consequence of the death or

bankruptcy of a Member may upon such evidence as to title being provided as may from time to time be required by the Board and subject as hereinafter provided either be registered himself as holder of the share upon giving to the Company notice in writing of his desire to such effect or transfer such share to some other person. All the limitations, restrictions and provisions of these presents relating to the right to transfer and the registration of transfers of shares shall be applicable to any such notice or transfer as aforesaid as if the death or bankruptcy of the Member had not occurred and the notice or transfer were a transfer executed by such Member.

- 10.3** Save as otherwise provided by or in accordance with these Articles, a person becoming entitled to a share in consequence of the death or bankruptcy of a Member shall (upon supplying to the Company such evidence as the Board may reasonably require as to his title to the share) be entitled to receive, and may give a discharge for, all benefits arising or accruing on or in respect of the share and the same dividends and other advantages to which he would be entitled if he were the registered holder of the share except that he shall not be entitled in respect thereof to exercise any right in respect of such share to attend or vote at the General Meeting of the Company or to any of the rights and privileges of a Member until he shall have been registered as a Member in respect of the share, provided always that the Board may at any time give notice requiring any such person to elect either to be registered himself or to transfer the share and if within 60 days the notice is not complied with such person shall be deemed to have elected to be registered as a Member in respect thereof and may be registered accordingly.

## **11 FAILURE TO DISCLOSE INTERESTS IN SHARES**

- 11.1** With the authority of the Directors, the Company may serve on any Member, or any other person appearing to be interested in shares held by that Member, a notice requiring disclosure pursuant to Section 793 of the 2006 Act in relation to all or any number of the shares which that Member holds or to which that other person is entitled or interested.
- 11.2** If a Member, or any other person appearing to be interested in shares held by that Member, has been issued with a notice requiring disclosure pursuant to Section 793 of the 2006 Act and has failed in relation to any shares (“**the default shares**”) to give the Company the information thereby required in the form of a disclosure statement within the prescribed period from the date of the notice requiring disclosure, the following sanctions shall apply unless the Board otherwise determines:
- (a) the Member or any transferee who acquires shares other than by an excepted transfer shall not be entitled in respect of the default shares and any other share held by the Member or the transferee to receive notice of or be present or to vote (either in person or by representative or proxy) at any General Meeting or at any separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares, or on any poll or to exercise any other right conferred by membership in relation to any such meeting or poll; and
  - (b) where the default shares represent at least 0.25% in nominal value of the issued shares of their class, excluding shares held in treasury;
    - (i) any dividend or other money payable in respect of the default shares shall, in whole or part, be withheld by the Company, which shall not have any obligation to pay interest on it, and the Member shall not be entitled to elect to receive Ordinary Shares instead of that dividend when that right to elect exists; and

- (ii) no transfer, other than an excepted transfer, of any shares held by the Member shall be registered unless:
  - (A) the Member is not himself in default as regards supplying the information required; and
  - (B) the Member proves to the satisfaction of the Board that no person in default as regards supplying such information is interested in any of the shares the subject of the transfer; and/or
- (iii) any shares held by such Member in uncertificated form shall forthwith be converted into certificated form (and the Directors shall be entitled to direct the operator of the relevant system applicable to those shares to effect that conversion immediately) and that Member shall not after that be entitled to convert all or any shares held by him into uncertificated form (except with the authority of the Directors) unless:
  - (A) the Member is not himself in default as regards supplying the information required; and
  - (B) the Member proves to the satisfaction of the Board that after due and careful enquiry the Member is satisfied that none of the shares he is proposing to convert into uncertificated form are default shares.

**11.3** Sanctions imposed on shares shall only be effective if the Company despatches a restriction notice to the relevant Member, or person appearing to be interested in shares held by that Member, on the day after the end of the prescribed period or on the next following business day.

**11.4** Where the sanctions under Article 11.2 apply in relation to any shares, they shall cease to have effect (and any dividends withheld under Article 11.2(b) shall become payable) on the earlier of:

- (a) the shares being transferred by means of an excepted transfer; and
- (b) at the end of the period of 7 days (or such shorter period as the Board may determine) following receipt by the Company of a disclosure statement required by the notice mentioned in Article 11.1 above, despite being received after the end of the prescribed period, and the Board being fully satisfied that such information in such statement is full and complete.

**11.5** In addition, the Directors may by resolution:

- (a) suspend all or any sanctions which have been imposed on default shares under this Article 11, either as regards all those default shares or some only of them, either permanently or for a particular period and either unconditionally or on terms; and/or
- (b) pay, issue or transfer to a trustee for application in accordance with Article 11.7 below any distribution in respect of any default shares which are subject to a sanction concerning distributions.

**11.6** The Company shall give written notice to the relevant Member, or other

person appearing to be interested in shares held by that Member, of any resolution passed by the Directors under the previous paragraph.

- 11.7** Distributions which are not paid or made as a result of sanctions having been imposed on default shares shall be paid or made, but without any interest or other compensation, on the date on which the shares cease to be subject to the sanctions.
- 11.8** Shares allotted in right of shares which are subject to a sanction shall, on allotment, become subject to the same sanction; for this purpose shares which the Company procures to be offered to shareholders pro rata (or pro rata ignoring fractional entitlements and shares not offered to certain shareholders because of legal or practical problems associated with offering shares outside the United Kingdom) shall be treated as shares allotted in right of other shares.
- 11.9** Where, on the basis of information obtained from a Member in respect of any share held by him, the Company issues a notice requiring disclosure pursuant to Section 793 of the 2006 Act to any other person, it shall at the same time send a copy of the said notice to the Member, but the accidental omission to do so, or the non-receipt by the Member of the copy, shall not invalidate or otherwise affect the application of this Article 11.
- 11.10** Where default shares in which a person appears to be interested are held by a Depositary, the provisions of this Article 11 shall be treated as applying only to those shares held by the Depositary in which such person appears to be interested and not (insofar as such person's apparent interest is concerned) to any other shares held by the Depositary.
- 11.11** Where the Member on which a notice requiring disclosure under Section 793 of the 2006 Act is served is a Depositary acting in its capacity as such, the obligations of the Depositary as a Member of the Company shall be limited to disclosing to the Company such information relating to any person appearing to be interested in the shares held by it as has been recorded by it pursuant to the arrangements entered into by the Company or approved by the Board pursuant to which it was appointed as a Depositary.
- 11.12** No officer of the Company shall incur any liability to any person as a result of sanctions having been imposed on shares or of his having taken, or refrained from taking, other action under or in connection with this Article.
- 11.13** The following are responsible for ensuring that a disclosure statement is accurate, complete and not misleading:
- (a) each declarant;
  - (b) each person signing the statement on behalf of a declarant;
- and, if two or more persons are so responsible, or are responsible in connection with several disclosure statements made pursuant to the same notice requiring disclosure, their responsibility is joint and several.
- 11.14** For the purposes of this Article 11:
- (a) a person, other than the Member holding a share, shall be treated as appearing to be interested in that share if the Member has informed the Company that the person is, or may be, so interested, or if the Company (after taking account of any information obtained from the

Member or, pursuant to a notice requiring disclosure under Section 793 of the 2006 Act, from anyone else) knows or has reasonable cause to believe that the person is, or may be, so interested;

- (b) **“interested”** shall be construed as it is for the purpose of Section 793 of the 2006 Act;
- (c) reference to a person having failed to give the Company the information required by a notice requiring disclosure, or being in default as regards supplying such information in a disclosure statement, includes reference:
  - (i) to his having failed or refused to give all or any part of it; and
  - (ii) to his having given information which he knows to be false in a material particular or having recklessly given information which is false in a material particular;
- (d) **“a disclosure statement”** means a notice which is addressed to the Company and its Directors, signed by or on behalf of one or more persons (**“the declarants”**) and
  - (i) states whether or not the declarant or, in the case of several declarants, each of them has an interest in certain shares and, if so, provides full details of the nature of his interest and the date and manner of its acquisition;
  - (ii) specifies, in relation to any declarant who is an individual, his name and address; and
  - (iii) specifies in relation to any declarant which is an undertaking:
    - (A) its name and address;
    - (B) whether or not another undertaking is a parent undertaking in relation to that declarant;
    - (C) if so, the name and address of the parent undertaking or, in the case of several parent undertakings, the names and addresses of each of them; and
    - (D) if there is a parent undertaking, whether or not any individual or undertaking (other than another such parent undertaking) owns or holds 15 per cent. or more of the shares or the voting rights in that or each such parent undertaking and, if so, the name and address of that or each such individual or undertaking.

References above to the address of an individual are to that of his principal private residence; and references to the address of an undertaking shall be read as referring both to (a) in the case of a company registered in the United Kingdom, the address of its registered office, in the case of an undertaking within the definition of Section 1162 of the 2006 Act, the address of those persons resident in the United Kingdom who are authorised to accept notices on the undertaking’s behalf and in any other case the address (or all the addresses) which the undertaking is required by any law in force in any part of the United Kingdom or the country under whose law it is formed or constituted, to register, notify or maintain for the purpose of receiving notices or other communications; and (b) in the case of any undertaking, the address of the premises at which its senior management is located.

A disclosure statement shall be treated as signed on behalf of a person if and only if (a) it is signed by an individual who is expressed to be duly authorised to sign for and on behalf of that person;

and (b) it specifies the position or gives details of the power of attorney or other document held by that individual from which he derives his authority.

- (e) **“a notice requiring disclosure”** means a notice under Section 793 of the 2006 Act which:
- (i) is signed by a Director of the Company or the Secretary;
  - (ii) is served on a Member, or any other person appearing to be interested in shares held by that Member;
  - (iii) requires the person in receipt of the notice to ensure that the Company receives at an address in the United Kingdom specified in the notice a disclosure statement in relation to all the shares held by such person, or such number of those shares as is specified in the notice, within the prescribed period;
  - (iv) states that, if the Company does not receive such a disclosure statement at the place and within the time specified in its notice, the Directors will be entitled to impose sanctions on the shares in relation to which disclosure was required; and
  - (v) describes, by reference to a copy or extract of this Article which is attached to the notice or otherwise, the sanctions which the Directors will be entitled to impose.
- (f) **“a restriction notice”** means a notice which is
- (i) signed by a director of the Company or the Secretary;
  - (ii) served on a person or persons on whom the Company has served a notice requiring disclosure and who have failed in relation to certain shares to comply with that notice within the prescribed period;
  - (iii) describes (by reference to a copy or extract of the relevant resolution of the directors which is attached to the notice or otherwise) the sanctions which the directors have resolved to impose on those shares; and
  - (iv) states the date on which the sanctions came or will come into force.
- (g) the **“prescribed period”** means 14 days from the date the notice is sent.
- (h) an **“excepted transfer”** means, in relation to any shares held by a member:
- (i) a transfer by way of or pursuant to acceptance of a takeover offer for the Company (within the meaning of Section 974 of the 2006 Act); or

- (ii) a transfer in consequence of a sale made through a recognised investment exchange (as defined in the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) or any other stock exchange outside the United Kingdom on which the Company's shares or securities are normally traded; or
- (iii) a transfer which is shown to the satisfaction of the Board to be made in consequence of a sale of the whole of the beneficial interest in the shares to a person who is unconnected with the member and with any other person appearing to be interested in the shares.

**11.15** Nothing contained in this Article 11 shall be taken to limit the powers of the Company under the 2006 Act.

## **12 STOCK**

- 12.1** The Company may, from time to time, by ordinary resolution, convert all or any of its fully paid shares into stock, and may from time to time, in like manner, convert any stock into fully paid shares of any denomination. No such conversion shall affect or prejudice any preference or other special privilege.
- 12.2** When any shares have been converted into stock the several holders of such stock may transfer their respective interests therein, or any part of such interests, in such manner as the Company by ordinary resolution directs but in default of any such direction in the same manner and subject to the same regulations as and subject to which the shares from which the stock arose might previously to conversion have been transferred or as near thereto as circumstances will admit. The Board may, from time to time fix the minimum amount of stock transferable provided that such minimum shall not exceed the nominal amount of each of the shares from which the stock arose.
- 12.3** The holders of stock shall, according to the amount of stock held by them, have the same rights, privileges and advantages as regards dividends, voting at General Meetings of the Company and other matters, and be subject to the same provisions of these Articles as if they held the shares from which the stock arose, but no such privilege or advantage shall be conferred by an amount of stock which would not, if existing in shares, have conferred that privilege or advantage.

## **13 ALTERATIONS TO CAPITAL**

- 13.1** The Company may from time to time by ordinary resolution:
- (a) consolidate and divide all or any of its share capital into shares of larger amounts than its existing shares;
  - (b) cancel any shares which at the date of the passing of the resolution have not been taken or agreed to be taken by any person and diminish the amount of its share capital by the amount of the shares so cancelled subject to the provisions of the 2006 Act;
  - (c) sub-divide its shares, or any of them, into shares of a smaller amount and so that the resolution whereby any share is sub-divided may determine that, as between the holders of the shares resulting from such sub-division, one or more of the shares may have any such preferred or other special rights over, or may have such deferred rights, or be subject to any such restrictions, as compared with the others, as the Company has

power to attach to unissued or new shares.

- 13.2** Subject to the provisions of the Statutes, the Company may from time to time by special resolution reduce its share capital, any capital redemption reserve fund or any share premium account in any manner and with, and subject to, any incident authorised, and consent required, by law.
- 13.3** Upon any consolidation of fully paid shares into shares of larger amount, or the subdivision of shares into shares of a smaller amount, the Board may settle any difficulty which may arise with regard thereto and in particular may, as between the holders of shares so consolidated, determine which shares are consolidated into each consolidated share and in the case of any shares registered in the name of one Member being consolidated with shares registered in the name of another Member the Board may make such arrangements for the allotment, acceptance and/or sale of shares representing fractional entitlements to the consolidated share or for the sale of the consolidated share and may sell the fractions or the consolidated share either upon the market or otherwise to such person at such time and at such price as it may think fit and shall distribute the net proceeds of sale among such Members rateably in accordance with their rights and interests in the consolidated share or the fractions and for the purposes of giving effect to any such sale the Board may, in respect of certificated shares, appoint some person to transfer the shares or fractions sold to any purchaser thereof and such appointment and any transfer executed in pursuance thereof shall be effective and, in respect of uncertificated shares, may authorise any person to transfer such shares or fractions sold to any purchaser thereof in accordance with the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned and any transfer executed in pursuance thereof shall be effective. Provided that the Board shall have power when making such arrangements to determine that no Member shall be entitled to receive such net proceeds of sale unless his entitlement exceeds such amount as the Board shall determine and if the Board exercises such power the net proceeds of sale not distributed to Members as a result shall belong absolutely to the Company. For the purposes of this Article, any shares representing fractional entitlements to which any Member would, but for this Article, become entitled may be issued in certificated form or uncertificated form.
- 13.4** The Board may, without prejudice to Article 13.3 and subject to the Statutes, in each case where the number of shares held by the holder is not an exact multiple of the number of shares to be consolidated into a single share, issue to such holder credited as fully paid by way of capitalisation the minimum number of shares required to round up his holdings to a multiple (such issue being deemed to have been effected immediately prior to consolidation) and the amount required to pay up such shares shall be appropriated at its discretion from any sums standing to the credit of any of the Company's reserve accounts (including, subject to the 2006 Act, share premium account and capital redemption reserve) or to the credit of profit and loss account and capitalised by applying the same in paying up such shares.
- 13.5** Anything done in pursuance of the last 3 preceding Articles shall be done in the manner provided and subject to any conditions imposed by the Statutes, so far as they shall be applicable, and, so far as they shall not be applicable, in accordance with the terms of the resolution authorising the same, and, so far as such resolution shall not be applicable, in such manner as the Board shall determine.

#### **14 MODIFICATION OF CLASS RIGHTS**

- 14.1** Subject to the Statutes, none of the rights, privileges or conditions for the time being attached or belonging to any class of shares forming part of the

issued capital for the time being of the Company shall (unless otherwise provided by the terms of issue of the shares of that class) be modified, varied or abrogated in any manner, whether the Company is being wound up or not, except with the consent in writing of the holders of not less than 75% in nominal value of the issued shares of the class (excluding any shares held as treasury shares) or the sanction of a special resolution passed at a separate meeting of the members of that class. To any such separate meeting all the provisions of these Articles as to General Meetings shall mutatis mutandis apply but so that the necessary quorum (other than at an adjourned Meeting) shall be not less than two persons personally present and holding or representing, either by proxy or as the duly appointed representative of a corporation which is a Member, at least 33.33% of the nominal value of the issued shares of the class in question (excluding any shares held in treasury) and, at an adjourned meeting, one person present and holding or representing, either by proxy or as the duly appointed representative of a corporation which is a Member, shares of the class in question, and so that any holder of shares of the class in question present in person or by proxy or as the duly appointed representative of a corporation may demand a poll and shall be entitled on a poll to one vote for every such share held by him. The rights conferred upon the holders of the shares of any class issued with preferred or other rights shall not, unless otherwise expressly provided by these Articles or by the terms of issue of the shares of that class, be deemed to be modified, varied or abrogated by the creation or issue of further shares ranking pari passu in all respects (save as the date from which such new shares shall rank for dividend) therewith or subsequent to those already issued.

## **15 GENERAL MEETINGS**

- 15.1** An annual General Meeting of the Company shall be held in each year in addition to any other meetings which may be held in that year, and such meeting shall be specified as the Annual General Meeting in the notices calling it. Subject as aforesaid and to the provisions of the Statutes the Annual General Meeting shall be held at such time and place as the Board shall appoint.
- 15.2** All General Meetings of the Company other than Annual General Meetings shall be called General Meetings.
- 15.3** The Board may call a General Meeting whenever it thinks fit. General Meetings shall also be convened on requisition by Members, as provided by the Statutes, whereupon the Board shall forthwith proceed to convene a General Meeting in accordance with the 2006 Act. If at any time there are not sufficient Directors capable of acting to form a quorum of the Board any Director or any two Members of the Company may convene a General Meeting in the same manner as nearly as possible as that in which meetings may be convened by the Board.
- 15.4** In the case of a General Meeting called in pursuance of a requisition under the 2006 Act, unless such meeting shall have been called by the Directors, no business other than that stated in the requisition as the object of the meeting shall be transacted.

## **16 NOTICE OF GENERAL MEETINGS**

- 16.1** At least 21 clear day's notice of every annual General Meeting and at least 14 clear days' notice of every other General Meeting shall be given in the manner hereinafter mentioned to such Members as are under the provisions of these Articles entitled to receive such notices from the Company and to the auditors of the Company. Every notice of General Meeting shall specify the place, day and hour of meeting and the general nature of such business and

19

---

shall also state with reasonable prominence that a Member entitled to attend and vote at the meeting is entitled to appoint one or more proxies to attend, speak and vote instead of him and that a proxy need not also be a Member. In the case of a meeting convened for passing a special resolution the notice shall specify the intention to propose the resolution as a special resolution as the case may be. Subject to the provisions of these Articles, to the rights attaching to any class of shares and to any restrictions imposed on any holder, notice shall be given to all Members, the Directors and the auditors.

- 16.2** A meeting of the Company shall notwithstanding that it is called by shorter notice than that specified in the last preceding Article be deemed to have been duly called if it is so agreed:
- (a) in the case of a General Meeting called as the annual General Meeting, by all the Members entitled to attend and vote thereat; and
  - (b) in the case of any other General Meeting, by a majority in number of the Members having a right to attend and vote at the General Meeting being a majority together holding not less than 95% in nominal value of the shares giving a right to attend and vote at the General Meeting (excluding any shares held as treasury shares).
- 16.3** It shall be the duty of the Company, subject to the provisions of the Statutes, on the requisition in writing of such number of Members as is specified in (a) Section 314 of the 2006 Act to circulate to Members entitled to have notice of any General Meeting sent to them any statement of not more than 1000 words with respect to the matter referred to in any proposed resolution or the business to be dealt with at that meeting, (b) Section 338 of the 2006 Act, to circulate to Members entitled to receive notice of the next Annual General Meeting notice of any resolution which may properly be moved and is intended to be moved at that meeting. The expenses of complying with this Article shall be borne in accordance with the 2006 Act.
- 16.4** The accidental omission to give notice of any meeting to or (where forms of proxy are sent with the notices) to send a form of proxy with a notice to any person entitled to receive the same, or the non-receipt of notice of any meeting or form of proxy by such person shall not invalidate any resolution or proceeding at that meeting.

## **17 PROCEEDINGS AT GENERAL MEETINGS**

- 17.1** All business that is transacted at a General Meeting shall be deemed special and all business that is transacted at an annual General Meeting shall also be deemed special, with the exception of declaring a dividend, the consideration and adoption of the accounts and balance sheet, and the reports of the Directors and the auditors and any other documents accompanying or annexed to the accounts, the appointment of Directors and the auditors and the fixing of the remuneration of the Directors and the Auditors.

- 17.2** No business shall be transacted at any General Meeting unless a quorum is present when the meeting proceeds to business. Two persons entitled to vote upon the business to be transacted, each being a Member or a proxy for a Member or a duly authorised representative of a corporation which is a Member, shall be a quorum.
- 17.3** The Chairman of the Board shall preside at every General Meeting, but if there be no such Chairman, or he shall be unwilling or unable to preside or if at any meeting he shall not be present within 15 minutes after the time appointed for holding the same the Deputy-Chairman of the Board shall

preside, or if there be no such Deputy-Chairman, or he shall be unwilling to act, or if he be not present within such period the Directors present shall choose some Director, or if no Director be present, or if all the Directors present decline to take the chair, the Members present in person or by proxy shall choose one of themselves to be Chairman of the meeting.

- 17.4** If within 15 minutes from the time appointed for the holding of a General Meeting a quorum is not present, the meeting, if convened on the requisition of Members, shall be dissolved. In any other case it shall stand adjourned to such time and place as the Chairman of the meeting may decide.
- 17.5** The Chairman may, with the consent of the meeting (and shall, if so directed by the meeting), adjourn any meeting from time to time and from place to place. Whenever a meeting is adjourned for 30 days or more, 7 clear days' notice at the least, specifying the place, the day and the time of the adjourned meeting shall be given as in the case of an original meeting. Save as aforesaid, no Member shall be entitled to any notice of an adjournment or of the business to be transacted at an adjourned meeting. No business shall be transacted at any adjourned meeting other than the business which might have been transacted at the meeting from which the adjournment took place.
- 17.6** The Directors may resolve to enable persons entitled to attend a General Meeting to do so by simultaneous attendance and participation at a satellite meeting place anywhere in the world and the Members present in person or by proxy at satellite meeting places shall be counted in the quorum for and entitled to vote at the General Meeting in question, and that meeting shall be duly constituted and its proceedings valid provided that the Chairman of the meeting is satisfied that adequate facilities are available throughout the meeting to ensure that Members attending at all the meeting places are able to:
- (a) participate in the business for which the General Meeting has been convened;
  - (b) hear and see all persons who speak (whether by the use of microphones, loudspeakers, audio-visual communications equipment or otherwise) in the principal meeting place and any satellite meeting place; and
  - (c) be heard and seen by all other persons so present in the same way.

The Chairman of the General Meeting shall be present at, and the meeting shall be deemed to take place at, the principal meeting place.

- 17.7** The Board may direct that any person wishing to attend a General Meeting should provide evidence of identity and submit to such searches or other security arrangements or restrictions as the Board shall consider appropriate in the circumstances and shall be entitled in its absolute discretion to refuse entry to any meeting to any person who fails to provide such evidence of identity or to submit to such searches or to otherwise comply with such security arrangements or restrictions. The Chairman shall take such action or give direction as he thinks fit to promote the orderly conduct of the business of the meeting as laid down in the notice of General Meeting and to ensure the security of the meeting and the safety of people attending the meeting. The Chairman's decision on matters of procedure or arising incidentally from the business of the meeting shall be final as shall be his determination as to whether any matter is of such a nature.
- 17.8** If it appears to the Chairman of the General Meeting that the facilities at the principal meeting place or any satellite meeting place have become

inadequate for the purposes referred to in this Article 17 or the unruly conduct of persons attending the meeting prevents or is likely to prevent the orderly continuation of the business of the meeting, then the Chairman may, without the consent of the meeting, interrupt or adjourn the meeting. All business conducted at that General Meeting up to the time of such adjournment shall be valid.

- 17.9** The Directors may make arrangements for persons entitled to attend a General Meeting to be able to view or hear the proceedings of any meeting or to speak at the meeting (whether by the use of microphones, loudspeakers, audio-visual communications equipment or otherwise), by attending a venue anywhere in the world not being a satellite meeting place and those attending any such venue shall not be regarded as present and shall not be entitled to vote at the meeting at or from that venue and the inability for any reason of any Member present in person or by proxy at such a venue to view or hear all or any of the proceedings of the meeting or to speak at the meeting shall not in any way affect the validity of such proceedings.
- 17.10** For the purposes of this Article 17, the right for a Member to participate in the business of any General Meeting shall include, without limitation, the right to: speak; vote on any show of hands; demand a poll; vote on any poll; be represented by proxy; and have access to all documents which are required by the Statutes and these Articles to be made available at the meeting.
- 17.11** If an amendment proposed to a resolution shall be allowed or ruled out of order by the Chairman of the General Meeting in good faith, any error in ruling shall not invalidate the proceedings on the substantive resolution. With the consent of the Chairman of the meeting, an amendment may be withdrawn by its proposer before it is voted upon. An amendment (except an amendment to correct a patent clerical error) to a special resolution shall not be allowed and an amendment (except an amendment to correct a patent clerical error) to an ordinary resolution, the text of which is set out in the notice of the General Meeting at which it is to be proposed, shall only be allowed if, at least 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) before the time of the meeting (or adjourned meeting) at which such resolution is to be proposed, the proposer of the amendment gives written notice at the Office of the terms of the amendment and of his intention to propose the same at the meeting unless the Chairman of the meeting, at his own discretion, rules that the proposed amendment shall be considered without such notice having been given.
- 17.12** At any General Meeting a resolution put to the vote of the meeting shall be decided on a show of hands unless before or upon the declaration of the result of the show of hands a poll be demanded:
- (a) by the Chairman; or
  - (b) by not less than 5 Members present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote at the General Meeting; or
  - (c) by any Member or Members present in person or by proxy and representing not less than 10% of the total voting rights of all the Members having the right to vote on the Resolution (excluding any shares held in treasury); or
  - (d) by a Member or Members present in person or by proxy holding shares in the Company conferring a right to vote on the resolution being shares on

which an aggregate sum has been paid up equal to not less than 10% of the total sum paid up on all the shares conferring that right (excluding shares held in treasury).

Unless a poll be so demanded a declaration by the Chairman of the General Meeting that a resolution has on a show of hands been carried, or carried unanimously or by a particular majority, or lost or not carried by a particular majority shall be conclusive, and an entry to that effect in the minute book of the Company shall be conclusive of the votes recorded in favour of or against such resolution.

**17.13** A poll demanded on the election of a Chairman or on a question of adjournment shall be taken forthwith. A poll demanded on any other question shall be taken at such time (not being more than thirty days from the date of the General Meeting or the adjourned meeting at which such poll was demanded) and place and in such manner as the Chairman shall direct and the result of the poll shall be deemed to be the resolution of the meeting at which the poll was demanded. The Chairman may appoint scrutineers (who need not be Members) and fix a time and place for declaring the result of the poll. No notice need be given of a poll not taken immediately if the time and place at which it is to be taken are announced at the meeting at which it was demanded. The demand for a poll may be withdrawn only with the consent of the Chairman at any time before the taking of the poll or the close of the meeting, if earlier, and if a demand for a poll is withdrawn the result of a show of hands declared before the demand was made shall remain valid and effective and the meeting shall continue as if the demand had not been made.

**17.14** If:

- (a) any objection is raised to the qualification of any voter; or
- (b) any votes have been counted which ought not to have been counted or which might have been rejected; or
- (c) any votes are not counted which ought to have been counted,

the objection or error shall not vitiate the decision of the General Meeting on any resolution unless the same is raised or pointed out at the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote objected to is given or tendered or at which the error occurs. Any objection or error shall be referred to the Chairman of the meeting and shall only vitiate the decision of the meeting on any resolution if the Chairman decides that the same is of sufficient magnitude to vitiate the resolution or may otherwise have affected the decision of the meeting. The decision of the Chairman on such matters shall be final and conclusive.

**17.15** The demand for a poll shall not prevent the continuance of a General Meeting for the transaction of any business other than the question on which a poll has been demanded.

## **18 VOTES OF MEMBERS**

**18.1** Subject to any special terms as to voting upon which any shares may be issued, or may for the time being be held, and subject to the provisions of Articles 11 and 18.2, upon a show of hands, every Member who (being an individual) is present in person or (being a corporation) is present by a duly authorised representative and in each case is entitled to vote shall have one

vote and every proxy present who has been duly appointed by a member shall have one vote and upon a poll every Member present in person or by proxy and entitled to vote shall have one vote for every Ordinary Share held by him.

**18.2** Upon a show of hands:

- (a) every proxy present in person has one vote for and one vote against a resolution if the proxy has been duly appointed by more than one Member entitled to vote on the resolution and the proxy has been instructed by one or more of those Members to vote for the resolution and by one or more other of those Members to vote against it;
- (b) every proxy present in person has one vote for and one vote against a resolution if the proxy has been duly appointed by more than one Member entitled to vote on the resolution and either:
  - (i) the proxy has been instructed by one or more of those Members to vote for the resolution and has been given any discretion by one or more other of those Members to vote and the proxy exercises that discretion to vote against it; or
  - (ii) the proxy has been instructed by one or more of those Members to vote against the resolution and has been given any discretion by one or more other of those Members to vote and the proxy exercises that discretion to vote for it.

**18.3** If any Member is of unsound mind or otherwise incapacitated he may vote by his curator bonis, committee, or other legal curator and such last mentioned persons may give their votes either personally or by proxy, provided that such evidence as the Board may reasonably require of the authority of the persons claiming to vote is deposited at the Office not less than 48 hours before the time for holding the General Meeting or adjourned meeting at which such person claims to vote.

**18.4** If two or more persons are jointly entitled to a share, then, in voting upon any question, the vote of the senior who tenders a vote, whether in person or by proxy, shall be accepted to the exclusion of the votes of the other registered holders of the share, and for this purpose seniority shall be determined by the order in which the names stand in the Register.

**18.5** No Member shall be entitled to be present or to be counted in the quorum at any General Meeting unless he shall be the holder of one or more shares giving the right to attend thereat upon which all calls or other moneys due and payable in respect of the same shall have been paid and no Member shall be entitled to vote at any General Meeting or upon a poll either personally or by proxy in respect of any share upon which any call or other moneys due and payable have not been paid.

**18.6** Votes may be given either personally or by proxy or (in the case of a corporate member) by a duly authorised representative and on a poll, a person entitled to more than one vote need not, if he votes, use all his votes or cast all his votes he uses in the same way. A proxy need not be a Member of the Company and a Member may appoint one or more than one person to act as his proxy provided that each proxy is appointed to exercise the rights attached to a different share or shares held by the members.

**18.7** If a Member appoints more than one person to act as his proxy the

appointment of each such proxy shall specify the shares held by the Member in respect of which each such proxy is to vote and no Member may appoint more than one proxy (save in the alternate) to vote in respect of any one share held by that Member.

**18.8** The appointment of a proxy shall be in writing, executed by the appointor, or on his behalf by his attorney duly authorised in writing, or if such appointor is a corporation under its common seal or executed on its behalf by an officer or attorney duly authorised in that behalf. The Directors may, but shall not be bound to, require evidence of authority of such officer or attorney. If the proxy shall be in electronic form it must be submitted by or on behalf of the appointer and authenticated.

**18.9**

- (a) The Board may allow a proxy for a holder of any shares in uncertificated form to be appointed by electronic means or by means of a website in the form of an uncertificated proxy instruction. The Board may also allow any supplement to the uncertificated proxy instruction or any amendment or revocation of any uncertificated proxy instruction to be made by a further uncertificated proxy instruction.
- (b) The Board may decide what method should be used to determine at what time the instruction or notification is treated as being received by the Company. The Board may treat any notification purporting or expressed to be sent on behalf of a holder of a share in uncertificated form as sufficient evidence of the authority of the person sending the instruction to send it on behalf of that holder.
- (c) For the purposes of this Article 18.9, an uncertificated proxy instruction is a properly authenticated dematerialised instruction and/or other instruction or notification, sent through a relevant system to a participant in that system chosen by the Board to act for the Company. The uncertificated proxy instruction may be in any form and subject to any terms and conditions that the Board deems appropriate, but always subject to the facilities and requirements of the relevant system.

**18.10** A vote given in accordance with the terms of an appointment of a proxy shall be valid notwithstanding the previous death or insanity of the principal or revocation of the proxy or transfer of the share in respect of which the proxy is given, unless previous intimation in writing of the death, insanity, revocation or transfer shall have been received at the Office (or at such other place or places or address as has or have been appointed for the deposit or receipt of appointments of proxy) in the case of a General Meeting or adjourned meeting, at least 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) before the commencement of the General Meeting or adjourned meeting, in the case of a poll taken more than 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) after it was demanded, at least 24 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) before the time appointed for the taking of the poll or, in the case of a poll not taken forthwith but taken not more than 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) after it was demanded, at the meeting at which the poll was demanded.

**18.11** The appointment of a proxy shall be deemed to confer authority to demand or join in demanding a poll and to speak at any General Meeting and to vote on any resolution or amendment of a resolution put to the meeting for which it is given. The Company is entitled to assume without enquiry that a proxy has complied with any obligation to vote in accordance with instructions given

by the Member by whom the proxy is appointed. The validity of anything done at the meeting is not affected by any failure by a proxy to comply with such an obligation.

- 18.12** The appointment of a proxy and the power of attorney or other authority, if any, under which it is signed, or a notarially certified copy thereof, shall be deposited or delivered at such place as may be specified for that purpose (or, in the case of an appointment contained in an electronic communication to the number or address which has been specified by the Company for the purpose of receiving electronic communications) in the notice convening the General Meeting or in the appointment of proxy or if no place is so specified at the Office at least 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) before the time appointed for holding the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the person named in such appointment proposes to vote or, in the case of a poll taken more than 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) after it is demanded, be deposited or delivered as aforesaid after the poll has been demanded and not less than 24 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) before the time appointed for the taking of the poll or in the case of a poll not taken forthwith but taken not more than 48 hours (excluding any part of a day which is not a working day) after it was demanded, be delivered at the meeting at which the poll was demanded to the Chairman of the meeting or to any Director; otherwise the person so named shall not be entitled to vote in respect thereof. The appointment of a proxy shall, unless the contrary is stated thereon, be valid as well for any adjournment of the meeting as for the meeting to which it relates and for any poll arising from any such meeting or adjourned meeting. The valid appointment of a proxy or proxies relating to more than one meeting (including any adjournment thereof), having once been delivered to the Company for the purposes of any meeting shall not have to be re-lodged or otherwise re-registered with the Company for the purposes of any subsequent meeting to which it relates.
- 18.13** An appointment of proxy may be in any common form or in such other form as the Board may from time to time accept. No appointment of proxy shall be valid after the expiration of 12 months from the date stated in it as its date of execution except at an adjourned meeting or on a poll demanded at a meeting or an adjourned meeting where the meeting was originally held within 12 months from such date.
- 18.14** The Board may at the expense of the Company send by post or any other method permitted by these Articles (including by electronic communications) to the Members appointments of proxy (with or without provision for their return prepaid) for use at any General Meeting or at any meeting of any class of Members of the Company either in blank or nominating in the alternative any one or more of the Directors or the Chairman of the meeting or any other person or persons. If for the purpose of any meeting invitations to appoint as proxy a person or one of a number of persons, specified in the invitations are issued at the Company's expense they shall be issued to all (and not to some only) of the Members entitled to be sent notice of the General Meeting and to vote thereat by proxy. The accidental omission to send an appointment of proxy or the non-receipt of such appointment by any Member entitled to attend and vote at a meeting shall not invalidate the proceedings at that meeting.
- 18.15** Appointments of proxy sent by electronic communications, will not be taken as validly lodged where the electronic communication cannot be read or opened or where it contains a computer virus.
- 18.16** When two (or more) valid but differing appointments of proxy are received

in respect of the same share for use at the same meeting and in respect of the same matter, the one which is last validly received (regardless of its date or the date of its execution or submission) shall be treated as replacing and revoking the other or others as regards that share. If the Company is unable to determine which appointment was last validly received, none of them shall be treated as valid in respect of that share.

## **19 TERMINATION OF PROXY'S AUTHORITY**

**19.1** The termination of the authority of a person to act as proxy must be notified to the Company in writing.

**19.2** The termination of the authority of a person to act as proxy does not affect:

- (a) whether that person counts in deciding whether there is a quorum at a meeting, the validity of anything that person does as chairman of a meeting or the validity of a poll demanded by that person at a meeting unless the Company receives notice of termination before the commencement of the meeting; and
- (b) the validity of a vote given by that person unless the Company receives notice of termination before the commencement of the meeting or adjourned meeting at which the vote is given or, in the case of a poll taken more than 48 hours after it is demanded, before the time appointed for taking the poll.

**19.3** The notice of the termination must be received at an address that is specified in the form of proxy or, if the appointment of the proxy was sent by electronic means, at an address that is specified or deemed to be specified in such form of proxy or, in either case, in the notice convening the meeting or any document sent therewith.

## **20 CORPORATIONS ACTING BY REPRESENTATIVES AT MEETINGS**

Any corporation which is a Member of the Company may by resolution of its directors or other governing body authorise any person or persons to act as its representative or representatives at any General Meeting of the Company or of any class of Members thereof. The Directors or the Secretary or the person authorised may require evidence of the authority of a corporate representative before permitting him to exercise his powers. Any corporation which is a member of the Company and is represented at a meeting of the Company by a representative or representatives authorised as aforesaid shall be deemed to be a Member present in person at such meeting.

## **21 DIRECTORS**

**21.1** Until otherwise determined by a General Meeting the number of Directors (other than alternate directors) shall not be less than two. The Company may by ordinary resolution from time to time vary the minimum and maximum number of Directors.

**21.2** The Board may from time to time and at any time appoint any other person who is permitted by the Statutes to be a Director either to fill a casual vacancy or by way of addition to the Board but so that the total number of Directors does not exceed the maximum number fixed by or in accordance with these Articles. A Director so appointed shall hold office only until the annual General Meeting following next after his appointment, when he shall retire, but shall then be eligible for re-election. A Director so retiring shall not be taken into account in determining the number of Directors to retire by

rotation at such meeting in accordance with Article 26.2.

- 21.3** A Director shall not require a share qualification, but shall nevertheless be entitled to attend and speak at any General Meeting of, or at any separate meeting of the holders of any class of shares in, the Company.
- 21.4** There shall be paid out of the funds of the Company to the Directors of the Company (other than Directors appointed to an executive office or alternate directors) such remuneration (by way of fee) for their services to the Company as the Directors may determine, such sum to be deemed to accrue from day to day and to be divided among such Directors in such proportion and manner as they may agree or, in default of agreement, equally provided that any such Director holding the office of Director for part of a year shall unless otherwise agreed be entitled only to a proportionate part of such remuneration, save that unless otherwise approved by ordinary resolution of the Company in General Meeting the aggregate of the remuneration (by way of fee) of all the Directors shall not exceed £500,000 per annum. The Company may by ordinary resolution increase the amount of the fees payable under this Article either permanently or for a year or longer term.
- 21.5** The Directors shall be entitled to be repaid all travelling, hotel and other incidental expenses properly incurred by them respectively in and about the performance of their duties as a Director, including, without limitation, their expenses of travelling to and from Board or Committee or General Meetings or separate meetings of the holder of a class of shares or debentures or any other meetings of any kind which he attends in his capacity as a Director of the Company.
- 21.6** The Board may grant special remuneration to any member thereof who, being called upon, serves on any committee or who shall render any special or extra services to the Company which in the opinion of the Board are outside the scope of the ordinary duties of a Director. Such special remuneration may be made payable to such Director in addition to or in substitution for his ordinary remuneration (if any) as a Director, and may be payable by way of a lump sum participation in profits or otherwise as the Board shall determine.

## **22 INTERESTS OF DIRECTORS**

- 22.1** A Director may hold any other office or place of profit under the Company (except that of auditor) in conjunction with his office of Director and subject to Section 188 of the 2006 Act on such terms as to remuneration and otherwise as the Board shall arrange. Any Director may act by himself or his firm in a professional capacity for the Company and he or his firm shall be entitled to remuneration for professional services as if he were not a Director, provided that nothing herein contained shall authorise a Director or his firm to act as auditor or auditors of the Company.
- 22.2** Subject to the provisions of the Statutes, no Director or intending Director shall be disqualified by his office from contracting with the Company either as vendor, purchaser or otherwise nor subject to the interest of the Director concerned being duly declared as required by Article 22.4 shall any such contract or any contract or arrangement entered into by or on behalf of the Company in which any Director shall be in any way interested be liable to be avoided nor shall any Director so contracting or being so interested be liable to account to the Company for any profit realised by any such contract or arrangement by reason of such Director holding that office or of the fiduciary relationship thereby established.

- 22.3** A Director may hold office as a director or other officer of or be otherwise interested in any other company of which the Company is a member or in which the Company is otherwise interested and unless otherwise agreed shall not be liable to account to the Company for any remuneration or other benefits receivable by him as a director or officer of, or by virtue of his interest in, such other company.
- 22.4** Without prejudice to the requirements of the Statutes, a Director, including an alternate Director, who is in any way, whether directly or indirectly, interested in a contract or proposed contract with the Company shall declare the nature of his interest at a meeting of the Board. In the case of a proposed contract the declaration shall be made at the meeting of the Board at which the question of entering into the contract is first taken into consideration or, if the Director was not at the date of that meeting interested in the proposed contract, at the next meeting of the Board held after he became so interested. In a case where the Director becomes interested in a contract after it is made the declaration shall be made at the first meeting of the Board held after the Director becomes so interested. In a case where the Director is interested in a contract which has been made before he was appointed a Director the declaration shall be made at the first meeting of the Board held after he is so appointed. For the purposes of this Article a general notice given to the Board by a Director to the effect that he is a member of any specified company or firm and is to be regarded as interested in any contract which may, after the date of the notice be made with that company or firm, or he is to be regarded as interested in any contract which may after the date of the notice be made with a specified person who is connected with him (within the meaning of Section 252 of the 2006 Act) shall (if such Director shall give the same at a meeting of the Board or shall take reasonable steps to secure that it is brought up and read at the next meeting of the Board after it is given) be deemed a sufficient declaration of interest in relation to any contract so made. In this Article the expression “contract” shall be construed as including any transaction or arrangement, whether or not constituting a contract.
- 22.5** The Board shall have power and shall be enabled, subject to and in accordance with the remaining provisions of this Article and Articles 22.6 to 22.15, to authorise (an “**Authorisation**”) any matter which would or might constitute or give rise to any breach of the duty of a Director under Section 175 of the 2006 Act to avoid a situation in which he has, or can have, a direct or indirect interest that conflicts, or possibly may conflict, with the interests of the Company (including, without limitation, in relation to the exploitation of any property, information or opportunity, whether or not the Company could take advantage of it).
- 22.6** An Authorisation shall only be effective where:
- (a) the resolution in respect of the Authorisation is proposed for consideration at a Board meeting in accordance with the Board’s normal procedures or in such other manner as the Board may determine, or is proposed by way of a written resolution of the Directors (and which written resolution may be passed without requiring the signature of the persons referred to in paragraph (c) below);
  - (b) reasonable details of the matter or situation to the Authorisation relates were disclosed to the Board; and
  - (c) in accordance with Section 175(6) of the 2006 Act, the Authorisation is agreed to without counting in the quorum for the relevant Board meeting, or counting any votes on the Authorisation cast by, any of the following (all or any of which persons may, if the other Directors present

---

so decide, be excluded from the relevant Board meeting while the proposal to provide an Authorisation is under consideration):

- (i) the Director to which the Authorisation relates;
- (ii) any Director who is a “connected person” of the Director to which the Authorisation relates, as such term is defined in Section 252 of the 2006 Act); and
- (iii) any Director who is an “other interested director” for the purposes of Section 175(6)(a) of the 2006 Act,

but otherwise an Authorisation may be proposed and resolved upon by the Board in such manner as the Board deems at its absolute discretion to be appropriate.

- 22.7** An Authorisation may be given in respect of:
- (a) a person who is to be, or is proposed to be, appointed as a Director, with regard to such appointment; or
  - (b) an appointed Director with regard to his continuing performance of his duties,
- or otherwise as the Board may determine.
- 22.8** An Authorisation may be given subject to such terms and conditions as the Board determines at its absolute discretion, and the relevant Director shall comply with all such terms and conditions, and which may (but need not) include all or any of the following (but without limitation to any other limitations, terms and conditions as may be imposed by the Board):
- (a) the period for which the Authorisation shall subsist, or any date or event upon which it shall expire or be modified;
  - (b) any events, matters or consequences which do not fall within the Authorisation or whereby a further Authorisation shall be required;
  - (c) the exclusion of the relevant Director from receipt of or access to certain information or documentation of the Company connected with the matter to which the Authorisation relates (including any general classes or categories of information or documentation);
  - (d) the exclusion of the relevant Director from discussions (whether at Board meetings, general meetings of the Company or otherwise) connected with the matter to which the Authorisation relates, and whether the relevant Director may count in the quorum for and/or vote

upon any matter to which the Authorisation relates at Board meetings (in which case such terms shall prevail over any other provisions of these Articles); and

- (e) requirements with respect to the disclosure of confidential information of the Company to any other person, or the disclosure of confidential information of any other person to the Company (and which may include permitting the relevant Director not to disclose confidential information of another person to the Company).

**22.9** The Board shall ensure that the terms of each Authorisation are recorded in writing and a copy retained by the Company (but the Authorisation shall be effective whether or not the terms are so recorded).

- 22.10** The Board may revoke or vary an Authorisation at any time, but this shall not affect anything done or omitted to be done by the relevant Director in accordance with the terms of the Authorisation prior to receiving notice of the revocation or variation.
- 22.11** Save as provided in any terms and conditions determined by the Board in accordance with Article 22.8 above, an Authorisation shall be deemed to be given to the fullest extent permissible at law, and shall extend to any actual or potential conflict of interest which may reasonably be expected to arise out of or in connection with the matter so authorised.
- 22.12** Articles 22.5 to 22.15 shall constitute a provision for the purposes of Section 175(5)(b) of the 2006 Act, but for the avoidance of doubt shall not apply in respect of any situation where a Director is in any way, directly or indirectly, interested in a proposed transaction or arrangement with the Company.
- 22.13** A Director shall not (save as may otherwise be agreed by him or may be provided by terms and conditions determined by the Board) be liable to account to the Company for any remuneration, profit or other benefit resulting from any matter to which the Authorisation relates, and no contract shall be liable to be avoided on the grounds of any such profit or benefit, nor shall the receipt of any such remuneration, profit or other benefit constitute a breach of Section 176 of the 2006 Act.
- 22.14** A Director shall not be in breach of the general duties he owes to the Company under the 2006 Act by virtue of the fact that pursuant to the terms of an Authorisation he:
- (a) absents himself from Board meetings or other proceedings of the Board at which matters relating to the conflict of interest or possible conflict of interest will or may be discussed; or
  - (b) makes arrangements not to receive, or refrains from considering, any documents relating to the conflict of interest or possible conflict of interest, or makes arrangements for a professional adviser to receive any such documents on his behalf,
- for so long as he reasonably believes the matter to which the Authorisation relates subsists.
- 22.15** The provisions of Articles 22.5 to 22.15 are without prejudice to any equitable principle or rule of law which may excuse a Director from:
- (a) disclosing information in circumstances where disclosure would otherwise be required under these Articles or otherwise; or
  - (b) attending meetings or discussions or receiving documents or information in circumstances where such attendance or receiving would otherwise be required under these Articles.
- 22.16** Any reference to a conflict of interest in Articles 22.5 to 22.15 shall include a conflict of interest and duty, and a conflict of duties, and any reference to an interest includes both direct and indirect interests.
- 22.17** If any question arises at any meeting as to whether an interest of a Director (other than the Chairman's interest) shall reasonably be regarded as likely to give rise to a conflict of interest or as to the entitlement of any Director (other than the Chairman) to vote or be counted in a quorum, and such question is

not resolved by his voluntarily agreeing to abstain from voting or being counted in the quorum, such question shall be referred to the Chairman of the meeting. The Chairman's ruling in relation to the Director concerned shall be final and conclusive except in a case where the nature or extent of the interest of the Director concerned (so far as it is known to him) has not been fairly disclosed to the Board.

- 22.18** If any question arises at any meeting as to whether an interest of the Chairman shall reasonably be regarded as likely to give rise to a conflict of interest or as to the entitlement of the Chairman to vote or be counted in a quorum, and such question is not resolved by his voluntarily agreeing to abstain from voting or being counted in the quorum, such question shall be decided by resolution of the Directors or committee members present at the meeting (excluding the Chairman), whose majority vote shall be final and conclusive except in a case where the nature or extent of the interest of the Chairman (so far as it is known to him) has not been fairly disclosed to the Board.
- 22.19** For the purposes of Articles 22.5 to 22.15, in relation to an alternate Director, the interest of his appointor is treated as the interest of the alternate Director in addition to any interest which the alternate Director otherwise has.
- 22.20** The Company may by ordinary resolution suspend or relax the provisions of Articles 22.5 to 22.15 to any extent. Subject to the Statutes, the Company may by ordinary resolution ratify any transaction or arrangement not properly authorised by reason of a contravention of Articles 22.5 to 22.15.
- 22.21** Save as herein provided, a Director shall not vote in respect of any contract or arrangement or any other proposal whatsoever in which he has any interest which (together with any interest of any person connected with him) is to his knowledge a material interest otherwise than by virtue of his interests in shares or debentures or other securities of or otherwise through the Company or in respect of which he has any duty which conflicts with his duty to the Company. A Director shall not be counted in the quorum at a meeting in relation to any resolution in respect of which he is debarred from voting.
- 22.22** A Director shall (in the absence of some other interest than is indicated below) be entitled to vote (and be counted in the quorum) in respect of any resolution concerning any of the following matters namely:
- (a) the giving of any security, guarantee or indemnity to him in respect of money lent or obligations incurred by him at the request of or for the benefit of the Company or any of its subsidiaries;
  - (b) the giving of any security or indemnity to a third party in respect of a debt or obligation of the Company or any of its subsidiaries for which he himself has assumed responsibility in whole or in part under a guarantee or indemnity or by the giving of security;
  - (c) any proposal concerning an offer of shares or debentures or other securities of or by the Company or any of its subsidiaries for subscription or purchase in which offer he is or may be entitled to participate as a holder of securities or in which he is or is to be interested as a participant in the underwriting or sub-underwriting thereof;
  - (d) any proposal concerning any other company in which he is interested (as defined in the Statutes) directly or indirectly and whether as an officer or shareholder or otherwise howsoever: provided that he (together with any person connected with him within the meaning of Section 252 of the

2006 Act) is not the holder or beneficially interested in 1% or more of any class of the equity share capital of such company (or of any third company through which his interest is derived) or of the voting rights available to members of the relevant company (any such interest being deemed for the purpose of this Article to be a material interest in all circumstances);

- (e) any proposal concerning the adoption modification or operation of a superannuation fund or retirement, death or disability benefits scheme or employees' share scheme under which he may benefit and which has been approved by or is subject to and conditional upon approval by HM Revenue & Customs for taxation purposes and which does not award him any privilege or benefit not awarded to the employee to whom the scheme relates;
- (f) any contract arrangement or proposal for the benefit of employees of the Group under which the Director benefits in a similar manner as the employees and does not accord to any Director as such any privilege or advantage not generally accorded to the employees to which such contract arrangement or proposal relates;
- (g) an insurance arrangement which subject to the provisions of the Statutes the Company proposes to maintain or purchase for the benefit of a Director or for the benefit of any persons including Directors against liabilities incurred in connection with the discharge of that Director's duties or exercise of his powers in relation to his duties in respect of the Company.

**22.23** Where proposals are under consideration concerning the appointment (including fixing or varying the terms of appointment) of two or more Directors to offices or employments with the Company or any company in which the Company is interested, such proposals may be divided and considered in relation to each Director separately and in such cases each of the Directors concerned (if not debarred from voting under Article 22.21) shall be entitled to vote (and be counted in the quorum) in respect of each resolution except that concerning his own appointment.

**22.24** If any question shall arise at any meeting as to the materiality of a Director's interest or as to the entitlement of any Director to vote and such question is not resolved by his voluntarily agreeing to abstain from voting, such question shall be determined by a majority of votes of the remaining Directors present at the meeting and in the case of an equality of votes the Chairman (unless he be the Director the materiality of whose interest or the entitlement of whom to vote shall be in issue) shall have a second or casting vote and their ruling in relation to any other Director shall be final and conclusive except in a case where the nature or extent of the interests of the Director concerned have not been fairly disclosed.

**22.25** The Board may exercise the voting power conferred by the shares in any company held or owned by the Company in such manner in all respects as it thinks fit (including the exercise thereof in favour of any resolution appointing the Directors or any of them directors of such company, or voting or providing for the payment of remuneration to the directors of such company).

**22.26** Subject to the Statutes, the Company may by ordinary resolution suspend or relax to any extent, in respect of any particular matter, any provision of these Articles prohibiting a Director from voting at a meeting of the Board or of a committee of the Board.

## **23 MANAGING AND OTHER EXECUTIVE DIRECTORS**

- 23.1** Subject to the Statutes, the Board may from time to time appoint one or more of its body to be the holder of any executive office, including the office of Managing or Joint or Assistant Managing Director, on such terms and for such period as it may determine.
- 23.2** The appointment of any Director to any executive office shall be capable of being terminated by the Board at any time, unless the contract or resolution under which he holds office shall expressly state otherwise, but without prejudice to any claim he may have for damages for breach of any contract of service between him and the Company.
- 23.3** A Director holding any executive office shall receive such remuneration, whether in addition to or in substitution for his ordinary remuneration as a Director and whether by way of salary, commission, participation in profits or otherwise as the Remuneration Committee (if established) or the Board (if no Remuneration Committee is in existence at the time) may determine.
- 23.4** The Board may entrust to and confer upon a Director holding any executive office any of the powers exercisable by the Board upon such terms and conditions and with such restrictions as it thinks fit, and either collaterally with or to the exclusion of its own powers and may from time to time revoke, withdraw, alter or vary all or any of such powers.
- 23.5** The Company shall not (and the Board shall exercise all voting and other rights and power of control exercisable by the Company in respect of its subsidiary companies so as to secure that none of its subsidiary companies shall) grant any contract of service to any such Managing Director or such other officer as is referred to in Article 23.1 or any proposed Managing Director or such other officer as aforesaid which is or may be longer than 2 years in accordance with Section 188 of the 2006 Act except with the previous sanction of the Company in General Meeting given in accordance with that Section.

## **24 POWERS OF DIRECTORS**

- 24.1** The business of the Company shall be managed by the Board, which may exercise all such powers of the Company and do on behalf of the Company all such acts as may be exercisable and done by the Company, and as are not by the Statutes or by these Articles required to be exercised or done by the Company in General Meeting, subject nevertheless to any regulations of these Articles, to the provisions of the Statutes, and to such regulations being not inconsistent with the aforesaid regulations or provisions as may be prescribed by the Company in General Meeting but no regulation made by the Company in General Meeting shall invalidate any prior act of the Board which would have been valid if such regulation had not been made. The general powers given by this Article shall not be limited or restricted by any special authority or power given to the Directors by any other Article.
- 24.2** The Board may delegate any of its powers, authorities and discretions (with power to sub-delegate) for such time on such terms and subject to such conditions as it thinks fit to any committee consisting of two or more Directors and (if thought fit) one or more other persons, provided that:
- (a) a majority of the members of a committee shall be Directors; and
  - (b) no resolution of a committee shall be effective unless a majority of those present when it is passed are Directors or alternate Directors.

- 24.3** The Board may confer such powers either collaterally with, or to the exclusion of and in substitution for, all or any of the powers of the Board in that respect and may from time to time revoke, withdraw, alter or vary any of such powers and discharge any such committee in whole or in part. Insofar as any power, authority or discretion is so delegated, any reference in these Articles to the exercise by the Board of such power, authority or discretion shall be construed as if it were a reference to the exercise of such power, authority or discretion by such committee.
- 24.4** Subject to a committee being quorate pursuant to Article 24.2(b), the meetings and proceedings of a committee consisting of two or more persons shall be governed by the provisions of these Articles regulating the meetings and proceedings of the Board so far as the same are applicable and are not superseded by any regulations made by the Board pursuant to Article 24.2.
- 24.5** The Board may establish any local boards or agencies for managing any of the affairs of the Company, and may appoint any persons to be members of such local boards or any managers or agents and may fix their remuneration, and may delegate to any local board, manager or agent any of the powers, authorities and discretions vested in the Board, with power to sub-delegate, and may authorise the members of any local board, or any of them, to fill any vacancies therein, and to act notwithstanding vacancies, and any such appointment or delegation may be made upon such terms and subject to such conditions as the Board may think fit, and the Board may remove any person so appointed, and may annul or vary any such delegation, but no person dealing in good faith and without notice of any such annulment or variation shall be affected thereby and no person so appointed shall for any purpose be deemed to be a Director of the Company.
- 24.6** The Board may from time to time and at any time by power of attorney under the Seal appoint any company, firm or person or any fluctuating body of persons, whether nominated directly or indirectly by the Board to be the attorney or attorneys of the Company for such purposes and with such powers, authorities and discretions (not exceeding those vested in or exercisable by the Board under these Articles) and for such period and subject to such conditions as it may think fit and any such powers of attorney may contain such provisions whether for the protection and conveniences of persons dealing with any such attorney or otherwise to sub-delegate all or any of the powers, authorities and discretions vested in him.
- 24.7** The Company or the Board on behalf of the Company may exercise all the powers of Section 49 of the 2006 Act, relating to official seals for use abroad, and any such seal shall be affixed by the authority and in the presence of, and the instrument sealed therewith shall be signed by, such persons as the Board shall from time to time by writing under the Seal appoint.
- 24.8** The Board may establish, maintain, participate in or contribute to or procure the establishment, maintenance of, participation in or contribution to any pension, superannuation, benevolent or life assurance fund, scheme or arrangement (whether contributory or otherwise) for the benefit of, and give or procure the giving of donations, gratuities, pensions, allowances, benefits and emoluments to, any persons who are or were at any time in the employment or service of the Company or any of its predecessors in business or of any company which is a holding company or a subsidiary of the Company or who may be or have been Directors or officers of the Company or of any such other company as aforesaid and who hold or have held executive positions or agreements for service with the Company or any such other company, and the spouses, widows or widowers, families and

dependants of any such persons. The Board may also establish, subsidise and subscribe to any institutions, associations, societies, clubs or funds calculated to be for the benefit of or to advance the interests and well-being of the Company or of any such other company as aforesaid, or of any such person as aforesaid, and make payments for or towards the insurance of any such persons as aforesaid and subscribe or guarantee money for charitable or benevolent objects, or for any exhibition or for any public, general or useful object, and do any of the matters aforesaid either alone or in conjunction with any such other company as aforesaid. Any Director who holds or has held any such executive position or agreement for service shall be entitled to participate in and retain for his own benefit any such donations, gratuity, pension, allowance, benefit or emolument.

**24.9** The Board may also establish and maintain any employees' share scheme share option or share incentive scheme approved by ordinary resolution whereby selected employees of the Company or of any company which is a subsidiary of the Company are given the opportunity of acquiring shares in the capital of the Company on the terms and subject to the conditions set out in such scheme and establish and (if any such scheme so provides) contribute to any scheme for the purchase by or transfer allotment or issue to trustees of shares in the Company or its holding company to be held for the benefit of employees (including Directors and officers) of the Company and subject to the Statutes lend money to such trustees or employees to enable them to purchase such shares provided that if any shares are to be issued to employees or trustees under the provisions of any such scheme pursuant to which the rights attaching to such shares shall be altered or varied then any such scheme shall be approved by special resolution and these Articles shall be deemed to be altered so far as appropriate by the special resolution approving such scheme.

**24.10** All cheques, promissory notes, drafts, bills of exchange and other negotiable instruments and all receipts for moneys paid to the Company, shall be signed, drawn, accepted, endorsed, or otherwise executed, as the case may be, in such manner as the Board shall from time to time by resolution determine.

## **25 POWERS OF BORROWING AND MORTGAGING**

**25.1** The Board may exercise all the powers of the Company to borrow money, and to mortgage or charge all or part of its undertaking, property and assets both present and future, including uncalled capital, and to issue debentures, and other securities, whether outright or as collateral security for any debt, liability or obligation of the Company or of any third party.

**25.2** The Board may mortgage or charge all or any part of the Company's undertaking, property and uncalled capital and may issue or sell any bonds, loan notes, debentures or other securities whatsoever for such purposes and upon such terms as to time of repayment, rate of interest, price of issue or sale, payment of premium or bonus upon redemption or repayment or otherwise as it may think proper including a right for the holders of bonds, loan notes, debentures or other securities to exchange the same for shares in the Company of any class authorised to be issued.

## **26 ROTATION, RETIREMENT AND REMOVAL OF DIRECTORS**

**26.1** The office of a Director shall be vacated if:

- (a) he ceases to be a Director by virtue of any provision of the Statutes or he becomes prohibited by law from being a Director; or

- (b) he becomes bankrupt or makes any arrangement or composition with his creditors generally; or
- (c) he is, or may be, suffering from mental disorder and:
  - (i) he is admitted to hospital in pursuance of an application for admission for treatment under the Mental Health Act 1983 or any equivalent legislation; or
  - (ii) an order is made by a court having jurisdiction (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) in matters concerning mental disorder for his detention or for the appointment of a receiver, curator bonis or other person to exercise powers with respect to his property or affairs; or
- (d) he becomes physically or mentally incapable of performing the functions of a Director and the Board shall resolve that he be disqualified; or
- (e) in the case of a Director holding executive office subject to the terms of any contract between him and the Company, he resigns his office by notice in writing to the Company; or
- (f) he shall for more than 6 consecutive months have been absent without permission of the Board from meetings of the Board held during that period and the Board shall resolve that his office be vacated; or
- (g) he shall be removed from office by notice in writing served on him signed by all his co-Directors but so that if he holds an appointment to an executive office which thereby automatically determines such removal shall be deemed an act of the Company and shall have effect without prejudice to any claim for damages for breach of any contract of service between him and the Company; or
- (h) he becomes prohibited by law or (if applicable) the NASDAQ Rules from acting as a Director; or
- (i) he shall be removed from office by ordinary resolution of the Company in General Meeting in accordance with the Statutes.

**26.2** At the annual General Meeting in every year one-third of the Directors for the time being (other than those retiring in accordance with Articles 21.2) or if their number is not a multiple of 3 then the number nearest to but not exceeding 33.3% shall retire from office: provided always that if in any year the number of Directors (other than those retiring as aforesaid) is two, one of such Directors shall retire, and if in any year there is only one Director (other than those retiring as aforesaid) that Director shall retire.

**26.3** The Directors to retire at the annual General Meeting in every year shall include (so far as necessary to obtain the number required) any Director who wishes to retire and not to offer himself for re-election. Any further Directors so to retire shall be the Directors who have been longest in office since their last election. As between Directors of equal seniority, the Directors to retire shall in the absence of agreement be selected from among them by lot. A retiring Director shall be eligible for re-election and shall act as a Director throughout the meeting at which he retires.

**26.4** The Company at the annual General Meeting at which a Director retires in manner aforesaid may fill the vacated office by electing a person thereto, and in default the retiring Director shall if offering himself for re-election be

deemed to have been re-elected, unless at such meeting it is expressly resolved not to fill such vacated office or unless a resolution for the re-election of such Director shall have been put to the meeting and lost.

- 26.5** No person not being a Director retiring at the annual General Meeting shall, unless recommended by the Board for election, be eligible for election to the office of Director at any General Meeting unless, not less than 7 nor more than 21 days before the day appointed for the meeting there shall have been given to the Secretary notice in writing by some Member duly qualified to be present and vote at the meeting for which such notice is given of his intention to propose such person for election, and also notice in writing, signed by the person to be proposed, of his willingness to be elected.
- 26.6** Subject to the provisions of these Articles the Company may from time to time in General Meeting appoint new Directors and increase or reduce the number of Directors and may also determine in what rotation the increased or reduced number is to go out of office.
- 26.7** Subject to the 2006 Act, the Company may by ordinary resolution remove any Director before the expiration of his period of office, and may, subject to these Articles, by ordinary resolution appoint another Director in his place. A person appointed in place of a Director so removed shall be subject to retirement at the same time as if he had become a Director on the day on which the Director in whose place he is appointed was last elected a Director.
- 26.8** Every resolution of a General Meeting for the appointment or election of a Director shall relate to one named person and a single resolution for the appointment or election of two or more persons as Directors shall be void, unless a resolution that it shall be so moved has first been agreed to by the meeting without any vote being given against it.

## **27 PROCEEDINGS OF THE BOARD**

- 27.1** The Board or any Committee of the Board may meet for the despatch of business, adjourn and otherwise regulate its meetings as it thinks fit, and determine the quorum necessary for the transaction of business. Meetings of the Board or of any committee of the Board may take place in any part of the world and may take place via telephonic communication, video conference or similar means of communication notwithstanding that the Directors or Committee members present may not all be meeting in one particular place. Unless otherwise determined by the Board two Directors shall be a quorum. For the purposes of this Article an alternate Director shall be counted in a quorum but so that not less than two persons shall constitute the quorum.
- 27.2** A Director may, and on the request of a Director the Secretary shall, at any time summon a meeting of the Board. Unless all the Directors by resolution in writing resolve otherwise, it shall be necessary to give notice (which need not be in writing) of a meeting of the Board to any Director whether or not for the time being he is absent from the country in which the meeting is proposed to take place. Notwithstanding the foregoing neither the accidental failure to give notice of a meeting of the Board to any Director nor the non-receipt in any case of such notice if given shall invalidate such meeting or any resolution passed or business transacted thereat.
- 27.3** Questions arising at any meeting of the Board or any Committee of the Board shall be decided by a majority of votes. In the case of an equality of votes the Chairman shall have a second or casting vote.
- 27.4** The Board or any committee of the Board may from time to time elect a

Chairman or Deputy-Chairman, who shall preside at its meetings on such terms and for such periods as they may determine, but if no such Chairman or Deputy-Chairman be elected, or if at any meeting the Chairman or Deputy-Chairman is not present within 5 minutes after the time appointed for holding the a meeting, the Board or Committee shall choose one of its number to be Chairman of such meeting.

- 27.5** The Board may delegate any of its powers, including authority to affix the Seal to any document, to Committees consisting of such members, or member, of its body as it thinks fit. Any Committee so formed shall in the exercise of the powers so delegated conform to any regulations that may from time to time be imposed upon it by the Board. The meetings and proceedings of any such committee consisting of two or more members shall be governed by the provisions of these Articles regulating the meetings and proceedings of Directors.
- 27.6** Any Committee shall have power unless the Board directs otherwise to co-opt as a member or members of the Committee for a specific purpose any person or persons not being members of the Board or of the Company, provided that no person shall be co-opted pursuant to this Article if as a result of his appointment the number of persons so co-opted would be equal to or greater than the number of members of such Committee who are Directors and no resolution passed at a meeting of such Committee shall be effective unless a majority of the members of such Committee present at the meeting are Directors.
- 27.7** All acts bona fide done by any meeting of the Board or of a Committee of the Board or by any person acting as a Director, shall, notwithstanding it be afterwards discovered that there was some defect in the appointment of any Director or person acting as aforesaid or that they or any of them were disqualified or had ceased to be Directors or a Director, be as valid as if every such person had been duly appointed and was qualified to be and had continued to be a Director.
- 27.8** The Board shall cause proper minutes to be made of all General Meetings of the Company and also of all appointments of officers and of the proceedings of all meetings of the Board and Committees of the Board, and of the attendances thereat, and all business transacted at such meetings, and any such minutes of any meeting, if purporting to be signed by the Chairman of such meeting, or by the Chairman of the next succeeding meeting of the Company or of the Board or Committee, shall be conclusive evidence without any further proof of the facts therein stated.
- 27.9** A resolution in writing signed by all the Directors for the time being entitled to receive notice of a meeting of the Board shall be as effective for all purposes as a resolution passed at a meeting of the Board duly convened and held and may consist of several documents in the like form each signed by one or more of the Directors and so that any such resolution or document signed by an alternate Director shall be deemed to have been signed by the Director who appointed such alternate Director.
- 27.10** Any resolution in writing for the purposes of Article 27.9 may consist of several documents in the like form each signed by or on behalf of one or more of the Directors and any such document may be in the form of a telex, fax or in any other legible form sent by any other similar method of transmission or by electronic communications. Unless the contrary shall be proved, any such document shall be deemed to be duly and validly signed by the person or persons purporting to sign the same and whose name appears in the text as the person signing the same. Where electronic communications

---

are used, no signature is necessary, subject to any terms and conditions the Board may decide.

- 27.11** A meeting of the Board or a Committee of the Board may consist of a conference between Directors some or all of whom are in different places, if, when the meeting proceeds to business, it appears that the following conditions are satisfied in relation to sufficient Directors to form a quorum:
- (a) each such Director can hear every other Director addressing the meeting; and
  - (b) each such Director can, if he wishes, address every other Director simultaneously,
- whether by word of mouth, by conference telephone, video conference or by any other form of communications equipment (whether in use at the date of the adoption of these Articles or developed subsequently) or by a combination of these methods. Such a meeting is deemed to take place at the place where the largest number of participating Directors is assembled or, if this is not readily identifiable, at the location at which the Chairman of the meeting participates.
- 27.12** The continuing Directors or a sole continuing Director may act notwithstanding any vacancies in their body but if and so long as the number of Directors is reduced below the number fixed by or pursuant to these Articles as the quorum of Directors, the continuing Directors or Director may act for the purpose of filling up vacancies in their body or of summoning General Meetings of the Company, but not for any other purpose.

## **28 ALTERNATE DIRECTORS**

- 28.1** A Director (other than an alternate Director) may from time to time by writing under his hand appoint another Director or any other person to be his alternate but no such appointment of any person not being a Director shall be operative unless and until approved by the Board. Every such alternate shall (subject to his giving to the Company an address in the United Kingdom at which notice may be served upon him) be entitled to notice of meetings of the Board and to attend and vote as a Director at any such meeting at which the Director appointing him is not personally present and generally at such meeting to have and exercise all the powers, rights, duties and authorities of the Director appointing him in his absence, but it shall not be necessary to give notice of such a meeting to an alternate Director who is absent from the United Kingdom. If the alternate Director is a Director or if he shall attend a meeting as an alternate for more than one Director his voting rights shall be cumulative but he shall not be counted more than once in a quorum. Every such alternate shall also be entitled in the absence of the Director appointing him to sign on his behalf a resolution in writing of the Directors. An alternate Director shall be repaid by the Company such expenses as might properly have been repaid to him if he had been a Director but shall not (unless the Company by ordinary resolution determines) in respect of his office of alternate Director be entitled to receive any remuneration or fee from the Company. An

alternate Director shall be entitled to be indemnified by the Company to the same extent as if he were a Director. An alternate Director shall not be required to hold any shares in the Company. A Director may in writing (to be deposited or delivered to the Office or, in the case of an electronic communication, to the number or address which has been specified by the Company for the purpose of receiving such electronic communications) at any time revoke the appointment of an alternate appointed by him. If a Director dies or ceases to hold the office of Director

the appointment of his alternate shall thereupon cease and determine, provided that if any Director retires at any General Meeting (whether by rotation or otherwise) but is re-appointed by the meeting at which such retirement took effect, any appointment made by him pursuant to this Article which was in force immediately prior to his retirement shall continue to operate after his re-appointment as if he had not so retired. An alternate Director shall not be deemed to be the agent of his appointor, but shall be deemed to be an officer of the Company and shall alone be responsible for his own acts and defaults. Notwithstanding the foregoing, unless he is already an officer of the Company in his own right, an alternate Director shall not, as such, have any rights or powers other than those mentioned in this Article.

**28.2** An alternate Director automatically ceases to be an alternate:

- (a) if there occurs in relation to him any of the events which, if he were a Director would cause his office to be vacated, including the delivery by the alternate of a written notice of resignation; or
- (b) his appointor's office as Director is vacated,

provided that Article 28.2(b) does not apply where the appointor ceases to be a Director at a General Meeting but is reappointed or deemed to be reappointed at the same meeting.

## **29 THE SEAL**

**29.1** The Seal shall not be affixed to any instrument except by the authority of a resolution of the Board or a committee of the Board and except as hereinafter provided every instrument to which the Seal shall be so affixed shall be autographically signed by a Director and countersigned by a second Director or the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary or some other person appointed by the Board for such purpose and in favour of any purchaser or person bona fide dealing with the Company, such signatures shall be conclusive evidence of the fact that the Seal has been properly affixed.

**29.2** As respects certificates for shares, stock, debentures or other securities of the Company issued from time to time the Board may by resolution authorise the same to be sealed by a securities seal and may determine that in connection with the sealing thereof the presence of such persons as are referred to in Article 29.1 and the signatures thereof or of either of them shall be dispensed with and/or that such signatures shall be affixed by some method or system of mechanical or electronic signature.

**29.3** Subject to compliance with the requirements of the 2006 Act the Board may authorise the adoption for use in any territory district or place elsewhere than in the United Kingdom as an official seal being a facsimile or electronic version of the Seal and may subject to compliance with the requirements of the 2006 Act give direction for the fixing of such official seal to deeds or instruments on behalf of the Company. Any deeds or instruments to which such a facsimile or electronic version of the Seal is affixed in accordance with Article 29.1 shall bind the Company for all purposes as if the Seal had been affixed thereto.

## **30 SECRETARY**

**30.1** The Board shall from time to time appoint and may remove a Secretary or Joint Secretaries who shall be qualified in accordance with the provisions of the Statutes and may appoint and remove one or more Assistant Secretaries.

- 30.2** Anything by the Statutes or these Articles required or authorised to be done by or to the Secretary may if the office is vacant or there is for any other reason no Secretary capable of acting, be done by or to any Joint Assistant or Deputy Secretary or, if there is no Joint Assistant or Deputy Secretary capable of acting, by or to any officer of the Company authorised generally or specially in that behalf by the Board, provided that any provision of the Statutes or of these Articles requiring or authorising a thing to be done by or to a Director and the Secretary shall not be satisfied by its being done by or to the same person acting both as Director and as, or in the place of, the Secretary.

**31 AUTHENTICATION OF DOCUMENTS**

- 31.1** Any Director or the Secretary or any person appointed by the Board for the purpose shall have power to authenticate any documents affecting the constitution of the Company and any resolutions passed by the Company or the Board or any Committee of the Board and any books, records, documents and accounts relating to the business of the Company, and to certify copies thereof or extracts therefrom as true copies or extracts. A document purporting to be a copy of a resolution, or an extract from the minutes of a meeting of the Company or of the Board or any Committee of the Board which is certified as aforesaid shall be conclusive evidence in favour of all persons dealing with the Company upon the faith thereof that such resolution has been duly passed or, as the case may be, that such minutes are or extract is a true and accurate record of proceedings at a duly constituted meeting.

**32 REGISTERS**

- 32.1** The register of Directors and Secretaries, the register of charges, the Register, the register of interests in shares and all other associated registers and indices shall be kept in accordance with the Statutes and shall be open to the inspection of any member of the Company or of any other person without charge between the hours of 10 a.m. and noon on each day during which the same is bound to be open for inspection pursuant to the Statutes.

**33 DIVIDENDS**

- 33.1** Subject to the Statutes and any preferential or other special rights for the time being attached to any special class of shares, the profits of the Company available for dividend in accordance with the Statutes which it shall from time to time determine to distribute by way of dividend shall be applied in payment of dividends upon the shares of the Company to the Members at the date of record in accordance with their respective rights and priorities.
- 33.2** All dividends shall be apportioned and paid proportionately to the amounts paid up on the shares (otherwise than amounts paid up in advance of calls) during any part or parts of the period in respect of which the dividend is paid but if any share is issued on terms providing that it shall rank for dividend as from a particular date such share shall rank for dividend accordingly.
- 33.3** The Company in General Meeting may from time to time declare by ordinary resolution dividends but no such dividends shall (except as by the Statutes expressly authorised) be payable otherwise than out of the profits of the Company available for the purpose in accordance with the Statutes. No higher dividend shall be paid than is recommended by the Board and the declaration of the Board as to the amount of the profits at any time available for dividend shall be conclusive.
- 33.4** Subject to the provisions of the Statutes the Board may if it thinks fit from

time to time pay to the Members such interim dividends as appear to the Board to be justified by the profits of the Company and in particular (but without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing) if at any time the share capital of the Company is divided into different classes, the Board may pay such interim dividends in respect of those shares in the capital of the Company which confer on the holders thereof deferred or non-preferred rights as well as in respect of those shares which confer on the holders thereof preferential rights with regard to dividend and the Board may also pay 6 monthly or at other suitable intervals to be settled by it any dividend which may be payable at a fixed rate if it is of the opinion that the profits justify the payment, provided the Directors act bona fide they shall not incur any responsibility to the holders of shares conferring a preference for any damage that they may suffer by reason of the payment of an interim dividend on any shares having deferred or non-preferred rights.

- 33.5** Notwithstanding any other provision of these Articles the Directors may fix a date as the record date which holders of shares or other securities on the Company's relevant registers shall be entitled to the receipt of any dividend, distribution, allotment or issue, notice, information and document, and such record date may be on or at any time within 6 months before or after any date on which such dividend, distribution, allotment or issue is declared, paid or made. All dividend and interest shall belong and be paid (subject to any lien of the Company) to those Members whose name shall be on the Register at the record date despite any subsequent transfer or transmission of shares. The Board may retain the dividends payable upon shares in respect of which any person is under the provisions as to the transmission of shares contained in these Articles entitled to become a Member, or which any person is under these provisions entitled to transfer, until that person shall become a Member in respect of these shares or shall transfer them.
- 33.6** With the sanction of a General Meeting, dividends may be paid wholly or in part in specie and may be satisfied in whole or in part by the distribution amongst Members, in accordance with their rights, of fully paid shares, debentures or other securities of the Company or of any other company, or of any other property suitable for distribution as aforesaid provided that no distribution shall be made which would amount to a reduction of capital except in the manner approved by law. The Board shall have full liberty to make all such valuations, adjustments and arrangements (including cash payments to Members upon the basis of the value fixed in order to adjust the rights of Members and vesting any specific assets in trustees upon trust for the persons entitled to the dividend), and to issue, in the case of certificated shares, all such certificates or documents of title as may in its opinion be necessary or expedient with a view to facilitating the equitable distribution amongst the Members of any dividends or portions of dividends to be satisfied as aforesaid or to giving them the benefit of their proper shares and interests in the property and no valuation, adjustment or arrangement so made shall be questioned by any Member.
- 33.7** Subject as follows, the Directors may resolve that ordinary shareholders will be entitled to elect to receive an allotment of further Ordinary Shares ("a scrip dividend") credited as fully paid in lieu of any cash dividend or any part of a cash dividend, subject to such exclusions or restrictions as the Directors may in their absolute discretion deem necessary or desirable in relation to compliance with legal or practical problems under the laws of, or the requirements of any recognised regulatory body or any stock exchange in, any territory.

The said resolution may specify a particular dividend, or may specify all or any dividends declared within a specified period.

The Directors shall determine the basis of allotment so that, as nearly as they consider convenient, the value of the further Ordinary Shares, including any fractional entitlement, equals the amount of the cash dividend which would otherwise have been paid.

For this purpose, the value of the further Ordinary Shares should be calculated by reference to the middle-market quotation, adjusted if necessary for the proposed dividend, as published by the London Stock Exchange, or the middle-market quotation of American Depositary Shares in NASDAQ for the five business days immediately preceding or following the announcement of the relevant cash dividend, as the Directors decide.

A certificate or report by the auditors as to the amount of the relevant value in respect of any dividend shall be conclusive evidence of that amount.

The Directors shall give notice in writing to the ordinary shareholders of their rights of election in respect of the scrip dividend and of the procedure to be followed in order for an election to be made. In relation to uncertificated shares, the Directors may make such arrangements as they in their absolute discretion think fit (subject always to the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned).

Further Ordinary Shares shall be allotted in accordance with valid elections.

The Directors shall capitalise a sum equal to the aggregate nominal amount of the further Ordinary Shares to be allotted out of any sums available for the purpose which the Directors consider appropriate.

The further Ordinary Shares allotted shall rank *pari passu* in all respects with the fully paid Ordinary Shares then in issue except only as regards participation in the relevant cash dividend or shares in lieu of that cash dividend. Unless the Directors otherwise determine (and subject always to the Regulations and the requirements of the relevant system concerned), the Ordinary Shares so allotted shall be issued as certificated shares (where the Ordinary Shares in respect of which they have been allotted were certificated shares at the Scrip Record Time) or as uncertificated shares (where the Ordinary Shares in respect of which they have been allotted were uncertificated shares at the Scrip Record Time) provided that if the Company is unable under the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned to issue Ordinary Shares in respect of the person entitled thereto as uncertificated shares able to be evidenced and transferred without a written instrument, such shares shall be issued as certificated shares; for these purposes, “**Scrip Record Time**” means such time on the record date for determining the entitlements of Members to make elections as described in this Article, or on such other date, as the Directors may in their absolute discretion determine.

The Directors may resolve that the rights to elect for a scrip dividend shall not be made available to shareholders resident in a country or countries where, in the opinion of the Directors, compliance with local laws or regulatory requirements would be unduly burdensome.

The Directors may do anything which they consider necessary or expedient for the purpose of or in connection with the allotment or issue of further Ordinary Shares under this Article, and may authorise any person, acting on behalf of the holders concerned, to enter into an agreement with the Company providing for such allotment and incidental matters and any agreement made under such authority shall be effective and binding on all

concerned, and may make any provisions which they think fit in the case of shares becoming distributable in fractions, including, in the case of uncertificated shares, the issue of fractional entitlements. The Directors may also include provisions under which all or any part of the benefit of fractional entitlements accrues to the Company rather than to the shareholders concerned.

The Directors may only make a scrip dividend available if:

- (a) the Company has sufficient unissued shares and undistributed profits or reserves to give effect to the elections which could be made to receive the scrip dividend; and
- (b) the Company has by ordinary resolution authorised the Directors' exercise of their powers under this Article in relation to the dividend concerned or in relation to any dividends which are declared or paid in respect of a particular financial year or period of the Company and which include the dividend concerned.

However, an ordinary resolution may not authorise the Directors to exercise their powers under this Article in relation to a dividend declared or paid in respect of a financial year or period commencing more than 5 years after the date on which the resolution is passed.

The Directors may, in their discretion, amend, suspend or terminate any offer which is in operation.

- 33.8** Any dividend, instalment of dividend or interest or other moneys payable in cash in respect of any share may be paid by cheque or warrant payable to the order of the Member entitled thereto or (in the case of joint holders) of that Member whose name stands first on the Register in respect of the joint holding. Every such cheque or warrant shall (unless otherwise directed) be sent by post to the last registered address of the Member entitled thereto, and payment of the cheque or warrant shall be a good discharge to the Company for the same. Any such dividend or other moneys may also be paid by such other method (including, without limitation, direct debit, bank or other funds transfer system) as the Directors may in their absolute discretion think fit (subject always, in the case of uncertificated shares, to the facilities and requirements of the relevant system concerned where payment is to be made by means of such system) to or through such person as the holder or person entitled may in writing direct. If cheques or warrants in respect of dividends are returned undelivered or are left uncashed on two consecutive occasions the Board may determine that the Company shall cease sending such cheques or warrants by post to the Member or person concerned save, subject to these Articles, the Company shall recommence sending cheques or warrants or transferring funds or using other means of payment, as the case may be, in respect of dividends payable on these shares if the holder or person entitled by transmission claims the arrears of dividend in which event the Company shall resume payment of dividend (and arrears) as notified by the claimant, or in the absence of such notification, in the same manner in which payment was effected prior to the suspension of the payment of the dividend. Every such cheque or warrant so sent and every payment so made shall be at the risk of the person entitled to the money represented thereby. Payment of a cheque or warrant by the bank on which it was drawn, the transfer of the funds by the bank instructed to make the same or the making of payment otherwise in accordance with this Article shall be a good discharge by the Company. The Company shall have no responsibility for any sums lost or delayed in the course of payment by a method selected by the Directors pursuant to this Article, or where it has acted on any directions given by the

holder or person entitled. Subject to the provisions of these Articles and to the rights attaching to, or the terms of issue of, any shares, any dividend or other moneys payable on or in respect of a share may be declared or paid in such currency as the Directors may think fit or otherwise determine. The Directors may decide the rate of exchange for any currency conversions that may be required and how any costs involved are to be met, in relation to the currency of any dividend. No unpaid dividend, interest or other monies payable in respect of the shares in the capital of the Company shall bear interest as against the Company.

- 33.9** The Board may deduct from any dividend or other moneys payable in respect of any shares held by a Member, either alone or jointly with any other Member, all such sums of money (if any) as may be due and payable by him either alone or jointly with any other person to the Company on account of calls or otherwise in respect of shares of the Company. The Board may retain any dividend or other moneys payable on or in respect of a share on which the Company has a lien, and may apply them in or towards satisfaction of the debts, liabilities or engagements in respect of which the lien exists.
- 33.10** All unclaimed dividends or other monies payable on or in respect of a share may be invested or otherwise made use of by the Board for the benefit of the Company until claimed and the payment of any such dividend into a separate account or the investment of such dividend shall not constitute the Company a trustee in respect thereof. No dividend shall bear interest as against the Company. Any dividend which has remained unclaimed for a period of 12 years from the date of declaration and payment thereof shall, if the Board so resolve, at the expiration of that period be forfeited and cease to remain owing by the Company and shall thenceforth belong to the Company absolutely.
- 33.11** The Board may before recommending any dividend set aside out of the profits of the Company (including any premiums received upon the issue of debentures or other securities or rights of the Company) such sums as it thinks proper as a reserve fund or reserve funds which shall at the discretion of the Board be applicable for any purpose for which the profits of the Company may lawfully be applied, and pending such application the Board may employ the sums from time to time so set apart as aforesaid in the business of the Company or invest the same in such securities (other than the shares of the Company or its holding company) as it may select. The Board may also from time to time carry forward such sums as it may deem expedient in the interests of the Company not to divide.

#### **34 CAPITALISATION OF PROFITS AND RESERVES**

- 34.1** The Company may, upon the recommendation of the Board, by ordinary resolution resolve to capitalise any sum standing to the credit of any of the Company's reserve accounts (including any share premium account and any capital redemption reserve fund) or any sum standing to the credit of profit and loss account or otherwise available for distribution, provided that such sum be not required for paying the dividends on any shares carrying a fixed cumulative preferential dividend, and accordingly that the Board be authorised and directed to appropriate the sum resolved to be capitalised to the Members in the proportions in which such sum would have been divisible amongst them had the same been applied or been applicable in paying dividends and to apply such sum on their behalf, either in or towards paying up the amounts, if any, for the time being unpaid on any shares held by such Members respectively or in paying up in full unissued shares or debentures of the Company of a nominal amount equal to such sum such shares or debentures to be allotted and distributed credited as fully paid up to and

amongst such Members in the proportions aforesaid or partly in one way and partly in the other, provided that a sum standing to the credit of a share premium account or a capital redemption reserve fund may only be applied hereunder in the paying up of unissued shares to be allotted to Members as fully paid.

- 34.2** The Company in General Meeting may on the recommendation of the Board resolve that it is desirable to capitalise any part of the amount for the time being standing to the credit of any of the Company's reserve accounts or to the credit of the profit and loss account which is not available for distribution by applying such sum in paying up in full unissued shares to be allotted as fully paid shares to those members of the Company for the time being who would have been entitled to that sum if it were distributed by way of dividend (and in the same proportions) and the Board shall give effect to such resolution.
- 34.3** The Company may upon recommendation of the Board, by ordinary resolution, resolve to issue Ordinary Shares pursuant to the exercise of warrants issued by the Company pursuant to a warrant instrument executed by the Company on 17 June 2016 by way of a non-pre-emptive bonus issue of Ordinary Shares to the relevant warrant holder, paid up in full by the capitalisation of any sum standing to the credit of any of the Company's reserve accounts from time to time (including any share premium account, any capital redemption reserve, or other permitted distributable reserve from time to time) or any sum standing to the credit of the profit and loss account or otherwise available for distribution from time to time.
- 34.4** Whenever such a resolution as aforesaid is passed, the Board shall make all appropriations and applications of the sum resolved to be capitalised thereby and all allotments and issues of fully paid shares or debentures, if any, and generally shall do all acts and things required to give effect thereto with full power to the Board to make such provision by the issue of certificates in respect of fractional entitlements or by payment in cash or otherwise as it thinks fit for the case of shares or debentures becoming distributable in fractions, and also to authorise any person to enter on behalf of all the Members interested into any agreement with the Company providing for the allotment to them respectively credited as fully paid up of any further shares to which they may be entitled upon such capitalisation and any agreement made under such authority shall be effective and binding on all such Members.

## **35 ACCOUNTS**

- 35.1** The Board shall cause proper accounts and accounting records to be kept and the provisions of the Statutes in this regard shall be complied with. The books of account and accounting records shall be kept at the Office or subject to the provisions of the Statutes at such other place or places as the Board thinks fit and shall always be open to the inspection of any Director.
- 35.2** The Board shall from time to time determine whether in any particular case or class of cases or generally and to what extent and at what times and places and under what conditions or regulations (subject to the provisions of the Statutes) the accounts and books of the Company or any of them, shall be open to the inspection of Members, and no Member (not being a Director) shall have any right of inspecting any account or book or document of the Company, except as conferred by Statute or authorised by the Board or by a resolution of the Company in General Meeting or under an order of a Court of competent jurisdiction.

- 35.3** The Board shall in accordance with the provisions of the Statutes cause to be prepared and to be laid before the Company in General Meeting such profit and loss accounts, balance sheets, group accounts (if any) and reports as are referred to in the Statutes.
- 35.4** A printed copy of every Directors' report and 'auditor's report accompanied by the balance sheet and profit and loss account which is to be laid before a General Meeting of the Company (including every document required by law to be attached or annexed thereto) shall not less than 21 days before the date of the meeting be delivered or sent to every shareholder and to every holder of debentures of the Company and to every other person who is entitled to receive notices of meetings from the Company under the provisions of the Statutes or of these Articles, provided that this Article shall not require a copy of such documents to be sent to any person to whom the Company is not required to send the same nor to any person of whose address the Company is not aware nor to more than one of the joint holders of any shares or debentures, but any Member or debenture holder to whom a copy of these documents has not been sent shall be entitled to receive a copy free of charge on application at the Office. Whenever all or any of the shares in or debentures or securities of the Company are listed or dealt in on any stock exchange in the United Kingdom or the United States of America, there shall at the same time be forwarded to the appropriate officer of such stock exchange such number of copies of such documents as may for the time being be required under its regulations or practice.
- 35.5** Every account of the Company, when audited and approved by an annual General Meeting, shall be conclusive.

### **36 AUDIT**

- 36.1** In accordance with the requirements of the Statutes the accounts of the Company shall be examined and the truth and fairness of the balance sheet, profit and loss account and group accounts (if any) reported on by an auditor or auditors.
- 36.2** Auditors shall be appointed and their duties, powers, rights and remuneration regulated in accordance with the provisions of the Statutes. Subject to the provisions of the Statutes, all acts done by any person acting as an auditor shall, as regards all persons dealing in good faith with the Company be valid notwithstanding that there was some defect in his appointment or that he was at the time of his appointment not qualified for appointment.
- 36.3** The 'auditors' report shall be read before the Company in General Meeting and shall be open to inspection as required by the Statutes. The auditor or auditors shall be entitled to attend any General Meeting and to receive notices of and other communications relating to any General Meeting which any Member is entitled to receive, and to be heard at any General Meeting on any part of the business of the Meeting which concerns him or them as auditor or auditors.

### **37 UNTRACED SHAREHOLDERS**

- 37.1** The Company shall be entitled to sell at the best price reasonably obtainable any shares of a Member or any shares to which a person is entitled by virtue of transmission on death or bankruptcy if and provided that:
- (a) during the period of 12 years prior to the date of the publication of the advertisements referred to in Article 37.1(b) below (or, if published on different dates the earlier or earliest thereof) at least 3 dividends in

respect of the Shares in question have become payable and all warrants and cheques in respect of the Shares in question sent in the manner authorised by these Articles have been returned or remained uncashed and unclaimed or, following one such occasion, reasonable enquiries have failed to establish any new address of the registered holder; and

- (b) the Company on expiry of the said period of 12 years shall have inserted advertisements (which if not published on the same day, shall have been published within 30 days of each other), both in a leading national newspaper published in the United Kingdom and in a newspaper circulating in the area of the last known address of the Member or person entitled by transmission or the registered address as appearing in the Register of such Member, giving notice of its intention to sell the said shares; and
- (c) during the said period of 12 years and the period of three months following the date of publication of the said advertisements (or, if published on different dates, the later or latest thereof) and prior to the exercise of the power of sale the Company shall not have received indication, either of the whereabouts or of the existence of such Member or person and no dividend which has become payable during that period has been claimed; and
- (d) notice shall have been given to the London Stock Exchange of its intention to make such sale, if shares of the class concerned are listed or dealt in on that exchange.

**37.2** To give effect to any such sale the Company may appoint any person to execute as transferor an instrument of transfer of the said shares and such instrument of transfer shall be as effective as if it had been executed by the registered holder of or person entitled by transmission to such shares and the title of the transferee shall not be affected by any irregularity or invalidity in the proceedings relating thereto. The person so appointed may enter the name of the transferee in respect of the transferred shares in the Register notwithstanding the absence of any share certificate being lodged in respect thereof and may issue a new certificate to the transferee. The net proceeds of sale shall belong to the Company which shall be obliged to account to the former Member or other person previously entitled as aforesaid for an amount equal to such proceeds and shall enter the name of such former Member or other person in the book of the Company as a creditor for such amount. No trust shall be created in respect of the debt, no interest shall be payable in respect of the same and the Company shall not be required to account for any money earned on the net proceeds, which may be employed in the business of the Company or invested in such investments (other than shares of the Company or its holding company if any) as the Directors may from time to time think fit.

**37.3** If during the period of 12 years referred to in Article 37.1(a), or during any period ending on the date when all the requirements of Articles 37.1(a) to (c) have been satisfied, any additional shares have been issued in respect of those held at the beginning of, or previously so issued during, any such period and all the requirements of Articles 37.1(b) and (c) have been satisfied in regard to such additional shares, the Company shall also be entitled to sell the additional shares.

## **38 NOTICES**

**38.1** A notice or other document may be served by the Company upon any Member either personally or by sending it through the post in a prepaid letter

49

---

addressed to such Member at his registered address as appearing in the Register or by delivering it to or leaving it at that address addressed as aforesaid, or by electronic communications (except for share certificates) to a number or address used for the purpose of such communications notified by the Member in writing or by any other means, including making it available on a website, provided such other means has been authorised in writing by the Member concerned.

**38.2** All notices directed to be given to the Members shall with respect to any share to which persons are jointly entitled be given to whichever of such persons is named first in the Register, and notice given shall be sufficient notice to all the holders of such share.

**38.3** Any Member described in the Register by an address not within the United Kingdom who shall from time to time give the Company an address within the United Kingdom at which notices may be served upon him or an address to which notices or other documents may be sent in electronic form shall be entitled to have notices served upon him at such address and, without prejudice any notice of a General Meeting which is in fact or purports to be given to such members shall be ignored for the purpose of determining the validity of the proceedings at such General Meeting, but otherwise no such Member shall be entitled to receive any notice from the Company.

**38.4** A Member who (having no registered address within the United Kingdom) has not supplied to the Company an address within the United Kingdom for the service of notices shall not be entitled to receive any document, information or notice from the Company except to the extent that the Directors decide to send a document, information or a notice to that Member or custodian at a Depositary by electronic means and that Member or custodian at the Depositary has consented (or is deemed to have consented) to the sending of that document, information or notice by electronic means and has, where necessary, notified the Company of an address for that purpose.

**38.5** Any summons, notice, order or other document required to be sent to or served upon the Company or upon any officer of the Company may be sent or served by leaving the same or sending it through the post in a prepaid registered letter addressed to the Company or to such officer, at the Office, or sent or delivered by electronic communications to a number or address used for the purpose of such communications notified by the Company in its communications to Members for this purpose. If a notice or document is sent to the Company by electronic communications, it is treated as being delivered at the time it was received. Electronic communications received by the Company which cannot be read or opened or which contain a computer virus will not be treated as being received.

**38.6** Save as otherwise provided by the Act or by these Articles any notice shall be exclusive of the day on which it is served or deemed to be served and of the day for which it is given. Any notice or other document if served by first class post shall be deemed to have been served on the day following and if served by second class post shall be deemed to have been served on the second day following and if served by airmail shall be deemed to have been served on the second day following that on which the letter containing the same is put into the post, and in proving such service it shall be sufficient to prove that the letter containing the notice or document was properly addressed and put into the

post office as a prepaid letter or prepaid registered letter as the case may be. Any notice or other document served or delivered by the Company by an electronic communication shall be deemed to have been duly served or delivered at the time it was sent. Proof that a notice

contained in an electronic communication was sent in accordance with guidance issued by the Institute of Chartered Secretaries and Administrators shall be conclusive evidence that the notice was given. A Member present either in person or by proxy, or in the case of a corporate member by duly authorised representative, at any meeting of the Company or holders of any class of shares shall be deemed to have received notice of the meeting and, where requisite, of the purpose for which it was called.

- 38.7** Any notice sent by a relevant system shall be deemed to have been delivered when the Company, or sponsoring system participates acting on its behalf, sends the issuer instructions relating to the notice or document.
- 38.8** Any notice or document delivered or sent by post to or left at the registered address of any Member or sent or delivered by an electronic communication to any Member in pursuance of these Articles shall, notwithstanding that such Member be then dead or bankrupt, and whether or not the Company have notice of his death or bankruptcy be deemed to have been duly served in respect of any share registered in the name of such Member as sole or joint holder, unless his name shall, at the time of the service of the notice or document, have been removed from the Register as the holder of the share and such service shall for all purposes be deemed a sufficient service of such notice or document on all persons interested (whether jointly with or as claiming through or under him) in the share. Save where expressly provided, any document, information or notice sent by post to, left at or sent or supplied using electronic means to the address of any Member in pursuance of these Articles shall, even if the Member is then dead or bankrupt, and whether or not the Company has notice of his death or bankruptcy, be deemed to have been duly sent or supplied in respect of any share registered in the name of such Member as sole or first-named joint-holder.
- 38.9** Any notice required to be given by the Company to the Members or any of them, and not provided for by or pursuant to these Articles shall be sufficiently given by advertisement which shall be inserted once in at least one leading United Kingdom national newspaper. Any notice given by advertisement shall be deemed to have been served at noon on the day on which the advertisement appears.
- 38.10** If at any time by reason of the suspension or any curtailment of postal services in the United Kingdom the Company is unable effectively to convene a General Meeting by notices sent through the post and the Board has resolved that it is necessary to do so in the interests of the Company, a General Meeting may (subject in the case of an annual General Meeting to Sections 433 to 436 of the 2006 Act) be convened by a notice advertised on the same date in at least one leading United Kingdom national daily newspaper and such notice shall be deemed to have been duly served on all Members entitled thereto at noon on the day when the advertisements appear or if the same appear on different days, at noon on the last of the days when the advertisement appears. In any such case the Company shall send confirmatory copies of the notice by post if at least 5 days prior to the meeting the posting of notices again becomes practicable.
- 38.11** Without prejudice to any other Articles, the accidental failure to send any document, notice or information to or the non-receipt of any document, notice or information relating to any meeting or other proceeding shall not invalidate the relevant meeting or other proceeding.
- 38.12** Nothing in Articles 38.1 to 38.11 shall affect any provision of the Statutes or any other legislation requiring notices or documents to be delivered in a particular way.

## 39 WINDING UP

- 39.1 If the Company shall be wound up (whether the liquidation is altogether voluntary, under supervision or by the Court) the liquidator may, with the authority of a special resolution and any other sanction or authority required by the Statutes, including, the Insolvency Act 1986, divide among the Members (excluding the Company itself to the extent it is a Member by virtue only of its holding of shares as treasury shares) in proportion to their shareholdings in specie or in kind the whole or any part of the assets of the Company, and whether or not the assets shall consist of property of one kind or shall consist of properties of different kinds, and may for such purposes set such value as he deems fair upon any one or more class or classes of property, and may determine how such division shall be carried out as between the Members or different classes of Members. The liquidator may, with the like authority, vest the whole or any part of the assets in trustees upon such trusts for the benefit of Members as the liquidator shall think fit, and the liquidation of the Company may be closed and the Company dissolved, but so that no Member shall be compelled by the liquidator to accept any assets in respect of which there is attached a liability or potential liability.

## 40 INDEMNITY

- 40.1 Subject always to the provisions of the Statutes, and without prejudice to any protection from liability which may otherwise apply, the Company may, at its discretion and subject to any policies adopted by the Directors from time to time, indemnify every Director or other officer or auditor of the Company or associated company (as defined in Section 256 of the 2006 Act) out of the assets of the Company against all costs, charges, losses, expenses and liabilities which he may sustain or incur in connection with any negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust by him in relation to the Company or in relation to the actual or purported execution of the duties of his office or the exercise or purported exercise of his powers or otherwise in relation thereto, including any liability incurred by him in defending any actual or threatened criminal, regulatory or civil proceedings, provided that no such indemnity shall be provided in respect of any liability incurred:
- (a) by a Director:
    - (i) to the Company or any associated company of the Company;
    - (ii) to pay a fine imposed in any criminal proceedings or a penalty imposed by a regulatory authority for non-compliance with any requirement of a regulatory nature (however arising);
    - (iii) in defending any criminal proceedings in which he is convicted;
    - (iv) in defending any civil proceedings brought by the Company, or an associated company of the Company, in which judgment is given against him; or
    - (v) in connection with any application for relief under the Statutes in which the court refuses to grant him relief; or
  - (b) by an auditor in defending any proceedings (whether civil or criminal) in which judgment is given against him or he is convicted.
- 40.2 The Company may at its discretion provide a Director or other officer with

funds, or otherwise arrange, to meet expenditure incurred or to be incurred by him or to enable him to avoid incurring such expenditure in defending any criminal or civil proceedings or defending himself in an investigation by a regulatory authority or against action proposed to be taken by a regulatory authority or in connection with any application for relief under the Statutes arising in relation to the Company or an associated company by virtue of the actual or purported execution of the duties of his office or the exercise or purported exercise of his powers or otherwise in relation thereto, provided that such funds may only be made available in accordance with the provisions of the Statutes, including on the terms that such funds shall be repaid by the Director or other officer to the Company in the circumstances required by the Statutes, where relevant, or in any other circumstances the Company may prescribe, or where the Company otherwise reserves the right to require repayment, at any time, and the Company at its discretion exercises such right.

- 40.3** Articles 40.1 and 40.2 shall permit the Company to give such indemnities and to provide such funding to any persons who were formerly a Director or other officer of the Company where the proceedings brought against him relate to any act or omission alleged to have been committed or to have occurred at a time during which he held such office.
- 40.4** Without prejudice to the provisions of Articles 40.1 to 40.3, the Directors shall have power to purchase and maintain insurance for or for the benefit of any persons who are or were at any time Directors, officers or employees of the Company, or of any other company in which the Company or any of the predecessors of the Company has any interest whether direct or indirect or which is in any way allied to or associated with the Company, or of any subsidiary undertaking of the Company or of any such other company, or who are or were at any time trustees of any pension fund in which employees of the Company or of any such other company or subsidiary undertaking are interested, including, (without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing) insurance against any liability incurred by such persons in respect of any act or omission in the actual or purported execution and/or discharge of their duties and/or in the exercise or purported exercise of their powers and/or otherwise in relation to their duties, powers or offices in relation to the Company or any such other company, subsidiary undertaking or pension fund. For the purposes of this Article “subsidiary undertaking” shall have the meaning assigned to it in Section 1162 of the 2006 Act.

#### **41 POWER TO APPOINT A PRESIDENT OF THE COMPANY**

- 41.1** The Board shall have power to appoint any person deemed by the Board to be fit for such appointment to be the President of the Company and any person so appointed shall hold office for life or for such other lesser period as from time to time shall be determined by the Board. If the President is appointed otherwise than from among the Directors then, while he shall not be counted in the quorum at any meeting of the Directors nor shall be entitled to vote on any matter decided at any such meeting or otherwise in any way to exercise any of the rights privileges and powers of a Director, he shall be entitled to attend meetings of the Directors although failure to give notice to the President of any such meeting shall not invalidate such meeting or any business transacted thereat.

#### **42 SHARE WARRANTS**

- 42.1** The Company may, with respect to any fully paid shares, issue a warrant (a “**share warrant**”) stating that the bearer of the warrant is entitled to the shares specified in it and may provide (by coupons or otherwise) for the

payment of future dividends on the shares included in a share warrant.

- 42.2** The powers referred to in Article 42.1 may be exercised by the Board, which may determine and vary the conditions on which share warrants shall be issued, and in particular on which:
- (a) a new share warrant or coupon will be issued in the place of one damaged, defaced, worn out or lost (provided that no new share warrant shall be issued to replace one that has been lost unless the Board is satisfied beyond reasonable doubt that the original has been destroyed);
  - (b) the bearer of a share warrant shall be entitled to receive notice of and to attend, vote and demand a poll at General Meetings;
  - (c) dividends will be paid; and
  - (d) a share warrant may be surrendered and the name of the holder entered in the Register in respect of the shares specified in it.
- 42.3** Subject to such conditions and to these Articles, the bearer of a share warrant shall be deemed to be a Member for all purposes. The bearer of a share warrant shall be subject to the conditions for the time being in force and applicable thereto, whether made before or after the issue of such share warrant.

DATED

2016

---

WARRANT INSTRUMENT

---

5 New Street Square | London EC4A 3TW  
Tel +44 (0)20 7300 7000  
Fax +44 (0)20 7300 7100  
DX 41 London  
[www.taylorwessing.com](http://www.taylorwessing.com)

TaylorWessing

---

**BY**

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**, a public limited liability company incorporated and registered in England & Wales under company number 05375156, whose registered office is at One, Central Square, Cardiff CF10 1FS (the "**Company**").

**AGREED TERMS**

This warrant instrument (this "**Warrant Instrument**") has been entered into by the Company by way of deed poll relating to the Warrants to subscribe for the Shares (as such terms are defined herein), subject to the Company's articles of association.

This Warrant Instrument and the exhibits and appendices set out the terms and conditions of the Warrants.

Subject to the terms herein, no modification to this Warrant Instrument may be effected except by deed poll executed by the Company.

This Warrant instrument shall be governed by and construed in accordance with English law.

This Warrant has been duly executed by the Company and delivered as a deed on the date shown at the beginning.

<b>EXECUTED</b> as a <b>DEED</b> by	)
<b>VERONA PHARMA PLC</b>	)
acting by a director	)
in the presence of:	
	Director

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness signature:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness name:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness address:

## Terms and Conditions of the Warrants

### 1. Terms and Conditions of the Warrants

#### 1.1 Background and Reasons for Issuing the Warrants

At a general meeting of shareholders of Verona Pharma plc (the “**Company**”) held on [•] 2016, the Board of Directors of the Company were authorised to issue certain warrants (the “**Warrants**”) providing for the subscription of new ordinary shares of £0.001 each in the capital of the Company (the “**Shares**”) in accordance with the Companies Act 2006 (the “**Companies Act**”) and the Company’s articles of association and on the terms and conditions set out herein (the “**Terms and Conditions**”).

The issuance of the Warrants is made pursuant to these Terms and Conditions.

In respect of the Reg D Offering (defined below), these Terms and Conditions will be appended to a securities purchase agreement dated June 17, 2016 (the “**Securities Purchase Agreement**”) between the Company and certain investors (the “**US Investors**”) in an offering exempt from registration pursuant to Regulation D (the “**Reg D Offering**”) under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”) under which the US Investors have, subject to certain terms and conditions, undertaken to subscribe for securities of the Company (the “**Units**”), with each Unit consisting of (i) one Share; and (ii) one Warrant to purchase two-fifths (0.4) of a Share, at a purchase price of £0.02873 per Unit (the “**US Transaction**”).

Concurrently with the Reg D Offering there will be an offshore offering (together with the Reg D Offering, the “**Offerings**”) to certain investors pursuant to Regulation S (“**Regulation S**”) under the Securities Act (the “**Offshore Investors**” and, together with the US Investors, the “**Investors**”) under which the Offshore Investors have, subject to certain terms and conditions, undertaken to subscribe for Units, with each Unit consisting of (i) one Share; and (ii) one Warrant to purchase two-fifths (0.4) of a Share, at a purchase price of £0.02873 per Unit (the “**Offshore Transaction**”, together with the US Transaction, the “**Transaction**”).

#### 1.2 Number of Warrants

The Company shall issue Warrants to the Investors entitling the holders thereof (the “**Warrantholders**”) to subscribe for in aggregate a maximum of 622,318,538 Shares (or corresponding number of ADSs, based on the exchange ratio applicable to the exchange of Shares for ADSs (the “**ADS Exchange Ratio**”) in accordance with Section 2, subject to adjustment as described in these Terms and Conditions.

#### 1.3 Subscription of Warrants

In accordance with the terms of the Offerings, the Warrants have been subscribed for by and shall be issued to the Investors at the completion of the Transaction.

The Warrants will be issued in certificated form in the form set out in **Appendix C** (each such certificate, a “**Warrant Certificate**”). The Company shall maintain a register of the holders of Warrants, the Warrant Certificates they hold, and the number of Warrant Shares (defined below) for which their Warrants are exercisable.

The Warrants will not be listed by the Company on a regulated market or other trading platform.

#### 1.4 Transfer of Warrants

The Warrants may not be transferred or pledged other than:

- (a) to the Warrantholder, an Affiliate (as such term is defined in the Registration Rights Agreement) of a Warrantholder, or to any corporation, partnership, limited liability company or other entity all of the beneficial ownership interests of which are held by the Warrantholder in a transaction not involving a disposition for value or to any investment fund or other entity controlled or managed by the Warrantholder or under common control with the Warrantholder, (or, if the Warrantholder is an investment company registered under the U.S. Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (a “**Mutual Fund**”), pursuant to a merger or reorganization with or into another Mutual Fund that shares the same investment adviser registered pursuant to the requirements of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended), or to any partner, member or shareholder or former partner, member or shareholder of the Warrantholder, or
- (b) to a third party which would be holding, as the result of the transfer, Warrants representing the right to acquire at least 10,000,000 Shares, or if less, all of the Warrants held by the transferor (pledgor); or
- (c) pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act, or pursuant to Rule 144 under the Securities Act or any other exemption from registration under the Securities Act; and

provided that in each case:

- i. such transfer of Warrants is made in compliance with these Terms and Conditions, applicable securities laws, and all requirements of regulatory authorities, and in connection therewith the Company may require that the transferring Warrantholder deliver to the Company an opinion of counsel in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Company to the effect that registration under the Securities Act or qualification under the securities laws of any state is not required in connection with any such transfer; provided, however, that the Company shall not require such legal opinion for transfers made by Offshore Investors to persons outside of the U.S. in compliance with Regulation S (“**Offshore Transfers**”);
- ii. the holder of the Warrant to be transferred or pledged must, prior to transfer or pledge of the Warrant, deliver to the Company: (a) the original Warrant Certificate (or an indemnity in a form satisfactory to the Company (acting reasonably) in the event that the Warrant Certificate is lost or destroyed); (b) a duly executed Warrant Assignment in the form of **Exhibit (A)**; and (c) an Accredited Investor Certification certifying the “accredited investor” status under the Securities Act of the transferee or pledgee in the form set out in **Exhibit (B-1)** or an Offshore Investor Certification in the form set out in **Exhibit (B-2)**; and
- iii. each Warrant Certificate transferred as above provided, other than with respect to Offshore Transfers, shall bear an appropriate restrictive legend as set forth in Section 2.15.

## **2. Terms and Conditions of Share Subscription**

### **2.1 Right to Subscribe for Warrant Shares**

Each Warrant Certificate entitles its holder to subscribe for a number of new Shares set forth in the Warrant Certificate or, following the U.S. Offering and at the election of the Warrantholder, a number of ADSs representing an equivalent number of Shares based on the ADS Exchange Ratio corresponding to the ratio in the Company’s ADS facility with the depository bank (as applicable, the “**Warrant Shares**”). References herein to the Warrant Shares shall mean the Shares or, if applicable, the ADSs (representing an equivalent

number of Shares, based on the ADS Exchange Ratio determined from time to time, which shall be adjusted as necessary in connection with any subdivision or combination of the capital stock of the Company), *mutatis mutandis*. The form of Exercise Notice will specify whether the Company will be required to deliver Shares on exercise of the Warrant, or ADSs representing an equivalent number of Shares.

If this Warrant shall have been exercised in part, the Company shall, at the request of a Warrantholder and upon surrender of this Warrant Certificate, at the time of delivery of the Warrant Shares, deliver to the Warrantholder a new Warrant evidencing the rights of the Warrantholder to purchase the unpurchased Warrant Shares called for by this Warrant, which new Warrant shall in all other respects be identical with this Warrant.

No fractional shares or scrip representing fractional shares shall be issued upon the exercise of any Warrant. As to any fraction of a share which the Warrantholder would otherwise be entitled to purchase upon such exercise (determined on an aggregate basis with all other Warrants then being exercised by the Warrantholder), the Company shall round down to the next whole share.

## 2.2 Subscription Price

The subscription price for each Warrant Share is £0.034476 (which price is expressed on a per-Share basis), subject to adjustment as described in these Terms and Conditions (the “**Warrant Exercise Price**”). The Warrant Exercise Price shall be booked in its entirety to the share capital of the Company.

## 2.3 Share Subscription, Payment and Registration of Shares

Unless otherwise specifically provided under these Terms and Conditions, the Warrants shall be exercisable for the Warrant Shares as set forth in this Section 2.3 during the subscription period that commences on the earlier of (the “**Commencement Date**”) (i) the closing date of the U.S. Offering (defined below), and (ii) the first anniversary of the closing date of the Offerings, and ends on the fifth anniversary of the Commencement Date (the “**Share Subscription Period**”), provided that in the event that the Company announces the execution of a definitive agreement providing for an Acquisition (as defined below) prior to the beginning of the Share Subscription Period pursuant to the preceding clauses (i) or (ii), then the Share Subscription Period shall instead begin immediately following such announcement ( and in such case, the Warrant shall remain exercisable until the sixth anniversary of the closing of the Offerings) and the Company shall provide prompt notice to the Warrantholders of the commencement of such Share Subscription Period. Any Warrants remaining unexercised after the end of the Share Subscription Period shall be automatically exercised pursuant to the cashless exercise procedures described in Section 2.4 hereof, without any action being taken by the Warrantholders, provided that the applicable Warrantholder is a holder of one or more Shares at such time (as described herein).

“**Acquisition**” means any of the following: (i) any sale, lease, license, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company; (ii) any reorganization, consolidation, merger, demerger or sale of shares of the Company (including, without limitation, a public tender offer for the shares in the Company) where the holders of the Company’s outstanding shares as of immediately before the transaction (or series of related transactions) beneficially own less than a majority by voting powers of the outstanding shares of the surviving or successor entity as of immediately after the transaction; (iii) a scheme of arrangement under Part 26 of the Companies Act of 2006 pursuant to which all of the securities or shares in the Company become vested in a third party; (iv) a takeover offer within the meaning of Part 28 of the Companies Act 2006; or (v) the acquisition by any “person” (together with his, her or its Affiliates) or “group” (within the meaning of Section 13(d) or 14(d) of the Exchange Act) acquires, directly or indirectly, the beneficial ownership (as such term is defined in Rule 13d-3 promulgated under the

Exchange Act) of outstanding shares of capital stock and/or other equity securities of the Company, in a single transaction or series of related transactions (including, without limitation, one or more tender offers or exchange offers), representing at least 50% of the voting power or economic interests in the then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company.

The Warrants may be exercised in whole or in part, at any time or from time to time on any day during the Share Subscription Period, by surrender of the Warrant Certificate and the exercise notice in the form set out in **Exhibit (C)** (the “**Exercise Notice**”), duly completed and executed by the Warrantholder, to the Company (or such other office or agency of the Company as it may designate by notice in writing to the registered Warrantholder at the address of the Warrantholder appearing on the books of the Company) specifying whether the Warrants will be exercised by way of:

- (a) cash payment, with the Warrantholder making payment to the Company in cash of the Warrant Exercise Price for the Warrant Shares (the “**Exercise Amount**”) by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the account of the Company in an amount equal to the Exercise Amount on a delivery versus payment basis (except where the Warrants are exercised for ADSs); or
- (b) the cashless exercise procedure specified in section 2.4 below,

together with, in each case to the extent necessary under the Securities Act, delivery to the Company of either (i) an Accredited Investor Certification certifying the “accredited investor” status under the Securities Act of the recipient of the Warrant Shares to be received upon exercise of the Warrants for cash pursuant to the preceding clause (a), in the form set out in **Exhibit (B-1)**, or (ii) an Offshore Investor Certification in the form set out in **Exhibit (B-2)**, as applicable, in each case with such exercise to be effective upon receipt by the Company of such notice, such Exercise Amount and such Accredited Investor Certification (the “**Effective Exercise**”).

In the event a Warrantholder delivers an Accredited Investor Certification in connection with exercise of Warrants, unless there is then an effective registration statement covering the issuance or resale of the Warrant Shares to be issued upon exercise, the Warrant Shares shall bear the legend set forth in Section 2.15. For the avoidance of doubt, in the event a Warrantholder delivers an Offshore Investor Certification, the Warrant Shares shall not bear a legend. If there is an effective registration statement covering the Warrant Shares to be issued upon exercise, then the Warrant Shares shall be issued free of any restrictive legends and shall be delivered to the Warrantholder via CREST or DTC, as applicable (with such Shares being eligible for trading on the Alternative Investment Market (“**AIM**”), a market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc) and with the ADSs being eligible for trading on the Nasdaq Global Market or the Nasdaq Capital Market (“**Nasdaq**”) (in each case, as applicable).

If the Company has reasonable grounds to object to any attempted exercise, it must give written notice of such objection within two (2) Business Days of receipt of the related exercise notice.

The Company shall issue Warrant Shares on the basis of the Warrants validly exercised in accordance with this Section 2.3 to the exercising Warrantholder. Warrant Shares issued on the basis of Warrants validly exercised in accordance with this Section 2.3 shall be: (i) written up in the Company’s register of members; and (ii) admitted to trading as set forth in Section 3.1.

Delivery of the Shares or ADSs representing the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise shall be made within three (3) Business Days after the Effective Exercise (“**T+3 Settlement**”).

---

If the Company shall have completed a U.S. Offering prior to Effective Exercise and sold American depositary shares representing Shares (“**ADSs**”) in the U.S. Offering and the Warrantholder(s) deposit Warrant Shares (initially consisting of Shares) with the depository for the ADSs, the Company shall use its best efforts to cooperate with any reasonable request made of the Company by or on behalf of the depository for such ADSs in connection with any such deposit and any sale of the ADSs under an effective registration statement covering such ADSs or pursuant to an exemption from registration available under the U.S. securities laws; provided, any ADSs (either certificates or book entry notations) shall be issued with restrictive legends under the Securities Act if, at the time of such deposit of the Shares, the ADSs have not then been registered for resale under that certain Registration Rights Agreement between the Company and the parties listed on the signature pages thereto dated on or about the date of completion of the Offerings (the “**Registration Rights Agreement**”).

For the purposes of these Terms and Conditions “**U.S. Offering**” means the closing of the first sale of ordinary shares of the Company or ADSs to the public in the United States in a firm-commitment underwritten public offering pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act and in connection with which such shares or ADSs are listed on the Nasdaq.

## 2.4 Cashless Exercise

The Warrantholder at its sole discretion may, if it is a shareholder of the Company, determine by specifying in the Exercise Notice to exercise, in whole or in part, at such time by means of a “cashless exercise” in which the Warrantholder shall be entitled to receive a number of Warrant Shares by way of a non pre-emptive bonus issue of fully paid up Warrant Shares to the relevant Warrantholder made out of either distributable or non-distributable reserves of the Company (including by way of a capitalisation of (i) the Company’s share premium account in accordance with section 610(3) of the Companies Act 2006 (or other non-distributable reserve from time to time); or (ii) the Company’s distributable reserves from time to time (as defined in section 830(2) of the Companies Act)), of equal to the quotient obtained by dividing [(A-B) (X)] by (A), where:

- (A) = the last Closing Price immediately preceding the time of delivery of the Exercise Notice giving rise to the applicable “cashless exercise”, as set forth in the applicable Exercise Notice;
- (B) = the Exercise Price of this Warrant, as adjusted hereunder; and
- (X) = the number of Warrant Shares for which the Warrantholder has elected to exercise this Warrant that would be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant in accordance with the terms of this Warrant if such exercise were by means of a cash exercise rather than a cashless exercise.

For purposes of this Section 2.4, the “last Closing Price” means the last Closing Price (as defined in Section 2.10) as calculated over an entire trading day such that, in the event that this Warrant is exercised at a time that AIM or Nasdaq is open, the prior trading day’s volume weighted average price shall be used in this calculation. For the avoidance of doubt, if the Warrant is being exercised for Shares, then the last Closing Price shall be determined with reference to AIM and if the Warrant is being exercised for ADSs, then the last Closing Price shall be determined with reference to Nasdaq.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, the issuance of Warrant Shares upon the cashless exercise of a Warrant shall not be deemed to cause an adjustment pursuant to Sections 2.6 through 2.10 hereof.

The provisions above permitting “cashless exercise” are intended, in part, to ensure that the exchange of this Warrant for Warrant Shares pursuant to such provisions will be characterized as and constitute a valid reorganization in the form of a recapitalization under section 368(a)(1)(E) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

## **2.5 Shareholder Rights**

The Warrant Shares subscribed for on the basis of the Warrants will entitle the holders thereof to any possible dividend and to other shareholder rights upon their proper registration in the Company’s register of members.

## **2.6 Issuance of Warrant Shares or Rights Entitling to Shares**

Should the Company, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, resolve on any issue of new shares, stock options or other special rights entitling to shares to all shareholders (other than an issue of shares that is made in order to effect a subdivision or combination of shares within the meaning of Section 2.7), the holders of Warrants shall have the same or equal rights as the shareholders to participate in such issue. This equality shall be achieved in the manner resolved by the Board of Directors of the Company by (i) changing the Warrant Exercise Price, (ii) changing the number of Warrant Shares which the Warrants entitle to subscribe for, or by (iii) using a combination of the aforementioned items (i) and (ii), provided that adjustment shall only be made pursuant to this Section 2.6 to the extent that adjustment is not provided for with respect to such transaction under Sections 2.7 through 2.13.

## **2.7 Adjustment for Stock Splits and Combinations**

If the Company, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period shall effect a subdivision of its ordinary shares, the Warrant Exercise Price then in effect immediately before that subdivision shall be proportionately decreased. If the Company, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period shall combine its ordinary shares, the Warrant Exercise Price then in effect immediately before the combination shall be proportionately increased. For the avoidance of doubt, if the Company, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period shall make any adjustment to the ADS Exchange Ratio, the number of ADSs receivable upon exercise of a Warrant, and the exercise price payable per ADS, shall be correspondingly adjusted. Any adjustment under this Section 2.7 shall become effective at the close of business on the date the subdivision or combination becomes effective.

## **2.8 Adjustment for Certain Dividends and Distributions**

If the Company, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, shall make or issue, or fix a record date for the determination of holders of its ordinary shares entitled to receive, a dividend or other distribution to the shareholders from the fund for invested unrestricted equity payable in ordinary shares in the Company, then and in each such event the Warrant Exercise Price then in effect immediately before such event shall be decreased as of the time of such issuance or, in the event such a record date shall have been fixed, as of the close of business on such record date, by multiplying the Warrant Exercise Price then in effect by a fraction:

- (a) the numerator of which shall be the total number of ordinary shares outstanding immediately prior to the time of such issuance or the close of business on such record date, and
- (b) the denominator of which shall be the total number of ordinary shares outstanding immediately prior to the time of such issuance or the close of business on such record date plus the number of ordinary shares issuable in payment of such dividend or distribution;

provided, however, that if such record date shall have been fixed and such dividend is not fully paid or if such distribution is not fully made on the date fixed therefor, the Warrant Exercise Price shall be recomputed accordingly as of the close of business on such date and thereafter the Warrant Exercise Price shall be adjusted pursuant to this paragraph as of the time of actual payment of such dividends or distributions, if any.

## 2.9 Adjustment in Number of Warrant Shares Issuable Upon Exercise of Warrants

When any adjustment is required to be made in the Warrant Exercise Price pursuant to Section 2.7 or 2.8, the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon the exercise of a Warrant shall be changed to the number determined by dividing (i) an amount equal to the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon the exercise of the Warrant immediately prior to such adjustment, multiplied by the Warrant Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to such adjustment, by (ii) the Warrant Exercise Price in effect immediately after such adjustment.

## 2.10 Adjustments for Other Dividends and Distributions

If the Company, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, shall: (i) pay or declare a dividend payable to all shareholders other than in ordinary shares (e.g. in cash or assets other than ordinary shares in the Company); or (ii) distribute assets to shareholders from the fund for invested unrestricted equity (other than ordinary shares), the share premium reserve or legal reserve or its share capital, then and in each such event the Warrant Exercise Price then in effect immediately before such event shall be decreased as of such event by multiplying the Warrant Exercise Price then in effect by a fraction:

- (a) the numerator of which shall be equal to (i) the Closing Price on the day immediately prior to the date when such event was first published (or if there is no such price, the fair market value of one ordinary share of the Company as of such date as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company) minus (ii) the amount per outstanding share of such dividend or distribution; and
- (b) the denominator of which shall be the Closing Price on the day immediately prior to the date when such event was first published (or if there is no such price, the fair market value of one ordinary share of the Company as of such date as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company).

In the event that the application of the above fraction would result in an increase in the Warrant Exercise Price, then no adjustment shall be made hereunder. If the Company distributes assets other than cash, the amount per outstanding share of the distribution shall be calculated by reference to the fair market value of the assets distributed as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company.

“**Closing Price**” for purposes of this Section 2.10 means: (i) prior to the closing of the U.S. Offering, the volume weighted average closing price of the ordinary shares of the Company on AIM during the ten trading day period preceding the measurement date, or (ii) after the closing of the U.S. Offering, the most recently reported closing price of the ordinary shares or ADSs, as applicable, on the Nasdaq.

## 2.11 Adjustment for Reorganization

- (a) If, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, there shall occur any reorganization, recapitalization, reclassification, consolidation, merger or demerger involving the Company in which the Company’s ordinary shares are converted into or exchanged for securities, cash or other property (other than a transaction covered by Sections 2.7, 2.8, 2.10 or 2.12) (collectively, a “**Reorganization**”), then, following such Reorganization, subject to Section 2.11(b), the Warrant holders shall receive upon exercise of the Warrants the kind and amount of securities, cash or other

property, if any, which the Warrantheolders would have been entitled to receive pursuant to such Reorganization if such exercise had taken place immediately prior to such Reorganization. Appropriate adjustment (as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company) shall be made in the application of the provisions set forth herein with respect to the rights and interests thereafter of the Warrantheolder, to the end that the provisions set forth in these Terms and Conditions (including provisions with respect to changes in and other adjustments of the Warrant Exercise Price and the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants) shall thereafter be applicable, as nearly as reasonably may be, in relation to any securities, cash or other property thereafter deliverable upon the exercise of the applicable Warrants.

- (b) The Warrantheolders shall not be entitled to demand the redemption of the Warrants in relation to a merger or a division in accordance with Chapter 27 of the Companies Act, provided, however, that the Warrantheolders shall be entitled to demand such redemption in the event that as a result of such merger or division the Warrants will be exercisable for anything other than shares or securities that are listed on a regulated market (within the meaning of the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive (2004/39/EC)) or a United States national securities exchange.

## 2.12 Treatment of Warrants in an Acquisition

- (a) In the event of an Acquisition prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period (other than, for the purposes of this provision, an Acquisition consummated by way of an unsolicited third-party offer), the Company shall use its best efforts to ensure that lawful and adequate provision shall be made whereby each Warrantheolder shall thereafter continue to have the right to subscribe for upon the Terms and Conditions and in lieu of the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants held by such Warrantheolder, such number of shares, where the value of each new warrant to purchase one share in the surviving or acquiring entity (“**Acquirer**”) is determined in accordance with the Black-Scholes Option Pricing formula set forth in **Appendix (A)** hereto, that is equivalent to the aggregate value of the Warrants held by such Warrantheolder, where the value of each Warrant to purchase one Share in the Company is determined in accordance with the Black-Scholes Option Pricing formula set forth **Appendix (B)** hereto. Furthermore, the new warrants to purchase shares in the Acquirer referred to herein shall have the same expiration date as the Warrants, and shall have a strike price,  $K_{Acq}$ , that is calculated in accordance with **Appendix (A)** hereto. For the avoidance of doubt, if the Acquirer surviving or acquiring entity, as the case may be, is a member of a consolidated group for financial reporting purposes, the “Acquirer” shall be deemed to be the parent of such consolidated group for purposes of this Section 2.12 and **Appendix (A)** hereto.
- (b) Moreover, appropriate provision shall be made with respect to the rights and interests of each Warrantheolder to the end that the provisions hereof (including, without limitation, provision for adjustment of the Warrant Exercise Price) shall thereafter be applicable, as nearly equivalent as may be practicable in relation to any shares of stock (or ADSs) thereafter deliverable upon the exercise thereof. The Company shall not effect any such Acquisition unless prior to or simultaneously with the consummation thereof the successor corporation resulting from such consolidation or merger, or the corporation purchasing or otherwise acquiring such assets or other appropriate corporation or entity shall assume by written instrument, reasonably deemed by the Board of Directors of the Company and the Warrantheolder to be satisfactory in form and substance, the obligation to deliver to the holder of the Warrants, at the last address of such holder appearing on the books of the Company, such shares of stock, as, in accordance with the foregoing provisions, such holder may be entitled to purchase, and the other obligations under these Warrants. The provisions of this Section 2.12 shall similarly apply to successive Acquisitions.

- (c) If the Company, in spite of using its best efforts, is unable to cause these Warrants to continue in full force and effect until the expiration of the Share Subscription Period in connection with any Acquisition, then the Company shall pay the Warranholders an amount per Warrant to purchase one Share in the Company that is calculated in accordance with the Black-Scholes Option Pricing formula set forth in **Appendix (B)** hereto (the “**Black-Scholes Value**”). Such payment shall be made in cash in the event that the Acquisition results in the shareholders of the Company receiving cash from the Acquirer at the closing of the transaction, and shall be made in shares of the Company (with the value of each share in the Company determined according to  $S_{Corp}$  in **Appendix (B)** hereto) in the event that the Acquisition results in the shareholders of the Company receiving shares in the Acquirer or other entity at the closing of the transaction. In the event that the shareholders of the Company receive both cash and shares at the closing of the transaction, such payment to the Warranholders shall also be made in both cash and shares in the same proportion as the consideration received by the shareholders. Following any payment required pursuant to this Section 2.12(c), the Warrant shall terminate, without payment of any additional consideration therefor.
- (d) Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the event that as a result of the Acquisition the Warrants will be exercisable for anything other than shares or securities that are listed on a regulated market (within the meaning of the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive (2004/39(EC))) or a United States national securities exchange, the Warranholder shall be entitled to demand to receive a cash payment in an amount equal to the Black-Scholes Value per Warrant (calculated in accordance with **Appendix B** attached hereto) contemporaneously with or promptly after the consummation of such Acquisition. Following any such demand, the Warrant shall terminate, without payment of any consideration other than the Black-Scholes Value therefor, effective upon the payment of such amount.

### 2.13 **Rights of Warranholders in Certain Situations**

- (a) If, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, the Company is placed into liquidation, the Warranholders shall have the right to exercise the Warrants pursuant to these Terms and Conditions during a fixed period of time to be determined by the Board of Directors of the Company of which the Company shall give the Warranholders written notice, provided that such period for exercise of the Warrants may not expire earlier than ten (10) Business Days following the date on which the Company sends the Warranholders notice of such fixed period determined by the Board of Directors and five (5) Business Days prior to completion of the liquidation of the Company; provided further than any exercise by the Warranholders of the Warrants may be conditioned upon the completion of the liquidation of the Company. Notwithstanding any other provisions in these Terms and Conditions, should the Company be struck off from Companies House prior to the exercise of the Warrants, the Warranholders shall have no right to exercise the Warrants.
- (b) If, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, the Company makes a resolution to acquire its own shares through a tender offer to all the shareholders or to acquire other special rights entitling to shares issued in one or more transactions that were related to the offering of the Warrants (the “**Related Offerings**”) through a tender offer to all holders of such rights, the Company shall make an equal offer to the Warranholders in respect of the Warrants. If the Company acquires its own shares in any other manner, or if the Company acquires stock options or special rights entitling to shares other than those issued in the Related Offerings, no measures will need to be taken in relation to the Warrants.
- (c) If, prior to the end of the Share Subscription Period, a tender offer regarding all shares, stock options and other special rights issued by the Company is made by a

party other than the Company, including pursuant to a scheme of arrangement under Part 26 of the Companies Act 2006 pursuant to which all of the securities or shares in the Company become vested in a third party, or should a shareholder have the obligation to redeem the shares from the Company's other shareholders, or to redeem the stock options or other special rights issued by the Company, or should a shareholder have under the Companies Act the right and obligation to redeem the shares from the Company's other shareholders, then the Warrantheolders may transfer all of their Warrants to such offeror or redeemer, as the case may be. If any such tender offer results in the third party acquiring more than 50% of the voting stock of the Company, then that event shall be deemed an "Acquisition" as set forth above.

Should a shareholder under the Companies Act have and exercise the right to redeem the shares from the other shareholders of the Company, the Warrantheolders shall upon request by such shareholder have a corresponding obligation to transfer all of their Warrants for redemption, in which case the Acquirer shall pay the Warrantheolders the Black-Scholes Value per Warrant, and the Warrant shall terminate, without payment of any consideration other than the Black-Scholes Value therefor, effective upon satisfying such payment obligation.

The Board of Directors may at its discretion in any of the situations mentioned in this Section 2.13(c), also give the Warrantheolders an opportunity (which for the avoidance of doubt shall not foreclose the Warrantheolders from exercising the Warrants for the securities or other property for which they would otherwise have been exercisable) to exercise the Warrants or to convert the Warrants into equity issued by the offeror or redeemer, as the case may be, on such terms and within such reasonable time period prior to the completion of the tender offer or redemption, as resolved by the Board of Directors.

#### **2.14 Notice of Adjustment**

Not less than ten (10) Business Days prior to the record date or effective date, as the case may be, of any action which requires or might require an adjustment or readjustment of the Warrant Exercise Price or the number, amount or type of securities or other assets issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, the Company shall give notice to the Warrantheolders of such event, describing such event in reasonable detail and specifying the record date or effective date, as the case may be, and, if determinable, the required adjustment and computation thereof. If the required adjustment is not determinable as the time of such notice, the Company shall give notice to the Warrantheolders of such adjustment and computation as soon as reasonably practicable after such adjustment becomes determinable.

#### **2.15 Legend**

Neither the Warrants nor the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants have been or will be registered under the Securities Act or under any state securities laws of the United States, except as provided under the Registration Rights Agreement executed in connection with the Offerings. Except as otherwise permitted by Section 1.4, each Warrant Certificate and each certificate representing the Warrant Shares shall bear the following legends or such variations thereof as the Company may prescribe from time to time:

THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE U.S. SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), OR APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THE SECURITIES MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED (I) EXCEPT PURSUANT TO (A) AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT, (B) RULE 903 or 904 PURSUANT TO THE SECURITIES ACT, OR (C) RULE 144 UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT (UPON FURNISHING TO THE

COMPANY SUCH REPRESENTATION LETTERS AS THE COMPANY MAY REQUIRE), OR (II) UNLESS AN OPINION OF COUNSEL, REASONABLY SATISFACTORY TO THE COMPANY, SHALL BE PROVIDED TO THE COMPANY, PROVIDING THAT SUCH SALE, TRANSFER OR ASSIGNMENT DOES NOT REQUIRE REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, no Warrant Certificate issued to Offshore Investors pursuant to the Offshore Transaction nor any Warrant Shares issued to such Offshore Investors or their respective transferees pursuant to the cashless exercise procedures set forth in Section 2.4 hereof or pursuant to an exercise of the Warrant in connection with which a duly completed and executed Offshore Investor Certification is delivered shall bear such legend.

### **2.16 Exercise Limitation**

Notwithstanding any provisions herein to the contrary, from and after the time that the Company has ceased to qualify as a “foreign private issuer” (as that term is defined in the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “**Exchange Act**”)), the Warrantholder shall not be entitled to exercise Warrants for a number of Shares in excess of that number of Shares which, upon giving effect to such exercise, would cause the aggregate number of Shares deemed beneficially owned by the Warrantholder to exceed 9.99% of the outstanding Shares following such exercise. For purposes of the foregoing proviso, the aggregate number of Shares beneficially owned by the Warrantholder shall include the number of Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which determination of such proviso is being made, but shall exclude the Shares which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, unexercised Warrants beneficially owned by the Warrantholder and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or unconverted portion of any other securities of the Company beneficially owned by the Warrantholder subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 2.16, beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Warrantholder may waive the foregoing limitation, or increase or decrease the foregoing limitation to any other percentage, by written notice to the Company; provided that a waiver by the Warrantholder of the foregoing limitation or a request to increase such limitation requires not less than 61 days prior written notice (with such waiver of the foregoing limitation or request to increase such limitation taking effect only upon the expiration of such 61 day notice period and applying only to the Warrantholder and not to any other holder of Warrants). For purposes of this Section 2.16, in determining the number of outstanding Shares, the Warrantholder may rely on the number of outstanding Shares as reflected in (x) the Company’s most recent periodic report filed with the SEC on the date thereof, (y) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (z) any other notice by the Company or its transfer agent setting forth the number of Shares outstanding. Upon the written request of the Warrantholder, the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to within confirm in writing or by electronic mail to the Warrantholder the number of Shares then outstanding within three (3) Business Days after written request by such Warrantholder. In any case, the number of outstanding Shares shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Warrantholder since the date as of which such number of outstanding Shares was reported.

### **3. Forfeiture Event**

Pursuant to section 5(k) of the Securities Purchase Agreement, to the extent that the U.S. Offering is consummated within one year from completion of the Transaction and any Warrantholder does not fully subscribe for Shares or ADSs in the U.S. Offering (including the value of any Shares or ADSs acquired in any concurrent private offering made on substantially the same terms as the U.S. Offering) having an aggregate purchase price not less than the aggregate purchase price of the securities such Warrantholder purchased in the Transaction (or such lesser amount as may be

allocated to the Warrantholder in the U.S. Offering by the lead underwriter in such offering), such Warrantholder will forfeit any Warrants issued to that Warrantholder in the Transaction. By way of example, if a Warrantholder purchases USD\$5 million of securities in the Transaction, that Warrantholder will forfeit any Warrants purchased in the Transaction unless such Warrantholder purchases at least USD\$5 million in the U.S Offering (including any concurrent private placement). Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if the Warrantholder's allocation is cut back by the lead underwriter in the U.S Offering (or concurrent private placement), then the required level of participation to retain the Warrants shall be only that amount that is allocated to the Warrantholder in the U.S Offering (or concurrent private placement); and (ii) if any Warrantholder is barred from purchasing securities in the U.S. Offering, pursuant to its internal or other tax related structure or other applicable law or rule, and has notified the Company of such fact prior to the pricing of the U.S. Offering, such Warrantholder shall not forfeit any Warrants issued to that Warrantholder in the Transaction. The provisions of this Section 3 shall be binding on any transferee of the Warrants.

#### **4. Other Terms**

##### **4.1 Stock Exchange Listing and Government Approvals**

The Company will, at its own expense, use its reasonable best efforts to: (a) maintain the AIM listing of its ordinary shares on the London Stock Exchange and as soon as reasonably practicable following the consummation of the U.S. Offering effect the AIM listing of the Warrant Shares; (b) obtain and keep effective any and all permits, consents and approvals of governmental agencies and authorities which may from time to time be required of the Company in order to satisfy its obligations under these Terms and Conditions; (c) take all action which may be necessary for the admission of the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants for trading on the London Stock Exchange on or before the earliest of: (i) the U.S. Offering; (ii) the listing by the Company of other ordinary shares on the London Stock Exchange or its successors, however, provided that the admission of the Warrant Shares would not require additional documentation (including, but not limited to, the publication of a prospectus under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000) by the Company; and (iii) the date six (6) months from the issue of Warrant Shares; and (d) following the U.S. Offering and to the extent that the Company causes ADSs to be issued in the U.S. Offering, maintain the listing of the ADSs on Nasdaq or another United States national securities exchange.

##### **4.2 Governing Law and Jurisdiction**

These Terms and Conditions shall be governed by and construed in accordance with English law and each of the parties to this agreement hereby submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.

##### **4.3 Notices**

All notices related to the Warrants by the Company shall be sent by express courier or e-mail to the addresses provided to the Company by the respective Warrantholders. The notices related to the Warrants to the Company may be sent by express courier or e-mail to:

Verona Pharma plc  
address: 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE, United Kingdom  
e-mail: jan-anders.karlsson@veronapharma.com and claire.poll@veronapharma.com  
attention: Jan-Anders Karlsson and Claire Poll

A notice made in accordance with the above shall be deemed to have been received by its recipient on (i) the fourth (4<sup>th</sup>) Business Day after the day of sending if sent by express courier, or (ii) on the day of transmission if sent by e-mail, provided that a confirmation of successful transmission has been obtained from the recipient.

**4.4 Other Matters**

By subscribing for the Warrants, the Warrantholders undertake to adhere to these Terms and Conditions

In discharging any obligations hereunder, the parties acknowledge and agree that time shall be of the essence.

The Warrantholders shall be solely responsible for any taxes, duties and other such payments possibly incurred by the holders of Warrants in relation to receiving the Warrants and the subscription of any Warrant Shares under these Terms and Conditions.

The Board of Directors of the Company shall resolve upon all other matters related to the Warrants and to amend the technical procedures relating to the Warrants (including, but not limited to, additional procedures related to the subscription of Warrant Shares), provided, in each case, that such actions, resolutions or amendments are not prejudicial to the Warrantholders.

**THE CASHLESS EXERCISE PROVISIONS (AS SET OUT IN THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS) WILL ONLY BE AVAILABLE IF AT THE TIME OF EXERCISE OF THE WARRANTS THE WARRANTHOLDER IS ALSO A SHAREHOLDER OF ONE OR MORE ORDINARY SHARES (WHICH MAY INCLUDE BEING A SHAREHOLDER OF RECORD, OR A BENEFICIAL OWNER OF SHARES, INCLUDING SHARES IN STREET NAME, AS WELL AS HOLDING ADS'S IN ANY SUCH FORMS) IN THE COMPANY.**

**Exhibit A**

**Form of Warrant Assignment**

To: Verona Pharma plc

Reference is made to the terms and conditions dated [●] 2016 and concerning the issuance of Warrants by Verona Pharma plc (the “**Terms and Conditions**”). The capitalised terms used herein shall have the same meanings as in the Terms and Conditions.

**[NOTE: IF THE FORM CONCERNS TRANSFER, THE FOLLOWING SHALL BE INCLUDED]**

FOR VALUE RECEIVED (the “**Assignor**”) hereby notifies that it has undertaken to sell, assign and transfer all of the rights of the Assignor under the Warrants to the Assignee(s) as set forth below:

Name(s) of Assignee(s)	Assignee(s) Contact Information	Number of Warrants

All notices to be given by the Company to the Assignor as Warrantholder shall be sent to the Assignee(s) at the above listed address(es).

**[NOTE: IF THE FORM CONCERNS PLEDGE, THE FOLLOWING SHALL BE INCLUDED]**

(the “**Pledgor**”) hereby notifies that it has undertaken to irrevocably and unconditionally pledge [with first priority all of the rights of, title to and other interests in] the Warrants to the Pledgee(s) as set forth below:

Name(s) of Pledgee(s)	Number of Warrants Pledged

**NOTE: IF WARRANTS ARE REGISTERED INTO A BOOK-ENTRY SECURITIES SYSTEM, THE PLEDGOR AND PLEDGEE ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR EFFECTING THE REGISTRATION OF ANY PLEDGE TO THE BOOK-ENTRY ACCOUNT OF THE PLEDGOR**

**[NOTE: THE BELOW SHALL BE INCLUDED IN ALL FORMS]**

Place and date:  
Name of the [Assignor / Pledgor]:

By: \_\_\_\_\_ By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Title: \_\_\_\_\_

The above [assignment / pledge] is acknowledged and accepted.

Place and date:  
VERONA PHARMA PLC

By:  
Title:



## Exhibit B-1

### Form of Accredited Investor Certification

Reference is made to the terms and conditions dated [•] 2016 concerning the issuance of Warrants by Verona Pharma plc (the “**Terms and Conditions**”). The capitalised terms used herein shall have the same meanings as in the Terms and Conditions.

The undersigned represents and warrants to Verona Pharma plc (the “**Company**”) in connection with the transfer of Warrants exercisable for Warrant Shares, to the undersigned, or in connection with the exercise of Warrants for Warrant Shares to be subscribed for by the undersigned, that the undersigned fits within each category marked below, and that for any category marked, it has truthfully set forth any description required as provided for below. The undersigned agrees to furnish any additional information that the Company deems necessary in order to verify the answers set forth below.

(PLEASE MARK EACH CATEGORY APPLICABLE TO YOU)

- The undersigned is an individual (not a partnership, corporation, etc.) whose individual net worth, or joint net worth with his or her spouse, presently exceeds \$1,000,000.
- Explanation.* In calculating net worth, you may include equity in personal property, real estate, cash, short-term investments, stock and securities. Please follow these guidelines in calculating the value of your principal residence: (i) you may not include equity in your principal residence as an asset; (ii) you may exclude indebtedness that is secured by your primary residence, up to the estimated fair market value of the primary residence on the date hereof from the calculation of liabilities (unless the amount of such indebtedness outstanding on the date hereof exceeds the amount outstanding 60 days before the date hereof, other than as a result of the acquisition of the primary residence, in which case the excess should be included in the calculation of liabilities); and (iii) you should include indebtedness that is secured by your principal residence in excess of the fair market value of the primary residence on the date hereof in the calculation of liabilities.
- The undersigned is an individual (not a partnership, corporation, etc.) who had an income in excess of \$200,000 in each of the two most recent years, or joint income with his or her spouse in excess of \$300,000 in each of those years (in each case, including foreign income, tax exempt income and full amount of capital gains and losses, but excluding any income of other family members and any unrealized capital appreciation), and has a reasonable expectation of reaching the same income level in the current year.
- The undersigned is a director or executive officer of the Company.
- The undersigned is either: (a) a bank as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”); (b) a savings and loan association or other institution as defined in Section 3(a)(5)(A) of the Securities Act, whether acting in its individual or fiduciary capacity; (c) a broker dealer registered pursuant to Section 15 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; (d) an insurance company as defined in Section 2(13) of the Securities Act; (e) an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 or a business development company as defined in Section 2(a)(48) of the Securities Act; (f) a small business investment company licensed by the U.S. Small Business Administration under Section 301(c) or (d) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958; (g) a plan established and maintained by a state, its political subdivisions, or any agency or instrumentality of a state or its political subdivisions, for the benefit of its employees, if such a plan has total assets in excess of \$5,000,000; or (h) an employee benefit plan within the meaning of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (“**ERISA**”), if the

investment decision is made by a plan fiduciary, as defined in Section 3(21) of ERISA, which is either a bank, savings and loan association, insurance company or registered investment advisor, or if the employee benefit plan has total assets in excess of \$5,000,000, or, if a self-directed plan, with investment decisions made solely by persons that are “accredited investors,” as defined in Rule (501)(a) promulgated under the Securities Act.

---

---

(describe entity)

- The undersigned is a private business development company as defined in Section 202(a)(22) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.

---

---

(describe entity)

- The undersigned is an organization within the meaning of Section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code, a corporation, a business trust, or a partnership, not formed for the specific purpose of acquiring the Warrant Shares, with total assets in excess of \$5,000,000.

---

---

(describe entity)

- The undersigned is a trust with total assets in excess of \$5,000,000, not formed for the specific purpose of acquiring the Warrant Shares, whose investments are directed by a “sophisticated person” as described in Rule 506(b) (2)(ii) promulgated under the Securities Act.
- The undersigned is an entity, all the equity owners of which are “accredited investors” within one or more of the above categories. If relying upon this category alone, each equity owner must complete a separate copy of this Certificate.

---

---

(describe entity)

THE UNDERSIGNED UNDERSTANDS THAT THE COMPANY WILL RELY ON THE FOREGOING REPRESENTATIONS TO, AMONG OTHER THINGS, MAINTAIN THE EXEMPTION FOR THE ISSUANCE OF WARRANT SHARES AND WARRANTS FROM THE REQUIREMENT TO REGISTER SUCH WARRANT SHARES AND WARRANTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT.

The answers to the foregoing questions are correctly stated to the best of my knowledge, information and belief.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Authorized Signatory of Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

**Exhibit B-2**

**Form of Offshore Investor Certification**

Reference is made to the terms and conditions dated [•] 2016 concerning the issuance of Warrants by Verona Pharma plc (the “Terms and Conditions”). The capitalised terms used herein shall have the same meanings as in the Terms and Conditions.

The undersigned represents and warrants to Verona Pharma plc (the “Company”) in connection with the transfer of Warrants exercisable for Warrant Shares to the undersigned, or in connection with the exercise of Warrants for Warrant Shares to be subscribed for by the undersigned, that the undersigned holder (i) is not located within the United States, (ii) is not a U.S. Person, and (iii) is not holding or exercising the Warrants for the account or benefit of a U.S. Person or a person in the United States. The undersigned acknowledges and agrees that the Warrant Shares will not be delivered to an account within the United States, and certificates representing Warrant Shares will not be delivered to an address within the United States.

“United States” and “U.S. Person” are as defined in Rule 902 of Regulation S under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

THE UNDERSIGNED UNDERSTANDS THAT THE COMPANY WILL RELY ON THE FOREGOING REPRESENTATIONS TO, AMONG OTHER THINGS, MAINTAIN THE EXEMPTION FOR THE TRANSFER OF THE WARRANTS OR THE ISSUANCE OF WARRANT SHARES FROM THE REQUIREMENT TO REGISTER SUCH TRANSFER OR EXERCISE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT.

In connection therewith, the undersigned agrees to furnish any additional information that the Company deems necessary in order to verify the applicability of the exemption.

The answers to the foregoing questions are correctly stated to the best of my knowledge, information and belief.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature of Authorized Signatory of Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Investor: \_\_\_\_\_

**Exhibit C**

**Form of Exercise Notice**

To: Verona Pharma plc

Reference is made to the terms and conditions dated [•], 2016, concerning the issuance of Warrants by Verona Pharma plc (the “Terms and Conditions”). The capitalized terms used herein shall have the same meanings as in the Terms and Conditions.

The undersigned hereby irrevocably elects to exercise the warrant issued to it by the Company, dated [•], 20\_ Warrant Certificate No. [•] (the “Warrant Certificate”), and purchase thereunder (and surrenders herewith the Warrant Certificate) as follows:

(1)  \_\_\_ Warrant Shares to be issued as Ordinary Shares pursuant to the Terms and Conditions;

\_\_\_ Warrant Shares to be issued as ADSs pursuant to the Terms and Conditions.

(2) Method of Exercise (Please initial the applicable blank):

\_\_\_ The undersigned elects to exercise the attached Warrant by means of a cash payment, and tenders herewith payment in full for the purchase price of the shares being purchased, together with all applicable transfer taxes, if any.

\_\_\_ The undersigned, being a shareholder in the Company as well as a Warranholder, elects to exercise the attached Warrant pursuant to the cashless exercise provisions described in Section 2.4 of the Warrant.

(3) Exercise Amount payable: GBP \_\_\_\_\_

(4) Please issue a certificate or certificates representing the securities specified in Item (1) above in the name of the undersigned or in such other name as is specified below:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Address)

(5) If a cash exercise, the Exercise Amount shall be paid to the following bank account of Verona Pharma plc:

(6)

IBAN:

\_\_\_\_\_

BIC:

\_\_\_\_\_

(7) If this exercise is in connection with an Acquisition and is being conditioned on completion of the Acquisition, check the following box: .

The Warrantholder represents and warrants that this Exercise Notice has been duly signed and constitutes a valid and binding act by the undersigned to exercise the said Warrants.

Place and date: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of the Warrantholder: \_\_\_\_\_

---

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title:

The above exercise is acknowledged and accepted.

Place and date:

VERONA PHARMA PLC

---

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title:

## APPENDIX A

Black-Scholes Option Pricing formula to be used when calculating the value of each new warrant to purchase one share in the Acquirer shall be:

$$C_{Acq} = S_{Acq} e^{-\lambda(T_{Acq}-t_{Acq})} N(d_1) - K_{Acq} e^{-r(T_{Acq}-t_{Acq})} N(d_2), \text{ where}$$

$C_{Acq}$  = value of each warrant to purchase one share in the Acquirer

$S_{Acq}$  = price of Acquirer's stock as determined by reference to the average of the closing prices on the securities exchange or Nasdaq over the 20-day period ending three trading days prior to the closing of the Acquisition described in Section 2.12 if the Acquirer's stock is then traded on such exchange or system, or the average of the closing bid or sale prices (whichever is applicable) in the over-the-counter market over the 20-day period ending three trading days prior to the closing of the Acquisition if the Acquirer's stock is then actively traded in the over-the-counter market, or the then most recently completed financing if the Acquirer's stock is not then traded on a securities exchange or system or in the over-the-counter market.

$T_{Acq}$  = expiration date of new warrants to purchase shares in the Acquirer =  $T_{Corp}$

$t_{Acq}$  = date of issue of new warrants to purchase shares in the Acquirer

$T_{Acq}-t_{Acq}$  = time until warrant expiration, expressed in years

$\sigma$  = volatility = annualized standard deviation of daily log-returns (using a 262-day annualization factor) of the Acquirer's stock price on the securities exchange or Nasdaq over a 20-day trading period, determined by the Warrantheolders, that is within the 100-day trading period ending on the trading day immediately after the public announcement of the Acquisition described in Section 2.12 if the Acquirer's stock is then traded on such exchange or system, or the annualized standard deviation of daily-log returns (using a 262-day annualization factor) of the closing bid or sale prices (whichever is applicable) in the over-the-counter market over a 20-day trading period, determined by the Warrant Holder, that is within the 100-day trading period ending on the trading day immediately after the public announcement of the Corporate Reorganization if the Acquirer's stock is then actively traded in the over-the-counter market, or 0.5 (or 50%) if the Acquirer's stock is not then traded on a securities exchange or system or in the over-the-counter market. In no event will the volatility variable be more than 0.5 (or 50%).

$N$  = cumulative normal distribution function

$$d_1 = (\ln(S_{Acq}/K_{Acq}) + (r-\lambda+\sigma^2/2)(T_{Acq}-t_{Acq})) \div (\sigma\sqrt{(T_{Acq}-t_{Acq})})$$

$\ln$  = natural logarithm

$\lambda$  = dividend rate of the Acquirer for the most recent 12-month period at the time of closing of the Acquisition.

$K_{Acq}$  = strike price of new warrants to purchase shares in the Acquirer =  $K_{Corp} * (S_{Acq} / S_{Corp})$

$r$  = annual yield, as reported by Bloomberg at time  $t_{Acq}$ , of the United States Treasury security measuring the nearest time  $T_{Acq}$

$$d_2 = d_1 - \sigma\sqrt{(T_{Acq}-t_{Acq})}$$

## APPENDIX B

Black-Scholes Option Pricing formula to be used when calculating the value of each Warrant to purchase one Share in the Company shall be:

$$C_{\text{Corp}} = S_{\text{Corp}} e^{-\lambda(T_{\text{Corp}}-t_{\text{Corp}})} N(d_1) - K_{\text{Corp}} e^{-r(T_{\text{Corp}}-t_{\text{Corp}})} N(d_2), \text{ where}$$

$C_{\text{Corp}}$  = value of each Warrant to purchase one share in the Company

$S_{\text{Corp}}$  = price of Company stock as determined by reference to the average of the closing prices on Nasdaq over the 20-day period ending three trading days prior to the closing of the Corporate Reorganization described in Section 5(d) if the Company's stock is then traded on Nasdaq, or the average of the closing bid or sale prices (whichever is applicable) in the over-the-counter market over the 20-day period ending three trading days prior to the closing of the Acquisition if the Company's stock is then actively traded in the over-the-counter market, or on the AIM market, if the Company's stock is not then traded on a securities exchange or system or in the over-the-counter market, or the most recently completed financing if the Company's stock is not then traded on AIM.

$T_{\text{Corp}}$  = expiration date of Warrants to purchase shares in the Company

$t_{\text{Corp}}$  = date of public announcement of transaction

$T_{\text{Corp}}-t_{\text{Corp}}$  = time until Warrant expiration, expressed in years

$\sigma$  = volatility = the annualized standard deviation of daily log-returns (using a 262-day annualization factor) of the Company's stock price on the securities exchange or Nasdaq Global Market over a 20-day trading period, determined by the Warrant Holders, that is within the 100-day trading period ending on the trading day immediately after the public announcement of the Corporate Reorganization described in Section 5(d) if the Company's stock is then traded on such exchange or system, or the annualized standard deviation of daily-log returns (using a 262-day annualization factor) of the closing bid or sale prices (whichever is applicable) in the over-the-counter market over a 20-day trading period, determined by the Warrant Holder, that is within the 100-day trading period ending on the trading day immediately after the public announcement of the Corporate Reorganization if the Company's stock is then actively traded in the over-the-counter market, or 0.5 (or 50%) if the Company's stock is not then traded on a securities exchange or system or in the over-the-counter market. In no event will the volatility variable be more than 0.5 (or 50%).

$N$  = cumulative normal distribution function

$$d_1 = (\ln(S_{\text{Corp}}/K_{\text{Corp}}) + (r-\lambda+\sigma^2/2)(T_{\text{Corp}}-t_{\text{Corp}})) \div (\sigma\sqrt{(T_{\text{Corp}}-t_{\text{Corp}})})$$

$\ln$  = natural logarithm

$\lambda$  = dividend rate of the Company for the most recent 12-month period at the time of closing of the Acquisition.

$K_{\text{Corp}}$  = strike price of Warrant

$r$  = annual yield, as reported by Bloomberg at time  $t_{\text{Corp}}$ , of the United States Treasury security measuring the nearest time  $T_{\text{Corp}}$

$$d_2 = d_1 - \sigma\sqrt{(T_{\text{Corp}}-t_{\text{Corp}})}$$

---

**APPENDIX C**

**Form of Warrant Certificate**

Certificate no: [•]

Verona Pharma Plc  
(Incorporated under the Companies Acts 2006  
with registered number 05375156)

WARRANT to subscribe for ordinary shares of £0.001 each in the capital of Verona Pharma Plc (the “**Shares**”) pursuant to an instrument executed by Verona Pharma Plc on [•] June 2016 (the “**Warrant Instrument**”).

Certificate no: [•]

Date of issue: [•]

Number of Warrants: [•]

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that [•] of [•]

is the holder of the number of Warrants set out above, which are subject to the articles of association of the Company and otherwise on the terms and conditions contained in the Warrant Instrument.

**[THE SECURITIES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE U.S. SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “SECURITIES ACT”), OR APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THE SECURITIES MAY NOT BE OFFERED FOR SALE, SOLD, TRANSFERRED OR ASSIGNED (I) EXCEPT PURSUANT TO (A) AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT, (B) RULE 903 or 904 PURSUANT TO THE SECURITIES ACT, OR (C) RULE 144 UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT (UPON FURNISHING TO THE COMPANY SUCH REPRESENTATION LETTERS AS THE COMPANY MAY REQUIRE), OR (II) UNLESS AN OPINION OF COUNSEL, REASONABLY SATISFACTORY TO THE COMPANY, SHALL BE PROVIDED TO THE COMPANY, PROVIDING THAT SUCH SALE, TRANSFER OR ASSIGNMENT DOES NOT REQUIRE REGISTRATION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT. ](1)**

This certificate has been executed as a deed and entered into and delivered on the date of issue.

**EXECUTED** as a **DEED** by )  
**VERONA PHARMA PLC** )  
acting by a director )  
in the presence of: )  
Director

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness signature:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness name:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness address:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(1) Legend only required as set forth in Section 2.15 of the Terms and Conditions.

---

**Schedule A**

In accordance with Instruction 2 to Item 601 of Regulation S-K, below is a schedule setting forth the material details in which the form of warrant differs from the warrants issued to each warrant holder listed below.

<b>Investor</b>	<b>Amount</b>
Orbimed Private Investments VI, LP	93,396,936
Growth Equity Opportunities Fund IV, LLC	88,481,308
Novo A/S	88,481,308
Abingworth Bioventures VI, LP	70,211,068
Tekla Life Science Investors	18,581,075
Tekla World Healthcare Fund	25,659,579
BioDiscovery 4 FPCI	44,240,654
Aisling Capital IV, LP	29,493,769
Arix Bioscience Holdings Ltd	25,807,048
HSBC Global Custody Nominee (UK) Ltd A/C 944287	21,280,890
BBHISL Nominees Ltd. A/c 121624	11,138,182
The Bailey 1995 Family Trust	4,424,065
Nortrust Nominees Limited a/c PCL22	3,440,939
Rensburg Client Nominees Limited A/C CLT	2,255,482
Dr. David Ebsworth	245,781
N+1 Singer Capital Markets Limited	1,783,512
Vivo Ventures Fund VII, L.P.	73,123,825
Vivo Ventures VII Affiliates Fund, L.P.	1,593,724
Vivo Ventures Fund VI, L.P.	18,543,537
Vivo Ventures VI Affiliates Fund, L.P.	135,850

---

EXECUTION COPY

DATED

2016

VERONA PHARMA PLC  
and  
NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP

---

WARRANT INSTRUMENT

---

5 New Street Square | London EC4A 3TW  
Tel +44 (0)20 7300 7000  
Fax +44 (0)20 7300 7100  
DX 41 London  
www.taylorwessing.com

TaylorWessing

---

## Index

Clause No.		Page No.
1.	Definitions and Interpretation	1
2.	The Warrants	3
3.	Allotment of Warrant Shares	4
4.	Adjustment	4
5.	Warranties	5
6.	Other Provisions	5
7.	Rights as Shareholders	6
8.	Entitlement to Certificate	6
9.	Register and Transfer	6
10.	Warrants Free From Equities	7
11.	Trusts Not Recognised	7
12.	Transfer of Warrants	7
13.	Registration	7
14.	Transmission	7
15.	Meetings of Warranholders	7
16.	Regulations as to Meetings	8
17.	Adjournment of Meetings	8
18.	Replacement of Warrants	9
19.	Modification and Waiver	9
20.	Illegality	9
21.	Notices	9
22.	Governing Law and Jurisdiction	10

---

THIS INSTRUMENT is made on

**BETWEEN:**

- (1) **VERONA PHARMA PLC**, a public limited liability company incorporated and registered in England & Wales under company number 05375156, whose registered office is at One, Central Square, Cardiff CF10 1FS (the “**Company**”); and
- (2) **NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP**, a limited liability company incorporated and registered in England and Wales under company number OC364131, whose registered office is at One, Bartholomew Lane, London EC2N 2AX (the “**Warrantholder**”).

**IT IS AGREED:**

**1. Definitions and Interpretation**

1.1 *Definitions*

In this Instrument:

“**AIM**” means the Alternative Investment Market, a market operated by the Exchange;

“**Articles**” means the articles of association of the Company as amended from time to time;

“**Associate**” has the meaning ascribed to it in section 1152 of the Companies Act 2006;

“**Auditors**” means the auditors of the Company for the time being;

“**Business Day**” means a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) when banks generally are open for the transaction of banking business in London, UK;

“**Change of Control**” has the meaning given in clause 6.2;

“**Directors**” means the directors of the Company for the time being;

“**Encumbrances**” means any interest or equity of any person (including any right to acquire, option or right of pre-emption or conversion) or any mortgage, charge, pledge, lien, assignment, hypothecation, security interest, title retention, or any other security agreement or arrangement, or any agreement to create any of the above;

“**Exchange**” means London Stock Exchange plc;

“**Holding company**” has the meaning ascribed to it in section 1159 of the Companies Act 2006;

“**Notice of Exercise**” means the notice of exercise endorsed on the Warrant Certificate;

“**N+1 Singer Engagement Letter**” means the engagement letter entered into between the Warrantholder and the Company on 6 August 2014 in relation to the Warrantholder’s role as nominated advisor and broker to the Company;

---

“**Ordinary Shareholders**” means the holders of the Shares for the time being;

“**Proposed Purchaser**” has the meaning given in clause 6.3;

“**Registered Office**” means the registered office of the Company;

“**Shares**” means ordinary shares of 0.1 pence each in the capital of the Company;

“**Subscription Price**” means 2.2 pence per Warrant Share in respect of 6,666,667 Warrant Shares and 3.5 pence per warrant share in respect of the remaining 3,333,333 Warrant Shares (in each case subject to adjustment as hereinafter provided);

“**Subsidiary**” has the meaning ascribed to it in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006;

“**UK**” means United Kingdom;

“**Warrant Certificate**” means, in relation to the Warrants, the certificate evidencing it substantially in the form set out in the schedule;

“**Warrant Shares**” means 10,000,000 Shares (subject to adjustment as hereinafter provided);

“**Warrant Period**” means the period commencing on the date of this Instrument and ending on 5 August 2018; and

“**Warrants**” means the warrants of the Company constituted by this Instrument, including the right to subscribe for the Warrant Shares at the Subscription Price.

## 1.2 *Interpretation*

In this Instrument:

- (a) a party or the parties means a party or the parties to this Instrument;
- (b) headings, schedules, clauses, paragraphs and table of contents in this Instrument are for ease of reference only and shall not be taken into account in the construction of this Instrument;
- (c) references to statutory provisions, enactments or EC Directives shall include references to any amendment, modification, extension, consolidation, replacement or re-enactment of any such provision, enactment or EC Directive (whether before or after the date of this Instrument), to any previous enactment which has been replaced or amended and to any regulation, instrument or order or other subordinate legislation made under such provision, enactment or EC Directive;
- (d) except where the context specifically requires otherwise, words importing one gender shall be treated as importing any gender, words importing individuals shall be treated as importing corporations and vice versa, words importing the singular shall be treated as importing the plural and vice versa, and words importing the whole shall be treated as including a reference to any part;
- (e) reference to this Instrument includes the schedules;
- (f) a “clause” or “schedule” is a reference to relevant clause or schedule of or to the Instrument;

- (g) the words “other” and “otherwise” are not to be construed as being limited by any words preceding them;
- (h) where the words “include(s)”, “including” or “in particular” are used in this Instrument, they are deemed to have the words “without limitation” following them;
- (i) a reference to a time of day is to London, UK time; and
- (j) “£” means pounds sterling, the lawful currency of the UK.

## **2. The Warrants**

- 2.1 The Warrants shall be issued subject to the terms of this Instrument and the Articles.
- 2.2 In consideration of N+1 Singer fulfilling agreeing to act as nominated adviser and broker to the Company pursuant to the N+1 Singer Engagement Letter and upon the terms of this Instrument, the Company hereby grants to the Warrantholder the Warrants which give the Warrantholder the right to convert the Warrants into Warrant Shares, on the basis of one Warrant Share for each Warrant, and are exercisable for cash at the Subscription Price in whole or in part at any time during the Warrant Period. The Company agrees with the Warrantholder to comply with the provisions of this Instrument.
- 2.3 Entitlement to the rights attaching to the Warrants held by the Warrantholder shall be evidenced by the issue to the Warrantholder of a Warrant Certificate.
- 2.4 The number and/or nominal value of Shares to be subscribed and the Subscription Price shall be subject to adjustment in accordance with clause 4.
- 2.5 The Warrants shall be exercised by the Warrantholder lodging with the Company at the Registered Office:
  - (a) a complete Notice of Exercise and the Warrant Certificate;
  - (b) payment in cash of the Subscription Price in full in respect thereof.
- 2.6 Once lodged, a Notice of Exercise may not be revoked except with the consent of the Directors.
- 2.7 When the Warrants are exercised only in part, the Company shall issue a fresh Warrant Certificate in the name of the Warrantholder for any balance of Warrants remaining exercisable.
- 2.8 If at the time of exercise of the Warrants, the Shares are admitted to trading on AIM, the Company shall as soon as reasonably practicable (and in any event, no later than 10 Business Days after the exercise of the Warrants) after the allotment of any Shares pursuant to the exercise of the Warrants apply for the admission of the Shares issued to AIM. The Company shall use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that such application for admission becomes effective.
- 2.9 In the event that the N+1 Singer Engagement Letter is terminated in accordance with its terms, the Warrantholder’s entitlement to the Warrants shall continue until the end of the Warrant Period (except to the extent already validly exercised).

### **3. Allotment of Warrant Shares**

- 3.1 Warrant Shares shall be allotted (subject to admission to trading on AIM) and issued within 14 days of the date of receipt of the Notice of Exercise and receipt of the Subscription Price, and a definitive share certificate shall be issued to the Warrantholder in respect thereof as soon as reasonably practicable after such admission becoming effective. Save for any rights determined by reference to a date preceding the date of allotment, such Shares shall rank *pari passu* with the other Shares of the same class in issue at the date of allotment.
- 3.2 The Company shall:
- (a) enter the allottee's name(s) in the register of members of the Company as the holder(s) of the relevant Warrant Shares; and
  - (b) despatch at the Company's cost to the address stipulated by the Warrantholder in the Notice of Exercise, share certificate in respect of the Warrant Shares issued.
- 3.3 Warrant Shares allotted pursuant to the exercise of the Warrants shall:
- (a) be allotted and issued fully paid;
  - (b) rank *pari passu* in all respects from the effective date of allotment with the Shares of the Company then in issue;
  - (c) be entitled to all dividends and distributions paid on any date or by reference to any date on or after the date on which the relevant Notice of Exercise is lodged at the Registered Office in accordance with clause 2.5; and
  - (d) otherwise have the rights and privileges prescribed in the Articles.
- 3.4 No fraction of a share will be issued following exercise of a Warrant and the Company will make payment to the relevant Warrantholder of such sum as the Auditors certify to be the fair value of any fractional entitlement.
- ### **4. Adjustment**
- 4.1 After any allotment of fully paid Shares by way of capitalisation of the Company's reserves (other than Shares paid up out of distributable reserves and issued in lieu of a cash dividend) to holders of the Shares on the register on a date (or by reference to a record date) before the end of the Warrant Period or upon any sub-division or consolidation of the Shares or reduction of share capital, the number and/or nominal value of Shares to be subscribed on any subsequent exercise of the Warrants will be increased or, as the case may be, reduced in due proportion and the Subscription Price will be adjusted accordingly, with effect from the record date for such capitalisation, sub-division, consolidation or reduction of capital. On any such capitalisation, sub-division, consolidation or reduction of capital the Auditors shall be requested by the Directors to certify the appropriate adjustments and, within 28 days thereafter, notice thereof will be sent to the Warrantholder.
- 4.2 If, on a date (or by reference to a record date) before the end of the Warrant Period, the Company makes any offer or invitation (whether by rights issue or otherwise but not being an offer by the Company to purchase its own shares) to the holders of the Shares, or any offer or invitation (not being an offer to which clause 6.2 below applies) is made to all such holders otherwise than by the Company, then the same offer or invitation shall be made to the Warrantholder at the same time as if the Warrants had

been exercised on the day immediately preceding the date, or, as the case may be, the record date of such offer or invitation. In the event of any such offer or invitation the Subscription Price shall be adjusted in such manner as the Auditors shall certify to be fair and reasonable. Any such adjustment shall become effective as at the record date for the offer or invitation. The Company shall give notice to the Warrantholder within 28 days of any adjustment made pursuant to this clause 4.2.

- 4.3 If on a date (or by reference to a record date) before the end of the Warrant Period, the Company pays a special dividend following a disposal of all or a substantial proportion of its business or assets, the Subscription Price will be adjusted pro rata to the reduction in the net asset value of the Company following the payment of such special dividend. On any payment of such special dividend the Auditors shall be requested by the Directors to certify the appropriate adjustments and, within 28 days thereafter, notice thereof will be sent to the Warrantholder.
- 4.4 Any report or confirmation made pursuant to this Instrument by the Auditors shall be made by them as experts and not as arbitrators and the determination of the Auditors pursuant to clauses 4.1, 4.2 and 4.3 shall, save in the case of manifest error, be binding on the Warrantholder and the Company. The costs of the Auditors appointed pursuant to this clause 4 shall be borne by the Company.

## **5. Warranties**

The Company warrants that as at the date of this Instrument it has the power to grant the Warrants without any further sanction or consent by members of the Company or any other person and any Warrant Shares (allotted on exercise of any Warrants) shall be allotted to the Warrantholder free from any and all Encumbrances.

## **6. Other Provisions**

- 6.1 The Company shall keep available for issue sufficient authorised but unissued share capital to satisfy in full the Warrants to the extent they remain exercisable and the Company shall not make any allotment of fully paid Shares by way of capitalisation of profits or reserves unless at the date of such allotment the Directors have authority and power to grant the additional subscription rights to subscribe for Shares to which the Warrantholder will by virtue of clause 4.1 above be entitled in consequence of such capitalisation.
- 6.2 If at any time an offer is made to all holders of Shares (or all such holders other than the offeror and/or any company controlled by the offeror and/or persons acting in concert with the offeror) to acquire the whole or any part of the issued ordinary share capital of the Company (including but not limited to the publication of a scheme of arrangement or merger providing for the acquisition by any person of the whole or any part of this Company's issued share capital) and the Company becomes aware that as a result of such offer the right to cast more than 50% (a majority) of the votes which may ordinarily be cast on a poll at a general meeting of the Company has or will become vested in the offeror and/or such persons or companies as aforesaid (a "**Change in Control**"), the Company shall give notice to the Warrantholder of such vesting or prospective vesting within 14 days of its becoming so aware.
- 6.3 If an order is made or an effective resolution is passed for winding up the Company (except for the purpose of reconstruction, amalgamation, merger or unitisation on terms sanctioned by the Warrantholder and including the grant to the Warrantholder of substituted warrants over shares of the reconstituted, amalgamated, merged or unitised entity equal to the value of the Warrants immediately prior to such reconstruction, amalgamation, merger or unitisation), the Warrantholder shall (if, in

---

such winding up and on the basis that all rights to subscribe for shares in the Company then unexercised had been exercised in full and the subscription moneys therefor had been received in full by the Company, there would be a surplus available for distribution amongst the holders of the Shares which, on such basis, would exceed in respect of each Share a sum equal to the Subscription Price) be treated as if immediately before the date of such order or resolution the Warrants had been exercised in full (subject to any adjustment pursuant to clause 4 above), and shall accordingly be entitled to receive out of the assets available in the liquidation pari passu with the holders of the Shares such sum as it would have received had it exercised the Warrants in full and become the holder of the Shares to which it would have become entitled by virtue of such exercise of the Warrants after deducting a sum per Share equal to the Subscription Price. Subject to the foregoing the Warrants shall lapse on liquidation of the Company.

- 6.4 The Company undertakes to the Warrantholder that while the Warrants remains capable of being exercised it will not create or issue any new class of equity share capital which in any respect ranks in priority to the Shares.

## **7. Rights as Shareholders**

The Warrantholder shall not be entitled to vote or receive dividends and shall not be deemed a shareholder, nor shall anything contained herein be construed to confirm upon the Warrantholder any of the rights of a shareholder of the Company or any right to vote for the election of Directors or upon any matter submitted to the Company's shareholders at any meeting thereof, or to receive notice of meetings, or to receive dividends or subscription rights or otherwise until the Warrants shall have been exercised and the Shares purchasable upon the exercise thereof shall have been allotted, as provided herein.

## **8. Entitlement to Certificate**

The Company shall issue a Warrant Certificate to each Warrantholder. Joint Warrantholders will be entitled to one Warrant Certificate only which will be delivered to such joint holder as the Company may select. These conditions shall be endorsed on or attached to the Warrant Certificates.

## **9. Register and Transfer**

- 9.1 The Company will keep a register of the Warrants and Warrantholders at the Registered Office and shall enter on the register:
- (a) the names and addresses of the Warrantholders;

- (b) the number of Shares that can be subscribed for by each Warrantholder pursuant to his Warrant;
- (c) the date on which the name of every such Warrantholder is entered in respect of the Warrant standing in his name;
- (d) the serial number of each Warrant Certificate issued and its date of the issue; and
- (e) particulars of all transfers of Warrants.

9.2 Warrantheolders shall notify changes of name or address to the Company who shall alter the register accordingly. The register may be closed by the Company for such periods and at such times as it thinks fit but not for more than 30 days in a year. The Company shall permit Warrantheolders to inspect the register at reasonable times during normal office hours.

**10. Warrants Free From Equities**

Each Warrantheolder shall be recognised by the Company as entitled to its Warrant free from any equity, set off or counter-claim by the Company against any previous holder.

**11. Trusts Not Recognised**

The Company shall recognise the registered holder of any Warrant as the absolute owner of such Warrant and shall not be bound to take notice of any trust to which the Warrant may be subject, and a Warrantheolder's receipt for the Ordinary Shares allotted on the exercise of a Warrant shall be a good discharge to the Company notwithstanding any notice it may have any other interest in or claim to such Warrant. No notice of any trust, express, implied or constructive, shall (except as provided by statute or as required by an order of Court of competent jurisdiction) be entered on the register in respect of any Warrant.

**12. Transfer of Warrants**

A Warrantheolder may transfer a Warrant with the written consent of the Company and he shall remain the owner of the Warrant until the name of the transferee is entered in the Company's Warrant register. The transfer need not be a deed. Where a Warrantheolder transfers part only of the Warrants in a certificate, the old certificate shall be cancelled and a new certificate for the balance of such Warrants issued without charge.

**13. Registration**

Every transfer of a Warrant must be left at the Registered Office for registration accompanied by the relevant Warrant Certificate and any other evidence as the Directors may require as to the title of the transferor. Transfers which have been registered may be retained by the Company. No fee will be charged for the registration of a transfer. No transfer of Warrants will be registered in respect of which a Notice of Exercise has been lodged.

**14. Transmission**

Any person becoming entitled to a Warrant(s) on the death or bankruptcy of the Warrantheolder shall, on producing such evidence of his title as the Directors reasonably require, be entitled to be registered as the holder. In the case of the death of a joint holder(s) of a Warrant the survivor entered in the register shall be the only person recognised by the Company as having any title to or interest in such Warrant.

**15. Meetings of Warrantheolders**

15.1 The Company may (and shall on the written request in writing of Warrantheolders holding at least one-fifth of the Warrants then outstanding) convene a meeting of the

Warrantheolders by at least 14 days' clear written notice, and such meeting shall have power by an extraordinary resolution (that is to say a resolution passed by a majority consisting of at least seventy-five per cent. of the Warrantheolders voting on a show of hands or (if a poll is demanded by the chairman of the meeting or by Warrantheolders holding at least three quarters of the Warrants then outstanding and in respect of which notice of conversion has not been given) by a simple majority of the votes given on such poll):

- (a) to sanction any modification or compromise or any agreement in respect of the rights of the Warrantheolders;
- (b) to assent to any modification of these conditions proposed or agreed to by the Company and to agree to the issue of a supplemental instrument embodying the modification; and
- (c) to appoint any persons (whether Warrantheolders or not) as a committee to represent the interest of the Warrantheolders and to confer upon such committee any powers or discretions which the Warrantheolders could themselves exercise by an extraordinary resolution.

15.2 A resolution signed by Warrantheolders holding at least 75% of the Warrants in issue shall be as valid and effectual as if it had been passed at a meeting of the Warrantheolders duly convened and held. Such resolution may be contained in one document or in several documents in like form each signed by one or more of the Warrantheolders.

#### **16. Regulations as to Meetings**

Any meeting convened for the purpose of these conditions shall be convened, conducted and held in all respects as nearly as possible in the same way as general meetings of the Company, except that:

- (a) a member of the Company shall not be entitled to notice of or to attend or vote at such meetings unless he is also a Warrantheolder;
- (b) the quorum at such meetings shall (if there is more than one Warrantheolder) be two or more persons holding or representing by proxy a majority of the Warrants in issue;
- (c) if a poll is demanded, a Warrantheolder present in person or by proxy shall have one vote in respect of each Warrant held by him;
- (d) in the case of joint holders the vote of the senior who tenders a vote whether in person or by proxy shall be accepted to the exclusion of the votes of the other joint holders and for this purpose seniority shall be determined by the order in which the names stand in the register of Warrantheolders; and
- (e) a person appointed to act as a proxy need not be a Warrantheolder.

#### **17. Adjournment of Meetings**

If within half an hour from the time appointed for a meeting a quorum is not present the meeting, if convened at the request of Warrantheolders, shall be dissolved and in any other case it shall stand adjourned to such day (being at least 14 but not more than 28 days after the date of the meeting from which such adjournment takes place), time and place as the chairman of the meeting directs and at such adjourned meeting the

Warrantholder(s) present and entitled to vote shall be a quorum. At least seven days' notice shall be given of such adjourned meeting in the same manner as for an original meeting and such notice shall state that the Warrantholder(s) present at the adjourned meeting will form a quorum.

**18. Replacement of Warrants**

If a Warrantholder notifies the Company that his Warrant Certificate is mutilated, worn out, defaced, lost, stolen or destroyed and produces to the Company such evidence and indemnity (and the payment of out of pocket expenses of the Company in investigating evidence) as the Directors reasonably require, the Company may cancel it and issue a new certificate in lieu. An entry as to the issue of a new certificate shall be made in the Company's Warrant register and a record of the indemnity (if any) maintained by the Company.

**19. Modification and Waiver**

This Instrument and any provision hereof may be amended, changed waived, discharged or terminated only by an instrument in writing signed by both parties.

**20. Illegality**

If a term of this instrument shall be held to be illegal, invalid or unenforceable it shall to that extent be deemed not to form part of this agreement, but the enforceability of the remainder of this deed shall not be affected.

**21. Notices**

21.1 Any notices or other communication requiring to be given or served under or in connection with this Instrument shall be in writing and shall be sufficiently given or served if delivered:

*in the case of the Company to:*

Address: Verona Pharma Plc, One America Square, Crosswall, London EC3N 2SG

Email: jan-anders.karlsson@veronapharma.com

Attention: Jan-Anders Karlsson

*in the case of the Warrantholder:*

Address: Nplus1 Singer Advisory LLP, One, Bartholomew Lane, London EC2N 2AX

E-mail: Aubrey.powell@n1singer.com

Attention: Aubrey Powell

21.2 Any such notice shall be delivered by hand or sent by email or pre-paid first class post or commercial courier and if delivered by email shall conclusively be deemed to have been given or served at the time of printout of a transmission report showing that the email has been sent without error, if sent by pre-paid first class post shall conclusively be deemed to have been received 48 hours after the time of posting if posted in the UK for UK delivery and on the seventh day after the day of posting if posted from outside

the UK and if sent by commercial courier shall conclusively be deemed to have been received on the date and at the time of signature of the courier's delivery receipt.

21.3 In respect of joint holdings all notices shall be given to the joint holders first named in the register of the Warrants and notice so given shall be sufficient notice to all the joint holders.

**22. Governing Law and Jurisdiction**

22.1 This Instrument and the Warrants and any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with them or their subject matter or formation (including non-contractual disputes or claims) shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of England and Wales.

22.2 The parties hereto irrevocably submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Courts of England with respect to any dispute or claim related to this Instrument and the Warrants (including non-contractual disputes or claims).

This Instrument has been duly executed and delivered as a deed and takes effect on the date shown at the beginning of this Instrument.

**EXECUTION PAGE**

**EXECUTED** by )  
**VERONA PHARMA PLC** )  
acting by a director )  
in the presence of: JA Karlsson

/s/ Paula Siu Director Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Witness signature:

Paula Siu  
Witness name:

3 Nocone London SE1 2RE,  
Witness address:

**EXECUTED** by **NPLUS1 SINGER** )  
**ADVISORY LLP** )  
acting by: )

\_\_\_\_\_  
Member

\_\_\_\_\_  
Member

**SCHEDULE**

**Form of Warrant Certificate**

Certificate no:

VERONA PHARMA PLC

(Incorporated under the Companies Acts 1985 with registered number 5375156)

WARRANT to subscribe for ordinary shares of 0.1 pence each in Verona Pharma plc (the “**Shares**”) pursuant to an instrument executed by Verona Pharma plc on [•] 2016 (the “**Instrument**”).

Certificate no: [•]

Date of issue: [•]

Number of Shares [•]

THIS IS TO CERTIFY that NPIus1 Singer Advisory LLP

of One, Bartholomew Lane, London, EC2N 2AX

is entitled to subscribe in cash for Ordinary Shares at a warrant subscription price of [2.2/3.5] pence (the “**Warrant Subscription Price**”) at any time between and including the date of issue of this certificate and 5 August 2018 subject to the articles of association of the Company and otherwise on the terms and conditions set out in the Instrument.

This deed has been entered into and delivered on the date of issue.

**SIGNED** by )  
on behalf of **VERONA PHARMA PLC** )  
in the presence of: )

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness signature:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness name:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Witness address:

The Company will only register an exercise of a subscription right to the Shares represented by this certificate on production of this warrant certificate.

**NOTICE OF EXERCISE**

To: Verona Pharma plc (the “Company”)

We, the registered holders of this Warrant Certificate give notice of our wish to exercise our Warrant in respect of [•] Warrant Shares and to subscribe for such Warrant Shares.

We enclose our cheque for £[•] in favour of the Company, being payment at the Warrant Subscription Price for the Shares for which we now wish to subscribe.

**PART A**

We agree to accept the Shares in the Company for which we have subscribed subject to the articles of association of the Company. Please register them in our names.

**PART B**

We authorise and direct you to allot [•] Shares to be allotted and issued to the person(s) who is/are named in and who has/have signed the acceptance(s) in the form(s) of nomination attached to this Warrant Certificate.

**PART C**

We authorise the despatch of (a) a certificate in respect of the Shares in the Company to be allotted to us, and (b) a Warrant Certificate in our name(s) for any balance of our unexercised subscription rights to the Shares to us by post at our risk to

Name	_____	Signature(s) of holder(s)	_____
Address	_____		_____
	_____		_____
	_____		_____

Note: If this space is left blank the share certificate and warrant certificate (if any) will be sent by post at the risk of the person(s) entitled to it to the registered address of the (first-named) holder.

In the case of joint holdings all holders must sign. In the case of a corporation, this form must be executed as a deed or under the hand of a duly authorised officer or attorney of the corporation.

DATED [ ] 2016

Please complete and/or delete as appropriate

If you wish to nominate some other person(s) as the allottee(s) of the Shares, you should apply to the the Company Secretary for the appropriate form(s) of nomination which must be completed and lodged with this warrant certificate.

99 Bishopsgate  
 London EC2M 3XF  
 United Kingdom  
 Tel: +44(0)20.7710.1000 Fax: +44(0)20.7374.4460  
 www.lw.com

**LATHAM & WATKINS**

FIRM / AFFILIATE OFFICES

Barcelona	Moscow
Beijing	Munich
Boston	New York
Brussels	Orange County
Century City	Paris
Chicago	Riyadh
Dubai	Rome
Düsseldorf	San Diego
Frankfurt	San Francisco
Hamburg	Seoul
Hong Kong	Shanghai
Houston	Silicon Valley
London	Singapore
Los Angeles	Tokyo
Madrid	Washington, D.C.
Milan	

3 April 2017

Verona Pharma plc  
 One Central Square  
 Cardiff  
 CF10 1FS  
 United Kingdom

**Re: Verona Pharma plc — Registration Statement on Form F-1 Exhibit 5.1**

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as English legal advisers to Verona Pharma plc, a public limited company incorporated in England and Wales (the “**Company**”) in connection with the proposed offering of American Depositary Shares (the “**ADSs**”) representing ordinary shares of £0.05 each in the capital of the Company (the “**Ordinary Shares**”) and the concurrent private placement of Ordinary Shares (together, the “**Offering**” and the Ordinary Shares allotted and issued in connection therewith, including those being issued to Citibank, N.A. as the Custodian and represented by ADSs, being the “**Shares**”).

**1. INTRODUCTION**

**1.1 Purpose**

In connection with the preparation and filing of the registration statement on Form F-1 to which this letter is attached as an exhibit (such registration statement, as amended, including the documents incorporated by reference therein, the “**Registration Statement**”) with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”) pursuant to the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**Securities Act**”), we have been asked to provide an opinion on certain matters, as set out below. We have taken instruction in this regard solely from the Company.

**1.2 Defined terms and headings**

In this letter:

Latham & Watkins is the business name of Latham & Watkins (London) LLP, a registered limited liability partnership organised under the laws of New York and authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority (SRA No. 203820). A list of the names of the partners of Latham & Watkins (London) LLP is open to inspection at its principal place of business, 99 Bishopsgate, London EC2M 3XF, and such persons are either solicitors, registered foreign lawyers, European lawyers or managers authorised by the SRA. We are affiliated with the firm Latham & Watkins LLP, a limited liability partnership organised under the laws of Delaware.

- (a) capitalised terms used without definition in this letter or the schedules hereto have the meanings assigned to them in the Registration Statement unless a contrary indication appears; and
- (b) headings are for ease of reference only and shall not affect interpretation.

### 1.3 **Legal review**

For the purpose of issuing this letter, we have reviewed only the following documents and conducted only the following enquiries and searches:

- (a) an online search at Companies House in respect of information available for inspection about the Company conducted on 31 March 2017;
- (b) an enquiry by telephone at the Central Index of Winding Up Petitions, London on 31 March 2017 at 1:57 pm (London time) ((a) and (b) together, the “**Searches**”);
- (c) a PDF executed copy of the minutes of the general meeting of the Company held on 8 February 2017 (the “**General Meeting**”);
- (d) a PDF executed copy of an extract of the minutes of a meeting of the board of directors of the Company held on 8 February 2017;
- (e) a PDF copy of the certificate of incorporation of the Company dated 24 February 2005 and certificate of incorporation on change of name of the Company dated 18 September 2006;
- (f) a PDF copy of the current articles of association of the Company which were adopted pursuant to a special resolution passed at the General Meeting (the “**Articles**”); and
- (g) a PDF copy of the draft Registration Statement initially filed with the SEC on 3 April 2017.

### 1.4 **Applicable law**

This letter, the opinions given in it, and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with this letter and/or the opinions given in it, are governed by, and to be construed in accordance with, English law and relate only to English law as applied by the English courts as at today’s date. In particular:

- (a) we have not investigated the laws of any country other than England and we assume that no foreign law affects any of the opinions stated below; and
- (b) we express no opinion in this letter on the laws of any jurisdiction other than England.

### 1.5 **Assumptions and reservations**

The opinions given in this letter are given on the basis of each of the assumptions set out in Schedule 1 (*Assumptions*) and are subject to each of the reservations set out in

Schedule 2 (*Reservations*) to this letter. The opinions given in this letter are strictly limited to the matters stated in paragraph 2 (*Opinions*) below and do not extend, and should not be read as extending, by implication or otherwise, to any other matters.

2. **OPINION**

Subject to paragraph 1 (*Introduction*) and the other matters set out in this letter and its Schedules, and subject further to the following:

- (a) the Registration Statement, as finally amended, having become effective under the Securities Act;
- (b) the number of Shares to be allotted and issued not being greater than 65,000,000 and such Shares being allotted and issued by 31 December 2017;
- (c) the directors of the Company having validly resolved to allot and issue the Shares at a duly convened and quorate meeting of the board of directors of the Company and such board resolutions being in full force and effect and not having been rescinded or amended;
- (d) the receipt in full of payment for the Shares in an amount of “cash consideration” (as defined in section 583(3) of the Companies Act 2006) of not less than the aggregate nominal value for such Shares; and
- (e) valid entries having been made in relation to the allotment and issue of the Shares in the books and registers of the Company,

it is our opinion that, as at today’s date, the Shares, if and when allotted and issued, registered in the name of the recipient in the register of members of the Company and delivered as described in the Registration Statement, will be duly and validly authorised and issued, fully paid or credited as fully paid (subject to the receipt of valid consideration by the Company for the issue thereof in connection with the Offering) and will not be subject to any call for payment of further capital.

3. **EXTENT OF OPINIONS**

We express no opinion as to any agreement, instrument or other document other than as specified in this letter or as to any liability to tax which may arise or be suffered as a result of or in connection with the Offering or the transactions contemplated thereby.

This letter only applies to those facts and circumstances which exist as at today’s date and we assume no obligation or responsibility to update or supplement this letter to reflect any facts or circumstances which may subsequently come to our attention, any changes in laws which may occur after today, or to inform the addressee of any change in circumstances happening after the date of this letter which would alter our opinion.

4. **DISCLOSURE AND RELIANCE**

This letter is addressed to you solely for your benefit in connection with the Registration Statement. We consent to the filing of this letter as an exhibit to the Registration Statement. In giving such consent, we do not thereby admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations thereunder.

This letter may not be relied upon by you for any other purpose and, other than as set out above, may not be furnished to, or assigned to, or relied upon by, any other person, firm or entity for any purpose, without our prior written consent, which may be granted or withheld in our discretion.

Yours faithfully

/s/ Latham & Watkins LLP

**LATHAM & WATKINS**

**SCHEDULE 1**  
**ASSUMPTIONS**

The opinions in this letter have been given on the basis of the following assumptions:

- (a) the genuineness of all signatures, stamps and seals on all documents, the authenticity and completeness of all documents submitted to us as originals, and the conformity to original documents of all documents submitted to us as copies;
- (b) that, where a document has been examined by us in draft or specimen form, it will be or has been duly executed in the form of that draft or specimen;
- (c) that the articles of association of the Company referred to in paragraph 1.3(f) of this letter remain in full force and effect, and no alteration has been made or will be made to such articles of association, in each case prior to the date of allotment and issue of the Shares (the “**Allotment Date**”);
- (d) that all documents, forms and notices which should have been delivered to the Companies Registration Office in respect of the Company have been so delivered, that information revealed by the Searches was complete and accurate in all respects and has not, since the time of the Searches, been altered and that the results of the Searches will remain complete and accurate as at the Allotment Date;
- (e) that the minutes of the meetings of the board of directors of the Company provided to us in connection with the giving of this opinion are a true record of the proceedings described in them in duly convened, constituted and quorate meetings in which all constitutional, statutory and other formalities were duly observed, and the resolutions set out in the minutes were validly passed and have not been and will not be revoked or varied and remain in full force and effect and will remain so as at the Allotment Date;
- (f) that the minutes of the General Meeting provided to us in connection with the giving of this opinion are a true record of the proceedings described in them in a duly convened, constituted and quorate meeting in which all constitutional, statutory and other formalities were duly observed, and the resolutions set out in the minutes were validly passed and have not been and will not be revoked or varied and remain in full force and effect and will remain so as at the Allotment Date;
- (g) that no shares in the capital of the Company other than the Shares have been or will be allotted pursuant to resolutions 2 and 3 passed at the General Meeting;
- (h) that in relation to the allotment and issue of the Shares, the directors of the Company have acted and will act in the manner required by section 172 of the Companies Act 2006 (*Duty to promote the success of the Company*), and there has not been and will not be any bad faith, breach of trust, fraud, coercion, duress or undue influence on the part of any of the directors of the Company;

- (i) that the Company has not taken any corporate or other action nor have any steps been taken or legal proceedings been started against the Company for the liquidation, winding up, dissolution, reorganisation or bankruptcy of, or for the appointment of a liquidator, receiver, trustee, administrator, administrative receiver or similar officer of, the Company or all or any of its assets (or any analogous proceedings in any jurisdiction) and the Company is not unable to pay its debts as they fall due within the meaning of section 123 of the Insolvency Act 1986 and will not become unable to pay its debts within the meaning of that section as a result of any of the transactions contemplated herein, is not insolvent and has not been dissolved or declared bankrupt (although the Searches gave no indication that any winding-up, dissolution or administration order or appointment of a receiver, administrator, administrative receiver or similar officer has been made with respect to the Company); and
- (j) that no Shares or rights to subscribe for Shares have been or shall be offered to the public in the United Kingdom in breach of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“FSMA”) or of any other United Kingdom laws or regulations concerning offers of securities to the public, and no communication has been or shall be made in relation to the Shares in breach of section 21 of FSMA or any other United Kingdom laws or regulations relating to offers or invitations to subscribe for, or to acquire rights to subscribe for or otherwise acquire, shares or other securities.

## SCHEDULE 2

### RESERVATIONS

The opinions in this letter are subject to the following reservations:

- (a) the Searches are not capable of revealing conclusively whether or not a winding-up or administration petition or order has been presented or made, a receiver appointed, a company voluntary arrangement proposed or approved or any other insolvency proceeding commenced. We have not made enquiries of any District Registry or County Court;
- (b) the opinions set out in this letter are subject to (i) any limitations arising from applicable laws relating to insolvency, bankruptcy, administration, reorganisation, liquidation, moratoria, schemes or analogous circumstances; and (ii) an English court exercising its discretion under section 426 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (*co-operation between courts exercising jurisdiction in relation to insolvency*) to assist the courts having the corresponding jurisdiction in any part of the United Kingdom or any relevant country or territory;
- (c) we express no opinion as to matters of fact; and
- (d) it should be understood that we have not been responsible for investigating or verifying the accuracy of the facts, including statements of foreign law, or the reasonableness of any statements of opinion, contained in the Registration Statement, or that no material facts have been omitted from it.

**REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT**

dated as of

July 29, 2016

among

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

and

**THE INVESTORS PARTY HERETO**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
Article I Definitions	1
Section 1.01	1
Section 1.02	5
Article II Registration Rights	5
Section 2.01	5
Section 2.02	8
Section 2.03	9
Section 2.04	9
Article III Public Offering	9
Section 3.01	9
Section 3.02	10
Section 3.03	10
Section 3.04	11
Section 3.05	11
Article IV Indemnification and Contribution	12
Section 4.01	12
Section 4.02	12
Section 4.03	13
Section 4.04	13
Section 4.05	13
Article V Miscellaneous	15
Section 5.01	15
Section 5.02	15
Section 5.03	16
Section 5.04	17
Section 5.05	17
Section 5.06	17
Section 5.07	17
Section 5.08	17
Section 5.09	18
Section 5.10	18
Section 5.11	18
Section 5.12	18
Exhibit A — Joinder Agreement	

---

## REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT

REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT dated as of July 29, 2016 (this "Agreement") by and among Verona Pharma plc, a company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales (registered number 05375156) (the "Company"), and the investors listed on the signature pages hereto, as well as any Permitted Transferees (as defined below).

### WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, the Company and certain Investors are parties to that certain Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of June 17, 2016 (the "Securities Purchase Agreement"), pursuant to which, among other things, the Company agreed to offer and sell and the Investors agreed to purchase an aggregate 1,555,796,345 Units (each, a "Unit" and collectively, the "Units") of the Company, with each Unit consisting of one Ordinary Share and one Warrant (the "Private Placement"); and

WHEREAS, concurrent with the Private Placement, the Company is undertaking a placing (the "Offshore Offering") and, together with the Private Placement, the "Offerings") of Units pursuant to Regulation S under the Securities Act;

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the covenants and agreements contained herein, the parties hereto agree as follows:

### ARTICLE I

#### DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01 Definitions. (a) As used in this Agreement, the following terms have the following meanings:

"ADSs" means American depositary shares, representing Ordinary Shares pursuant to a sponsored ADR facility.

"Affiliate" means, with respect to any Person, any other Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by or under common control with such Person; provided that no security holder of the Company shall be deemed an Affiliate of the Company or any other security holder of the Company solely by reason of any investment in the Company or the existence or exercise of any rights or obligations under this Agreement or the Registrable Securities held by such security holder. For the purpose of this definition, the term "control" (including, with correlative meanings, the terms "controlling", "controlled by" and "under common control with"), as used with respect to any Person, means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of such Person, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise. Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to Novo A/S, in lieu of the above definition, the term Affiliate shall mean Novo Ventures (US) Inc. (together with Novo A/S, "Novo"), or any venture capital fund or other Person now or hereafter existing formed for the purpose of making investments in other Persons that is controlled by or under common control with Novo, and for the avoidance of doubt, shall not include any other affiliate of Novo.

---

“AIM” means a market of that name operated by the London Stock Exchange plc.

“Business Day” means any day except a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which commercial banks in New York City or the City of London, United Kingdom, are authorized by law to close.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any similar successor federal statute and the rules and regulations thereunder, all as the same shall be in effect from time to time.

“FINRA” means the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority.

“Foreign Private Issuer” means a “foreign private issuer,” as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

“Investor” means at any time, any Person (other than the Company) who shall then be a party to or bound by this Agreement, so long as such Person shall “beneficially own” (as such term is defined in Rule 13d-3 of the Exchange Act) any Registrable Securities.

“IPO” means the Company’s first underwritten public offering in the United States of America of equity securities pursuant to an effective registration statement filed under the Securities Act (other than a registration (i) pursuant to a Registration Statement on Form S-8 (or any other registration solely relating to an offering or sale to employees or directors of the Company pursuant to an employee stock plan or other similar employee benefit arrangement), (ii) pursuant to a Registration Statement on Form S-4 or Form F-4 (or similar form), or (iii) in connection with any dividend or distribution reinvestment or similar plan).

“IPO Lock-up Period” means the period ending on the earlier of one hundred eighty (180) days after the effective date of the Company’s registration statement in connection with the IPO or such other date as the Company and the lead underwriter shall agree.

“Ordinary Shares” means ordinary shares of one thousandth of a pound Sterling (£0.001) each in the Company, and any shares into which such Ordinary Shares may thereafter be converted or changed.

“Permitted Transferee” means in the case of any Investor, a Person to whom Registrable Securities are Transferred by such Investor in accordance with Section 5.01(b): provided that (i) such transfer does not violate any agreements between such Investor and the Company or any of the Company’s subsidiaries, (ii) such transfer is not made in a registered offering or pursuant to Rule 144 and (iii) such transferee shall only be a Permitted Transferee if and to the extent the transferor designates the transferee as a Permitted Transferee entitled to rights hereunder pursuant to Section 5.01(b).

“Person” means an individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, association, trust or other entity or organization, including a government or political subdivision or an agency or instrumentality thereof.

“prospectus” means the prospectus or prospectuses included in any registration statement (including, without limitation, a prospectus that includes any information previously omitted from a prospectus filed as part of an effective registration statement in reliance on Rule 430A under the Securities Act or any successor rule thereto), as amended or supplemented by any prospectus supplement with respect to the terms of the offering of any portion of the Registrable Securities covered by such registration statement and by all other amendments and supplements to the prospectus, including post-effective amendments and all material incorporated by reference in such prospectus or prospectuses.

“Public Offering” means an underwritten public offering of Registrable Securities of the Company pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act.

“Registrable Securities” means with respect to any Investor, Ordinary Shares owned, either of record or beneficially, by such Investor that were (a) received by such Investor in the Offerings, including Ordinary Shares issuable upon exercise of Warrants or conversion of Non-voting Ordinary Shares, (b) any Ordinary Shares issued to the Investors in a private placement that is completed concurrently with the closing of the Company’s IPO, (c) any other securities issued or issuable in respect of such Ordinary Shares by way of conversion, exchange, share dividend, split, combination, recapitalization, merger, consolidation, other reorganization or otherwise and (d) any ADSs issued in respect of any Ordinary Shares described in clauses (a), (b) or (c) (it being understood that, for purposes of this Agreement, a Person shall be deemed to be a holder of Registrable Securities whenever such Person has the right to then acquire or obtain from the Company any Registrable Securities, whether or not such acquisition has been effected), until all such Ordinary Shares or ADSs, as applicable, (i) have been disposed of pursuant to a registration statement covering such Ordinary Shares or ADSs, as applicable, that has been declared effective by the SEC, (ii) have (with respect to Ordinary Shares) been sold through the AIM market; (iii) have ceased to be outstanding, (iv) have been sold under circumstances in which all of the applicable conditions of Rule 144 (or any similar provisions then in force) under the Securities Act are met, or (v) are eligible for sale by the holder thereof without limitations as to volume or manner of sale pursuant to Rule 144.

“Registration Expenses” means any and all expenses incident to the performance of, or compliance with, any registration or marketing of Registrable Securities, including all (i) registration and filing fees, and all other fees and expenses payable in connection with the listing of securities on any securities exchange or automated interdealer quotation system, (ii) fees and expenses of compliance with any securities or “blue sky” laws (including reasonable and documented fees and disbursements of counsel in connection with “blue sky” qualifications of the securities registered), (iii) expenses in connection with the preparation, printing, mailing and delivery of any registration statements, prospectuses and other documents in connection therewith and any amendments or supplements thereto, (iv) security engraving and printing expenses, (v) internal expenses of the Company (including all salaries and expenses of its officers and employees performing legal or accounting duties), (vi) reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel for the Company and customary fees and expenses for independent certified public accountants retained by the Company (including the expenses relating to any comfort letters or costs associated with the delivery by independent certified public accountants of any comfort letters requested pursuant to [Section 3.03\(b\)](#)), (vii) reasonable fees and expenses of any special experts retained by the Company in connection with such registration, (viii) fees

and expenses in connection with any review by FINRA of the underwriting arrangements or other terms of the offering, and all fees and expenses of any “qualified independent underwriter,” including the reasonable and documented fees and expenses of any counsel thereto, (ix) fees and disbursements of underwriters customarily paid by issuers or sellers of securities, but excluding Selling Expenses, (x) transfer agents’ and registrars’ fees and expenses and the fees and expenses of any other agent or trustee appointed in connection with such offering, (xi) expenses relating to any analyst or investor presentations or any “road shows” undertaken in connection with the registration, marketing or selling of the Registrable Securities, (xii) all out-of-pocket costs and expenses incurred by the Company or its appropriate officers in connection with their compliance with Section 3.05 and (ix) reasonable fees and expenses of one (1) legal counsel for the Investors selected by the majority-in-interest of the Investors participating in such registration, such expenses not to exceed US\$100,000. Registration Expenses shall not include any out-of-pocket expenses of the Investors (or the agents who manage their accounts), except as provided above in (ix).

“registration statement” means any registration statement of the Company including the prospectus, amendments and supplements to such registration statement, including post-effective amendments, all exhibits and all material incorporated by reference in such registration statement.

“Rule 144” means Rule 144 under the Securities Act, as such rule may be amended from time to time, or any similar successor rule that may be promulgated by the SEC.

“SEC” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or any other federal agency at the time administering the federal securities laws.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or any similar successor federal statute and the rules and regulations thereunder, all as the same shall be in effect from time to time.

“Selling Expenses” shall mean, collectively, any selling commission, discounts or brokerage fees and stock transfer taxes applicable to the sale of Registrable Securities.

“Transfer” means, with respect to any Registrable Securities, (i) when used as a verb, to sell, assign, dispose of, exchange, pledge, encumber, hypothecate or otherwise transfer such Registrable Securities or any participation or interest therein, whether directly or indirectly (including pursuant to a derivative transaction), or agree or commit to do any of the foregoing and (ii) when used as a noun, a direct or indirect sale, assignment, disposition, exchange, pledge, encumbrance, hypothecation, or other transfer of such Registrable Securities or any participation or interest therein or any agreement or commitment to do any of the foregoing.

“Warrants” means the warrants issued by the Company in the Offerings.

- (b) Each of the following terms is defined in the Section set forth opposite such term:

<b>Term</b>	<b>Section</b>
Agreement	Preamble
Company	Preamble
Damages	4.01
Indemnified Party	4.03
Indemnifying Party	4.03
Inspectors	3.04
Joinder Agreement	5.01(b)
Notice	5.02
Offering	Preamble
Records	3.04
Securities Purchase Agreement	Preamble
Shelf Registration	2.01
Suspension Period	2.01(e)

Section 1.02 Other Definitional and Interpretative Provisions. The words “hereof”, “herein” and “hereunder” and words of like import used in this Agreement shall refer to this Agreement as a whole and not to any particular provision of this Agreement. The captions herein are included for convenience of reference only and shall be ignored in the construction or interpretation hereof. References to Articles, Sections or Exhibits are to Articles, Sections and Exhibits of this Agreement unless otherwise specified. All Exhibits annexed hereto or referred to herein are hereby incorporated in and made a part of this Agreement as if set forth in full herein. Any capitalized term used in any Exhibit but not otherwise defined therein shall have the meaning as defined in this Agreement. Any singular term in this Agreement shall be deemed to include the plural, and any plural term the singular. Whenever the words “include”, “includes” or “including” are used in this Agreement, they shall be deemed to be followed by the words “without limitation”, whether or not they are in fact followed by those words or words of like import. “Writing”, “written” and comparable terms refer to printing, typing and other means of reproducing words (including electronic media) in a visible form. References to any agreement or contract are to that agreement or contract as amended, modified or supplemented from time to time in accordance with the terms hereof and thereof. References to any law include all laws and regulations promulgated thereunder. References to any Person include the successors and permitted assigns of that Person. References from or through any date mean, unless otherwise specified, from and including or through and including, respectively. At any time the Company is not a Foreign Private Issuer, any references in this Agreement to a form or filing that may be made by a Foreign Private Issuer shall be deemed to be references to the corresponding form or filing that may be made by an entity that is not a Foreign Private Issuer.

## ARTICLE II

### REGISTRATION RIGHTS

Section 2.01 Shelf Registration and Registration Procedures.

(a) Not later than the later of one hundred eighty (180) days after the commencement of the IPO or five business days after the expiration of the IPO Lock-up Period,

which shall be no later than two hundred thirty five (235) days after the commencement of the IPO (the "Commencement Date"), the Company shall (i) file a registration statement covering the resale of all of the Registrable Securities pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act (or any successor or similar rule) (a "Shelf Registration" and the related registration statement, a "Shelf Registration Statement"), (ii) use commercially reasonable efforts to have the registration statement declared effective as promptly as practicable, and (iii) maintain an effective Shelf Registration (or other registration statement as described below) until all Registrable Securities shall have been sold under such Shelf Registration or cease to be Registrable Securities (such period, the "Effectiveness Period"). The Company shall promptly, and within two (2) Business Days after the Company confirms effectiveness of the Shelf Registration with the SEC, notify the Investors of the effectiveness of the Shelf Registration. In the event that Form S-3 or Form F-3 is not available for registration of the resale of the Registrable Securities hereunder, the Company shall (x) register the resale of the Registrable Securities on Form S-1 or Form F-1 or another appropriate form and (y) undertake to register the Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or Form F-3 as soon as the use of such form for such purpose is permitted, provided that the Company shall maintain the effectiveness of the registration statement then in effect until such time as the registration statement on Form S-3 or Form F-3 covering the Registrable Securities has been declared effective by the SEC.

(b) Prior to filing a registration statement or prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto (other than any report filed pursuant to the Exchange Act that is incorporated by reference therein, any post-effective amendment to incorporate by reference or otherwise include any such report, or any prospectus supplement to reflect changes in the selling stockholder table) the Company shall furnish to each participating Investor and each underwriter, if any, of the Registrable Securities covered by such registration statement copies of such registration statement as proposed to be filed. Such documents shall be subject to the review and comment of one counsel selected by the majority-in-interest of Investors participating in such registration. Thereafter the Company shall furnish to such Investor and underwriter, if any, such number of copies of such registration statement, each amendment and supplement thereto (in each case including all exhibits thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein), the prospectus included in such registration statement (including each preliminary prospectus and any summary prospectus) and any other prospectus filed under Rule 424, Rule 430A, Rule 430B or Rule 430C under the Securities Act and such other documents as such Investor or underwriter may reasonably request in order to facilitate the disposition of the Registrable Securities owned by such Investor.

(c) The Company shall respond to written comments received from the SEC upon a review of any registration statement in a timely manner.

(d) After the filing of the registration statement, the Company shall (i) cause the related prospectus to be supplemented by any required prospectus supplement, and, as so supplemented, to be filed pursuant to Rule 424 under the Securities Act, including as may be necessary to keep such registration statement effective and current, (ii) comply with the provisions of the Securities Act with respect to the disposition of all Registrable Securities covered by such registration statement during the applicable period in accordance with the intended methods of disposition by the Investors thereof set forth in such registration statement or supplement to such prospectus and (iii) promptly notify each Investor holding Registrable

Securities covered by such registration statement of any stop order issued or threatened by the SEC or any state securities commission and take reasonable best efforts to prevent the entry of such stop order or to cause it to be promptly removed if entered.

(e) The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to (i) register or qualify the Registrable Securities covered by such registration statement under such other securities or “blue sky” laws of such jurisdictions in the United States as any Investor holding such Registrable Securities reasonably (in light of such Investor’s intended plan of distribution) requests and (ii) cause such Registrable Securities to be registered with or approved by such other governmental agencies or authorities as may be necessary by virtue of the business and operations of the Company and do any and all other acts and things that may be reasonably necessary or advisable to enable such Investor to consummate the disposition of the Registrable Securities owned by such Investor; provided that the Company shall not be required to (A) qualify generally to do business in any jurisdiction where it would not otherwise be required to qualify but for this Section 2.01(d), (B) subject itself to taxation in any such jurisdiction, unless the Company is already subject to taxation in such jurisdiction or (C) consent to general service of process in any such jurisdiction, unless the Company is already subject to service in such jurisdiction, except as required pursuant to the applicable rules and regulations of the SEC.

(f) The Company shall promptly notify each Investor holding such Registrable Securities covered by such registration statement, at any time when a prospectus relating thereto is required to be delivered under the Securities Act, of the occurrence of an event requiring the preparation of a supplement or amendment to such prospectus so that, as thereafter delivered to the purchasers of such Registrable Securities, such prospectus will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading and promptly prepare and make available to each such Investor and file with the SEC any such supplement or amendment; provided that upon written notice to each Investor holding such Registrable Securities, the Company shall be entitled to delay the effectiveness of any registration statement or to suspend, on two occasions during any period of 12 consecutive months for a reasonable time specified in the notice but not exceeding in the aggregate 30 days (each, a “Suspension Period”), the use of any registration statement or prospectus if the Company determines in its reasonably good faith judgment, after consultation with counsel that (i) the registration statement or any prospectus may contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit any fact necessary to make the statements in the registration statement or prospectus not misleading, provided, that in such event the Company shall promptly prepare and file a supplement or amendment to such registration statement or prospectus to correct such disclosure or (ii) proceeding with the registration would materially interfere with a significant acquisition, corporate organization or other similar transaction involving the Company, require premature disclosure of material information that the Company has bona fide business purposes for preserving as confidential or render the Company unable to comply with the requirements under the Securities Act or Exchange Act. Notwithstanding the foregoing, until such time as the Company is eligible to register the resale of Registrable Securities on Form S-3 or Form F-3, the Company shall be permitted to effect a Suspension Period to file a post-effective amendment to the registration statement at any time that the Company files a report under the Exchange Act; provided, that the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to file such post-effective amendment and have the registration statement declared effective as promptly as practicable.

7

---

(g) The Company shall use best efforts to comply with all applicable rules and regulations of the SEC and make available to its security holders, as soon as reasonably practicable, an earnings statement or such other document covering a period of 12 months, beginning within three months after the effective date of the registration statement, which earnings statement satisfies the requirements of Rule 158 under the Securities Act.

(h) The Company may require each Investor promptly to furnish in writing to the Company such information regarding the distribution of the Registrable Securities as the Company may reasonably request for inclusion in the registration statement (and the prospectus included therein) as is necessary to comply with all applicable rules and regulations of the SEC (the “Investor Information”), and that it will promptly notify the Company of any material changes in the information set forth in the registration statement furnished by or regarding the Investor or its plan of distribution.

(i) Each Investor agrees that, upon receipt of any notice from the Company of the happening of any event of the kind described in Section 2.01(e), such Investor shall forthwith discontinue disposition of Registrable Securities pursuant to the registration statement covering such Registrable Securities until such Investor’s receipt of the copies of the supplemented or amended prospectus contemplated by Section 2.01(e), and, if so directed by the Company, such Investor shall deliver to the Company all copies, other than any permanent file copies then in such Investor’s possession, of the most recent prospectus covering such Registrable Securities at the time of receipt of such notice.

(j) Each Investor agrees that, in connection with any offering pursuant to this Agreement, it will not prepare or use or refer to, any “free writing prospectus” (as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act) without the prior written authorization of the Company, and will not distribute any written materials in connection with the offer or sale of the Registrable Securities pursuant to any Public Offering conducted hereunder other than the prospectus and any such free writing prospectus so authorized.

(k) The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to list all Registrable Securities on any securities exchange or quotation system on which any of the Registrable Securities are then listed or traded.

(l) The Company shall be liable for and pay all Registration Expenses incurred in connection with a registration statement pursuant to this Agreement, other than Selling Expenses. Selling Expenses shall be borne by the respective Investors on behalf of which the Selling Expenses have been incurred, in proportion to the respective number of shares of Registrable Securities sold by each of them.

(m) The Company shall not agree to name any Investor as an “underwriter” in any registration statement registering Registrable Securities without the prior written consent of such Investor. In addition, any registration statement registering Registrable Securities shall include a plan of distribution reasonably acceptable to the Investors.

Section 2.02 Rule 144 Sales; Cooperation by the Company. With a view to making available to the Investors the benefits of Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act and any

8

---

other rule or regulation of the SEC that may at any time permit the Investors to sell Registrable Securities to the public without registration, the Company agrees to use commercially reasonable efforts to:

- (a) make and keep public information available, as those terms are understood and defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act at all times after the date hereof;
- (b) file with the SEC in a timely manner all reports and other documents required of the Company under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act; and
- (c) furnish to each Investor forthwith upon request a written statement by the Company as to its compliance with the reporting requirements of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, a copy of the most recent annual or quarterly report of the Company, and such other information as such Investor may reasonably request in order to avail itself of any rule or regulation of the SEC allowing such Investor to sell any Registrable Securities without registration.

Section 2.03 Conversions of Ordinary Shares into ADSs. To the extent that the Company causes ADSs to be issued in the IPO, following the IPO and as requested by the Investors, the Company will deposit Ordinary Shares held by the Investors from time to time with the ADS depository and cause the ADS depository to issue ADSs to the Investors upon deposit of such Ordinary Shares, provided that the Company shall not be required to deposit such Ordinary Shares in exchange for ADSs (a) on or prior to the date that is six (6) months from the date of the final prospectus for the IPO except in compliance with the Securities Act, (b) at any time at which to do so would violate obligations under any underwriter's lock-up agreement entered into in connection with the IPO. The Company will pay reasonable expenses of the Investors related to the issuance of ADSs upon exchange of Ordinary Shares for ADSs.

Section 2.04 Obligation to Register ADSs. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, unless the Company has previously caused the Ordinary Shares to be listed on a national securities exchange or trading system in the United States (it being acknowledged that the Company shall have no obligation to so list the Ordinary Shares) and a market in the United States for Ordinary Shares not held in the form of ADSs exists, in any registration pursuant to Section 2.01 or Section 2.03 any Registrable Securities registered and sold pursuant thereto shall be in the form of ADSs.

### ARTICLE III

#### PUBLIC OFFERING

Section 3.01 Participation in Public Offering. At any time after the Commencement Date, if the Company receives a request from an Investor or group of Investors, in each case holding a majority of the Registrable Securities (as determined on a fully-diluted basis) that the Company effect a Public Offering, then the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to promptly prepare a prospectus or a prospectus supplement to effect such Public Offering; provided that (i) the Company shall only be required to effectuate one Public Offering within any one-year period and (ii) the Company shall not be obligated to effect a Public Offering unless the

aggregate proceeds expected to be received from the sale of the Registrable Securities requested to be included in such Public Offering equals or exceeds \$7,500,000. The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to give notice of such Public Offering at least ten (10) Business Days prior to the anticipated filing date of the prospectus or prospectus supplement relating to such Public Offering to the other Investors who hold Registrable Securities at such time. Such other Investors may, upon notice received by the Company no later than five (5) Business Days after the date of notice of a Public Offering, request that the Company also include all or any portion of such other Investors' Registrable Securities. Thereafter, the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to effect the Public Offering of all Registrable Securities requested to be included (in accordance with the methods thereof as aforesaid). Subject to Section 3.03(b), the Company shall be permitted to include any securities other than the Registrable Securities (including for the benefit of Persons not party to this Agreement) as part of any such Public Offering.

Section 3.02 Other Agreements of Investors. No Investor may participate in any Public Offering hereunder unless such Investor (i) agrees to sell such Investor's Registrable Securities on the basis provided in any underwriting arrangements (in customary form) approved by the Company and (ii) completes and executes all questionnaires, powers of attorney, indemnities, underwriting agreements, lock up agreements and other documents reasonably required under the terms of such underwriting arrangements and the provisions of this Agreement in respect of registration rights within the specified timelines.

Section 3.03 Underwriting of Public Offering. In connection with any Public Offering, the Company shall enter into customary agreements (including an underwriting agreement in customary form) and take such all other actions as are reasonably required in order to expedite or facilitate the disposition of such Registrable Securities in any such Public Offering.

(a) In connection with any Public Offering, if required, the Company shall furnish to each underwriter, if any, a signed counterpart, addressed to such underwriter, of (i) an opinion or opinions of counsel to the Company and (ii) a comfort letter or comfort letters from the Company's independent public accountants, each in customary form and covering such matters of the kind customarily covered by opinions or comfort letters, as the case may be, as the managing underwriter therefor reasonably requests.

(b) If the total amount of securities to be sold in any Public Offering in which the Investors are participating exceeds the amount that the underwriters determine in their sole discretion is compatible with the success of the offering, then the Company shall be required to include in the offering only that number of such securities, including Registrable Securities and securities other than the Registrable Securities that the underwriters and the Company determine in their sole discretion shall not jeopardize the success of the offering. If the Investors determine to include any Registrable Securities in any such Public Offering, other than a Public Offering initiated by the Company, the number of securities that are entitled to be included in the registration and underwriting shall be allocated in the following manner: (i) first, securities other than the Registrable Securities requested to be included in such offering (including any securities that the Company proposes to register and sell for its own account) shall be excluded (as may be allocated pursuant to any agreement between holders of any such securities other than the Company) and (ii) second, Registrable Securities requested to be included in such offering by the

Investors shall be excluded on a pro rata basis based on the number of securities requested to be included. If the Investors determine to include any Registrable Securities in any such Public Offering initiated by the Company, the number of securities that are entitled to be included in the registration and underwriting shall be allocated in the following manner: (i) first, securities other than the Registrable Securities requested to be included in such offering by Persons other than the Company shall be excluded on a pro rata basis based on the number of such securities requested to be included, (ii) second, Registrable Securities requested to be included in such offering by the Investors shall be excluded on a pro rata basis based on the number of such securities requested to be included and (iii) third, securities proposed to be registered and sold for the account of the Company shall be excluded. To facilitate the allocation of securities in accordance with the above provisions, the Company or the underwriters may round down the number of securities allocated to any selling holder (including each Investor) to the nearest 100.

Section 3.04 Inspection of the Company Records. Upon execution of confidentiality agreements in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Company, the Company shall, in connection with a Public Offering, make available for inspection by any underwriter participating in such Public Offering and any attorney, accountant or other professional (the retention of which is reasonable under the circumstances) retained by any such underwriter (collectively, the “Inspectors”), all financial and other records, pertinent corporate documents and properties of the Company (collectively, the “Records”) as shall be reasonably necessary or desirable to enable any of the Inspectors to exercise its due diligence responsibility and in accordance with applicable law, and cause the Company’s officers, directors and employees to supply all information reasonably requested by any Inspectors in connection with such Public Offering and in accordance with applicable law. Records that the Company determines in good faith to be confidential and that it notifies the Inspectors are confidential shall not be disclosed by the Inspectors unless (i) the disclosure of such Records is necessary to avoid or correct a material misstatement or omission in the registration statement related to such Public Offering or (ii) the release of such Records is ordered pursuant to a subpoena or other order from a court of competent jurisdiction. Each Investor agrees that information obtained by it as a result of such inspections shall be deemed confidential and shall not be used by it or its Affiliates as the basis for any market transactions in the Ordinary Shares, ADSs or other securities of the Company unless and until such information is made generally available to the public. Each Investor further agrees that, upon learning that disclosure of such Records is sought in a court of competent jurisdiction, it shall give notice to the Company and allow the Company, at its expense, to undertake appropriate action to prevent disclosure of the Records deemed confidential.

Section 3.05 The Company’s Participation in Road Shows. In connection with any Public Offering, the Company shall have appropriate officers of the Company (i) prepare and make presentations at any “road shows” and before analysts and (ii) otherwise use commercially reasonable efforts to cooperate as reasonably requested by the underwriters in the offering, marketing or selling of the Registrable Securities.

## ARTICLE IV

### INDEMNIFICATION AND CONTRIBUTION

Section 4.01 Indemnification by the Company. The Company agrees to indemnify and hold harmless each Investor beneficially owning any Registrable Securities covered by a registration statement, its officers, directors, partners, managers, members, investment managers, affiliates, agents, representatives and employees, and each Person, if any, who controls such Investor within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act, from and against any and all losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses (including reasonable and documented expenses of investigation and reasonable and documented attorneys' fees and expenses) (collectively, "Damages") caused by or relating to (i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in (or incorporated by reference in) any registration statement or prospectus relating to the Registrable Securities (as amended or supplemented if the Company shall have furnished any amendments or supplements thereto) or any preliminary prospectus or free writing prospectus (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act), or any filing under any state securities (or blue sky) laws, (ii) any omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading or (iii) any violation or alleged violation by the Company of the Securities Act, the Exchange Act, any state securities law or any rule or regulation promulgated under the Securities Act, the Exchange Act or any state securities law applicable to the Company, except insofar as such Damages are caused by or related to any such untrue statement or omission or alleged untrue statement or omission so made based upon information furnished in writing to the Company by such Investor or on such Investor's behalf expressly for use therein. The Company also agrees to indemnify any underwriters of the Registrable Securities, their officers and directors and each Person who controls such underwriters within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act on substantially the same basis as that of the indemnification of the Investors provided in this Section 4.01.

Section 4.02 Indemnification by Participating Investors. Each Investor holding Registrable Securities covered by a registration statement agrees, severally but not jointly, to indemnify and hold harmless the Company, its officers, directors and agents and each Person, if any, who controls the Company within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act from any Damages caused by or relating to (i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained in (or incorporated by reference in) any registration statement or prospectus relating to the Registrable Securities (as amended or supplemented if the Company shall have furnished any amendments or supplements thereto) or any preliminary prospectus or free writing prospectus (as defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act), or any filing under any state securities (or blue sky) laws, (ii) any omission or alleged omission to state therein a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, but only in each case with respect to information furnished in writing by such Investor or on such Investor's behalf expressly for use in any registration statement or prospectus relating to the Registrable Securities, or any amendment or supplement thereto, or any preliminary prospectus. Each such Investor also agrees to indemnify and hold harmless underwriters of the Registrable Securities, their officers and directors and each Person who controls such underwriters within the meaning of either Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act on substantially the same basis as that of the

indemnification of the Company provided in this Section 4.02. As a condition to including Registrable Securities in any registration statement filed in accordance with Article 2, the Company may require that it shall have received an undertaking reasonably satisfactory to it from any underwriter to indemnify and hold it harmless to the extent customarily provided by underwriters with respect to similar securities. No Investor shall be liable under this Section 4.02 for any Damages in excess of the net proceeds realized by such Investor in the sale of Registrable Securities of such Investor to which such Damages relate.

Section 4.03 Conduct of Indemnification Proceedings. If any proceeding (including any governmental investigation) shall be brought or asserted against any Person in respect of which indemnity may be sought pursuant to Section 4.01 or 4.02, such Person (an "Indemnified Party") shall promptly notify the Person against whom such indemnity may be sought (the "Indemnifying Party") in writing and the Indemnifying Party shall assume the defense thereof, including the employment of counsel reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnified Party, and shall assume the payment of all reasonable and documented fees and expenses, provided that the failure of any Indemnified Party so to notify the Indemnifying Party shall not relieve the Indemnifying Party of its obligations hereunder except to the extent that the Indemnifying Party is materially prejudiced by such failure to notify. In any such proceeding, any Indemnified Party shall have the right to retain its own counsel, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such Indemnified Party unless (a) the Indemnifying Party and the Indemnified Party shall have mutually agreed to the retention of such counsel or (b) in the reasonable judgment of such Indemnified Party representation of both parties by the same counsel would be inappropriate due to actual or potential differing interests between them. It is understood that, in connection with any proceeding or related proceedings in the same jurisdiction, the Indemnifying Party shall not be liable for the reasonable and documented fees and expenses of more than one separate firm of attorneys (in addition to one local counsel per jurisdiction) at any time for all such Indemnified Parties. In the case of any such separate firm for the Indemnified Parties, such firm shall be designated in writing by the Indemnified Parties. The Indemnifying Party shall not be liable for any settlement of any proceeding effected without its written consent, but if settled with such consent, or if there be a final judgment for the plaintiff, the Indemnifying Party shall indemnify and hold harmless such Indemnified Parties from and against any loss or liability (to the extent stated above) by reason of such settlement or judgment. Without the prior written consent of the Indemnified Party, no Indemnifying Party shall effect any settlement of any pending or threatened proceeding in respect of which any Indemnified Party is or could have been a party and indemnity could have been sought hereunder by such Indemnified Party, unless such settlement includes an unconditional release of such Indemnified Party from all liability arising out of such proceeding.

Section 4.04 Survival. Unless otherwise superseded by an underwriting agreement entered into in connection with an underwritten public offering, the obligations of the Company and the Investors under Section 4.01 and Section 4.02, respectively, shall survive the completion of any offering of Registrable Securities in a registration statement under this Agreement or otherwise.

Section 4.05 Contribution. (a) If the indemnification provided for in Section 4.01 or 4.02 is unavailable to the Indemnified Parties in respect of any Damages, then each Indemnifying

Party, in lieu of indemnifying the Indemnified Parties, shall contribute to the amount paid or payable by such Indemnified Party as a result of such Damages:

(i) as between the Company and the Investors holding Registrable Securities covered by a registration statement on the one hand and the underwriters on the other, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Company and such Investors on the one hand and the underwriters on the other, from the offering of the Registrable Securities, or if such allocation is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits but also the relative fault of the Company and such Investors on the one hand and of such underwriters on the other in connection with the statements or omissions that resulted in such Damages, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations; and

(ii) as between the Company on the one hand and each such Investor on the other, in such proportion as is appropriate to reflect the relative fault of the Company and of each such Investor in connection with such statements or omissions, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations.

The relative benefits received by the Company and such Investors on the one hand and such underwriters on the other shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total proceeds from the offering (net of underwriting discounts and commissions but before deducting expenses) received by the Company and such Investors bear to the total underwriting discounts and commissions received by such underwriters, in each case as set forth in the table on the cover page of the applicable prospectus or prospectus supplement. The relative fault of the Company and such Investors on the one hand and of such underwriters on the other shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Company and such Investors or by such underwriters. The relative fault of the Company on the one hand and of each such Investor on the other shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by such party, and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission.

(b) The Company and the Investors agree that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this [Section 4.05](#) were determined by pro rata allocation (even if the underwriters were treated as one entity for such purpose) or by any other method of allocation that does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to in the immediately preceding paragraph. The amount paid or payable by an Indemnified Party as a result of the Damages referred to in the immediately preceding paragraph shall be deemed to include, subject to the limitations set forth above, any legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such Indemnified Party in connection with investigating or defending any such action or claim. Notwithstanding the provisions of this [Section 4.05](#), no underwriter shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the total price at which the Registrable Securities underwritten by it and distributed to the public were offered to the public exceeds the amount of any Damages that such underwriter has otherwise been required to pay by reason of such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission, and no

Investor shall be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the total price at which the Registrable Securities of such Investor were offered to the public (less underwriters' discounts and commissions) exceeds the amount of any Damages that such Investor has otherwise been required to pay by reason of such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission. No Person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any Person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. Each Investor's obligation to contribute pursuant to this Section 4.05 is several in the proportion that the proceeds of the offering received by such Investor bears to the total proceeds of the offering received by all such Investors and not joint.

## ARTICLE V

### MISCELLANEOUS

Section 5.01 Binding Effect; Assignability; Benefit. (a) This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective heirs, successors, legal representatives and permitted assigns. Any Investor that ceases to own beneficially any Registrable Securities shall cease to be bound by the terms hereof (other than (i) the provisions of Article 4 applicable to such Investor with respect to any offering of Registrable Securities completed before the date such Investor ceased to own any Registrable Securities and (ii) this Article 5).

(a) Neither this Agreement nor any right, remedy, obligation or liability arising hereunder or by reason hereof shall be assignable by any party hereto pursuant to any Transfer of Registrable Securities or otherwise, except that each Investor may assign all or any portion of its rights hereunder to any Permitted Transferee of such Investor with respect to securities representing not less than twenty percent (20%) of the Registrable Securities held by such Investor as of the date of completion of the IPO; provided, however, that no such minimum assignment requirement shall be necessary for an assignment by an Investor which is (i) a partnership to its partners in accordance with their partnership interests, (ii) a limited liability company to its members in accordance with their interests in the limited liability company, (iii) a corporation to its stockholders in accordance with their interests in the corporation or (iv) to an Affiliate of such Investor. Any such Permitted Transferee shall (unless already bound hereby) execute and deliver to the Company an agreement to be bound by this Agreement in the form of Exhibit A hereto (a "Joinder Agreement") and shall thenceforth be a "Investor." Any such transfer to a Permitted Transferee must be in compliance with the Securities Act and any other applicable securities "blue sky" laws.

(b) Nothing in this Agreement, expressed or implied, is intended to confer on any Person other than the parties hereto, and their respective heirs, successors, legal representatives and permitted assigns, any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities under or by reason of this Agreement.

Section 5.02 Notices. All notices, requests and other communications (each, a "Notice") to any party shall be in writing and shall be delivered in person, mailed by certified or

registered mail, return receipt requested, or sent by facsimile transmission or email transmission so long as receipt of such email is requested and received:

if to the Company to:

Verona Pharma PLC  
3 More London Riverside  
London SE1 2RE  
United Kingdom  
E-Mail: XXX and XXX  
Attention: Jan-Anders Karlsson and Claire Poll

with a copy to:

Kaye Scholer LLP  
Two Palo Alto Square, Suite 400  
3000 El Camino Real  
Palo Alto, CA 94306-2112  
E-mail: XXX  
Attention: Nicholas O'Keefe

if to any Investor, at the address for such Investor listed on the signature pages below or otherwise provided to the Company as set forth below.

Any Notice shall be deemed received on the date of receipt by the recipient thereof if received prior to 5:00 p.m. in the place of receipt and such day is a Business Day in the place of receipt. Otherwise, any such Notice shall be deemed not to have been received until the next succeeding Business Day in the place of receipt.

Any Person that becomes an Investor after the date hereof shall provide its address, fax number and email address to the Company.

Section 5.03 Waiver, Amendment, Termination. (a) The provisions of this Agreement, including the provisions of this sentence, may not be amended, waived, modified or supplemented, and waivers or consents to departures from the provisions hereof may not be given without the written consent of the Company and holders of a majority of the Registrable Securities (as determined on a fully-diluted basis); provided, however, that in no event shall the obligations of any holder of Registrable Securities be materially increased or the rights of any Investor be adversely affected (without similarly adversely affecting the rights of all Investors), except upon the written consent of such holder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, a waiver or consent to depart from the provisions hereof with respect to a matter that relates exclusively to the rights of holders of Registrable Securities whose securities are being sold pursuant to a registration statement and that does not directly or indirectly affect the rights of other holders of Registrable Securities may be given by holders of at least a majority of the Registrable Securities being sold by such holders pursuant to such registration statement.

(b) This Agreement shall terminate upon the earlier to occur of (i) the fifth anniversary of the IPO and (ii) the date on which there are no Registrable Securities.

Section 5.04 Governing Law. This Agreement shall be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York, without regard to the conflicts of laws rules of such state.

Section 5.05 Jurisdiction. The parties hereby agree that any suit, action or proceeding seeking to enforce any provision of, or based on any matter arising out of or in connection with, this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby shall be brought in any state or federal court sitting in The City of New York, Borough of Manhattan, so long as one of such courts shall have subject matter jurisdiction over such suit, action or proceeding, and that any cause of action arising out of this Agreement shall be deemed to have arisen from a transaction of business in the State of New York, and each of the parties hereby irrevocably consents to the jurisdiction of such courts (and of the appropriate appellate courts therefrom) in any such suit, action or proceeding and irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection that it may now or hereafter have to the laying of the venue of any such suit, action or proceeding in any such court or that any such suit, action or proceeding which is brought in any such court has been brought in an inconvenient forum. Process in any such suit, action or proceeding may be served on any party anywhere in the world, whether within or without the jurisdiction of any such court. Without limiting the foregoing, each party agrees that service of process on such party as provided in Section 5.02 shall be deemed effective service of process on such party.

Section 5.06 WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL. EACH OF THE PARTIES HERETO HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY (WHETHER BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT OR ANY OTHER THEORY). EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE INVESTORS (A) CERTIFIES THAT NO REPRESENTATIVE, AGENT OR ATTORNEY OF ANY OTHER PERSON HAS REPRESENTED, EXPRESSLY OR OTHERWISE, THAT SUCH OTHER PERSON WOULD NOT, IN THE EVENT OF LITIGATION, SEEK TO ENFORCE THE FOREGOING WAIVER AND (B) ACKNOWLEDGES THAT EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE INVESTORS HAS BEEN INDUCED TO ENTER INTO THIS AGREEMENT BY, AMONG OTHER THINGS, THE MUTUAL WAIVERS AND CERTIFICATIONS IN THIS SECTION.

Section 5.07 Specific Enforcement. Each party hereto acknowledges that the remedies at law of the other parties for a breach or threatened breach of this Agreement would be inadequate and, in recognition of this fact, any party to this Agreement, without posting any bond or furnishing other security, and in addition to all other remedies that may be available, shall be entitled to the fullest extent permitted by law to obtain equitable relief in the form of specific performance, a temporary restraining order, a temporary or permanent injunction or any other equitable remedy that may then be available.

Section 5.08 Counterparts; Effectiveness. This Agreement may be executed (including by facsimile or other electronic image scan transmission) with counterpart signature pages or in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original, and all of which

17

---

shall, taken together, be considered one and the same agreement, it being understood that each party need not sign the same counterpart. This Agreement shall become effective when each party hereto shall have executed and delivered this Agreement. Until and unless each party has executed and delivered this Agreement, this Agreement shall have no effect and no party shall have any right or obligation hereunder (whether by virtue of any other oral or written agreement or other communication).

Section 5.09 Entire Agreement. This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement and understanding among the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter of this Agreement and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous agreements and understandings, both oral and written, among the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof.

Section 5.10 Severability. If any term, provision, covenant or restriction of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction or other authority to be invalid, void or unenforceable, the remainder of the terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect and shall in no way be affected, impaired or invalidated so long as the economic or legal substance of the transactions contemplated hereby is not affected in any manner materially adverse to any party. Upon such a determination, the parties shall negotiate in good faith to modify this Agreement so as to effect the original intent of the parties as closely as possible in an acceptable manner so that the transactions contemplated hereby be consummated as originally contemplated to the fullest extent possible.

Section 5.11 Confidentiality.

(a) Each Investor agrees that any notice received pursuant to this Agreement, including any notice of a proposed public offering, postponement of an offering or other similar notice regarding the Company's securities, is confidential information and that any trading in securities of the Company following receipt of such information may only be done in compliance with all applicable securities laws.

(b) Each Investor shall have the right, at any time and from time to time (including after receiving information regarding any potential Public Offering), to elect not to receive any notice that the Company or any other Investor otherwise are required to deliver pursuant to this Agreement by delivering to the Company a written statement signed by such Investor that it does not want to receive any notices hereunder (an "Opt-Out Request"); in which case and notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement the Company and other Investors shall not be required to, and shall not, deliver any notice or other information required to be provided to Investors hereunder to the extent that the Company or such other Investors reasonably expect would result in an Investor acquiring material nonpublic information. An Opt-Out Request may state a date on which it expires or, if no such date is specified, shall remain in effect indefinitely. An Investor who previously has given the Company an Opt-Out Request may revoke such request at any time, and there shall be no limit on the ability of an Investor to issue and revoke a subsequent Opt-Out Request.

Section 5.12 Independent Nature of Investors' Obligations and Rights. The obligations of each Investor hereunder are several and not joint with the obligations of any other Investor hereunder, and no Investor shall be responsible in any way for the performance of the obligations

18

---

of any other Investor hereunder. Nothing contained herein or in any other agreement or document delivered at any closing, and no action taken by any Investor pursuant hereto or thereto, shall be deemed to constitute the Investors as a partnership, an association, a joint venture or any other kind of entity, or create a presumption that the Investors are in any way acting in concert with respect to such obligations or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement. Each Investor shall be entitled to protect and enforce its rights, including the rights arising out of this Agreement, and it shall not be necessary for any other Investor to be joined as an additional party in any proceeding for such purpose.

[Signature pages follow]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have duly executed this Agreement or have caused this Agreement to be duly executed by their respective authorized officers as of the day and year first above written.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

By: /s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Name: Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

[Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

ABINGWORTH BIOVENTURES VI LP acting by its  
Manager Abingworth LLP

By: /s/ James Abell

Name: James Abell  
Title: Partner

Address for Notices:

Address: 38 Jermyn Street, London SW1Y 6DN, UK

Fax number:

Email address: XXX

[Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

AISLING CAPITAL IV, LP

By: /s/ Lloyd Appel

Name: Lloyd Appel

Title: Chief Financial Officer

Address for Notices:

Address: 888 Seventh Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, NY 10106

Fax number:

Email address: XXX

[Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

DON M. BAILEY

By: /s/ Don M. Bailey

Address for Notices:

Address: 5748 Grandview Avenue, Yorba Linda, CA 92886

Fax number:

Email address: XXX

[Signature Page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

BIODISCOVERY 4 FPCI

By: Edmund de Rothschild Investment Partners, its management company

By: /s/ Gilles Nobécourt

Name: Gilles Nobécourt

Title: Managing Director

Address for Notices:

Address: 47, Rue du Faubourg Saint-Honoré  
75401 Paris Cedex 08, France

Fax number:

Email address: XXX

[Signature page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

GROWTH EQUITY OPPORTUNITIES FUND IV, LLC

By: New Enterprise Associates 15, L.P., its sole member

By: NEA Partners 15, L.P., its general partner

By: NEA 15 GP, LTD, its general partner

By: /s/ Louis S. Citron

Name: Louis S. Citron

Title: Chief Legal Officer

Address for Notices:

Address: 1954 Greenspring Drive, Suite 600, Timonium, MD 21093

Fax number:

Email address: XXX

[Signature page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

ORBIMED PRIVATE INVESTMENTS VI, LP

By: OrbiMed Capital GP VI LLC,  
its General Partner

By: OrbiMed Advisors LLC,  
its Managing Member

By: /s/ Carl Gordon  
Name: Carl Gordon  
Title: Managing Member

Address for Notices:

Address: 601 Lexington Ave, 54<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, NY 10022

Fax number:

Email address: XXX

[Signature page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

Tekla World Healthcare Fund\*

/s/ Daniel R. Omstead

By: Daniel R. Omstead

Title: President

Address for Notices:

Address: c/o Tekla Capital Management LLC  
100 Federal Street 19<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Boston, MA 02110

Fax number: 617 772 8577

Email address: XXX, with copies to  
XXX, XXX  
and XXX

\* The name Tekla World Healthcare Fund is the designation of the Trustee for the time being under a Declaration of Trust dated May 18, 2015, and all persons dealing with Tekla World Healthcare Fund must look solely to the trust property for the enforcement of any claim against Tekla World Healthcare Fund, as neither the Trustees, officers nor shareholders assume any personal liability for the obligations entered into on behalf of Tekla World Healthcare Fund.

[Signature page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

Tekla Life Sciences Investors\*

/s/ Daniel R. Omstead

By: Daniel R. Omstead

Title: President

Address for Notices:

Address: c/o Tekla Capital Management LLC  
100 Federal Street 19<sup>th</sup> Floor  
Boston, MA 02110

Fax number: 617 772 8577

Email address: XXX, with copies to  
XXX, XXX  
and XXX

---

\* The name Tekla Life Sciences Investors is the designation of the Trustee for the time being under a Declaration of Trust dated February 20, 1992, as amended, and all persons dealing with Tekla Life Sciences Investors must look solely to the trust property for the enforcement of any claim against Tekla Life Sciences Investors, as neither the Trustees, officers nor shareholders assume any personal liability for the obligations entered into on behalf of Tekla Life Sciences Investors.

[Signature page to Registration Rights Agreement]

---

**INVESTORS:**

VIVO VENTURES FUND VII, L.P.

By: Vivo Ventures VII, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha

Name: Albert Cha

Title: Managing Member

VIVO VENTURES VII AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.

By: Vivo Ventures VII, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha

Name: Albert Cha

Title: Managing Member

VIVO VENTURES FUND VI, L.P.

By: Vivo Ventures VI, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha

Name: Albert Cha

Title: Managing Member

VIVO VENTURES VI AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.

By: Vivo Ventures VII, LLC

Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha

Name: Albert Cha

Title: Managing Member

Address for Notices:

Address: 575 High Street, Suite 201, Palo Alto, CA 94301, USA

Fax number: 650-688-0815

Email address: XXX

[Signature page to Registration Rights Agreement]



JOINDER TO REGISTRATION RIGHTS AGREEMENT

This Joinder Agreement (this "Joinder Agreement") is made as of the date written below by the undersigned (the "Joining Party") in accordance with the Registration Rights Agreement dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, 2016 (as amended, amended and restated or otherwise modified from time to time, the "Registration Rights Agreement") among Verona Pharma plc and the investors party thereto listed on the signature pages, as well as any Permitted Transferees. Capitalized terms used, but not defined, herein shall have the meaning ascribed to such terms in the Registration Rights Agreement.

The Joining Party hereby acknowledges, agrees and confirms that, by its execution of this Joinder Agreement, the Joining Party shall be deemed to be a party to the Registration Rights Agreement as of the date hereof as a Permitted Transferee of an Investor thereto and shall have all of the rights and obligations of an "Investor" thereunder as if it had executed the Registration Rights Agreement. The Joining Party hereby ratifies, as of the date hereof, and agrees to be bound by, all of the terms, provisions and conditions contained in the Registration Rights Agreement.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned has executed this Joinder Agreement as of the date written below.

Date: ,

[NAME OF JOINING PARTY]

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

Address for Notices:

Address:

Fax number:

Email address:

---

\*\*\* Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ASSIGNMENT AND LICENCE AGREEMENT**

**DATED 7TH FEBRUARY, 2005**

**VERNALIS DEVELOPMENT LIMITED**

**and**

**RHINOPHARMA LTD.**

---

## CONTENTS

<u>Clause</u>		<u>Page</u>
1.	Interpretation	1
2.	Assignment of Programme Patents	5
3.	Grant in Relation to Programme Know-How and Programme Materials	5
4.	Sub-Licensing	6
5.	Payments	6
6.	Rhinopharma's Undertakings	7
7.	Representations and Warranties	8
8.	Third Party Infringement of Programme IP	9
9.	Maintenance of Patents	10
10.	Term and Termination	11
11.	Effect of Termination	12
12.	Confidentiality and Announcements	12
13.	Force Majeure	13
14.	Notices	14
15.	Assignment	14
16.	General	15
17.	Disputes	16
18.	Jurisdiction	17
19.	Governing Law	17
 <u>Schedule</u>		
1.	Programme Patent(s)	18
2.	Programme Know-How	19
3.	Net Sales Value Definition	24
4.	Know-How Agreements	29
Signatories		30

\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

THIS AGREEMENT is dated 7th February, 2005

**BETWEEN:**

- (1) **VERNALIS DEVELOPMENT LIMITED** (registered number 2600483) whose registered office is at Oakdene Court, 613 Reading road, Winnersh, Berks, RG41 5UA (**Vernalis**); and
- (2) **RHINOPHARMA LTD.** (incorporation number 693217) whose registered office is at Suite 700, 625 Howe Street, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada V6C 2T6 (**Rhinopharma**).

**BACKGROUND:**

- (A) Vernalis owns certain compounds and know-how which it has used to progress a research and development programme of mixed PDE III and PDE IV inhibitors for use as inhaled treatments of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease.
- (B) Through the conduct of that research and development programme, Vernalis has developed certain intellectual property rights comprising know-how, materials and patent rights related to the programme.
- (C) Rhinopharma wishes to obtain rights to the programme and Vernalis has agreed to (i) assign those patent rights related to the programme to Rhinopharma, and (ii) grant, and Rhinopharma has agreed to take, an exclusive licence of those other intellectual property rights related to the programme, in each case on the terms set out in this agreement.

**IT IS AGREED:**

**1. INTERPRETATION**

1.1 In this agreement:

**Affiliate** means any corporation, company, partnership, joint venture and/or firm which controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with a party. For purposes of this definition, "control" shall be presumed to exist if one of the following conditions is met: (a) in the case of corporate entities, direct or indirect ownership of at least fifty per cent. (50%) of the stock or shares having the right to vote for the election of directors, and (b) in the case of non-corporate entities, direct or indirect ownership of at least fifty per cent. (50%) of the equity interest with the power to direct the management and policies of such non-corporate entities. The parties acknowledge that in the case of certain entities organised under the laws of certain countries, the maximum percentage ownership permitted by law for a foreign investor may be less than fifty per cent. (50%), and that in such case such lower percentage shall be substituted in the preceding sentence, *provided that* such foreign investor has the power to direct the management and policies of such entity;

**Commercialisation or Commercialise** means any and all activities (whether before or after Regulatory Approval) directed to the marketing, detailing and promotion of a Licensed Product after Regulatory Approval for commercial sale has been obtained, and shall, without limitation, include pre-launch and post-launch marketing, manufacturing for commercial sale, promoting, detailing, distributing, offering to sell and selling a Licensed Product, importing a Licensed Product for sale, conducting clinical studies (but not Development clinical studies), and

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

interacting with Regulatory Authorities regarding the foregoing; **Commercialising** shall have a corresponding meaning;

**Commercially Reasonable and Diligent Efforts** means efforts and resources commonly associated with good business practice and standards in the research-based pharmaceutical industry to research, develop, manufacture or commercialise (as appropriate) a product or compound of similar market potential at a similar stage in its product life, taking into account [\*\*\*].

**Confidential Information** means all materials, know-how or other information (whether or not patentable) that is disclosed by or on behalf of either party to the other party pursuant to and in contemplation of this agreement, including, without limitation, biological or chemical substances, formulations, techniques, methodology, equipment, data, reports, Know-How, sources of supply, patent positioning and business plans, and that is designated as confidential in writing by the disclosing party, whether by letter or by the use of an appropriate stamp or legend, prior to or at the time any such material, know-how or other information is disclosed by the disclosing party to the other party. Notwithstanding the foregoing, materials, know-how or other information that is orally, electronically or visually disclosed by a party, or is disclosed in writing without an appropriate letter, stamp or legend, shall constitute Confidential Information of a party (a) if the disclosing party, within thirty (30) days after such disclosure, delivers to the other party a written document describing the materials, know-how or other information and referencing the place and date of such oral, visual, electronic or written disclosure and the names of the persons to whom such disclosure was made, or (b) such information is of the type that is customarily considered to be confidential information by persons engaged in activities that are substantially similar to the activities being engaged in by the parties;

**Cover, Covering or Covered** means, with respect to a Programme Patent, that, but for a license granted to a party under a Valid Claim included in such Programme Patent, the practice by such Party of an invention would infringe such Valid Claim including in the case of a Programme Patent that is a patent application, would infringe a Valid Claim in such patent application if it were to issue as a patent;

**Development or Develop** means, without limitation, any and all activities related to research, preclinical testing, test method development and stability testing, toxicology, formulation, process development, manufacturing scale-up, qualification and validation, quality assurance/quality control, clinical studies, regulatory affairs, statistical analysis and report writing, market research and development, the preparation and submission of drug approval applications and all other activities before and leading to Regulatory Approval, and includes, without limitation, any activities necessary or required by a Regulatory Authority (a) to obtain Regulatory Approval, or (b) as a condition of maintaining a Regulatory Approval. **Developed** shall have a corresponding meaning;

**Disclosing Party** means, in relation to the Confidential Information of:

- (a) Rhinopharma and its Affiliates, Rhinopharma; or
- (b) Vernalis and its Affiliates, Vernalis;

**Dispute** has the meaning given in clause 17.1;

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**Field of Use** means the treatment of human or animal allergic or inflammatory disorders;

**First Commercial Sale** means on a Licensed Product by Licensed Product, and country by country basis the first sale to a Third Party of a Licensed Product in a country in the Territory after required Regulatory Approvals have been granted by the applicable Regulatory Authority, but excluding Licensed Product sales for clinical study purposes or compassionate, named patient or similar use;

**Improvement** means any material developments, discoveries, inventions or other intellectual property rights, whether patentable or not, which improve or otherwise offer advantages in respect of development, manufacture and/or performance of the Licensed Products;

**Know-How** means all tangible or intangible materials, inventions, discoveries, practices, methods, knowledge, know-how, trade secrets, processes, formulas, assays, skills, experience, techniques and results of experimentation and testing, including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, pharmacological, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, analytical and quality control data, software and algorithms, marketing, pricing, distribution, costs and sales data (whether patentable or otherwise);

**Licensed Products** means any phosphodiesterase inhibitors Developed using the Programme IP;

**Manufacturing or Manufacture** means all activities associated with the production, manufacture, processing, filling, finishing, packaging, labeling, shipping, and storage of Licensed Products, including, without limitation, process development, process validation, manufacturing scale-up, pre-clinical, clinical and commercial manufacture and analytical development, product characterisation, quality assurance and quality control;

**Net Sales Value** has the meaning given in Schedule 3;

**Notice** has the meaning given in clause 14.1;

**Permitted User** means, in relation to the Recipient, any of its employees, directors, subcontractors or professional advisers and, where the Recipient is Rhinopharma, any of its Affiliates, any of the employees, directors, subcontractors or professional advisers of any Affiliates of Rhinopharma;

**Programme IP** means the Programme Patents, the Programme Know-How and Programme Materials

**Programme Know-How** means the Know-How owned by Vernalis and reasonably required for the Development, Manufacture or Commercialisation of Licensed Products, including, without limitation, such Know-How as is set out in Schedule 2;

**Programme Materials** means the physical stock of compound VMX 554 and VMX 565 in Vernalis' possession as at the date of this agreement.

**Programme Patents** means all those patent applications and granted patents [\*\*\*] patents or patent applications claiming priority from such patents or patent applications in the Territory;

**Recipient** means, in relation to the Confidential Information of:

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

- (a) Rhinopharma and its Affiliates, Vernalis; or
- (b) Vernalis and its Affiliates, Rhinopharma;

**Regulatory Approval** means any and all approvals (including pricing and reimbursement approvals), licences, registrations or authorisations of any Regulatory Authority, necessary for the Development, Commercialisation or Manufacture of a Licensed Product;

**Regulatory Authority** means any governmental or regulatory authority in a country or region that regulates the manufacture or sale of pharmaceutical products for human or animal use, including, without limitation, the United States Food and Drug Administration and the European Agency for the Evaluation of Medicinal Products, and any successors thereto;

**Royalty Term** means:

- (a) with respect to each Licensed Product Covered by a Programme Patent at the time of First Commercial Sale of such Licensed Product in each country, the period of time from the First Commercial Sale of such Licensed Product until the later of (i) the date ten (10) years from the date of the First Commercial Sale of such Licensed Product in such country; and (ii) the expiration of all patent rights within Programme Patents containing one or more Valid Claims Covering the Development, Manufacture or Commercialisation of such Licensed Product in such country; and
- (b) with respect to each Licensed Product not Covered by a Programme Patent at the time of First Commercial Sale of such Licensed Product in each country, the period of time from the First Commercial Sale of such Licensed Product until the date ten (10) years from the date of the First Commercial Sale of such Licensed Product in such country;

**Sales Tax** means any sales, purchase or turnover tax as may be applicable in any relevant jurisdiction, including, without limitation, value added tax chargeable under or pursuant to the UK Value Added Tax Act 1994 or the EC Sixth Directive (77/388/EEC);

**Sub-licensee** means a Third Party to whom Rhinopharma grants a licence or sub-licence (as the case may be) under any Programme LP, to Develop, Manufacture or Commercialise a Licensed Product in the Field of Use in the Territory;

**Territory** means all the countries in the world;

**Third Party** means any entity other than Vernalis or Rhinopharma and their respective Affiliates; and

**Valid Claim** means any claim of a Programme Patent, which claim has not been held unenforceable, unpatentable or invalid by a final decision of a court or governmental agency of competent jurisdiction, unappealable or unappealed within the time allowed for appeal, and which has not been admitted to be invalid or unenforceable through reissue, re-examination or disclaimer.

1.2 In this agreement any reference, express or implied, to an enactment (which includes any legislation in any jurisdiction) includes references to:

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

- (a) that enactment as re-enacted, amended, extended or applied by or under any other enactment (before, on or after the date of this agreement);
- (b) any enactment which that enactment re-enacts (with or without modification); and
- (c) any subordinate legislation made (before, on or after the date of this agreement) under that enactment, as re-enacted, amended, extended or applied as described in clause 1.2(a), or under any enactment referred to in clause 1.2(b).

1.3 In this agreement:

- (a) references to a person include an individual, a body corporate and an unincorporated association of persons;
- (b) subject to clause 15, references to a party to this agreement include references to the successors or assigns (immediate or otherwise) of that party.

1.4 Clauses 1.1 to 1.3 apply unless the contrary intention appears.

1.5 The headings in this agreement do not affect its interpretation.

1.6 The schedules to this agreement form part of it.

1.7 If there is any conflict or inconsistency between a term in the main part of this agreement and a term in any of the schedules or other documents referred to or otherwise incorporated into this agreement, the term in the main part of this agreement shall take precedence, unless the schedule or the appendix or other document which is incorporated into this agreement is expressly stated to take precedence over this agreement.

## **2. ASSIGNMENT OF PROGRAMME PATENTS**

2.1 In consideration of payment by Rhinopharma to Vernalis of the amounts set out in clause 5, Vernalis hereby assigns to Rhinopharma such rights, title and interest as it holds in the Programme Patents.

2.2 The assignment in clause 2.1 includes the right (where applicable) to file applications under the Paris Convention, corresponding to or based on any of the applications for the Programme Patents, and to claim priority from those applications.

2.3 Rhinopharma shall not further assign the Programme Patents to any Third Party without the prior written consent of Vernalis.

2.4 Vernalis shall transfer to Rhinopharma all records, data, files and other information (in any medium) which are in its possession, power or control (or those of its professional advisers and agents) and which relate directly to the Programme Patents as soon as reasonably possible after the date of this agreement.

## **3. GRANT IN RELATION TO PROGRAMME KNOW-HOW AND PROGRAMME MATERIALS**

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

3.1 Subject to the terms and conditions of this agreement, Vernalis grants to Rhinopharma an exclusive, worldwide, royalty-bearing licence under the Programme Know-How to Develop, Manufacture and Commercialise (or any of those activities) Licensed Products in the Field of Use in the Territory.

3.2 Vernalis shall provide to Rhinopharma copies of the Programme Know-How as soon as reasonably possible after the date of this agreement.

3.3 Rhinopharma shall only use the Programme Know-How provided by Vernalis under clause 3.2 for the purpose of Developing, Manufacturing and Commercialising (or any of those activities) the Licensed Products or in connection with a sub-license permitted under clause 4.1.

3.4 Vernalis shall transfer to Rhinopharma the Programme Materials as soon as reasonably possible after the date of this agreement.

#### **4. SUB-LICENSING**

4.1 Rhinopharma shall have the right to grant sub-licences under the Programme IP provided that:

- (a) any sub-license shall be in writing on terms consistent with this agreement (including, without limitation, those terms relating to confidentiality, but excluding the right to grant further sub-licences without Vernalis' prior written consent);
- (b) Rhinopharma shall provide a copy of each sub-license to Vernalis; and
- (c) any sub-license shall automatically terminate on the termination of this agreement.

4.2 Save as expressly set out no further rights or licences are granted by Vernalis to Rhinopharma by this agreement.

#### **5. PAYMENTS**

5.1 Within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after achievement of the first approval of a Regulatory Authority for the Commercialisation of any Licensed Product anywhere in the Territory, Rhinopharma shall pay to Vernalis the sum of five million pounds (£5,000,000).

5.2 For each Licensed Product that is Covered by a Programme Patent at the time of First Commercial Sale of that Licensed Product, during the applicable Royalty Term and prior to the Royalty Term in respect of any named patient sales, Rhinopharma shall pay Vernalis royalties on the Net Sales Value of such Licensed Product at the royalty rate of [\*\*\*]% ([\*\*\*) per cent.).

5.3 For each Licensed Product that is not Covered by a Programme Patent at the time of First Commercial Sale of that Licensed Product, during the applicable Royalty Term and prior to the Royalty Term in respect of any named patient sales, Rhinopharma shall pay Vernalis royalties on the Net Sales Value of such Licensed Product at the royalty rate of [\*\*\*]% ([\*\*\*) per cent.).

5.4 Rhinopharma shall pay Vernalis [\*\*\*]% ([\*\*\*) per cent.) of all [\*\*\*] consideration (excluding royalties which are payable separately under clauses 5.2 and 5.3) paid to Rhinopharma by its Sub-licensees for licences to or transfers of any Programme Patents and sub-licences to any Programme Know-How.

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

- 5.5 Within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*) days after the first day of [\*\*\*] of each year following the First Commercial Sale of any Licensed Product, Rhinopharma shall submit, or cause to be submitted, to Vernalis a statement in writing recording the calculation of the royalties payable under this agreement with respect to the preceding calendar quarter and in particular:
- (a) [\*\*\*];
  - (b) [\*\*\*];
  - (c) [\*\*\*]; and
  - (d) [\*\*\*].
- 5.6 At the same time as submission of each statement in accordance with clause 5.5, Rhinopharma shall make payments to Vernalis in the amounts due for the calendar quarter covered by that statement.
- 5.7 Royalties payable under this agreement are [\*\*\*].
- 5.8 Rhinopharma shall pay any royalties due to Vernalis gross without deduction of any withholding or other income taxes or if by law any royalties due to Vernalis are subject to withholding or other income taxes, Rhinopharma shall ensure that a sum is paid to Vernalis as shall, after deduction of any withholding or other income tax, be equivalent to the royalties otherwise payable under this agreement. Royalties payable under this agreement shall be calculated in [\*\*\*] by wire transfer to any account that Vernalis may notify to Rhinopharma in writing from time to time.
- 5.9 For the purpose of converting any royalty payments that are due to Vernalis [\*\*\*] on the date when the relevant payment first becomes due.
- 5.10 Without prejudice to its other rights and remedies, Vernalis may charge, and Rhinopharma shall pay, interest, accruing daily from the due date to the date of actual payment on any amounts under this agreement at the rate of [\*\*\*] per cent. per [\*\*\*] above the base rate of [\*\*\*] for the time being in force.
- 5.11 Rhinopharma and Rhinopharma's Affiliates shall keep records and books of account showing the quality, description and price of Licensed Products sold or put into use and those records and books shall be kept separate from any records and books not relating solely to the Licensed Products and be open at all reasonable times and on reasonable prior written notice to inspection and audit by Vernalis, or its duly authorised agent or representative, who shall be entitled to take copies of, or extracts from, the records and books and in the event that an inspection or audit should reveal a discrepancy in the royalties paid from those payable under this agreement, Rhinopharma shall make up the shortfall plus interest calculated in accordance with clause 5.11 within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*) days after receipt of invoice for that amount from Vernalis. Where an audit reveals an overpayment in royalties payable under this agreement, Rhinopharma shall deduct the amount of that overpayment from the next payment of royalties due under this agreement.
- 6. RHINOPHARMA'S UNDERTAKINGS**
- 6.1 Rhinopharma undertakes to Vernalis that throughout the term of this agreement, Rhinopharma shall and shall procure that Rhinopharma's Affiliates shall:

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

- (a) use Commercially Reasonable and Diligent Efforts to progress the Development of Licensed Products with the objective of Commercialising Licensed Products as soon as is reasonably practical;
  - (b) obtain as soon as reasonably practicable all Regulatory Approvals for Licensed Products that are necessary, or may become necessary, to Develop, Manufacture or Commercialise (or any of those activities) Licensed Products within the Territory; and
  - (c) mark all Licensed Products with the relevant patent numbers together with a statement that the Licensed Products are manufactured and/or sold under licence.
- 6.2 Within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days of the date of this agreement, Rhinopharma shall provide Vernalis with a written development plan describing Rhinopharma's proposed worldwide Development efforts [\*\*\*]. Rhinopharma shall update such development plan on an annual basis, with each such update being due from Rhinopharma to Vernalis within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days of the relevant anniversary of this agreement. At the same time as providing Vernalis with each update of the development plan, Rhinopharma shall provide Vernalis with a written progress report summarising Rhinopharma's progress as against the previous year's development plan. The parties acknowledge that all plans and reports prepared in accordance with this clause 6.2 are provided to Vernalis for information purposes only.
- 6.3 Rhinopharma acknowledges that it has received copies of the agreements listed in Schedule 4 ("Schedule 4 Agreements") evidencing the transfer and assignment of rights to certain know how which is incorporated as part of the Programme IP and Rhinopharma undertakes:
- (a) to ensure that the exercise of its rights under this Agreement will not result in the breach by Vernalis of its obligations under the Schedule 4 agreements; and
  - (b) to make any additional payments to enable Vernalis to meet its payment obligations under the Schedule 4 agreements if and to the extent that Rhinopharma payment obligations under this Agreement are insufficient for Vernalis to meet its payment obligations under the Schedule 4 Agreements.

## 7. REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES

- 7.1 Vernalis represents and warrants to Rhinopharma that as of the date of this Agreement
- (a) all steps necessary for the prosecution and maintenance of the Programme Patents have been taken;
  - (b) Vernalis has maintained and shall maintain the confidentiality of the Programme Know-How;
  - (c) Vernalis is the sole legal and beneficial owner of the Programme Patents, free and clear of all liens, claims, charges and encumbrances of whatsoever nature and kind;
  - (d) Vernalis is a company duly incorporated, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of England and has the power and capacity to own and carry out its business as it presently exists;

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

- 
- 7.2 Rhinopharma represents and warrants to Vernalis that as of the date of this Agreement Rhinopharma is a company duly incorporated, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of British Columbia and has the power and capacity to run and carry out its business as it presently exists.
- 7.3 Vernalis and Rhinopharma both represent and warrant to the other party that as of the date of this Agreement:
- (a) the execution and delivery of this agreement and the completion of the transactions contemplated hereby has been duly authorised by all necessary corporate action and so far as it is aware (not having made enquiry) this agreement constitutes a legal, valid and binding obligation of such party enforceable against it in accordance with its terms subject to all limitations of bankruptcy, liquidation, general principles of equity (including moratorium and enforcement of creditors' rights generally) and public policy constraints;
  - (b) neither the execution and delivery of this agreement nor the completion of the transactions contemplated herein will:
    - (i) violate any of the terms and provisions of the corporate charter or bylaws of such party or any judgment, order, decree, statute, bylaw, regulation, covenant, restriction, license, lease, permit, approval, consent or authorisation applicable to such party;
    - (ii) constitute or result in a breach or default under any instrument, agreement or other commitment of such party; and
  - (c) there is no requirement under any instrument, agreement or other commitment of such party to give any notice to or obtain the consent or approval of any other party to the same relating to the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this agreement.
- 7.4 Save as expressly provided in this agreement, no representation, warranty or condition, express or implied, statutory or otherwise is given by Vernalis to Rhinopharma in respect of the Programme Patents or Programme Know-How and any and all representations, warranties and conditions are excluded save to the extent prohibited by law. For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this agreement shall constitute any representation, warranty or condition that any Programme Patent (if a patent application) shall proceed to grant or if granted shall be valid, or that Rhinopharma's use of any Programme IP in accordance with this agreement will not infringe any rights of any Third Party.

**8. THIRD PARTY INFRINGEMENT OF PROGRAMME IP**

- 8.1 Vernalis shall deliver a notice, in writing, to Rhinopharma during the term of this agreement if Vernalis becomes aware of any infringement, or suspected infringement, of any of the Programme IP by any Third Party (Infringement).
- 8.2 Within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after delivery of the notice under clause 8.1, Rhinopharma shall decide whether to take steps to protect or enforce its rights in the Programme IP and Rhinopharma shall notify Vernalis of Rhinopharma's decision in writing.

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

8.3 If Rhinopharma notifies Vernalis of Rhinopharma's decision to take steps to protect or enforce its rights in the Programme IP, Rhinopharma shall have the sole right to institute infringement proceedings against the Third Party provided Rhinopharma commences infringement proceeding within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after the notice delivery under clause 8.1.

8.4 If Rhinopharma commences infringement proceedings within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after delivery of the notice under clause 8.1, Rhinopharma shall give Vernalis an opportunity to make suggestions and comments regarding any proceedings. Rhinopharma shall keep Vernalis informed of, and shall from time to time consult with Vernalis regarding, the status of any proceedings and shall provide Vernalis with copies of all documents filed in, and all material written communications relating to, any proceedings. Rhinopharma shall appoint counsel for the infringement proceedings. Rhinopharma shall pay all expenses of the infringement proceedings, including, without limitation, legal fees and related costs. Rhinopharma shall be entitled to retain for its own account any damages, settlement fees or other amounts for past infringement received as a result of the infringement proceedings. If necessary, Vernalis shall join as a party to the infringement proceedings but shall be under no obligation to participate except to the extent that Vernalis's participation is required as a result of being a named party to the proceedings. Rhinopharma shall not settle any infringement proceedings involving Vernalis's rights without obtaining Vernalis's prior written consent which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

8.5 If Rhinopharma fails:

- (a) to notify Vernalis within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after the delivery of the notice under clause 8.1 then Rhinopharma shall be deemed for the purpose of this agreement to have taken a decision not to take steps to protect or enforce its rights in the Programme IP; or
- (b) to institute infringement proceedings against the Third Party within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after the delivery of the notice under clause 8.1 and having given Vernalis notice of Rhinopharma's intention to commence infringement proceeding under clause 8.3,

then Vernalis shall have the right, at Vernalis's expense, to commence infringement proceedings. Vernalis shall have the sole right to appoint counsel (reasonably acceptable to Rhinopharma) and Rhinopharma shall reimburse Vernalis in respect of all expenses reasonably incurred by Vernalis in conducting the proceedings including, without limitation, legal fees and related costs. If necessary, Rhinopharma shall join as a party to the infringement proceedings and shall participate only to the extent that participation is required as a result of Rhinopharma being a named party to the infringement proceedings or being the owner of the relevant Programme Patent. At Vernalis's request, Rhinopharma shall offer reasonable assistance to Vernalis in connection with the infringement proceedings. Rhinopharma shall have the right to be represented in any infringement proceedings by Rhinopharma's own counsel.

8.6 For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this clause shall relieve Rhinopharma of its ongoing payment obligations under clause 5 of this agreement.

## **9. MAINTENANCE OF PATENTS**

9.1 Subject to clause 9.2, Rhinopharma shall pay all fees and charges and do all acts and things necessary for the management and maintenance of all Programme Patents, including without limitation doing all acts and things necessary (i) to avoid minimising or reducing the scope of the Programme Patents, or (ii) to prosecute any of the Programme Patents that are applications.

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

9.2 Rhinopharma shall not abandon any of the Programme Patents or allow any of the Programme Patents to lapse save with the prior written consent of Vernalis which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. Rhinopharma must provide at least [\*\*\*] days written notice of any intention to abandon obligations in clause 9.1. Where Rhinopharma does notify Vernalis of its intention to abandon any of the Programme Patents or allow any of the Programme Patents to lapse, Vernalis shall be entitled by written notice to Rhinopharma to either:

- (a) by written notice to Rhinopharma, assume the maintenance and management of such Programme Patents; or
- (b) terminate this agreement in its entirety by providing [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days written notice to Rhinopharma.

If Vernalis provides notice of termination to Rhinopharma under sub-para(b) of this clause 9.2, Rhinopharma may by written notice to Vernalis prior to the expiry of the notice period in sub-para(b) revoke its intention to abandon obligations in clause 9.1 and, in such event, Vernalis notice of termination shall cease to be effective.

## 10. TERM AND TERMINATION

10.1 This agreement shall come into effect on the execution of this agreement and, subject to clauses 10.2 and 10.4, shall continue in force until terminated by either party in accordance with clauses 10.2, 10.3 or 10.4.

10.2 Rhinopharma may, at any time, terminate this agreement in its entirety by providing ninety (90) days written notice to Vernalis.

10.3 Vernalis may terminate this agreement in accordance with clause 9.2(b).

10.4 Each party shall have the right, without prejudice to its other rights or remedies, to terminate this agreement immediately by written notice to the other:

- (a) if the other party is in material or persistent breach of any of its obligations under this agreement and, in the case of any material breach, either that breach is incapable of remedy or the other party shall have failed to remedy that breach within thirty (30) days after receiving written notice requiring it to remedy that breach;
- (b) if the other party being a company is unable to pay its debts or becomes insolvent or an order or an application is made or a resolution passed for the administration, winding-up or dissolution of the other party (otherwise than for the purposes of a solvent amalgamation or reconstruction) or an administrative or other receiver, manager, liquidator, administrator, trustee or similar officer is appointed over all or any of the assets of the other party or an application or a filing for a moratorium is made in respect of the other party under Schedule A1 Insolvency Act 1986 or the other party enters into or proposes any composition or arrangement with its creditors generally or anything analogous to the foregoing occurs in any applicable jurisdiction; or
- (c) if the other party being an individual is unable to pay his or her debts as they fall due or becomes insolvent or an order or an application is made for his or her bankruptcy or an application for an interim order is made in respect of the other party or the other party

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

enters into or proposes any composition or arrangement with his or her creditors or if the other party dies or anything analogous to the foregoing occurs in any applicable jurisdiction.

- 10.5 If any of Rhinopharma's Affiliates ceases to be an Affiliate of Rhinopharma then that Affiliate's rights under this agreement shall automatically terminate.
- 10.6 Any termination of this agreement shall not affect any accrued rights or liabilities of either party, nor shall it affect the coming into force or the continuance in force of any provision of this agreement which is expressly or by implication intended to come into force or continue in force on or after termination.

## **11. EFFECT OF TERMINATION**

- 11.1 Upon termination of this agreement and subject to clause 11.2, Rhinopharma shall, and shall procure that Rhinopharma's Affiliates shall:
- (a) pay all outstanding amounts that are due to Vernalis;
  - (b) cease any activity utilising any of the Programme IP;
  - (c) assign free of charge to Vernalis such rights, title and interest as it holds in the Programme Patents [\*\*\*] (such assignment to be on terms the same as those set out in clause 2 of this agreement);
  - (d) do all acts and things necessary to enable Vernalis to resume the management and maintenance of the Programme Patents;
  - (e) transfer all Regulatory Approvals and related regulatory filings and any other Development or Manufacturing documentation to Vernalis;
  - (f) return, or at Vernalis's option destroy, any Programme Know-How that is in a tangible or electronic form; and
  - (g) co-operate with Vernalis in cancelling any registered user agreements that Vernalis and Rhinopharma and Rhinopharma's Affiliates may have executed.
- 11.2 Rhinopharma and Rhinopharma's Affiliates and Sub-licensees shall have the right to dispose of any stocks of Licensed Products for a period of one hundred and eighty (180) days from the date of termination that may be in its possession or in the process of being manufactured provided that Rhinopharma pays to Vernalis a royalty in respect of those Licensed Products in accordance with clause 5.

## **12. CONFIDENTIALITY AND ANNOUNCEMENTS**

- 12.1 The Recipient undertakes to the Disclosing Party to treat as confidential all Confidential Information of the Disclosing Party.
- 12.2 The Recipient may only use the Confidential Information of the Disclosing Party for the purposes of, and in accordance with, this agreement. The Recipient may, with Disclosing Party's prior written consent (not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed), provide its Permitted Users with

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

access to the Confidential Information on a strict “need-to-know” basis only. The Recipient shall ensure that each of its Permitted Users is bound to hold all Confidential Information in confidence to the standard required under this agreement. Where a Permitted User is not an employee, officer or director of the Recipient (and is not under a professional duty to protect confidentiality) the Recipient shall ensure that the Permitted User shall enter into a written confidentiality undertaking with the Recipient on substantially equivalent terms to this agreement, a copy of which shall be provided to the Disclosing Party upon request.

12.3 This clause 12 shall not apply to any information which:

- (a) is in or subsequently enters the public domain other than as a result of a breach of this clause 12;
- (b) has been or is subsequently received from a Third Party which is under no confidentiality obligation in respect of that information; or
- (c) has been or is subsequently independently developed by the Recipient or, one of Recipient’s Affiliates without use of the Disclosing Party’s Confidential Information.

12.4 Each Permitted User may disclose Confidential Information where that Permitted User (or where the Permitted User is an individual, his or her employer or any Affiliate of his or her employer) is required to do so by law or by any competent regulatory authority. In these circumstances the Recipient shall give the Disclosing Party prompt written notice of the disclosure (where lawful and practical to do so) so that the Disclosing Party has sufficient opportunity (where possible) to prevent or control the manner of disclosure by appropriate legal means.

12.5 Neither party shall:

- (a) make or authorise any public or private announcement or communication concerning this agreement its terms or the fact that the parties have entered into this agreement;
- (b) refer to or use any business name or trade mark of the other party in any promotional communications,

without the prior written consent of the other party, which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed. Without otherwise limiting the generality of clause 12.5(a), Vernalis agrees that its prior written consent will not be required for Rhinopharma to disclose that it has entered into an agreement with Vernalis relating to phosphodiesterase inhibitors at broker-arranged meetings between Rhinopharma and potential investors, where Rhinopharma does not know in advance of the meeting the identity of the potential investors and provided that Rhinopharma gives written notice to Vernalis, within seven days of such meetings, of the identity of the potential investors to whom such disclosure has been made. For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this clause 12.5 shall permit Rhinopharma to disclose, nor shall Vernalis be obliged to provide its consent to disclosure of, the terms of this agreement or Confidential Information to potential investors.

12.6 This clause 12 shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding any termination of this agreement.

\*\*\* Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**13. FORCE MAJEURE**

13.1 Neither party will be liable to the other party for any delay or non-performance of its obligations under this agreement arising directly from any of the following cause or causes to the extent they were beyond its reasonable and unable to be reasonably planned for or avoided including, without limitation, any of the following: act of God, governmental act, war, fire, flood, explosion, or civil commotion. provided that the affected party:

- (a) promptly notifies the other party in writing of the cause of the delay or non-performance and the likely duration of the delay or non-performance; and
- (b) uses all reasonable endeavours to limit the effect of that delay or non-performance on the other party.

13.2 In any such case the performance of the affected party's obligations, to the extent affected by the cause, will be suspended during the period that the cause persists. If performance is not resumed within 6 months after the notice provided under clause 13.1 the other party may terminate this agreement immediately by written notice to the affected party.

**14. NOTICES**

14.1 Any notice or other document to be served under this agreement may be delivered or sent by post or facsimile process to the party to be served at its address set out below:

(a) to Vernalis at:	(b) to Rhinopharma at:
Oakdene Court, 613 Reading Road Winnersh, Berks, RG41 5UA, UK	***
Fax: +44 118 989 9367	Fax: (604) 222 3602
Marked for attention of Company Secretary	Marked for attention of Chairman and to be copied to: ***

or at any other address or facsimile number or to any other addressee as it may have notified to the other party in accordance with this clause 14. Any notice or other document sent by post shall be sent by prepaid first class recorded delivery post (if both parties' addresses for service are within the United Kingdom) or by prepaid airmail (if elsewhere).

14.2 In proving service of a notice or document it shall be sufficient to prove that delivery by post was made and recorded or that the facsimile message was properly addressed and despatched, as the case may be.

**15. ASSIGNMENT**

Neither this agreement nor any of the rights or obligations hereunder may be assigned transferred or otherwise disposed of by either party without the prior written consent of the other party, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed, except to a party that acquires, by merger, sale of assets or otherwise, all or substantially all of the business of the assigning party to which the subject matter of this agreement relates. Any purported assignment or transfer in violation of

\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

the preceding sentence shall be void. Any permitted assignee or transferee shall assume all obligations of its assignor under this agreement. No assignment or transfer shall relieve either party of responsibility for the performance of any accrued obligation that such party then has hereunder.

## **16. GENERAL**

### **16.1 No partnership or agency**

Nothing in this agreement shall be deemed to constitute a partnership between the parties, nor constitute either party the agent of the other party or, in the case of Rhinopharma, any of its Affiliates, for any purpose.

### **16.2 Counterparts and Delivery**

This agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts and delivered by fax. This has the same effect as if the signatures on the counterparts were on a single copy of this agreement.

### **16.3 Waiver**

The rights of each party including, in the case of Rhinopharma, of any of its Affiliates, under this agreement:

- (a) may be exercised as often as necessary;
- (b) are cumulative and not exclusive of rights or remedies provided by law; and
- (c) may be waived only in writing and specifically.

Delay in exercising or non-exercise of any such right is not a waiver of that right.

### **16.4 Amendments**

Any amendment of this agreement shall not be binding on the parties unless set out in writing, expressed to amend this agreement and signed by authorised representatives of each of the parties.

### **16.5 Severability**

If any term of this agreement is or becomes illegal, invalid or unenforceable in any jurisdiction, that shall not affect:

- (a) the legality, validity or enforceability in that jurisdiction of any other term of this agreement; or
- (b) the legality, validity or enforceability in other jurisdictions of that or any other provision of this agreement.

### **16.6 Further assurance**

Each party undertakes, at the request, cost and expense of the other party, to sign all documents and to do all other acts, which may be necessary to give full effect to this agreement, including in

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

the case of any assignment of the Programme Patents (whether pursuant to clause 2 or clause 9.2), to enable the relevant assignee to fulfil all relevant national registry requirements for the recordal of the assignment of the Programme Patents.

#### **16.7 Costs**

Each party shall pay the costs and expenses incurred by it in connection with the entering into of this agreement.

#### **16.8 Language**

- (a) Any notice given in connection with this agreement must be in English.
- (b) Any other document provided in connection with this agreement must be:
  - (i) in English; and
  - (ii) (unless otherwise agreed) accompanied by a certified English translation. In this case, the English translation prevails unless the document is a statutory or other official document.

#### **16.9 Third Party Rights**

A person who is not a party to this agreement may not enforce any of its terms under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

#### **16.10 Whole agreement**

- (a) This agreement and the documents referred to in it contain the whole agreement between the parties relating to the transactions contemplated by this agreement and supersede all previous agreements (including but not limited to the Confidential Disclosure Agreement dated 25th November 2004) between the parties relating to the transactions.
- (b) Subject to clause 16.10(c), each party acknowledges that in entering into this agreement it has not relied on any representation, warranty, collateral contract or other assurance (except those set out in this agreement and the documents referred to in it) made by or on behalf of any other party before the date of this agreement. Each party waives all rights and remedies which, but for this clause 16.10, might otherwise be available to it in respect of any such representation, warranty, collateral contract or other assurance.
- (c) Nothing in clause 16.10(b) limits or excludes any liability for fraud.

### **17. DISPUTES**

- 17.1 Any dispute arising out of or in connection with this agreement (**Dispute**), shall be referred by either party first to the Chief Executive Officer of each of the parties for resolution. If the Dispute cannot be resolved by the Chief Executive Officer of the parties within fourteen (14) days after the Dispute has arisen, either party may give notice to the other party in writing (**Notice**) that a Dispute has arisen. Within seven days after the date of the Notice, the Dispute shall be referred to a senior executive of each of Rhinopharma and Vernalis for resolution. If the Dispute is not resolved by agreement in writing between the parties within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after the date of

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

the Notice, the Dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the remaining provisions of this clause 17.

- 17.2 A Dispute may at either party's request be referred to non-binding mediation (save for any Dispute relating to intellectual property). Any reference to mediation shall be made in accordance with the procedures of the Centre for Alternative Dispute Resolution in London. The mediation shall be conducted by a single mediator appointed by the parties or, if the parties are unable to agree on the identity of the mediator within [\*\*\*] ([\*\*\*)] days after the date of the request that the Dispute be resolved by mediation, or if the person appointed is unable or unwilling to act, the mediator shall be appointed by the Centre for Alternative Dispute Resolution on the application of either party. The mediation shall be conducted in London in English. Mediation is without prejudice to the rights of the parties in any future proceedings.

**18. JURISDICTION**

- 18.1 The parties agree that the courts of England shall have exclusive jurisdiction with respect to any disputes arising under this agreement and the parties accordingly submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.

**19. GOVERNING LAW**

This agreement is governed by and interpreted in accordance with English law, provided that any disputes regarding the recordal or validity of a Programme Patent shall be subject to the jurisdiction of registration of the relevant Programme Patent.

**THIS AGREEMENT** has been signed on behalf of the parties by their duly authorised representatives on the date which appears first on page 1.

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**SCHEDULE 1**  
**PROGRAMME PATENTS**

Vernalis Ref. No: [\*\*\*]  
Title: [\*\*\*]  
Subject Matter: [\*\*\*]  
Inventors: [\*\*\*]  
[\*\*\*]  
Priority Application Date: [\*\*\*]  
Earliest Publication Date/No: [\*\*\*]  
Applicant: [\*\*\*]  
Patentee: [\*\*\*]

<b>Territory</b>	<b>Application Date</b>	<b>Application No.</b>	<b>Patent No.</b>	<b>Expiry Date</b>
[***]				

\* Includes [\*\*\*].

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**SCHEDULE 2**  
**KNOW HOW**

[\*\*\*]

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

[\*\*]

[\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

\*\*\*

\*\*\* Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

\*\*\*

\*\*\* Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

[\*\*]

[\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

\*\*\*

\*\*\* Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

\*\*\*

\*\*\* Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

[\*\*\*]

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

26

---

### SCHEDULE 3

#### NET SALES VALUE DEFINITION

**Net Sales Value** means with respect to any Licensed Product, all revenues (recognised in accordance with [\*\*\*] generally accepted accounting principles) from sales of a Licensed Product by Rhinopharma, its Affiliates, agents and Sub-licensees, to Third Parties, less the total of the following:

- (a) normal or customary trade, cash, prompt payment and/or quantity discounts actually allowed and taken;
- (b) returns, allowances, free goods, rebates, chargebacks, other allowances or payments to government agencies actually allowed and taken;
- (c) retroactive price reductions applicable to sales of such product actually allowed and taken;
- (d) fees paid to distributors, selling agents (excluding any sales representatives of a party or any of its Affiliates), group purchasing organisations and managed care entities;
- (e) credits or allowances (actively paid or allowed) for wastage replacement, whether cash or trade;
- (f) non-recoverable sales taxes, excise taxes, tariffs and duties (excluding taxes when assessed on income derived from sales); and
- (g) three and one half per cent (3.5%) of the amount invoiced to cover, freight or other transportation charges, insurance charges, additional special packaging, and other governmental charges directly related to the selling of Licensed Products.
- (h) actual bad debt incurred.

In the case of any sale of a Licensed Product between or among Rhinopharma and its Affiliates, agents or Sub-licensees for resale, Net Sales Value shall be calculated as above only on the first arm's length sale by Rhinopharma or its Affiliate, agent or Sub-licensee to a Third Party.

Upon any sale or other disposal of any Licensed Product for any consideration other than an exclusively monetary consideration on bona fide arm's length terms then for the purposes of calculating the Net Sales Value under this agreement, such Licensed Product shall be deemed to be sold exclusively for money at the average sales price during the applicable reporting period generally achieved for such Licensed Product in the country in which such sale or other disposal occurred when such Licensed Product is sold alone and not with other products.

Where a Licensed Product is sold together with other pharmaceutical products for a single price (whether sold together in the same package, or merely price bundled), then for the purposes of calculating the Net Sales Value under this agreement such Licensed Product shall be deemed sold for an amount equal to the following:

(X divided by Y) multiplied by Z

where X is the average sales price during the applicable reporting period generally achieved for such Licensed Product in the country in which such sale or other disposal occurred when such Licensed Product is sold alone and not with other pharmaceutical products; Y is the sum of the average sales price

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

27

---

during the applicable reporting period generally achieved in that country when sold alone by each product (including the Licensed Product) included in the bundle of pharmaceutical products that is sold for the single price; and Z equals the single price at which the bundle of pharmaceutical products represented in Y was actually sold. In the event that one or more of the products in the bundled product are not sold separately, the parties shall confer in good faith to determine a fair market price that shall equitably compensate the Net Sales Value for the value of the Licensed Product(s) within the bundled product.

\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**SCHEDULE 4**

**KNOW HOW AGREEMENTS**

Copies of the following agreements (evidencing know how transferred and assigned to Vernalis and incorporated as part of Programme IP) provided to Rhinopharma prior to the date of this Agreement.

[\*\*\*]

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.

**SIGNATORIES**

Signed by: /s/ Simon Sturge

Title: CEO

Date: 11-Feb-05

For **VERNALIS DEVELOPMENT LIMITED**

/s/Michael J.A. Walker

Signed by: Michael J. A. Walker

Title: Chairman

Date: February 16, 2005

For **RHINOPHARMA LTD.**

[\*\*\*] Certain information in this document has been omitted and filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission. Confidential treatment has been requested with respect to the omitted portions.



Renewal Agreement:

Agreement Date: September 30, 2015

Reference No: R69220

**Business Center Details****Client Details**

London London Bridge

Company Name VERONA PHARMA PLC

Sales Manager Max Chapman

**Office Payment Details (exc. tax and exc. services)**

Office Number	Number of people	Price per Office
145A	6	£ 9,649.00
151	1	£ 2,057.00

**Service Provision:**                      **Start Date**                      January 1, 2016                      **End Date**                      December 31, 2016

All agreements end on the last calendar day of the month.

**Terms and Conditions**

We are Regus Management (UK) Limited [the Provider], please click the link below for terms and conditions.



Download the house rules

1



Renewal Agreement:

Agreement Date : 1 October 2016

Confirmation No : R-236994

**Business Centre Details****Client Details**

LONDON, London Bridge - More London

Company Name VERONA PHARMA PLC

Sales Manager Max Chapman

**Office Payment Details (exc.VAT and exc. services)**

Office Number	Number of people	Price per Office
145A	6	£ 11,000.00
151	1	£ 2,389.00

**Service Provision :**                      **Start Date**                      1 January 2017                      **End Date**                      31 December 2017

All agreements end on the last calendar day of the month.

**Terms and Conditions**

We are Regus Management (UK) Limited [Regus], please click the link below for terms and conditions.



Download the terms and conditions



Download the house rules



This website is secure. Your personal details are protected at all times.



Print Agreement



## 1. This Agreement

1.1 Nature of this agreement: This agreement is the commercial equivalent of an agreement for accommodation(s) in a hotel. The whole of the Centre remains in the Provider's possession and control. THE CLIENT ACCEPTS THAT THIS AGREEMENT CREATES NO TENANCY INTEREST, LEASEHOLD ESTATE OR OTHER REAL PROPERTY INTEREST IN THE CLIENT'S FAVOUR WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCOMMODATION(S). The Provider is giving the Client the right to share with the Provider the use of the Centre on these terms and conditions, as supplemented by the House Rules, so that the Provider can provide the services to the Client. This Agreement is personal to the Client and cannot be transferred to anyone else without prior consent from the Provider unless such transfer is required by law. The Provider will not unreasonably withhold its consent to assignment to a parent, subsidiary or affiliate of Client provided that Client and assignee execute the Provider's form of Assignment of License Agreement which will require assignee to assume all Client obligations and will not release the Client. This agreement is composed of the front page describing the accommodation(s), the present terms and conditions, the House Rules and the Service Price Guide (where available).

1.2 Comply with House Rules: The Client must comply with any House Rules which the Provider imposes generally on users of the Centre. The House Rules vary from country to country and from Centre to Centre and these can be requested locally.

1.3 **AUTOMATIC RENEWAL: THIS AGREEMENT LASTS FOR THE PERIOD STATED IN IT AND THEN WILL BE EXTENDED AUTOMATICALLY FOR SUCCESSIVE PERIODS EQUAL TO THE CURRENT TERM BUT NO LESS THAN 3 MONTHS (UNLESS LEGAL RENEWAL TERM LIMITS APPLY) UNTIL TERMINATED BY THE CLIENT OR BY THE PROVIDER PURSUANT TO SECTION 1.4. ALL PERIODS SHALL RUN TO THE LAST DAY OF THE MONTH IN WHICH THEY WOULD OTHERWISE EXPIRE. THE FEES ON ANY RENEWAL WILL BE AT THE THEN PREVAILING MARKET RATE. THIS CLAUSE DOES NOT APPLY TO MONTH TO MONTH AGREEMENTS.**

1.4 **CANCELLATION: EITHER THE PROVIDER OR THE CLIENT CAN TERMINATE THIS AGREEMENT AT THE END DATE STATED IN IT, OR AT THE END OF ANY EXTENSION OR RENEWAL PERIOD, BY GIVING AT LEAST THREE MONTHS WRITTEN NOTICE TO THE OTHER. HOWEVER, IF THIS AGREEMENT, EXTENSION OR RENEWAL IS FOR THREE MONTHS OR LESS AND EITHER THE PROVIDER OR THE CLIENT WISHES TO TERMINATE IT, THE NOTICE PERIOD IS TWO MONTHS OR (IF TWO MONTHS OR SHORTER) ONE WEEK LESS THAN THE PERIOD STATED IN THIS AGREEMENT. IF THE CLIENT IS ON A MONTH TO MONTH AGREEMENT EITHER PARTY MAY TERMINATE THIS AGREEMENT BY GIVING NO LESS THAN ONE MONTHS' NOTICE TO THE OTHER (EFFECTIVE FROM THE START OF ANY CALENDAR MONTH).**

1.5 Ending this agreement immediately: To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, the Provider may put an end to this agreement immediately by giving the Client notice and without need to follow any additional procedure if (a) the Client becomes insolvent, bankrupt, goes into liquidation or becomes unable to pay its debts as they fall due, or (b) the Client is in breach of one of its obligations which cannot be put right or which the Provider have given the Client notice to put right and which the Client has failed to put right within fourteen (14) days of that notice, or (c) its conduct, or that of someone at the Centre with its permission or invitation, is incompatible with ordinary office use and (i) such conduct is repeated despite the Client having been given a warning or (ii) such conduct is material enough (in the Provider's opinion) to warrant immediate termination.

If the Provider puts an end to this agreement for any of these reasons it does not put an end to any outstanding obligations, including additional services used, requested or required under the agreement and the monthly office fee for the remainder of the period for which this agreement would have lasted if the Provider had not ended it.

1.6 If the Centre is no longer available: In the event that the Provider is permanently unable to provide the services and accommodation(s) at the Centre stated in this agreement then this agreement will end and the Client will only have to pay monthly office fees up to the date it ends and for the additional services the Client has used. The Provider will try to find suitable alternative accommodation(s) for the Client at another Provider Centre.

1.7 When this agreement ends the Client is to vacate the accommodation(s) immediately, leaving the accommodation(s) in the same condition as it was when the Client took it. Upon the Client's departure or if the Client, at its option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre, the Provider will charge an Office Restoration Service fee to cover normal cleaning and testing and to return the accommodation(s) to its original state. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear. If the Client leaves any property in the Centre the Provider may dispose of it at the Client's cost in any way the Provider chooses without owing the Client any responsibility for it or any proceeds of sale. If the Client continues to use the accommodation(s) when this agreement has ended the Client is responsible for any loss, claim or liability the Provider incurs as a result of the Client's failure to vacate on time. The Provider may, at its discretion, permit the Client an extension subject to a surcharge on the monthly office fee.

1.8 Employees: While this agreement is in force and for a period of six months after it ends, neither the Provider nor the Client may knowingly solicit or offer employment to any of the other's staff employed in the Centre. This obligation applies to any employee employed at the Centre up to that employee's termination of employment, and for three months thereafter. It is stipulated that the breaching party shall pay the non-breaching party the equivalent of six months' salary for any employee concerned. Nothing in this clause shall prevent either party from employing an individual who responds in good faith and independently to an advertisement which is made to the public at large.

1.9 Notices: All formal notices must be in writing, which may include by email, to the address first written above.

1.10 Confidentiality: The terms of this agreement are confidential. Neither the Provider nor the Client must disclose them without the other's consent unless required to do so by law or an official authority. This obligation continues for a period of 3 years after this agreement ends.

1.11 Applicable law: This agreement is interpreted and enforced in accordance with the law of the place where the relevant Centre is located. All dispute resolution proceedings will be conducted in the country, state or province where the Centre is located. If any provision of these terms and conditions is held void or unenforceable under the applicable law, the other provisions shall remain in force. In the case of Japan all agreements will be interpreted and enforced by the Tokyo District Court, and in the case of France, any dispute regarding this agreement will be settled by the relevant courts of the Paris jurisdiction.

## 2. Services and Obligations

2.1 Office accommodation(s): The Provider is to provide the number of serviced office accommodation(s) for which the Client has agreed to pay in the Centre stated in this agreement. This agreement lists the accommodation(s) the Provider has initially allocated for the Client's use. The Client will have a non-exclusive right to the rooms allocated to it. Occasionally the Provider may need to allocate different accommodation(s), but these accommodation(s) will

be of reasonably equivalent size and the Provider will notify the Client with respect to such different accommodation(s) in advance.

2.2 Office Services: The Provider is to provide during normal opening hours the services, if requested, described in the relevant service description (which is available on request). If the Provider decides that a request for any particular service is excessive, it reserves the right to charge an additional fee.

2.3 THE PROVIDER'S IT: WHILST THE PROVIDER HAS INTERNET SECURITY PROTOCOLS, THE PROVIDER DOES NOT MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS AS TO THE SECURITY OF THE PROVIDER'S NETWORK (OR THE INTERNET) OR OF ANY INFORMATION THAT THE CLIENT PLACES ON IT. The Client should adopt whatever security measures (such as encryption) it believes are appropriate to its circumstances. The Provider cannot guarantee that a particular degree of availability will be attained in connection with the Client's use of the Provider's network (or the internet). The Client's sole and exclusive remedy shall be the remedy of such failure by the Provider within a reasonable time after written notice.

### **3. Providing the Services**

3.1 Access to the accommodation(s): The Provider may need to enter the Client's accommodation(s) and may do so at any time. However, unless there is an emergency or the Client has given notice to terminate, the Provider will attempt to notify the Client verbally or electronically in advance when the Provider needs access to carry out testing, repair or works other than routine inspection, cleaning and maintenance. The Provider will also endeavour to respect reasonable security procedures to protect the confidentiality of the Client's business.

3.2 Availability at the start of this agreement: If for any reason the Provider cannot provide the accommodation(s) stated in this agreement by the date when this agreement is due to start it has no liability to the Client for any loss or damages but the Client may cancel this agreement without penalty. The Provider will not charge the Client the monthly office fee for accommodation(s) the Client cannot use until it becomes available. The Provider may delay the start date of this agreement provided it provides to the Client alternative accommodation(s) that shall be at least of equivalent size to the accommodation(s) stated in this agreement.

---

#### **4. Accommodation(s)**

4.1 The Client must not alter any part of its accommodation and must take good care of all parts of the centre, its equipment, fixtures, fittings and furnishings which the Client uses. The Client is liable for any damage caused by it or those in the Centre with the Client's permission or at the Client's invitation whether express or implied, including but not limited to all employees, contractors, agents or other persons present on the premises.

4.2 Office equipment: The Client must not install any cabling, IT or telecom connections without the Provider's consent, which the Provider may refuse at its absolute discretion.

As a condition to the Provider's consent, the Client must permit the Provider to oversee any installations (for example IT or electrical systems) and to verify that such installations do not interfere with the use of the accommodation(s) by other Clients or the Provider or any landlord of the building.

4.3 Insurance: It is the Client's responsibility to arrange insurance for its own property which it brings in to the Centre and for its own liability to its employees and to third parties. The Provider strongly recommends that the Client put such insurance in place.

#### **5. Use**

5.1 The Client must only use the accommodation(s) for office purposes. Office use of a "retail" or "medical" nature, involving frequent visits by members of the public, is not permitted.

5.2 The Client must not carry on a business that competes with the Provider's business of providing serviced office accommodation(s) or its ancillary services.

5.3 The Client's name and address: The Client may only carry on that business in its name or some other name that the Provider previously agrees.

5.4 Use of the Centre Address: The Client may use the Centre address as its business address. Any other uses are prohibited without the Provider's prior written consent.

#### **6. Compliance**

6.1 Comply with the law: The Client and the Provider must comply with all relevant laws and regulations in the conduct of its business in relation to this agreement. The Client must do nothing illegal in connection with its use of the Business Centre. The Client must not do anything that may interfere with the use of the Centre by the Provider or by others, (including but not limited to political campaigning or immoral activity), cause any nuisance or annoyance, increase the insurance premiums the Provider has to pay, or cause loss or damage to the Provider (including damage to reputation) or to the owner of any interest in the building which contains the Centre the Client is using. Both the Client and the Provider shall comply at all times with all relevant anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws. 6.2 If the Provider has been advised by any government authority or other legislative body that it has reasonable suspicion that the Client is conducting criminal activities from the Centre then the Provider shall be entitled to terminate this agreement with immediate effect.

6.3 The Client acknowledges that (a) the terms of this clause are a material inducement in the Provider's execution of this agreement and (b) any violation by the Client of this clause shall constitute a material default by the Client hereunder, entitling the Provider to terminate this agreement, without further notice or procedure.

6.4 The Client acknowledges and accepts that its personal data may be transferred or made accessible to all entities of the Provider, wherever located, for the purposes of providing the services herein.

#### **7. The Provider's Liability**

7.1. The extent of the Provider's liability: To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, the Provider is not liable to the Client in respect of any loss or damage the Client suffers in connection with this agreement, with the services or with the Client's accommodation(s) unless the Provider has acted deliberately or negligently in causing that loss or damage. The Provider is not liable for any loss as a result of the Provider's failure to provide a service as a result of mechanical breakdown, strike, termination of the Provider's interest in the building containing the Centre or otherwise unless the Provider does so deliberately or is negligent. In no event shall the Provider be liable for any loss or damage until the Client provides the Provider written notice and gives the Provider a reasonable time to put it right. If the Provider is liable for failing to provide the Client with any service under this agreement then subject to the exclusions and limits set out immediately below the Provider will pay any actual and reasonable expenses the Client has incurred in obtaining that service from an alternative source. If the Client believes the Provider has failed to deliver a service consistent with these terms and conditions the Client shall provide the Provider written notice of such failure and give the Provider a reasonable period to put it right.

7.2. **EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL LOSSES, ETC.: THE PROVIDER WILL NOT IN ANY CIRCUMSTANCES HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF ANTICIPATED SAVINGS, LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO DATA, THIRD PARTY CLAIMS OR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL LOSS UNLESS the Provider OTHERWISE AGREES IN WRITING. THE PROVIDER STRONGLY ADVISES THE CLIENT TO INSURE AGAINST ALL SUCH POTENTIAL LOSS, DAMAGE, EXPENSE OR LIABILITY.**

7.3. Financial limits to the Provider's liability: In all cases, the Provider's liability to the Client is subject to the following limits:

- Without limit for personal injury or death;
- Up to a maximum of £1 million / US\$2 million / €1.3 million (or local equivalent) for any one event or series of connected events for damage to the Client's personal property except in Turkey where it will be up to a maximum of the monthly office fee over the current term;
- Up to a maximum equal to 125% of the total fees paid between the date the Client moved into its accommodation(s) and the date on which the claim in question arises or £50,000 / US\$100,000 / €66,000 (or local equivalent) whichever is the higher, in respect of any other loss or damage except in Turkey where it will be up to a maximum of the monthly office fee over the current term.

## **8. Fees**

8.1 Taxes and duty charges: The Client agrees to pay promptly (i) all sales, use, excise, consumption and any other taxes and license fees which it is required to pay to any governmental authority (and, at the Provider's request, will provide to the Provider evidence of such payment) and (ii) any taxes paid by the Provider to any governmental authority that are attributable to the accommodation(s), including, without limitation, any gross receipts, rent and occupancy taxes, tangible personal property taxes, stamp tax or other documentary taxes and fees.

8.2 Service Retainer/Deposit: The Client will be required to pay a service retainer/deposit equivalent to two months' of the monthly office fee (plus VAT/Tax where applicable) upon entering into this agreement unless a different amount is specified on the front of this agreement. This will be held by the Provider without generating interest as security for performance of all the Client's obligations under this agreement. The service retainer/deposit or any balance will be returned to the Client when the Client has settled its account which includes deducting outstanding fees and other costs due to the Provider.

8.3 The Provider may require the Client to pay an increased retainer if outstanding fees exceed the service retainer/deposit held and/or the Client frequently fails to pay the Provider when due.

8.4 Payment: The Provider is continually striving to reduce its environmental impact and supports its clients in doing the same. Therefore the Provider will send all invoices electronically (where allowed by law) and the Client will make payments via an automated method such as Direct Debit or Credit Card, wherever local banking systems permit unless another form of payment is offered to the Client as a qualified and current Key Account.

8.5 Late payment: If the Client does not pay fees when due, a fee will be charged on all overdue balances. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules. If the Client disputes any part of an invoice the Client must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to late fees. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Client access to its accommodation(s)) while there are any outstanding fees and/or interest or the Client is in breach of this agreement.

8.6 Insufficient Funds: The Client will pay a fee for any returned cheque or any other declined payments due to insufficient funds. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules.

8.7 If this agreement is for a term of more than 12 months, the Provider will increase the monthly office fee on each anniversary of the start date. This increase will be by the local Consumer Price Index or such other broadly equivalent index where a consumer price index is not available locally. If there is a negative index rate, prices will not be decreased. Renewals are calculated separately from annual indexation increases. Month to Month agreements will use the above stated index or the current month to month office price, whichever is the greater.

8.8 Standard services: The monthly office fee and any recurring services requested by the Client are payable monthly in advance. Unless otherwise agreed in writing, these recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of this Agreement (including any renewal). Specific due dates will differ by country and are listed in the House Rules. Where a daily rate applies,

---

the charge for any such month will be 30 times the daily fee. For a period of less than a month the fee will be applied on a daily basis.

8.9 Pay-as-you-use and Additional Variable Services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with the Provider's published rates which may change from time to time, are invoiced in arrears and payable the month following the calendar month in which the additional services were provided. Specific due dates will differ by country and are listed in the House Rules.

8.10 Discounts, Promotions and Offers: If the Client benefited from a special discount, promotion or offer, the Provider may discontinue that discount, promotion or offer without notice if the Client materially breaches these terms and conditions.

*Global Terms & Conditions, Iveber, Feb-16*

---

## HOUSE RULES | UNITED KINGDOM

*These are The Providers' House Rules which may change from time to time and which apply between The Provider and the Customer in relation to a Business Centre.*

### Accommodation

1. Upon move in: The Provider will ask the Customer to sign an inventory of all accommodation, furniture and equipment the Customer is permitted to use, together with a note of its condition, and details of the keys or entry cards issued to the Customer.
2. The Customer may not put up any signs on the doors of their accommodation or anywhere else that is visible from outside the rooms the Customer is using without written approval from the local Business Centre team. The Provider reserves the right to charge a fee for any signage and to specify its design to ensure it remains in keeping with the Centre's design.
3. Taking care of the Provider's property: the Customer must take good care of all parts of the Business Centre, its equipment, fittings and furnishings that they use. The Customer must not alter any part of it.
4. Keys and security: Any keys or entry cards which The Provider allows the Customer use remain the Provider's property at all times. The Customer must not make any copies of the keys and/or entry cards or allow anyone else to use them without the Provider's consent. Any loss must be reported to The Provider immediately and the Customer must pay a reasonable fee for replacement keys or cards and of changing locks, if required. This rule improves security levels of the Business Centre. If the Customer is permitted to use the Business Centre outside normal working hours it is the Customer's responsibility to lock the doors to their accommodation and to the Business Centre when they leave. This is to ensure the safety of individuals and property at the Business Centre.

### Use

5. The Customer shall not leave open any corridor doors, exit doors or door connecting corridors during or after business hours. For security purposes and if the Customer does so, it will be at the Customer's own risk. All corridors, halls, elevators and stairways shall not be obstructed by the Customer or used for any purpose other than egress and ingress. The Customer can only use public areas with the consent of the Provider and those areas must be kept neat and attractive at all times.
6. The Customer's name and address: At the Customer's request and cost, the Provider is happy to include the Customer's name in the house directory at the Business Centre, where this facility is available. The Customer must not use the name of the Provider in any way in connection with their business. The Customer may not use the Business Centre as the Customer's registered address for service-of-process.
7. The Customer's employees and guests shall conduct themselves in a businesslike manner; proper business attire shall be worn at all times; the noise level will be kept to a level so as not to interfere with or annoy other Customers and the Customer will abide by the Provider's directives regarding security, keys, parking and other such matters common to all occupants.
8. The Customer shall not, without the Provider prior written consent, store or operate in their office(s) or the Business Centre(s), any computer (excepting a personal computer) or any other large business machine, reproduction equipment, heating equipment, stove, radio, stereo equipment or other mechanical amplification equipment, vending or coin operated machine, refrigerator, boiler or coffee equipment. Additionally, the Customer must not conduct a mechanical business therein, do any cooking therein, or use or allow to be used in the building where the Business Centre is located, oil burning fluids, gasoline, kerosene for heating, warming or lighting. No article deemed hazardous on account of fire or any explosives shall be brought into the Business Centre. No offensive gases, odours or liquids shall be permitted. No firearms shall be permitted. The Business Centre is intended to be used solely for office use. The Provider may in its absolute discretion give prior approval to an alternative use of the Customer's accommodation (such approval to be in writing) and in the event that it does so references to "office" shall be construed accordingly.
9. The electrical current shall be used for ordinary lighting, powering personal computers and small appliances only unless written permission to do otherwise shall first have been obtained from the Provider at an agreed cost to the Customer. If the Customer requires any special installation or wiring for electrical use, telephone equipment or otherwise, such wiring shall be done at the Customer's expense by the personnel designated by the Provider.
10. The Customer may not conduct business in the hallways, reception area or any other area except in the Customer's designated office without the prior written consent of the Provider.
11. The Customer shall bring no animals into the building other than certified assistance animals.
12. Kitchen amenities / Beverage fee: allows the Customer and visitors access to self-service coffee and tea.
13. Businessworld membership: Your complimentary Businessworld membership can be used in any the Provider location outside of your home centre

where your office/virtual office is located. Use of the Lounges will be governed by the Businessworld Terms and Conditions which are conveniently located on [www.regus.co.uk](http://www.regus.co.uk).

*House Rules UK, May 15, MV*

14. The Customer shall not use the Business Centre for manufacturing or storage of merchandise except as such storage may be incidental to general office purposes. The Customer shall not occupy or permit any portion of the Business Centre to be occupied or used for the manufacture, sale, gift or use of liquor, narcotics or tobacco in any form.
15. No additional locks or bolts of any kind shall be placed upon any of the doors or windows of the Business Centre by the Customer nor shall any changes be made to existing locks or the mechanisms thereof.
16. Canvassing, soliciting and peddling in the building are prohibited and the Customer shall not solicit other Customers for any business or other purpose without the prior written approval of the Provider.
17. All property belonging to the Customer or any of the Customer's employee, agent or invitee shall be at the risk of such person only and the Provider shall not be liable for damages thereto or for theft or misappropriation thereof.
18. Smoking shall be prohibited in all public areas, including conference and training rooms. No smoking shall be permitted at any time in any area of the Business Centre (including open offices).
19. The Customer or the Customer's officers, directors, employees, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, contractors, customers, or invitees shall be prohibited from participating in any type of harassing, discriminatory or abusive behaviour to the Provider's team members, other Customers or invitees, verbal or physical in the Business Centre for any reason. Any breach of this rule is a material breach of your agreement (not capable of remedy) and your agreement may be terminated immediately and services will be suspended without further notice.
20. For Jersey only: Regus Jersey takes its legal and regulatory responsibilities seriously. All Clients are required to maintain a real physical presence at the Centre and must keep a valid licence held under the Regulation of Undertakings and Development (Jersey) Law 1973 (unless written confirmation is received from the Population Office that a licence is not required). In the event that either of these requirements (or other local legal and regulatory requirements) are, in the Provider's opinion, not met then your agreement will be deemed to be breached and may be terminated without further notice per the terms and conditions.

#### Services and Obligations

21. Furnished office accommodation: The Customer shall not affix anything to the windows, walls or any other part of the office or the Business Centre or make alterations or additions to the office or the Business Centre without the prior written consent of the Provider.
22. Office services: The Provider is happy to discuss special arrangements for the use of the facilities outside the Business Centre normal opening hours or, the normal working days where the Business Centre is located. There may be an additional charge for such special arrangements. This can be discussed at the time of arrangement.
23. All of the pay-as-you-use services are subject to the availability of the Business Centre staff at the time of any service request. The Provider will endeavour to deal with a service request at the earliest opportunity and provide the additional service the Customer requires, but the Provider will not be held responsible for any delay.
24. If in the Provider's opinion, the Provider decides that a request for any pay-as-you-use service is excessive; the Provider reserves the right to charge an additional fee at the Provider's usual published rates based on the time taken to complete the service. This will be discussed and agreed between the Provider and the Customer at the time the Customer makes such request.
25. Services will be available during normal opening hours. Internet access and phone lines are available after hours and weekends.

#### The Provider' Services Agreement

26. Nature of the Provider' Services Agreement: The Provider may assign the Services Agreement at any time without the Customer's consent. This clause reflects the fact that the Customer is taking a serviced office agreement and not a lease and that the Provider retains overall control of the Business Centre. The Customer has no real-property or commercial property interest of any kind in the building where the Business Centre is located. Where the Customer is a company and it merges with another or the Customer needs to allow an affiliate to use the services provided under the Services Agreement, the Customer will explain the need for any change to the Provider and the Provider will give careful consideration in each case. The Provider needs to be sure it knows, and is satisfied with, the identity of each occupant of the Business Centre.
27. Data protection: The Provider requests that the Customer provides, as and when requested by the Provider, documentation and personnel information as the Provider may reasonably require enabling the provision of the services. Such personal data will be used by the Provider in accordance with the law
28. Subordination: This agreement is subordinate to the Provider lease with the Provider landlord and to any other agreements to which the Provider's lease with the landlord is subordinate.
29. Annual indexation: For all agreements with a term greater than 12 months, the indexation applied of the All Items Retail Prices Index + 2% will be substituted by CPI or 2.8% whichever is the greater.

30. Cross default : The Customer agrees that, if they are in default under a service agreement with the Provider at a different business centre (“Different Location Agreement”) to the one specified in this Agreement, that the Provider may recover any unpaid sums due under a Different Location Agreement from the Customer under this Agreement and that the Provider may, in particular (but not limited to), withhold services under this Agreement or deduct sums from the retainer held under this Agreement in respect of such unpaid sums.
31. Company Name Change: If there is a need to change the name of your company, requests must be made in writing and addressed to the Centre Manager. Please note that these requests will be processed 60 days from the beginning of the next calendar month. Any invoices prior will be in the current company name and cannot be changed.

#### Fees

32. Standard services: The standard fee and any fixed, recurring services requested by the Customer are billed in advance and payable upon receipt of invoice. Where a daily rate applies, the charge for any such month will be 30 times the standard fee. For a period of less than a month the standard fee will be applied on a daily basis. Recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of your Agreement (including any renewal). If a Customer has a need to cancel a recurring service they may request this at any time up to the notification due date of the agreement. The cancellation will be applied from the first day of the renewal start.
33. Pay-as-you-use and additional variable services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with our published rates which may change from time to time, are billed in arrears and payable upon receipt of invoice.
34. Office set up: An office set up fee of £55 will be charged for each occupant.
35. Office restoration fee: A fee of £20 per sqm for each occupied office will be charged upon the Customer’s departure or if the Customer, at the Customer’s option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear.
36. Business continuity service: All Customers will be automatically entered into a standard Virtual Office Agreement for 3 months upon departure from The Provider, to cover the management and redirection of mail, fax, calls and visitors. (Upon departure to comply with current money laundering regulations 2007, personal identification will be required in order to continue utilising your the Provider address and mail handling services).
37. This fee will be charged at the current market rate. Prices can be obtained upon request.
38. Late payment and penalty: All invoices are due upon receipt. Late fee dates will vary based on the type of service/invoice that is provided. At any time, the Customer may ask the centre team on what date a late fee will be assessed. If the Customer does not pay fees when due, a service fee of £25 plus 5% penalty will be charged on all overdue balances under £500. For balances equal to or greater than £500 a fee of £50 plus 5% penalty will apply. If the Customer disputes any part of an invoice, the Customer must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to such late fee and penalty. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Customer access to the Customer’s accommodation) while there are any outstanding fees, penalties and interest or the Customer is in breach of the Service Agreement which, for the avoidance of doubt, includes these House Rules.
39. Insufficient funds: The Customer will pay a fee of £35 or the maximum amount permitted by law for any returned payments due to insufficient funds. Furthermore, should any change be made from a direct debit payment process, a £35 fee will apply.
40. Taxes: The Customer will pay all current taxes paid by the Provider to any government authority. This currently applies to the Carbon Levy and VAT.

#### Liability

41. Mail: The Customer releases the Provider from any liability arising out of or incurred in connection with any mail or packages received on the Customer’s behalf.

#### Force Majeure

42. The Provider shall have no liability to the Customer under this agreement if it is prevented from, or delayed in, performing its obligations under this agreement or from carrying on its business by acts, events, omissions or accidents beyond its reasonable control, including (without limitation) strikes, failure of a utility service or transport network, act of God, war, riot, civil commotion, malicious damage, disease or quarantine restrictions compliance with any law or governmental order, rule, regulation or direction, accident, fire, flood, storm or default of suppliers or subcontractors. The Provider’s obligation to perform its obligations shall be suspended during the period required to remove such force majeure event.

The Provider shall notify the Customer as soon as reasonably possible of the force majeure event and propose a suitable alternative accommodation (if any) in the same Business Centre or in another available business centre.

## IT and technology policy

### 43. Introduction

This Policy forms part of the The Provider's Internet IT & Connectivity order and applies where the Customer wishes to use The Provider's Telecommunication and Internet connectivity services and equipment.

The Provider is considered a Downstream Service Provider (DSP), which means The Provider provides a personalised connection to the Internet which is managed and protected via a firewall.

- The Provider's Internet service provides the Customer with an Internet connection that provides regular business activity such as web browsing, the ability to send and receive electronic communications, access to business applications and like.
- The Provider's Internet service is based on a symmetrical leased line connection or similar technology that is shared with other individual Provider's Customers within the same Provider's office building.
- The Provider can provide the Customer with dedicated leased line connectivity various capacities subject to availability. This provides an uncontended, symmetrical connection of the selected Customer bandwidth. The service provides one (1) public IP address with the facility to purchase and deploy additional IP addresses.
- The service provides the Customer with the following capability:
  - The ability to deploy public IP addressing.
  - The option to run server based solutions that require inbound connectivity (e.g. an FTP, web or mail server).
  - The option to run "site to site" VPN connections.
  - The Customer is also able to deploy its own "firewall" to manage its own LAN and VPN connections should the Customer wishes to do so.

### 44. The Provider's Internet and Telecommunications Policy

- a. Content. The Customer acknowledges that the Provider does not monitor the content of information transmitted through the Provider's telecommunications lines or equipment, which includes, but is not limited to, Internet access, telephone, fax lines and data lines ("Telecommunications Lines"). The Customer further acknowledges that the Provider is merely providing a conduit for Customer's Internet transmissions, similar to a telephone company, and that the Provider accepts no liability for the content of transmissions by the Customer.
- b. Restrictions. The Provider's Internet service may be used only for lawful purposes and shall not be used in connection with any criminal or civil violations of state, federal, or international laws, regulations, or other government requirements. Such violations include without limitation theft or infringement of copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets, or other types of intellectual property; fraud; forgery; theft or misappropriation of funds, credit cards, or personal information; violation of export control laws or regulations; libel or defamation; threats of physical harm or harassment; or any conduct that constitutes a criminal offence or gives rise to civil liability. The Customer is responsible for maintaining the basic security and virus protection of the Customer's systems to prevent their use by others in a manner that violates the Service Agreement. The Customer is responsible for taking corrective actions on vulnerable or exploited systems to prevent continued abuse.
- c. The Provider's Internet access - Per user basis. The Provider grants the Customer access to the the Provider's Internet service on a per user access basis. In the event of the Customer increasing the number of users by utilising a gateway device (router, firewall etc) or by other means, the Customer agrees to pay the The Provider's fee for each user who accesses the Internet, either directly or through a gateway device.
- d. Unauthorised access. In no event may the Customer increase its authorised access points to the Telecommunications/Data lines by means of wire splitting or any other method including wireless devices. In the event of the Customer breaching paragraph 44.c (the Provider's Internet Access — Per User Basis), above, or this paragraph, the Provider may disconnect all of the Customer's access to the Telecommunications/Data lines upon three (3) business days prior written notice to the Customer. The Customer shall pay all the Provider's fees for any unauthorised Telecommunications/Data Lines use upon invoice from the Provider. The Provider shall have no obligation to reconnect the Customer to the Telecommunications/Data Lines until such fees have been paid in full and the Customer has ceased to make unauthorised access.
- e. Customer installed telecommunications lines. It is part of the The Provider business model to provide Telecommunications Lines to its Customers. The Customer may not bypass the use of the The Provider Telecommunications Lines by installing its own direct Telecommunications Lines. On a case by case basis, The Provider may grant the Customer authorisation to install direct Telecommunications Lines upon written request by the Customer. This permission will only be granted on the agreement of the Customer, to make a monthly payment of a direct access fee as set by the Provider which will be equal to the monthly Provider's Internet fee, the telecoms package fee or both.
- f. Security violations. The Customer is prohibited from engaging in any violations of system or network security. The Provider's Internet service may not be used in connection with attempts - whether or not successful - to violate the security of a network, service, or other system. Examples of prohibited activities include, without limitation, hacking, cracking into, monitoring, or using systems without authorization; scanning ports; conducting denial of service attacks; and distributing viruses or other harmful software. The Provider reserves the right to suspend the Internet access upon notification from a recognized Internet authority or ISP regarding such abuse. The Provider may disconnect the Customer's equipment and withhold services if the Provider

considers that the Customer's hardware or software is, or has become, inappropriate for connection to the Provider's network. The Customer is responsible for the Customer's own virus protection on the Customer's systems and hardware.

- g. The Provider's Internet services are only available at the Provider locations and connection to the Provider's network is only permitted at those locations or via the Provider's provided services. The Customer must not create any links between the Provider's network and any other network or any telecommunications service without the Provider's consent.
- h. Revisions to this policy. The Provider may modify this Policy at any time, with or without notice.
- i. Special requirements:
  - Where the Customer is using its own wireless access points, the Customer requires written approval from The Provider, prior to implementation. The use of the Customer's own wireless router will result in a service charge based upon the total number of contracted work stations in the Customer's designated office space.
  - It is to note that the following ports are blocked through the Provider's firewall for outbound traffic: H323, Napster\_8888, Nbdatagram, Nbname, RealPlayer-gp, TCP-135, TCP-139, TCP-1433, TCP-1434, UDP-1434.
  - Video conferencing services are not allowed on the Provider's Data Network without written approval from the Provider's IT Director. If approval is gained then the Customer will be required to take Reserved Bandwidth to support the solution.
  - The Provider's Mail relay server is limited to 128 recipients / 32MB per message. It cannot be used as a smarthost.
- j. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS. As part of its services to the Customer, the Provider may provide third party Internet access and computer hardware and software ("Third Party Services"). THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, FOR SUCH THIRD PARTY SERVICES. THE CUSTOMER ACKNOWLEDGES THAT NO REPRESENTATION HAS BEEN MADE BY THE PROVIDER AS TO THE FITNESS OF THE THIRD PARTY SERVICES FOR THE CUSTOMER'S INTENDED PURPOSE.
- k. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THE CUSTOMER'S EQUIPMENT. ALL CUSTOMER EQUIPMENT STORED IN THE PROVIDER'S TELECOMMUNICATIONS ROOM IS STORED AT CUSTOMER'S OWN RISK. THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY FOR SUCH EQUIPMENT AND SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSSES OR DAMAGE TO SUCH EQUIPMENT.
- l. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES FROM LOSS OF SERVICE. The Provider does not provide any service level agreement to the Customer in regard to provision or loss of service for its Internet services. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from any loss of service or degradation of connectivity/access to the Internet with the Service Agreement, even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.
- m. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from the Service Agreement even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.



**Online Office Agreement**

- **Agreement Date** : October 17, 2014
- **Confirmation No** : 5880549

**Business Center Details**

LONDON, London Bridge - More London  
3 More London Riverside  
London

**Address**

SE1 2RE  
United Kingdom

**Sales Manager** Sanna Parkkunen

**Client Details**

**Company Name** VERONA PHARMA PLC

**Contact Name** Biresh Roy  
XXX

XXX

**Address** United Kingdom

**Phone** XXX

**Email** XXX

**Office Payment Details (exc. VAT and exc. services)**

Office Number	Number of people		Price per Office
145A	6	£	11,579.00
151	1	£	2,469.00

**Initial Payment :**

**First month's fee :** £ 0.00  
**Service Deposit :** £ 28,096.00  
**Total Initial Payment :** £ 28,096.00

**Service Provision :**

**Start Date** 1 January 2015 **End Date** 31 December 2015  
All agreements end on the last calendar day of the month.  
Comments:

\* 2 Months Free - Total Savings of £ 28,096.00

Customer will get the 1st, and 7th month office fee waived on the initial term.

**Confirm by typing your name in the box below**

Name : Biresh Roy on behalf of VERONA PHARMA PLC

I confirm these details are correct to the best of my knowledge

**Signed on**  
**October 17, 2014**



Dear Biresh Roy,

**Thank you for your order for office space at LONDON, London Bridge - More London.**

Your order has been completed and we will be contacting you shortly to go through the process of moving in and getting your office space customised to your specific needs.

**Order overview:**

**Centre Name:** LONDON, LONDON BRIDGE - MORE LONDON

**Confirmation Number:** 5880549

We look forward to greeting you on your first day.

Yours sincerely,

Sanna Parkkunen

Copyright &copy; 2009 Regus plc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction in whole or in part in any form or medium without express written permission of Regus plc is prohibited.

\*\*\*\*\*

The information in this email is confidential and may be privileged.

If you are not the intended recipient, please destroy this message and notify the sender immediately.

---

HOUSE RULES | UNITED KINGDOM

*These are The Providers' House Rules which may change from time to time and which apply between The Provider and the Customer in relation to a Business Centre.*

Accommodation

1. Upon move in: The Provider will ask the Customer to sign an inventory of all accommodation, furniture and equipment the Customer is permitted to use, together with a note of its condition, and details of the keys or entry cards issued to the Customer.
2. The Customer may not put up any signs on the doors of their accommodation or anywhere else that is visible from outside the rooms the Customer is using without written approval from the local Business Centre team. The Provider reserves the right to charge a fee for any signage and to specify its design to ensure it remains in keeping with the Centre's design.
3. Taking care of the Provider's property: the Customer must take good care of all parts of the Business Centre, its equipment, fittings and furnishings that they use. The Customer must not alter any part of it.
4. Keys and security: Any keys or entry cards which The Provider allows the Customer use remain the Provider's property at all times. The Customer must not make any copies of the keys and/or entry cards or allow anyone else to use them without the Provider's consent. Any loss must be reported to The Provider immediately and the Customer must pay a reasonable fee for replacement keys or cards and of changing locks, if required. This rule improves security levels of the Business Centre. If the Customer is permitted to use the Business Centre outside normal working hours it is the Customer's responsibility to lock the doors to their accommodation and to the Business Centre when they leave. This is to ensure the safety of individuals and property at the Business Centre.

Use

5. The Customer shall not leave open any corridor doors, exit doors or door connecting corridors during or after business hours. For security purposes and if the Customer does so, it will be at the Customer's own risk. All corridors, halls, elevators and stairways shall not be obstructed by the Customer or used for any purpose other than egress and ingress. The Customer can only use public areas with the consent of the Provider and those areas must be kept neat and attractive at all times.
6. The Customer's name and address: At the Customer's request and cost, the Provider is happy to include the Customer's name in the house directory at the Business Centre, where this facility is available. The Customer must not use the name of the Provider in any way in connection with their business. The Customer may not use the Business Centre as the Customer's registered address for service-of-process.
7. The Customer's employees and guests shall conduct themselves in a business like manner; proper business attire shall be worn at all times; the noise level will be kept to a level so as not to interfere with or annoy other Customers and the Customer will abide by the Provider's directives regarding security, keys, parking and other such matters common to all occupants.
8. The Customer shall not, without the Provider prior written consent, store or operate in their office(s) or the Business Centre(s), any computer (excepting a personal computer) or any other large business machine, reproduction equipment, heating equipment, stove, radio, stereo equipment or other mechanical amplification equipment, vending or coin operated machine, refrigerator, boiler or coffee equipment. Additionally, the Customer must not conduct a mechanical business therein, do any cooking therein, or use or allow to be used in the building where the Business Centre is located, oil burning fluids, gasoline, kerosene for heating, warming or lighting. No article deemed hazardous on account of fire or any explosives shall be brought into the Business Centre. No offensive gases, odours or liquids shall be permitted. No firearms shall be permitted. The Business Centre is intended to be used solely for office use. The Provider may in its absolute discretion give prior approval to an alternative use of the Customer's accommodation (such approval to be in writing) and in the event that it does so references to "office" shall be construed accordingly.
9. The electrical current shall be used for ordinary lighting, powering personal computers and small appliances only unless written permission to do otherwise shall first have been obtained from the Provider at an agreed cost to the Customer. If the Customer requires any special installation or wiring for electrical use, telephone equipment or otherwise, such wiring shall be done at the Customer's expense by the personnel designated by the Provider.
10. The Customer may not conduct business in the hallways, reception area or any other area except in the Customer's designated office without the prior written consent of the Provider.
11. The Customer shall bring no animals into the building other than certified assistance animals.
12. Kitchen amenities / Beverage fee: allows the Customer and visitors access to self-service coffee and tea.
13. Businessworld membership: Your complimentary Businessworld membership can be used in any the Provider location outside of your home centre where your office/virtual office is located. Use of the Lounges will be governed by the Businessworld Terms and Conditions which are conveniently located on [www.regus.co.uk](http://www.regus.co.uk).

14. The Customer shall not use the Business Centre for manufacturing or storage of merchandise except as such storage may be incidental to general office purposes. The Customer shall not occupy or permit any portion of the Business Centre to be occupied or used for the manufacture, sale, gift or use of liquor, narcotics or tobacco in any form.
15. No additional locks or bolts of any kind shall be placed upon any of the doors or windows of the Business Centre by the Customer nor shall any changes be made to existing locks or the mechanisms thereof.
16. Canvassing, soliciting and peddling in the building are prohibited and the Customer shall not solicit other Customers for any business or other purpose without the prior written approval of the Provider.
17. All property belonging to the Customer or any of the Customer's employee, agent or invitee shall be at the risk of such person only and the Provider shall not be liable for damages thereto or for theft or misappropriation thereof.
18. Smoking shall be prohibited in all public areas, including conference and training rooms. No smoking shall be permitted at any time in any area of the Business Centre (including open offices).
19. The Customer or the Customer's officers, directors, employees, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, contractors, customers, or invitees shall be prohibited from participating in any type of harassing, discriminatory or abusive behaviour to the Provider's team members, other Customers or invitees, verbal or physical in the Business Centre for any reason. Any breach of this rule is a material breach of your agreement (not capable of remedy) and your agreement may be terminated immediately and services will be suspended without further notice.
20. For Jersey only: Regus Jersey takes its legal and regulatory responsibilities seriously. All Clients are required to maintain a real physical presence at the Centre and must keep a valid licence held under the Regulation of Undertakings and Development (Jersey) Law 1973 (unless written confirmation is received from the Population Office that a licence is not required). In the event that either of these requirements (or other local legal and regulatory requirements) are, in the Provider's opinion, not met then your agreement will be deemed to be breached and may be terminated without further notice per the terms and conditions.

#### Services and Obligations

21. Furnished office accommodation: The Customer shall not affix anything to the windows, walls or any other part of the office or the Business Centre or make alterations or additions to the office or the Business Centre without the prior written consent of the Provider.
22. Office services: The Provider is happy to discuss special arrangements for the use of the facilities outside the Business Centre normal opening hours or, the normal working days where the Business Centre is located. There may be an additional charge for such special arrangements. This can be discussed at the time of arrangement.
23. All of the pay-as-you-use services are subject to the availability of the Business Centre staff at the time of any service request. The Provider will endeavour to deal with a service request at the earliest opportunity and provide the additional service the Customer requires, but the Provider will not be held responsible for any delay.
24. If in the Provider's opinion, the Provider decides that a request for any pay-as-you-use service is excessive; the Provider reserves the right to charge an additional fee at the Provider's usual published rates based on the time taken to complete the service. This will be discussed and agreed between the Provider and the Customer at the time the Customer makes such request.
25. Services will be available during normal opening hours. Internet access and phone lines are available after hours and weekends.

#### The Provider' Services Agreement

26. Nature of the Provider' Services Agreement: The Provider may assign the Services Agreement at any time without the Customer's consent. This clause reflects the fact that the Customer is taking a serviced office agreement and not a lease and that the Provider retains overall control of the Business Centre. The Customer has no real-property or commercial property interest of any kind in the building where the Business Centre is located. Where the Customer is a company and it merges with another or the Customer needs to allow an affiliate to use the services provided under the Services Agreement, the Customer will explain the need for any change to the Provider and the Provider will give careful consideration in each case. The Provider needs to be sure it knows, and is satisfied with, the identity of each occupant of the Business Centre.
27. Data protection: The Provider requests that the Customer provides, as and when requested by the Provider, documentation and personnel information as the Provider may reasonably require enabling the provision of the services. Such personal data will be used by the Provider in accordance with the law
28. Subordination: This agreement is subordinate to the Provider lease with the Provider landlord and to any other agreements to which the Provider's lease with the landlord is subordinate.
29. Annual indexation: For all agreements with a term greater than 12 months, the indexation applied of the All Items Retail Prices Index + 2% will be substituted by CPI or 2.8% whichever is the greater.

30. Cross default : The Customer agrees that, if they are in default under a service agreement with the Provider at a different business centre (“Different Location Agreement”) to the one specified in this Agreement, that the Provider may recover any unpaid sums due under a Different Location Agreement from the Customer under this Agreement and that the Provider may, in particular (but not limited to), withhold services under this Agreement or deduct sums from the retainer held under this Agreement in respect of such unpaid sums.
31. Company Name Change: If there is a need to change the name of your company, requests must be made in writing and addressed to the Centre Manager. Please note that these requests will be processed 60 days from the beginning of the next calendar month. Any invoices prior will be in the current company name and cannot be changed.

#### Fees

32. Standard services: The standard fee and any fixed, recurring services requested by the Customer are billed in advance and payable upon receipt of invoice. Where a daily rate applies, the charge for any such month will be 30 times the standard fee. For a period of less than a month the standard fee will be applied on a daily basis. Recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of your Agreement (including any renewal). If a Customer has a need to cancel a recurring service they may request this at any time up to the notification due date of the agreement. The cancellation will be applied from the first day of the renewal start.
33. Pay-as-you-use and additional variable services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with our published rates which may change from time to time, are billed in arrears and payable upon receipt of invoice.
34. Office set up: An office set up fee of £55 will be charged for each occupant.
35. Office restoration fee: A fee of £20 per sqm for each occupied office will be charged upon the Customer’s departure or if the Customer, at the Customer’s option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear.
36. Business continuity service: All Customers will be automatically entered into a standard Virtual Office Agreement for 3 months upon departure from The Provider, to cover the management and redirection of mail, fax, calls and visitors. (Upon departure to comply with current money laundering regulations 2007, personal identification will be required in order to continue utilising your the Provider address and mail handling services).
37. This fee will be charged at the current market rate. Prices can be obtained upon request.
38. Late payment and penalty: All invoices are due upon receipt. Late fee dates will vary based on the type of service/invoice that is provided. At any time, the Customer may ask the centre team on what date a late fee will be assessed. If the Customer does not pay fees when due, a service fee of £25 plus 5% penalty will be charged on all overdue balances under £500. For balances equal to or greater than £500 a fee of £50 plus 5% penalty will apply. If the Customer disputes any part of an invoice, the Customer must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to such late fee and penalty. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Customer access to the Customer’s accommodation) while there are any outstanding fees, penalties and interest or the Customer is in breach of the Service Agreement which, for the avoidance of doubt, includes these House Rules.
39. Insufficient funds: The Customer will pay a fee of £35 or the maximum amount permitted by law for any returned payments due to insufficient funds. Furthermore, should any change be made from a direct debit payment process, a £35 fee will apply.
40. Taxes: The Customer will pay all current taxes paid by the Provider to any government authority. This currently applies to the Carbon Levy and VAT.

#### Liability

41. Mail: The Customer releases the Provider from any liability arising out of or incurred in connection with any mail or packages received on the Customer’s behalf.

#### Force Majeure

42. The Provider shall have no liability to the Customer under this agreement if it is prevented from, or delayed in, performing its obligations under this agreement or from carrying on its business by acts, events, omissions or accidents beyond its reasonable control, including (without limitation) strikes, failure of a utility service or transport network, act of God, war, riot, civil commotion, malicious damage, disease or quarantine restrictions compliance with any law or governmental order, rule, regulation or direction, accident, fire, flood, storm or default of suppliers or subcontractors. The Provider’s obligation to perform its obligations shall be suspended during the period required to remove such force majeure event.

The Provider shall notify the Customer as soon as reasonably possible of the force majeure event and propose a suitable alternative accommodation (if any) in the same Business Centre or in another available business centre.

## IT and technology policy

### 43. Introduction

This Policy forms part of the The Provider's Internet IT & Connectivity order and applies where the Customer wishes to use The Provider's Telecommunication and Internet connectivity services and equipment.

The Provider is considered a Downstream Service Provider (DSP), which means The Provider provides a personalised connection to the Internet which is managed and protected via a firewall.

- The Provider's Internet service provides the Customer with an Internet connection that provides regular business activity such as web browsing, the ability to send and receive electronic communications, access to business applications and like.
- The Provider's Internet service is based on a symmetrical leased line connection or similar technology that is shared with other individual Provider's Customers within the same Provider's office building.
- The Provider can provide the Customer with dedicated leased line connectivity various capacities subject to availability. This provides an uncontended, symmetrical connection of the selected Customer bandwidth. The service provides one (1) public IP address with the facility to purchase and deploy additional IP addresses.
- The service provides the Customer with the following capability:
  - The ability to deploy public IP addressing.
  - The option to run server based solutions that require inbound connectivity (e.g. an FTP, web or mail server).
  - The option to run "site to site" VPN connections.
  - The Customer is also able to deploy its own "firewall" to manage its own LAN and VPN connections should the Customer wishes to do so.

### 44. The Provider's Internet and Telecommunications Policy

- a. Content. The Customer acknowledges that the Provider does not monitor the content of information transmitted through the Provider's telecommunications lines or equipment, which includes, but is not limited to, Internet access, telephone, fax lines and data lines ("Telecommunications Lines"). The Customer further acknowledges that the Provider is merely providing a conduit for Customer's Internet transmissions, similar to a telephone company, and that the Provider accepts no liability for the content of transmissions by the Customer.
- b. Restrictions. The Provider's Internet service may be used only for lawful purposes and shall not be used in connection with any criminal or civil violations of state, federal, or international laws, regulations, or other government requirements. Such violations include without limitation theft or infringement of copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets, or other types of intellectual property; fraud; forgery; theft or misappropriation of funds, credit cards, or personal information; violation of export control laws or regulations; libel or defamation; threats of physical harm or harassment; or any conduct that constitutes a criminal offence or gives rise to civil liability. The Customer is responsible for maintaining the basic security and virus protection of the Customer's systems to prevent their use by others in a manner that violates the Service Agreement. The Customer is responsible for taking corrective actions on vulnerable or exploited systems to prevent continued abuse.
- c. The Provider's Internet access - Per user basis. The Provider grants the Customer access to the the Provider's Internet service on a per user access basis. In the event of the Customer increasing the number of users by utilising a gateway device (router, firewall etc) or by other means, the Customer agrees to pay the The Provider's fee for each user who accesses the Internet, either directly or through a gateway device.
- d. Unauthorised access. In no event may the Customer increase its authorised access points to the Telecommunications/Data lines by means of wire splitting or any other method including wireless devices. In the event of the Customer breaching paragraph 44.c (the Provider's Internet Access — Per User Basis), above, or this paragraph, the Provider may disconnect all of the Customer's access to the Telecommunications/Data lines upon three (3) business days prior written notice to the Customer. The Customer shall pay all the Provider's fees for any unauthorised Telecommunications/Data Lines use upon invoice from the Provider. The Provider shall have no obligation to reconnect the Customer to the Telecommunications/Data Lines until such fees have been paid in full and the Customer has ceased to make unauthorised access.
- e. Customer installed telecommunications lines. It is part of the The Provider business model to provide Telecommunications Lines to its Customers. The Customer may not bypass the use of the The Provider Telecommunications Lines by installing its own direct Telecommunications Lines. On a case by case basis, The Provider may grant the Customer authorisation to install direct Telecommunications Lines upon written request by the Customer. This permission will only be granted on the agreement of the Customer, to make a monthly payment of a direct access fee as set by the Provider which will be equal to the monthly Provider's Internet fee, the telecoms package fee or both.
- f. Security violations. The Customer is prohibited from engaging in any violations of system or network security. The Provider's Internet service may not be used in connection with attempts - whether or not successful - to violate the security of a network, service, or other system. Examples of prohibited activities include, without limitation, hacking, cracking into, monitoring, or using systems without authorization; scanning ports; conducting denial of service attacks; and distributing viruses or other harmful software. The Provider reserves the right to suspend the Internet access upon notification from a recognized Internet authority or ISP regarding such abuse. The Provider may disconnect the Customer's equipment and withhold services if the Provider

considers that the Customer's hardware or software is, or has become, inappropriate for connection to the Provider's network. The Customer is responsible for the Customer's own virus protection on the Customer's systems and hardware.

- g. The Provider's Internet services are only available at the Provider locations and connection to the Provider's network is only permitted at those locations or via the Provider's provided services. The Customer must not create any links between the Provider's network and any other network or any telecommunications service without the Provider's consent.
- h. Revisions to this policy. The Provider may modify this Policy at any time, with or without notice.
- i. Special requirements:
- Where the Customer is using its own wireless access points, the Customer requires written approval from The Provider, prior to implementation. The use of the Customer's own wireless router will result in a service charge based upon the total number of contracted work stations in the Customer's designated office space.
  - It is to note that the following ports are blocked through the Provider's firewall for outbound traffic: H323, Napster\_8888, Nbdatagram, Nbname, RealPlayer-grp, TCP-135, TCP- 139, TCP-1433, TCP-1434, UDP-1434.
  - Video conferencing services are not allowed on the Provider's Data Network without written approval from the Provider's IT Director. If approval is gained then the Customer will be required to take Reserved Bandwidth to support the solution.
  - The Provider's Mail relay server is limited to 128 recipients / 32MB per message. It cannot be used as a smarthost.
- j. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS. As part of its services to the Customer, the Provider may provide third party Internet access and computer hardware and software ("Third Party Services"). THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, FOR SUCH THIRD PARTY SERVICES. THE CUSTOMER ACKNOWLEDGES THAT NO REPRESENTATION HAS BEEN MADE BY THE PROVIDER AS TO THE FITNESS OF THE THIRD PARTY SERVICES FOR THE CUSTOMER'S INTENDED PURPOSE.
- k. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THE CUSTOMER'S EQUIPMENT. ALL CUSTOMER EQUIPMENT STORED IN THE PROVIDER'S TELECOMMUNICATIONS ROOM IS STORED AT CUSTOMER'S OWN RISK. THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY FOR SUCH EQUIPMENT AND SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSSES OR DAMAGE TO SUCH EQUIPMENT.
- l. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES FROM LOSS OF SERVICE. The Provider does not provide any service level agreement to the Customer in regard to provision or loss of service for its Internet services. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from any loss of service or degradation of connectivity/access to the Internet with the Service Agreement, even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.
- m. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from the Service Agreement even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.



English (UK)

Agreement Date : 26 October 2016

Reference No : 32768-631518

**Business Centre Details****LONDON, London Bridge - More London**

**Address** 3 More London Riverside  
London  
Greater London  
SE1 2RE  
United Kingdom

**Sales Manager** Max Chapman**Client Details****Company Name** VERONA PHARMA PLC**Contact Name** Morgan Piers

**Address** One Central Sq  
Cardiff  
CF10 1FS  
United Kingdom

**Phone** + ( ) 07775730370**Email** XXXX@veronapharma.com**Office Payment Details (exc.VAT and exc. services)**

<u>Office Number</u>	<u>Number of people</u>	<u>Price per Office</u>
142	2	£ 2,197.88
<b>Initial Payment:</b>		<b>First month's fee :</b> £ 2,197.88
		<b>Service Deposit :</b> £ 4,395.76
		<b>Total Initial Payment:</b> £ 6,593.64

**Service Provision :** **Start Date** 1 December 2016 **End Date** 30 November 2017

All agreements end on the last calendar day of the month.

**Comments:**

\* Additional Office Fee Discount - Total Savings of £ 2,293.44

**Terms and Conditions**

We are Regus Management (UK) Limited, the "Provider". This Agreement incorporates our terms of business set out on attached Terms and Conditions, attached House Rules and Service Price Guide (where available) which you confirm you have read and understood. We both agree to comply with those terms and our obligations as set out in them. This agreement is binding from the agreement date and may not be terminated once it is made, except in accordance with its terms. Note that the Agreement does not come to an end automatically. See "Cancellation" section of your terms and conditions

Name (printed): /s/ PJ MorganTitle (printed): CFODate: 26 October 2016**SIGNED on your behalf (Client)**

we and our preferred partners would like to keep you informed of the latest product news, special offers and other marketing information. If you would like to receive this information then select this box.



## **1. This Agreement**

1.1 Nature of this agreement: This agreement is the commercial equivalent of an agreement for accommodation(s) in a hotel. The whole of the Centre remains in the Provider's possession and control. THE CLIENT ACCEPTS THAT THIS AGREEMENT CREATES NO TENANCY INTEREST, LEASEHOLD ESTATE OR OTHER REAL PROPERTY INTEREST IN THE CLIENT'S FAVOUR WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCOMMODATION(S). The Provider is giving the Client the right to share with the Provider the use of the Centre on these terms and conditions, as supplemented by the House Rules, so that the Provider can provide the services to the Client. This Agreement is personal to the Client and cannot be transferred to anyone else without prior consent from the Provider unless such transfer is required by law. The Provider will not unreasonably withhold its consent to assignment to a parent, subsidiary or affiliate of Client provided that Client and assignee execute the Provider's form of Assignment of License Agreement which will require assignee to assume all Client obligations and will not release the Client. This agreement is composed of the front page describing the accommodation(s), the present terms and conditions, the House Rules and the Service Price Guide (where available).

1.2 Comply with House Rules: The Client must comply with any House Rules which the Provider imposes generally on users of the Centre. The House Rules vary from country to country and from Centre to Centre and these can be requested locally.

1.3 **AUTOMATIC RENEWAL: THIS AGREEMENT LASTS FOR THE PERIOD STATED IN IT AND THEN WILL BE EXTENDED AUTOMATICALLY FOR SUCCESSIVE PERIODS EQUAL TO THE CURRENT TERM BUT NO LESS THAN 3 MONTHS (UNLESS LEGAL RENEWAL TERM LIMITS APPLY) UNTIL TERMINATED BY THE CLIENT OR BY THE PROVIDER PURSUANT TO SECTION 1.4. ALL PERIODS SHALL RUN TO THE LAST DAY OF THE MONTH IN WHICH THEY WOULD OTHERWISE EXPIRE. THE FEES ON ANY RENEWAL WILL BE AT THE THEN PREVAILING MARKET RATE. THIS CLAUSE DOES NOT APPLY TO MONTH TO MONTH AGREEMENTS.**

1.4 **CANCELLATION: EITHER THE PROVIDER OR THE CLIENT CAN TERMINATE THIS AGREEMENT AT THE END DATE STATED IN IT, OR AT THE END OF ANY EXTENSION OR RENEWAL PERIOD, BY GIVING AT LEAST THREE MONTHS WRITTEN NOTICE TO THE OTHER. HOWEVER, IF THIS AGREEMENT, EXTENSION OR RENEWAL IS FOR THREE MONTHS OR LESS AND EITHER THE PROVIDER OR THE CLIENT WISHES TO TERMINATE IT, THE NOTICE PERIOD IS TWO MONTHS OR (IF TWO MONTHS OR SHORTER) ONE WEEK LESS THAN THE PERIOD STATED IN THIS AGREEMENT. IF THE CLIENT IS ON A MONTH TO MONTH AGREEMENT EITHER PARTY MAY TERMINATE THIS AGREEMENT BY GIVING NO LESS THAN ONE MONTHS' NOTICE TO THE OTHER (EFFECTIVE FROM THE START OF ANY CALENDAR MONTH).**

1.5 Ending this agreement immediately: To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, the Provider may put an end to this agreement immediately by giving the Client notice and without need to follow any additional procedure if (a) the Client becomes insolvent, bankrupt, goes into liquidation or becomes unable to pay its debts as they fall due, or (b) the Client is in breach of one of its obligations which cannot be put right or which the Provider have given the Client notice to put right and which the Client has failed to put right within fourteen (14) days of that notice, or (c) its conduct, or that of someone at the Centre with its permission or invitation, is incompatible with ordinary office use and (i) such conduct is repeated despite the Client having been given a warning or (ii) such conduct is material enough (in the Provider's opinion) to warrant immediate termination.

If the Provider puts an end to this agreement for any of these reasons it does not put an end to any outstanding obligations, including additional services used, requested or required under the agreement and the monthly office fee for the remainder of the period for which this agreement would have lasted if the Provider had not ended it.

1.6 If the Centre is no longer available: In the event that the Provider is permanently unable to provide the services and accommodation(s) at the Centre stated in this agreement then this agreement will end and the Client will only have to pay monthly office fees up to the date it ends and for the additional services the Client has used. The Provider will try to find suitable alternative accommodation(s) for the Client at another Provider Centre.

1.7 When this agreement ends the Client is to vacate the accommodation(s) immediately, leaving the accommodation(s) in the same condition as it was when the Client took it. Upon the Client's departure or if the Client, at its option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre, the Provider will charge an Office Restoration Service fee to cover normal cleaning and testing and to return the accommodation(s) to its original state. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear. If the Client leaves any property in the Centre the Provider may dispose of it at the Client's cost in any way the Provider chooses without owing the Client any responsibility for it or any proceeds of sale. If the Client continues to use the accommodation(s) when this agreement has ended the Client is responsible for any loss, claim or liability the Provider incurs as a result of the Client's failure to vacate on time. The Provider may, at its discretion, permit the Client an extension subject to a surcharge on the monthly office fee.

1.8 Employees: While this agreement is in force and for a period of six months after it ends, neither the Provider nor the Client may knowingly solicit or offer employment to any of the other's staff employed in the Centre. This obligation applies to any employee employed at the Centre up to that employee's termination of employment, and for three months thereafter. It is stipulated that the breaching party shall pay the non-breaching party the equivalent of six months' salary for any employee concerned. Nothing in this clause shall prevent either party from employing an individual who responds in good faith and independently to an advertisement which is made to the public at large.

1.9 Notices: All formal notices must be in writing, which may include by email, to the address first written above.

1.10 Confidentiality: The terms of this agreement are confidential. Neither the Provider nor the Client must disclose them without the other's consent unless required to do so by law or an official authority. This obligation continues for a period of 3 years after this agreement ends.

1.11 Applicable law: This agreement is interpreted and enforced in accordance with the law of the place where the relevant Centre is located. All dispute resolution proceedings will be conducted in the country, state or province where the Centre is located. If any provision of these terms and conditions is held void or unenforceable under the applicable law, the other provisions shall remain in force. In the case of Japan all agreements will be interpreted and enforced by the Tokyo District Court, and in the case of France, any dispute regarding this agreement will be settled by the relevant courts of the Paris jurisdiction.

## **2. Services and Obligations**

2.1 Office accommodation(s): The Provider is to provide the number of serviced office accommodation(s) for which the Client has agreed to pay in the Centre stated in this agreement. This agreement lists the accommodation(s) the Provider has initially allocated for the Client's use. The Client will have a non-exclusive right to the rooms allocated to it. Occasionally the Provider may need to allocate different accommodation(s), but these accommodation(s) will be of reasonably equivalent size and the Provider will notify the Client with respect to such different accommodation(s) in advance.

2.2 Office Services: The Provider is to provide during normal opening hours the services, if requested, described in the relevant service description (which is available on request). If the Provider decides that a request for any particular service is excessive, it reserves the right to charge an additional fee.

2.3 THE PROVIDER'S IT: WHILST THE PROVIDER HAS INTERNET SECURITY PROTOCOLS, THE PROVIDER DOES NOT MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS AS TO THE SECURITY OF THE PROVIDER'S NETWORK (OR THE INTERNET) OR OF ANY INFORMATION THAT THE CLIENT PLACES ON IT. The Client should adopt whatever security measures (such as encryption) it believes are appropriate to its circumstances. The Provider cannot guarantee that a particular degree of availability will be attained in connection with the Client's use of the Provider's network (or the internet). The Client's sole and exclusive remedy shall be the remedy of such failure by the Provider within a reasonable time after written notice.

### **3. Providing the Services**

3.1 Access to the accommodation(s): The Provider may need to enter the Client's accommodation(s) and may do so at any time. However, unless there is an emergency or the Client has given notice to terminate, the Provider will attempt to notify the Client verbally or electronically in advance when the Provider needs access to carry out testing, repair or works other than routine inspection, cleaning and maintenance. The Provider will also endeavour to respect reasonable security procedures to protect the confidentiality of the Client's business.

3.2 Availability at the start of this agreement: If for any reason the Provider cannot provide the accommodation(s) stated in this agreement by the date when this agreement is due to start it has no liability to the Client for any loss or damages but the Client may cancel this agreement without penalty. The Provider will not charge the Client the monthly office fee for accommodation(s) the Client cannot use until it becomes available. The Provider may delay the start date of this agreement provided it provides to the Client alternative accommodation(s) that shall be at least of equivalent size to the accommodation(s) stated in this agreement.

---

#### **4. Accommodation(s)**

4.1 The Client must not alter any part of its accommodation and must take good care of all parts of the centre, its equipment, fixtures, fittings and furnishings which the Client uses. The Client is liable for any damage caused by it or those in the Centre with the Client's permission or at the Client's invitation whether express or implied, including but not limited to all employees, contractors, agents or other persons present on the premises.

4.2 Office equipment: The Client must not install any cabling, IT or telecom connections without the Provider's consent, which the Provider may refuse at its absolute discretion.

As a condition to the Provider's consent, the Client must permit the Provider to oversee any installations (for example IT or electrical systems) and to verify that such installations do not interfere with the use of the accommodation(s) by other Clients or the Provider or any landlord of the building.

4.3 Insurance: It is the Client's responsibility to arrange insurance for its own property which it brings in to the Centre and for its own liability to its employees and to third parties. The Provider strongly recommends that the Client put such insurance in place.

#### **5. Use**

5.1 The Client must only use the accommodation(s) for office purposes. Office use of a "retail" or "medical" nature, involving frequent visits by members of the public, is not permitted.

5.2 The Client must not carry on a business that competes with the Provider's business of providing serviced office accommodation(s) or its ancillary services.

5.3 The Client's name and address: The Client may only carry on that business in its name or some other name that the Provider previously agrees.

5.4 Use of the Centre Address: The Client may use the Centre address as its business address. Any other uses are prohibited without the Provider's prior written consent.

#### **6. Compliance**

6.1 Comply with the law: The Client and the Provider must comply with all relevant laws and regulations in the conduct of its business in relation to this agreement. The Client must do nothing illegal in connection with its use of the Business Centre. The Client must not do anything that may interfere with the use of the Centre by the Provider or by others, (including but not limited to political campaigning or immoral activity), cause any nuisance or annoyance, increase the insurance premiums the Provider has to pay, or cause loss or damage to the Provider (including damage to reputation) or to the owner of any interest in the building which contains the Centre the Client is using. Both the Client and the Provider shall comply at all times with all relevant anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws. 6.2 If the Provider has been advised by any government authority or other legislative body that it has reasonable suspicion that the Client is conducting criminal activities from the Centre then the Provider shall be entitled to terminate this agreement with immediate effect.

6.3 The Client acknowledges that (a) the terms of this clause are a material inducement in the Provider's execution of this agreement and (b) any violation by the Client of this clause shall constitute a material default by the Client hereunder, entitling the Provider to terminate this agreement, without further notice or procedure.

6.4 The Client acknowledges and accepts that its personal data may be transferred or made accessible to all entities of the Provider, wherever located, for the purposes of providing the services herein.

#### **7. The Provider's Liability**

7.1. The extent of the Provider's liability: To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, the Provider is not liable to the Client in respect of any loss or damage the Client suffers in connection with this agreement, with the services or with the Client's accommodation(s) unless the Provider has acted deliberately or negligently in causing that loss or damage. The Provider is not liable for any loss as a result of the Provider's failure to provide a service as a result of mechanical breakdown, strike, termination of the Provider's interest in the building containing the Centre or otherwise unless the Provider does so deliberately or is negligent. In no event shall the Provider be liable for any loss or damage until the Client provides the Provider written notice and gives the Provider a reasonable time to put it right. If the Provider is liable for failing to provide the Client with any service under this agreement then subject to the exclusions and limits set out immediately below the Provider will pay any actual and reasonable expenses the Client has incurred in obtaining that service from an alternative source. If the Client believes the Provider has failed to deliver a service consistent with these terms and conditions the Client shall provide the Provider written notice of such failure and give the Provider a reasonable period to put it right.

**7.2. EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL LOSSES, ETC.: THE PROVIDER WILL NOT IN ANY CIRCUMSTANCES HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF ANTICIPATED SAVINGS, LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO DATA, THIRD PARTY CLAIMS OR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL LOSS UNLESS the Provider OTHERWISE AGREES IN WRITING. THE PROVIDER STRONGLY ADVISES THE CLIENT TO INSURE AGAINST ALL SUCH POTENTIAL LOSS, DAMAGE, EXPENSE OR LIABILITY.**

7.3. Financial limits to the Provider's liability: In all cases, the Provider's liability to the Client is subject to the following limits:

- Without limit for personal injury or death;
- Up to a maximum of £1 million / USD\$2 million / €1.3 million (or local equivalent) for any one event or series of connected events for damage to the Client's personal property except in Turkey where it will be up to a maximum of the monthly office fee over the current term;
- Up to a maximum equal to 125% of the total fees paid between the date the Client moved into its accommodation(s) and the date on which the claim in question arises or £50,000 / USD\$100,000 / €66,000 (or local equivalent) whichever is the higher, in respect of any other loss or damage except in Turkey where it will be up to a maximum of the monthly office fee over the current term.

## **8. Fees**

8.1 Taxes and duty charges: The Client agrees to pay promptly (i) all sales, use, excise, consumption and any other taxes and license fees which it is required to pay to any governmental authority (and, at the Provider's request, will provide to the Provider evidence of such payment) and (ii) any taxes paid by the Provider to any governmental authority that are attributable to the accommodation(s), including, without limitation, any gross receipts, rent and occupancy taxes, tangible personal property taxes, stamp tax or other documentary taxes and fees.

8.2 Service Retainer/Deposit: The Client will be required to pay a service retainer/deposit equivalent to two months' of the monthly office fee (plus VAT/Tax where applicable) upon entering into this agreement unless a different amount is specified on the front of this agreement. This will be held by the Provider without generating interest as security for performance of all the Client's obligations under this agreement. The service retainer/deposit or any balance will be returned to the Client when the Client has settled its account which includes deducting outstanding fees and other costs due to the Provider.

8.3 The Provider may require the Client to pay an increased retainer if outstanding fees exceed the service retainer/deposit held and/or the Client frequently fails to pay the Provider when due.

8.4 Payment: The Provider is continually striving to reduce its environmental impact and supports its clients in doing the same. Therefore the Provider will send all invoices electronically (where allowed by law) and the Client will make payments via an automated method such as Direct Debit or Credit Card, wherever local banking systems permit unless another form of payment is offered to the Client as a qualified and current Key Account.

8.5 Late payment: If the Client does not pay fees when due, a fee will be charged on all overdue balances. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules. If the Client disputes any part of an invoice the Client must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to late fees. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Client access to its accommodation(s)) while there are any outstanding fees and/or interest or the Client is in breach of this agreement.

8.6 Insufficient Funds: The Client will pay a fee for any returned cheque or any other declined payments due to insufficient funds. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules.

8.7 If this agreement is for a term of more than 12 months, the Provider will increase the monthly office fee on each anniversary of the start date. This increase will be by the local Consumer Price Index or such other broadly equivalent index where a consumer price index is not available locally. If there is a negative index rate, prices will not be decreased. Renewals are calculated separately from annual indexation increases. Month to Month agreements will use the above stated index or the current month to month office price, whichever is the greater.

8.8 Standard services: The monthly office fee and any recurring services requested by the Client are payable monthly in advance. Unless otherwise agreed in writing, these recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of this Agreement (including any renewal). Specific due dates will differ by country and are listed in the House Rules. Where a daily rate applies,

---

the charge for any such month will be 30 times the daily fee. For a period of less than a month the fee will be applied on a daily basis.

8.9 Pay-as-you-use and Additional Variable Services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with the Provider's published rates which may change from time to time, are invoiced in arrears and payable the month following the calendar month in which the additional services were provided. Specific due dates will differ by country and are listed in the House Rules.

8.10 Discounts, Promotions and Offers: If the Client benefited from a special discount, promotion or offer, the Provider may discontinue that discount, promotion or offer without notice if the Client materially breaches these terms and conditions.

*Global Terms & Conditions, Iveber, Feb-16*

---

## HOUSE RULES | UNITED KINGDOM

*These are The Providers' House Rules which may change from time to time and which apply between The Provider and the Customer in relation to a Business Centre.*

### Accommodation

1. **Upon move in:** The Provider will ask the Customer to sign an inventory of all accommodation, furniture and equipment the Customer is permitted to use, together with a note of its condition, and details of the keys or entry cards issued to the Customer.
2. The Customer may not put up any signs on the doors of their accommodation or anywhere else that is visible from outside the rooms the Customer is using without written approval from the local Business Centre team. The Provider reserves the right to charge a fee for any signage and to specify its design to ensure it remains in keeping with the Centre's design.
3. **Taking care of the Provider's property:** the Customer must take good care of all parts of the Business Centre, its equipment, fittings and furnishings that they use. The Customer must not alter any part of it.
4. **Keys and security:** Any keys or entry cards which The Provider allows the Customer use remain the Provider's property at all times. The Customer must not make any copies of the keys and/or entry cards or allow anyone else to use them without the Provider's consent. Any loss must be reported to The Provider immediately and the Customer must pay a reasonable fee for replacement keys or cards and of changing locks, if required. This rule improves security levels of the Business Centre. If the Customer is permitted to use the Business Centre outside normal working hours it is the Customer's responsibility to lock the doors to their accommodation and to the Business Centre when they leave. This is to ensure the safety of individuals and property at the Business Centre.

### Use

5. The Customer shall not leave open any corridor doors, exit doors or door connecting corridors during or after business hours. For security purposes and if the Customer does so, it will be at the Customer's own risk. All corridors, halls, elevators and stairways shall not be obstructed by the Customer or used for any purpose other than egress and ingress. The Customer can only use public areas with the consent of the Provider and those areas must be kept neat and attractive at all times.
6. **The Customer's name and address:** At the Customer's request and cost, the Provider is happy to include the Customer's name in the house directory at the Business Centre, where this facility is available. The Customer must not use the name of the Provider in any way in connection with their business. The Customer may not use the Business Centre as the Customer's registered address for service-of-process.
7. The Customer's employees and guests shall conduct themselves in a businesslike manner; proper business attire shall be worn at all times; the noise level will be kept to a level so as not to interfere with or annoy other Customers and the Customer will abide by the Provider's directives regarding security, keys, parking and other such matters common to all occupants.
8. The Customer shall not, without the Provider prior written consent, store or operate in their office(s) or the Business Centre(s), any computer (excepting a personal computer) or any other large business machine, reproduction equipment, heating equipment, stove, radio, stereo equipment or other mechanical amplification equipment, vending or coin operated machine, refrigerator, boiler or coffee equipment. Additionally, the Customer must not conduct a mechanical business therein, do any cooking therein, or use or allow to be used in the building where the Business Centre is located, oil burning fluids, gasoline, kerosene for heating, warming or lighting. No article deemed hazardous on account of fire or any explosives shall be brought into the Business Centre. No offensive gases, odours or liquids shall be permitted. No firearms shall be permitted. The Business Centre is intended to be used solely for office use. The Provider may in its absolute discretion give prior approval to an alternative use of the Customer's accommodation (such approval to be in writing) and in the event that it does so references to "office" shall be construed accordingly.
9. The electrical current shall be used for ordinary lighting, powering personal computers and small appliances only unless written permission to do otherwise shall first have been obtained from the Provider at an agreed cost to the Customer. If the Customer requires any special installation or wiring for electrical use, telephone equipment or otherwise, such wiring shall be done at the Customer's expense by the personnel designated by the Provider.
10. The Customer may not conduct business in the hallways, reception area or any other area except in the Customer's designated office without the prior written consent of the Provider.
11. The Customer shall bring no animals into the building other than certified assistance animals.
12. **Kitchen amenities / Beverage fee:** allows the Customer and visitors access to self-service coffee and tea.
13. **Businessworld membership:** Your complimentary Businessworld membership can be used in any the Provider location outside of your home centre

where your office/virtual office is located. Use of the Lounges will be governed by the Businessworld Terms and Conditions which are conveniently located on [www.regus.co.uk](http://www.regus.co.uk).

*House Rules UK, May 15, MV*

14. The Customer shall not use the Business Centre for manufacturing or storage of merchandise except as such storage may be incidental to general office purposes. The Customer shall not occupy or permit any portion of the Business Centre to be occupied or used for the manufacture, sale, gift or use of liquor, narcotics or tobacco in any form.
15. No additional locks or bolts of any kind shall be placed upon any of the doors or windows of the Business Centre by the Customer nor shall any changes be made to existing locks or the mechanisms thereof.
16. Canvassing, soliciting and peddling in the building are prohibited and the Customer shall not solicit other Customers for any business or other purpose without the prior written approval of the Provider.
17. All property belonging to the Customer or any of the Customer's employee, agent or invitee shall be at the risk of such person only and the Provider shall not be liable for damages thereto or for theft or misappropriation thereof.
18. Smoking shall be prohibited in all public areas, including conference and training rooms. No smoking shall be permitted at any time in any area of the Business Centre (including open offices).
19. The Customer or the Customer's officers, directors, employees, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, contractors, customers, or invitees shall be prohibited from participating in any type of harassing, discriminatory or abusive behaviour to the Provider's team members, other Customers or invitees, verbal or physical in the Business Centre for any reason. Any breach of this rule is a material breach of your agreement (not capable of remedy) and your agreement may be terminated immediately and services will be suspended without further notice.
20. For Jersey only: Regus Jersey takes its legal and regulatory responsibilities seriously. All Clients are required to maintain a real physical presence at the Centre and must keep a valid licence held under the Regulation of Undertakings and Development (Jersey) Law 1973 (unless written confirmation is received from the Population Office that a licence is not required). In the event that either of these requirements (or other local legal and regulatory requirements) are, in the Provider's opinion, not met then your agreement will be deemed to be breached and may be terminated without further notice per the terms and conditions.

#### Services and Obligations

21. Furnished office accommodation: The Customer shall not affix anything to the windows, walls or any other part of the office or the Business Centre or make alterations or additions to the office or the Business Centre without the prior written consent of the Provider.
22. Office services: The Provider is happy to discuss special arrangements for the use of the facilities outside the Business Centre normal opening hours or, the normal working days where the Business Centre is located. There may be an additional charge for such special arrangements. This can be discussed at the time of arrangement.
23. All of the pay-as-you-use services are subject to the availability of the Business Centre staff at the time of any service request. The Provider will endeavour to deal with a service request at the earliest opportunity and provide the additional service the Customer requires, but the Provider will not be held responsible for any delay.
24. If in the Provider's opinion, the Provider decides that a request for any pay-as-you-use service is excessive; the Provider reserves the right to charge an additional fee at the Provider's usual published rates based on the time taken to complete the service. This will be discussed and agreed between the Provider and the Customer at the time the Customer makes such request.
25. Services will be available during normal opening hours. Internet access and phone lines are available after hours and weekends.

#### The Provider' Services Agreement

26. Nature of the Provider' Services Agreement: The Provider may assign the Services Agreement at any time without the Customer's consent. This clause reflects the fact that the Customer is taking a serviced office agreement and not a lease and that the Provider retains overall control of the Business Centre. The Customer has no real-property or commercial property interest of any kind in the building where the Business Centre is located. Where the Customer is a company and it merges with another or the Customer needs to allow an affiliate to use the services provided under the Services Agreement, the Customer will explain the need for any change to the Provider and the Provider will give careful consideration in each case. The Provider needs to be sure it knows, and is satisfied with, the identity of each occupant of the Business Centre.
27. Data protection: The Provider requests that the Customer provides, as and when requested by the Provider, documentation and personnel information as the Provider may reasonably require enabling the provision of the services. Such personal data will be used by the Provider in accordance with the law
28. Subordination: This agreement is subordinate to the Provider lease with the Provider landlord and to any other agreements to which the Provider's lease with the landlord is subordinate.
29. Annual indexation: For all agreements with a term greater than 12 months, the indexation applied of the All Items Retail Prices Index + 2% will be substituted by CPI or 2.8% whichever is the greater.

30. Cross default: The Customer agrees that, if they are in default under a service agreement with the Provider at a different business centre (“Different Location Agreement”) to the one specified in this Agreement, that the Provider may recover any unpaid sums due under a Different Location Agreement from the Customer under this Agreement and that the Provider may, in particular (but not limited to), withhold services under this Agreement or deduct sums from the retainer held under this Agreement in respect of such unpaid sums.
31. Company Name Change: If there is a need to change the name of your company, requests must be made in writing and addressed to the Centre Manager. Please note that these requests will be processed 60 days from the beginning of the next calendar month. Any invoices prior will be in the current company name and cannot be changed.

#### Fees

32. Standard services: The standard fee and any fixed, recurring services requested by the Customer are billed in advance and payable upon receipt of invoice. Where a daily rate applies, the charge for any such month will be 30 times the standard fee. For a period of less than a month the standard fee will be applied on a daily basis. Recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of your Agreement (including any renewal). If a Customer has a need to cancel a recurring service they may request this at any time up to the notification due date of the agreement. The cancellation will be applied from the first day of the renewal start.
33. Pay-as-you-use and additional variable services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with our published rates which may change from time to time, are billed in arrears and payable upon receipt of invoice.
34. Office set up: An office set up fee of £55 will be charged for each occupant.
35. Office restoration fee: A fee of £20 per sqm for each occupied office will be charged upon the Customer’s departure or if the Customer, at the Customer’s option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear.
36. Business continuity service: All Customers will be automatically entered into a standard Virtual Office Agreement for 3 months upon departure from The Provider, to cover the management and redirection of mail, fax, calls and visitors. (Upon departure to comply with current money laundering regulations 2007, personal identification will be required in order to continue utilising your the Provider address and mail handling services).
37. This fee will be charged at the current market rate. Prices can be obtained upon request.
38. Late payment and penalty: All invoices are due upon receipt. Late fee dates will vary based on the type of service/invoice that is provided. At any time, the Customer may ask the centre team on what date a late fee will be assessed. If the Customer does not pay fees when due, a service fee of £25 plus 5% penalty will be charged on all overdue balances under £500. For balances equal to or greater than £500 a fee of £50 plus 5% penalty will apply. If the Customer disputes any part of an invoice, the Customer must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to such late fee and penalty. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Customer access to the Customer’s accommodation) while there are any outstanding fees, penalties and interest or the Customer is in breach of the Service Agreement which, for the avoidance of doubt, includes these House Rules.
39. Insufficient funds: The Customer will pay a fee of £35 or the maximum amount permitted by law for any returned payments due to insufficient funds. Furthermore, should any change be made from a direct debit payment process, a £35 fee will apply.
40. Taxes: The Customer will pay all current taxes paid by the Provider to any government authority. This currently applies to the Carbon Levy and VAT.

#### Liability

41. Mail: The Customer releases the Provider from any liability arising out of or incurred in connection with any mail or packages received on the Customer’s behalf.

#### Force Majeure

42. The Provider shall have no liability to the Customer under this agreement if it is prevented from, or delayed in, performing its obligations under this agreement or from carrying on its business by acts, events, omissions or accidents beyond its reasonable control, including (without limitation) strikes, failure of a utility service or transport network, act of God, war, riot, civil commotion, malicious damage, disease or quarantine restrictions compliance with any law or governmental order, rule, regulation or direction, accident, fire, flood, storm or default of suppliers or subcontractors. The Provider’s obligation to perform its obligations shall be suspended during the period required to remove such force majeure event.

The Provider shall notify the Customer as soon as reasonably possible of the force majeure event and propose a suitable alternative accommodation (if any) in the same Business Centre or in another available business centre.

## IT and technology policy

### 43. Introduction

This Policy forms part of the The Provider's Internet IT & Connectivity order and applies where the Customer wishes to use The Provider's Telecommunication and Internet connectivity services and equipment.

The Provider is considered a Downstream Service Provider (DSP), which means The Provider provides a personalised connection to the Internet which is managed and protected via a firewall.

- The Provider's Internet service provides the Customer with an Internet connection that provides regular business activity such as web browsing, the ability to send and receive electronic communications, access to business applications and like.
- The Provider's Internet service is based on a symmetrical leased line connection or similar technology that is shared with other individual Provider's Customers within the same Provider's office building.
- The Provider can provide the Customer with dedicated leased line connectivity various capacities subject to availability. This provides an uncontended, symmetrical connection of the selected Customer bandwidth. The service provides one (1) public IP address with the facility to purchase and deploy additional IP addresses.
- The service provides the Customer with the following capability:
  - The ability to deploy public IP addressing.
  - The option to run server based solutions that require inbound connectivity (e.g. an FTP, web or mail server).
  - The option to run "site to site" VPN connections.
  - The Customer is also able to deploy its own "firewall" to manage its own LAN and VPN connections should the Customer wishes to do so.

### 44. The Provider's Internet and Telecommunications Policy

- a. Content. The Customer acknowledges that the Provider does not monitor the content of information transmitted through the Provider's telecommunications lines or equipment, which includes, but is not limited to, Internet access, telephone, fax lines and data lines ("Telecommunications Lines"). The Customer further acknowledges that the Provider is merely providing a conduit for Customer's Internet transmissions, similar to a telephone company, and that the Provider accepts no liability for the content of transmissions by the Customer.
- b. Restrictions. The Provider's Internet service may be used only for lawful purposes and shall not be used in connection with any criminal or civil violations of state, federal, or international laws, regulations, or other government requirements. Such violations include without limitation theft or infringement of copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets, or other types of intellectual property; fraud; forgery; theft or misappropriation of funds, credit cards, or personal information; violation of export control laws or regulations; libel or defamation; threats of physical harm or harassment; or any conduct that constitutes a criminal offence or gives rise to civil liability. The Customer is responsible for maintaining the basic security and virus protection of the Customer's systems to prevent their use by others in a manner that violates the Service Agreement. The Customer is responsible for taking corrective actions on vulnerable or exploited systems to prevent continued abuse.
- c. The Provider's Internet access - Per user basis. The Provider grants the Customer access to the the Provider's Internet service on a per user access basis. In the event of the Customer increasing the number of users by utilising a gateway device (router, firewall etc) or by other means, the Customer agrees to pay the The Provider's fee for each user who accesses the Internet, either directly or through a gateway device.
- d. Unauthorised access. In no event may the Customer increase its authorised access points to the Telecommunications/Data lines by means of wire splitting or any other method including wireless devices. In the event of the Customer breaching paragraph 44.c (the Provider's Internet Access — Per User Basis), above, or this paragraph, the Provider may disconnect all of the Customer's access to the Telecommunications/Data lines upon three (3) business days prior written notice to the Customer. The Customer shall pay all the Provider's fees for any unauthorised Telecommunications/Data Lines use upon invoice from the Provider. The Provider shall have no obligation to reconnect the Customer to the Telecommunications/Data Lines until such fees have been paid in full and the Customer has ceased to make unauthorised access.
- e. Customer installed telecommunications lines. It is part of the The Provider business model to provide Telecommunications Lines to its Customers. The Customer may not bypass the use of the The Provider Telecommunications Lines by installing its own direct Telecommunications Lines. On a case by case basis, The Provider may grant the Customer authorisation to install direct Telecommunications Lines upon written request by the Customer. This permission will only be granted on the agreement of the Customer, to make a monthly payment of a direct access fee as set by the Provider which will be equal to the monthly Provider's Internet fee, the telecoms package fee or both.
- f. Security violations. The Customer is prohibited from engaging in any violations of system or network security. The Provider's Internet service may not be used in connection with attempts - whether or not successful - to violate the security of a network, service, or other system. Examples of prohibited activities include, without limitation, hacking, cracking into, monitoring, or using systems without authorization; scanning ports; conducting denial of service attacks; and distributing viruses or other harmful software. The Provider reserves the right to suspend the Internet access upon notification from a recognized Internet authority or ISP regarding such abuse. The Provider may disconnect the Customer's equipment and withhold services if the Provider

considers that the Customer's hardware or software is, or has become, inappropriate for connection to the Provider's network. The Customer is responsible for the Customer's own virus protection on the Customer's systems and hardware.

- g. The Provider's Internet services are only available at the Provider locations and connection to the Provider's network is only permitted at those locations or via the Provider's provided services. The Customer must not create any links between the Provider's network and any other network or any telecommunications service without the Provider's consent.
- h. Revisions to this policy. The Provider may modify this Policy at any time, with or without notice.
- i. Special requirements:
  - Where the Customer is using its own wireless access points, the Customer requires written approval from The Provider, prior to implementation. The use of the Customer's own wireless router will result in a service charge based upon the total number of contracted work stations in the Customer's designated office space.
  - It is to note that the following ports are blocked through the Provider's firewall for outbound traffic: H323, Napster\_8888, Nbdatagram, Nbname, RealPlayer-grp, TCP-135, TCP-139, TCP-1433, TCP-1434, UDP-1434.
  - Video conferencing services are not allowed on the Provider's Data Network without written approval from the Provider's IT Director. If approval is gained then the Customer will be required to take Reserved Bandwidth to support the solution.
  - The Provider's Mail relay server is limited to 128 recipients / 32MB per message. It cannot be used as a smarthost.
- j. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS. As part of its services to the Customer, the Provider may provide third party Internet access and computer hardware and software ("Third Party Services"). THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, FOR SUCH THIRD PARTY SERVICES. THE CUSTOMER ACKNOWLEDGES THAT NO REPRESENTATION HAS BEEN MADE BY THE PROVIDER AS TO THE FITNESS OF THE THIRD PARTY SERVICES FOR THE CUSTOMER'S INTENDED PURPOSE.
- k. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THE CUSTOMER'S EQUIPMENT. ALL CUSTOMER EQUIPMENT STORED IN THE PROVIDER'S TELECOMMUNICATIONS ROOM IS STORED AT CUSTOMER'S OWN RISK. THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY FOR SUCH EQUIPMENT AND SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSSES OR DAMAGE TO SUCH EQUIPMENT.
- l. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES FROM LOSS OF SERVICE. The Provider does not provide any service level agreement to the Customer in regard to provision or loss of service for its Internet services. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from any loss of service or degradation of connectivity/access to the Internet with the Service Agreement, even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.
- m. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from the Service Agreement even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.



English (UK)

Agreement Date : 26 October 2016

Reference No : 24576-1024712

**Business Centre Details****LONDON, London Bridge - More London**

**Address** 3 More London Riverside  
London  
Greater London  
SE1 2RE  
United Kingdom

**Sales Manager** Max Chapman**Client Details****Company Name** VERONA PHARMA PLC**Contact Name** Morgan Piers

**Address** One Central Sq  
Cardiff  
CF10 1FS  
United Kingdom

**Phone** + () 07775730370**Email** XXXX@veronapharma.com**Office Payment Details (exc.VAT and exc. services)**

Office Number	Number of people	Price per Office
144	6	£ 5,620.28
<b>Initial Payment :</b>		<b>First month's fee :</b> £ 5,620.28
		<b>Service Deposit :</b> £ 11,240.56
		<b>Total Initial Payment :</b> £ 16,860.84

**Service Provision :** **Start Date** 1 December 2016 **End Date** 30 November 2017

All agreements end on the last calendar day of the month.

**Comments:**

\* Additional Office Fee Discount - Total Savings of £ 5,864.64

**Terms and Conditions**

We are Regus Management (UK) Limited, the "Provider". This Agreement incorporates our terms of business set out on attached Terms and Conditions, attached House Rules and Service Price Guide (where available) which you confirm you have read and understood. We both agree to comply with those terms and our obligations as set out in them. This agreement is binding from the agreement date and may not be terminated once it is made, except in accordance with its terms. Note that the Agreement does not come to an end automatically. See "Cancellation" section of your terms and conditions

Name (printed): /s/ PJ MorganTitle (printed): CFODate: 26 October 2016**SIGNED on your behalf (Client)**

We and our preferred partners would like to keep you informed of the latest product news, special offers and other marketing information. If you would like to receive this information then select this box.



## 1. This Agreement

1.1 Nature of this agreement: This agreement is the commercial equivalent of an agreement for accommodation(s) in a hotel. The whole of the Centre remains in the Provider's possession and control. THE CLIENT ACCEPTS THAT THIS AGREEMENT CREATES NO TENANCY INTEREST, LEASEHOLD ESTATE OR OTHER REAL PROPERTY INTEREST IN THE CLIENT'S FAVOUR WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCOMMODATION(S). The Provider is giving the Client the right to share with the Provider the use of the Centre on these terms and conditions, as supplemented by the House Rules, so that the Provider can provide the services to the Client. This Agreement is personal to the Client and cannot be transferred to anyone else without prior consent from the Provider unless such transfer is required by law. The Provider will not unreasonably withhold its consent to assignment to a parent, subsidiary or affiliate of Client provided that Client and assignee execute the Provider's form of Assignment of License Agreement which will require assignee to assume all Client obligations and will not release the Client. This agreement is composed of the front page describing the accommodation(s), the present terms and conditions, the House Rules and the Service Price Guide (where available).

1.2 Comply with House Rules: The Client must comply with any House Rules which the Provider imposes generally on users of the Centre. The House Rules vary from country to country and from Centre to Centre and these can be requested locally.

1.3 **AUTOMATIC RENEWAL: THIS AGREEMENT LASTS FOR THE PERIOD STATED IN IT AND THEN WILL BE EXTENDED AUTOMATICALLY FOR SUCCESSIVE PERIODS EQUAL TO THE CURRENT TERM BUT NO LESS THAN 3 MONTHS (UNLESS LEGAL RENEWAL TERM LIMITS APPLY) UNTIL TERMINATED BY THE CLIENT OR BY THE PROVIDER PURSUANT TO SECTION 1.4. ALL PERIODS SHALL RUN TO THE LAST DAY OF THE MONTH IN WHICH THEY WOULD OTHERWISE EXPIRE. THE FEES ON ANY RENEWAL WILL BE AT THE THEN PREVAILING MARKET RATE. THIS CLAUSE DOES NOT APPLY TO MONTH TO MONTH AGREEMENTS.**

1.4 **CANCELLATION: EITHER THE PROVIDER OR THE CLIENT CAN TERMINATE THIS AGREEMENT AT THE END DATE STATED IN IT, OR AT THE END OF ANY EXTENSION OR RENEWAL PERIOD, BY GIVING AT LEAST THREE MONTHS WRITTEN NOTICE TO THE OTHER. HOWEVER, IF THIS AGREEMENT, EXTENSION OR RENEWAL IS FOR THREE MONTHS OR LESS AND EITHER THE PROVIDER OR THE CLIENT WISHES TO TERMINATE IT, THE NOTICE PERIOD IS TWO MONTHS OR (IF TWO MONTHS OR SHORTER) ONE WEEK LESS THAN THE PERIOD STATED IN THIS AGREEMENT. IF THE CLIENT IS ON A MONTH TO MONTH AGREEMENT EITHER PARTY MAY TERMINATE THIS AGREEMENT BY GIVING NO LESS THAN ONE MONTHS' NOTICE TO THE OTHER (EFFECTIVE FROM THE START OF ANY CALENDAR MONTH).**

1.5 Ending this agreement immediately: To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, the Provider may put an end to this agreement immediately by giving the Client notice and without need to follow any additional procedure if (a) the Client becomes insolvent, bankrupt, goes into liquidation or becomes unable to pay its debts as they fall due, or (b) the Client is in breach of one of its obligations which cannot be put right or which the Provider have given the Client notice to put right and which the Client has failed to put right within fourteen (14) days of that notice, or (c) its conduct, or that of someone at the Centre with its permission or invitation, is incompatible with ordinary office use and (i) such conduct is repeated despite the Client having been given a warning or (ii) such conduct is material enough (in the Provider's opinion) to warrant immediate termination.

If the Provider puts an end to this agreement for any of these reasons it does not put an end to any outstanding obligations, including additional services used, requested or required under the agreement and the monthly office fee for the remainder of the period for which this agreement would have lasted if the Provider had not ended it.

1.6 If the Centre is no longer available: In the event that the Provider is permanently unable to provide the services and accommodation(s) at the Centre stated in this agreement then this agreement will end and the Client will only have to pay monthly office fees up to the date it ends and for the additional services the Client has used. The Provider will try to find suitable alternative accommodation(s) for the Client at another Provider Centre.

1.7 When this agreement ends the Client is to vacate the accommodation(s) immediately, leaving the accommodation(s) in the same condition as it was when the Client took it. Upon the Client's departure or if the Client, at its option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre, the Provider will charge an Office Restoration Service fee to cover normal cleaning and testing and to return the accommodation(s) to its original state. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear. If the Client leaves any property in the Centre the Provider may dispose of it at the Client's cost in any way the Provider chooses without owing the Client any responsibility for it or any proceeds of sale. If the Client continues to use the accommodation(s) when this agreement has ended the Client is responsible for any loss, claim or liability the Provider incurs as a result of the Client's failure to vacate on time. The Provider may, at its discretion, permit the Client an extension subject to a surcharge on the monthly office fee.

1.8 Employees: While this agreement is in force and for a period of six months after it ends, neither the Provider nor the Client may knowingly solicit or offer employment to any of the other's staff employed in the Centre. This obligation applies to any employee employed at the Centre up to that employee's termination of employment, and for three months thereafter. It is stipulated that the breaching party shall pay the non-breaching party the equivalent of six months' salary for any employee concerned. Nothing in this clause shall prevent either party from employing an individual who responds in good faith and independently to an advertisement which is made to the public at large.

1.9 Notices: All formal notices must be in writing, which may include by email, to the address first written above.

1.10 Confidentiality: The terms of this agreement are confidential. Neither the Provider nor the Client must disclose them without the other's consent unless required to do so by law or an official authority. This obligation continues for a period of 3 years after this agreement ends.

1.11 Applicable law: This agreement is interpreted and enforced in accordance with the law of the place where the relevant Centre is located. All dispute resolution proceedings will be conducted in the country, state or province where the Centre is located. If any provision of these terms and conditions is held void or unenforceable under the applicable law, the other provisions shall remain in force. In the case of Japan all agreements will be interpreted and enforced by the Tokyo District Court, and in the case of France, any dispute regarding this agreement will be settled by the relevant courts of the Paris jurisdiction.

## **2. Services and Obligations**

2.1 Office accommodation(s): The Provider is to provide the number of serviced office accommodation(s) for which the Client has agreed to pay in the Centre stated in this agreement. This agreement lists the accommodation(s) the Provider has initially allocated for the Client's use. The Client will have a non-exclusive right to the rooms allocated to it. Occasionally the Provider may need to allocate different accommodation(s), but these accommodation(s) will be of reasonably equivalent size and the Provider will notify the Client with respect to such different accommodation(s) in advance.

2.2 Office Services: The Provider is to provide during normal opening hours the services, if requested, described in the relevant service description (which is available on request). If the Provider decides that a request for any particular service is excessive, it reserves the right to charge an additional fee.

2.3 THE PROVIDER'S IT: WHILST THE PROVIDER HAS INTERNET SECURITY PROTOCOLS, THE PROVIDER DOES NOT MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS AS TO THE SECURITY OF THE PROVIDER'S NETWORK (OR THE INTERNET) OR OF ANY INFORMATION THAT THE CLIENT PLACES ON IT. The Client should adopt whatever security measures (such as encryption) it believes are appropriate to its circumstances. The Provider cannot guarantee that a particular degree of availability will be attained in connection with the Client's use of the Provider's network (or the internet). The Client's sole and exclusive remedy shall be the remedy of such failure by the Provider within a reasonable time after written notice.

## **3. Providing the Services**

3.1 Access to the accommodation(s): The Provider may need to enter the Client's accommodation(s) and may do so at any time. However, unless there is an emergency or the Client has given notice to terminate, the Provider will attempt to notify the Client verbally or electronically in advance when the Provider needs access to carry out testing, repair or works other than routine inspection, cleaning and maintenance. The Provider will also endeavour to respect reasonable security procedures to protect the confidentiality of the Client's business.

3.2 Availability at the start of this agreement: If for any reason the Provider cannot provide the accommodation(s) stated in this agreement by the date when this agreement is due to start it has no liability to the Client for any loss or damages but the Client may cancel this agreement without penalty. The Provider will not charge the Client the monthly office fee for accommodation(s) the Client cannot use until it becomes available. The Provider may delay the start date of this agreement provided it provides to the Client alternative accommodation(s) that shall be at least of equivalent size to the accommodation(s) stated in this agreement.

---

#### **4. Accommodation(s)**

4.1 The Client must not alter any part of its accommodation and must take good care of all parts of the centre, its equipment, fixtures, fittings and furnishings which the Client uses. The Client is liable for any damage caused by it or those in the Centre with the Client's permission or at the Client's invitation whether express or implied, including but not limited to all employees, contractors, agents or other persons present on the premises.

4.2 Office equipment: The Client must not install any cabling, IT or telecom connections without the Provider's consent, which the Provider may refuse at its absolute discretion.

As a condition to the Provider's consent, the Client must permit the Provider to oversee any installations (for example IT or electrical systems) and to verify that such installations do not interfere with the use of the accommodation(s) by other Clients or the Provider or any landlord of the building.

4.3 Insurance: It is the Client's responsibility to arrange insurance for its own property which it brings in to the Centre and for its own liability to its employees and to third parties. The Provider strongly recommends that the Client put such insurance in place.

#### **5. Use**

5.1 The Client must only use the accommodation(s) for office purposes. Office use of a "retail" or "medical" nature, involving frequent visits by members of the public, is not permitted.

5.2 The Client must not carry on a business that competes with the Provider's business of providing serviced office accommodation(s) or its ancillary services.

5.3 The Client's name and address: The Client may only carry on that business in its name or some other name that the Provider previously agrees.

5.4 Use of the Centre Address: The Client may use the Centre address as its business address. Any other uses are prohibited without the Provider's prior written consent.

#### **6. Compliance**

6.1 Comply with the law: The Client and the Provider must comply with all relevant laws and regulations in the conduct of its business in relation to this agreement. The Client must do nothing illegal in connection with its use of the Business Centre. The Client must not do anything that may interfere with the use of the Centre by the Provider or by others, (including but not limited to political campaigning or immoral activity), cause any nuisance or annoyance, increase the insurance premiums the Provider has to pay, or cause loss or damage to the Provider (including damage to reputation) or to the owner of any interest in the building which contains the Centre the Client is using. Both the Client and the Provider shall comply at all times with all relevant anti-bribery and anti-corruption laws. 6.2 If the Provider has been advised by any government authority or other legislative body that it has reasonable suspicion that the Client is conducting criminal activities from the Centre then the Provider shall be entitled to terminate this agreement with immediate effect.

6.3 The Client acknowledges that (a) the terms of this clause are a material inducement in the Provider's execution of this agreement and (b) any violation by the Client of this clause shall constitute a material default by the Client hereunder, entitling the Provider to terminate this agreement, without further notice or procedure.

6.4 The Client acknowledges and accepts that its personal data may be transferred or made accessible to all entities of the Provider, wherever located, for the purposes of providing the services herein.

#### **7. The Provider's Liability**

7.1. The extent of the Provider's liability: To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, the Provider is not liable to the Client in respect of any loss or damage the Client suffers in connection with this agreement, with the services or with the Client's accommodation(s) unless the Provider has acted deliberately or negligently in causing that loss or damage. the Provider is not liable for any loss as a result of the Provider's failure to provide a service as a result of mechanical breakdown, strike, termination of the Provider's interest in the building containing the Centre or otherwise unless the Provider does so deliberately or is negligent. In no event shall the Provider be liable for any loss or damage until the Client provides the Provider written notice and gives the Provider a reasonable time to put it right. If the Provider is liable for failing to provide the Client with any service under this agreement then subject to the exclusions and limits set out immediately below the Provider will pay any actual and reasonable expenses the Client has incurred in obtaining that service from an alternative source. If the Client believes the Provider has failed to deliver a service consistent with these terms and conditions the Client shall provide the Provider written notice of such failure and give the Provider a reasonable period to put it right.

**7.2. EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL LOSSES, ETC.: THE PROVIDER WILL NOT IN ANY CIRCUMSTANCES HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF ANTICIPATED SAVINGS, LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO DATA, THIRD PARTY CLAIMS OR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL LOSS UNLESS the Provider OTHERWISE AGREES IN WRITING. THE PROVIDER STRONGLY ADVISES THE CLIENT TO INSURE AGAINST ALL SUCH POTENTIAL LOSS, DAMAGE, EXPENSE OR LIABILITY.**

7.3. Financial limits to the Provider's liability: In all cases, the Provider's liability to the Client is subject to the following limits:

- Without limit for personal injury or death;
- Up to a maximum of £1 million / USD\$2 million / €1.3 million (or local equivalent) for any one event or series of connected events for damage to the Client's personal property except in Turkey where it will be up to a maximum of the monthly office fee over the current term;

- Up to a maximum equal to 125% of the total fees paid between the date the Client moved into its accommodation(s) and the date on which the claim in question arises or £50,000 / US\$100,000 / €66,000 (or local equivalent) whichever is the higher, in respect of any other loss or damage except in Turkey where it will be up to a maximum of the monthly office fee over the current term.

## **8. Fees**

8.1 Taxes and duty charges: The Client agrees to pay promptly (i) all sales, use, excise, consumption and any other taxes and license fees which it is required to pay to any governmental authority (and, at the Provider's request, will provide to the Provider evidence of such payment) and (ii) any taxes paid by the Provider to any governmental authority that are attributable to the accommodation(s), including, without limitation, any gross receipts, rent and occupancy taxes, tangible personal property taxes, stamp tax or other documentary taxes and fees.

8.2 Service Retainer/Deposit: The Client will be required to pay a service retainer/deposit equivalent to two months' of the monthly office fee (plus VAT/Tax where applicable) upon entering into this agreement unless a different amount is specified on the front of this agreement. This will be held by the Provider without generating interest as security for performance of all the Client's obligations under this agreement. The service retainer/deposit or any balance will be returned to the Client when the Client has settled its account which includes deducting outstanding fees and other costs due to the Provider.

8.3 The Provider may require the Client to pay an increased retainer if outstanding fees exceed the service retainer/deposit held and/or the Client frequently fails to pay the Provider when due.

8.4 Payment: The Provider is continually striving to reduce its environmental impact and supports its clients in doing the same. Therefore the Provider will send all invoices electronically (where allowed by law) and the Client will make payments via an automated method such as Direct Debit or Credit Card, wherever local banking systems permit unless another form of payment is offered to the Client as a qualified and current Key Account.

8.5 Late payment: If the Client does not pay fees when due, a fee will be charged on all overdue balances. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules. If the Client disputes any part of an invoice the Client must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to late fees. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Client access to its accommodation(s)) while there are any outstanding fees and/or interest or the Client is in breach of this agreement.

8.6 Insufficient Funds: The Client will pay a fee for any returned cheque or any other declined payments due to insufficient funds. This fee will differ by country and is listed in the House Rules.

8.7 If this agreement is for a term of more than 12 months, the Provider will increase the monthly office fee on each anniversary of the start date. This increase will be by the local Consumer Price Index or such other broadly equivalent index where a consumer price index is not available locally. If there is a negative index rate, prices will not be decreased. Renewals are calculated separately from annual indexation increases. Month to Month agreements will use the above stated index or the current month to month office price, whichever is the greater.

8.8 Standard services: The monthly office fee and any recurring services requested by the Client are payable monthly in advance. Unless otherwise agreed in writing, these recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of this Agreement (including any renewal). Specific due dates will differ by country and are listed in the House Rules. Where a daily rate applies,

---

the charge for any such month will be 30 times the daily fee. For a period of less than a month the fee will be applied on a daily basis.

8.9 Pay-as-you-use and Additional Variable Services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with the Provider's published rates which may change from time to time, are invoiced in arrears and payable the month following the calendar month in which the additional services were provided. Specific due dates will differ by country and are listed in the House Rules.

8.10 Discounts, Promotions and Offers: If the Client benefited from a special discount, promotion or offer, the Provider may discontinue that discount, promotion or offer without notice if the Client materially breaches these terms and conditions.

*Global Terms & Conditions, Iveber, Feb-16*

---

## HOUSE RULES | UNITED KINGDOM

*These are The Providers' House Rules which may change from time to time and which apply between The Provider and the Customer in relation to a Business Centre.*

### Accommodation

1. **Upon move in:** The Provider will ask the Customer to sign an inventory of all accommodation, furniture and equipment the Customer is permitted to use, together with a note of its condition, and details of the keys or entry cards issued to the Customer.
2. The Customer may not put up any signs on the doors of their accommodation or anywhere else that is visible from outside the rooms the Customer is using without written approval from the local Business Centre team. The Provider reserves the right to charge a fee for any signage and to specify its design to ensure it remains in keeping with the Centre's design.
3. **Taking care of the Provider's property:** the Customer must take good care of all parts of the Business Centre, its equipment, fittings and furnishings that they use. The Customer must not alter any part of it.
4. **Keys and security:** Any keys or entry cards which The Provider allows the Customer use remain the Provider's property at all times. The Customer must not make any copies of the keys and/or entry cards or allow anyone else to use them without the Provider's consent. Any loss must be reported to The Provider immediately and the Customer must pay a reasonable fee for replacement keys or cards and of changing locks, if required. This rule improves security levels of the Business Centre. If the Customer is permitted to use the Business Centre outside normal working hours it is the Customer's responsibility to lock the doors to their accommodation and to the Business Centre when they leave. This is to ensure the safety of individuals and property at the Business Centre.

### Use

5. The Customer shall not leave open any corridor doors, exit doors or door connecting corridors during or after business hours. For security purposes and if the Customer does so, it will be at the Customer's own risk. All corridors, halls, elevators and stairways shall not be obstructed by the Customer or used for any purpose other than egress and ingress. The Customer can only use public areas with the consent of the Provider and those areas must be kept neat and attractive at all times.
6. **The Customer's name and address:** At the Customer's request and cost, the Provider is happy to include the Customer's name in the house directory at the Business Centre, where this facility is available. The Customer must not use the name of the Provider in any way in connection with their business. The Customer may not use the Business Centre as the Customer's registered address for service-of-process.
7. The Customer's employees and guests shall conduct themselves in a businesslike manner; proper business attire shall be worn at all times; the noise level will be kept to a level so as not to interfere with or annoy other Customers and the Customer will abide by the Provider's directives regarding security, keys, parking and other such matters common to all occupants.
8. The Customer shall not, without the Provider prior written consent, store or operate in their office(s) or the Business Centre(s), any computer (excepting a personal computer) or any other large business machine, reproduction equipment, heating equipment, stove, radio, stereo equipment or other mechanical amplification equipment, vending or coin operated machine, refrigerator, boiler or coffee equipment. Additionally, the Customer must not conduct a mechanical business therein, do any cooking therein, or use or allow to be used in the building where the Business Centre is located, oil burning fluids, gasoline, kerosene for heating, warming or lighting. No article deemed hazardous on account of fire or any explosives shall be brought into the Business Centre. No offensive gases, odours or liquids shall be permitted. No firearms shall be permitted. The Business Centre is intended to be used solely for office use. The Provider may in its absolute discretion give prior approval to an alternative use of the Customer's accommodation (such approval to be in writing) and in the event that it does so references to "office" shall be construed accordingly.
9. The electrical current shall be used for ordinary lighting, powering personal computers and small appliances only unless written permission to do otherwise shall first have been obtained from the Provider at an agreed cost to the Customer. If the Customer requires any special installation or wiring for electrical use, telephone equipment or otherwise, such wiring shall be done at the Customer's expense by the personnel designated by the Provider.
10. The Customer may not conduct business in the hallways, reception area or any other area except in the Customer's designated office without the prior written consent of the Provider.
11. The Customer shall bring no animals into the building other than certified assistance animals.
12. **Kitchen amenities / Beverage fee:** allows the Customer and visitors access to self-service coffee and tea.
13. **Businessworld membership:** Your complimentary Businessworld membership can be used in any the Provider location outside of your home centre

where your office/virtual office is located. Use of the Lounges will be governed by the Businessworld Terms and Conditions which are conveniently located on [www.regus.co.uk](http://www.regus.co.uk).

*House Rules UK, May 15, MV*

14. The Customer shall not use the Business Centre for manufacturing or storage of merchandise except as such storage may be incidental to general office purposes. The Customer shall not occupy or permit any portion of the Business Centre to be occupied or used for the manufacture, sale, gift or use of liquor, narcotics or tobacco in any form.
15. No additional locks or bolts of any kind shall be placed upon any of the doors or windows of the Business Centre by the Customer nor shall any changes be made to existing locks or the mechanisms thereof.
16. Canvassing, soliciting and peddling in the building are prohibited and the Customer shall not solicit other Customers for any business or other purpose without the prior written approval of the Provider.
17. All property belonging to the Customer or any of the Customer's employee, agent or invitee shall be at the risk of such person only and the Provider shall not be liable for damages thereto or for theft or misappropriation thereof.
18. Smoking shall be prohibited in all public areas, including conference and training rooms. No smoking shall be permitted at any time in any area of the Business Centre (including open offices).
19. The Customer or the Customer's officers, directors, employees, shareholders, partners, agents, representatives, contractors, customers, or invitees shall be prohibited from participating in any type of harassing, discriminatory or abusive behaviour to the Provider's team members, other Customers or invitees, verbal or physical in the Business Centre for any reason. Any breach of this rule is a material breach of your agreement (not capable of remedy) and your agreement may be terminated immediately and services will be suspended without further notice.
20. For Jersey only: Regus Jersey takes its legal and regulatory responsibilities seriously. All Clients are required to maintain a real physical presence at the Centre and must keep a valid licence held under the Regulation of Undertakings and Development (Jersey) Law 1973 (unless written confirmation is received from the Population Office that a licence is not required). In the event that either of these requirements (or other local legal and regulatory requirements) are, in the Provider's opinion, not met then your agreement will be deemed to be breached and may be terminated without further notice per the terms and conditions.

#### Services and Obligations

21. Furnished office accommodation: The Customer shall not affix anything to the windows, walls or any other part of the office or the Business Centre or make alterations or additions to the office or the Business Centre without the prior written consent of the Provider.
22. Office services: The Provider is happy to discuss special arrangements for the use of the facilities outside the Business Centre normal opening hours or, the normal working days where the Business Centre is located. There may be an additional charge for such special arrangements. This can be discussed at the time of arrangement.
23. All of the pay-as-you-use services are subject to the availability of the Business Centre staff at the time of any service request. The Provider will endeavour to deal with a service request at the earliest opportunity and provide the additional service the Customer requires, but the Provider will not be held responsible for any delay.
24. If in the Provider's opinion, the Provider decides that a request for any pay-as-you-use service is excessive; the Provider reserves the right to charge an additional fee at the Provider's usual published rates based on the time taken to complete the service. This will be discussed and agreed between the Provider and the Customer at the time the Customer makes such request.
25. Services will be available during normal opening hours. Internet access and phone lines are available after hours and weekends.

#### The Provider' Services Agreement

26. Nature of the Provider' Services Agreement: The Provider may assign the Services Agreement at any time without the Customer's consent. This clause reflects the fact that the Customer is taking a serviced office agreement and not a lease and that the Provider retains overall control of the Business Centre. The Customer has no real-property or commercial property interest of any kind in the building where the Business Centre is located. Where the Customer is a company and it merges with another or the Customer needs to allow an affiliate to use the services provided under the Services Agreement, the Customer will explain the need for any change to the Provider and the Provider will give careful consideration in each case. The Provider needs to be sure it knows, and is satisfied with, the identity of each occupant of the Business Centre.
27. Data protection: The Provider requests that the Customer provides, as and when requested by the Provider, documentation and personnel information as the Provider may reasonably require enabling the provision of the services. Such personal data will be used by the Provider in accordance with the law
28. Subordination: This agreement is subordinate to the Provider lease with the Provider landlord and to any other agreements to which the Provider's lease with the landlord is subordinate.
29. Annual indexation: For all agreements with a term greater than 12 months, the indexation applied of the All Items Retail Prices Index + 2% will be substituted by CPI or 2.8% whichever is the greater.

30. Cross default : The Customer agrees that, if they are in default under a service agreement with the Provider at a different business centre (“Different Location Agreement”) to the one specified in this Agreement, that the Provider may recover any unpaid sums due under a Different Location Agreement from the Customer under this Agreement and that the Provider may, in particular (but not limited to), withhold services under this Agreement or deduct sums from the retainer held under this Agreement in respect of such unpaid sums.
31. Company Name Change: If there is a need to change the name of your company, requests must be made in writing and addressed to the Centre Manager. Please note that these requests will be processed 60 days from the beginning of the next calendar month. Any invoices prior will be in the current company name and cannot be changed.

#### Fees

32. Standard services: The standard fee and any fixed, recurring services requested by the Customer are billed in advance and payable upon receipt of invoice. Where a daily rate applies, the charge for any such month will be 30 times the standard fee. For a period of less than a month the standard fee will be applied on a daily basis. Recurring services will be provided by the Provider at the specified rates for the duration of your Agreement (including any renewal). If a Customer has a need to cancel a recurring service they may request this at any time up to the notification due date of the agreement. The cancellation will be applied from the first day of the renewal start.
33. Pay-as-you-use and additional variable services: Fees for pay-as-you-use services, plus applicable taxes, in accordance with our published rates which may change from time to time, are billed in arrears and payable upon receipt of invoice.
34. Office set up: An office set up fee of £55 will be charged for each occupant.
35. Office restoration fee: A fee of £20 per sqm for each occupied office will be charged upon the Customer’s departure or if the Customer, at the Customer’s option, chooses to relocate to different rooms within the Centre. The Provider reserves the right to charge additional reasonable fees for any repairs needed above and beyond normal wear and tear.
36. Business continuity service: All Customers will be automatically entered into a standard Virtual Office Agreement for 3 months upon departure from The Provider, to cover the management and redirection of mail, fax, calls and visitors. (Upon departure to comply with current money laundering regulations 2007, personal identification will be required in order to continue utilising your the Provider address and mail handling services).
37. This fee will be charged at the current market rate. Prices can be obtained upon request.
38. Late payment and penalty: All invoices are due upon receipt. Late fee dates will vary based on the type of service/invoice that is provided. At any time, the Customer may ask the centre team on what date a late fee will be assessed. If the Customer does not pay fees when due, a service fee of £25 plus 5% penalty will be charged on all overdue balances under £500. For balances equal to or greater than £500 a fee of £50 plus 5% penalty will apply. If the Customer disputes any part of an invoice, the Customer must pay the amount not in dispute by the due date or be subject to such late fee and penalty. The Provider also reserves the right to withhold services (including for the avoidance of doubt, denying the Customer access to the Customer’s accommodation) while there are any outstanding fees, penalties and interest or the Customer is in breach of the Service Agreement which, for the avoidance of doubt, includes these House Rules.
39. Insufficient funds: The Customer will pay a fee of £35 or the maximum amount permitted by law for any returned payments due to insufficient funds. Furthermore, should any change be made from a direct debit payment process, a £35 fee will apply.
40. Taxes: The Customer will pay all current taxes paid by the Provider to any government authority. This currently applies to the Carbon Levy and VAT.

#### Liability

41. Mail: The Customer releases the Provider from any liability arising out of or incurred in connection with any mail or packages received on the Customer’s behalf.

#### Force Majeure

42. The Provider shall have no liability to the Customer under this agreement if it is prevented from, or delayed in, performing its obligations under this agreement or from carrying on its business by acts, events, omissions or accidents beyond its reasonable control, including (without limitation) strikes, failure of a utility service or transport network, act of God, war, riot, civil commotion, malicious damage, disease or quarantine restrictions compliance with any law or governmental order, rule, regulation or direction, accident, fire, flood, storm or default of suppliers or subcontractors. The Provider’s obligation to perform its obligations shall be suspended during the period required to remove such force majeure event.

The Provider shall notify the Customer as soon as reasonably possible of the force majeure event and propose a suitable alternative accommodation (if any) in the same Business Centre or in another available business centre.

43. Introduction

This Policy forms part of the The Provider's Internet IT & Connectivity order and applies where the Customer wishes to use The Provider's Telecommunication and Internet connectivity services and equipment.

The Provider is considered a Downstream Service Provider (DSP), which means The Provider provides a personalised connection to the Internet which is managed and protected via a firewall.

- The Provider's Internet service provides the Customer with an Internet connection that provides regular business activity such as web browsing, the ability to send and receive electronic communications, access to business applications and like.
- The Provider's Internet service is based on a symmetrical leased line connection or similar technology that is shared with other individual Provider's Customers within the same Provider's office building.
- The Provider can provide the Customer with dedicated leased line connectivity various capacities subject to availability. This provides an uncontended, symmetrical connection of the selected Customer bandwidth. The service provides one (1) public IP address with the facility to purchase and deploy additional IP addresses.
- The service provides the Customer with the following capability:
  - The ability to deploy public IP addressing.
  - The option to run server based solutions that require inbound connectivity (e.g. an FTP, web or mail server).
  - The option to run "site to site" VPN connections.
  - The Customer is also able to deploy its own "firewall" to manage its own LAN and VPN connections should the Customer wishes to do so.

44. The Provider's Internet and Telecommunications Policy

- a. Content. The Customer acknowledges that the Provider does not monitor the content of information transmitted through the Provider's telecommunications lines or equipment, which includes, but is not limited to, Internet access, telephone, fax lines and data lines ("Telecommunications Lines"). The Customer further acknowledges that the Provider is merely providing a conduit for Customer's Internet transmissions, similar to a telephone company, and that the Provider accepts no liability for the content of transmissions by the Customer.
- b. Restrictions. The Provider's Internet service may be used only for lawful purposes and shall not be used in connection with any criminal or civil violations of state, federal, or international laws, regulations, or other government requirements. Such violations include without limitation theft or infringement of copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets, or other types of intellectual property; fraud; forgery; theft or misappropriation of funds, credit cards, or personal information; violation of export control laws or regulations; libel or defamation; threats of physical harm or harassment; or any conduct that constitutes a criminal offence or gives rise to civil liability. The Customer is responsible for maintaining the basic security and virus protection of the Customer's systems to prevent their use by others in a manner that violates the Service Agreement. The Customer is responsible for taking corrective actions on vulnerable or exploited systems to prevent continued abuse.
- c. The Provider's Internet access - Per user basis. The Provider grants the Customer access to the the Provider's Internet service on a per user access basis. In the event of the Customer increasing the number of users by utilising a gateway device (router, firewall etc) or by other means, the Customer agrees to pay the The Provider's fee for each user who accesses the Internet, either directly or through a gateway device.
- d. Unauthorised access. In no event may the Customer increase its authorised access points to the Telecommunications/Data lines by means of wire splitting or any other method including wireless devices. In the event of the Customer breaching paragraph 44.c (the Provider's Internet Access — Per User Basis), above, or this paragraph, the Provider may disconnect all of the Customer's access to the Telecommunications/Data lines upon three (3) business days prior written notice to the Customer. The Customer shall pay all the Provider's fees for any unauthorised Telecommunications/Data Lines use upon invoice from the Provider. The Provider shall have no obligation to reconnect the Customer to the Telecommunications/Data Lines until such fees have been paid in full and the Customer has ceased to make unauthorised access.
- e. Customer installed telecommunications lines. It is part of the The Provider business model to provide Telecommunications Lines to its Customers. The Customer may not bypass the use of the The Provider Telecommunications Lines by installing its own direct Telecommunications Lines. On a case by case basis, The Provider may grant the Customer authorisation to install direct Telecommunications Lines upon written request by the Customer. This permission will only be granted on the agreement of the Customer, to make a monthly payment of a direct access fee as set by the Provider which will be equal to the monthly Provider's Internet fee, the telecoms package fee or both.
- f. Security violations. The Customer is prohibited from engaging in any violations of system or network security. The Provider's Internet service may not be used in connection with attempts - whether or not successful - to violate the security of a network, service, or other system. Examples of prohibited activities include, without limitation, hacking, cracking into, monitoring, or using systems without authorization; scanning ports; conducting denial of service attacks; and distributing viruses or other harmful software. The Provider reserves the right to suspend the Internet access upon notification from a recognized Internet authority or ISP regarding such abuse. The Provider may disconnect the Customer's equipment and withhold services if the Provider

considers that the Customer's hardware or software is, or has become, inappropriate for connection to the Provider's network. The Customer is responsible for the Customer's own virus protection on the Customer's systems and hardware.

- g. The Provider's Internet services are only available at the Provider locations and connection to the Provider's network is only permitted at those locations or via the Provider's provided services. The Customer must not create any links between the Provider's network and any other network or any telecommunications service without the Provider's consent.
- h. Revisions to this policy. The Provider may modify this Policy at any time, with or without notice.
- i. Special requirements:
- Where the Customer is using its own wireless access points, the Customer requires written approval from The Provider, prior to implementation. The use of the Customer's own wireless router will result in a service charge based upon the total number of contracted work stations in the Customer's designated office space.
  - It is to note that the following ports are blocked through the Provider's firewall for outbound traffic: H323, Napster\_8888, Nbdatagram, Nbname, RealPlayer-grp, TCP-135, TCP-139, TCP-1433, TCP-1434, UDP-1434.
  - Video conferencing services are not allowed on the Provider's Data Network without written approval from the Provider's IT Director. If approval is gained then the Customer will be required to take Reserved Bandwidth to support the solution.
  - The Provider's Mail relay server is limited to 128 recipients / 32MB per message. It cannot be used as a smarthost.
- j. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THIRD PARTY PRODUCTS. As part of its services to the Customer, the Provider may provide third party Internet access and computer hardware and software ("Third Party Services"). THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY, INCLUDING ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, FOR SUCH THIRD PARTY SERVICES. THE CUSTOMER ACKNOWLEDGES THAT NO REPRESENTATION HAS BEEN MADE BY THE PROVIDER AS TO THE FITNESS OF THE THIRD PARTY SERVICES FOR THE CUSTOMER'S INTENDED PURPOSE.
- k. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY FOR THE CUSTOMER'S EQUIPMENT. ALL CUSTOMER EQUIPMENT STORED IN THE PROVIDER'S TELECOMMUNICATIONS ROOM IS STORED AT CUSTOMER'S OWN RISK. THE PROVIDER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL LIABILITY FOR SUCH EQUIPMENT AND SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSSES OR DAMAGE TO SUCH EQUIPMENT.
- l. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES FROM LOSS OF SERVICE. The Provider does not provide any service level agreement to the Customer in regard to provision or loss of service for its Internet services. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from any loss of service or degradation of connectivity/access to the Internet with the Service Agreement, even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.
- m. DISCLAIMER OF INDIRECT DAMAGES. The Provider shall not be liable for any indirect damages, including lost profits, arising out or resulting from the Service Agreement even if the other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The foregoing shall apply, to the fullest extent permitted by law, regardless of the negligence or other fault of either party.

**Verona Pharma plc  
EMI Option Scheme**

**Adopted on 24 July 2012**

**Amended 29 January 2015**

Verona Pharma plc - EMI option scheme rules

---

## Contents

1.	Definitions and interpretation	1
2.	Purpose	3
3.	Qualification requirements	3
4.	Grant of Option	4
5.	Share capital limits on Options	6
6.	Rights to exercise Options	6
7.	Procedures to exercise Options	9
8.	Release of Options	10
9.	Adjustment of Options	10
10.	Taxation	10
11.	Administration and amendment	11
12.	General	12
	Letter Notifying Grant	14
	Share Option Certificate	16
	Form of Exercise	18

---

**Rules of the Verona Pharma plc  
EMI Option Scheme**

**1. Definitions and interpretation**

1.1 In this Scheme, unless the context otherwise requires, the following definitions shall apply:

“**AIM**” means the Alternative Investment Market of the London Stock Exchange.

“**AIM Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Companies published by the London Stock Exchange from time to time.

“**Associated Company**” has the meaning set out in section 449 Corporation Tax Act 2010.

“**Board**” means the board of directors of the Company or a duly authorised committee of the board.

“**Business Day**” means a day on which the London Stock Exchange is open for business.

“**Committee**” means the remuneration committee of the Board.

“**CSOP Option**” means a right to acquire shares under a scheme approved under Schedule 4 to the Taxes Act.

“**Company**” means Verona Pharma plc registered in England and Wales with company number 05375156.

“**Company Reorganisation**” has the meaning set out in paragraph 39, Schedule 5.

“**Control**” has the meaning set out in section 995 Income Tax Act.

“**Date of Grant**” means the date on which an Option is granted pursuant to rule 4.5.

“**EMI Option**” means an enterprise management incentive option which is a qualifying option for the purposes of Schedule 5.

“**Eligible Employee**” means an individual:

- (a) who is an employee of the Company or any Qualifying Subsidiary;
- (b) whose committed time amounts to:
  - (i) at least 25 hours a week, or
  - (ii) if less, 75% of his working time; and
- (c) does not have a material interest in the Company or any Qualifying Subsidiary;

provided that “**committed time**”, “**working time**” and “**material interest**” shall be as defined in paragraphs 26, 27 and 29, Schedule 5.

“**Employee’s Contributions**” means an employee’s primary Class 1 national insurance contribution or any equivalent social security liability in any jurisdiction outside England and Wales.

“**Employees’ Share Scheme**” has the meaning set out in section 1166 Companies Act 2006.

**“Employer’s Contributions”** means an employer’s secondary Class 1 national insurance contributions or any equivalent social security liability in any jurisdiction outside England and Wales.

**“Exercise Date”** has the meaning set out in rule 7.2.

**“Exercise Price”** means the price payable per Share on the exercise of an Option, not being less than the nominal value of a Share.

**“Group Company”** means any company within the group of companies comprising the Company and its Qualifying Subsidiaries.

**“Income Tax Act”** means the Income Tax Act 2007.

**“Income Tax Liability”** means any income tax in respect of PAYE income for the purposes of section 683 Taxes Act (or the equivalent in any jurisdiction outside England & Wales).

**“the London Stock Exchange”** means the London Stock Exchange plc.

**“Market Value”** means in relation to a Share, its market value for the purposes of paragraphs 55 and 56, Schedule 5.

**“National Insurance Contribution Liability”** means any national insurance contributions which fall to be paid to HM Revenue & Customs by the Company (or the relevant employing Group Company or former Group Company) under the modified PAYE system as it applies for national insurance purposes under the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992 and regulations referred to in it (or the equivalent in any jurisdiction outside England and Wales).

**“Option”** means a right granted under this Scheme to acquire Shares or where applicable, a replacement option as defined in paragraph 41, Schedule 5.

**“Option Holder”** means a person to whom an Option has been granted under the Scheme or, where applicable, the legal personal representatives of such a person.

**“Ordinary Shares”** means shares comprising the ordinary share capital of the Company as defined in section 989 Income Tax Act.

**“Qualifying Subsidiary”** means any company which is a qualifying 51% subsidiary in relation to the Company according to the requirements of paragraph 11, Schedule 5.

**“Rules”** means the rules of this Scheme.

**“Schedule 5”** means Schedule 5 to the Taxes Act.

**“Scheme”** means this scheme being the Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme approved by a resolution of the Board dated 24 July 2012 and subsequently amended by a resolution of the Board dated 29 January 2015 and as subsequently amended in accordance with rule 11.

**“Scheme of Arrangement”** means as defined in rule 6.6.

**“Shares”** means ordinary shares of £0.001 each in the capital of the Company which satisfy the requirements of paragraph 35, Schedule 5 and which, where applicable, includes replacement shares as defined in Part 4, Schedule 7D of TCGA 1992.

**“Taxes Act”** means the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003.

**“Tax Liabilities”** has the meaning contained in rule 10.4.

**“TCGA”** means the Taxation of Chargeable Gains Act 1992.

“**Unvested Option**” means, on any date, that part of an Option that has not vested in accordance with these Rules and the Vesting Schedule.

“**Vests**” means a right to exercise has arisen and “Vesting” shall be construed accordingly.

“**Vested Option**” means, on any date, that part of an Option that has vested in accordance with these Rules and the Vesting Schedule.

“**Vesting Schedule**” means the dates on which an Option Vests and the corresponding numbers of Shares over which the Option may then be exercised as determined by the Committee pursuant to rule 6.2.

1.2 In this Scheme, unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) words in the singular include the plural and vice versa and words in one gender include any other gender;
- (b) a reference to a statute or statutory provision includes:
  - (i) any subordinate legislation (as defined in section 21(1), of the Interpretation Act 1978) made under it;
  - (ii) any repealed statute or statutory provision which it re-enacts (with or without modification); and
  - (iii) any statute or statutory provision which modifies, consolidates, re-enacts or supersedes it;
- (c) a reference to rules is to rules in these Rules and references to sub-rules are to sub-rules in which they appear; and
- (d) the table of contents and headings are inserted for convenience only and shall not affect the interpretation of these Rules.

## 2. **Purpose**

2.1 These Rules set out the terms by which the Committee may grant Options which are intended to take effect as EMI Options, being Options that shall be granted:

- (a) to selected Option Holders for the purpose of retaining their services;
- (b) for genuine commercial reasons; and
- (c) not as part of a scheme or arrangement the main purpose, or one of the main purposes of which, is the avoidance of tax.

2.2 While an Option is intended to take effect as an EMI Option, no warranty is given by the Company that it will in fact qualify as an EMI Option.

## 3. **Qualification requirements**

3.1 An Option Holder shall be an Eligible Employee at the Date of Grant of an Option.

3.2 The statutory maximum entitlement requirement set out in paragraph 5, Schedule 5 (being £250,000 or such other amount as may be specified by Schedule 5 from time to time) shall apply to the grant of an Option. If the aggregate Market Value of the Shares granted to an Option Holder under an Option (together with the sum of the Market Values referred to in rule 3.3 where applicable) exceeds the maximum entitlement such Option shall take effect so that:

- (a) it is a qualifying option under Schedule 5 in respect of such number of Shares as does not cause the maximum entitlement requirement to be exceeded; and
- (b) it is a non tax-advantaged option for the purposes of section 476, Taxes Act in respect of the balance of the Shares.

3.3 The amounts referred to in rule 3.2 are:

- (a) the Market Value, measured at the time the option was granted, of all shares under option held by the Option Holder under any unexercised EMI Option; and
- (b) the market value calculated in accordance with paragraph 5, Schedule 5 and measured at the time the CSOP Option was granted, of all shares under option held by the Option Holder under any unexercised CSOP Option,

provided that any options that have been released, lapsed or have become incapable of exercise shall be disregarded.

3.4 The 3 year maximum entitlement requirement set out in paragraph 6, Schedule 5 shall apply to the grant of an Option. If an Option Holder has been granted EMI Options over Shares with a total Market Value of £250,000 (or such other amount as may be specified by paragraph 5, Schedule 5), whether or not those EMI Options have been exercised or released, any further Option granted to the Option Holder shall not be an EMI Option (but shall be a non tax-advantaged option liable to income tax on exercise under section 476 Taxes Act) if the Date of Grant of that Option is less than three years after the date of grant of the last EMI Option that falls within this rule 3.4.

3.5 Paragraph 7, Schedule 5 (maximum value of shares over which unexercised options exist must not exceed £3 million, or such other amount as may be specified by Schedule 5) shall apply to the grant of an Option. If the grant of an Option under this Scheme causes that limit to be exceeded, that Option shall take effect so that:

- (a) it is a qualifying option under Schedule 5 in respect of such number of Shares as does not cause the limit to be exceeded; and
- (b) it is a non tax-advantaged option for the purposes of section 476, Taxes Act in respect of the balance of the Shares.

3.6 If any of the qualification requirements as set out in Schedule 5 are not met at the Date of Grant or on the occurrence of a disqualifying event under sections 533 to 539 Taxes Act, the Option shall continue as a legally valid option contract between the Company and the Option Holder subject to the provisions of these Rules, including in particular the provisions as to taxation in rules 10.2 to 10.5.

#### 4. **Grant of Option**

4.1 Subject to the AIM Rules and these Rules, the Committee may at any time grant Options to such Eligible Employees as it, in its absolute discretion, thinks fit, provided that Options may only be granted within the period of 42 days starting on:

- (a) the Business Day following the day on which the Scheme is approved by the Company;
- (b) the Business Day following the day on which the Company makes an announcement of its results for the last preceding financial year, half-year or other period or on which listing particulars or a document containing equivalent information relating to Scheme Shares is issued.

If the Committee considers there are exceptional circumstances which justify the grant of Options outside any of the periods set out above, the Committee may determine that Options may be granted

at another time.

- 4.2 When granting an Option the Committee may specify conditions which, unless otherwise stated in these Rules, must be satisfied prior to the exercise of the Option. The Committee may in its absolute discretion amend or waive the conditions relating to a particular Option or part of an Option if events happen which cause the Committee reasonably to consider that it would be fairer so to amend or waive the conditions to ensure that they achieve their original purpose, provided that any amended conditions are neither no more nor no less difficult to achieve than those previously imposed.
- 4.3 Within 60 days of the Date of Grant of an Option, the Company shall issue to the Option Holder a letter enclosing a certificate evidencing the grant of the Option (which forms the written agreement between the Company and the Option Holder for the purposes of Schedule 5) in such form as the Committee may determine provided that it shall specify:
- (a) the number of Shares subject to the Option;
  - (b) the Exercise Price;
  - (c) the Date of Grant;
  - (d) when the Option ordinarily Vests and the number of shares over which the Option may then be exercised;
  - (e) whether the Option Holder is required either to bear some or all of the cost of any Employer's Contributions arising from the exercise of the Option or jointly to elect with the Company to transfer some or all of such liability to the Option Holder;
  - (f) whether the Shares are restricted shares as defined in paragraph 37(5), Schedule 5; and
  - (g) any performance conditions attaching to the exercise of the Option pursuant to rule 4.2 and the period over which any such conditions shall be measured.
- 4.4 If the Option Holder does not execute the Option certificate as a deed and return it to the Company within the period of 30 days after receiving the letter evidencing the grant of the Option under rule 4.3 (or such longer period as the Committee may determine), the Option shall automatically lapse at the end of such period.
- 4.5 For the avoidance of doubt, the Date of Grant shall be taken to be the day on which the execution of the option certificate as a deed is completed.
- 4.6 An Option shall be personal to the Option Holder and may not be transferred, assigned or charged. Any purported transfer (except a transfer to the Option Holder's personal representatives on death), assignment, charge, disposal or dealing of the Option shall render the Option void and cause it to lapse. Each Option certificate shall carry a statement to this effect.
- 4.7 An Option shall be granted by way of deed or otherwise as the Committee may determine. No cash payment shall be required in consideration of such grant.
- 4.8 No Option may be granted more than 10 years after the date on which the Scheme is adopted by a resolution of the Board.
- 4.9 Any Options granted under the Scheme shall be limited and take effect so that any limit in rule 5 is not exceeded.
- 4.10 On granting an Option, the Company shall procure that the company which is the employer of an Option Holder at the relevant Date of Grant shall give to HM Revenue & Customs within 92 days of such date a notice complying with the requirements of paragraph 44, Schedule 5,

which should include:

- (a) a declaration by a director or secretary of that company confirming that in that person's opinion the requirements of Schedule 5 are met in relation to the Option; and
- (b) a declaration by the Option Holder that the commitment of working time requirement in paragraph 26, Schedule 5 is satisfied in relation to the Option.

## 5. **Share capital limits on Options**

5.1 No Option may be granted on any date if the number of Shares to be issued on its exercise in full, when aggregated with the number of:

- (a) Shares issued on the exercise of, or remaining capable of being issued on the exercise of, Options granted during the period of 10 years ending on that date; and
- (b) Ordinary Shares issued on the exercise of, or remaining capable of being issued on the exercise of, options or other rights granted during the period of 10 years ending on that date under any other Employees' Share Scheme or equity incentive plan adopted by the Company for the benefit of its officers, employees or consultants,

would exceed 10% of the number of Ordinary Shares in issue on that date.

5.2 For the purposes of applying the limit in rule 5.1, any options which were surrendered, released or lapsed without being exercised shall not be taken into account.

## 6. **Rights to exercise Options**

6.1 Options may be exercised in accordance with the following provisions of this rule 6 and rule 7.

6.2 Except as provided elsewhere in this rule 6, or as the Committee may at any time in its absolute discretion determine in exceptional circumstances, an Option may only be exercised:

- (a) if any conditions which apply to the Option under rule 4.2 have been fulfilled to the satisfaction of the Committee or waived;
- (b) at a time when the Option Holder holds an office or employment with a Group Company; and

in accordance with the Vesting Schedule specified by the Committee in its absolute discretion, and set out in, or attached in the form of a schedule to, the option certificate.

### ***General offer and compulsory acquisition***

6.3 If an Acquirer:

- (a) obtains Control of the Company as a result of making a general offer to:
  - (i) acquire all of the issued ordinary share capital of the Company (other than that already held by the Acquirer) which is made on a condition such that if it is satisfied the Acquirer will have Control of the Company; or
  - (ii) acquire all of the shares in the Company of the same class as the Shares; or
- (b) becomes bound or entitled to acquire shares in the Company under sections 979-982 of the Companies Act 2006

any Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 6.2 but subject to rule 8, exercise any Option of his in whole or in part within whichever of the periods set out in rules 6.4 applies after which, unless the Option Holder has released his Option according to rule 8 and to the extent unexercised the Option shall lapse.

6.4 The periods referred in rule 6.3 are:

- (a) in a case falling within rule 6.3(a), the period of 6 months beginning with the date when the Acquirer has obtained Control of the Company unless the Committee determines that in connection with the event referred to in rule 6.3(a) Options should become capable of exercise prior to this date; and
- (b) in a case falling within rule 6.3(b), the period of one month from the first date on which the Acquirer becomes bound or entitled to give a notice to acquire Shares in the Company under section 979-982 of the Companies Act 2006 (notwithstanding any other provisions as to exercise in these Rules).

***Scheme of Arrangement***

6.5 Subject to rule 8, if under section 899 of the Companies Act 2006 the Court sanctions a compromise or arrangement in relation to the Company (a “**Scheme of Arrangement**”) and its shareholders in connection with the acquisition of Control by the Acquirer, the Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 6.2, exercise any Option of his in full within the period of 6 months beginning with when the Court sanctions the Scheme of Arrangement, after which unless the Option Holder has released his Option according to rule 8 and to the extent unexercised the Option shall lapse.

***Demerger***

6.6 If the Company is or is expected to be the subject of a demerger, merger within the Companies (Cross Border Merger) Regulations 2007, dividend-in-specie or other transaction which the Committee determines in its discretion would materially affect the value of any Option, the Committee may determine on a fair and reasonable basis that any Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 6.2, exercise any Option of his in whole or in part during such period as the Committee shall specify and notify to the affected Option Holders.

***Voluntary winding up***

6.7 If notice is duly given to members of a resolution at a general meeting for the voluntary winding up of the Company, except for the purposes of a reconstruction or amalgamation, any Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 6.2, exercise any Option of his in whole or in part (but so that any exercise hereunder shall be conditional upon such resolution being passed) at any time thereafter until the resolution is duly passed or defeated or the general meeting adjourned *sine die*, whichever shall first occur. If such resolution is passed an Option shall, to the extent unexercised, lapse.

***Early cessation of employment***

6.8 Where an Option Holder ceases to hold any office or employment with a Group Company by reason of:

- (a) injury, disability or ill-health (such determination to be made by the Board); or
- (b) redundancy (within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996); or
- (c) a Group Company ceasing to be under the Control of the Company or a business or part of a business being transferred to a company which is neither an Associated Company nor a company of which the Company has control,

an Option Holder may exercise notwithstanding rule 6.2 any Option held by him in full during the period of 90 days after the date of cessation (or such longer period as the Board may allow), after which it shall lapse.

***Cessation of employment for other reasons***

- 6.9 Where an Option Holder ceases to hold any office or employment with a Group Company in circumstances different to those provided for in rule 6.8 notwithstanding rule 6.2 but subject to rule 6.11 (death) a Vested Option shall remain exercisable during the period of 60 days after the date of cessation (or such longer period as the Board may allow) after which it shall lapse provided that if the cessation derives from dismissal of the Option Holder for gross misconduct or other disciplinary or other reasons giving rise to the termination of the Option Holder's employment by the Company or otherwise constituting a breach of the Option Holder's contract of employment (as determined in the absolute discretion of the Board) a Vested Option shall lapse on the date of cessation or, if earlier, the date that notice of termination is given. Rule 6.10 shall apply to any Unvested Options.

#### ***Unvested Options***

- 6.10 An Unvested Option shall lapse on a cessation of employment within rule 6.9 unless the Board, prior to the date of cessation, gives notice to an Option Holder inviting that Option Holder to exercise their Unvested Option within such period and to such extent as the Board may in its absolute discretion determine. If such notice is given, to the extent that any Unvested Option is not exercised within such period, it will lapse immediately thereafter.

#### ***Death***

- 6.11 Where the Option Holder dies:
- (a) any Option held by him that is a Vested Option at the date of death may be exercised by his personal representatives during the period of 12 months following such date after which it shall lapse; and
  - (b) any Unvested Option shall lapse 12 months after the date of death unless the Board in its absolute discretion determines that it may be exercised in whole or in part before the expiry of that period.

#### ***Lapse of Options***

- 6.12 Notwithstanding any other provisions in these Rules, an Option will lapse to the extent it has not been exercised on the earliest to occur of the following:
- (a) the 10th anniversary of the Date of Grant;
  - (b) the passing of a resolution by the shareholders in respect of a creditor's voluntary liquidation, the making by the Court of a winding up order, or the appointment of an administrator or receiver in respect of the Company;
  - (c) the Option Holder being adjudicated bankrupt, making or proposing a voluntary arrangement under the Insolvency Act 1986 or otherwise being deprived (except on death) of the legal or beneficial ownership of the Option;
  - (d) if applicable, the expiry of the relevant period referred to in rule 4.4;
  - (e) the expiry of the relevant period referred to in this rule 6 and where more than one such period applies, the earliest to expire of those periods.

#### ***Meaning of ceasing employment***

- 6.13 For the purposes of rules 6.8 and 6.9:
- (a) an Option Holder (including an Option Holder who is absent from work on paternity or parental leave) shall not be treated as ceasing to hold any office or employment until he no longer holds any office or employment with the Company or any Group Company or any Associated Company; and

- (b) a female Option Holder who is absent from work on maternity leave shall not be deemed to have ceased holding any office or employment until she ceases to be entitled to exercise any statutory or contractual right to return to work.

### **7. Procedures to exercise Options**

- 7.1 An Option shall be exercised by notice in writing (in the form prescribed by the Committee) given by the Option Holder to the Company in respect of all or some of the Shares comprised in the Option, and such notice shall be accompanied by:
- (a) the relevant option certificate (or an indemnity in respect of a lost option certificate);
  - (b) if required by the Committee, an election to transfer liability for Employer's Contributions to the Option Holder (in the form prescribed by the Committee and approved by HM Revenue & Customs); and
  - (c) if required by the Committee, if the Shares to be acquired on exercise of the Option are considered to be restricted securities as defined in Part 7, Chapter 2, Taxes Act (such determination to be in the sole discretion of the Committee), a joint section 431, Taxes Act election (electing that the Market Value of the Shares acquired on exercise of the Option be calculated as if the Shares were not restricted securities),

together with a remittance for the aggregate Exercise Price payable, unless the Company and the Option Holder agree that an alternative arrangement can be used to satisfy the Exercise Price.

- 7.2 Provided the conditions for exercise are satisfied, exercise of the Option shall be effective on the date of receipt or deemed receipt by the Company (as determined by rule 12.2) (the “**Exercise Date**”) of the documents referred to in rule 7.1.
- 7.3 The Company has established a cashless exercise facility to enable Option Holders to provide funds to pay the aggregate Exercise Price by:
- (a) authorising the deduction of the necessary amount from their salary payment next following delivery of the option certificate and the notice of exercise to the Company or its duly appointed agent; or
  - (b) executing a letter of instruction authorising a representative to act as the Option Holder’s agent and to sell on his behalf either all of the Shares acquired on exercise of the Option or such number of them (rounded up to the nearest whole Share) as will be required to cover the aggregate Exercise Price, the payment of any Tax Liabilities (as defined in rule 10.4), together with any fees and commissions arising in connection with the exercise of the Option and the sale of the Shares acquired. Once the requisite number of Shares has been sold and these requirements met in full, the Option Holder will receive a share certificate in respect of the balance of the Shares remaining (if any) and/or a cheque or bank transfer in respect of the balance of monies (if any) left after sale of all or the requisite number of Shares as aforesaid; or
  - (c) implementing any other arrangements from time to time determined by the Committee and agreed between the Company and the Option Holder.
- 7.4 As soon as reasonably practicable after the Exercise Date the Company shall:
- (a) allot and issue such Shares which are to be issued pursuant to the exercise of the Option; or
  - (b) procure the transfer of such Shares which are to be transferred pursuant to the exercise of the Option,

to the Option Holder (or his nominee) and, subject to rule 7.5, cause to be registered in his name (or the name of his nominee) the number of Shares specified in the notice of exercise (as reduced in accordance with any alternative arrangement applicable under rule 7.1).

- 7.5 The Option Holder shall be responsible for any stamp duty arising on the transfer of Shares.
- 7.6 An Option may only be exercised in respect of a whole number of Shares, not a fraction of a Share.
- 7.7 No Option may be exercised unless such exercise, and the issue or transfer of Shares after such exercise, would be lawful in all relevant jurisdictions and in compliance with the Listing Rules of the London Stock Exchange, the AIM Rules or any other relevant share dealing code of the Company, the City Code on Takeovers and Mergers and any other relevant UK or overseas regulation or enactment.
- 7.8 An Option may not be exercised for fewer than 50,000 Shares at any one time.
- 7.9 When an Option is exercised only in part, the balance shall remain exercisable on the same terms as originally applied to the whole Option and an endorsement to that effect shall be noted on the Option Certificate as soon as reasonably practicable after the partial exercise.
- 7.10 Save for any right determined by reference to a date preceding the date on which Shares are issued, Shares issued on the exercise of an Option shall rank equally with the Shares then in issue. Shares transferred on the exercise of an Option will be transferred without the benefit of any rights attaching to them by reference to a record date preceding the date of exercise.
- 7.11 An Option Holder to whom Shares are issued or transferred on the exercise of an Option shall be bound by the Company's articles of association as they apply to such Shares and if required to do so by the Board, shall enter into a deed of adherence pursuant to any shareholders' agreement relating to the Company. Where any such Shares are issued to or transferred to a nominee, the Option Holder shall ensure that similar obligations apply to that nominee as required by the Board.

## 8. Release of Options

- 8.1 The provisions of Part 6, Schedule 5 shall apply in relation to Company Reorganisations.
- 8.2 If a Company Reorganisation occurs the Option Holder may, by an agreement in writing with the acquiring company, release his rights under the Option in consideration of the grant to the Option Holder of rights which are equivalent but relate to the acquiring company's shares, such rights to be comprised in a replacement option in relation to which the following conditions must be satisfied:
- (a) it is granted within the appropriate period under paragraph 42, Schedule 5; and
  - (b) the qualifying requirements under paragraph 43, Schedule 5 are satisfied.
- 8.3 If the rights under the Option are released by the Option Holder under rule 8.2 the occurrence of the Company Reorganisation shall not be an event triggering the Option becoming exercisable under rule 6.3.

## 9. Adjustment of Options

- 9.1 In the event of any capitalisation or offer by way of rights (including an open offer) or on any consolidation, sub-division, reduction or other variation of the capital of the Company, the number of Shares subject to the Option and the Exercise Price may be adjusted in such manner as the Committee, on a fair and reasonable basis, may deem appropriate. Notice of any such adjustments shall be given to the Option Holder by the Company.

## 10. Taxation

- 10.1 It is intended that the provisions of Taxes Act shall apply to give relief from income tax in respect of the grant or exercise of an Option (except to the extent that it is a non tax-advantaged Option by virtue of the operation of rule 3.2(b) or rule 3.5(b)).
- 10.2 Subject to rule 10.1, if a disqualifying event (within the meaning of sections 533 to 539, Taxes Act) occurs before an Option is exercised, and the Option is not exercised within 40 days of that event, the gain realised by the subsequent exercise of the Option shall be subject to tax in accordance with section 532, Taxes Act.
- 10.3 An Option Holder shall be accountable for any Income Tax Liability and National Insurance Contribution Liability which is chargeable on any assessable income deriving from:
- (a) the grant or exercise of, or other dealing in, any Option held by him,
  - (b) the acquisition, holding or disposal of any Shares acquired on exercise of any Option held by him; and
  - (c) any action, event or thing done or omitted to be done following the Option Holder's acquisition of the Shares acquired on exercise of any Option held by him which directly or indirectly gives rise to a liability under the Taxes Act in respect of the Shares (including the entering into of an election under section 431 of the Taxes Act).
- 10.4 In respect of such assessable income the Option Holder shall indemnify the Company and (at the direction of the Company) any Group Company which is or may be treated as the employer of the Option Holder in respect of the following (together, the "**Tax Liabilities**"):
- (a) any Income Tax Liability; and
  - (b) any National Insurance Contribution Liability being the aggregate of:
    - (i) all the Employee's Contributions; and
    - (ii) all the Employer's Contributions (unless otherwise determined by the Committee and notified to the Option Holder) .
- 10.5 Pursuant to the indemnity referred to in rule 10.4, the Option Holder shall make such arrangements as the Company requires to meet the cost of the Tax Liabilities, including at the direction of the Company any of the following:
- (a) making a cash payment of an appropriate amount to the relevant Group Company whether by way of cheque, banker's draft or deduction from salary in time to enable that Group Company to remit such amount to HM Revenue & Customs before the 14th day following the end of the month in which the event giving rise to the relevant Tax Liabilities occurs;
  - (b) appointing the Company as agent and/or attorney for the sale of sufficient of the Shares acquired pursuant to the exercise of the Option to cover the Tax Liabilities and authorising the payment to the relevant Group Company of the appropriate amount (including all reasonable fees, commissions and expenses incurred by the relevant Company in relation to such Sale) out of the net proceeds of sale of the Shares; and
  - (c) entering into an election whereby the employer's liability for Employer's Contributions is transferred to the Option Holder on terms set out in the election and approved by HM Revenue & Customs.
- 10.6 For the purposes of this rule 10, Group Companies includes former Group Employees.
11. **Administration and amendment**
- 11.1 The Scheme shall be administered by the Committee acting on behalf of the Company and

the Committee's decision on all disputes shall be final.

- 11.2 Subject to rule 11.3, the Committee may at any time amend these Rules in any way it thinks fit.
- 11.3 No amendment may be made to these Rules if, or to the extent that, in the reasonable opinion of the Committee it would materially abrogate or adversely affect the subsisting rights of an Option Holder as regards an Option granted prior to the amendment being made unless it is made:
- (a) with the written consent of the number of Option Holders that hold Options under the Scheme to acquire more than 50% of the Shares which would be delivered if all Options granted and subsisting under the Scheme were exercised (ignoring any conditions which may be attached to their exercise); or
  - (b) by a resolution at a meeting of Option Holders passed by not less than 50% of the Option Holders who attend and vote either in person or by proxy.
- 11.4 The Committee shall have power from time to time to make and vary such rules (not being inconsistent with these rules) for the implementation and administration of this Scheme as it may think fit.
12. **General**
- 12.1 The Company shall at all times keep available sufficient authorised and unissued Shares to satisfy the exercise to the full extent still possible of any Options (excluding those the exercise of which is to be satisfied by the transfer of existing Shares) taking account of any other obligations of the Company to issue new Ordinary Shares or shall otherwise ensure that Shares are available for transfer to satisfy the exercise of any Option.
- 12.2 Any notice or other communication under or in connection with these Rules may be given to the Option Holder either personally or by electronic mail or post and/or to the Company either personally or by electronic mail (with a report of receipt), post or by fax. Items sent by electronic mail shall be deemed to have been received at the time specified in the report of receipt returned to the sender. Items sent by post should be first class prepaid and shall be deemed to have been received 48 hours after posting. Items sent by fax shall be deemed to have been received on the day that they are sent.
- 12.3 The terms of employment of an Option Holder shall not be affected in any way by his participation in the Scheme which shall not form part of such terms (either expressly or impliedly) nor in any way entitle him to take into account such participation in calculating any compensation or damages on the termination of his employment for whatever reason (whether lawful or unlawful) which might otherwise be payable to him, and the Option Holder's terms of employment shall be deemed to be varied accordingly.
- 12.4 This Scheme is entirely discretionary and may be suspended or terminated by the Company at any time. Such suspension or termination will not affect any Options granted under the Scheme to the extent that they are subsisting at the date of such suspension or termination. The grant of an Option is likewise entirely discretionary and does not create any contractual or other right to receive future grants of options, or benefits in lieu of options. All determinations with respect to future grants will be at the sole discretion of the Company. Rights under the Scheme are not pensionable.
- 12.5 The costs of introducing and administering this Scheme shall be borne by the Company.
- 12.6 Subject to applicable law, the Company and any Group Company may enter into arrangements (including the payment of money or making of loans) with any person on such terms as it thinks fit whereby, on the exercise of an Option, existing Shares may be transferred to an Option Holder in satisfaction of his rights under this Scheme.

- 12.7 Nothing in these Rules shall be taken to impose any restriction or limitation on the exercise by the members of the Company of their rights to make any alteration to the articles of association of the Company or the share capital of the Company.
- 12.8 At any time whilst Shares are listed on the Alternative Investment Market or the Official List of the London Stock Exchange, the Company shall apply to the London Stock Exchange for any shares issued on the exercise of any Option to be listed on the Alternative Investment Market or the Official List as appropriate.
- 12.9 The Option Holder shall have no recourse of any kind against the Company (or any Group Company or former Group Company) if the incentives and tax reliefs provided by the Taxes Act and/or Part 4, Schedule 7D to TCGA are not available in respect of any EMI Option for whatever reason.
- 12.10 The Committee may adopt appendices to this Scheme which shall provide for the grant of non tax-advantaged options to employees who are not at the relevant time eligible to participate in the EMI scheme or who are not resident for tax purposes in the United Kingdom, subject to such modifications as the Committee considers appropriate to take account of local tax, exchange control, securities laws or other regulatory requirements.
- 12.11 The Option Holder, by accepting the Option, consents to the collection, use and transfer, in electronic or other form, of personal data (“Data”) that is necessary to facilitate the implementation, administration and management of the Scheme. The Company may, for the purpose of implementing, administering and managing the Scheme, hold certain personal information about the Option Holder, including, but not limited to, the Option Holder’s name, home address and telephone number, date of birth, national insurance number or other identification number, salary, nationality, job title and details of all awards or entitlement to options that may be granted under the Scheme. The Option Holder further consents to the transfer of the Data to any third parties assisting in the implementation, administration and management of the Scheme, including any broker with whom the Shares that may be issued on exercise of the Option may be deposited, and that these recipients may be located in the UK or elsewhere. The Option Holder, by accepting the Option, waives any data privacy rights he may have with respect to the Data and authorises the Company and its agents to store and transmit such information in electronic form
- 12.12 The Scheme and any dispute, claim or obligation arising out of or in connection with it, its subject matter or formation shall be governed by English law. The Option Holder and the Company irrevocably agree that the English courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with this Scheme, its subject matter or formation.

## Letter Notifying Grant

[to be typed onto Company letterhead]

•[Date]

•[Name]

•[Address]

Dear • [Name]

### Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme

I am pleased to inform you that the Board has granted you an option over • ordinary shares in the capital of Verona Pharma plc (the “**Company**”) (the “**Option**”) in accordance with the Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme (the “**Scheme**”).

You will find enclosed with this letter:

- A copy of the rules of the Scheme;
- An option certificate for execution and return;
- HM Revenue & Customs EMI1 Form (containing a working hours declaration) for signature and return; and
- A form of exercise.

The option certificate is the written agreement between the Company and you in relation to the Option. Unless you do not wish to accept the Option, please execute the option certificate and return it to me by [•]

By executing the option certificate you are agreeing to be bound by the rules of the Scheme so please read them carefully. Your attention is drawn in particular to rule 6 which sets out the dates upon which your Option vests and the other situations in which you will be able to exercise it.

You should also please sign the working time declaration on the enclosed form EMI 1 which I must send to HM Revenue & Customs. Please return this to me as soon as possible as it must be filed by HM Revenue & Customs shortly after the grant of your Option.

When you wish to exercise your Option you must do so by completing and returning the form of exercise (attached to the option certificate).

### ***Taxation***

Your Option has been granted under an Enterprise Management Incentive (EMI) Scheme which meets certain conditions set down by HM Revenue & Customs. This means that when you exercise your Option you will not have to pay income tax and/or national insurance contributions *unless* the Option does not comply with the EMI rules. While we do not anticipate there will be any such failure to meet the EMI conditions (except to any extent that the Option is granted over a number of Shares that exceed the EMI limits), if this is the case your employer may have to account to HM Revenue & Customs on your behalf through the PAYE system for any income tax and national insurance contributions that become payable. You will be required to make arrangements to reimburse your

employer for the payment of these amounts on your behalf.

As a condition of grant/exercise you are required to agree to bear any employer's secondary national insurance that your employer may become liable to pay to HM Revenue & Customs. In order to secure the payment of any such employers' secondary national insurance you may be required to enter into an election whereby such liability is transferred to you on terms set out in the election, the form of which has been approved by HM Revenue & Customs.

In certain circumstances, exercise of your Option will be conditional on your entering into an election pursuant to section 431, Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 jointly with your employer (electing that the market value of the shares acquired on exercise of the Option be calculated as if the shares were not restricted securities). You will be asked to sign this form if it is necessary.

When you sell the shares you acquire on exercise of your Option, any gain may be subject to capital gains tax. It will be your responsibility to report and pay any capital gains tax to HM Revenue & Customs as required.

Yours sincerely

\_\_\_\_\_  
For and on behalf of  
**Verona Pharma plc**

15

---

**Share Option Certificate**  
**Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme**

Date of Grant	Exercise Price per Share	Number of Shares
•	•	•

This is to certify that \_\_\_\_\_  
of \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

has been granted an option to acquire • ordinary shares in the Company at the exercise price shown above (the “**Option**”) under the rules of the Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme (the “**Scheme Rules**”).

The Option is granted as an enterprise management incentive (EMI) option under the provisions of Schedule 5, Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003.

The Option is exercisable in accordance with the Scheme Rules. In particular, the right to exercise the Option shall Vest in normal circumstances according to the Vesting Schedule below.

Normal Vesting Date	Vesting proportion
•	•
•	•
•	[Balance of Shares under Option]

In this Vesting Schedule the phrase “Shares under Option” shall refer to the total number of Shares under Option at the Date of Grant. The number of Shares comprised in any tranche, other than the tranche that Vests on the latest date shall be rounded down to a whole number.

The tax treatment of the Option will depend on a number of factors, and if you are unsure about such treatment you are advised to take your own independent financial advice from an appropriately qualified professional adviser. You should be aware that if the rules for EMI options are not met, the gain made on the exercise of the Option may be liable to income tax and national insurance contributions.

Where any income tax and national insurance contributions are payable through the PAYE system, you will be required to indemnify the Company and other Group Companies (and former Group Companies) for such liabilities under the Scheme Rules. Capital gains tax (CGT) may also become payable on eventual disposal of the ordinary shares acquired and any such CGT liability will be for your own account.

16

---

**This Agreement is executed** by the Company and the Option Holder as a deed and delivered on the date shown above

**Executed as a Deed by** )  
**Verona Pharma plc** acting by )  
\_\_\_\_\_, a director )  
in the presence of: ) \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of witness:*

*Name:*

*Address:*

*Occupation:*

**Executed as a Deed by** )  
\_\_\_\_\_ )  
in the presence of )

Signature of witness:

*Name:*

*Address:*

*Occupation:*

Notes

- (1) The Option is not transferable, and will lapse on any transfer, assignment, charge or other disposal.
- (2) A copy of the rules of the Scheme is available from the Company Secretary.

**THIS CERTIFICATE IS IMPORTANT AND SHOULD BE KEPT IN A SAFE PLACE**

**Form of Exercise**

**Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme  
(the "Scheme")**

**To:** The Directors  
**Verona Pharma plc**

I wish to exercise the option comprised in the enclosed option certificate (the "**Option**") in respect of • ordinary shares of £0.001 each in the capital of the Company (the "**Shares**").

I [enclose a cheque for £• in favour of Verona Pharma plc] or [have arranged payment in accordance with rule 7.3 of the Scheme Rules] as payment in full of the exercise price of £• per Share.

I apply for the number of Shares specified above and request you to arrange the registration of them in my name subject to the memorandum and articles of association of Verona Pharma plc.

I agree:

- (a) to indemnify Verona Pharma plc and other Group Companies (for former Group Companies) in respect of any Tax Liabilities (as defined in rule 10.4 of the Scheme); and
- (b) that the issue of these Shares to me is conditional on my first making arrangements to the satisfaction of Verona Pharma plc to discharge the Tax Liabilities pursuant to such indemnity and, if required by the board of directors, entering into a section 431 election.

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_

Note:

If you are signing as a personal representative you should lodge a copy of the Grant of Probate or Letters of Administration as evidence of your appointment. In the event of there being more than one personal representative each must sign the form.

**Verona Pharma plc  
Unapproved Share Option Scheme**

**Adopted on 18 September 2006**

**Amended on 11 October 2012**

**Amended on 29 January 2015**

Verona Pharma plc – Unapproved share option scheme rules

---

## Contents

1.	Definitions and interpretation	1
2.	Purpose	3
3.	Grant of Option	3
4.	Share capital limits on Options	4
5.	Rights to exercise Options	4
6.	Procedures to exercise Options	7
7.	Adjustment of Options	8
8.	Taxation	9
9.	Administration and amendment	9
10.	General	10
	Letter Notifying Grant	12
	Share Option Certificate	14
	Form of Exercise	16

---

**Rules of the Verona Pharma plc  
Unapproved Share Option Scheme**

**1. Definitions and interpretation**

1.1 In this Scheme, unless the context otherwise requires, the following definitions shall apply:

“**AIM**” means the Alternative Investment Market of the London Stock Exchange.

“**AIM Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Companies published by the London Stock Exchange from time to time.

“**Associated Company**” has the meaning set out in section 449 Corporation Tax Act 2010.

“**Board**” means the board of directors of the Company or a duly authorised committee of the board.

“**Business Day**” means a day on which the London Stock Exchange is open for business.

“**Committee**” means the remuneration committee of the Board.

“**Company**” means Verona Pharma plc registered in England and Wales with company number 05375156.

“**Control**” has the meaning set out in section 995 Income Tax Act.

“**Date of Grant**” means the date on which an Option is granted pursuant to rule 3.5.

“**Employee’s Contributions**” means an employee’s primary Class 1 national insurance contribution or any equivalent social security liability in any jurisdiction outside England and Wales.

“**Employees’ Share Scheme**” has the meaning set out in section 1166 Companies Act 2006.

“**Employer’s Contributions**” means an employer’s secondary Class 1 national insurance contributions or any equivalent social security liability in any jurisdiction outside England and Wales.

“**Exercise Date**” has the meaning set out in rule 6.2.

“**Exercise Price**” means the price payable per Share on the exercise of an Option, not being less than the nominal value of a Share.

“**Group Company**” means any company within the group of companies comprising the Company and any wholly-owned subsidiaries of the Company

“**Income Tax Act**” means the Income Tax Act 2007.

“**Income Tax Liability**” means any income tax in respect of PAYE income for the purposes of section 683 Taxes Act (or the equivalent in any jurisdiction outside England & Wales).

“**the London Stock Exchange**” means the London Stock Exchange plc.

“**National Insurance Contribution Liability**” means any national insurance contributions which fall to be paid to HM Revenue & Customs by the Company (or the relevant employing Group Company or former Group Company) under the modified PAYE system as it applies for national insurance purposes under the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992

and regulations referred to in it (or the equivalent in any jurisdiction outside England and Wales).

“**Option**” means a right granted under this Scheme to acquire Shares.

“**Option Holder**” means a person to whom an Option has been granted under the Scheme or, where applicable, the legal personal representatives of such a person.

“**Ordinary Shares**” means shares comprising the ordinary share capital of the Company as defined in section 989 Income Tax Act.

“**Rules**” means the rules of this Scheme.

“**Scheme**” means this scheme being the Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme originally approved by a resolution of the Board dated 18 September 2006, amended by resolutions of the Board dated 11 October 2012 and 29 January 2015 and as subsequently amended in accordance with rule 9.

“**Scheme of Arrangement**” means as defined in rule 5.6.

“**Shares**” means ordinary shares of £0.001 each in the capital of the Company.

“**Taxes Act**” means the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003.

“**Tax Liabilities**” has the meaning contained in rule 8.2.

“**Unvested Option**” means, on any date, that part of an Option that has not vested in accordance with these Rules and the Vesting Schedule.

“**Vests**” means a right to exercise has arisen and “**Vesting**” shall be construed accordingly.

“**Vested Option**” means, on any date, that part of an Option that has vested in accordance with these Rules and the Vesting Schedule.

“**Vesting Schedule**” means the dates on which an Option Vests and the corresponding numbers of Shares over which the Option may then be exercised as determined by the Committee pursuant to rule 5.2.

1.2 In this Scheme, unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) words in the singular include the plural and vice versa and words in one gender include any other gender;
- (b) a reference to a statute or statutory provision includes:
  - (i) any subordinate legislation (as defined in section 21(1), of the Interpretation Act 1978) made under it;
  - (ii) any repealed statute or statutory provision which it re-enacts (with or without modification); and
  - (iii) any statute or statutory provision which modifies, consolidates, re-enacts or supersedes it;
- (c) a reference to rules is to rules in these Rules and references to sub-rules are to sub-rules in which they appear; and
- (d) the table of contents and headings are inserted for convenience only and shall not affect the interpretation of these Rules.

2. **Purpose**

2.1 These Rules set out the terms by which the Committee may grant Options to selected officers, employees and consultants of the Company for the purpose of retaining their services.

3. **Grant of Option**

3.1 Subject to the AIM Rules and these Rules, the Committee may at any time grant Options under this Scheme as it, in its absolute discretion, thinks fit, provided that Options may only be granted within the period of 42 days starting on the Business Day following the day on which the Company makes an announcement of its results for the last preceding financial year, half-year or other period or on which listing particulars or a document containing equivalent information relating to Scheme Shares is issued. If the Committee considers there are circumstances which justify the grant of Options outside any of the periods set out above, the Committee may determine that Options may be granted at another time.

3.2 When granting an Option the Committee may specify conditions which, unless otherwise stated in these Rules, must be satisfied prior to the exercise of the Option. The Committee may in its absolute discretion amend or waive the conditions relating to a particular Option or part of an Option if events happen which cause the Committee reasonably to consider that it would be fairer so to amend or waive the conditions to ensure that they achieve their original purpose, provided that any amended conditions are neither no more nor no less difficult to achieve than those previously imposed.

3.3 Within 60 days of the Date of Grant of an Option, the Company shall issue to the Option Holder a letter enclosing a certificate evidencing the grant of the Option in such form as the Committee may determine provided that it shall specify:

- (a) the number of Shares subject to the Option;
- (b) the Exercise Price;
- (c) the Date of Grant;
- (d) when the Option ordinarily Vests and the number of shares over which the Option may then be exercised;
- (e) whether the Option Holder is required either to bear some or all of the cost of any Employer's Contributions arising from the exercise of the Option or jointly to elect with the Company to transfer some or all of such liability to the Option Holder; and
- (f) any performance conditions attaching to the exercise of the Option pursuant to rule 3.2 and the period over which any such conditions shall be measured.

3.4 If the Option Holder does not execute the Option certificate as a deed and return it to the Company within the period of 30 days after receiving the letter evidencing the grant of the Option under rule 3.1 (or such longer period as the Committee may determine), the Option shall automatically lapse at the end of such period.

3.5 For the avoidance of doubt, the Date of Grant shall be taken to be the day on which the execution of the option certificate as a deed is completed.

3.6 An Option shall be personal to the Option Holder and may not be transferred, assigned or charged. Any purported transfer (except a transfer to the Option Holder's personal representatives on death), assignment, charge, disposal or dealing of the Option shall render the Option void and cause it to lapse. Each Option certificate shall carry a statement to this effect.

3.7 An Option shall be granted by way of deed or otherwise as the Committee may determine. No cash payment shall be required in consideration of such grant.

3.8 Any Options granted under the Scheme shall be limited and take effect so that any limit in rule 4 is not exceeded.

#### 4. **Share capital limits on Options**

4.1 No Option may be granted on any date if the number of Shares to be issued on its exercise in full, when aggregated with the number of:

- (a) Shares issued on the exercise of, or remaining capable of being issued on the exercise of, Options granted during the period of 10 years ending on that date; and
- (b) Ordinary Shares issued on the exercise of, or remaining capable of being issued on the exercise of, options or other rights granted during the period of 10 years ending on that date under any other Employees' Share Scheme or equity incentive plan adopted by the Company for the benefit of its officers, employees or consultants,

would exceed 10% of the number of Ordinary Shares in issue on that date.

4.2 For the purposes of applying the limit in rule 4.1, any options which were surrendered, released or lapsed without being exercised shall not be taken into account.

#### 5. **Rights to exercise Options**

5.1 Options may be exercised in accordance with the following provisions of this rule 5 and rule 6.

5.2 Except as provided elsewhere in this rule 5, or as the Committee may at any time in its absolute discretion determine in exceptional circumstances, an Option may only be exercised:

- (a) if any conditions which apply to the Option under rule 3.2 have been fulfilled to the satisfaction of the Committee or waived;
- (b) at a time when the Option Holder holds an office or employment with a Group Company; and
- (c) in accordance with the Vesting Schedule specified by the Committee, in its absolute discretion, and set out in, or attached in the form of a schedule to, the option certificate.

#### ***General offer and compulsory acquisition***

5.3 If an Acquirer:

- (a) obtains Control of the Company as a result of making a general offer to:
  - (i) acquire all of the issued ordinary share capital of the Company (other than that already held by the Acquirer) which is made on a condition such that if it is satisfied the Acquirer will have Control of the Company; or
  - (ii) acquire all of the shares in the Company of the same class as the Shares; or
- (b) becomes bound or entitled to acquire shares in the Company under sections 979-982 of the Companies Act 2006,

any Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 5.2 but subject to rule 7, exercise any Option of his in whole or in part within whichever of the periods set out in rules 5.4 applies after which, unless the Option Holder has released his Option according to rule 7 and to the extent unexercised the Option shall lapse.

5.4 The periods referred in rule 5.3 are:

- (a) in a case falling within rule 5.3(a), the period of 6 months beginning with the date when the Acquirer has obtained Control of the Company unless the Committee determines that in connection with the event referred to in rule 5.3(a) Options should become capable of exercise prior to this date; and
- (b) in a case falling within rule 5.3(b), the period of one month from the first date on which the Acquirer becomes bound or entitled to give a notice to acquire Shares in the Company under section 979-982 of the Companies Act 2006 (notwithstanding any other provisions as to exercise in these Rules).

***Scheme of Arrangement***

5.5 Subject to rule 7, if under section 899 of the Companies Act 2006 the Court sanctions a compromise or arrangement in relation to the Company (a “**Scheme of Arrangement**”) and its shareholders in connection with the acquisition of Control by the Acquirer, the Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 5.2, exercise any Option of his in full within the period of 6 months beginning with when the Court sanctions the Scheme of Arrangement, after which unless the Option Holder has released his Option according to rule 7 and to the extent unexercised the Option shall lapse.

***Demerger***

5.6 If the Company is or is expected to be the subject of a demerger, merger within the Companies (Cross Border Merger) Regulations 2007, dividend-in-specie or other transaction which the Committee determines in its discretion would materially affect the value of any Option, the Committee may determine on a fair and reasonable basis that any Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 5.2, exercise any Option of his in whole or in part during such period as the Committee shall specify and notify to the affected Option Holders.

***Voluntary winding up***

5.7 If notice is duly given to members of a resolution at a general meeting for the voluntary winding up of the Company, except for the purposes of a reconstruction or amalgamation, any Option Holder may, notwithstanding rule 5.2, exercise any Option of his in whole or in part (but so that any exercise hereunder shall be conditional upon such resolution being passed) at any time thereafter until the resolution is duly passed or defeated or the general meeting adjourned *sine die*, whichever shall first occur. If such resolution is passed an Option shall, to the extent unexercised, lapse.

***Early cessation of employment***

5.8 Where an Option Holder ceases to hold any office or employment with a Group Company by reason of:

- (a) injury, disability or ill-health (such determination to be made by the Board); or
- (b) redundancy (within the meaning of the Employment Rights Act 1996); or
- (c) a Group Company ceasing to be under the Control of the Company or a business or part of a business being transferred to a company which is neither an Associated Company nor a company of which the Company has control,

an Option Holder may exercise notwithstanding rule 5.2 any Option held by him in full during the period of 90 days after the date of cessation (or such longer period as the Board may allow), after which it shall lapse.

### ***Cessation of employment for other reasons***

- 5.9 Where an Option Holder ceases to hold any office or employment with a Group Company in circumstances different to those provided for in rule 5.8 notwithstanding rule 5.2 but subject to rule 5.11 (death) a Vested Option shall remain exercisable during the period of 60 days after the date of cessation (or such longer period as the Board may allow) after which it shall lapse provided that if the cessation derives from dismissal of the Option Holder for gross misconduct or other disciplinary or other reasons giving rise to the termination of the Option Holder's employment by the Company or otherwise constituting a breach of the Option Holder's contract of employment (as determined in the absolute discretion of the Board) a Vested Option shall lapse on the date of cessation or, if earlier, the date that notice of termination is given. Rule 5.10 shall apply to any Unvested Options.

### ***Unvested Options***

- 5.10 An Unvested Option shall lapse on a cessation of employment within rule 5.9 unless the Board, prior to the date of cessation, gives notice to an Option Holder inviting that Option Holder to exercise their Unvested Option within such period and to such extent as the Board may in its absolute discretion determine. If such notice is given, to the extent that any Unvested Option is not exercised within such period, it will lapse immediately thereafter.

### ***Death***

- 5.11 Where the Option Holder dies:
- (a) any Option held by him that is a Vested Option at the date of death may be exercised by his personal representatives during the period of 12 months following such date after which it shall lapse; and
  - (b) any Unvested Option shall lapse 12 months after the date of death unless the Board in its absolute discretion determines that it may be exercised in whole or in part before the expiry of that period.

### ***Lapse of Options***

- 5.12 Notwithstanding any other provision in these Rules, an Option will lapse to the extent it has not been exercised on the earliest to occur of the following:
- (a) the 10th anniversary of the Date of Grant;
  - (b) the passing of a resolution by the shareholders in respect of a creditor's voluntary liquidation, the making by the Court of a winding up order, or the appointment of an administrator or receiver in respect of the Company;
  - (c) the Option Holder being adjudicated bankrupt, making or proposing a voluntary arrangement under the Insolvency Act 1986 or otherwise being deprived (except on death) of the legal or beneficial ownership of the Option;
  - (d) if applicable, the expiry of the relevant period referred to in rule 3.4;
  - (e) the expiry of the relevant period referred to in this rule 5 and where more than one such period applies, the earliest to expire of those periods.

### ***Meaning of ceasing employment***

- 5.13 For the purposes of rules 5.8 and 5.9:
- (a) an Option Holder (including an Option Holder who is absent from work on paternity or parental leave) shall not be treated as ceasing to hold any office or employment until

he no longer holds any office or employment with the Company or any Group Company or any Associated Company; and

- (b) a female Option Holder who is absent from work on maternity leave shall not be deemed to have ceased holding any office or employment until she ceases to be entitled to exercise any statutory or contractual right to return to work.

**6. Procedures to exercise Options**

6.1 An Option shall be exercised by notice in writing (in the form prescribed by the Committee) given by the Option Holder to the Company in respect of all or some of the Shares comprised in the Option, and such notice shall be accompanied by:

- (a) the relevant option certificate (or an indemnity in respect of a lost option certificate);
- (b) if required by the Committee, an election to transfer liability for Employer's Contributions to the Option Holder (in the form prescribed by the Committee and approved by HM Revenue & Customs); and
- (c) if required by the Committee, if the Shares to be acquired on exercise of the Option are considered to be restricted securities as defined in Part 7, Chapter 2, Taxes Act (such determination to be in the sole discretion of the Committee), a joint section 431, Taxes Act election (electing that the Market Value of the Shares acquired on exercise of the Option be calculated as if the Shares were not restricted securities),

together with a remittance for the aggregate Exercise Price payable, unless the Company and the Option Holder agree that an alternative arrangement can be used to satisfy the Exercise Price.

6.2 Provided the conditions for exercise are satisfied, exercise of the Option shall be effective on the date of receipt or deemed receipt by the Company (as determined by rule 10.2) (the "**Exercise Date**") of the documents referred to in rule 6.1.

6.3 The Company has established a cashless exercise facility to enable Option Holders to provide funds to pay the aggregate Exercise Price by:

- (a) authorising the deduction of the necessary amount from their salary payment next following delivery of the option certificate and the notice of exercise to the Company or its duly appointed agent; or
- (b) executing a letter of instruction authorising a representative to act as the Option Holder's agent and to sell on his behalf either all of the Shares acquired on exercise of the Option or such number of them (rounded up to the nearest whole Share) as will be required to cover the aggregate Exercise Price, the payment of any Tax Liabilities (as defined in rule 9.4), together with any fees and commissions arising in connection with the exercise of the Option and the sale of the Shares acquired. Once the requisite number of Shares has been sold and these requirements met in full, the Option Holder will receive a share certificate in respect of the balance of the Shares remaining (if any) and/or a cheque or bank transfer in respect of the balance of monies (if any) left after sale of all or the requisite number of Shares as aforesaid; or
- (c) implementing any other arrangements from time to time determined by the Committee and agreed between the Company and the Option Holder.

6.4 As soon as reasonably practicable after the Exercise Date the Company shall:

- (a) allot and issue such Shares which are to be issued pursuant to the exercise of the Option; or

(b) procure the transfer of such Shares which are to be transferred pursuant to the exercise of the Option,

to the Option Holder (or his nominee) and, subject to rule 6.5, cause to be registered in his name (or the name of his nominee) the number of Shares specified in the notice of exercise (as reduced in accordance with any alternative arrangement applicable under rule 6.1).

6.5 The Option Holder shall be responsible for any stamp duty arising on the transfer of Shares.

6.6 An Option may only be exercised in respect of a whole number of Shares, not a fraction of a Share.

6.7 No Option may be exercised unless such exercise, and the issue or transfer of Shares after such exercise, would be lawful in all relevant jurisdictions and in compliance with the Listing Rules of the London Stock Exchange, the AIM Rules or any other relevant share dealing code of the Company, the City Code on Takeovers and Mergers and any other relevant UK or overseas regulation or enactment.

6.8 An Option may not be exercised for fewer than 50,000 Shares at any one time

6.9 When an Option is exercised only in part, the balance shall remain exercisable on the same terms as originally applied to the whole Option and an endorsement to that effect shall be noted on the Option Certificate as soon as reasonably practicable after the partial exercise.

6.10 Save for any right determined by reference to a date preceding the date on which Shares are issued, Shares issued on the exercise of an Option shall rank equally with the Shares then in issue. Shares transferred on the exercise of an Option will be transferred without the benefit of any rights attaching to them by reference to a record date preceding the date of exercise.

6.11 An Option Holder to whom Shares are issued or transferred on the exercise of an Option shall be bound by the Company's articles of association as they apply to such Shares and if required to do so by the Board, shall enter into a deed of adherence pursuant to any shareholders' agreement relating to the Company. Where any such Shares are issued to or transferred to a nominee, the Option Holder shall ensure that similar obligations apply to that nominee as required by the Board.

## 7. Adjustment of Options

7.1 In the event of any capitalisation or offer by way of rights (including an open offer) or on any consolidation, sub-division, reduction or other variation of the capital of the Company, the number of Shares subject to the Option and the Exercise Price may be adjusted in such manner as the Committee, on a fair and reasonable basis, may deem appropriate. Notice of any such adjustments shall be given to the Option Holder by the Company.

## 8. Taxation

8.1 An Option Holder shall be accountable for any Income Tax Liability and National Insurance Contribution Liability which is chargeable on any assessable income deriving from:

- (a) the grant or exercise of, or other dealing in, any Option held by him,
- (b) the acquisition, holding or disposal of any Shares acquired on exercise of any Option held by him; and
- (c) any action, event or thing done or omitted to be done following the Option Holder's acquisition of the Shares acquired on exercise of any Option held by him which directly or indirectly gives rise to a liability under the Taxes Act in respect of the Shares (including the entering into of an election under section 431 of the Taxes Act).

8.2 In respect of such assessable income the Option Holder shall indemnify the Company and (at the direction of the Company) any Group Company which is or may be treated as the employer of the Option Holder in respect of the following (together, the "**Tax Liabilities**"):

- (a) any Income Tax Liability; and
- (b) any National Insurance Contribution Liability being the aggregate of:
  - (i) all the Employee's Contributions; and
  - (ii) all the Employer's Contributions (unless otherwise determined by the Committee and notified to the Option Holder) .

8.3 Pursuant to the indemnity referred to in rule 8.2, the Option Holder shall make such arrangements as the Company requires to meet the cost of the Tax Liabilities, including at the direction of the Company any of the following:

- (a) making a cash payment of an appropriate amount to the relevant Group Company whether by way of cheque, banker's draft or deduction from salary in time to enable that Group Company to remit such amount to HM Revenue & Customs before the 14th day following the end of the month in which the event giving rise to the relevant Tax Liabilities occurs;
- (b) appointing the Company as agent and/or attorney for the sale of sufficient of the Shares acquired pursuant to the exercise of the Option to cover the Tax Liabilities and authorising the payment to the relevant Group Company of the appropriate amount (including all reasonable fees, commissions and expenses incurred by the relevant Company in relation to such Sale) out of the net proceeds of sale of the Shares; and
- (c) entering into an election whereby the employer's liability for Employer's Contributions is transferred to the Option Holder on terms set out

in the election and approved by HM Revenue & Customs.

8.4 For the purposes of this rule 8, Group Companies includes former Group Companies.

9. **Administration and amendment**

9.1 The Scheme shall be administered by the Committee acting on behalf of the Company and the Committee's decision on all disputes shall be final.

9.2 Subject to rule 9.3, the Committee may at any time amend these Rules in any way it thinks fit.

9.3 No amendment may be made to these Rules if, or to the extent that, in the reasonable opinion of the Committee it would materially abrogate or adversely affect the subsisting rights of an

Option Holder as regards an Option granted prior to the amendment being made unless it is made:

- (a) with the written consent of the number of Option Holders that hold Options under the Scheme to acquire more than 50% of the Shares which would be delivered if all Options granted and subsisting under the Scheme were exercised (ignoring any conditions which may be attached to their exercise); or
- (b) by a resolution at a meeting of Option Holders passed by not less than 50% of the Option Holders who attend and vote either in person or by proxy.

9.4 The Committee shall have power from time to time to make and vary such rules (not being inconsistent with these rules) for the implementation and administration of this Scheme as it may think fit.

#### 10. **General**

10.1 The Company shall at all times keep available sufficient authorised and unissued Shares to satisfy the exercise to the full extent still possible of any Options (excluding those the exercise of which is to be satisfied by the transfer of existing Shares) taking account of any other obligations of the Company to issue new Ordinary Shares or shall otherwise ensure that Shares are available for transfer to satisfy the exercise of any Option.

10.2 Any notice or other communication under or in connection with these Rules may be given to the Option Holder either personally or by electronic mail or post and/or to the Company either personally or by electronic mail (with a report of receipt), post or by fax. Items sent by electronic mail shall be deemed to have been received at the time specified in the report of receipt returned to the sender. Items sent by post should be first class prepaid and shall be deemed to have been received 48 hours after posting. Items sent by fax shall be deemed to have been received on the day that they are sent.

10.3 The terms of employment of an Option Holder shall not be affected in any way by his participation in the Scheme which shall not form part of such terms (either expressly or impliedly) nor in any way entitle him to take into account such participation in calculating any compensation or damages on the termination of his employment for whatever reason (whether lawful or unlawful) which might otherwise be payable to him, and the Option Holder's terms of employment shall be deemed to be varied accordingly.

10.4 This Scheme is entirely discretionary and may be suspended or terminated by the Company at any time. Such suspension or termination will not affect any Options granted under the Scheme to the extent that they are subsisting at the date of such suspension or termination. The grant of an Option is likewise entirely discretionary and does not create any contractual or other right to receive future grants of options, or benefits in lieu of options. All determinations with respect to future grants will be at the sole discretion of the Company. Rights under the Scheme are not pensionable.

10.5 The costs of introducing and administering this Scheme shall be borne by the Company.

10.6 Subject to applicable law, the Company and any Group Company may enter into arrangements (including the payment of money or making of loans) with any person on such terms as it thinks fit whereby, on the exercise of an Option, existing Shares may be transferred to an Option Holder in satisfaction of his rights under this Scheme.

10.7 Nothing in these Rules shall be taken to impose any restriction or limitation on the exercise by the members of the Company of their rights to make any alteration to the articles of association of the Company or the share capital of the Company.

10.8 At any time whilst Shares are listed on the Alternative Investment Market or the Official List of the London Stock Exchange, the Company shall apply to the London Stock Exchange for any

shares issued on the exercise of any Option to be listed on the Alternative Investment Market or the Official List as appropriate.

- 10.9 The Option Holder, by accepting the Option, consents to the collection, use and transfer, in electronic or other form, of personal data (“Data”) that is necessary to facilitate the implementation, administration and management of the Scheme. The Company may, for the purpose of implementing, administering and managing the Scheme, hold certain personal information about the Option Holder, including, but not limited to, the Option Holder’s name, home address and telephone number, date of birth, national insurance number or other identification number, salary, nationality, job title and details of all awards or entitlement to options that may be granted under the Scheme. The Option Holder further consents to the transfer of the Data to any third parties assisting in the implementation, administration and management of the Scheme, including any broker with whom the Shares that may be issued on exercise of the Option may be deposited, and that these recipients may be located in the UK or elsewhere. The Option Holder, by accepting the Option, waives any data privacy rights he may have with respect to the Data and authorises the Company and its agents to store and transmit such information in electronic form
- 10.10 The Scheme and any dispute, claim or obligation arising out of or in connection with it, its subject matter or formation shall be governed by English law. The Option Holder and the Company irrevocably agree that the English courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute or claim arising out of or in connection with this Scheme, its subject matter or formation.

## Letter Notifying Grant

[to be typed onto Company letterhead]

•[Date]

•[Name]

•[Address]

Dear [ Name • ]

### Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme

I am pleased to inform you that the Board has granted you an option over • ordinary shares in the capital of Verona Pharma plc (the “**Company**”) (the “**Option**”) in accordance with the Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme (the “**Scheme**”).

You will find enclosed with this letter:

- A copy of the rules of the Scheme;
- An option certificate for execution and return (Appendix A);
- A joint election for the transfer of secondary NIC for execution and return (Appendix B); and
- A form of exercise (Appendix C).

The option certificate is the written agreement between the Company and you in relation to the Option. Unless you do not wish to accept the Option, please execute the option certificate and return it to me by [•].

By executing the option certificate you are agreeing to be bound by the rules of the Scheme so please read them carefully. Your attention is drawn in particular to rule 5 which sets out the dates upon which your Option vests and the other situations in which you will be able to exercise it.

When you wish to exercise your Option you must do so by completing and returning the form of exercise (attached to the option certificate).

### **Taxation**

The options are not approved by HM Revenue & Customs or any other taxation authority. You may wish to take professional advice on your tax position with respect to the Options.

Your employer may have to account to HM Revenue & Customs on your behalf through the PAYE system for any income tax and national insurance contributions that become payable. You will be required to make arrangements to reimburse your employer for the payment of these amounts on your behalf.

You are required to agree to bear any employer’s secondary national insurance that your employer may become liable to pay to HM Revenue & Customs. This is a condition of grant of the Option and you are required to enter into the joint election in the form attached to this letter as Appendix B. Under this election, you will be liable for any secondary national insurance contributions arising in respect of the Option.

In certain circumstances, exercise of your Option will be conditional on your entering into an election pursuant to section 431, Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 jointly with your employer (electing that the market value of the shares acquired on exercise of the Option be calculated as if the shares were not restricted securities). You will be asked to sign this form if it is necessary.

When you sell the shares you acquire on exercise of your Option, any gain may be subject to capital gains tax. It will be your responsibility to report and pay any capital gains tax to HM Revenue & Customs or such other taxation authority as required.

Yours sincerely

\_\_\_\_\_  
 For and on behalf of  
**Verona Pharma plc**

**Share Option Certificate**

**Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme**

Date of Grant	Exercise Price per Share	Number of Shares
•	£•	•

This is to certify that \_\_\_\_\_  
 of \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

has been granted an option to acquire • ordinary shares in the Company at the exercise price shown above (the “**Option**”) under the rules of the Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme (the “**Scheme Rules**”).

The Option is exercisable in accordance with the Scheme Rules. In particular, the right to exercise the Option shall Vest in normal circumstances according to the Vesting Schedule below.

Normal Vesting Date	Vesting proportion
•	•
•	•
•	[Balance of Shares under Option]

In this Vesting Schedule the phrase “Shares under Option” shall refer to the total number of Shares under Option at the Date of Grant. The number of Shares comprised in any tranche, other than the tranche that Vests on the latest date shall be rounded down to a whole number.

The tax treatment of the Option will depend on a number of factors, and if you are unsure about such treatment you are advised to take your own independent financial advice from an appropriately qualified professional adviser.

Where any income tax and national insurance contributions are payable through the PAYE system, you will be required to indemnify the Company and other Group Companies (and former Group Companies) all its subsidiaries for such liabilities under the Scheme Rules. Capital gains tax (CGT) may also become payable on eventual disposal of the ordinary shares acquired and any such CGT liability will be for your own account.



**Form of Exercise**

**Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme  
(the "Scheme")**

To: The Directors  
**Verona Pharma plc**

I wish to exercise the option comprised in the enclosed option certificate (the "**Option**") in respect of • ordinary shares of £0.001 each in the capital of the Company (the "**Shares**").

I [enclose my remittance of £• in favour of Verona Pharma plc] or [have arranged payment in accordance with rule 7.3 of the Scheme Rules] as payment in full of the exercise price of £• per Share.

I apply for the number of Shares specified above and request you to arrange the registration of them in my name subject to the memorandum and articles of association of Verona Pharma plc.

I agree:

- (a) to indemnify Verona Pharma plc and other Group Companies (or former Group Companies) in respect of any Tax Liabilities (as defined in rule 8.2 of the Scheme); and
- (b) that the issue of these Shares to me is conditional on my first making arrangements to the satisfaction of Verona Pharma plc to discharge the Tax Liabilities pursuant to such indemnity and, if required by the board of directors, entering into a section 431 election.

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ Postcode: \_\_\_\_\_

Note:

If you are signing as a personal representative you should lodge a copy of the Grant of Probate or Letters of Administration as evidence of your appointment. In the event of there being more than one personal representative each must sign the form.

Dated 30<sup>th</sup> April 2012

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

- and -

**JAN-ANDERS KARLSSON  
VERONA PHARMA PLC**

- and -

**JAN-ANDERS KARLSSON**

---

**EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

---

## INDEX

<u>Clause</u>		<u>Page</u>
1	DEFINITIONS	3
2	APPOINTMENT	4
3	PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT	4
4	DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE	4
5	COMPANY POLICIES	5
6	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	5
7	CONFIDENTIALITY	6
8	DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY	7
9	REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS	7
10	EXPENSES	8
11	BENEFITS	8
12	DISCRETIONARY BONUS	8
13	SHARE SCHEMES	8
14	CHANGE OF CONTROL	9
15	WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS	9
16	ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY	10
17	TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT	10
18	PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE	12
19	POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS	12
20	DATA PROTECTION	14
21	PREVIOUS CONTRACTS	14
22	STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT	14
23	THIRD PARTIES	14
24	NOTICES	14
25	INTERPRETATION	15
26	GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION	15

---

### Employment Agreement

**THIS AGREEMENT** is made on 30 April 2012

**BETWEEN:**

- (1) **VERONA PHARMA PLC**, with its principal office at Suite 21, Alpha House, 100 Borough High Street, London SE1 1LB (the "**Company**"); and
- (2) **JAN-ANDERS KARLSSON** of Apartment 13, 2 Matthew Parker Street, London SW1H 9NJ (the "**Executive**").

**IT IS AGREED** as follows:

**1 DEFINITIONS**

**1.1** In this Agreement, unless the context otherwise expressly requires, the following expressions shall have the following meanings:

"**Agreement**" means this Agreement;

"**Articles of Association**" means the Company's articles of association, as amended from time to time;

"**Board**" means the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorised committee of the Board;

"**Change of Control Event**" means:

- (a) a shareholder, or a group of associated shareholders, becoming entitled to sufficient shares in the Company to give it or them the ability and that ability is successfully exercised, in a general meeting, to replace all or a majority of the Board;
- (b) in relation to a takeover bid in respect of shares in the Company, during the "Bid Period" as defined the Companies Act provided that where a takeover bid is publicly announced prior to the service of a bidder's statement on the Company in relation to that takeover bid, the Bid Period shall be deemed to have commenced at the time of that announcement; and
- (c) on an application under the Companies Act if a court orders a meeting to be held concerning a proposed compromise or arrangement for the purposes of or in connection with a scheme for the reconstruction of the Company or its amalgamation with any other company.

"**Commencement Date**" means 1 June 2012;

"**Companies Act**" means the Companies Act 1985;

"**Company**" means Verona Pharma plc, a company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales with registered number 05375156;

“**Employment**” means the employment established by this Agreement;

“**Executive**” means Jan-Anders Karlsson;

“**Group**” means the Group Companies collectively;

“**Group Company**” means the Company, and any company which is from time to time a subsidiary of the Company, the holding company of the Company or a subsidiary of such holding company;

“**holding company**” and “**subsidiary**” shall have the respective meanings ascribed to such expressions by section 736 of the Companies Act 1985;

“**Holiday Year**” means the period of twelve consecutive calendar months commencing on 1 January in each year; and

“**Intellectual Property Rights**” means rights in ideas, know how, confidential information, inventions, discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, products, patents, designs, trademarks, database right or copyright work or any right to prevent reproduction whether or not any of these is registered and including applications for any such right, matter or thing or registration thereof and all rights or forms of protection of a similar nature or having equivalent or similar effect to any of these which may subsist anywhere in the world.

## **2 APPOINTMENT**

**2.1** The Company appoints the Executive and the Executive agrees to serve the Company as chief executive officer, or in such other capacity as the Board may reasonably require (such other appointment not to be of a lower status than the Executive’s appointment under this Agreement).

**2.2** The Company also appoints the Executive and the Executive accepts such appointment as a director of the Company.

**2.3** The Executive hereby warrants to the Company that he will not be in breach of any former terms of employment, whether express or implied, or of any other obligation, arrangement, order or contract binding on the Executive, by reason of his entering into this Agreement.

**2.4** The Executive hereby warrants that he knows of no circumstances which may result in proceedings being brought against him by the Financial Services Authority, under the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“FSMA”) or any similar regulatory authority, whether in the UK or otherwise and that no such proceedings have been threatened or commenced against him.

## **3 PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT**

**3.1** The Employment shall begin on the Commencement Date and, subject to Clause 17, shall continue until it is terminated by either party giving to the other not less than twelve months’ written notice.

## **4 DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE**

**4.1** The Executive shall be chief executive officer of the Company and, subject always to the directions of the Board, shall carry out such duties in relation to the Company as the Board may from time to time require. The Executive shall, at the request of the Board, and without additional remuneration, act as an officer or employee of any Group Company.

**4.2** The Executive shall be a director of the Company and carry out such duties as are consistent with his position as a director of a company including attending Board meetings and other meetings of the directors of the Board or making himself available for such meetings by telephone, as may from time to time be required. The Executive may be required from time to time to participate in committees of the Board, including acting as chairman of such committees.

**4.3** The Executive shall faithfully and diligently serve the Company as a director and chief executive officer and shall act at all times in the best interests of the Company. The Executive shall perform diligently such duties and exercise such powers consistent with his employment under this Agreement as may from time to time be assigned to or vested in him and, in his capacity as chief executive officer, shall obey the reasonable and lawful directions of the Board.

**4.4** The Executive shall, during the course of the Employment, be entitled to hold non-executive positions with other businesses, provided however that the Executive shall not whether alone or jointly with another and whether directly or indirectly, carry on, or be engaged or concerned in, or (except as the owner for investment of securities dealt in on a recognised stock exchange and not exceeding 3% in nominal value of the issued securities of any class or otherwise as approved in writing by the Company from time to time) be interested in, any other business which competes with the business of the Company or the Group.

**4.5** The Executive shall at all times keep the Board or any other persons as it may nominate, promptly and fully informed (in writing if so requested) of his conduct of the business or affairs of the Company or the Group and provide such explanations as it or they may require in connection therewith.

**4.6** The Executive shall comply with (a) every rule of law; (b) every regulation of the London Stock Exchange or of the Alternative Investment Market or any other Recognised Investment Exchange as defined in the FSMA; (c) every rule or regulation of any competent regulatory authority; and (d) every regulation of the Company for the time being in force in relation to dealings in shares or other securities of the Company or any other member of the Group.

**4.7** The Executive's initial place of employment shall be the principal office of the Company stated in this Agreement. The Executive agrees that the Company may change the Executive's place of work to anywhere in the United Kingdom, provided that, if this requires the Executive to relocate, reasonable relocation expenses are paid by the Company. In addition, the Executive may be required to travel and work on the business of the Company both inside and outside the United Kingdom.

## **5 COMPANY POLICIES**

**5.1** The Executive must comply with all Company policies, rules, systems and procedures as shall be in force from time to time.

## **6 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

**6.1** All Intellectual Property Rights devised, developed or created by the Executive during the period of his employment with the Company or any Group Company and relating to the business of the Company shall belong to, and be the absolute property of the Company or such Group Company as the Company may nominate. To the extent that such Intellectual Property Rights are not otherwise vested in the Company, the Executive hereby assigns the same to the Company, together with all related past and future rights to action.

**6.2** It shall be part of the normal duties of the Executive to consider in what manner and by what new methods or devices, products, services, processes, equipment or systems of the Company and each Group Company might be improved, and promptly to give to the Board full details of any invention, discovery, formula, technique, design, improvement or other matter or work whatsoever in relation thereto which the Executive may from time to time make or discover during the course of the Employment, and to further the interests of the Company in relation to the same.

**6.3** The Executive shall at the request and cost of the Company do all things necessary or desirable and execute all and any documents required to give the Company, or such other member of the Group as the Company may nominate, title to the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1. The obligation contained in this Clause 6.3 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.

**6.4** The Company may edit, copy, add to, take from, adapt, alter and translate the product of the Executive's services in exercising the rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

**6.5** To the full extent permitted by law, the Executive irrevocably and unconditionally waives any moral rights the Executive may otherwise have under sections 77 to 85 inclusive of the Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988 and any equivalent provisions of law anywhere in the world, in relation to the rights referred to in Clause 6.1.

**6.6** The Executive must not knowingly do or omit to do anything which will or may have the result of preventing the Company from enjoying the full benefits of ownership of the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

**6.7** The Executive must not at any time make use of the Company's property or documents or materials in which the Company owns the Intellectual Property Rights for any purpose which has not been authorised by the Company.

**6.8** Each of the provisions of this Clause 6 is distinct and severable from the others and if at any time one or more of such provisions is or becomes invalid, unlawful or unenforceable (whether wholly or to any extent), the validity, lawfulness and enforceability of the remaining provisions (or the same provision to any other extent) of this Clause 6 shall not in any way be affected or impaired.

## **7 CONFIDENTIALITY**

**7.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will have access to and become aware of information which is confidential to the Company. Without prejudice to his common law duties, the Executive undertakes that he will not, save in the proper performance of his duties, make use of, or disclose to any person, (including for the avoidance of doubt any competitors of the Company), any of the trade secrets or other confidential information of or relating to the Company, or any user of the Company's services or any company, organisation or business with which the Company is involved in any kind of business venture or partnership, or any other information concerning the business of the Company which he may have received or obtained in confidence while in the service of the Company. The Executive will use his best endeavours to prevent the unauthorised publication or disclosure of any such trade secrets or confidential information.

**7.2** This restriction shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment without limit in point of time but, both during the Executive's employment and after its termination, shall cease to apply to information ordered to be disclosed by a Court or Tribunal of competent jurisdiction or otherwise required to be disclosed by law or to information which becomes available to the public generally (other than by reason of the Executive breaching this Clause 7). Nothing in this Clause 6 will prevent the Executive making a "protected disclosure" within the meaning of the Public Interest Disclosure Act 1998.

**7.3** For the purposes of this Agreement confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to:

- (a) the Company's corporate, business development and marketing strategy and plans;
- (b) budgets, management accounts, bank account details and other confidential financial data of the Company;
- (c) know-how and products being developed by the Company, including inventions and discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data;
- (d) reports, confidential aspects of the Company's computer technology and systems, confidential algorithms developed or used by the Company, confidential information relating to proprietary computer hardware or software (including updates) not generally known to the public;
- (e) confidential methods and processes, information relating to the running of the Company's business which is not in the public domain, including details of salaries, bonuses, commissions and other employment terms applicable within the Company;
- (f) the names, addresses and contact details of any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and their requirements for any of the Company's products or services. Without prejudice to the foregoing, this includes personal information provided to the Company by visitors to and users of any of its websites;
- (g) the terms on which the Company does business with any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and the terms of any partnership, joint venture or other form of commercial co-operation or agreement the Company enters into with any third party;
- (h) software and technical information necessary for the development, maintenance or operation of any of the Company's websites and the source code of each website; and

(i) any other information which the Company is bound by an obligation of confidence owed to a third party, in particular the content of discussions or communications with any prospective customers, suppliers or business partners.

7.4 In this Clause 7, any reference to “Company” includes any “Group Company” as defined in Clause 1.1 and the Executive’s undertaking to the Company in Clause 7.1 is given to the Company for itself and as trustee for each Group Company.

7.5 The provisions of this Clause 7 shall be without prejudice to the Executive’s duties at common law.

## **8 DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY’S PROPERTY**

8.1 The Executive shall not, except in the proper performance of his duties, or with the Company’s permission, remove any property belonging or relating to the Company or any Group Company from the Company’s or Group Company’s premises, or make any copies of documents or records relating to the Company’s or any Group Company’s affairs.

8.2 Upon the Company’s request at any time, and in any event on the termination of the Employment, the Executive shall immediately deliver up to the Company or its authorised representative, any plans, keys, mobile telephone, security passes, credit cards, equipment, documents, records, papers, computer disks, tapes or other computer hardware or software (together with all copies of the same), and all property of whatever nature in the Executive’s possession or control which belongs to the Company or any other Group Company or relates to its or their business affairs. The Executive shall, at the Company’s request, provide the Company with a written statement that he has complied with this obligation.

8.3 If the Executive has any information relating to the Company or the Group or work he has carried out for the Company or any Group Company which is stored on a computer or laptop computer, whether or not the computer or laptop computer is owned by the Company or a Group Company, the Company shall be entitled to download the information and/or supervise its deletion from the computer or laptop concerned.

## **9 REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS**

9.1 The Executive shall receive during the Employment a salary at the rate of £130,000 per annum (or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing). If the Company performs well (as indicated by a sustained increase of its share price in excess of 15p over a period of 6 months) then the Board will in its discretion consider increasing the Executive’s salary to not less than the median base salary of chief executive officers of biotechnology companies listed on the AIM stock exchange with comparable market capitalisations. The undertaking of a salary review does not confer a contractual right (whether express or implied) to any increase in salary. An increase in salary one year will not guarantee an increase in salary in any subsequent year or years.

9.2 The Executive’s salary will accrue on a day-to-day basis payable by equal monthly payments in arrears no later than the last day of each month. Such salary shall include any sums receivable as director’s fees or other remunerations from any Group Company.

9.3 Payment of salary to the Executive may be made either by the Company or by another Group Company and, if by more than one company, in such proportion as the Board may from time to time decide.

9.4 At any time during the Employment, or, in any event, on the termination thereof howsoever arising, the Company shall be entitled to deduct from the Executive’s remuneration any monies due to the Company from the Executive, including, but not limited to, any outstanding loans, advances, the cost of repairing any damage or loss to the Company’s property caused by the negligence of the Executive (and of recovering the same), excess holiday pay and any other monies owed by the Executive to the Company.

## **10 EXPENSES**

The Company shall refund the Executive all reasonable expenses wholly and exclusively incurred by him in the proper performance of the Company or the Group's business provided that the Executive produces to the Company such evidence of actual payment as the Company reasonably requires. Any credit card or similar facility supplied to the Executive by the Company shall be used solely for expenses incurred by him in the course of the Employment.

## **11 BENEFITS**

**11.1** The Company shall, during the Employment, reimburse the Executive for the cost (grossed up for income tax paid by the Executive) incurred by him for membership of the Expacare or such other private medical insurance scheme for the Executive and his wife. The Executive shall produce to the Company evidence of payment of the membership.

**11.2** The Company does not operate a pension scheme and makes no contributions toward any personal pension schemes.

**11.3** The Company shall, during the Employment, provide membership of the UK Institute of Directors for the Executive.

**11.4** The Company shall maintain for the Executive Directors' and Officers' insurance in respect of those liabilities which he may incur as a director or officer of the Company or any other Group Company for which such insurance is normally available to the Company in respect of its directors and officers.

## **12 DISCRETIONARY BONUS**

**12.1** The Executive shall be entitled to receive a discretionary bonus, dependent upon performance criteria for the Company and the Executive, as determined by the Board in its absolute discretion. The discretionary bonus during the first 12 months of the Employment will be £170,000, dependent on performance criteria to be agreed by the Company and the Executive within two months after the commencement of the Employment. The discretionary bonus for subsequent periods will be equal to 100% of the Executive's salary under Clause 9.1, or such higher percentage determined by the Board in its absolute discretion.

**12.2** Subject to the rules of the Company's Share Dealing Code in force from time to time, within 12 months after receiving a bonus payment, the Executive shall invest an amount equal to half of the bonus (net of income tax paid by the Executive) in the Company by purchasing the Company's shares traded on the AIM stock exchange.

**12.3** Any bonus scheme operated by the Company will not constitute a contractual term and bonus payments (if any) will be paid at the absolute discretion of the Company. The Executive shall not be eligible to be considered for a bonus if the Employment of the Executive is terminated under Clause 17.2(b). In addition, as the bonus is paid as an incentive to employees to remain in the employment of the Company, payment of any bonus is conditional on the Executive remaining in the employment of the Company and not having given notice to the Company to terminate his employment at the date that any bonus is payable.

## **13 SHARE SCHEMES**

**13.1** The Executive shall be entitled to participate in the Company's share and share option schemes in place from time to time (the "Share Schemes"). With respect to any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme:

- (a) the number and value, vesting schedule, circumstances of exercise and all other terms and conditions of any award will be as determined in the Company's sole discretion and set out in a separate letter from the Company to the Executive;

- (b) the award will be subject to the Executive entering into a joint election approved by HM Revenue & Customs with respect to secondary national insurance liability;
- (c) the making of any award under a Share Scheme shall not entitle the Executive to any further award or right to participate in any other Share Scheme;
- (d) subject to Clause 13.1(e), the Executive's rights under or in relation to this Agreement are separate from and shall not be affected by any participation in the Share Schemes, and his participation shall be subject to the Share Schemes' rules from time to time;
- (e) subject to Clause 14, if the Employment is terminated for whatever reason and whether lawfully or unlawfully, the Executive agrees that he shall not be entitled by way of damages for breach of contract, dismissal or compensation for loss of office or otherwise to any sum, shares or other benefits to compensate him for the loss or diminution in value of any actual or prospective rights, benefits or expectations under or in relation to the Share Schemes.

**13.2** On the Commencement Date, the Executive will be entitled to be granted the following:

- (a) options to subscribe for a total of 2,000,000 ordinary shares in the capital of the Company exercisable at 5 pence per ordinary share. Such options will vest in equal proportions on the first, second and third anniversary of the date of grant. Subject to vesting, the options will be exercisable at any time up to the fifth anniversary of the date of grant; and
- (b) options to subscribe for a further 3,000,000 ordinary shares in the capital of the Company, with 1,000,000 exercisable at 10 pence per ordinary share, 1,000,000 exercisable at 12 pence per ordinary share and the remaining 1,000,000 exercisable at 15 pence per ordinary share. All such options will vest on 1 June 2015. Subject to vesting, the options will be exercisable at any time up to the fifth anniversary of the date of grant.

**13.3** As soon as reasonably practicable after the signing of this Agreement, the Company will seek to put in place an HMRC-approved enterprise management incentive scheme for the options to be granted under Clause 13.2(a) and (b). Any options that cannot be granted under an HMRC-approved scheme will be granted as non-approved options. Clause 13.1 will apply to the options granted under Clause 13.2(a) and (b).

#### **14 CHANGE OF CONTROL**

Notwithstanding any other terms and conditions of this Agreement, if a Change of Control Event occurs:

- (a) any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme referred to in Clause 13 will automatically vest and may be exercised prior to the award's expiry date; and
- (b) the Executive will be entitled to receive his full discretionary bonus under Clause 12 without any obligation to purchase shares in the Company referred to in Clause 12.1.

#### **15 WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS**

**15.1** The Executive shall devote the whole of his time, attention and abilities to his duties hereunder during the Company's usual business hours and such additional hours as may from time to time be reasonably necessary for the proper performance of his duties. This may include working in the evenings outside normal office hours, at weekends or on public holidays. The Executive shall not be entitled to receive any additional remuneration for work outside the Company's usual business hours.

**15.2** The Executive hereby agrees to disapply Regulation 4 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 to the effect that the 48 hour limit on average working time will not apply in respect of his employment by the Company, subject to his right to revoke this election by 13 weeks' notice by the Executive to the Company.

**15.3** The Executive shall (in addition to normal UK public holidays) be entitled to 25 working days' holiday at full salary in each Holiday Year during the Employment to be taken at such reasonable time or times as the Board may approve. Holiday may only be taken during the notice period if either the Company so requires or the Board has approved the holiday after notice has been served.

**15.4** Holiday entitlement shall accrue pro rata during each Holiday Year. Any entitlement to holiday remaining at the end of any Holiday Year may not be carried forward to the next succeeding Holiday Year. The notice requirements in relation to statutory annual leave, as provided by Regulation 15 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 shall not apply to this Agreement.

**15.5** If the Executive has holiday entitlement accrued but not taken, the Company may, in its sole discretion, require him to take some or all of his holiday entitlement during his notice period or pay him a sum in lieu of accrued holiday on termination. If, on the termination of the Employment, the Executive has exceeded his accrued holiday entitlement, this excess will be deducted from any sums due to the Executive from the Company. A day's holiday pay for these purposes shall be 1/260 of the Executive's annual basic salary in accordance with Clause 9.1.

## **16 ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY**

**16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such statutory sick pay as he may be entitled to receive.

**16.2** If the Executive is absent from work on medical grounds, he is required to notify the Company by telephone on the first morning of his absence or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. If the Executive is absent from work for more than seven consecutive days, he must submit to the Company a medical certificate signed by a practising medical practitioner. Thereafter, the Executive shall submit further medical certificates to cover the whole of his period of absence.

**16.3** In the event that the Executive is incapacitated by reason of ill health or accident from performing his duties hereunder for a period or periods exceeding 130 working days in any 12 month period then:

- (a) the Company shall automatically become entitled to appoint a temporary successor to the Executive to perform all or any of the duties required to be performed by the Executive under the terms of this Agreement and the Executive's duties shall be amended temporarily accordingly;
- (b) the Employment of the Executive may be subject to termination by the Company giving to the Executive not less than thirteen weeks' notice in writing; and
- (c) nothing in this Clause 16.3 shall prejudice any rights that the Executive may have under the provisions of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.

**16.4** It is a condition of the Employment that the Executive consents to an examination by an independent doctor nominated by the Company should the Company so require. The Executive hereby authorises the Company to have unconditional access to any report or reports (including copies of and documents referred to in such reports) prepared as a result of any such examination and authorises the doctor(s) to discuss the same with the Chairman of the Company.

**16.5** The Company reserves the right to suspend the Executive on medical grounds, if, at any time, in the Company's reasonable opinion, the Executive is incapable on grounds of ill-health of performing some or all of his duties under this Agreement. During any period of suspension on medical grounds, the Executive will be subject to the same rights and duties as apply to employees on garden leave, as set out in Clause 18.2 of this Agreement.

## **17 TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT**

**17.1** The Employment may be terminated by either party by notice given in accordance with Clause 3.1.

10

---

**17.2** The Employment of the Executive shall be subject to termination by the Company (but without prejudice to any of the Executive's continuing obligations hereunder):

- (a) pursuant to the provisions of Clause 16.3 above;
- (b) immediately by notice in writing if the Executive shall:
  - (i) not be elected or re-elected as a director of the Company upon standing for election or re-election as a director in accordance with the Articles of Association or otherwise cease to be a director of the Company by virtue of a shareholders' resolution; or
  - (ii) have committed and repeated or continued (after warning) any material breach of his obligations hereunder; or
  - (iii) have been guilty of conduct calculated or likely or tending to bring himself or any Group Company into disrepute or otherwise prejudicially to affect the interests of any Group Company; or
  - (iv) have a bankruptcy order made against him or enter into a voluntary arrangement within the meaning of the Insolvency Act 1986 or enter into a Deed of Arrangement under the Deeds of Arrangement Act 1914 or make any composition with some or all of his creditors; or
  - (v) be prohibited by law from being a director; or
  - (vi) be convicted of any arrestable criminal offence, other than an offence under the Road Traffic legislation in respect of which a non-custodial sentence or penalty is imposed.

**17.3** The Company may terminate the Employment if, in the opinion of the Board, the Executive's performance of his duties is below the standard

required of him. Such termination will not usually occur without at least one prior warning to the Executive of the possibility of such termination.

**17.4** If the Company becomes entitled to terminate the Employment pursuant to Clause 17.2 above, it shall be entitled (but without prejudice to its rights subsequently to terminate the Employment on the same or any other ground) to suspend the Executive on full payment of salary for so long as it may think fit.

**17.5** The Executive shall have no claim against the Company if this Agreement is terminated by reason of the liquidation of the Company for the purpose of reconstruction or amalgamation and the Executive is offered employment with any concern or undertaking resulting from such reconstruction or amalgamation in a similar position and on terms which are substantially the same as the terms of this Agreement.

**17.6** On the termination of the Employment, howsoever arising, the Executive shall forthwith or at any time thereafter at the request of the Company, resign from all offices held by him in any Group Company together with any other offices or memberships held by him by virtue of the Employment. Should the Executive fail to resign within seven days of being so requested, the Company is irrevocably authorised to appoint some person as his attorney to sign upon his behalf any document or do anything necessary or requisite to give effect thereto.

**17.7** The Executive shall not at any time during or after the termination of the Employment make any untrue or misleading statement in relation to the Company or the Group nor, in particular, after the termination of the Employment represent himself as being employed by or connected with the Group.

**17.8** Termination of the Employment within this Clause 17 shall be without prejudice to any rights which have accrued at the time of termination and to the provisions of Clauses 6, 7, 8 and 19 which shall remain in full force and effect.

## 18 PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE

**18.1** The Company reserves the right in its absolute discretion to terminate the Employment at any time with immediate effect by giving written notice to the Executive that the Company shall pay in lieu of notice. The payment shall be calculated at the rate of the Executive's basic annual salary, pro-rated full discretionary bonus and contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The Company shall not, under any circumstances, be obliged to make a payment in lieu of notice.

**18.2** If either party serves notice on the other to terminate the Employment, the Company may require the Executive to take "garden leave" for all or part of the remaining period of his employment. If the Executive is asked to take garden leave he:

- (a) may not attend at his place of work or any other premises of the Company and/or any Group Company unless at the Company's written request;
- (b) may not contact any customers, suppliers, partners or contacts of the Company without the Company's prior written permission;
- (c) may be required not to carry out all or any of his normal day to day duties for the remaining period of the Employment or any part thereof;
- (d) may be assigned other duties or have powers vested in him withdrawn;
- (e) must return to the Company all equipment, including, but not limited to, laptop computers and fax machines, all documents, discs and other materials (including copies) belonging to the Company and/or any Group Company containing confidential information; and
- (f) must remain contactable by telephone on a daily basis during any period of absence from work under this Clause 18, and may not take holiday, save with the Company's prior written consent.

**18.3** It is expressly agreed between the parties that, during any period of garden leave, the mutual duties of good faith and trust and confidence, and the Executive's duty of fidelity to the Company, shall continue during any period that the Executive is not required to attend work, pursuant to this Clause 18.

## 19 POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS

**19.1** Within this Clause 19 the following words shall have the following meanings:

**"Competitive Business"** shall mean any business or activity in competition with that carried on by the Company or any Group Company at the Termination Date in which the Executive shall have been directly concerned at any time in the Contact Period;

**"Contact Period"** shall mean the 12 month period ending with the Termination Date;

**"Customer Connection"** shall mean any person, company or other organisation who:

- (a) was at any time in the Contact Period a customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor) of the Company; or
- (b) was at the Termination Date negotiating with the Company with a view to dealing with the Company as customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor);

provided that this will only include suppliers where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

**"Skilled Employee"** shall mean any person who was:

- (a) employed by the Company; or
- (b) contracted to render services to the Company;

in technical or managerial work during the Contact Period and who was so engaged or contracted on the Termination Date;

“**Supplier**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company or negotiating with the Company at the Termination Date with a view to supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company, where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Termination Date**” shall mean the date of termination of the Executive’s Employment under this Agreement; and

“**Territory**” shall mean any member country of the European Union.

**19.2** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, either on his own account or otherwise, canvass or solicit business in competition with the Company from any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment.

**19.3** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, either on his own account or otherwise, do business in competition with the Company with any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment.

**19.4** The Executive will not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, in competition with the Company, either on his/her own account or otherwise, accept the supply of goods or directly or indirectly interfere with or seek to interfere with the continuance of the supply of goods to the Company from any Supplier with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his employment.

**19.5** The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, induce or seek to induce any Skilled Employee, with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the course of his duties hereunder in the Contact Period, to leave the Company’s employment, whether or not this would be a breach of contract on the part of such Skilled Employee or offer employment or an engagement to any such Skilled Employee.

**19.6** The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, carry on or be interested in Competitive Business in competition with the Company in the Territory whether as principal, agent, director, partner, proprietor, employee or otherwise.

**19.7** The period of time of the restrictions under this Clause 19 shall be reduced by the length of any period of garden leave the Executive may be required to take pursuant to Clause 18.2 above. In the event that the period of the restrictions is so reduced, the Contact Period shall mean the 12 month period ending with the date on which the Executive’s garden leave commences.

**19.8** The Executive agrees that he will, at the request of the Company, enter into a direct agreement or undertaking with any Group Company whereby he will accept restrictions corresponding to the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 (or such of them as may be appropriate in the circumstances) in relation to such products and services and such areas and for such period as such Group Company may reasonably require for the protection of its legitimate interests.

**19.9** Each of the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 are considered reasonable by the Company and the Executive as being no greater than is required for the protection of the goodwill of the business of the Company and the Group and are intended to be separate and severable. In the event that any of the said restrictions shall be held void, but would be valid if part of the wording

thereof were deleted, such restriction shall apply with such deletion as may be necessary to make it valid and effective.

## **20 DATA PROTECTION**

**20.1** In order to keep and maintain records relating to the Employment it shall be necessary for the Company to record, keep and process personal data (including sensitive personal data) relating to the Executive. This data may be recorded, kept and processed on computer and in hard copy form. To the extent that it is reasonably necessary in connection with the Employment and the performance of the Company's responsibilities as an employer, the Company may be required to disclose this data to others, including other employees of the Company, Group Companies, the Company's professional advisers, the Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs and other authorities. The Executive consents to the recording, processing, use and disclosure by the Company of personal data relating to the Executive as set out above. This does not affect the Executive's rights as a data subject or the Company's obligations and responsibilities under the Data Protection Act 1984 and/or the Data Protection Act 1998. For the purposes of these Acts, the Company has nominated the Chairman as its representative.

## **21 PREVIOUS CONTRACTS**

**21.1** This Agreement is in substitution for any previous contract of service or for services between any Group Company and the Executive which shall be deemed to have been terminated by mutual consent with effect from the Commencement Date.

## **22 STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT**

**22.1** The information in this Agreement constitutes a written statement of the terms of employment of the Executive in compliance with the provisions of the Employment Rights Act 1996.

## **23 THIRD PARTIES**

**23.1** This Agreement may be enforced by any Group Company subject to and in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement confers on any other third party any benefits under the provision of the Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

## **24 NOTICES**

**24.1** Notices by either party must be in writing addressed:

- (a) to the Company at its registered office for the time being; and
- (b) to the Executive at his place of work or at the address set out in this Agreement or such other address as the Executive may from time to time have notified in writing to the Company for the purpose of this Clause.

**24.2** Notices will be effectively served:

- (a) on the day of receipt, where any hand-delivered letter or (in the case of the Company) a facsimile transmission is received on a business day before or during normal working hours;
- (b) on the following business day, where any hand-delivered letter or (in the case of the Company) facsimile transmission is received either on a business day after normal working hours or on any other day;
- (c) on the second business day following the day of posting from within the United Kingdom of any letter sent by first class prepaid mail; or
- (d) on the fifth business day following the day of posting to an overseas address of any prepaid airmail letter.

**25 INTERPRETATION**

**25.1** The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and are not to be used as an aid to construction of this Agreement.

**25.2** Reference to provisions of statutes, rules or regulations shall be deemed to include references to such provisions as amended, modified or re-enacted from time to time.

**26 GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION**

**26.1** This Agreement shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF** this Deed has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by the Executive the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED AND  
DELIVERED AS A DEED**

on the date hereof  
by the Company  
acting by:

)  
)  
)  
)  
)

/s/ Clive Page  
Director

/s/ Claire Poll  
Director

In the presence of:

)

**EXECUTED AND  
DELIVERED AS A DEED**

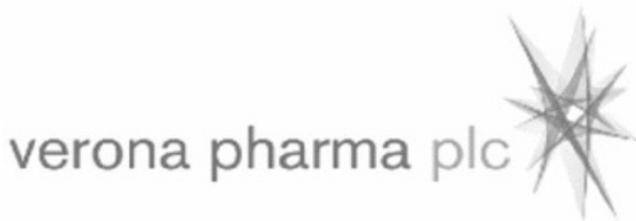
on the date hereof  
by the Executive

)  
)  
)  
)

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson

In the presence of:

)



26 January 2015

Dr. Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Apt 13, 2 Matthew Parker Street  
London SW1H 9NJ

Dear Jan-Anders,

Under clause 12.2 of your Employment Agreement with the Company dated 30 April 2012, you are under an obligation, subject to the rules of the Company's Share Dealing Code, within 12 months after receiving a bonus payment under clause 12.1 of the Agreement, to invest an amount equal to half of the bonus (net of income tax) in the Company by purchasing the Company's shares traded on the AIM stock exchange.

I confirm the Company's agreement to amend clause 12.2 to provide that, by 1 June 2017, being 5 years from the commencement of your employment, to have invested an amount equal to £130,000 in the Company's shares, representing 100% of your annual base salary at the date of commencement of your employment.

Your sincerely,

/s/ Dr. David Ebsworth

**Dr. David Ebsworth**  
Non-Executive Chairman  
Verona Pharma plc

I, Jan-Anders Karlsson, agree to the contents of this letter, including any resulting amendments to my Employment Agreement with the Company.

/s/ Dr. Jan-Anders Karlsson

**Dr. Jan-Anders Karlsson**

3 More London Riverside, London, United Kingdom SE1 2RE • TeL +44 (0) 20 3283 4200

---



2 August 2016

Dr. Jan-Anders Karlsson  
CEO, Verona Pharma plc

Dear Jan-Anders,

To bring your remuneration in line with comparator companies, and in recognition of your considerable contribution to, and leadership of, Verona Pharma, it is with pleasure that I confirm that the Remuneration Committee of the Company's Board of Directors has approved the following changes to your remuneration package, with effect from 1 August 2016:

- an award of a further 25,000,000 share options in the Company at an exercise price equal to 120% of the closing price of the Company's shares listed on AIM on 2 August 2016;
- an increase of your annual base salary to £250,000;
- a change to your discretionary bonus structure, such that you will be entitled to a target bonus of up to 66% of your base salary extending to a maximum 'stretch' bonus of up to 132% of your base salary, dependent on performance objectives to be redefined and agreed by the Company and you as target and stretch, accordingly; and
- a decrease in the Company's pension contribution to £10,000 per annum.

A letter setting out the full terms of the option award will be sent to you within the next few weeks.

Please acknowledging acceptance of the contents of this letter by signing and returning to me a duplicate copy of this letter.

/s/ David Ebsworth

**Dr. David Ebsworth**

Non-Executive Chairman  
Verona Pharma plc

I, Jan-Anders Karlsson, agree to the contents of this letter, including any resulting amendments to my Employment Agreement with the Company.

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson

**Dr. Jan-Anders Karlsson**

3 More London Riverside, London, United Kingdom SE1 2RE • Tel: +44 (0) 20 3283 4200

E-mail: [info@veronapharma.com](mailto:info@veronapharma.com) • Website: [www.veronapharma.com](http://www.veronapharma.com)

---

**THIRD AMENDMENT  
TO  
EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

This Third Amendment (the "Third Amendment") to that certain employment agreement (as amended, the "Employment Agreement"), dated 30 April 2012, by and between Verona Pharma plc (the "Company") and Jan-Anders Karlsson (the "Executive" and, together with the Company, the "Parties") is made as of 28 March 2017 by and between the Company and Executive. Except as set forth in this Third Amendment, capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Employment Agreement.

**WITNESSETH**

WHEREAS, the Company and Executive desire to amend the terms of the Employment Agreement as set forth herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, Executive and the Company hereby agree to the following:

1. Amendment to the Employment Agreement. The Employment Agreement is hereby amended by replacing Clause 16.1 and adding Clauses 27 and 28, which shall read as follows:

**“16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such contractual and statutory sick pay as the Executive may be entitled to receive under the Company’s sick leave policy from time to time.

**27 TAX EQUALISATION**

**27.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will be liable for UK income tax and employee’s National Health Insurance contributions (“UK Tax”). In addition, the Executive may be liable to pay US federal and state income taxes in respect of earnings from work carried out in the US. The Company intends to minimize the effect of the different rate of US and UK tax rates and leave the Executive in a net after-tax position substantially equivalent to what the Executive would experience if Executive were subject only to UK Tax during this period. The Company shall tax equalise the Executive so that the income and employment tax burden to the Executive on his remuneration and other amounts payable pursuant to this Agreement (including any remuneration with respect to the Share Schemes and including the tax equalisation payments made pursuant to this Clause 27), exclusive of any taxes under Section 409A, Section 457A or Section 4999 of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”) or any other provisions of the Code relating to excise taxes, penalties or interest, is neither substantially greater nor less than the UK Tax that the Executive would have paid had Executive performed all of Executive’s duties to the Company in the UK, subject to the terms of any tax equalisation policy adopted by the Company, as it may be amended by the Company from time to time in the Company’s sole discretion (“Tax Equalisation”). Such payments, if any are payable pursuant to this Clause 27, shall be made within 60 days after the actual US tax amounts due are paid by the Executive for any applicable tax periods. To the extent that payments pursuant to this Clause 27 exceed the amount that was required to achieve Tax Equalisation, the Executive will repay to the Company an amount equal to the overpayment on demand by the Company and agrees that the Company may deduct amounts equal to any

---

overpayment from the Executive's salary or other payments due from the Company to the Executive. The Executive shall cooperate with the Company in determining any Tax Equalisation and in seeking any tax refunds owed on taxes paid by the Company pursuant to this Clause 27 in accordance with applicable tax rules and regulations. This Clause 27 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.

## **28      EXCISE TAX**

28.1      If any payment or benefit that Executive would receive following a Change of Control Event or otherwise ("Payment") would (i) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and (ii) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall be reduced to the Reduced Amount. The "Reduced Amount" shall be either (A) the largest portion of the Payment that would result in no portion of the Payment being subject to the Excise Tax or (B) the largest portion, up to and including the total amount, of the Payment, whichever of the amounts determined under (A) and (B), after taking into account all applicable federal, state and local employment taxes, income taxes, and the Excise Tax (all computed at the highest applicable marginal rate), results in the Executive's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the Payment notwithstanding that all or some portion of the Payment may be subject to the Excise Tax. If a reduction in payments or benefits constituting "parachute payments" is necessary so that the Payment equals the Reduced Amount, reduction shall occur in the following order: reduction of cash payments; cancellation of accelerated vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme; and reduction of employee benefits. In the event that acceleration of vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme is to be reduced, such acceleration of vesting shall be undertaken in the reverse order of the date of grant of the Executive's outstanding equity awards.

28.2      All calculations required to be performed under Clauses 27 and 28 shall be made by a public accounting or employee benefits consulting firm with a national practice selected by the Company (the "Accounting Firm"). The Accounting Firm shall provide detailed supporting calculations on the applicable matter to both to the Company and the Executive. All fees and expenses of the Accounting Firm shall be borne solely by the Company. Any determination by the Accounting Firm shall be binding upon the Company and the Executive."

2.      No Other Amendment. Except as expressly set forth in this Third Amendment, the Employment Agreement shall remain unchanged and shall continue in full force and effect according to its terms.

3.      Acknowledgement. Executive acknowledges and agrees that Executive has carefully read this Third Amendment in its entirety, fully understands and agrees to its terms and provisions and intends and agrees that it be final and legally binding on Executive and the Company.

4.      Governing Law; Counterparts. This Third Amendment shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the Parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales, and may be executed in several counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one document.

*[signature page follows]*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF this Third Amendment has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by Executive the day and year first above written.

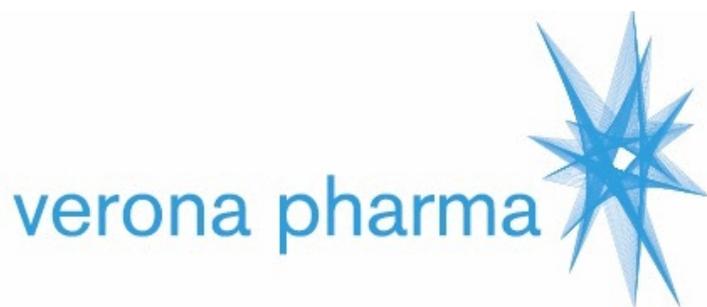
**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Company )  
acting by: ) /s/ Ken Cunningham  
Director

In the presence of: ) RC Hendricks  
/s/ RC Hendricks

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** ) /s/ JA Karlsson  
on the date hereof )  
by the Executive )

In the presence of: ) /s/ PJ Morgan  
PJ Morgan

---



December 15, 2014

Kenneth B. Newman, M.D., M.B.A.  
20 Sunderland Lane  
Katonah, NY 10236

**Re: Offer of Employment**

Dear Dr. Newman:

On behalf of Verona Pharma, Inc. (the "Company"), I am pleased to offer you the position of Chief Medical Officer. This offer letter agreement (the "Agreement") sets forth the terms of employment the Company is offering you. If you accept this offer, we anticipate that your first day of employment will be January 1, 2015.

**1. DUTIES.** As the Company's Chief Medical Officer, you will be responsible for developing the Company's global product portfolio strategy to bring products to market in compliance with global regulatory, legislative and medical/health requirements and perform the other duties associated with this position. You will report to the Chief Executive Officer (the "CEO") of Verona Pharma plc, the Company's parent ("Parent"). You will perform your services at your home office until the Company establishes an office in or around the New York metropolitan area. In the event that the Company asks you to relocate, the Company will reimburse your relocation expenses on terms to be mutually agreed upon prior to the relocation. You shall devote your full time and attention to the business affairs of the Company.

**2. BASE SALARY.** You will receive an annual base salary of \$340,000 for all hours worked, less payroll deductions and withholdings, earned and payable in substantially equal installments in accordance with the Company's payroll policy from time to time in effect.

**3. BONUS.** You will be eligible to participate in the Company's annual bonus plan, with a target bonus of 40% of your base salary, subject to the terms of such plan and on such other terms and conditions as may be determined by the Company. You must be employed on the date of payment of the bonus in order to be eligible for the bonus.

**4. STOCK OPTIONS.** Subject to the approval of the board of directors of Parent, you will be granted an option to subscribe for a total of 12,500,000 ordinary shares in the capital of Parent exercisable at the greater of 2.2 pence per ordinary share, or the market price of the Company's shares traded on the AIM stock exchange at the date of grant (the "Stock Option").

Verona Pharma, Inc.  
Kaye Scholer LLP, 250 West 55th Street, New York, NY 10019-9710, USA  
E-mail: [info@veronapharma.com](mailto:info@veronapharma.com) ■ Website: [www.veronapharma.com](http://www.veronapharma.com)

---

The Stock Option will be granted pursuant to, and subject to, Parent's equity incentive plan. The definitive terms of the Stock Option will be governed by the equity incentive plan, which requires, as a condition of the grant, that you enter into a written option agreement, which will contain the definitive terms of the Stock Option. The Stock Option shall cliff vest upon the earlier of (A) the third anniversary of the date of grant and (B) a change in control of Parent (as defined in the equity incentive plan or option agreement), in each case subject to your continued employment through such date or such change in control, as the case may be, provided however that if your employment under this Agreement is terminated by the Company without Cause (as defined in paragraph 7(a) below) within six months before the third anniversary of the date of grant, then the Stock Option shall vest in full upon the date of such termination subject to the release requirement set forth in paragraph 7(a) below.

**5. BENEFITS.** The Company does not currently sponsor any insurance or retirement plans. If and when the Company's establishes any such plans, you will be entitled to participate in the plans generally available from time to time to employees of the Company, subject to the terms of such plans. Notwithstanding the foregoing, for so long as you are eligible for COBRA coverage from your previous employer or until the Company establishes a health insurance plan, whichever occurs first, the Company will reimburse you on a monthly basis for the premiums you pay for COBRA coverage, provided that you produce evidence of your payment of such premiums. If the Company has not implemented a health insurance plan by the time that the COBRA coverage from your previous employer ends, the Company will reimburse you for the premiums you pay for private health insurance on similar terms to the COBRA coverage. In addition, the Company will procure short-term disability insurance for you in accordance with New York state law. Furthermore, until the Company establishes a long-term disability plan, the Company will reimburse you on a monthly basis for the premiums you pay for private long-term disability insurance, up to \$800 per month, provided that you produce evidence of your payment of such premiums. You will be entitled to five (5) weeks of paid time off per year, earned and accrued on a pro rata basis throughout the year, provided that you may not carry over more than five (5) weeks of accrued but unused time into a subsequent year and you will not be paid for any accrued but unused time upon termination of employment.

**6. EXPENSES.** You shall be entitled to reimbursement for all ordinary and reasonable out-of-pocket business expenses which are reasonably incurred by you in furtherance of the Company's business and in accordance with the standard policies of the Company and Parent, provided that you produce to the Company such evidence of actual payment as the Company may require.

**7. SEVERANCE BENEFITS.**

**(a) Termination By The Company Without Cause or Termination by the Employee for Good Reason.** If this Agreement is terminated by the Company without Cause (as defined below) or by the Employee for Good Reason (as defined below), and if you sign an agreement acceptable to the Company that (i) waives any rights you may otherwise have against the Company and Parent, (ii) releases the Company and Parent from any actions, suits, claims, proceedings and demands you may have relating to the period of your employment with the Company and/or the termination of your employment, and (iii) contains certain other obligations which will be set forth at the time of the termination, the Company shall provide

you with the following severance benefits: (1) continuation of your base salary less payroll deductions and withholding for a period of six (6) months; (2) continued payment, or reimbursement, as the case may be, of your COBRA premiums at the rate in effect upon termination for a period of six (6) months; (3) a pro-rated portion of the annual bonus you otherwise would have earned for the year in which termination occurs, if any, based upon actual performance for such year; and (4) if your termination date is within six months before the third anniversary of the date of grant of the Stock Option, the Stock Option shall vest in full as of the termination date.

**(b) Termination By The Company Without Cause Following Change in Control.** If this Agreement is terminated by the Company without Cause within twelve (12) months following a Change in Control, subject to the release requirement set forth in paragraph (a) above, the Company shall provide you with the following severance benefits in lieu of any benefits under paragraph (a) above: (1) continuation of your base salary less payroll deductions and withholding for a period of nine (9) months; (2) continued payment, or reimbursement, as the case may be, of your COBRA premiums at the rate in effect upon termination for a period of nine (9); and (3) a pro-rated portion of the annual bonus you otherwise would have earned for the year in which termination occurs, if any, based upon actual performance for such year.

**(c) Termination By The Company With Cause, By Reason of Death or Disability or By Resignation.** If this Agreement is terminated by the Company at any time with Cause, by reason of your death or disability, or if you terminate your employment with the Company under this Agreement, you shall not be entitled to any severance pay, severance benefits, accelerated vesting or any compensation or benefits from the Company whatsoever.

**(d) Definitions:**

A. **Cause.** "Cause" for purposes of this Agreement shall mean if you: (1) shall have committed any felony or any other act involving fraud, theft, misappropriation, dishonesty, or embezzlement; (2) shall have committed intentional acts that materially impair the goodwill or business of the Company or Parent or cause material damage to Company's or Parent's property, goodwill, or business; (3) shall have refused to, or willfully failed to, perform your material duties hereunder; or (4) shall have violated any written policies or procedures of the Company or Parent.

B. **Change in Control.** For purposes of this Agreement, the term "Change of Control" means the consummation of any of the following transactions:

(1) a shareholder, or a group of associated shareholders, becoming entitled to sufficient shares in Parent to give it or them the ability and that ability is successfully exercised, in a general meeting, to replace all or a majority of the board of directors of Parent;

(2) in relation to a takeover bid in respect of shares in Parent, during the "Bid Period" as defined in the Companies Act 1985 provided that where a takeover bid is publicly announced prior to the service of a bidder's statement on Parent in relation to that

takeover bid, the Bid Period shall be deemed to have commenced at the time of that announcement; and

(3) on an application under the Companies Act 1985 if a court orders a meeting to be held concerning a proposed compromise or arrangement for the purposes of or in connection with a scheme for the reconstruction of Parent or its amalgamation with any other company.

C. **Good Reason.** “Good Reason” for purposes of this Agreement shall mean if (i) the Company moves or relocates you and you are unable to achieve on reasonable terms approximately equivalent living circumstances to your situation in the New York metropolitan area, (ii) you are demoted or assigned duties of less seniority than your duties under this Agreement, or (iii) the Company decreases by 15% or more your base salary and target bonus under this Agreement. In order for you to terminate your for “Good Reason” under this paragraph, immediately after becoming aware of the breach or other event giving rise to your right to terminate, you must have provided the Company with written notice of your right to terminate pursuant to this paragraph, the Company must have failed to cure the breach or other event so specified, if curable, within thirty days after receiving such notice.

(e) **Release Requirement and Timing of Severance Payments.** In order to receive the severance benefits under paragraph (a) or (b) above, as applicable, you must sign and tender the release as described above not later than sixty (60) days following your last day of employment, or such earlier date as required by the Company, and if you fail or refuse to do so, you shall forfeit the right to such termination compensation as would otherwise be due and payable. If the severance payments are otherwise subject to Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), they shall begin on the first pay period following the date that is sixty (60) days after your employment terminates and shall otherwise begin on the first pay period after the release becomes effective (with the initial salary continuation payment to include any unpaid salary continuation payments from the date your employment terminated), subject to your executing and tendering the release on the terms as set forth in the immediately preceding sentence. The pro-rated bonus, if any, shall be paid when such bonus would have been paid absent the termination of your employment and in all cases in the calendar year following the fiscal year to which the bonus relates.

8. **COMPANY POLICIES AND CONFIDENTIALITY AGREEMENT.** As an employee of the Company, you will be expected to abide by all of the applicable policies and procedures of the Company and Parent. As a condition of your employment, you agree to sign and to abide by the terms of a Protective Agreement with the Company, which is attached hereto as Exhibit A.

9. **NEW YORK WAGE THEFT PREVENTION ACT NOTICE.** Attached as Exhibit B a notice containing certain information regarding your pay as required by the New York Wage Theft Prevention Act.

10. **AT-WILL EMPLOYMENT.** As an employee of the Company, you may terminate your employment at any time and for any reason whatsoever simply by notifying the Company. Similarly, the Company may terminate your employment at any time and for any reason whatsoever, with or without cause or advance notice. Your at-will employment relationship with the Company cannot be changed except in writing signed by the CEO.

**11. ENTIRE AGREEMENT.** This Agreement, including Exhibit A, constitutes the complete, final and exclusive embodiment of the entire agreement between you and the Company with respect to the terms and conditions of your employment specified herein. If you enter into this Agreement, you are doing so voluntarily, and without reliance upon any promise, warranty or representation, written or oral, other than those expressly contained herein. This Agreement supersedes any other such promises, warranties, representations or agreements. This Agreement may not be amended or modified except by a written instrument signed by you and the CEO.

**12. GOVERNING LAW.** This Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

**13. DISPUTE RESOLUTION.** To ensure the timely and economical resolution of disputes that arise in connection with your employment with the Company, you and the Company agree that any and all disputes, claims, or causes of action arising from or relating to the enforcement, breach, performance or interpretation of this Agreement, your employment, or the termination of your employment, shall be resolved to the fullest extent permitted by law by final, binding and confidential arbitration, by a single arbitrator, in New York, New York, conducted by Judicial Arbitration and Mediation Services, Inc. (“JAMS”) under the applicable JAMS employment rules. **By agreeing to this arbitration procedure, both you and the Company waive the right to resolve any such dispute through a trial by jury or judge or administrative proceeding.** Judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered in any court having jurisdiction thereof in the State of New York. In reaching his or her decision, the arbitrator shall have no authority (a) to authorize or require the parties to engage in discovery (provided, however, that the arbitrator may schedule the time by which the parties must exchange copies of the exhibits that, and the names of the witnesses whom, the parties intend to present at the hearing) (b) to interpret or enforce the Protective Agreement (which shall not be covered by the dispute resolutions contained in this paragraph), (c) to change or modify any provision of this Agreement, (d) to base any part of his or her decision on the common law principle of constructive termination, or (e) to award punitive damages or any other damages not measured by the prevailing party’s actual damages and may not make any ruling, finding or award that does not conform to this Agreement. Each party shall bear his, her or its own legal fees, costs and expenses of arbitration and one-half (½) of the costs of the arbitrator.

**14. SECTION 409A.** You and the Company intend that the payments and benefits provided for in this letter either be exempt from Section 409A of the Code, or be provided for in a manner that complies with Section 409A of the Code, and any ambiguity herein shall be interpreted so as to be consistent with the intent of this Section 14. In no event whatsoever shall the Company be liable for any additional tax, interest or penalty that may be imposed on you by Section 409A of the Code or damages for failing to comply with Section 409A of the Code. Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, all payments and benefits under Section 7 above shall be paid or provided only at the time of a termination of your employment that constitutes a “separation from service” from the Company within the meaning of Section 409A of the Code and the regulations and guidance promulgated thereunder (determined after applying the presumptions set forth in Treas. Reg. Section 1.409A-1(h)(1)). Further, if you are a “specified employee” as such term is defined under Section 409A of the

Code and the regulations and guidance promulgated thereunder, any payments described in Section 7 above shall be delayed for a period of six (6) months following your separation of employment to the extent and up to an amount necessary to ensure such payments are not subject to the penalties and interest under Section 409A of the Code. In addition, (i) in-kind benefits and reimbursements provided under this Agreement during any calendar year shall not affect in-kind benefits or reimbursements to be provided in any other calendar year, other than an arrangement providing for the reimbursement of medical expenses referred to in Section 105(b) of the Code, and are not subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit and (ii) reimbursement requests must be timely submitted by you and, if timely submitted, reimbursement payments shall be promptly made to you following such submission, but in no event later than December 31<sup>st</sup> of the calendar year following the calendar year in which the expense was incurred. In no event shall you be entitled to any reimbursement payments after December 31<sup>st</sup> of the calendar year following the calendar year in which the expense was incurred. The reimbursement provisions in this Section 14 shall only apply to in-kind benefits and reimbursements that would result in taxable compensation income to you.

**15. AUTHORIZATION TO WORK AND BACKGROUND CHECK.** Your employment with the Company is contingent upon satisfactory results from any pre-employment background checks that we may deem necessary, including, but not limited to, a credit check, criminal background check, drug screening and confirmation of your legal authorization to work in the United States. Our offer is also contingent upon you not being subject to any limitation, obligation or agreement, whether imposed by contract, statute or otherwise, that would preclude your employment by the Company or in any way restrict your ability to perform your duties as an employee. If you have provided the Company with any false information with respect to your employment history, educational background or other credentials, the offer of employment contained herein shall be withdrawn or, if you have already been hired, your employment shall be immediately terminated.

If you choose to accept this Agreement under the terms described above, please sign below and return this letter to me no later than December 15, 2014.

We look forward to your favorable reply, and to a productive and enjoyable work relationship.

Very truly yours,

Verona Pharma, Inc.

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson

Name: J-A Karlsson

Its: CEO 15 Dec 2014

*Accepted and Agreed to by:*

/s/ Kenneth B. Newman

Employee Name: Kenneth B. Newman, M.D., M.B.A

Date: Dec. 15, 2014

---

Exhibit A

Protective Agreement

(attached)

---

## PROTECTIVE AGREEMENT

THIS PROTECTIVE AGREEMENT is made and entered into as of the 15<sup>th</sup> day of December, 2014, by and between Kenneth B. Newman, M.D., M.B.A. and Verona Pharma, Inc. and each of its subsidiaries, parents, affiliates, successors or assigns (collectively, Verona Pharma, Inc. and each of its subsidiaries, parents, affiliates, successors and assigns shall be referred to herein as the “**Company**”).

1. I acknowledge and agree that solely by virtue of my employment with the Company, I will acquire “**Confidential Information,**” as well as special knowledge of the Company’s relationships with its customers, prospective customers and suppliers, and that, but for my association with the Company, I will not have had access to the Confidential Information or knowledge of the relationships. As a condition precedent to the Company employing me, and as consideration for my employment, I represent and warrant as follows:

A. I have voluntarily signed this Agreement after determining that the provisions contained in this Agreement are of a material benefit to me, and that the duties and obligations imposed on me are fair and reasonable and will not prevent me from earning a comparable livelihood following the termination of my employment with the Company.

B. I have read and fully understand the terms of this Agreement and have considered its benefits and consequences. I also have informed the Company of, and provided the Company with copies of, any non-competition, confidentiality, work-for-hire or similar agreements to which I am subject or may be bound.

C. I agree that, during the time of my employment with the Company and for a period of six months after the termination of my employment, whether voluntary or involuntary, I will not, directly or indirectly, except on behalf of the Company:

(1) contact, solicit or accept if offered to me, or direct any person or entity to contact, solicit or accept if offered to it, any of the Company’s customers or prospective customers for the purpose of providing any products and/or services that are the same as or similar to the products and services provided by the Company to its customers during the term of my employment or for the purpose of otherwise interfering with the business relationships between the Company and its customers or prospective customers: or

(2) solicit or accept if offered to me, with or without solicitation, on my own behalf or on behalf of any other person or entity, the services of any person who is a current employee or independent contractor of the Company (or was an employee or independent contractor of the Company during the year preceding such solicitation), nor solicit any of the Company’s current employees or independent contractors (or any individual who was an employee or independent contractor of the Company during the year preceding such solicitation) to terminate employment or an engagement with the Company, nor agree to hire any current employee or independent contractor (or any individual who was an employee or independent contractor of the Company during the year preceding such hire) of the

---

Company into employment or an engagement with me or any other person or entity; or

(3) become associated with any business, whether as an investor (excluding investments representing less than one percent (1%) of the common stock of a public company), lender, owner, stockholder, member, manager, officer, director, employee, agent or in any other capacity, involved in the development and/or marketing of medicines to treat respiratory obstructive diseases or any other business that may be carried on by the Company from time to time.

D. I acknowledge and agree that the scope described above is necessary and reasonable in order to protect the Company in the conduct of its business and that, if I become employed by another employer, I will be required to disclose the existence of this Paragraph 1 to such employer and I consent to and the Company is given permission to disclose the existence of this Paragraph 1 to such employer. I further acknowledge and agree that, if I breach any of the requirements of subparagraph C, the one (1) year restricted period set forth therein shall be tolled during the time of such breach.

E. For purposes of this Paragraph 1: (i) “**customer**” is defined as any person or entity that purchased any type of product and/or service from the Company (including as a licensee) or is or was doing business with the Company or me within the twelve (12) month period immediately preceding the solicitation or other activity prohibited by subparagraph C; (ii) “**prospective customer**” is defined as any person or entity contacted or solicited by the Company or me (whether directly or indirectly) or who contacted the Company or me (whether directly or indirectly) within the twelve (12) month period immediately preceding the solicitation or other activity prohibited by subparagraph C for the purpose of having such persons or entities become a customer of the Company (including as a licensee); and (iii) “**supplier**” is defined as any person or entity who is or was supplying products or services to the Company (including as a licensor) within the twelve (12) month period immediately preceding the activity prohibited by subparagraph C.

F. I agree that both during my employment and thereafter I will not use for myself or disclose to any person not employed by the Company any “Confidential Information” of the Company acquired by me during my relationship with the Company, except where such disclosure is consented to, or approved by, the Company. I agree that “**Confidential Information**” includes but is not limited to:

- (1) the Company’s corporate, business development and marketing strategy and plans;
- (2) budgets, management accounts, bank account details and other confidential financial data of the Company;
- (3) know-how and products being developed by the Company, including inventions and discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data;

(4) reports, confidential aspects of the Company's computer technology and systems, confidential algorithms developed or used by the Company, confidential information relating to proprietary computer hardware or software (including updates) not generally known to the public;

(5) confidential methods and processes, information relating to the running of the Company's business which is not in the public domain, including details of salaries, bonuses, commissions and other employment terms applicable within the Company;

(6) the names, addresses and contact details of any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and their requirements for any of the Company's products or services. Without prejudice to the foregoing, this includes personal information provided to the Company by visitors to and users of any of its websites;

(7) the terms on which the Company does business with any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and the terms of any partnership, joint venture or other form of commercial co-operation or agreement the Company enters into with any third party;

(8) software and technical information necessary for the development, maintenance or operation of any of the Company's websites and the source code of each website;

(9) any other information which the Company is bound by an obligation of confidence owed to a third party, in particular the content of discussions or communications with any prospective customers, suppliers or business partners; and

(10) any other information, written, oral or electronic, whether existing now or at some time in the future, which pertains to the Company's affairs or interests or with whom the Company does business.

The Company acknowledges and agrees that Confidential Information does not include (a) information properly in the public domain, or (b) information in my possession prior to the date of my original employment with the Company, except to the extent that such information is or has become a trade secret of the Company or is or otherwise has become the property of the Company.

G. I shall not, except in the proper performance of my duties, or with the Company's permission, remove any property belonging or relating to the Company from the Company's premises, or make any copies of documents or records relating to the Company's affairs. Upon the Company's request at any time, and in any event on the termination of my employment, I shall immediately deliver up to the Company or its authorized representative any plans, keys, mobile telephone, security passes, credit cards, equipment, documents, records, papers, computer disks, tapes or other computer hardware or software (together with all copies of the same), and all property of whatever nature in my possession or control which belongs to the Company or relates to its affairs. I shall, at the Company's request, provide the Company with a written statement that I have complied with this obligation. If I have any information relating to the Company or work I have

carried out for the Company which is stored on a computer or laptop computer, whether or not the computer is owned by the Company, the Company shall be entitled to download the information and/or supervise its deletion from the computer or laptop concerned.

H. I recognize and agree that all ideas, know how, confidential information, inventions, discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, products, patents, designs, trademarks, database right or copyright work or any right to prevent reproduction whether or not any of these is registered and including applications for any such right, matter or thing or registration thereof and all rights or forms of protection of a similar nature or having equivalent or similar effect to any of these which may subsist anywhere in the world, and all trade secrets, business applications, plans, writings and other developments or improvements and all other intellectual property and proprietary rights and any derivative works based thereon (the “**Inventions**”) made, conceived, or completed by me, alone or with others, during the time of my employment, whether or not during working hours, that are within the scope of the Company’s business operations, or that relate to any of the Company’s work or projects, are the sole and exclusive property of the Company. I further agree that (1) I will promptly disclose all Inventions to the Company and hereby assign to the Company all present and future rights I have or may have in those Inventions; and (2) all of the Inventions eligible under the copyright laws are “work made for hire.” At the request of and without charge to the Company, I will do all things deemed by the Company to be reasonably necessary to perfect title to the Inventions in the Company and to assist in obtaining for the Company such patents, copyrights or other protection as may be provided under law and desired by the Company, including but not limited to executing and signing any and all relevant applications, assignments, or other instruments. I hereby irrevocably designate and appoint the Company and its duly authorized officers and agents as my agents and attorneys-in-fact to act for and in my behalf and instead of me, to execute and file any documents and to do all other lawfully permitted acts to further the above purposes with the same legal force and effect as if executed by me, and I acknowledge that this designation and appointment constitutes an irrevocable power of attorney and is coupled with an interest. Notwithstanding the foregoing, I acknowledge that, the Company has informed me that the provisions of this Paragraph H will not apply to any Inventions for which no equipment, supplies, facility or trade secret information of the Company was used and which were developed entirely on my own time, unless (1) the Invention relates (i) to the business of the Company, or (ii) to actual or demonstrably anticipated research or development of the Company, or (2) the Invention results from any work performed by me for the Company.

I. I acknowledge and agree that I have no expectation of privacy with respect to the Company’s telecommunications, networking or information processing systems (including, without limitation, stored computer files (whether on a Company computer or a home personal computer), email messages and voice messages) and that my activity and any files or messages on or using any of those systems may be monitored at any time without notice.

J. It is agreed that any breach of any of the covenants contained in this Paragraph I will result in irreparable harm and continuing damages to the Company and its business and that the Company’s remedy at law for any such breach will be inadequate and,

accordingly, in addition to any and all other remedies that may be available to the Company, any court of competent jurisdiction may issue a decree of specific performance or issue a temporary and permanent injunction, without the necessity of the Company posting bond or furnishing other security and without proving special damages or irreparable injury, enjoining and restricting the breach of any such covenant. I agree to pay all of the Company's costs and expenses, including reasonable attorneys' and accountants' fees, incurred in enforcing such covenants.

2. Nothing contained in this Agreement creates any right of employment or limits or restricts the Company's or my right to terminate my employment at any time with or without cause.

3. I hereby authorize the Company, at any time during my employment or following my termination, to withhold from any monies it otherwise owes me (including without limitation salary, bonus, commissions and expense reimbursements) any and all monies due from me to the Company (including without limitation cash and travel advances, overpayments made to me by the Company, and any debt I owe the Company for any reason, including without limitation misuse or misappropriation of Company assets). At the termination of my employment with the Company or at any other time upon reasonable notice, I agree to execute whatever documentation may be necessary to authorize the Company to make the withholdings described in this paragraph.

4. It is our intention that all provisions of this Agreement be enforced to the fullest extent permitted by law. If any provision of this Agreement shall be found invalid or unenforceable for any reason, in whole or in part, then such provision shall be deemed modified, restricted, or reformulated to the extent and in the manner necessary to render the same valid and enforceable, or shall be deemed excised from this Agreement, as the case may require, and this Agreement shall be construed and enforced to the maximum extent permitted by law, as if such provision had been originally incorporated herein as so modified, restricted, or reformulated or as if such provision had not been originally incorporated herein, as the case may be. The Company and I further agree to seek a lawful substitute for any provision found to be unlawful; provided, that, if we are unable to agree upon a lawful substitute, the Company and I desire and request that a court or other authority called upon to decide the enforceability of this Agreement modify those restrictions in this Agreement that, once modified, will result in an agreement that is enforceable to the maximum extent permitted by the law in existence at the time of the requested enforcement. This Agreement contains the entire understanding and agreement between us with respect to this subject matter, and supersedes all prior oral and written agreements, if any, between us with respect to that subject matter. I understand and acknowledge that the Company's rights under this Agreement shall inure to the benefit of any of its successors and/or assigns, and I shall continue to be bound by the terms hereof with any of the Company's successors and/or assigns.

5. I understand that the Company does not wish to incorporate any unlicensed or unauthorized material into its products or services or those of its subsidiaries. Therefore, I agree that I will not knowingly disclose to the Company, use in the Company's business, or cause the Company to use, any information or material which is confidential or proprietary to any third party including, but not limited to, any former employer, competitor or client, unless the Company has a right to receive and use such information. I will not incorporate into my work any material that is subject to the copyrights of any third party unless the Company has a written agreement with that third party or otherwise has the right to receive and use such information.

6. This Agreement will be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the New York, including the internal conflicts of law. I agree and consent to submit to personal jurisdiction in the State of New York in any state or federal court of competent subject matter jurisdiction situated in New York, New York. **I further agree to waive any right I otherwise may have to a trial by jury in any action to enforce the terms of this Agreement.**

We have executed this Agreement on the day and year first above written.

Verona Pharma, Inc.

/s/ Kenneth B. Newman  
Kenneth B. Newman, M.D., M.B.A.

By: /s/ J-A Karlsson  
Name: J-A Karlsson  
Title: CEO

Exhibit B

New York Wage Theft Prevention Act Notice

(attached)

---



**Notice and Acknowledgement of Pay Rate and Payday  
Under Section 195.1 of the New York State Labor Law  
Notice for Exempt Employees**

**1. Employer Information**

Name:  
Verona Pharma, Inc.

Doing Business As (DBA) Name(s):

FEIN (optional):

Physical Address:

Mailing Address:  
C1- Kaye Scholer, LLP  
250 West 55th street  
New York, NY

Phone:

**2. Notice given:**

- At hiring  
 Before a change in pay rate(s), allowances claimed, or payday

**3. Employee's pay rate(s): State if pay is based on an hourly, salary, day rate, piece rate, or other basis.**

\$340,000

Employers may not pay a non-hourly rate to a non-exempt employee in the Hospitality Industry, except for commissioned salespeople.

**4. Allowances taken:**

- None  
 Tips per hour  
 Meals per meal  
 Lodging  
 Other

**5. Regular payday: Last day of month in arrears**

**6. Pay is:**

- Weekly  
 Bi-weekly  
 Other: Monthly

**7. Overtime Pay Rate:**

Most workers in NYS must receive at least 1<sup>1/2</sup> times their regular rate of pay for all hours worked over 40 in a workweek, with few exceptions. A limited number of employees must only be paid overtime at 1<sup>1/2</sup> times the minimum wage rate, or not at all.

This employee is exempt from overtime under the following exemption (optional):

**8. Employee Acknowledgement:**

On this day, I received notice of my pay rate, overtime rate (if eligible), allowances, and designated payday. I told my employer what my primary language is.

**Check one:**

- I have been given this pay notice in English because it is my primary language.  
 My primary language is . I have been given this pay notice in English only, because the Department of Labor does not yet offer a pay notice form in my primary language.

Kenneth Newman  
Print Employee Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Employee Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Preparer Name and Title

**The employee must receive a signed copy of this form. The employer must keep the original for 6 years.**



**FIRST AMENDMENT  
TO  
OFFER LETTER AGREEMENT**

This First Amendment (the "First Amendment") to that certain offer letter agreement (the "Offer Letter"), dated December 15, 2014, by and between Verona Pharma, Inc. (the "Company") and Kenneth B. Newman (the "Executive" and, together with the Company, the "Parties") is made as of March 28, 2017 by and between the Company and Executive. Except as set forth in this First Amendment, capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Offer Letter.

**WITNESSETH**

WHEREAS, the Company and Executive desire to amend the terms of the Offer Letter as set forth herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, Executive and the Company hereby agree to the following:

1. Amendment to the Offer Letter. The Offer Letter is hereby amended by adding Section 16, which shall read as follows:

16. **EXCISE TAX.**

**(a) 280G Parachute Payments.** If any payment or benefit that you would receive following a Change of Control or otherwise ("Payment") would (i) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and (ii) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall be reduced to the Reduced Amount. The "Reduced Amount" shall be either (A) the largest portion of the Payment that would result in no portion of the Payment being subject to the Excise Tax or (B) the largest portion, up to and including the total amount, of the Payment, whichever of the amounts determined under (A) and (B), after taking into account all applicable federal, state and local employment taxes, income taxes, and the Excise Tax (all computed at the highest applicable marginal rate), results in the your receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the Payment notwithstanding that all or some portion of the Payment may be subject to the Excise Tax. If a reduction in payments or benefits constituting "parachute payments" is necessary so that the Payment equals the Reduced Amount, reduction shall occur in the following order: reduction of cash payments; cancellation of accelerated vesting of outstanding awards under Parent's equity incentive plan; and reduction of employee benefits. In the event that acceleration of vesting of outstanding awards under Parent's equity incentive plan is to be reduced, such acceleration of vesting shall be undertaken in the reverse order of the date of grant of your outstanding equity awards.

**(b) Calculations.** All calculations required to be performed under this Section 16 shall be made by a public accounting or employee benefits consulting firm with a national practice selected by the Company (the "Accounting Firm"). The Accounting Firm shall provide detailed supporting calculations on the applicable matter to both to the Company and you. All fees and expenses of the Accounting Firm shall be borne solely by the Company. Any determination by the Accounting Firm shall be binding upon the Company and you.

2. No Other Amendment. Except as expressly set forth in this First Amendment, the Offer Letter shall remain unchanged and shall continue in full force and effect according to its terms.

---

3. Acknowledgement. Executive acknowledges and agrees that Executive has carefully read this First Amendment in its entirety, fully understands and agrees to its terms and provisions and intends and agrees that it be final and legally binding on Executive and the Company.

4. Governing Law; Counterparts. This First Amendment shall be construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York, without regard to any conflicts of laws principles that would result in the application of other law, and may be executed in several counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one document.

*[signature page follows]*

---

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties have executed this Agreement on the respective dates set forth below.

**EXECUTIVE**

Dated: 30 MAR ; '20

/s/ Kenneth B. Newman  
Kenneth B. Newman

**VERONA PHARMA, INC.**

Dated: 29 March 2017

By: /s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Name: Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Its: CEO

---

Dated 24 September 2016

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

- and -

**PIERS MORGAN**

---

**EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

---



## INDEX

1	DEFINITIONS	3
2	APPOINTMENT	4
3	PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT	4
4	DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE	4
5	COMPANY POLICIES	5
6	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	5
7	CONFIDENTIALITY	6
8	DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY	7
9	REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS	7
10	EXPENSES	8
11	BENEFITS	8
12	BONUS	8
13	SHARE SCHEMES	8
14	CHANGE OF CONTROL	9
15	WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS	9
16	ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY	10
17	TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT	10
18	PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE	11
19	POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS	12
20	DATA PROTECTION	14
21	STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT	14
22	THIRD PARTIES	14
23	NOTICES	14
24	INTERPRETATION	15
25	GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION	15

## Employment Agreement

THIS AGREEMENT is made on 24 September 2016

### BETWEEN:

- (1) VERONA PHARMA PLC, with its principal office at 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE (the “Company”); and
- (2) PIERS MORGAN of Chilton Leys Farmhouse, Forest Road, Onehouse, Stowmarket, Suffolk IP14 3EN (the “Executive”).

IT IS AGREED as follows:

### 1 DEFINITIONS

1.1 In this Agreement, unless the context otherwise expressly requires, the following expressions shall have the following meanings:

“Agreement” means this Agreement;

“Articles of Association” means the Company’s articles of association, as amended from time to time;

“Board” means the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorised committee of the Board;

“Change of Control Event” means:

- (a) a shareholder, or a group of associated shareholders, becoming entitled to sufficient shares in the Company to give it or them the ability and that ability is successfully exercised, in a general meeting, to replace all or a majority of the Board;
- (b) in relation to a takeover bid in respect of shares in the Company, during the “Bid Period” as defined the Companies Act provided that where a takeover bid is publicly announced prior to the service of a bidder’s statement on the Company in relation to that takeover bid, the Bid Period shall be deemed to have commenced at the time of that announcement; and
- (c) on an application under the Companies Act if a court orders a meeting to be held concerning a proposed compromise or arrangement for the purposes of or in connection with a scheme for the reconstruction of the Company or its amalgamation with any other company.

“Commencement Date” means 26 September 2016;

“Companies Act” means the Companies Act 1985;

“Company” means Verona Pharma plc, a company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales with registered number 05375156;

“Employment” means the employment established by this Agreement;

“Executive” means Piers Morgan;

“Group” means the Group Companies collectively;

“Group Company” means the Company, and any company which is from time to time a subsidiary of the Company, the holding company of the Company or a subsidiary of such holding company;

“holding company” and “subsidiary” shall have the respective meanings ascribed to such expressions by section 736 of the Companies Act 1985;

“Holiday Year” means the period of twelve consecutive calendar months commencing on 1 January in each year; and

**“Intellectual Property Rights”** means rights in ideas, know how, confidential information, inventions, discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, products, patents, designs, trademarks, database right or copyright work or any right to prevent reproduction whether or not any of these is registered and including applications for any such right, matter or thing or registration thereof and all rights or forms of protection of a similar nature or having equivalent or similar effect to any of these which may subsist anywhere in the world.

## **2 APPOINTMENT**

- 2.1** The Company appoints the Executive and the Executive agrees to serve the Company as chief financial officer, or in such other capacity as the Board may reasonably require (such other appointment not to be of a lower status than the Executive’s appointment under this Agreement).
- 2.2** The Executive hereby warrants to the Company that he will not be in breach of any former terms of employment, whether express or implied, or of any other obligation, arrangement, order or contract binding on the Executive, by reason of his entering into this Agreement.
- 2.3** The Executive hereby warrants that he knows of no circumstances which may result in proceedings being brought against him by the Financial Services Authority, under the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“**FSMA**”) or any similar regulatory authority, whether in the UK or otherwise and that no such proceedings have been threatened or commenced against him.

## **3 PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT**

- 3.1** The Employment shall begin on the Commencement Date and, subject to Clause 17, shall continue until it is terminated by either party giving to the other not less than six months’ written notice.

## **4 DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE**

- 4.1** The Executive shall be chief financial officer of the Company and, subject always to the directions of the Company’s chief executive officer (“**CEO**”), shall carry out such duties in relation to the Company as the CEO may from time to time require. The Executive shall, at the request of the CEO, and without additional remuneration, act as an officer or employee of any Group Company.
- 4.2** The Executive shall faithfully and diligently serve the Company as chief financial officer and shall act at all times in the best interests of the Company. The Executive shall perform diligently such duties and exercise such powers consistent with his employment under this Agreement as may from time to time be assigned to or vested in him and, in his capacity as chief financial officer, shall obey the reasonable and lawful directions of the Board.
- 4.3** The Executive shall not, during the course of the Employment, whether alone or jointly with another and whether directly or indirectly, carry on, or be engaged or concerned in, or (except as the owner for investment of securities dealt in on a recognised stock exchange and not exceeding 3% in nominal value of the issued securities of any class or otherwise as approved in writing by the Company from time to time) be interested in, any other business which competes with the business of the Company or the Group.
- 4.4** The Executive shall at all times keep the CEO or any other persons as the CEO may nominate, promptly and fully informed (in writing if so requested) of his conduct of the business or affairs of the Company or the Group and provide such explanations as the CEO may require in connection therewith.

**4.5** The Executive shall comply with (a) every rule of law; (b) every regulation of the London Stock Exchange or of the Alternative Investment Market or any other Recognised Investment Exchange as defined in the FSMA and including the NASDAQ Stock Market; (c) every rule or regulation of any competent regulatory authority; and (d) every regulation of the Company for the time being in force in relation to dealings in shares or other securities of the Company or any other member of the Group.

**4.6** The Executive's initial place of employment shall be the principal office of the Company stated in this Agreement. The Executive agrees that the Company may change the Executive's place of work to anywhere in the United Kingdom, provided that, if this requires the Executive to relocate, reasonable relocation expenses are paid by the Company. In addition, the Executive will be required to travel and work on the business of the Company both inside and outside the United Kingdom.

## **5 COMPANY POLICIES**

**5.1** The Executive must comply with all Company policies, rules, systems and procedures as shall be in force from time to time.

## **6 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

**6.1** All Intellectual Property Rights devised, developed or created by the Executive during the period of his employment with the Company or any Group Company and relating to the business of the Company shall belong to, and be the absolute property of the Company or such Group Company as the Company may nominate. To the extent that such Intellectual Property Rights are not otherwise vested in the Company, the Executive hereby assigns the same to the Company, together with all related past and future rights to action.

**6.2** It shall be part of the normal duties of the Executive to consider in what manner and by what new methods or devices, products, services, processes, equipment or systems of the Company and each Group Company might be improved, and promptly to give to the Board full details of any invention, discovery, formula, technique, design, improvement or other matter or work whatsoever in relation thereto which the Executive may from time to time make or discover during the course of the Employment, and to further the interests of the Company in relation to the same.

**6.3** The Executive shall at the request and cost of the Company do all things necessary or desirable and execute all and any documents required to give the Company, or such other member of the Group as the Company may nominate, title to the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1. The obligation contained in this Clause 6.3 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.

**6.4** The Company may edit, copy, add to, take from, adapt, alter and translate the product of the Executive's services in exercising the rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

**6.5** To the full extent permitted by law, the Executive irrevocably and unconditionally waives any moral rights the Executive may otherwise have under sections 77 to 85 inclusive of the Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988 and any equivalent provisions of law anywhere in the world, in relation to the rights referred to in Clause 6.1.

**6.6** The Executive must not knowingly do or omit to do anything which will or may have the result of preventing the Company from enjoying the full benefits of ownership of the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

**6.7** The Executive must not at any time make use of the Company's property or documents or materials in which the Company owns the Intellectual Property Rights for any purpose which has not been authorised by the Company.

**6.8** Each of the provisions of this Clause 6 is distinct and severable from the others and if at any time one or more of such provisions is or becomes invalid, unlawful or unenforceable (whether wholly or to any extent), the validity, lawfulness and enforceability of the remaining provisions (or the same provision to any other extent) of this Clause 6 shall not in any way be affected or impaired.

## **7 CONFIDENTIALITY**

**7.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will have access to and become aware of information which is confidential to the Company. Without prejudice to his common law duties, the Executive undertakes that he will not, save in the proper performance of his duties, make use of, or disclose to any person, (including for the avoidance of doubt any competitors of the Company), any of the trade secrets or other confidential information of or relating to the Company, or any user of the Company's services or any company, organisation or business with which the Company is involved in any kind of business venture or partnership, or any other information concerning the business of the Company which he may have received or obtained in confidence while in the service of the Company. The Executive will use his best endeavours to prevent the unauthorised publication or disclosure of any such trade secrets or confidential information.

**7.2** This restriction shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment without limit in point of time but, both during the Executive's employment and after its termination, shall cease to apply to information ordered to be disclosed by a Court or Tribunal of competent jurisdiction or otherwise required to be disclosed by law or to information which becomes available to the public generally (other than by reason of the Executive breaching this Clause 7). Nothing in this Clause 7 will prevent the Executive making a "protected disclosure" within the meaning of the Public Interest Disclosure Act 1998.

**7.3** For the purposes of this Agreement confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to:

- (a) the Company's corporate, business development and marketing strategy and plans;
  - (b) budgets, management accounts, bank account details and other confidential financial data of the Company;
  - (c) know-how and products being developed by the Company, including inventions and discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data;
  - (d) reports, confidential aspects of the Company's computer technology and systems, confidential algorithms developed or used by the Company, confidential information relating to proprietary computer hardware or software (including updates) not generally known to the public;
  - (e) confidential methods and processes, information relating to the running of the Company's business which is not in the public domain, including details of salaries, bonuses, commissions and other employment terms applicable within the Company;
  - (f) the names, addresses and contact details of any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and their requirements for any of the Company's products or services. Without prejudice to the foregoing, this includes personal information provided to the Company by visitors to and users of any of its websites;
  - (g) the terms on which the Company does business with any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and the terms of any partnership, joint venture or other form of commercial co-operation or agreement the Company enters into with any third party;
  - (h) software and technical information necessary for the development, maintenance or operation of any of the Company's websites and the source code of each website; and
-

(i) any other information which the Company is bound by an obligation of confidence owed to a third party, in particular the content of discussions or communications with any prospective customers, suppliers or business partners.

7.4 In this Clause 7, any reference to "Company" includes any "Group Company" as defined in Clause 1.1 and the Executive's undertaking to the Company in Clause 7.1 is given to the Company for itself and as trustee for each Group Company.

7.5 The provisions of this Clause 7 shall be without prejudice to the Executive's duties at common law.

## **8 DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY**

8.1 The Executive shall not, except in the proper performance of his duties, or with the Company's permission, remove any property belonging or relating to the Company or any Group Company from the Company's or Group Company's premises, or make any copies of documents or records relating to the Company's or any Group Company's affairs.

8.2 Upon the Company's request at any time, and in any event on the termination of the Employment, the Executive shall immediately deliver up to the Company or its authorised representative, any plans, keys, mobile telephone, security passes, credit cards, equipment, documents, records, papers, computer disks, tapes or other computer hardware or software (together with all copies of the same), and all property of whatever nature in the Executive's possession or control which belongs to the Company or any other Group Company or relates to its or their business affairs. The Executive shall, at the Company's request, provide the Company with a written statement that he has complied with this obligation.

8.3 If the Executive has any information relating to the Company or the Group or work he has carried out for the Company or any Group Company which is stored on a computer or laptop computer, whether or not the computer or laptop computer is owned by the Company or a Group Company, the Company shall be entitled to download the information and/or supervise its deletion from the computer or laptop concerned.

## **9 REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS**

9.1 The Executive shall receive during the Employment a salary at the rate of £200,000 per annum (or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing). The Company shall review the Executive's salary within a reasonable time after, and with effect from, 1 January 2017 and thereafter annually with a change in any year effective from 1 January of that year. Such undertaking of a salary review does not confer a contractual right (whether express or implied) to any increase in salary, and an increase in salary one year will not guarantee an increase in salary in any subsequent year or years.

9.2 The Executive's salary will accrue on a day-to-day basis payable by equal monthly payments in arrears no later than the last day of each month. Such salary shall include any sums receivable as director's fees or other remunerations from any Group Company.

9.3 Payment of salary to the Executive may be made either by the Company or by another Group Company and, if by more than one company, in such proportion as the Board may from time to time decide.

9.4 At any time during the Employment, or, in any event, on the termination thereof howsoever arising, the Company shall be entitled to deduct from the Executive's remuneration any monies due to the Company from the Executive, including, but not limited to, any outstanding loans, advances, the cost of repairing any damage or loss to the Company's property caused by the negligence of the Executive (and of recovering the same), excess holiday pay and any other monies owed by the Executive to the Company.

## **10 EXPENSES**

**10.1** The Company shall refund the Executive all reasonable expenses wholly and exclusively incurred by him in the proper performance of the Company or the Group's business provided that the Executive produces to the Company such evidence of actual payment as the Company reasonably requires. Any credit card or similar facility supplied to the Executive by the Company shall be used solely for expenses incurred by him in the course of the Employment.

## **11 BENEFITS**

**11.1** The Company shall, if so requested by the Executive during the Employment, provide membership of a private medical insurance scheme for the Executive and his spouse. If the Executive is not accepted at standard rates of premium, the Executive shall be responsible for any excess premium.

**11.2** The Company shall provide the Executive access to a workplace pension scheme and make contributions in accordance with the Company's policy from time to time, which at the date of this agreement includes an undertaking by the Company to match the Executive's pension contributions to such pension scheme during the Employment up to a maximum Company contribution rate of 6% of the Executive's salary.

**11.3** The Company shall maintain for the Executive Directors' and Officers' insurance in respect of those liabilities which he may incur as a director or officer of the Company or any other Group Company for which such insurance is normally available to the Company in respect of its directors and officers.

## **12 BONUS**

**12.1** The Executive shall be entitled to receive a discretionary bonus comprised of a target bonus of up to 35% of the Executive's salary under Clause 9.1, extending to a maximum 'stretch' bonus of up to 50% of the Executive's salary, dependent on performance objectives to be agreed by the Company and the Executive as target and stretch, accordingly. For the avoidance of doubt, for the period from the Commencement Date to 31 December 2016, such discretionary bonus entitlement will be equal to one quarter of the full year entitlement.

**12.2** Subject to the rules of the Company's Share Dealing Code in force from time to time, the Executive will be expected to invest at least 25% of his bonus (net of tax) by purchasing the publicly traded shares in the Company until the Executive has invested an amount equal to £200,000.

**12.3** Any bonus scheme operated by the Company will not constitute a contractual term and bonus payments (if any) will be paid at the absolute discretion of the Company. The Executive shall not be eligible to be considered for a bonus if the Employment of the Executive is terminated under Clause 17.2(b). In addition, as the bonus is paid as an incentive to employees to remain in the employment of the Company, payment of any bonus is conditional on the Executive remaining in the employment of the Company and not having given notice to the Company to terminate his employment at the date that any bonus is payable.

## **13 SHARE SCHEMES**

**13.1** The Executive shall be entitled to participate in the Company's share and share option schemes in place from time to time (the "Share Schemes"). With respect to any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme:

(a) the number and value, vesting schedule, circumstances of exercise and all other terms and conditions of any award will be as determined in the Company's sole discretion and set out in a separate letter from the Company to the Executive;

- (b) the award will be subject to the Executive entering into a joint election approved by HM Revenue & Customs with respect to secondary national insurance liability;
- (c) the making of any award under a Share Scheme shall not entitle the Executive to any further award or right to participate in any other Share Scheme;
- (d) subject to Clause 13.1(e), the Executive's rights under or in relation to this Agreement are separate from and shall not be affected by any participation in the Share Schemes, and his participation shall be subject to the Share Schemes' rules from time to time;
- (e) subject to Clause 14, if the Employment is terminated for whatever reason and whether lawfully or unlawfully, the Executive agrees that he shall not be entitled by way of damages for breach of contract, dismissal or compensation for loss of office or otherwise to any sum, shares or other benefits to compensate him for the loss or diminution in value of any actual or prospective rights, benefits or expectations under or in relation to the Share Schemes.

**13.2** As soon as reasonably practicable after the Commencement Date having regard to the Company's Share Dealing Policy, the Company shall grant to the Executive an option to subscribe for a total of 15,000,000 ordinary shares in the capital of the Company exercisable at a price equal to 120% of the closing price of the Company's shares traded on the AIM stock exchange on the last trading day immediately before the Commencement date. Such options will vest in equal proportions on the first, second and third anniversary of the Commencement Date. Subject to vesting, the options will be exercisable at any time up to the tenth anniversary of the date of grant.

#### **14 CHANGE OF CONTROL**

Notwithstanding any other terms and conditions of this Agreement, if a Change of Control Event occurs:

- (a) any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme referred to in Clause 13 will automatically vest and may be exercised prior to the award's expiry date; and
- (b) the Executive will be entitled to receive his full bonus under Clause 12 without any obligation to purchase shares in the Company referred to in Clause 12.2.

#### **15 WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS**

- 15.1** The Executive shall devote the whole of his time, attention and abilities to his duties hereunder during the Company's usual business hours and such additional hours as may from time to time be reasonably necessary for the proper performance of his duties. This may include working in the evenings outside normal office hours, at weekends or on public holidays. The Executive shall not be entitled to receive any additional remuneration for work outside the Company's usual business hours.
- 15.2** The Executive hereby agrees to disapply Regulation 4 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 to the effect that the 48 hour limit on average working time will not apply in respect of his employment by the Company, subject to his right to revoke this election by 13 weeks' notice by the Executive to the Company.
- 15.3** The Executive shall (in addition to normal UK public holidays) be entitled to 25 working days' holiday at full salary in each Holiday Year during the Employment to be taken at such reasonable time or times as the Board may approve. Holiday may only be taken during the notice period if either the Company so requires or the Board has approved the holiday after notice has been served.
- 15.4** Holiday entitlement shall accrue pro rata during each Holiday Year. Any entitlement to holiday remaining at the end of any Holiday Year may not be carried forward to the next succeeding Holiday Year, except that with the prior written permission of the CEO up to 5

days holiday entitlement may be carried forward to the first quart of the following year; if such holiday entitlement is not used by 31 March of the following year it will be forfeited. The notice requirements in relation to statutory annual leave, as provided by Regulation 15 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 shall not apply to this Agreement.

**15.5** If the Executive has holiday entitlement accrued but not taken, the Company may, in its sole discretion, require him to take some or all of his holiday entitlement during his notice period or pay him a sum in lieu of accrued holiday on termination. If, on the termination of the Employment, the Executive has exceeded his accrued holiday entitlement, this excess will be deducted from any sums due to the Executive from the Company. A day's holiday pay for these purposes shall be 1/260 of the Executive's annual basic salary in accordance with Clause 9.1.

## **16 ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY**

**16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such statutory sick pay as he may be entitled to receive.

**16.2** If the Executive is absent from work on medical grounds, he is required to notify the Company by telephone on the first morning of his absence or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. If the Executive is absent from work for more than seven consecutive days, he must submit to the Company a medical certificate signed by a practising medical practitioner. Thereafter, the Executive shall submit further medical certificates to cover the whole of his period of absence.

**16.3** In the event that the Executive is incapacitated by reason of ill health or accident from performing his duties hereunder for a period or periods exceeding 130 working days in any 12 month period then:

- (a) the Company shall automatically become entitled to appoint a temporary successor to the Executive to perform all or any of the duties required to be performed by the Executive under the terms of this Agreement and the Executive's duties shall be amended temporarily accordingly;
- (b) the Employment of the Executive may be subject to termination by the Company giving to the Executive not less than thirteen weeks' notice in writing; and
- (c) nothing in this Clause 16.3 shall prejudice any rights that the Executive may have under the provisions of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.

**16.4** It is a condition of the Employment that the Executive consents to an examination by an independent doctor nominated by the Company should the Company so require. The Executive hereby authorises the Company to have unconditional access to any report or reports (including copies of and documents referred to in such reports) prepared as a result of any such examination and authorises the doctor(s) to discuss the same with the Chairman of the Company.

**16.5** The Company reserves the right to suspend the Executive on medical grounds, if, at any time, in the Company's reasonable opinion, the Executive is incapable on grounds of ill-health of performing some or all of his duties under this Agreement. During any period of suspension on medical grounds, the Executive will be subject to the same rights and duties as apply to employees on garden leave, as set out in Clause 18.2 of this Agreement.

## **17 TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT**

**17.1** The Employment may be terminated by either party by notice given in accordance with Clause 3.1.

**17.2** The Employment of the Executive shall be subject to termination by the Company (but without prejudice to any of the Executive's continuing obligations hereunder):

10

- 
- (a) pursuant to the provisions of Clause 16.3 above;
  - (b) immediately by notice in writing if the Executive shall:
    - (i) have committed and repeated or continued (after warning) any material breach of his obligations hereunder; or
    - (ii) have been guilty of conduct calculated or likely or tending to bring himself or any Group Company into disrepute or otherwise prejudicially to affect the interests of any Group Company; or
    - (iii) have a bankruptcy order made against him or enter into a voluntary arrangement within the meaning of the Insolvency Act 1986 or enter into a Deed of Arrangement under the Deeds of Arrangement Act 1914 or make any composition with some or all of his creditors; or
    - (iv) be convicted of any arrestable criminal offence, other than an offence under the Road Traffic legislation in respect of which a non-custodial sentence or penalty is imposed.

**17.3** The Company may terminate the Employment if, in the opinion of the Board, the Executive's performance of his duties is below the standard required of him. Such termination will not usually occur without at least one prior written warning to the Executive of the possibility of such termination.

**17.4** If the Company becomes entitled to terminate the Employment pursuant to Clause 17.2 above, it shall be entitled (but without prejudice to its rights subsequently to terminate the Employment on the same or any other ground) to suspend the Executive on full payment of salary for so long as it may think fit.

- 17.5** The Executive shall have no claim against the Company if this Agreement is terminated by reason of the liquidation of the Company for the purpose of reconstruction or amalgamation and the Executive is offered employment with any concern or undertaking resulting from such reconstruction or amalgamation in a similar position and on terms which are substantially the same as the terms of this Agreement.
- 17.6** On the termination of the Employment, howsoever arising, the Executive shall forthwith or at any time thereafter at the request of the Company, resign from any offices held by him in any Group Company together with any other offices or memberships held by him by virtue of the Employment. Should the Executive fail to resign within seven days of being so requested, the Company is irrevocably authorised to appoint some person as his attorney to sign upon his behalf any document or do anything necessary or requisite to give effect thereto.
- 17.7** The Executive shall not at any time during or after the termination of the Employment make any untrue or misleading statement in relation to the Company or the Group nor, in particular, after the termination of the Employment represent himself as being employed by or connected with the Group.
- 17.8** Termination of the Employment within this Clause 17 shall be without prejudice to any rights which have accrued at the time of termination and to the provisions of Clauses 6, 7, 8 and 19 which shall remain in full force and effect.
- 18 PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE**
- 18.1** The Company reserves the right in its absolute discretion to terminate the Employment at any time with immediate effect by giving written notice to the Executive that the Company shall pay in lieu of notice. The payment shall be calculated at the rate of the Executive's basic annual salary, pro-rated full bonus and contractual benefits prevailing at the

time when such notice is given. The Company shall not, under any circumstances, be obliged to make a payment in lieu of notice.

**18.2** If either party serves notice on the other to terminate the Employment, the Company may require the Executive to take “garden leave” for all or part of the remaining period of his employment. If the Executive is asked to take garden leave he:

- (a) may not attend at his place of work or any other premises of the Company and/or any Group Company unless at the Company’s written request;
- (b) may not contact any customers, suppliers, partners or contacts of the Company without the Company’s prior written permission;
- (c) may be required not to carry out all or any of his normal day to day duties for the remaining period of the Employment or any part thereof;
- (d) may be assigned other duties or have powers vested in him withdrawn;
- (e) must return to the Company all equipment, including, but not limited to, laptop computers and fax machines, all documents, discs and other materials (including copies) belonging to the Company and/or any Group Company containing confidential information; and
- (f) must remain contactable by telephone on a daily basis during any period of absence from work under this Clause 18, and may not take holiday, save with the Company’s prior written consent, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld.

**18.3** It is expressly agreed between the parties that, during any period of garden leave, the mutual duties of good faith and trust and confidence, and the Executive’s duty of fidelity to the Company, shall continue during any period that the Executive is not required to attend work, pursuant to this Clause 18.

## **19 POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS**

**19.1** Within this Clause 19 the following words shall have the following meanings:

“**Competitive Business**” shall mean any business or activity in competition with that carried on by the Company or any Group Company at the Termination Date in which the Executive shall have been directly concerned at any time in the Contact Period;

“**Contact Period**” shall mean the 12 month period ending with the Termination Date;

“**Customer Connection**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation who:

- (a) was at any time in the Contact Period a customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor) of the Company; or
- (b) was at the Termination Date negotiating with the Company with a view to dealing with the Company as customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor);

provided that this will only include suppliers where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Skilled Employee**” shall mean any person who was:

- (a) employed by the Company; or

(b) contracted to render services to the Company;

in technical or managerial work during the Contact Period and who was so engaged or contracted on the Termination Date;

“**Supplier**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company or negotiating with the Company at the Termination Date with a view to supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company, where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Termination Date**” shall mean the date of termination of the Executive’s Employment under this Agreement; and

“**Territory**” shall mean any member country of the European Union.

- 19.2** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, either on his own account or otherwise, canvass or solicit business in competition with the Company from any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment.
- 19.3** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, either on his own account or otherwise, do business in competition with the Company with any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment.
- 19.4** The Executive will not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, in competition with the Company, either on his/her own account or otherwise, accept the supply of goods or directly or indirectly interfere with or seek to interfere with the continuance of the supply of goods to the Company from any Supplier with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his employment.
- 19.5** The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, induce or seek to induce any Skilled Employee, with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the course of his duties hereunder in the Contact Period, to leave the Company’s employment, whether or not this would be a breach of contract on the part of such Skilled Employee or offer employment or an engagement to any such Skilled Employee.
- 19.6** The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, carry on or be interested in Competitive Business in competition with the Company in the Territory whether as principal, agent, director, partner, proprietor, employee or otherwise.
- 19.7** The period of time of the restrictions under this Clause 19 shall be reduced by the length of any period of garden leave the Executive may be required to take pursuant to Clause 18.2 above. In the event that the period of the restrictions is so reduced, the Contact Period shall mean the 12 month period ending with the date on which the Executive’s garden leave commences.
- 19.8** The Executive agrees that he will, at the request of the Company, enter into a direct agreement or undertaking with any Group Company whereby he will accept restrictions corresponding to the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 (or such of them as may be appropriate in the circumstances) in relation to such products and services and such areas and for such period as such Group Company may reasonably require for the protection of its legitimate interests.
- 19.9** Each of the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 are considered reasonable by the Company and the Executive as being no greater than is required for the protection of the goodwill of the business of the Company and the Group and are intended to be separate and

severable. In the event that any of the said restrictions shall be held void, but would be valid if part of the wording thereof were deleted, such restriction shall apply with such deletion as may be necessary to make it valid and effective.

## **20 DATA PROTECTION**

**20.1** In order to keep and maintain records relating to the Employment it shall be necessary for the Company to record, keep and process personal data (including sensitive personal data) relating to the Executive. This data may be recorded, kept and processed on computer and in hard copy form. To the extent that it is reasonably necessary in connection with the Employment and the performance of the Company's responsibilities as an employer, the Company may be required to disclose this data to others, including other employees of the Company, Group Companies, the Company's professional advisers, the Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs and other authorities. The Executive consents to the recording, processing, use and disclosure by the Company of personal data relating to the Executive as set out above. This does not affect the Executive's rights as a data subject or the Company's obligations and responsibilities under the Data Protection Act 1984 and/or the Data Protection Act 1998. For the purposes of these Acts, the Company has nominated the Chairman as its representative.

## **21 STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT**

**21.1** The information in this Agreement constitutes a written statement of the terms of employment of the Executive in compliance with the provisions of the Employment Rights Act 1996.

## **22 THIRD PARTIES**

**22.1** This Agreement may be enforced by any Group Company subject to and in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement confers on any other third party any benefits under the provision of the Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

## **23 NOTICES**

**23.1** Notices by either party must be in writing addressed:

- (a) to the Company at its registered office for the time being; and
- (b) to the Executive at his place of work or at the address set out in this Agreement or such other address as the Executive may from time to time have notified in writing to the Company for the purpose of this Clause.

**23.2** Notices will be effectively served:

- (a) on the day of receipt, where any hand-delivered letter or (in the case of the Company) a facsimile transmission is received on a business day before or during normal working hours;
- (b) on the following business day, where any hand-delivered letter or (in the case of the Company) facsimile transmission is received either on a business day after normal working hours or on any other day;
- (c) on the second business day following the day of posting from within the United Kingdom of any letter sent by first class prepaid mail; or
- (d) on the fifth business day following the day of posting to an overseas address of any prepaid airmail letter.

**24 INTERPRETATION**

**24.1** The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and are not to be used as an aid to construction of this Agreement.

**24.2** Reference to provisions of statutes, rules or regulations shall be deemed to include references to such provisions as amended, modified or re-enacted from time to time.

**25 GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION**

**25.1** This Agreement shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF** this Deed has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by the Executive the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED AND  
DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Company )  
acting by: )

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Director

In the presence of:

/s/ Claire Poll  
Claire Poll  
Legal Counsel  
Verona Pharma PLC

EXECUTED AND  
DELIVERED AS A DEED

on the date hereof  
by the Executive

)  
)  
)  
)

PJM  
PJM

/s/ PJ Morgan

In the presence of:

)

/s/ Robert M. Jackson

Robert Michael Jackson  
Gudgeons Prentice  
Solicitors  
Stowmarket  
Suffolk IP14 1ED  
Solicitor

---

**FIRST AMENDMENT  
TO  
EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

This First Amendment (the “First Amendment”) to that certain employment agreement (as amended, the “Employment Agreement”), dated 24 September 2016, by and between Verona Pharma plc (the “Company”) and Piers Morgan (the “Executive” and, together with the Company, the “Parties”) is made as of 28 March 2017 by and between the Company and Executive. Except as set forth in this First Amendment, capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to them in the Employment Agreement.

**WITNESSETH**

WHEREAS, the Company and Executive desire to amend the terms of the Employment Agreement as set forth herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, Executive and the Company hereby agree to the following:

1. Amendment to the Employment Agreement. The Employment Agreement is hereby amended by replacing Clause 16.1 and adding Clauses 26 and 27, which shall read as follows:

“**16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such contractual and statutory sick pay as the Executive may be entitled to receive under the Company’s sick leave policy from time to time.

**26 TAX EQUALISATION**

**26.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will be liable for UK income tax and employee’s National Health Insurance contributions (“UK Tax”). In addition, the Executive may be liable to pay US federal and state income taxes in respect of earnings from work carried out in the US. The Company intends to minimize the effect of the different rate of US and UK tax rates and leave the Executive in a net after-tax position substantially equivalent to what the Executive would experience if Executive were subject only to UK Tax during this period. The Company shall tax equalise the Executive so that the income and employment tax burden to the Executive on his remuneration and other amounts payable pursuant to this Agreement (including any remuneration with respect to the Share Schemes and including the tax equalisation payments made pursuant to this Clause 26), exclusive of any taxes under Section 409A, Section 457A or Section 4999 of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”) or any other provisions of the Code relating to excise taxes, penalties or interest, is neither substantially greater nor less than the UK Tax that the Executive would have paid had Executive performed all of Executive’s duties to the Company in the UK, subject to the terms of any tax equalisation policy adopted by the Company, as it may be amended by the Company from time to time in the Company’s sole discretion (“Tax Equalisation”). Such payments, if any are payable pursuant to this Clause 26, shall be made within 60 days after the actual US tax amounts due are paid by the Executive for any applicable tax periods. To the extent that payments pursuant to this Clause 26 exceed the amount that was required to achieve Tax Equalisation, the Executive will repay to the Company an amount equal to the overpayment on demand by the Company and agrees that the Company may deduct amounts equal to any

---

overpayment from the Executive's salary or other payments due from the Company to the Executive. The Executive shall cooperate with the Company in determining any Tax Equalisation and in seeking any tax refunds owed on taxes paid by the Company pursuant to this Clause 26 in accordance with applicable tax rules and regulations. This Clause 26 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.

## 27 EXCISE TAX

27.1 If any payment or benefit that Executive would receive following a Change of Control Event or otherwise ("Payment") would (i) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code, and (ii) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall be reduced to the Reduced Amount. The "Reduced Amount" shall be either (A) the largest portion of the Payment that would result in no portion of the Payment being subject to the Excise Tax or (B) the largest portion, up to and including the total amount, of the Payment, whichever of the amounts determined under (A) and (B), after taking into account all applicable federal, state and local employment taxes, income taxes, and the Excise Tax (all computed at the highest applicable marginal rate), results in the Executive's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the Payment notwithstanding that all or some portion of the Payment may be subject to the Excise Tax. If a reduction in payments or benefits constituting "parachute payments" is necessary so that the Payment equals the Reduced Amount, reduction shall occur in the following order: reduction of cash payments; cancellation of accelerated vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme; and reduction of employee benefits. In the event that acceleration of vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme is to be reduced, such acceleration of vesting shall be undertaken in the reverse order of the date of grant of the Executive's outstanding equity awards.

27.2 All calculations required to be performed under Clauses 26 and 27 shall be made by a public accounting or employee benefits consulting firm with a national practice selected by the Company (the "Accounting Firm"). The Accounting Firm shall provide detailed supporting calculations on the applicable matter to both to the Company and the Executive. All fees and expenses of the Accounting Firm shall be borne solely by the Company. Any determination by the Accounting Firm shall be binding upon the Company and the Executive."

2. No Other Amendment. Except as expressly set forth in this First Amendment, the Employment Agreement shall remain unchanged and shall continue in full force and effect according to its terms.

3. Acknowledgement. Executive acknowledges and agrees that Executive has carefully read this First Amendment in its entirety, fully understands and agrees to its terms and provisions and intends and agrees that it be final and legally binding on Executive and the Company.

4. Governing Law; Counterparts. This First Amendment shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the Parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales, and may be executed in several counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one document.

[signature page follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF this First Amendment has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by Executive the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED AND  
DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Company )  
acting by: ) /s/ JA Karlsson  
Director

In the presence of: ) /s/ Robert Hendricks  
Robert Hendricks

**EXECUTED AND  
DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
On the date hereof ) /s/ PJ Morgan  
by the Executive ) PJ Morgan

In the presence of: ) /s/ Robert Hendricks  
Robert Hendricks

---

EXECUTION COPY

Dated 1 October 2016

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

- and -

**CLAIRE POLL**

---

**EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

---

---

## INDEX

1	DEFINITIONS	3
2	APPOINTMENT	4
3	PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT	4
4	DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE	4
5	COMPANY POLICIES	5
6	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	5
7	CONFIDENTIALITY	6
8	DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY	7
9	REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS	7
10	EXPENSES	8
11	BENEFITS	8
12	BONUS	8
13	SHARE SCHEMES	8
14	CHANGE OF CONTROL	9
15	WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS	9
16	ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY	10
17	TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT	10
18	PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE	11
19	POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS	12
20	EXCISE TAX	14
21	DATA PROTECTION	14
22	PREVIOUS CONTRACTS	14
23	STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT	15
24	THIRD PARTIES	15
25	NOTICES	15
26	INTERPRETATION	15
27	GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION	15

## Employment Agreement

THIS AGREEMENT is made on October 2016

### BETWEEN:

- (1) VERONA PHARMA PLC, with its principal office at 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE (the “Company”); and
- (2) CLAIRE POLL, of 5 Clarendon Street, Cottesloe, 6011, Australia (the “Executive”).

IT IS AGREED as follows:

### 1 DEFINITIONS

1.1 In this Agreement, unless the context otherwise expressly requires, the following expressions shall have the following meanings:

“Agreement” means this Agreement;

“Board” means the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorised committee of the Board;

“CEO” means the Chief Executive Officer of the Company;

“Change of Control Event” means:

- (a) a shareholder, or a group of associated shareholders, becoming entitled to sufficient shares in the Company to give it or them the ability and that ability is successfully exercised, in a general meeting, to replace all or a majority of the Board;
- (b) in relation to a takeover bid in respect of shares in the Company, during the “Bid Period” as defined the Companies Act provided that where a takeover bid is publicly announced prior to the service of a bidder’s statement on the Company in relation to that takeover bid, the Bid Period shall be deemed to have commenced at the time of that announcement; and
- (c) on an application under the Companies Act if a court orders a meeting to be held concerning a proposed compromise or arrangement for the purposes of or in connection with a scheme for the reconstruction of the Company or its amalgamation with any other company.

“Commencement Date” means 1 September 2016;

“Companies Act” means the Companies Act 1985;

“Company” means Verona Pharma plc, a company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales with registered number 05375156;

“Employment” means the employment established by this Agreement;

“Group” means the Group Companies collectively;

“Group Company” means the Company, and any company which is from time to time a subsidiary of the Company, the holding company of the Company or a subsidiary of such holding company;

“**holding company**” and “**subsidiary**” shall have the respective meanings ascribed to such expressions by section 736 of the Companies Act 1985;

“**Holiday Year**” means the period of twelve consecutive calendar months commencing on 1 January in each year; and

“**Intellectual Property Rights**” means rights in ideas, know how, confidential information, inventions, discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, products, patents, designs, trademarks, database right or copyright work or any right to prevent reproduction whether or not any of these is registered and including applications for any such right, matter or thing or registration thereof and all rights or forms of protection of a similar nature or having equivalent or similar effect to any of these which may subsist anywhere in the world.

## **2 APPOINTMENT**

- 2.1** The Company appoints the Executive and the Executive agrees to serve the Company in the position of Legal Counsel, or in such other capacity as the Company may reasonably require (such other appointment not to be of a lower status than the Executive’s appointment under this Agreement).
- 2.2** The Executive hereby warrants to the Company that she will not be in breach of any former terms of employment, whether express or implied, or of any other obligation, arrangement, order or contract binding on the Executive, by reason of her entering into this Agreement.
- 2.3** The Executive hereby warrants that she knows of no circumstances which may result in proceedings being brought against her by the Financial Services Authority, under the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“**FSMA**”) or any similar regulatory authority, whether in the UK or otherwise and that no such proceedings have been threatened or commenced against her.

## **3 PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT**

- 3.1** The Employment shall begin on the Commencement Date and, subject to Clause 17, shall continue until it is terminated by either party giving to the other not less than six months’ written notice.

## **4 DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE**

- 4.1** The Executive shall be Legal Counsel of the Company and, subject always to the directions of the CEO, or such person nominated by the CEO, shall carry out such duties in relation to the Company as are consistent with the Executive’s position and as may from time to time be assigned to the Executive by the CEO or anyone else authorised by the CEO. The Executive shall, at the request of the CEO, and without additional remuneration, act as an officer or employee of any Group Company.
- 4.2** The Executive shall faithfully and diligently serve the Company as Legal Counsel and shall act at all times in the best interests of the Company. The Executive shall perform diligently such duties and exercise such powers consistent with her employment under this Agreement as may from time to time be assigned to or vested in her and, in her capacity as chief financial officer, shall obey the reasonable and lawful directions of the CEO or his nominee.
- 4.3** The Executive shall not, during the course of the Employment, whether alone or jointly with another and whether directly or indirectly, carry on, or be engaged or concerned in, or (except as the owner for investment of securities dealt in on a recognised stock exchange and not exceeding 3% in nominal value of the issued securities of any class or otherwise as approved

in writing by the Company from time to time) be interested in, any other business which competes with the business of the Company or the Group.

- 4.4** The Executive shall at all times keep the CEO or any other persons as the CEO may nominate, promptly and fully informed (in writing if so requested) of her conduct of the business or affairs of the Company or the Group and provide such explanations as the CEO may require in connection therewith.
- 4.5** The Executive shall comply with (a) every rule of law; (b) every regulation of the London Stock Exchange or of the Alternative Investment Market or any other Recognised Investment Exchange as defined in the FSMA and including the NASDAQ Stock Market; (c) every rule or regulation of any competent regulatory authority; and (d) every regulation of the Company for the time being in force in relation to dealings in shares or other securities of the Company or any other member of the Group.

## **5 COMPANY POLICIES**

- 5.1** The Executive shall comply with all Company policies, rules, systems and procedures as shall be in force from time to time.

## **6 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

- 6.1** All Intellectual Property Rights devised, developed or created by the Executive during the period of his employment with the Company or any Group Company and relating to the business of the Company shall belong to, and be the absolute property of the Company or such Group Company as the Company may nominate. To the extent that such Intellectual Property Rights are not otherwise vested in the Company, the Executive hereby assigns the same to the Company, together with all related past and future rights to action.
- 6.2** It shall be part of the normal duties of the Executive to consider in what manner and by what new methods or devices, products, services, processes, equipment or systems of the Company and each Group Company might be improved, and promptly to give to the CEO, or such person nominated by the CEO, full details of any invention, discovery, formula, technique, design, improvement or other matter or work whatsoever in relation thereto which the Executive may from time to time make or discover during the course of the Employment, and to further the interests of the Company in relation to the same.
- 6.3** The Executive shall at the request and cost of the Company do all things necessary or desirable and execute all and any documents required to give the Company, or such other member of the Group as the Company may nominate, title to the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1. The obligation contained in this Clause 6.3 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.
- 6.4** The Company may edit, copy, add to, take from, adapt, alter and translate the product of the Executive's services in exercising the rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.
- 6.5** To the full extent permitted by law, the Executive irrevocably and unconditionally waives any moral rights the Executive may otherwise have under sections 77 to 85 inclusive of the Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988 and any equivalent provisions of law anywhere in the world, in relation to the rights referred to in Clause 6.1.
- 6.6** The Executive must not knowingly do or omit to do anything which will or may have the result of preventing the Company from enjoying the full benefits of ownership of the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

- 6.7 The Executive must not at any time make use of the Company's property or documents or materials in which the Company owns the Intellectual Property Rights for any purpose which has not been authorised by the Company.
- 6.8 Each of the provisions of this Clause 6 is distinct and severable from the others and if at any time one or more of such provisions is or becomes invalid, unlawful or unenforceable (whether wholly or to any extent), the validity, lawfulness and enforceability of the remaining provisions (or the same provision to any other extent) of this Clause 6 shall not in any way be affected or impaired.

## 7 CONFIDENTIALITY

- 7.1 During the course of the Employment, the Executive will have access to and become aware of information which is confidential to the Company. Without prejudice to her common law duties, the Executive undertakes that she will not, save in the proper performance of her duties, make use of, or disclose to any person, (including for the avoidance of doubt any competitors of the Company), any of the trade secrets or other confidential information of or relating to the Company, or any user of the Company's services or any company, organisation or business with which the Company is involved in any kind of business venture or partnership, or any other information concerning the business of the Company which she may have received or obtained in confidence while in the service of the Company. The Executive will use her best endeavours to prevent the unauthorised publication or disclosure of any such trade secrets or confidential information.
- 7.2 This restriction shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment without limit in point of time but, both during the Executive's employment and after its termination, shall cease to apply to information ordered to be disclosed by a Court or Tribunal of competent jurisdiction or otherwise required to be disclosed by law or to information which becomes available to the public generally (other than by reason of the Executive breaching this Clause 7). Nothing in this Clause 7 will prevent the Executive making a "protected disclosure" within the meaning of the Public Interest Disclosure Act 1998.
- 7.3 For the purposes of this Agreement confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to:
- (a) the Company's corporate, business development and marketing strategy and plans;
  - (b) budgets, management accounts, bank account details and other confidential financial data of the Company;
  - (c) know-how and products being developed by the Company, including inventions and discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data;
  - (d) reports, confidential aspects of the Company's computer technology and systems, confidential algorithms developed or used by the Company, confidential information relating to proprietary computer hardware or software (including updates) not generally known to the public;
  - (e) confidential methods and processes, information relating to the running of the Company's business which is not in the public domain, including details of salaries, bonuses, commissions and other employment terms applicable within the Company;
  - (f) the names, addresses and contact details of any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and their requirements for any of the Company's products or services. Without prejudice to the foregoing, this includes personal information provided to the Company by visitors to and users of any of its websites;

- (g) the terms on which the Company does business with any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and the terms of any partnership, joint venture or other form of commercial co-operation or agreement the Company enters into with any third party;
- (h) software and technical information necessary for the development, maintenance or operation of any of the Company's websites and the source code of each website; and
- (i) any other information which the Company is bound by an obligation of confidence owed to a third party, in particular the content of discussions or communications with any prospective customers, suppliers or business partners.

**7.4** In this Clause 7, any reference to "Company" includes any "Group Company" as defined in Clause 1.1 and the Executive's undertaking to the Company in Clause 7.1 is given to the Company for itself and as trustee for each Group Company.

**7.5** The provisions of this Clause 7 shall be without prejudice to the Executive's duties at common law.

## **8 DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY**

**8.1** The Executive shall not, except in the proper performance of her duties, or with the Company's permission, remove any property belonging or relating to the Company or any Group Company from the Company's or Group Company's premises, or make any copies of documents or records relating to the Company's or any Group Company's affairs.

**8.2** Upon the Company's request at any time, and in any event on the termination of the Employment, the Executive shall immediately deliver up to the Company or its authorised representative, any plans, keys, mobile telephone, security passes, credit cards, equipment, documents, records, papers, computer disks, tapes or other computer hardware or software (together with all copies of the same), and all property of whatever nature in the Executive's possession or control which belongs to the Company or any other Group Company or relates to its or their business affairs. The Executive shall, at the Company's request, provide the Company with a written statement that she has complied with this obligation.

**8.3** If the Executive has any information relating to the Company or the Group or work she has carried out for the Company or any Group Company which is stored on a computer or laptop computer, whether or not the computer or laptop computer is owned by the Company or a Group Company, the Company shall be entitled to download the information and/or supervise its deletion from the computer or laptop concerned.

## **9 REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS**

**9.1** The Executive shall receive during the Employment a salary at the rate of £140,000 per annum (or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing) for an average of four working days per week. The Company shall review the Executive's salary within a reasonable time after, and with effect from, 1 January 2017 and thereafter annually with a change in any year effective from 1 January of that year. Such undertaking of a salary review does not confer a contractual right (whether express or implied) to any increase in salary, and an increase in salary one year will not guarantee an increase in salary in any subsequent year or years.

**9.2** The Executive's salary will accrue on a day-to-day basis payable by equal monthly payments in arrears no later than the last day of each month. Such salary shall include any sums receivable as director's fees or other remunerations from any Group Company.

**9.3** Payment of salary to the Executive may be made either by the Company or by another Group Company and, if by more than one company, in such proportion as the Board may from time to time decide.

9.4 At any time during the Employment, or, in any event, on the termination thereof howsoever arising, the Company shall be entitled to deduct from the Executive's remuneration any monies due to the Company from the Executive, including, but not limited to, any outstanding loans, advances, the cost of repairing any damage or loss to the Company's property caused by the negligence of the Executive (and of recovering the same), excess holiday pay and any other monies owed by the Executive to the Company.

## 10 EXPENSES

10.1 The Company shall refund the Executive all reasonable expenses wholly and exclusively incurred by her in the proper performance of the Company or the Group's business provided that the Executive produces to the Company such evidence of actual payment as the Company reasonably requires. Any credit card or similar facility supplied to the Executive by the Company shall be used solely for expenses incurred by her in the course of the Employment.

## 11 BENEFITS

11.1 The Company shall during the Employment, provide membership of a private medical insurance scheme for the Executive and her spouse. If the Executive is not accepted at standard rates of premium, the Executive shall be responsible for any excess premium.

11.2 The Company shall maintain for the Executive Directors' and Officers' insurance in respect of those liabilities which she may incur as a director or officer of the Company or any other Group Company for which such insurance is normally available to the Company in respect of its directors and officers.

## 12 BONUS

12.1 The Executive shall be entitled to receive a discretionary bonus of up to 35% of the Executive's salary under Clause 9.1, dependent on performance objectives to be agreed by the Company and the Executive.

12.2 Any bonus scheme operated by the Company will not constitute a contractual term and bonus payments (if any) will be paid at the absolute discretion of the Company. The Executive shall not be eligible to be considered for a bonus if the Employment of the Executive is terminated under Clause 17.2(b). In addition, as the bonus is paid as an incentive to employees to remain in the employment of the Company, payment of any bonus is conditional on the Executive remaining in the employment of the Company and not having given notice to the Company to terminate her employment at the date that any bonus is payable.

## 13 SHARE SCHEMES

13.1 The Executive shall be entitled to participate in the Company's share and share option schemes in place from time to time (the "**Share Schemes**"). With respect to any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme:

(a) the number and value, vesting schedule, circumstances of exercise and all other terms and conditions of any award will be as determined in the Company's sole discretion and set out in a separate letter from the Company to the Executive;

(b) the award will be subject to the Executive entering into a joint election approved by HM Revenue & Customs with respect to secondary national insurance liability;

(c) the making of any award under a Share Scheme shall not entitle the Executive to any further award or right to participate in any other Share Scheme;

(d) subject to Clause 13.1(e), the Executive's rights under or in relation to this Agreement are separate from and shall not be affected by any participation in the Share Schemes, and her participation shall be subject to the Share Schemes' rules from time to time;

(e) subject to Clause 14, if the Employment is terminated for whatever reason and whether lawfully or unlawfully, the Executive agrees that she shall not be entitled by way of damages for breach of contract, dismissal or compensation for loss of office or otherwise to any sum, shares or other benefits to compensate her for the loss or diminution in value of any actual or prospective rights, benefits or expectations under or in relation to the Share Schemes.

**13.2** As soon as reasonably practicable after the Commencement Date having regard to the Company's Share Dealing Policy, the Company shall grant to the Executive an option to subscribe for a total of 10,000,000 ordinary shares in the capital of the Company exercisable at a price equal to 120% of the closing price of the Company's shares traded on the AIM stock exchange on the last trading day immediately before the date of grant. Such options will vest in equal proportions on the first, second and third anniversary of the date of grant. Subject to vesting, the options will be exercisable at any time up to the tenth anniversary of the date of grant.

## **14 CHANGE OF CONTROL**

**14.1** Notwithstanding any other terms and conditions of this Agreement, if a Change of Control Event occurs:

(a) any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme referred to in Clause 13 will automatically vest and may be exercised prior to the award's expiry date; and

(b) the Executive will be entitled to receive her full bonus under Clause 12 without any obligation to purchase shares in the Company referred to in Clause 12.2.

## **15 WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS**

**15.1** The Executive shall devote an average of four working days per week to her duties hereunder during the Company's usual business hours and such additional hours as may from time to time be reasonably necessary for the proper performance of her duties. This may include working in the evenings outside normal office hours, at weekends or on public holidays. The Executive shall not be entitled to receive any additional remuneration for work outside the Company's usual business hours.

**15.2** The Executive hereby agrees to disapply Regulation 4 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 to the effect that the 48 hour limit on average working time will not apply in respect of her employment by the Company, subject to her right to revoke this election by 13 weeks' notice by the Executive to the Company.

**15.3** The Executive shall (in addition to normal UK public holidays) be entitled to 20 working days' holiday at full salary in each Holiday Year during the Employment to be taken at such reasonable time or times as the CEO may approve. Holiday may only be taken during the notice period if either the Company so requires or the CEO has approved the holiday after notice has been served.

**15.4** Holiday entitlement shall accrue pro rata during each Holiday Year. Any entitlement to holiday remaining at the end of any Holiday Year may not be carried forward to the next succeeding Holiday Year, except that with the prior written approval of the Chairman up to 5 days holiday entitlement may be carried forward to the first quarter of the following year, and any such holiday entitlement not used by 31 March of that following year will be forfeited. The notice requirements in relation to statutory annual leave, as provided by Regulation 15 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 shall not apply to this Agreement.

**15.5** If the Executive has holiday entitlement accrued but not taken, the Company may, in its sole discretion, require her to take some or all of her holiday entitlement during her notice period or pay her a sum in lieu of accrued holiday on termination. If, on the termination of the Employment, the Executive has exceeded her accrued holiday entitlement, this excess will be deducted from any sums due to the Executive from the Company. A day's holiday pay for these purposes shall be 1/208 of the Executive's annual basic salary in accordance with Clause 9.1.

## **16 ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY**

**16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such contractual and statutory sick pay as the Executive may be entitled to receive under the Company's sick leave policy from time to time.

**16.2** If the Executive is absent from work on medical grounds, she is required to notify the Company by telephone on the first morning of her absence or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. If the Executive is absent from work for more than seven consecutive days, she must submit to the Company a medical certificate signed by a practising medical practitioner. Thereafter, the Executive shall submit further medical certificates to cover the whole of her period of absence.

**16.3** In the event that the Executive is incapacitated by reason of ill health or accident from performing her duties hereunder for a period or periods exceeding 130 working days in any 12 month period then:

- (a) the Company shall automatically become entitled to appoint a temporary successor to the Executive to perform all or any of the duties required to be performed by the Executive under the terms of this Agreement and the Executive's duties shall be amended temporarily accordingly; and
- (b) subject to (c) below, the Employment of the Executive may be subject to termination by the Company giving to the Executive not less than thirteen weeks' notice in writing; and
- (c) nothing in this Clause 16.3 shall prejudice any rights that the Executive may have under the provisions of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.

**16.4** It is a condition of the Employment that the Executive consents to an examination by an independent doctor nominated by the Company should the Company so require. The Executive hereby authorises the Company to have unconditional access to any report or reports (including copies of and documents referred to in such reports) prepared as a result of any such examination and authorises the doctor(s) to discuss the same with the Chairman of the Company.

**16.5** The Company reserves the right to suspend the Executive on medical grounds, if, at any time, in the Company's reasonable opinion, the Executive is incapable on grounds of ill-health of performing some or all of her duties under this Agreement. During any period of suspension on medical grounds, the Executive will be subject to the same rights and duties as apply to employees on garden leave, as set out in Clause 18.2 of this Agreement.

## **17 TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT**

**17.1** The Employment may be terminated by either party by notice given in accordance with Clause 3.1.

**17.2** The Employment of the Executive shall be subject to termination by the Company (but without prejudice to any of the Executive's continuing obligations hereunder):

- (a) pursuant to the provisions of Clause 16.3 above;

10

- (b) immediately by notice in writing if the Executive shall:

- (i) have committed and repeated or continued (after warning) any material breach of her obligations hereunder; or
- (ii) have been guilty of conduct calculated or likely or tending to bring himself or any Group Company into disrepute or otherwise prejudicially to affect the interests of any Group Company; or
- (iii) have a bankruptcy order made against her or enter into a voluntary arrangement within the meaning of the Insolvency Act 1986 or enter into a Deed of Arrangement under the Deeds of Arrangement Act 1914 or make any composition with some or all of her creditors; or
- (iv) be convicted of any arrestable criminal offence, other than an offence under the Road Traffic legislation in respect of which a non-custodial sentence or penalty is imposed.

**17.3** The Company may terminate the Employment if, in the opinion of the CEO, the Executive's performance of her duties is below the standard required of her. Such termination will not usually occur without at least one prior written warning to the Executive of the possibility of such termination.

**17.4** If the Company becomes entitled to terminate the Employment pursuant to Clause 17.2 above, it shall be entitled (but without prejudice to its rights subsequently to terminate the Employment on the same or any other ground) to suspend the Executive on full payment of salary for so long as it may think fit.

**17.5** The Executive shall have no claim against the Company if this Agreement is terminated by reason of the liquidation of the Company for the purpose of reconstruction or amalgamation and the Executive is offered employment with any concern or undertaking resulting from such reconstruction or

amalgamation in a similar position and on terms which are substantially the same as the terms of this Agreement.

- 17.6** On the termination of the Employment, howsoever arising, the Executive shall forthwith or at any time thereafter at the request of the Company, resign from any offices held by her in any Group Company together with any other offices or memberships held by her by virtue of the Employment. Should the Executive fail to resign within seven days of being so requested, the Company is irrevocably authorised to appoint some person as her attorney to sign upon her behalf any document or do anything necessary or requisite to give effect thereto.
- 17.7** The Executive shall not at any time during or after the termination of the Employment make any untrue or misleading statement in relation to the Company or the Group nor, in particular, after the termination of the Employment represent himself as being employed by or connected with the Group.
- 17.8** Termination of the Employment within this Clause 17 shall be without prejudice to any rights which have accrued at the time of termination and to the provisions of Clauses 6, 7, 8 and 19 which shall remain in full force and effect.

**18 PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE**

- 18.1** The Company reserves the right in its absolute discretion to terminate the Employment at any time with immediate effect by giving written notice to the Executive that the Company shall pay in lieu of notice. The payment shall be calculated at the rate of the Executive's basic annual salary, pro-rated full bonus and contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The Company shall not, under any circumstances, be obliged to make a payment in lieu of notice.

- 18.2** If either party serves notice on the other to terminate the Employment, the Company may require the Executive to take “garden leave” for all or part of the remaining period of her employment. If the Executive is asked to take garden leave she:
- (a) may not attend at her place of work or any other premises of the Company and/or any Group Company unless at the Company’s written request;
  - (b) may not contact any customers, suppliers, partners or contacts of the Company without the Company’s prior written permission;
  - (c) may be required not to carry out all or any of her normal day to day duties for the remaining period of the Employment or any part thereof;
  - (d) may be assigned other duties or have powers vested in her withdrawn;
  - (e) must return to the Company all equipment, including, but not limited to, laptop computers and fax machines, all documents, discs and other materials (including copies) belonging to the Company and/or any Group Company containing confidential information; and
  - (f) must remain contactable by telephone on a daily basis during any period of absence from work under this Clause 18, and may not take holiday, save with the Company’s prior written consent, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld.
- 18.3** It is expressly agreed between the parties that, during any period of garden leave, the mutual duties of good faith and trust and confidence, and the Executive’s duty of fidelity to the Company, shall continue during any period that the Executive is not required to attend work, pursuant to this Clause 18.

**19 POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS**

**19.1** Within this Clause 19 the following words shall have the following meanings:

“**Competitive Business**” shall mean any business or activity in competition with that carried on by the Company or any Group Company at the Termination Date in which the Executive shall have been directly concerned at any time in the Contact Period;

“**Contact Period**” shall mean the 12 month period ending with the Termination Date;

“**Customer Connection**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation who:

- (a) was at any time in the Contact Period a customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor) of the Company; or
- (b) was at the Termination Date negotiating with the Company with a view to dealing with the Company as customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor);

provided that this will only include suppliers where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Skilled Employee**” shall mean any person who was:

- (a) employed by the Company; or
- (b) contracted to render services to the Company;

in technical or managerial work during the Contact Period and who was so engaged or contracted on the Termination Date;

“**Supplier**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company or negotiating with the Company at the Termination Date with a view to supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company, where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Termination Date**” shall mean the date of termination of the Executive’s Employment under this Agreement; and

“**Territory**” shall mean any member country of the European Union.

- 19.2** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, either on her own account or otherwise, canvass or solicit business in competition with the Company from any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of her Employment.
- (a) The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, either on her own account or otherwise, do business in competition with the Company with any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of her Employment.
- (b) The Executive will not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, in competition with the Company, either on her/her own account or otherwise, accept the supply of goods or directly or indirectly interfere with or seek to interfere with the continuance of the supply of goods to the Company from any Supplier with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of her employment.
- (c) The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, induce or seek to induce any Skilled Employee, with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the course of her duties hereunder in the Contact Period, to leave the Company’s employment, whether or not this would be a breach of contract on the part of such Skilled Employee or offer employment or an engagement to any such Skilled Employee.
- (d) The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, carry on or be interested in Competitive Business in competition with the Company in the Territory whether as principal, agent, director, partner, proprietor, employee or otherwise.
- 19.3** The period of time of the restrictions under this Clause 19 shall be reduced by the length of any period of garden leave the Executive may be required to take pursuant to Clause 18.2 above. In the event that the period of the restrictions is so reduced, the Contact Period shall mean the 12 month period ending with the date on which the Executive’s garden leave commences.
- 19.4** The Executive agrees that she will, at the request of the Company, enter into a direct agreement or undertaking with any Group Company whereby she will accept restrictions corresponding to the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 (or such of them as may be appropriate in the circumstances) in relation to such products and services and such areas and for such period as such Group Company may reasonably require for the protection of its legitimate interests.
- 19.5** Each of the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 are considered reasonable by the Company and the Executive as being no greater than is required for the protection of the goodwill of the business of the Company and the Group and are intended to be separate and severable. In the event that any of the said restrictions shall be held void, but would be valid

if part of the wording thereof were deleted, such restriction shall apply with such deletion as may be necessary to make it valid and effective.

## **20 EXCISE TAX**

**20.1** If any payment or benefit that Executive would receive following a Change of Control Event or otherwise (“Payment”) would (i) constitute a “parachute payment” within the meaning of Section 280G of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), and (ii) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the “Excise Tax”), then such Payment shall be reduced to the Reduced Amount. The “Reduced Amount” shall be either (A) the largest portion of the Payment that would result in no portion of the Payment being subject to the Excise Tax or (B) the largest portion, up to and including the total amount, of the Payment, whichever of the amounts determined under (A) and (B), after taking into account all applicable federal, state and local employment taxes, income taxes, and the Excise Tax (all computed at the highest applicable marginal rate), results in the Executive’s receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the Payment notwithstanding that all or some portion of the Payment may be subject to the Excise Tax. If a reduction in payments or benefits constituting “parachute payments” is necessary so that the Payment equals the Reduced Amount, reduction shall occur in the following order: reduction of cash payments; cancellation of accelerated vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme; and reduction of employee benefits. In the event that acceleration of vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme is to be reduced, such acceleration of vesting shall be undertaken in the reverse order of the date of grant of the Executive’s outstanding equity awards.

**20.2** All calculations required to be performed under this Clause 20 shall be made by a public accounting or employee benefits consulting firm with a national practice selected by the Company (the “Accounting Firm”). The Accounting Firm shall provide detailed supporting calculations on the applicable matter to both to the Company and the Executive. All fees and expenses of the Accounting Firm shall be borne solely by the Company. Any determination by the Accounting Firm shall be binding upon the Company and the Executive.

## **21 DATA PROTECTION**

**21.1** In order to keep and maintain records relating to the Employment it shall be necessary for the Company to record, keep and process personal data (including sensitive personal data) relating to the Executive. This data may be recorded, kept and processed on computer and in hard copy form. To the extent that it is reasonably necessary in connection with the Employment and the performance of the Company’s responsibilities as an employer, the Company may be required to disclose this data to others, including other employees of the Company, Group Companies, the Company’s professional advisers, the Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs and other authorities. The Executive consents to the recording, processing, use and disclosure by the Company of personal data relating to the Executive as set out above. . This does not affect the Executive’s rights as a data subject or the Company’s obligations and responsibilities under the Data Protection Act 1984 and/or the Data Protection Act 1998. For the purposes of these Acts, the Company has nominated the Chairman as its representative.

## **22 PREVIOUS CONTRACTS**

**22.1** This Agreement is in substitution for any previous contract of service or for services between any Group Company and the Executive which shall be deemed to have been terminated by mutual consent with effect from the Commencement Date, including but not limited to the consultancy agreement between the Company and the Executive dated 28 March 2007 and the letter amending that agreement dated 21 September 2015.

**23 STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT**

**23.1** The information in this Agreement constitutes a written statement of the terms of employment of the Executive in compliance with the provisions of the Employment Rights Act 1996.

**24 THIRD PARTIES**

**24.1** This Agreement may be enforced by any Group Company subject to and in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement confers on any other third party any benefits under the provision of the Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

**25 NOTICES**

**25.1** Notices by either party must be in writing addressed:

- (a) to the Company at its principal office for the time being; and
- (b) to the Executive at his place of work or at the address set out in this Agreement or such other address as the Executive may from time to time have notified in writing to the Company for the purpose of this Clause.

**25.2** Notices will be effectively served:

- (a) if delivered by hand-delivered letter, on the day of receipt where such letter is received on a business day before or during normal working hours, or on the following business day where such letter is received either on a business day after normal working hours or on any other day;
- (b) if delivered by email, upon the recipient, by an email sent to the email address of the sender or by a notice delivered by another method in accordance with this clause, acknowledging having received that email;
- (c) if posted from within the United Kingdom by first class prepaid mail, on the second business day following the day of posting; or
- (d) if posted from outside the United Kingdom by prepaid airmail letter, on the fifth business day following the day of posting.

**26 INTERPRETATION**

**26.1** The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and are not to be used as an aid to construction of this Agreement.

**26.2** Reference to provisions of statutes, rules or regulations shall be deemed to include references to such provisions as amended, modified or re-enacted from time to time.

**27 GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION**

**27.1** This Agreement shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF this Deed has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by the Executive the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Company )  
acting by: )

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Director

In the presence of: )

/s/ P. J. Morgan PJM  
3 More London, London SE1 2SR

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Executive )

/s/ Claire Poll  
Executive

In the presence of: )

/s/ P. J. Morgan PJM  
3 More London, London SE1 2SR

Dated 1 October 2016

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

- and -

**PETER SPARGO**

---

**EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

---



## INDEX

1	DEFINITIONS	3
2	APPOINTMENT	4
3	PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT	4
4	DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE	4
5	COMPANY POLICIES	5
6	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	5
7	CONFIDENTIALITY	6
8	DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY	7
9	REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS	7
10	EXPENSES	7
11	BENEFITS	8
12	DISCRETIONARY BONUS	8
13	SHARE SCHEMES	8
14	CHANGE OF CONTROL	8
15	WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS	9
16	ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY	9
17	TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT	10
18	PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE	11
19	POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS	11
20	EXCISE TAX	13
21	DATA PROTECTION	13
22	PREVIOUS CONTRACTS	13
23	STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT	14
24	THIRD PARTIES	14
25	NOTICES	14
26	INTERPRETATION	14
27	GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION	14

## Employment Agreement

THIS AGREEMENT is made on 1 October 2016

### BETWEEN:

- (1) VERONA PHARMA PLC, with its principal office at 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE (the “Company”); and
- (2) PETER SPARGO of Nash House, Beech Drive, Harbledown Park, Harbledown, Canterbury, Kent, CT2 8NR (the “Executive”).

IT IS AGREED as follows:

### 1 DEFINITIONS

1.1 In this Agreement, unless the context otherwise expressly requires, the following expressions shall have the following meanings:

“Agreement” means this Agreement;

“Board” means the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorised committee of the Company;

“CEO” means the Chief Executive Officer of the Company;

“Change of Control Event” means:

- (a) a shareholder, or a group of associated shareholders, becoming entitled to sufficient shares in the Company to give it or them the ability and that ability is successfully exercised, in a general meeting, to replace all or a majority of the Board;
- (b) in relation to a takeover bid in respect of shares in the Company, during the “Bid Period” as defined the Companies Act provided that where a takeover bid is publicly announced prior to the service of a bidder’s statement on the Company in relation to that takeover bid, the Bid Period shall be deemed to have commenced at the time of that announcement; and
- (c) on an application under the Companies Act if a court orders a meeting to be held concerning a proposed compromise or arrangement for the purposes of or in connection with a scheme for the reconstruction of the Company or its amalgamation with any other company.

“Commencement Date” means 1 August 2016;

“Companies Act” means the Companies Act 1985;

“Company” means Verona Pharma plc, a company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales with registered number 05375156;

“Employment” means the employment established by this Agreement;

“Group” means the Group Companies collectively;

“Group Company” means the Company, and any company which is from time to time a subsidiary of the Company, the holding company of the Company or a subsidiary of such holding company;

“holding company” and “subsidiary” shall have the respective meanings ascribed to such expressions by section 736 of the Companies Act 1985;

“Holiday Year” means the period of twelve consecutive calendar months commencing on 1 January in each year; and

**“Intellectual Property Rights”** means rights in ideas, know how, confidential information, inventions, discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, products, patents, designs, trademarks, database right or copyright work or any right to prevent reproduction whether or not any of these is registered and including applications for any such right, matter or thing or registration thereof and all rights or forms of protection of a similar nature or having equivalent or similar effect to any of these which may subsist anywhere in the world.

## **2 APPOINTMENT**

- 2.1** The Company appoints the Executive and the Executive agrees to serve the Company in the position of Senior Vice President, CMC (“SVP CMC”), or in such other capacity as the Company may reasonably require (such other appointment not to be of a lower status than the Executive’s appointment under this Agreement).
- 2.2** The Executive hereby warrants to the Company that he will not be in breach of any former terms of employment, whether express or implied, or of any other obligation, arrangement, order or contract binding on the Executive, by reason of his entering into this Agreement.
- 2.3** The Executive hereby warrants that he knows of no circumstances which may result in proceedings being brought against him by the Financial Services Authority, under the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“FSMA”) or any similar regulatory authority, whether in the UK or otherwise and that no such proceedings have been threatened or commenced against him.

## **3 PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT**

- 3.1** The Employment shall begin on the Commencement Date and, subject to Clause 17, shall continue until it is terminated by either party giving to the other not less than six months’ written notice.

## **4 DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE**

- 4.1** The Executive shall be Senior Vice President, Chemistry Manufacturing & Controls (SVP CMC) of the Company and, subject always to the directions of the CEO, or such person nominated by the CEO, shall carry out the duties set out in the Schedule to this Agreement and such other duties as are consistent with the Executive’s position and as may from time to time be assigned to the Executive by the CEO or anyone else authorised by the CEO. The Executive shall, at the request of the CEO, and without additional remuneration, act as an officer or employee of any Group Company.
- 4.2** The Executive shall faithfully and diligently serve the Company as SVP CMC and shall act at all times in the best interests of the Company. The Executive shall perform diligently such duties and exercise such powers consistent with his employment under this Agreement as may from time to time be assigned to or vested in him and, in his capacity as SVP CMC, shall obey the reasonable and lawful directions of the CEO or his nominee.
- 4.3** The Executive shall at all times use all reasonable endeavours to promote the interests and welfare and maintain the goodwill of the Company and any other Group Company and use all reasonable endeavours to prevent there being anything done which may be prejudicial or detrimental to the Company or any Group Company.
- 4.4** The Executive shall at all times keep the CEO or such other person(s) nominated by the CEO, promptly and fully informed (in writing if so requested) of his conduct of the business or affairs of the Company or the Group and provide such explanations as he or they may require in connection therewith.
- 4.5** The Executive shall not, during the course of the Employment, whether alone or jointly with another and whether directly or indirectly, carry on, or be engaged or concerned in, or (except as the owner for investment of securities dealt in on a recognised stock exchange and not exceeding 3% in nominal value of the issued securities of any class or otherwise as approved in writing by the

Company from time to time) be interested in, any other business which competes with the business of the Company or the Group.

- 4.6** The Executive shall comply with (a) every rule of law; (b) every regulation of the London Stock Exchange or of the Alternative Investment Market or any other Recognised Investment Exchange as defined in the FSMA and including the NASDAQ Stock Market; (c) every rule or regulation of any competent regulatory authority; and (d) every regulation of the Company for the time being in force in relation to dealings in shares or other securities of the Company or any other member of the Group.
- 4.7** The Executive's usual initial place of employment shall be the principal office of the Company stated in this Agreement, provided however that the Company agrees that the Executive may spend the equivalent of two working day per week working from home at such times mutually agreed by the Executive and the CEO. The Executive agrees that the Company may change the Executive's place of work to anywhere in the United Kingdom, provided that, if this requires the Executive to relocate, reasonable relocation expenses are paid by the Company. In addition, the Executive will be required to travel and work on the business of the Company both inside and outside the United Kingdom.

## **5 COMPANY POLICIES**

- 5.1** The Executive shall comply with all Company policies, rules, systems and procedures as shall be in force from time to time.

## **6 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

- 6.1** All Intellectual Property Rights devised, developed or created by the Executive during the period of his employment with the Company or any Group Company and relating to the business of the Company shall belong to, and be the absolute property of the Company or such Group Company as the Company may nominate. To the extent that such Intellectual Property Rights are not otherwise vested in the Company, the Executive hereby assigns the same to the Company, together with all related past and future rights to action.
- 6.2** It shall be part of the normal duties of the Executive to consider in what manner and by what new methods or devices, products, services, processes, equipment or systems of the Company and each Group Company might be improved, and promptly to give to the CEO, or such person nominated by the CEO, full details of any invention, discovery, formula, technique, design, improvement or other matter or work whatsoever in relation thereto which the Executive may from time to time make or discover during the course of the Employment, and to further the interests of the Company in relation to the same.
- 6.3** The Executive shall at the request and cost of the Company do all things necessary or desirable and execute all and any documents required to give the Company, or such other member of the Group as the Company may nominate, title to the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1. The obligation contained in this Clause 6.3 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.
- 6.4** The Company may edit, copy, add to, take from, adapt, alter and translate the product of the Executive's services in exercising the rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.
- 6.5** To the full extent permitted by law, the Executive irrevocably and unconditionally waives any moral rights the Executive may otherwise have under sections 77 to 85 inclusive of the Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988 and any equivalent provisions of law anywhere in the world, in relation to the rights referred to in Clause 6.1.
- 6.6** The Executive must not knowingly do or omit to do anything which will or may have the result of preventing the Company from enjoying the full benefits of ownership of the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.
- 6.7** The Executive must not at any time make use of the Company's property or documents or materials in which the Company owns the Intellectual Property Rights for any purpose which has not been authorised by the Company.

**6.8** Each of the provisions of this Clause 6 is distinct and severable from the others and if at any time one or more of such provisions is or becomes invalid, unlawful or unenforceable (whether wholly or to any extent), the validity, lawfulness and enforceability of the remaining provisions (or the same provision to any other extent) of this Clause 6 shall not in any way be affected or impaired.

## **7 CONFIDENTIALITY**

**7.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will have access to and become aware of information which is confidential to the Company. Without prejudice to his common law duties, the Executive undertakes that he will not, save in the proper performance of his duties, make use of, or disclose to any person, (including for the avoidance of doubt any competitors of the Company), any of the trade secrets or other confidential information of or relating to the Company, or any user of the Company's services or any company, organisation or business with which the Company is involved in any kind of business venture or partnership, or any other information concerning the business of the Company which he may have received or obtained in confidence while in the service of the Company. The Executive will use his best endeavours to prevent the unauthorised publication or disclosure of any such trade secrets or confidential information.

**7.2** This restriction shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment without limit in point of time but, both during the Executive's employment and after its termination, shall cease to apply to information ordered to be disclosed by a Court or Tribunal of competent jurisdiction or otherwise required to be disclosed by law or to information which becomes available to the public generally (other than by reason of the Executive breaching this Clause 7). Nothing in this Clause 7 will prevent the Executive making a "protected disclosure" within the meaning of the Public Interest Disclosure Act 1998.

**7.3** For the purposes of this Agreement confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to:

- (a) the Company's corporate, business development and marketing strategy and plans;
- (b) budgets, management accounts, bank account details and other confidential financial data of the Company;
- (c) know-how and products being developed by the Company, including inventions and discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data;
- (d) reports, confidential aspects of the Company's computer technology and systems, confidential algorithms developed or used by the Company, confidential information relating to proprietary computer hardware or software (including updates) not generally known to the public;
- (e) confidential methods and processes, information relating to the running of the Company's business which is not in the public domain, including details of salaries, bonuses, commissions and other employment terms applicable within the Company;
- (f) the names, addresses and contact details of any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and their requirements for any of the Company's products or services. Without prejudice to the foregoing, this includes personal information provided to the Company by visitors to and users of any of its websites;
- (g) the terms on which the Company does business with any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and the terms of any partnership, joint venture or other form of commercial co-operation or agreement the Company enters into with any third party;
- (h) software and technical information necessary for the development, maintenance or operation of any of the Company's websites and the source code of each website; and
- (i) any other information which the Company is bound by an obligation of confidence owed to a third party, in particular the content of discussions or communications with any prospective customers, suppliers or business partners.

7.4 In this Clause 7, any reference to “Company” includes any “Group Company” as defined in Clause 1.1 and the Executive’s undertaking to the Company in Clause 7.1 is given to the Company for itself and as trustee for each Group Company.

7.5 The provisions of this Clause 7 shall be without prejudice to the Executive’s duties at common law.

## **8 DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY’S PROPERTY**

8.1 The Executive shall not, except in the proper performance of his duties, or with the Company’s permission, remove any property belonging or relating to the Company or any Group Company from the Company’s or Group Company’s premises, or make any copies of documents or records relating to the Company’s or any Group Company’s affairs.

8.2 Upon the Company’s request at any time, and in any event on the termination of the Employment, the Executive shall immediately deliver up to the Company or its authorised representative in good order, any keys, mobile telephone, security passes, credit cards, equipment, documents, records, papers, computer disks, tapes or other computer hardware or software (together with all copies of the same), and all property of whatever nature in the Executive’s possession or control which belongs to the Company or any other Group Company or relates to its or their business affairs. The Executive shall, at the Company’s request, provide the Company with a written statement that he has complied with this obligation.

8.3 If the Executive has any information relating to the Company or the Group or work he has carried out for the Company or any Group Company which is stored on a computer or laptop computer, whether or not the computer or laptop computer is owned by the Company or a Group Company, the Company shall be entitled to download the information and/or supervise its deletion from the computer or laptop concerned.

## **9 REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS**

9.1 The Executive shall receive during the Employment a salary at the rate of £154,570 per annum (or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing). The Company shall review the Executive’s salary within a reasonable time after, and with effect from, 1 January 2017 and thereafter annually with a change in any year effective from 1 January of that year. Such undertaking of a salary review does not confer a contractual right (whether express or implied) to any increase in salary and an increase in salary in any one year will not guarantee an increase in salary in any subsequent year or years.

9.2 The Executive’s salary will accrue on a day-to-day basis and will be payable by equal monthly payments in arrears no later than the last day of each month. Such salary shall include any sums receivable as director’s fees or other remunerations from any Group Company.

9.3 Payment of salary to the Executive may be made either by the Company or by another Group Company and, if by more than one company, in such proportion as the Board may from time to time decide.

9.4 At any time during the Employment, or, in any event, on the termination thereof howsoever arising, the Company shall be entitled to deduct from the Executive’s remuneration deductions for Income Tax and National Insurance as required by law and any amounts due to the Company from the Executive, including, but not limited to, any outstanding loans, advances or the cost of repairing any damage or loss to the Company’s property caused by the negligence of the Executive (and of recovering the same), excess holiday pay and any other monies owed by the Executive to the Company.

## **10 EXPENSES**

10.1 The Company shall refund the Executive all reasonable expenses wholly and exclusively incurred by him in the proper performance of the Company or the Group’s business provided that the Executive follows the Company’s relevant standard operating procedures in force at the relevant time and produces to the Company such evidence of actual payment as the Company reasonably requires. Any credit card or similar facility supplied to the Executive by the Company shall be used solely for expenses incurred by him in the course of the Employment.

## **11 BENEFITS**

- 11.1** The Company shall, if so requested by the Executive during the Employment, provide membership of a private medical insurance scheme for the Executive and his spouse. If the Executive is not accepted at standard rates of premium, the Executive shall be responsible for any excess premium.
- 11.2** The Company shall provide the Executive access to a workplace pension scheme and make contributions in accordance with the Company's policy from time to time, which at the date of this agreement includes an undertaking by the Company to match the Executive's pension contributions to such pension scheme during the Employment up to a maximum Company contribution rate of 6% of the Executive's salary.
- 11.3** The Company shall maintain for the Executive Directors' and Officers' insurance in respect of those liabilities which he may incur as a director or officer of the Company or any other Group Company for which such insurance is normally available to the Company in respect of its directors and officers.

## **12 DISCRETIONARY BONUS**

- 12.1** The Executive shall be entitled to receive a discretionary bonus of up to 35% of the Executive's salary under Clause 9.1, or such other percentage determined by the Company in its absolute discretion, which shall be dependent on annual performance criteria to be agreed between the Company and the Executive.
- 12.2** Any bonus scheme operated by the Company will not constitute a contractual term and bonus payments (if any) will be paid at the absolute discretion of the Company. The Executive shall not be eligible to be considered for a bonus if the Employment of the Executive is terminated under Clause 17.2(b). In addition, as the bonus is paid as an incentive to employees to remain in the employment of the Company, payment of any bonus is conditional on the Executive remaining in the employment of the Company and not having given notice to the Company to terminate his employment at the date that any bonus is payable.

## **13 SHARE SCHEMES**

- 13.1** The Executive shall be entitled to participate in the Company's share and share option schemes in place from time to time (the "**Share Schemes**"). With respect to any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme:
- (a) the number and value, vesting schedule, circumstances of exercise and all other terms and conditions of any award will be as determined in the Company's sole discretion and set out in a separate letter from the Company to the Executive;
  - (b) the award will be subject to the Executive entering into a joint election approved by HM Revenue & Customs with respect to secondary national insurance liability;
  - (c) the making of any award under a Share Scheme shall not entitle the Executive to any further award or right to participate in any other Share Scheme;
  - (d) subject to Clause 13.1(e), the Executive's rights under or in relation to this Agreement are separate from and shall not be affected by any participation in the Share Schemes, and his participation shall be subject to the Share Schemes' rules from time to time;
  - (e) subject to Clause 14, if the Employment is terminated for whatever reason and whether lawfully or unlawfully, the Executive agrees that he shall not be entitled by way of damages for breach of contract, dismissal or compensation for loss of office or otherwise to any sum, shares or other benefits to compensate him for the loss or diminution in value of any actual or prospective rights, benefits or expectations under or in relation to the Share Schemes.

## **14 CHANGE OF CONTROL**

- 14.1** Notwithstanding any other terms and conditions of this Agreement, if a Change of Control Event occurs:

(a) any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme referred to in Clause 13 will automatically vest and may be exercised prior to the award's expiry date; and

(b) the Executive will be entitled to receive his full bonus under Clause 12.

## **15 WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS**

**15.1** The Executive shall devote the whole of his time, attention and abilities to his duties hereunder during the Company's usual business hours and such additional hours as may from time to time be reasonably necessary for the proper performance of his duties. This may include working in the evenings outside normal office hours, at weekends or on public holidays. The Executive shall not be entitled to receive any additional remuneration for work outside the Company's usual business hours.

**15.2** The Executive hereby agrees to disapply Regulation 4 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 to the effect that the 48 hour limit on average working time will not apply in respect of his employment by the Company, subject to his right to revoke this election by 13 weeks' notice by the Executive to the Company.

**15.3** The Executive shall (in addition to normal UK public holidays) be entitled to 25 working days' holiday at full salary in each Holiday Year during the Employment to be taken at such reasonable time or times as the Company may approve. Holiday may only be taken during the notice period if either the Company so requires or the Company has approved the holiday after notice has been served.

**15.4** Holiday entitlement shall accrue pro rata during each Holiday Year. Any entitlement to holiday remaining at the end of any Holiday Year may not be carried forward to the next succeeding Holiday Year, except that with the prior written permission of the CEO up to 5 days holiday entitlement may be carried forward to the first quarter of the following year, provided that if such holiday entitlement is not used by 31 March of that following year it will be forfeited. The notice requirements in relation to statutory annual leave, as provided by Regulation 15 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 shall not apply to this Agreement.

**15.5** If the Executive has holiday entitlement accrued but not taken, the Company may, in its sole discretion, require him to take some or all of his holiday entitlement during his notice period or pay him a sum in lieu of accrued holiday on termination. If, on the termination of the Employment, the Executive has exceeded his accrued holiday entitlement, this excess will be deducted from any sums due to the Executive from the Company. A day's holiday pay for these purposes shall be 1/260 of the Executive's annual basic salary in accordance with Clause 9.1.

## **16 ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY**

**16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such contractual and statutory sick pay as he may be entitled to receive under the Company's sick leave policy from time to time

**16.2** If the Executive is absent from work on medical grounds, he is required to notify the Company by telephone on the first morning of his absence or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. If the Executive is absent from work for more than seven consecutive days, he must submit to the Company a medical certificate signed by a practising medical practitioner. Thereafter, the Executive shall submit further medical certificates to cover the whole of his period of absence.

**16.3** In the event that the Executive is incapacitated by reason of ill health or accident from performing his duties hereunder for a period or periods exceeding 130 working days in any 12 month period then:

(a) the Company shall automatically become entitled to appoint a temporary successor to the Executive to perform all or any of the duties required to be performed by the Executive under the terms of this Agreement and the Executive's duties shall be amended temporarily accordingly; and

(b) subject to (c) below, the Employment of the Executive may be subject to termination by the Company giving to the Executive not less than thirteen weeks' notice in writing; and

(c) nothing in this Clause 16.3 shall prejudice any rights that the Executive may have under the provisions of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.

**16.4** It is a condition of the Employment that the Executive consents to an examination by an independent doctor nominated by the Company should the Company so require. The Executive hereby authorises the Company to have unconditional access to any report or reports (including copies of and documents referred to in such reports) prepared as a result of any such examination and authorises the doctor(s) to discuss the same with the Chairman of the Company.

**16.5** The Company reserves the right to suspend the Executive on medical grounds, if, at any time, in the Company's reasonable opinion, the Executive is incapable on grounds of ill-health of performing some or all of his duties under this Agreement. During any period of suspension on medical grounds, the Executive will be subject to the same rights and duties as apply to employees on garden leave, as set out in Clause 18.2 of this Agreement.

## **17 TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT**

**17.1** The Employment may be terminated by either party by notice given in accordance with Clause 3.1.

**17.2** The Employment of the Executive shall be subject to termination by the Company (but without prejudice to any of the Executive's continuing obligations hereunder):

(a) pursuant to the provisions of Clause 16.3 above;

(b) immediately by notice in writing if the Executive shall:

(i) have committed and repeated or continued (after warning) any material breach of his obligations hereunder; or

(ii) have been guilty of conduct calculated or likely or tending to bring himself or any Group Company into disrepute or otherwise prejudicially to affect the interests of any Group Company; or

(iii) have a bankruptcy order made against him or enter into a voluntary arrangement within the meaning of the Insolvency Act 1986 or enter into a Deed of Arrangement under the Deeds of Arrangement Act 1914 or make any composition with some or all of his creditors; or

(iv) be convicted of any arrestable criminal offence, other than an offence under the Road Traffic legislation in respect of which a non-custodial sentence or penalty is imposed.

**17.3** The Company may terminate the Employment if, in the opinion of the CEO, the Executive's performance of his duties is below the standard required of him. Such termination will not usually occur without at least one prior written warning to the Executive of the possibility of such termination.

**17.4** If the Company becomes entitled to terminate the Employment pursuant to Clause 17.2 above, it shall be entitled (but without prejudice to its rights subsequently to terminate the Employment on the same or any other ground) to suspend the Executive on full payment of salary for so long as it may think fit.

**17.5** The Executive shall have no claim against the Company if this Agreement is terminated by reason of the liquidation of the Company for the purpose of reconstruction or amalgamation and the Executive is offered employment with any concern or undertaking resulting from such reconstruction or amalgamation in a similar position and on terms which are substantially the same as the terms of this Agreement.

**17.6** On the termination of the Employment, howsoever arising, the Executive shall forthwith or at any time thereafter at the request of the Company, resign from any offices held by him in any Group Company together with any other offices or memberships held by him by virtue of the Employment. Should the Executive fail to resign within seven days of being so requested, the Company is

10

---

irrevocably authorised to appoint some person as his attorney to sign upon his behalf any document or do anything necessary or requisite to give effect thereto.

**17.7** The Executive shall not at any time during or after the termination of the Employment make any untrue or misleading statement in relation to the Company or the Group nor, in particular, after the termination of the Employment represent himself as being employed by or connected with the Group.

**17.8** Termination of the Employment within this Clause 17 shall be without prejudice to any rights which have accrued at the time of termination and to the provisions of Clauses 6, 7, 8 and 19 which shall remain in full force and effect.

## **18 PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE**

**18.1** The Company reserves the right in its absolute discretion to terminate the Employment at any time with immediate effect by giving written notice to the Executive that the Company shall pay in lieu of notice. The payment shall be calculated at the rate of the Executive's basic annual salary, pro-rated full bonus and contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The Company shall not, under any circumstances, be obliged to make a payment in lieu of notice.

**18.2** If either party serves notice on the other to terminate the Employment, the Company may require the Executive to take "garden leave" for all or part of the remaining period of his employment. If the Executive is asked to take garden leave he:

- (a) may not attend at his place of work or any other premises of the Company and/or any Group Company unless at the Company's written request;
- (b) may not contact any customers, suppliers, partners or contacts of the Company without the Company's prior written permission;
- (c) may be required not to carry out all or any of his normal day to day duties for the remaining period of the Employment or any part thereof;
- (d) may be assigned other duties or have powers vested in him withdrawn;
- (e) must return to the Company all equipment, including, but not limited to, laptop computers and fax machines, all documents, discs and other materials (including copies) belonging to the Company and/or any Group Company containing confidential information; and
- (f) must remain contactable by telephone on a daily basis during any period of absence from work under this Clause 18, and may not take holiday, save with the Company's prior written consent, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld.

**18.3** It is expressly agreed between the parties that, during any period of garden leave, the mutual duties of good faith and trust and confidence, and the Executive's duty of fidelity to the Company, shall continue during any period that the Executive is not required to attend work, pursuant to this Clause 18.

## **19 POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS**

**19.1** Within this Clause 19 the following words shall have the following meanings:

“**Competitive Business**” shall mean any business or activity in competition with that carried on by the Company or any Group Company at the Termination Date in which the Executive shall have been directly concerned at any time in the Contact Period;

“**Contact Period**” shall mean the 12 month period ending with the Termination Date;

“**Customer Connection**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation who:

- (a) was at any time in the Contact Period a customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor) of the Company; or
- (b) was at the Termination Date negotiating with the Company with a view to dealing with the Company as customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor);

provided that this will only include suppliers where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Skilled Employee**” shall mean any person who was:

- (a) employed by the Company; or
- (b) contracted to render services to the Company;

in technical or managerial work during the Contact Period and who was so engaged or contracted on the Termination Date;

“**Supplier**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company or negotiating with the Company at the Termination Date with a view to supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company, where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Termination Date**” shall mean the date of termination of the Executive’s Employment under this Agreement; and

“**Territory**” shall mean any member country of the European Union.

**19.2** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, either on his own account or otherwise:

- (a) canvass or solicit business in competition with the Company from any Customer with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment; or
- (b) in competition with the Company, accept the supply of goods or services or directly or indirectly interfere with or seek to interfere with the continuance of the supply of goods or services to the Company from any Supplier with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his employment;
- (c) induce or seek to induce any Skilled Employee, with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the course of his duties hereunder in the Contact Period, to leave the Company’s employment, whether or not this would be a breach of contract on the part of such Executive or offer employment or an engagement to any such Executive; or
- (d) carry on or be interested in Competitive Business in competition with the Company in the Territory whether as principal, agent, director, partner, proprietor, Executive or otherwise.

**19.3** The period of time of the restrictions under this Clause 19 shall be reduced by the length of any period of garden leave the Executive may be required to take pursuant to Clause 18.2 of this Agreement. In the event that the period of the restrictions is so reduced, the Contact Period shall mean the 12 month period ending with the date on which the Executive’s garden leave commences.

**19.4** The Executive agrees that he will, at the request of the Company, enter into a direct agreement or undertaking with any Group Company whereby he will accept restrictions corresponding to the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 (or such of them as may be appropriate in the

circumstances) in relation to such products and services and such areas and for such period as such Group Company may reasonably require for the protection of its legitimate interests.

- 19.5** Each of the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 are considered reasonable by the Company and the Executive as being no greater than is required for the protection of the goodwill of the business of the Company and the Group and are intended to be separate and severable. In the event that any of the said restrictions shall be held void, but would be valid if part of the wording thereof were deleted, such restriction shall apply with such deletion as may be necessary to make it valid and effective.

## **20 EXCISE TAX**

- 20.1** If any payment or benefit that the Executive would receive following a Change of Control Event or otherwise (“Payment”) would (i) constitute a “parachute payment” within the meaning of Section 280G of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), and (ii) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the “Excise Tax”), then such Payment shall be reduced to the Reduced Amount. The “Reduced Amount” shall be either (A) the largest portion of the Payment that would result in no portion of the Payment being subject to the Excise Tax or (B) the largest portion, up to and including the total amount, of the Payment, whichever of the amounts determined under (A) and (B), after taking into account all applicable federal, state and local employment taxes, income taxes, and the Excise Tax (all computed at the highest applicable marginal rate), results in the Executive’s receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the Payment notwithstanding that all or some portion of the Payment may be subject to the Excise Tax. If a reduction in payments or benefits constituting “parachute payments” is necessary so that the Payment equals the Reduced Amount, reduction shall occur in the following order: reduction of cash payments; cancellation of accelerated vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme; and reduction of employee benefits. In the event that acceleration of vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme is to be reduced, such acceleration of vesting shall be undertaken in the reverse order of the date of grant of the Executive’s outstanding equity awards.

- 20.2** All calculations required to be performed under this Clause 20 shall be made by a public accounting or employee benefits consulting firm with a national practice selected by the Company (the “Accounting Firm”). The Accounting Firm shall provide detailed supporting calculations on the applicable matter to both to the Company and the Executive. All fees and expenses of the Accounting Firm shall be borne solely by the Company. Any determination by the Accounting Firm shall be binding upon the Company and the Executive.

## **21 DATA PROTECTION**

- 21.1** In order to keep and maintain records relating to the Employment it shall be necessary for the Company to record, keep and process personal data (including sensitive personal data) relating to the Executive. This data may be recorded, kept and processed on computer and in hard copy form. To the extent that it is reasonably necessary in connection with the Employment and the performance of the Company’s responsibilities as an employer, the Company may be required to disclose this data to others, including other employees of the Company, Group Companies, the Company’s professional advisers, the Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs and other authorities. The Executive consents to the recording, processing, use and disclosure by the Company of personal data relating to the Executive as set out above. . This does not affect the Executive’s rights as a data subject or the Company’s obligations and responsibilities under the Data Protection Act 1984 and/or the Data Protection Act 1998. For the purposes of these Acts, the Company has nominated the Chairman as its representative.

## **22 PREVIOUS CONTRACTS**

- 22.1** This Agreement is in substitution for any previous contract of service or for services between any Group Company and the Executive which shall be deemed to have been terminated by mutual consent with effect from the Commencement Date, including but not limited to the employment agreement between the Company and the Executive dated 1 May 2014 and the letter amending that agreement dated 20 July 2016.

**23 STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT**

**23.1** The information in this Agreement constitutes a written statement of the terms of employment of the Executive in compliance with the provisions of the Employment Rights Act 1996.

**24 THIRD PARTIES**

**24.1** This Agreement may be enforced by any Group Company subject to and in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement confers on any other third party any benefits under the provision of the Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

**25 NOTICES**

**25.1** Notices by either party must be in writing addressed:

- (a) to the Company at its principal office for the time being; and
- (b) to the Executive at his place of work or at the address set out in this Agreement or such other address as the Executive may from time to time have notified in writing to the Company for the purpose of this Clause.

**25.2** Notices will be effectively served:

- (a) if delivered by hand-delivered letter, on the day of receipt where such letter is received on a business day before or during normal working hours, or on the following business day where such letter is received either on a business day after normal working hours or on any other day;
- (b) if delivered by email, upon the recipient, by an email sent to the email address of the sender or by a notice delivered by another method in accordance with this clause, acknowledging having received that email;
- (c) if posted from within the United Kingdom by first class prepaid mail, on the second business day following the day of posting; or
- (d) if posted from outside the United Kingdom by prepaid airmail letter, on the fifth business day following the day of posting.

**26 INTERPRETATION**

**26.1** The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and are not to be used as an aid to construction of this Agreement.

**26.2** Reference to provisions of statutes, rules or regulations shall be deemed to include references to such provisions as amended, modified or re-enacted from time to time.

**27 GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION**

**27.1** This Agreement shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF this Deed has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by the Executive the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Company )  
acting by: )

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Director

In the presence of: )

/s/ Paula Siu  
3 More London, SE1 2RE

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Executive )

/s/ Peter L. Spargo  
Executive

In the presence of: )

/s/ Paula Siu  
3 More London, SE1 2RE

## **SCHEDULE**

### **DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE**

The Executive shall, subject always to the directions of the CEO, or such person nominated by the CEO, carry out the duties set out below and such other duties as may from time to time be assigned to the Executive by the CEO or anyone else authorised by the Board:

#### **Executive Management and Strategy**

- Member of executive leadership team and participate in decision making around key financial, strategic and operational activities.
- Develop operational strategy together with the CEO and executive team and assess the Company's operational performance.
- Participate in long-term budget planning and cost management, especially in relation to Pharmaceutical Development and Manufacturing

#### **CMC and Manufacturing**

- Build/develop a fit-for-purpose Pharmaceutical Development/Manufacturing organization for Verona Pharma
  - Develop strategies and operational plans for Pharmaceutical Development and Manufacturing of the Company's development products consistent with best industry practices and in keeping with GMP and international regulatory guidelines.
  - Managing Pharmaceutical Development and manufacturing activities according to agreed timelines, within the allocated budget and to set specifications.
  - Ensure all activities are to appropriate international development and commercial standards
  - Managing the supply chain
-

**DIRECTOR DEED OF INDEMNITY**

**THIS DEED OF INDEMNITY** is made the 31st day of March 2017

**BETWEEN:**

- (1) Verona Pharma plc, a public limited company registered in England and Wales with company number 05375156 whose registered office is at One Central Square, Cardiff, United Kingdom, CF10 1FS (the “**Company**”); and
- (2) [*Insert name of director*] of [*address*] (the “**Indemnified Person**”).

**WHEREAS**

- (A) The Indemnified Person is a director of the Company.
- (B) The Company has agreed to indemnify the Indemnified Person on the terms and conditions set out in this Deed.
- (C) The Company has further agreed to maintain appropriate directors’ and officers’ liability insurance for the benefit of the Indemnified Person.

**NOW THIS DEED WITNESSETH** as follows:

**1. INDEMNITY**

- 1.1 Subject to Clauses 1.2 and 6.1 of this Deed, the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law and without prejudice to any other indemnity to which the Indemnified Person may otherwise be entitled, indemnify and hold the Indemnified Person harmless in respect of all claims, actions and proceedings, whether civil, criminal or regulatory (“**Claims**”), and any losses, damages, penalties, liabilities, compensation or other awards arising in connection with any such Claims (“**Losses**”), whether instigated, imposed or incurred under the laws of England and Wales or the law of any other jurisdiction and arising out of, or in connection with, the actual or purported exercise of, or failure to exercise, any of the Indemnified Person’s powers, duties or responsibilities as a director or officer of the Company or any of its subsidiaries (as defined in section 1159 of the Companies Act 2006, as amended (the “**Companies Act**”)) and including any modification or re-enactment of it for the time being in force) for the time being, subject to the remaining provisions of this Deed.
- 1.2 The indemnity in Clause 1.1 above shall be deemed not to provide for, or entitle the Indemnified Person to, any indemnification that would cause this Deed, or any part of it, to be treated as void under the Companies Act and, in particular, except as provided in Clause 1.3 of this Deed, shall not provide directly or indirectly (to any extent) any indemnity against:

- (a) any liability incurred by the Indemnified Person to the Company or any associated company (as defined in section 256 of the Companies Act) (“**Associated Company**”); or
- (b) any liability incurred by the Indemnified Person to pay a fine imposed in criminal proceedings or a sum payable to a regulatory authority by way of a penalty in respect of non-compliance by the Indemnified Person with any requirement of a regulatory nature (however arising); or
- (c) any liability incurred by the Indemnified Person:
  - (i) in defending any criminal proceedings in which such Indemnified Person is convicted;
  - (ii) in defending any civil proceedings brought by the Company, or an Associated Company, in which judgment is given against such Indemnified Person; or
  - (iii) in connection with any application under section 661(3) or (4) or section 1157 of the Companies Act in which the court refuses to grant him relief,

where, in any such case, any such conviction, judgment or refusal of relief has become final. Reference in this Clause 1.2 to a conviction, judgment or refusal of relief being “final” shall be construed in accordance with sections 234(4) and (5) of the Companies Act.

1.3 Without prejudice to the generality of the indemnity set out in Clause 1.1 above, the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify and hold the Indemnified Person harmless on an “as incurred” basis against all legal and other costs, charges and expenses reasonably incurred or to be incurred:

- (a) in defending Claims including, without limitation, Claims brought by, or at the request of, the Company or any Associated Company and any investigation into the affairs of the Company or any Associated Company by any judicial, governmental, regulatory or other body; or
- (b) in connection with any application under section 661(3) or (4) or section 1157 of the Companies Act,

provided that, in accordance with section 205 of the Companies Act, the Indemnified Person agrees that any such legal and other costs, charges and expenses paid by the Company shall fall to be repaid, or any liability of the Company under any transaction connected thereto shall fall to be discharged, not later than:

- (c) in the event of the Indemnified Person being convicted in the proceedings, the date when the conviction becomes final;
- (d) in the event of judgment being given against the Indemnified Person in the proceedings, the date when the judgment becomes final; or
- (e) in the event of the court refusing to grant the Indemnified Person relief on the application, the date when the refusal of relief becomes final.

References in this Clause 1.3 to a conviction, judgment or refusal of relief being 'final' shall be construed in accordance with sections 205(3) and (4) of the Companies Act.

## **2. CLAIMING UNDER THE INDEMNITY**

2.1 The Indemnified Person shall give written notice to the Company as soon as reasonably practical after receipt of any demand relating to any Claims (or becoming aware of circumstances which are reasonably be expected to give rise to a demand relating to Claims) giving full details and providing copies of all relevant correspondence and the Indemnified Person shall keep the Company fully informed of the progress of any Claims, including providing all such information in relation to any Claims or Losses or any other costs, charges or expenses incurred as the Company may reasonably request, and shall take all such action as the Company may reasonably request to avoid, dispute, resist, appeal, compromise or defend any Claims.

2.2 For the avoidance of doubt:

- (a) if a company ceases to be a subsidiary of the Company after the date of this Deed, the Company shall only be liable to indemnify the Indemnified Person in respect of liabilities in relation to that company which arose before the date on which that company ceased to be a subsidiary of the Company; and
- (b) the Indemnified Person, as director or manager of any company which becomes a subsidiary of the Company after the date of this Deed, shall be indemnified only in respect of liabilities arising after the date on which that company became a subsidiary of the Company.

## **3. TERM**

This Deed shall remain in force until such time as any relevant limitation periods for bringing Claims against the Indemnified Person have expired, or for so long as the Indemnified Person remains liable for any Losses, notwithstanding that such Indemnified Person may have ceased to be a director or officer of the Company or any of its subsidiaries.

## **4. DIRECTORS' AND OFFICERS' INSURANCE**

The Company shall provide and maintain appropriate "directors and officers" liability insurance (including ensuring that premiums are properly paid) for the benefit of the Indemnified Person for so long as any Claims may lawfully be brought against the Indemnified Person.

## **5. GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION**

This Deed and any non-contractual rights or obligations arising out of or in connection with it shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, the laws of England and Wales. Each of the Company and the Indemnified Person irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales shall have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any Disputes (as defined below) and waive any objection to proceedings before such courts on the grounds of venue or on the grounds that such proceedings have been brought in an inappropriate forum. For the purposes of this Clause 5, "**Dispute**" means any dispute, controversy, claim or difference of whatever nature arising out of, relating to, or having any connection with this

Deed, including a dispute regarding the existence, formation, validity, interpretation, performance or termination of this Deed or the consequences of its nullity and also including any dispute relating to any non-contractual rights or obligations arising out of, relating to, or having any connection with this Deed.

**6. GENERAL**

6.1 If this Deed is finally judicially determined in a relevant jurisdiction to provide for, or entitle the Indemnified Person to, indemnification against any Claims or Losses that would cause this Deed, or any part of it, to be treated as void under the laws of that jurisdiction, this Deed shall, in so far as it relates to such jurisdiction, be deemed not to provide for, or entitle the Indemnified Person to, any such indemnification, and the Company shall instead indemnify the Indemnified Person against any Claims or Losses to the fullest extent permitted by law in that jurisdiction.

6.2 A person who is not a party to this Deed shall have no right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce any of its terms.

IN WITNESS whereof this Deed has been executed the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED and delivered** )  
**as a DEED by** )  
**VERONA PHARMA PLC** )  
acting by ) \_\_\_\_\_  
a director, in the presence of: ) Director

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Witness  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Witness  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Address of Witness  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Occupation of Witness

**SIGNED** as a **DEED** by  
[*name of Indemnified Person*]  
in the presence of:

)  
)  
)

---

---

Signature of Witness

---

Name of Witness

---

Address of Witness

---

Occupation of Witness

---

DATED

2016

**ORBIMED PRIVATE INVESTMENTS VI, LP**

and

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

and

**NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP**

---

**RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT**

**relating to**

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

---

5 New Street Square | London EC4A 3TW  
Tel +44 (0)20 7300 7000  
Fax +44 (0)20 7300 7100  
DX 41 London  
[www.taylorwessing.com](http://www.taylorwessing.com)

**TaylorWessing**

---

## Index

Clause No.		Page No.
1.	Definitions and interpretation	1
2.	Condition precedent and duration	4
3.	Conduct of transactions and relationships	5
4.	Takeover Code	6
5.	Approved Non-Executive Director	7
6.	Procedure on conflict	9
7.	Announcements and confidentiality	9
8.	Capacity	10
9.	Notices and other communications	10
10.	Remedies and waivers	11
11.	Invalidity	12
12.	Entire agreement	12
13.	Additional Rights	12
14.	Miscellaneous	13
15.	Governing law and jurisdiction	13

---

**BETWEEN**

- (1) **ORBIMED PRIVATE INVESTMENTS VI, LP** (a Delaware limited liability company) whose registered office is at 601 Lexington Avenue, 54<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, NY 10022, USA, acting by its general partner OrbiMed Capital GP BI LLC and its managing member OrbiMed Advisors LLC (the “**Shareholder**”);
- (2) **VERONA PHARMA PLC** (registered in England with company number 05375156) whose registered office is at One, Central Square, Cardiff CF10 1FS (the “**Company**”); and
- (3) **NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP** (registered in England with number OC364131), whose registered office is at One Bartholomew Lane, London, EC2N 2AX (the “**Nomad**”).

**INTRODUCTION**

- (A) The Company intends to undertake a fundraising whereby securities of the Company (the “**Units**”) will be offered for subscription, with each Unit consisting of (i) one new Ordinary Share (“**New Ordinary Shares**”); and (ii) one Warrant. The New Ordinary Shares are proposed to be admitted to trading on the AIM market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc and Ordinary Shares arising from exercise of Warrants will also be admitted to trading in due course.
- (B) The Shareholder will, on Admission be the beneficial owners of, in aggregate, approximately 8.8 per cent. (8.8 %) of the total number of votes capable of being cast on a poll at general meetings of the Company (assuming all the Warrants are exercised).
- (C) The Shareholder and the Company wish to regulate the relationship between them to ensure that:
  - (a) all transactions, agreements, relationships and arrangements entered into between the Shareholder’s Group and the Company’s Group will only be made on an arm’s length basis and on normal commercial terms; and
  - (b) with effect from Admission, the Company will be capable at all times of carrying on its business independently of the Shareholder’s Group.

**AGREED TERMS**

**1. Definitions and interpretation**

- 1.1 In this deed (including the introduction) the following words and expressions have the following meanings, except as otherwise provided or where the context otherwise requires:

“**Act**” means the Companies Act 2006;

---

“**Admission**” means the admission of the New Ordinary Shares to trading on AIM becoming effective in accordance with the AIM Rules;

“**ADSs**” means American Depository Shares;

“**AIM**” means the AIM market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**AIM Nomad Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Nominated Advisers published by the London Stock Exchange;

“**AIM Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Companies published by the London Stock Exchange;

“**Approved Non-executive Director**” has the meaning given in clause 5.1(a);

“**Articles**” means the articles of association of the Company from time to time;

“**Associate**” means in relation to a person:

- (a) a person who is his associate and the question of whether a person is an associate of another shall be determined in accordance with:
  - (i) section 435 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (whether or not an associate as so defined); and
  - (ii) to the extent not covered by the Insolvency Act 1986, in the Listing Rules of the Financial Conduct Authority; and
- (b) any group undertaking (as defined in section 1161 of the Companies Act 2006) of that person;

“**Board**” means the board of directors of the Company as constituted from time to time;

“**Company’s Group**” means the Company and any other body corporate which is from time to time its subsidiary undertaking (as defined in section 1162 of the Act);

“**Company’s Nominated Adviser**” means the Nomad or such other nominated adviser as appointed by the Company from time to time;

“**Controlling Shareholder**” means any person who is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, six and a half per cent. (6.5%) of the issued share capital (not including any treasury shares of the Company), which for the avoidance of doubt, shall include voting shares, any non-voting shares capable of conversion into voting shares, or parallel non-voting ADSs capable of conversion into voting ADSs, if issued and as applicable, or otherwise entitled to appoint an Approved Non-executive Director;

“**Directors**” mean the directors of the Company from time to time and “**Director**” means any one of them;

“**Exempt Placement**” means an exempt placement of the Company’s securities in accordance with Regulation D under the Securities Act and/or Regulation S under the Securities Act;

“**Independent Directors**” means a Director who is determined by the then current Directors (excluding any Shareholder’s Related Directors, and having taken advice from the Company’s Nominated Adviser) to be independent in character and judgment from any Shareholder’s Group and in relation to whom the then current Directors determines that there are no relationships or circumstances which are likely to affect,

or could appear to affect, his judgment in relation to his role as a director of the Company;

“**London Stock Exchange**” means the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**Member of the Company’s Group**” means a person within the Company’s Group;

“**Member of the Shareholder’s Group**” means, in relation to a Shareholder, a person within that Shareholder’s Group;

“**NASDAQ**” means the NASDAQ Global Market or the NASDAQ Capital Market;

“**New Ordinary Shares**” has the meaning given in recital (A) of this agreement;

“**Ordinary Shares**” means ordinary shares of 0.1 pence each in the capital of the Company from time to time;

“**Securities Act**” means the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended;

“**Shareholder’s Group**” means, in relation to a Shareholder, that Shareholder and each of that Shareholder’s Associates from time to time;

“**Shareholder’s Related Directors**” means any Director who is also a director and/or employee of a company within the Shareholder’s Group, including any Approved Non-executive Director;

“**subsidiary undertaking**” and “**parent undertaking**” have the meanings given in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006;

“**Takeover Code**” means the UK City Code on Takeovers and Mergers as amended, supplemented or replaced from time to time;

“**Tranche 2**” means an anticipated placing of Ordinary Shares proposed to take place within 180 days of completion of Admission, consisting of the US IPO and any concurrent Exempt Placement;

“**Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares**” determined from time to time, means a number of Ordinary Shares equal to the lesser of (i) six and a half per cent. (6.5%) of the issued Ordinary Shares of the Company, and (ii) sixty per cent. (60%) of (a) the number of New Ordinary Shares the Shareholder is purchasing plus, (b) from and after the US IPO, the number of Ordinary Shares required to be purchased by the Shareholder in the US IPO to avoid forfeiture of the Shareholder’s Warrants under the terms and conditions of the Warrant Instrument;

“**US IPO**” means the proposed registration by the Company under the Securities Act of the ADSs to be issued in Tranche 2 and the listing of ADSs on NASDAQ;

“**Warrant**” means one warrant to purchase two-fifths (0.4) of an Ordinary Share; and

“**Warrant Instrument**” means the warrant instrument to be entered into in respect of the Warrants.

1.2 In this agreement:

(a) reference to:

(i) any statute or statutory provision includes a reference:

(A) to that statute or statutory provision as from time to time consolidated, modified, re-enacted (with or without modification) or replaced by any statute or statutory provision; and

(B) any subordinate legislation made under the relevant statutory provision,

except to the extent that any such consolidation, modification or re-enactment coming into force after the date of this agreement would increase or extend the liability of a party under this deed;

(ii) the singular includes the plural and vice versa and any gender includes other genders;

(iii) the “**introduction**” or to a “**clause**” is a reference to the Introduction or the relevant clause of or to this agreement;

(iv) a person includes all forms of legal entity including an individual, company, body corporate (wherever incorporated or carrying on business), unincorporated association, governmental entity and a partnership and, in relation to a party who is an individual, his legal personal representative(s); and

(v) “**this agreement**” includes this agreement as amended or supplemented from time to time;

(b) the words “**include**” and “**including**” are to be construed as being by way of illustration or emphasis only and are not to be construed so as to limit the generality of any words preceding them;

(c) the words “**other**” and “**otherwise**” are not to be construed as being limited by any words preceding them; and

(d) the headings to clauses are to be ignored in construing this agreement.

## 2. **Condition precedent and duration**

2.1 The obligations of the parties under this agreement will become unconditional upon Admission taking place.

2.2 The obligations and restrictions of the Shareholder pursuant to this agreement shall continue in full force and effect, in relation to a Shareholder, for so long as any Member of the Shareholder’s Group (whether individually or collectively) is a Controlling Shareholder. The rights and obligations of the parties under clauses 3,4,5 (other than 5.3(c)), 6 and 7.6 will automatically terminate in relation to any Shareholder upon:

(a) that Shareholder and each Member of the Shareholder’s Group (whether individually or collectively) ceasing to hold the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares; or

(b) the Ordinary Shares ceasing to be admitted to AIM.

2.3 This agreement shall terminate and be of no further force or effect (except for the confidentiality obligations in clause 7.2 and obligations under clause 5.3(c) with respect to information obtained prior to termination) upon the first date on which the Shareholders cease to have any rights or obligations under clauses 3, 4, 5 (other than 5.3(c)), 6, 7.6 and 13.

### 3. Conduct of transactions and relationships

- 3.1 The Shareholder undertakes to the Company and the Nomad that the Shareholder shall, and shall procure (so far as it is able to do so) that each of the Shareholder's Associates shall:
- (a) conduct all transactions, agreements and relationships (whether contractual or otherwise, but including, for the avoidance of doubt, any variations or amendments to any such transactions, agreements and relationships, or any decision to terminate, enforce, release or take any other action in relation to any such transactions, agreements and relationships) with any Member of the Company's Group on arm's length terms and on a normal commercial basis, including in accordance with the related party rules set out in the AIM Rules and any other applicable laws, regulations and stock exchange rules;
  - (b) exercise its voting rights and all other rights and powers so as to ensure that each Member of the Company's Group is at all times capable of carrying on its business and making decisions independently of the Shareholder's Group;
  - (c) not take any action or allow any omission to occur which prevents or restricts any Member of the Company's Group from carrying on its business for the benefit of its shareholders as a whole and independently of the Shareholder's Group;
  - (d) exercise its voting rights and all other rights and powers in such a manner so as to procure (to the extent possible by the exercise of such voting rights) that:
    - (i) there will always be a majority of Independent Directors on the Board and any committee of the Board;
    - (ii) no Approved Non-executive Director shall vote upon any matter involving an actual or potential conflict of interest between the Company and the Shareholder; and
    - (iii) where any matters involving an actual or potential conflict of interest between the Company and the Shareholder are to be discussed, one or more Independent Director shall be present;
  - (e) not exercise any of its voting or other rights and powers to procure any amendment to the Articles which would be inconsistent with this agreement;
  - (f) not propose any resolution of the shareholders of the Company for the cancellation of the Company's admission to trading on AIM, for the disapplication of any rights of pre-emption attaching to any shares in the capital of the Company or to vary or alter the share capital of the Company (but, subject to the remainder of this deed, nothing in this clause 3.1(f) shall preclude a Shareholder or the Shareholder's Associates from otherwise voting on any such resolution if proposed by the Company); and
  - (g) so far as it is within his control observe the provisions of this deed (as if they were a party to it as a Shareholder).
- 3.2 The Shareholder undertakes to the Nomad and the Company (and undertakes to procure that its Associates shall) abstain from voting at any general meeting in respect of any resolution concerning any contract, arrangement or transaction solely between the Company or any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group including, without limitation, any resolution required pursuant to

the AIM Rules for Companies including, but not limited to, any required by Rule 13 of the AIM Rules for Companies.

- 3.3 The Company shall (and shall exercise all powers vested in it to procure, that each other Member of the Company's Group shall) conduct all transactions, agreements and relationships (whether contractual or otherwise) with the Shareholder and any Member of the Shareholder's Group on arm's length terms and on a normal commercial basis and in accordance with the related party rules set out in the AIM Rules.
- 3.4 The Shareholder shall, to the extent that it is within its power to do so, procure that any Shareholder's Related Director shall not vote or participate in any discussion at any meeting of the Directors or part thereof, or receive any information with respect thereto in relation to any actual or proposed transaction, agreement or matter in respect of which any Member of the Shareholder's Group has any interest other than an interest as a shareholder of the Company in common with all other shareholders or in respect of which the Independent Directors (in their absolute discretion) consider that a conflict of interests exists between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group.
- 3.5 The Shareholder hereby expressly acknowledges that any Shareholder's Related Director will, as a Director of the Company, owe his fiduciary duties to the Company and that, where there is a conflict of interests between these fiduciary duties or the obligations of such Director under the AIM Rules or any other applicable laws or regulations and those the Shareholder's Related Director owes to the Shareholder, the fiduciary duties owed to the Company or the obligations under the AIM Rules or any other applicable laws or regulations respectively shall prevail.
- 3.6 In the event that any Shareholder or any of its Associates shall cease to be a Controlling Shareholder by virtue of a transfer of shares or through any other transaction or arrangement ("**Transaction**") and one of its Associates shall be or become a Controlling Shareholder ("**New Controlling Shareholder**") then, prior to any such Transaction taking effect, the Shareholder shall procure that the New Controlling Shareholder shall enter into a deed in a form acceptable to the Independent Directors to be bound by the provisions of this deed.

#### 4. **Takeover Code**

The Shareholder undertakes to the Company and the Nomad that he shall not, and shall, to the extent within his control, procure that no member of the Shareholder's Group nor any party acting in concert (as defined in the Takeover Code) with any of them without the prior consent of a majority of the Independent Directors:

- (a) acquire or offer to acquire shares in, or any other interest in, the relevant securities (as defined in the Takeover Code) of the Company or any other derivative or contract referenced thereto, where such acquisition would result in a mandatory takeover offer requirement arising pursuant to Rule 9 of the Takeover Code;
- (b) make an offer for all or any part of the share capital of the Company;
- (c) announce or take any action which, under the Takeover Code or otherwise, would require any takeover, merger, consolidation or share exchange or similar transaction involving securities of the Company; or
- (d) enter into an agreement relating to shares in or any other interest in the relevant securities (as defined in the Takeover Code) in the share capital of the

Company or any derivative or contract referenced thereto, for the express purpose of taking any of the action prevented by this clause 4.

## 5. **Approved Non-Executive Director**

### 5.1 Appointment

- (a) With effect from Admission, if and for so long as the Shareholder holds, in aggregate, interests in Ordinary Shares (assuming all the Warrants held by the Shareholder have been exercised) representing not less than the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares, subject to clause 5.1(b), the Company shall procure such person as may be designated (or otherwise approved) by the Shareholder (an “**Approved Non-executive Director**”) shall be appointed to hold office as a non-executive Director of the Company (and if any Approved Non-executive Director shall resign or otherwise cease to hold office as a Director, then the Company shall procure such other person (if any) as may be designated (or otherwise approved) by the Shareholder to act as a replacement Approved Non-executive Director shall be appointed to so hold office as a non-executive Director of the Company).
- (b) The identity of any proposed Approved Non-executive Director shall be discussed between the Company and the Shareholder. The appointment of the Approved Non-executive Director shall be subject to the approval of the Nominations Committee and the Board (which approvals shall not be withheld or delayed, save where the appointment of such Approved Non-executive Director would be unlawful or unreasonable having regard to the fiduciary obligations of the Directors and the regulatory obligations of the Company). For the avoidance of doubt, any nomination for appointment made by the Shareholders under this clause 5.1 shall be subject to the prior written approval of the Company’s Nominated Adviser (such approval not to be unreasonably delayed) and only to be refused by the Company’s Nominated Adviser if:
- (i) such appointment would thereby result in the Company no longer being appropriate for admission to trading on AIM; or
  - (ii) such proposed appointee is not a fit and proper person for appointment as a director of a Company listed on AIM; or
  - (iii) such appointment would thereby result in the Company’s Nominated Adviser not complying in full with any of its responsibilities under the AIM Nomad Rules including AR2 and/or OR4 of Schedule 3 of the AIM Nomad Rules

The Company’s Nominated Adviser will notify the Company of its approval or rejection of any nominee to the Board (with reasons for such rejection, where applicable) as soon as practicable following receipt of such nomination. In such circumstances a further nominee may then be put forward by the Shareholder.

- (c) The first Approved Non-executive Director, whose appointment is expected to be effective, subject to completion of customary appointment due diligence required by the AIM Nomad Rules, as from Admission (or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter) shall be Rishi Gupta.

### 5.2 Re-appointment and removal

- (a) If and for so long as the Shareholder holds, in aggregate, interests in Ordinary

Shares (assuming all the Warrants held by the Shareholder have been exercised) representing not less than the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares, and provided always that the obligations contained in clauses 5.2(a)(i) and 5.2(a)(ii) below would not be unlawful or unreasonable having regard to the fiduciary obligations of the Directors and the obligations of the Company under applicable laws, regulations and stock exchange rules:

- (i) the Company shall use reasonable endeavours to procure that, in respect of any Approved Non-executive Director appointed in accordance with clause 5.1, a resolution of the members of the Company is proposed at the next Annual General Meeting of the Company following the date of his/her appointment and also at each subsequent Annual General Meeting of the Company thereafter at which he/she stands for re-election;
- (ii) save with the written approval of the Shareholder, the Company shall procure that the Board shall not terminate the appointment of, or remove from office as a Director, any Approved Non-executive Director (other than by reason of any material breach of any duty or obligation owed by that Approved Non-executive Director to the Company or persistent breaches in any 24 month period or a material breach by the Approved Non-executive Director and/or Shareholder of the terms of this agreement); and
- (iii) if the Shareholder gives written notice to the Company retracting its designation (or other approval) of any person then holding office as an Approved Non-executive Director then the Company may, in its sole discretion acting after consultation with the Company's Nominated Adviser, either:
  - (A) then terminate the appointment of, and remove from office as a Director, such Approved Non-executive Director (and the Shareholder shall indemnify the Company for any sum payable to such person in consequence of the termination of such appointment up to an amount not exceeding the amount of fees as may be payable to such person in lieu of any entitlement to receive notice of termination under his terms of appointment (such period of notice not to exceed 3 months)); or
  - (B) elect to retain such person as a Director,

and in either case such person shall cease to be designated an Approved Non-executive Director and the Shareholder shall be entitled to designate (or otherwise approve) a replacement Approved Non-executive Director in accordance with clause 5.1(a).

### 5.3 Terms of appointment

- (a) For the avoidance of doubt, the designation (or approval) of an Approved Non-executive Director by the Shareholder shall not be construed as conferring any power or authority on such person to represent or act on behalf of the Shareholder (or any of its affiliates).
- (b) An Approved Non-executive Director shall owe fiduciary duties to the Company in his/her capacity as a Director. The Shareholder agrees that an Approved Non-executive Director shall not owe (and hereby waives) any duty or obligation (if any) to the Shareholder (or any of its affiliates) which conflicts with such Approved Non-executive Director's fiduciary obligations to the Company.

8

- 
- (c) An information-sharing protocol shall be established between the Company, the Shareholder and the Approved Non-executive Director in relation to the Approved Non-executive Director's authority to share certain information in relation to the Company with the Shareholder. The Shareholder acknowledges that certain information in relation to the Company that it receives may from time to time include inside information relating to the securities of the Company and that the Shareholder and/or the Approved Non-executive Director (and the persons the Shareholder and/or the Approved Non-executive Director have disclosed that information to directly or indirectly ("**disclosees**") may be insiders for the purposes of Part V of the Criminal Justice Act 1993 ("**CJA**") and section 118 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (as amended from time to time) ("**FSMA**") and the Market Abuse Regulation ("**MAR**"). The Shareholder and/or the Approved Non-executive Director shall bring to the attention of its disclosees the prohibitions on insider dealing and market abuse as set out in the CJA, FSMA and MAR respectively.
  - (d) The full terms of appointment of an Approved Non-executive Director shall be agreed in writing, between such person and the Company (each acting reasonably and in good faith) and in consultation with the Company's Nominated Adviser.

## 6. Procedure on conflict

- 6.1 The Shareholder shall (and shall exercise all powers vested in them to procure, so far as it is properly able, that each Associate shall) provide as soon as reasonably practicable to the Company any information in its (or any of its Associate's) possession or control which the Company reasonably requests for the purposes of ensuring that it is satisfied that all transactions and relationships between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group are at arm's length and on a normal commercial basis.
- 6.2 The Company and the Shareholder agree that any dispute between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group relating to any such existing or proposed transaction, arrangement or agreement between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group shall be resolved by a decision of the majority of the Independent Directors.
- 6.3 In event of conflict between the provisions of this agreement and the articles of association of the Company, the provisions of this agreement shall prevail as between the parties to this agreement to the extent permitted by applicable law and regulation.

## 7. Announcements and confidentiality

- 7.1 No party shall make (or in the case of the Company, permit any other Member of the Company's Group or in the case of a Shareholder, permit any of its Associates to make) any announcement or press release concerning the subject matter of this agreement, save as required under the AIM

Rules and in accordance with the AIM Nomad Rules or under the Listing Rules of the London Stock Exchange.

- 7.2 Save as required in connection with Admission, each party undertakes to the others that it shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that any information of a secret or confidential nature received by it from any other party (“**Confidential Information**”) shall be treated as confidential by it and its officers, employees, advisers, representatives and agents and shall not be disclosed to any third party.

- 7.3 Nothing in this clause prevents any announcement being made or any Confidential Information being disclosed:
- (a) with the written approval of the other parties, which in the case of any announcement shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed; or
  - (b) to the extent required by law or by the London Stock Exchange or any other competent regulatory body, but a party required to disclose any Confidential Information or make any announcement shall promptly notify the other parties where practicable and lawful to do so, before disclosure occurs and co-operate with the other parties regarding the timing and content of such disclosure or announcement or other action which the other parties may reasonably elect to take to challenge the validity of such requirement.
- 7.4 Nothing in this clause prevents disclosure of Confidential Information by any party:
- (a) to the extent that the information is in or comes into the public domain (which includes the summary of the terms of this agreement in the admission document to be published by the Company in connection with Admission) other than as a result of a breach of any undertaking or duty of confidentiality by that party;
  - (b) to that party's professional advisers, auditors or bankers, but before any disclosure to any such person, the relevant party shall procure that he is made aware of the terms of this clause and shall use its reasonable endeavours to procure that such person adheres to those terms as if he were bound by the provisions of this clause; or
  - (c) received in good faith by the recipient from a third party that is not knowingly used or disclosed to others by the recipient party in breach of this clause.
- 7.5 The Shareholder shall, and shall procure that each of its Associates shall, provide all reasonable cooperation and information which the Company may reasonably require and comply with all other requests which the Company may reasonably make in connection with any announcement which the Company is required to make pursuant to the AIM Rules as a result of any transaction or other relationship entered into between the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group.
- 7.6 The Shareholder acknowledges that all directors of the Company owe fiduciary duties to the Company and shall be obliged to act and vote on all matters pertaining to the Board in what they perceive to promote the success of the Company.

## **8. Capacity**

The Shareholder warrants and represents to the other parties that the Shareholder has the power to enter into this agreement and to exercise the Shareholder's rights and perform the Shareholder's obligations hereunder and all corporate and other action required to authorise the Shareholder's execution of this agreement and the Shareholder's performance of its obligations hereunder has been duly taken.

## **9. Notices and other communications**

- 9.1 Where this agreement provides for the giving of notice or the making of any other communication, such notice or communication shall not (unless otherwise expressly provided) be effective unless given or made in writing in accordance with the following provisions of this clause.

9.2 Any notice or communication to be given or made under or in connection with this agreement may be:

- (a) delivered or sent by post to the address of the relevant party as set out on the first page of this agreement (such addresses being referred to below as the “**Postal Address**” of the relevant party); or
- (b) sent by fax, email or other electronic communication to:

Shareholder	XXXX@orbimed.com
Company	XXXX@veronapharma.com XXXX@veronapharma.com
Nomad	XXXX@n1singer.com

9.3 Any notice or other communication so delivered or sent shall (subject to the provisions of clause 9.5(c)) be deemed to have been served when received except that if it is received between 5.30 p.m. on a Relevant Day and 9.00 a.m. on the next Relevant Day it shall be deemed to have been served at 9.00 a.m. on the second of such Relevant Days.

9.4 Where any party has given notice to another party of any different address or number to be used for the purposes of this clause then such different address or number shall be substituted for that shown above.

9.5 For the purposes of this clause:

- (a) “**Relevant Day**” means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or a day which is a public holiday at the Postal Address of the receiving party;
- (b) any reference to a time is to the time at the Postal Address of the receiving party;
- (c) reference to an electronic communication being received shall mean receipt at a server located in any office of the corporate body or partnership which receipt shall, notwithstanding the provisions of clause 9.3, and in the absence of evidence of earlier receipt, be deemed to have occurred 48 hours after sending; and
- (d) “**electronic communication**” has the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2000.

## 10. Remedies and waivers

- 10.1 The single or partial exercise of any right, power or remedy provided by law or under this agreement shall not preclude any other or further exercise of it or the exercise of any other right, power or remedy.
- 10.2 The rights, powers and remedies provided in this agreement are cumulative and not exclusive of any rights, powers and remedies provided by law.
- 10.3 In deciding whether to enforce this agreement against the Shareholder, the Company shall consult with the Company’s Nominated Adviser.

10.4 Without prejudice to any other rights and remedies which any party may have, each party acknowledges and agrees that damages would not be an adequate remedy for any breach by any party of this agreement and either party shall be entitled to seek the remedies of injunction, specific performance and other equitable relief (and neither of the parties shall contest the appropriateness or availability thereof), for any threatened or actual breach of any such provision of this agreement by any party and no proof of special damages shall be necessary for the enforcement by any party of the rights under this agreement.

**11. Invalidity**

If at any time any provision of this agreement is or becomes illegal, invalid or unenforceable in any respect under the law of any jurisdiction, that shall not affect or impair:

- (a) the legality, validity or enforceability in that jurisdiction of any other provision of this agreement; or
- (b) the legality, validity or enforceability under the law of any other jurisdiction of that or any other provision of this agreement.

**12. Entire agreement**

This agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties about the subject matter of this agreement and supersedes all earlier understandings and agreements between the parties and all earlier representations by any party about such subject matter.

**13. Additional Rights**

- 13.1 If Shareholder is not represented on the Board, Shareholder shall be entitled to consult with and advise management of the Company on significant business issues, including management's proposed annual operating plans, and management will meet with Shareholder regularly during each year at the Company's facilities at mutually agreeable times for such consultation and advice and to review progress in achieving said plans.
- 13.2 Shareholder may examine the books and records of the Company and inspect its facilities and may request information at reasonable times and intervals concerning the general status of the Company's financial condition and operations, provided that access to highly confidential proprietary information and facilities need not be provided.
- 13.3 If Shareholder is not represented on the Board, the Company shall, concurrently with delivery to the Board, give a representative of Shareholder copies of all notices, minutes, consents and other material that the Company provides to its directors, except that the representative may be excluded from access to any material or meeting or portion thereof if the Board determines in good faith, upon advice of counsel, that such exclusion is reasonably necessary to preserve the attorney-client privilege, to protect highly confidential proprietary information, or for other similar reasons. Upon reasonable notice and at a scheduled meeting of the Board or such other time, if any, as the Board may determine in its sole discretion, such representative may address the Board with respect to Investor's concerns regarding significant business issues facing the Company. The Shareholder acknowledges and agrees that it shall continue to be subject to the information-sharing obligation referenced in clause 5.3(c) during the period that this clause 13 remains in effect. The Shareholder shall bring to the attention

of its discloses the prohibitions on insider dealing and market abuse as set out in the CJA, FSMA and MAR respectively.

13.4 The provisions of this clause 13 will terminate and be of no further force or effect upon the earlier to occur of (i) the consummation of the sale of the Company's securities pursuant to a registration statement filed by the Company under the Securities Act, in connection with the firm commitment underwritten offering of its securities to the general public, or (ii) the date upon which Shareholder ceases to hold at least fifty per cent. (50%) of the New Ordinary Shares purchased by Shareholder in the fundraising referenced in recital (A) of this agreement.

**14. Miscellaneous**

14.1 Each party shall bear its own costs incurred in connection with this agreement.

14.2 This agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts each of which when executed and delivered is an original, but all the counterparts together constitute the same document.

14.3 This agreement may only be varied in writing signed by or on behalf of each of the parties.

**15. Governing law and jurisdiction**

15.1 This deed shall be governed by, and construed in all respects in accordance with English law.

15.2 The parties agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.

The parties to this deed have executed and delivered this deed as a deed on the date shown on the first page.

**EXECUTED by  
ORBIMED PRIVATE INVESTMENTS VI, LP**

By: OrbiMed Capital GP VI LLC,  
its General Partner

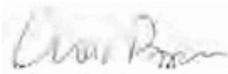
By: OrbiMed Advisors LLC,  
its Managing Member

By: /s/ Carl Gordon  
Name: Carl Gordon  
Title: Member

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
acting by a director  
in the presence of:

)  
)  
)   
) \_\_\_\_\_

(Witness signature)

  
\_\_\_\_\_

(Witness name)

CAROL BROWN  
\_\_\_\_\_

(Witness address)

5 NEW STREET SQUARE  
\_\_\_\_\_

(Witness occupation)

COMMERCIAL CLEANING  
\_\_\_\_\_

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP**  
acting by:

)  
)  
)   
\_\_\_\_\_  
Director, Corporate Finance

*Shawson*

Member

---

DATED

2016

**ABINGWORTH BIOVENTURES VI LP**

and

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

and

**NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP**

---

**RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT**

**relating to**

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

---

5 New Street Square | London EC4A 3TW  
Tel +44 (0)20 7300 7000  
Fax +44 (0)20 7300 7100  
DX 41 London  
[www.taylorwessing.com](http://www.taylorwessing.com)

**TaylorWessing**

---

## Index

Clause No.		Page No.
1.	Definitions and interpretation	1
2.	Condition precedent and duration	4
3.	Conduct of transactions and relationships	5
4.	Takeover Code	6
5.	Approved Non-Executive Director	7
6.	Procedure on conflict	9
7.	Announcements and confidentiality	9
8.	Capacity	10
9.	Notices and other communications	10
10.	Remedies and waivers	11
11.	Invalidity	12
12.	Entire agreement	12
13.	Additional Rights	12
14.	Miscellaneous	13
15.	Governing law and jurisdiction	13

---

**BETWEEN**

- (1) **ABINGWORTH BIOVENTURES VI LP** (a limited partnership registered in England and Wales with number LP015017) whose registered office is at Princes House, 38 Jermyn Street, London, SW1Y 6DN acting by its manager Abingworth LLP (the “**Shareholder**”);
- (2) **VERONA PHARMA PLC** (registered in England with company number 05375156) whose registered office is at One, Central Square, Cardiff CF10 1FS (the “**Company**”); and
- (3) **NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP** (registered in England with number OC364131), whose registered office is at One Bartholomew Lane, London, EC2N 2AX (the “**Nomad**”).

**INTRODUCTION**

- (A) The Company intends to undertake a fundraising whereby securities of the Company (the “**Units**”) will be offered for subscription, with each Unit consisting of (i) one new Ordinary Share (“**New Ordinary Shares**”); and (ii) one Warrant. The New Ordinary Shares are proposed to be admitted to trading on the AIM market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc and Ordinary Shares arising from exercise of Warrants will also be admitted to trading in due course.
- (B) The Shareholder will, on Admission be the beneficial owners of, in aggregate, approximately 6.6 per cent. (6.6%) of the total number of votes capable of being cast on a poll at general meetings of the Company (assuming all the Warrants are exercised).
- (C) The Shareholder and the Company wish to regulate the relationship between them to ensure that:
  - (a) all transactions, agreements, relationships and arrangements entered into between the Shareholder’s Group and the Company’s Group will only be made on an arm’s length basis and on normal commercial terms; and
  - (b) with effect from Admission, the Company will be capable at all times of carrying on its business independently of the Shareholder’s Group.

**AGREED TERMS**

**1. Definitions and interpretation**

- 1.1 In this deed (including the introduction) the following words and expressions have the following meanings, except as otherwise provided or where the context otherwise requires:

“**Act**” means the Companies Act 2006;

---

“**Admission**” means the admission of the New Ordinary Shares to trading on AIM becoming effective in accordance with the AIM Rules;

“**ADSs**” means American Depository Shares;

“**AIM**” means the AIM market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**AIM Nomad Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Nominated Advisers published by the London Stock Exchange;

“**AIM Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Companies published by the London Stock Exchange;

“**Approved Non-executive Director**” has the meaning given in clause 5.1(a);

“**Articles**” means the articles of association of the Company from time to time;

“**Associate**” means in relation to a person:

- (a) a person who is his associate and the question of whether a person is an associate of another shall be determined in accordance with:
  - (i) section 435 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (whether or not an associate as so defined); and
  - (ii) to the extent not covered by the Insolvency Act 1986, in the Listing Rules of the Financial Conduct Authority; and
- (b) any group undertaking (as defined in section 1161 of the Companies Act 2006) of that person;

“**Board**” means the board of directors of the Company as constituted from time to time;

“**Company’s Group**” means the Company and any other body corporate which is from time to time its subsidiary undertaking (as defined in section 1162 of the Act);

“**Company’s Nominated Adviser**” means the Nomad or such other nominated adviser as appointed by the Company from time to time;

“**Controlling Shareholder**” means any person who is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, six and a half per cent. (6.5%) of the issued share capital (not including any treasury shares of the Company), which for the avoidance of doubt, shall include voting shares, any non-voting shares capable of conversion into voting shares, or parallel non-voting ADSs capable of conversion into voting ADSs, if issued and as applicable, or otherwise entitled to appoint an Approved Non-executive Director;

“**Directors**” mean the directors of the Company from time to time and “**Director**” means any one of them;

“**Exempt Placement**” means an exempt placement of the Company’s securities in accordance with Regulation D under the Securities Act and/or Regulation S under the Securities Act;

“**Independent Directors**” means a Director who is determined by the then current Directors (excluding any Shareholder’s Related Directors, and having taken advice from the Company’s Nominated Adviser) to be independent in character and judgment from any Shareholder’s Group and in relation to whom the then current Directors determines that there are no relationships or circumstances which are likely to affect,

or could appear to affect, his judgment in relation to his role as a director of the Company;

“**London Stock Exchange**” means the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**Member of the Company’s Group**” means a person within the Company’s Group;

“**Member of the Shareholder’s Group**” means, in relation to a Shareholder, a person within that Shareholder’s Group;

“**NASDAQ**” means the NASDAQ Global Market or the NASDAQ Capital Market;

“**New Ordinary Shares**” has the meaning given in recital (A) of this agreement;

“**Ordinary Shares**” means ordinary shares of 0.1 pence each in the capital of the Company from time to time;

“**Securities Act**” means the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended;

“**Shareholder’s Group**” means, in relation to a Shareholder, that Shareholder and each of that Shareholder’s Associates from time to time;

“**Shareholder’s Related Directors**” means any Director who is also a director and/or employee of a company within the Shareholder’s Group, including any Approved Non-executive Director;

“**subsidiary undertaking**” and “**parent undertaking**” have the meanings given in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006;

“**Takeover Code**” means the UK City Code on Takeovers and Mergers as amended, supplemented or replaced from time to time;

“**Tranche 2**” means an anticipated placing of Ordinary Shares proposed to take place within 180 days of completion of Admission, consisting of the US IPO and any concurrent Exempt Placement;

“**Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares**” determined from time to time, means a number of Ordinary Shares equal to the lesser of (i) six and a half per cent. (6.5%) of the issued Ordinary Shares of the Company, and (ii) sixty per cent. (60%) of (a) the number of New Ordinary Shares the Shareholder is purchasing plus, (b) from and after the US IPO, the number of Ordinary Shares required to be purchased by the Shareholder in the US IPO to avoid forfeiture of the Shareholder’s Warrants under the terms and conditions of the Warrant Instrument;

“**US IPO**” means the proposed registration by the Company under the Securities Act of the ADSs to be issued in Tranche 2 and the listing of ADSs on NASDAQ;

“**Warrant**” means one warrant to purchase two-fifths (0.4) of an Ordinary Share; and

“**Warrant Instrument**” means the warrant instrument to be entered into in respect of the Warrants.

1.2 In this agreement:

(a) reference to:

(i) any statute or statutory provision includes a reference:

(A) to that statute or statutory provision as from time to time consolidated, modified, re-enacted (with or without modification) or replaced by any statute or statutory provision; and

(B) any subordinate legislation made under the relevant statutory provision,

except to the extent that any such consolidation, modification or re-enactment coming into force after the date of this agreement would increase or extend the liability of a party under this deed;

(ii) the singular includes the plural and vice versa and any gender includes other genders;

(iii) the “**introduction**” or to a “**clause**” is a reference to the Introduction or the relevant clause of or to this agreement;

(iv) a person includes all forms of legal entity including an individual, company, body corporate (wherever incorporated or carrying on business), unincorporated association, governmental entity and a partnership and, in relation to a party who is an individual, his legal personal representative(s); and

(v) “**this agreement**” includes this agreement as amended or supplemented from time to time;

(b) the words “**include**” and “**including**” are to be construed as being by way of illustration or emphasis only and are not to be construed so as to limit the generality of any words preceding them;

(c) the words “**other**” and “**otherwise**” are not to be construed as being limited by any words preceding them; and

(d) the headings to clauses are to be ignored in construing this agreement.

## 2. **Condition precedent and duration**

2.1 The obligations of the parties under this agreement will become unconditional upon Admission taking place.

2.2 The obligations and restrictions of the Shareholder pursuant to this agreement shall continue in full force and effect, in relation to a Shareholder, for so long as any Member of the Shareholder’s Group (whether individually or collectively) is a Controlling Shareholder. The rights and obligations of the parties under clauses 3,4,5 (other than 5.3(c)), 6 and 7.6 will automatically terminate in relation to any Shareholder upon:

(a) that Shareholder and each Member of the Shareholder’s Group (whether individually or collectively) ceasing to hold the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares; or

(b) the Ordinary Shares ceasing to be admitted to AIM.

2.3 This agreement shall terminate and be of no further force or effect (except for the confidentiality obligations in clause 7.2 and obligations under clause 5.3(c) with respect to information obtained prior to termination) upon the first date on which the Shareholders cease to have any rights or obligations under clauses 3, 4, 5 (other than 5.3(c)), 6, 7.6 and 13.

### 3. Conduct of transactions and relationships

- 3.1 The Shareholder undertakes to the Company and the Nomad that the Shareholder shall, and shall procure (so far as it is able to do so) that each of the Shareholder's Associates shall:
- (a) conduct all transactions, agreements and relationships (whether contractual or otherwise, but including, for the avoidance of doubt, any variations or amendments to any such transactions, agreements and relationships, or any decision to terminate, enforce, release or take any other action in relation to any such transactions, agreements and relationships) with any Member of the Company's Group on arm's length terms and on a normal commercial basis, including in accordance with the related party rules set out in the AIM Rules and any other applicable laws, regulations and stock exchange rules;
  - (b) exercise its voting rights and all other rights and powers so as to ensure that each Member of the Company's Group is at all times capable of carrying on its business and making decisions independently of the Shareholder's Group;
  - (c) not take any action or allow any omission to occur which prevents or restricts any Member of the Company's Group from carrying on its business for the benefit of its shareholders as a whole and independently of the Shareholder's Group;
  - (d) exercise its voting rights and all other rights and powers in such a manner so as to procure (to the extent possible by the exercise of such voting rights) that:
    - (i) there will always be a majority of Independent Directors on the Board and any committee of the Board;
    - (ii) no Approved Non-executive Director shall vote upon any matter involving an actual or potential conflict of interest between the Company and the Shareholder; and
    - (iii) where any matters involving an actual or potential conflict of interest between the Company and the Shareholder are to be discussed, one or more Independent Director shall be present;
  - (e) not exercise any of its voting or other rights and powers to procure any amendment to the Articles which would be inconsistent with this agreement;
  - (f) not propose any resolution of the shareholders of the Company for the cancellation of the Company's admission to trading on AIM, for the disapplication of any rights of pre-emption attaching to any shares in the capital of the Company or to vary or alter the share capital of the Company (but, subject to the remainder of this deed, nothing in this clause 3.1(f) shall preclude a Shareholder or the Shareholder's Associates from otherwise voting on any such resolution if proposed by the Company); and
  - (g) so far as it is within his control observe the provisions of this deed (as if they were a party to it as a Shareholder).
- 3.2 The Shareholder undertakes to the Nomad and the Company (and undertakes to procure that its Associates shall) abstain from voting at any general meeting in respect of any resolution concerning any contract, arrangement or transaction solely between the Company or any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group including, without limitation, any resolution required pursuant to

the AIM Rules for Companies including, but not limited to, any required by Rule 13 of the AIM Rules for Companies.

- 3.3 The Company shall (and shall exercise all powers vested in it to procure, that each other Member of the Company's Group shall) conduct all transactions, agreements and relationships (whether contractual or otherwise) with the Shareholder and any Member of the Shareholder's Group on arm's length terms and on a normal commercial basis and in accordance with the related party rules set out in the AIM Rules.
- 3.4 The Shareholder shall, to the extent that it is within its power to do so, procure that any Shareholder's Related Director shall not vote or participate in any discussion at any meeting of the Directors or part thereof, or receive any information with respect thereto in relation to any actual or proposed transaction, agreement or matter in respect of which any Member of the Shareholder's Group has any interest other than an interest as a shareholder of the Company in common with all other shareholders or in respect of which the Independent Directors (in their absolute discretion) consider that a conflict of interests exists between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group.
- 3.5 The Shareholder hereby expressly acknowledges that any Shareholder's Related Director will, as a Director of the Company, owe his fiduciary duties to the Company and that, where there is a conflict of interests between these fiduciary duties or the obligations of such Director under the AIM Rules or any other applicable laws or regulations and those the Shareholder's Related Director owes to the Shareholder, the fiduciary duties owed to the Company or the obligations under the AIM Rules or any other applicable laws or regulations respectively shall prevail.
- 3.6 In the event that any Shareholder or any of its Associates shall cease to be a Controlling Shareholder by virtue of a transfer of shares or through any other transaction or arrangement ("**Transaction**") and one of its Associates shall be or become a Controlling Shareholder ("**New Controlling Shareholder**") then, prior to any such Transaction taking effect, the Shareholder shall procure that the New Controlling Shareholder shall enter into a deed in a form acceptable to the Independent Directors to be bound by the provisions of this deed.

#### 4. **Takeover Code**

The Shareholder undertakes to the Company and the Nomad that he shall not, and shall, to the extent within his control, procure that no member of the Shareholder's Group nor any party acting in concert (as defined in the Takeover Code) with any of them without the prior consent of a majority of the Independent Directors:

- (a) acquire or offer to acquire shares in, or any other interest in, the relevant securities (as defined in the Takeover Code) of the Company or any other derivative or contract referenced thereto, where such acquisition would result in a mandatory takeover offer requirement arising pursuant to Rule 9 of the Takeover Code;
- (b) make an offer for all or any part of the share capital of the Company;
- (c) announce or take any action which, under the Takeover Code or otherwise, would require any takeover, merger, consolidation or share exchange or similar transaction involving securities of the Company; or
- (d) enter into an agreement relating to shares in or any other interest in the relevant securities (as defined in the Takeover Code) in the share capital of the

Company or any derivative or contract referenced thereto, for the express purpose of taking any of the action prevented by this clause 4.

## 5. **Approved Non-Executive Director**

### 5.1 Appointment

- (a) With effect from Admission, if and for so long as the Shareholder holds, in aggregate, interests in Ordinary Shares (assuming all the Warrants held by the Shareholder have been exercised) representing not less than the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares, subject to clause 5.1(b), the Company shall procure such person as may be designated (or otherwise approved) by the Shareholder (an “**Approved Non-executive Director**”) shall be appointed to hold office as a non-executive Director of the Company (and if any Approved Non-executive Director shall resign or otherwise cease to hold office as a Director, then the Company shall procure such other person (if any) as may be designated (or otherwise approved) by the Shareholder to act as a replacement Approved Non-executive Director shall be appointed to so hold office as a non-executive Director of the Company).
- (b) The identity of any proposed Approved Non-executive Director shall be discussed between the Company and the Shareholder. The appointment of the Approved Non-executive Director shall be subject to the approval of the Nominations Committee and the Board (which approvals shall not be withheld or delayed, save where the appointment of such Approved Non-executive Director would be unlawful or unreasonable having regard to the fiduciary obligations of the Directors and the regulatory obligations of the Company). For the avoidance of doubt, any nomination for appointment made by the Shareholders under this clause 5.1 shall be subject to the prior written approval of the Company’s Nominated Adviser (such approval not to be unreasonably delayed) and only to be refused by the Company’s Nominated Adviser if:
- (i) such appointment would thereby result in the Company no longer being appropriate for admission to trading on AIM; or
  - (ii) such proposed appointee is not a fit and proper person for appointment as a director of a Company listed on AIM; or
  - (iii) such appointment would thereby result in the Company’s Nominated Adviser not complying in full with any of its responsibilities under the AIM Nomad Rules including AR2 and/or OR4 of Schedule 3 of the AIM Nomad Rules

The Company’s Nominated Adviser will notify the Company of its approval or rejection of any nominee to the Board (with reasons for such rejection, where applicable) as soon as practicable following receipt of such nomination. In such circumstances a further nominee may then be put forward by the Shareholder.

- (c) The first Approved Non-executive Director, whose appointment is expected to be effective, subject to completion of customary appointment due diligence required by the AIM Nomad Rules, as from Admission (or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter) shall be Andrew Sinclair.

### 5.2 Re-appointment and removal

- (a) If and for so long as the Shareholder holds, in aggregate, interests in Ordinary

Shares (assuming all the Warrants held by the Shareholder have been exercised) representing not less than the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares, and provided always that the obligations contained in clauses 5.2(a)(i) and 5.2(a)(ii) below would not be unlawful or unreasonable having regard to the fiduciary obligations of the Directors and the obligations of the Company under applicable laws, regulations and stock exchange rules:

- (i) the Company shall use reasonable endeavours to procure that, in respect of any Approved Non-executive Director appointed in accordance with clause 5.1, a resolution of the members of the Company is proposed at the next Annual General Meeting of the Company following the date of his/her appointment and also at each subsequent Annual General Meeting of the Company thereafter at which he/she stands for re-election;
- (ii) save with the written approval of the Shareholder, the Company shall procure that the Board shall not terminate the appointment of, or remove from office as a Director, any Approved Non-executive Director (other than by reason of any material breach of any duty or obligation owed by that Approved Non-executive Director to the Company or persistent breaches in any 24 month period or a material breach by the Approved Non-executive Director and/or Shareholder of the terms of this agreement); and
- (iii) if the Shareholder gives written notice to the Company retracting its designation (or other approval) of any person then holding office as an Approved Non-executive Director then the Company may, in its sole discretion acting after consultation with the Company's Nominated Adviser, either:
  - (A) then terminate the appointment of, and remove from office as a Director, such Approved Non-executive Director (and the Shareholder shall indemnify the Company for any sum payable to such person in consequence of the termination of such appointment up to an amount not exceeding the amount of fees as may be payable to such person in lieu of any entitlement to receive notice of termination under his terms of appointment (such period of notice not to exceed 3 months)); or
  - (B) elect to retain such person as a Director,

and in either case such person shall cease to be designated an Approved Non-executive Director and the Shareholder shall be entitled to designate (or otherwise approve) a replacement Approved Non-executive Director in accordance with clause 5.1(a).

### 5.3 Terms of appointment

- (a) For the avoidance of doubt, the designation (or approval) of an Approved Non-executive Director by the Shareholder shall not be construed as conferring any power or authority on such person to represent or act on behalf of the Shareholder (or any of its affiliates).
- (b) An Approved Non-executive Director shall owe fiduciary duties to the Company in his/her capacity as a Director. The Shareholder agrees that an Approved Non-executive Director shall not owe (and hereby waives) any duty or obligation (if any) to the Shareholder (or any of its affiliates) which conflicts with such Approved Non-executive Director's fiduciary obligations to the Company.

8

- 
- (c) An information-sharing protocol shall be established between the Company, the Shareholder and the Approved Non-executive Director in relation to the Approved Non-executive Director's authority to share certain information in relation to the Company with the Shareholder. The Shareholder acknowledges that certain information in relation to the Company that it receives may from time to time include inside information relating to the securities of the Company and that the Shareholder and/or the Approved Non-executive Director (and the persons the Shareholder and/or the Approved Non-executive Director have disclosed that information to directly or indirectly ("**disclosees**") may be insiders for the purposes of Part V of the Criminal Justice Act 1993 ("**CJA**") and section 118 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (as amended from time to time) ("**FSMA**") and the Market Abuse Regulation ("**MAR**"). The Shareholder and/or the Approved Non-executive Director shall bring to the attention of its disclosees the prohibitions on insider dealing and market abuse as set out in the CJA, FSMA and MAR respectively.
  - (d) The full terms of appointment of an Approved Non-executive Director shall be agreed in writing, between such person and the Company (each acting reasonably and in good faith) and in consultation with the Company's Nominated Adviser.

## 6. Procedure on conflict

- 6.1 The Shareholder shall (and shall exercise all powers vested in them to procure, so far as it is properly able, that each Associate shall) provide as soon as reasonably practicable to the Company any information in its (or any of its Associate's) possession or control which the Company reasonably requests for the purposes of ensuring that it is satisfied that all transactions and relationships between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group are at arm's length and on a normal commercial basis.
- 6.2 The Company and the Shareholder agree that any dispute between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group relating to any such existing or proposed transaction, arrangement or agreement between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group shall be resolved by a decision of the majority of the Independent Directors.
- 6.3 In event of conflict between the provisions of this agreement and the articles of association of the Company, the provisions of this agreement shall prevail as between the parties to this agreement to the extent permitted by applicable law and regulation.

## 7. Announcements and confidentiality

- 7.1 No party shall make (or in the case of the Company, permit any other Member of the Company's Group or in the case of a Shareholder, permit any of its Associates to make) any announcement or press release concerning the subject matter of this agreement, save as required under the AIM

Rules and in accordance with the AIM Nomad Rules or under the Listing Rules of the London Stock Exchange.

- 7.2 Save as required in connection with Admission, each party undertakes to the others that it shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that any information of a secret or confidential nature received by it from any other party (“**Confidential Information**”) shall be treated as confidential by it and its officers, employees, advisers, representatives and agents and shall not be disclosed to any third party.

- 7.3 Nothing in this clause prevents any announcement being made or any Confidential Information being disclosed:
- (a) with the written approval of the other parties, which in the case of any announcement shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed; or
  - (b) to the extent required by law or by the London Stock Exchange or any other competent regulatory body, but a party required to disclose any Confidential Information or make any announcement shall promptly notify the other parties where practicable and lawful to do so, before disclosure occurs and co-operate with the other parties regarding the timing and content of such disclosure or announcement or other action which the other parties may reasonably elect to take to challenge the validity of such requirement.
- 7.4 Nothing in this clause prevents disclosure of Confidential Information by any party:
- (a) to the extent that the information is in or comes into the public domain (which includes the summary of the terms of this agreement in the admission document to be published by the Company in connection with Admission) other than as a result of a breach of any undertaking or duty of confidentiality by that party;
  - (b) to that party's professional advisers, auditors or bankers, but before any disclosure to any such person, the relevant party shall procure that he is made aware of the terms of this clause and shall use its reasonable endeavours to procure that such person adheres to those terms as if he were bound by the provisions of this clause; or
  - (c) received in good faith by the recipient from a third party that is not knowingly used or disclosed to others by the recipient party in breach of this clause.
- 7.5 The Shareholder shall, and shall procure that each of its Associates shall, provide all reasonable cooperation and information which the Company may reasonably require and comply with all other requests which the Company may reasonably make in connection with any announcement which the Company is required to make pursuant to the AIM Rules as a result of any transaction or other relationship entered into between the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group.
- 7.6 The Shareholder acknowledges that all directors of the Company owe fiduciary duties to the Company and shall be obliged to act and vote on all matters pertaining to the Board in what they perceive to promote the success of the Company.

## **8. Capacity**

The Shareholder warrants and represents to the other parties that the Shareholder has the power to enter into this agreement and to exercise the Shareholder's rights and perform the Shareholder's obligations hereunder and all corporate and other action required to authorise the Shareholder's execution of this agreement and the Shareholder's performance of its obligations hereunder has been duly taken.

## **9. Notices and other communications**

- 9.1 Where this agreement provides for the giving of notice or the making of any other communication, such notice or communication shall not (unless otherwise expressly provided) be effective unless given or made in writing in accordance with the following provisions of this clause.

9.2 Any notice or communication to be given or made under or in connection with this agreement may be:

(a) delivered or sent by post to the address of the relevant party as set out on the first page of this agreement (such addresses being referred to below as the “**Postal Address**” of the relevant party); or

(b) sent by fax, email or other electronic communication to:

Shareholder legal@abingworth.com

Company XXXX@veronapharma.com  
XXXX@veronapharma.com

Nomad XXXX@n1singer.com

9.3 Any notice or other communication so delivered or sent shall (subject to the provisions of clause 9.5(c)) be deemed to have been served when received except that if it is received between 5.30 p.m. on a Relevant Day and 9.00 a.m. on the next Relevant Day it shall be deemed to have been served at 9.00 a.m. on the second of such Relevant Days.

9.4 Where any party has given notice to another party of any different address or number to be used for the purposes of this clause then such different address or number shall be substituted for that shown above.

9.5 For the purposes of this clause:

(a) “**Relevant Day**” means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or a day which is a public holiday at the Postal Address of the receiving party;

(b) any reference to a time is to the time at the Postal Address of the receiving party;

(c) reference to an electronic communication being received shall mean receipt at a server located in any office of the corporate body or partnership which receipt shall, notwithstanding the provisions of clause 9.3, and in the absence of evidence of earlier receipt, be deemed to have occurred 48 hours after sending; and

(d) “**electronic communication**” has the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2000.

## 10. Remedies and waivers

10.1 The single or partial exercise of any right, power or remedy provided by law or under this agreement shall not preclude any other or further exercise of it or the exercise of any other right, power or remedy.

10.2 The rights, powers and remedies provided in this agreement are cumulative and not exclusive of any rights, powers and remedies provided by law.

10.3 In deciding whether to enforce this agreement against the Shareholder, the Company shall consult with the Company’s Nominated Adviser.

10.4 Without prejudice to any other rights and remedies which any party may have, each party acknowledges and agrees that damages would not be an adequate remedy for any breach by any party of this agreement and either party shall be entitled to seek the remedies of injunction, specific performance and other equitable relief (and neither of the parties shall contest the appropriateness or availability thereof), for any threatened or actual breach of any such provision of this agreement by any party and no proof of special damages shall be necessary for the enforcement by any party of the rights under this agreement.

**11. Invalidity**

If at any time any provision of this agreement is or becomes illegal, invalid or unenforceable in any respect under the law of any jurisdiction, that shall not affect or impair:

- (a) the legality, validity or enforceability in that jurisdiction of any other provision of this agreement; or
- (b) the legality, validity or enforceability under the law of any other jurisdiction of that or any other provision of this agreement.

**12. Entire agreement**

This agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties about the subject matter of this agreement and supersedes all earlier understandings and agreements between the parties and all earlier representations by any party about such subject matter.

**13. Additional Rights**

- 13.1 If Shareholder is not represented on the Board, Shareholder shall be entitled to consult with and advise management of the Company on significant business issues, including management's proposed annual operating plans, and management will meet with Shareholder regularly during each year at the Company's facilities at mutually agreeable times for such consultation and advice and to review progress in achieving said plans.
- 13.2 Shareholder may examine the books and records of the Company and inspect its facilities and may request information at reasonable times and intervals concerning the general status of the Company's financial condition and operations, provided that access to highly confidential proprietary information and facilities need not be provided.
- 13.3 If Shareholder is not represented on the Board, the Company shall, concurrently with delivery to the Board, give a representative of Shareholder copies of all notices, minutes, consents and other material that the Company provides to its directors, except that the representative may be excluded from access to any material or meeting or portion thereof if the Board determines in good faith, upon advice of counsel, that such exclusion is reasonably necessary to preserve the attorney-client privilege, to protect highly confidential proprietary information, or for other similar reasons. Upon reasonable notice and at a scheduled meeting of the Board or such other time, if any, as the Board may determine in its sole discretion, such representative may address the Board with respect to Investor's concerns regarding significant business issues facing the Company. The Shareholder acknowledges and agrees that it shall continue to be subject to the information-sharing obligation referenced in clause 5.3(c) during the period that this clause 13 remains in effect. The Shareholder shall bring to the attention

of its discloses the prohibitions on insider dealing and market abuse as set out in the CJA, FSMA and MAR respectively.

13.4 The provisions of this clause 13 will terminate and be of no further force or effect upon the earlier to occur of (i) the consummation of the sale of the Company's securities pursuant to a registration statement filed by the Company under the Securities Act, in connection with the firm commitment underwritten offering of its securities to the general public, or (ii) the date upon which Shareholder ceases to hold at least fifty per cent. (50%) of the New Ordinary Shares purchased by Shareholder in the fundraising referenced in recital (A) of this agreement.

**14. Miscellaneous**

14.1 Each party shall bear its own costs incurred in connection with this agreement.

14.2 This agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts each of which when executed and delivered is an original, but all the counterparts together constitute the same document.

14.3 This agreement may only be varied in writing signed by or on behalf of each of the parties.

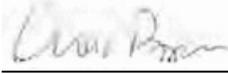
**15. Governing law and jurisdiction**

15.1 This deed shall be governed by, and construed in all respects in accordance with English law.

15.2 The parties agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.

The parties to this deed have executed and delivered this deed as a deed on the date shown on the first page.

<b>EXECUTED</b> as a deed by	)	
<b>ABINGWORTH BIOVENTURES VI LP</b>	)	
acting by its manager Abingworth LLP	)	
in the presence of:	)	<u>/s/ James Abell</u> James Abell, Partner
(Witness signature)		<u>/s/ John Heard</u>
(Witness name)		<u>John Heard</u>
(Witness address)		<u>94A Banbury Rd</u> <u>Oxford, OX2 6JT</u>
(Witness occupation)		<u>Solicitor</u>

<b>EXECUTED</b> as a deed by	)	
<b>VERONA PHARMA PLC</b>	)	
acting by a director	)	
in the presence of:	)	
(Witness signature)		<u></u>
(Witness name)		<u>EMMA BROWN</u>
(Witness address)		<u>5 NEW STREET SQUARE</u> <u>LOMBARD, EC4A 3DW</u>
(Witness occupation)		<u>TRADING ASSISTANT</u>

<b>EXECUTED</b> as a deed by	)	
<b>NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP</b>	)	
acting by:	)	
		<u></u> Director, Corporate Finance

Shawson

Member

---

DATED

2016

**VIVO VENTURES FUND VII, L.P.**

and

**VIVO VENTURES VII AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.**

and

**VIVO VENTURES FUND VI, L.P.**

and

**VIVO VENTURES VI AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.**

and

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

and

**NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP**

---

**RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT**

**relating to**

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

---

5 New Street Square | London EC4A 3TW  
Tel +44 (0)20 7300 7000  
Fax +44 (0)20 7300 7100  
DX 41 London  
www.taylorwessing.com

**TaylorWessing**

---

## Index

<b>Clause No.</b>		<b>Page No.</b>
1.	Definitions and interpretation	2
2.	Condition precedent and duration	4
3.	Conduct of transactions and relationships	5
4.	Takeover Code	6
5.	Approved Non-Executive Director	7
6.	Procedure on conflict	9
7.	Announcements and confidentiality	10
8.	Capacity	11
9.	Notices and other communications	11
10.	Remedies and waivers	11
11.	Invalidity	12
12.	Entire agreement	12
13.	Additional Rights	12
14.	Miscellaneous	13
15.	Governing law and jurisdiction	13

---

**BETWEEN**

- (1) **VIVO VENTURES FUND VII, L.P.** (a Delaware limited liability company) whose registered office is at 575 High Street, Suite 201, Palo Alto, CA 94310, United States of America, acting by its general partner Vivo Ventures VII, LLC (the “**Vivo I**”);
  - (2) **VIVO VENTURES VII AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.** (a Delaware limited liability company) whose registered office is at 575 High Street, Suite 201, Palo Alto, CA 94310, United States of America, acting by its general partner Vivo Ventures VII, LLC (the “**Vivo II**”);
  - (3) **VIVO VENTURES FUND VI, L.P.** (a Delaware limited liability company) whose registered office is at 575 High Street, Suite 201, Palo Alto, CA 94310, United States of America, acting by its general partner Vivo Ventures VII, LLC (the “**Vivo III**”);
  - (4) **VIVO VENTURES FUND VI AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.** (a Delaware limited liability company) whose registered office is at 575 High Street, Suite 201, Palo Alto, CA 94310, United States of America, acting by its general partner Vivo Ventures VII, LLC (the “**Vivo IV**”);
- (Vivo I, Vivo II, Vivo III and Vivo IV, collectively the “**Shareholders**” and each a “**Shareholder**”);
- (5) **VERONA PHARMA PLC** (registered in England with company number 05375156) whose registered office is at One, Central Square, Cardiff CF10 1FS (the “**Company**”); and
  - (6) **NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP** (registered in England with number OC364131), whose registered office is at One Bartholomew Lane, London, EC2N 2AX (the “**Nomad**”).

**INTRODUCTION**

- (A) The Company intends to undertake a fundraising whereby securities of the Company (the “**Units**”) will be offered for subscription, with each Unit consisting of (i) one new Ordinary Share (“**New Ordinary Shares**”); and (ii) one Warrant. The New Ordinary Shares are proposed to be admitted to trading on the AIM market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc and Ordinary Shares arising from exercise of Warrants will also be admitted to trading in due course.
  - (B) The Shareholders will, on Admission be the beneficial owners of, in aggregate, approximately 11.8% per cent. (11.8 %) of the total number of votes capable of being cast on a poll at general meetings of the Company (assuming all the Warrants are exercised).
  - (C) The Shareholders and the Company wish to regulate the relationship between them to ensure that:
    - (a) all transactions, agreements, relationships and arrangements entered into between the Shareholder’s Group and the Company’s Group will only be made on an arm’s length basis and on normal commercial terms; and
-

(b) with effect from Admission, the Company will be capable at all times of carrying on its business independently of the Shareholder's Group.

## AGREED TERMS

### 1. Definitions and interpretation

1.1 In this deed (including the introduction) the following words and expressions have the following meanings, except as otherwise provided or where the context otherwise requires:

“**Act**” means the Companies Act 2006;

“**Admission**” means the admission of the New Ordinary Shares to trading on AIM becoming effective in accordance with the AIM Rules;

“**ADSs**” means American Depository Shares;

“**AIM**” means the AIM market operated by the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**AIM Nomad Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Nominated Advisers published by the London Stock Exchange;

“**AIM Rules**” means the AIM Rules for Companies published by the London Stock Exchange;

“**Approved Non-executive Director**” has the meaning given in clause 5.1(a);

“**Articles**” means the articles of association of the Company from time to time;

“**Associate**” means in relation to a person:

(a) a person who is his associate and the question of whether a person is an associate of another shall be determined in accordance with:

(i) section 435 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (whether or not an associate as so defined); and

(ii) to the extent not covered by the Insolvency Act 1986, in the Listing Rules of the Financial Conduct Authority; and

(b) any group undertaking (as defined in section 1161 of the Companies Act 2006) of that person;

“**Board**” means the board of directors of the Company as constituted from time to time;

“**Company's Group**” means the Company and any other body corporate which is from time to time its subsidiary undertaking (as defined in section 1162 of the Act);

“**Company's Nominated Adviser**” means the Nomad or such other nominated adviser as appointed by the Company from time to time;

“**Controlling Shareholder**” means any person who is entitled to exercise, or control the exercise of, six and a half per cent. (6.5%) of the issued share capital (not including any treasury shares of the Company), which for the avoidance of doubt, shall include voting shares, any non-voting shares capable of conversion into voting shares, or parallel

non-voting ADSs capable of conversion into voting ADSs, if issued and as applicable, or otherwise entitled to appoint an Approved Non-executive Director;

“**Directors**” mean the directors of the Company from time to time and “**Director**” means any one of them;

“**Exempt Placement**” means an exempt placement of the Company’s securities in accordance with Regulation D under the Securities Act and/or Regulation S under the Securities Act;

“**Independent Directors**” means a Director who is determined by the then current Directors (excluding any Shareholders’ Related Directors, and having taken advice from the Company’s Nominated Adviser) to be independent in character and judgment from any Shareholder’s Group and in relation to whom the then current Directors determines that there are no relationships or circumstances which are likely to affect, or could appear to affect, his judgment in relation to his role as a director of the Company;

“**London Stock Exchange**” means the London Stock Exchange plc;

“**Member of the Company’s Group**” means a person within the Company’s Group;

“**Member of the Shareholder’s Group**” means, in relation to the Shareholders, a person within the Shareholders’ Group;

“**NASDAQ**” means the NASDAQ Global Market or the NASDAQ Capital Market;

“**New Ordinary Shares**” has the meaning given in recital (A) of this agreement;

“**Ordinary Shares**” means ordinary shares of 0.1 pence each in the capital of the Company from time to time;

“**Securities Act**” means the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended;

“**Shareholders’ Group**” means, in relation to the Shareholders, each Shareholder and each of that Shareholder’s Associates from time to time;

“**Shareholders’ Related Directors**” means any Director who is also a director and/or employee of a company within the Shareholders’ Group, including any Approved Non-executive Director;

“**subsidiary undertaking**” and “**parent undertaking**” have the meanings given in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006;

“**Takeover Code**” means the UK City Code on Takeovers and Mergers as amended, supplemented or replaced from time to time;

“**Tranche 2**” means an anticipated placing of Ordinary Shares proposed to take place within 180 days of completion of Admission, consisting of the US IPO and any concurrent Exempt Placement;

“**Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares**” determined from time to time, means a number of Ordinary Shares equal to the lesser of (i) six and a half per cent. (6.5%) of the issued Ordinary Shares of the Company, and (ii) sixty per cent. (60%) of (a) the number of New Ordinary Shares the Shareholders are purchasing plus, (b) from and after the US IPO, the number of Ordinary Shares required to be purchased by the Shareholders’ Group in the US IPO to avoid forfeiture of their Warrants under the terms and conditions of the Warrant Instrument;

“**US IPO**” means the proposed registration by the Company under the Securities Act of the ADSs to be issued in Tranche 2 and the listing of ADSs on NASDAQ;

“**Warrant**” means one warrant to purchase two-fifths (0.4) of an Ordinary Share; and

“**Warrant Instrument**” means the warrant instrument to be entered into in respect of the Warrants.

1.2 In this agreement:

- (a) reference to:
  - (i) any statute or statutory provision includes a reference:
    - (A) to that statute or statutory provision as from time to time consolidated, modified, re-enacted (with or without modification) or replaced by any statute or statutory provision; and
    - (B) any subordinate legislation made under the relevant statutory provision,  
except to the extent that any such consolidation, modification or re-enactment coming into force after the date of this agreement would increase or extend the liability of a party under this deed;
  - (ii) the singular includes the plural and vice versa and any gender includes other genders;
  - (iii) the “**introduction**” or to a “**clause**” is a reference to the Introduction or the relevant clause of or to this agreement;
  - (iv) a person includes all forms of legal entity including an individual, company, body corporate (wherever incorporated or carrying on business), unincorporated association, governmental entity and a partnership and, in relation to a party who is an individual, his legal personal representative(s); and
  - (v) “**this agreement**” includes this agreement as amended or supplemented from time to time;
- (b) the words “**include**” and “**including**” are to be construed as being by way of illustration or emphasis only and are not to be construed so as to limit the generality of any words preceding them;
- (c) the words “**other**” and “**otherwise**” are not to be construed as being limited by any words preceding them; and
- (d) the headings to clauses are to be ignored in construing this agreement.

## 2. **Condition precedent and duration**

2.1 The obligations of the parties under this agreement will become unconditional upon Admission taking place.

2.2 The obligations and restrictions of the Shareholders pursuant to this agreement shall continue in full force and effect, in relation to the Shareholders, for so long as any Member of the Shareholders’ Group (whether individually or collectively) is a

Controlling Shareholder. The rights and obligations of the parties under clauses 3,4,5 (other than 5.3(c)), 6 and 7.6 will automatically terminate in relation to any such Shareholder upon:

- (a) that Shareholder and each Member of the Shareholder's Group (whether individually or collectively) ceasing to hold the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares; or
- (b) the Ordinary Shares ceasing to be admitted to AIM.

2.3 This agreement shall terminate and be of no further force or effect (except for the confidentiality obligations in clause 7.2 and obligations under clause 5.3(c) with respect to information obtained prior to termination) upon the first date on which the Shareholders cease to have any rights or obligations under clauses 3, 4, 5 (other than 5.3(c)), 6, 7.6 and 13.

### **3. Conduct of transactions and relationships**

3.1 The Shareholders severally undertake to the Company and the Nomad that the Shareholder shall, and shall procure (so far as it is able to do so) that each of the Shareholder's Associates shall:

- (a) conduct all transactions, agreements and relationships (whether contractual or otherwise, but including, for the avoidance of doubt, any variations or amendments to any such transactions, agreements and relationships, or any decision to terminate, enforce, release or take any other action in relation to any such transactions, agreements and relationships) with any Member of the Company's Group on arm's length terms and on a normal commercial basis, including in accordance with the related party rules set out in the AIM Rules and any other applicable laws, regulations and stock exchange rules;
- (b) exercise its voting rights and all other rights and powers so as to ensure that each Member of the Company's Group is at all times capable of carrying on its business and making decisions independently of the Shareholders' Group;
- (c) not take any action or allow any omission to occur which prevents or restricts any Member of the Company's Group from carrying on its business for the benefit of its shareholders as a whole and independently of the Shareholders' Group;
- (d) exercise its voting rights and all other rights and powers in such a manner so as to procure (to the extent possible by the exercise of such voting rights) that:
  - (i) there will always be a majority of Independent Directors on the Board and any committee of the Board;
  - (ii) no Approved Non-executive Director shall vote upon any matter involving an actual or potential conflict of interest between the Company and the Shareholders; and
  - (iii) where any matters involving an actual or potential conflict of interest between the Company and the Shareholders are to be discussed, one or more Independent Director shall be present;
- (e) not exercise any of its voting or other rights and powers to procure any amendment to the Articles which would be inconsistent with this agreement;

- (f) not propose any resolution of the shareholders of the Company for the cancellation of the Company's admission to trading on AIM, for the disapplication of any rights of pre-emption attaching to any shares in the capital of the Company or to vary or alter the share capital of the Company (but, subject to the remainder of this deed, nothing in this clause 3.1(f) shall preclude a Shareholder or the Shareholder's Associates from otherwise voting on any such resolution if proposed by the Company); and
  - (g) so far as it is within his control observe the provisions of this deed (as if they were a party to it as a Shareholder).
- 3.2 The Shareholders severally undertake to the Nomad and the Company (and undertake to procure that their Associates shall) abstain from voting at any general meeting in respect of any resolution concerning any contract, arrangement or transaction solely between the Company or any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholders' Group including, without limitation, any resolution required pursuant to the AIM Rules for Companies including, but not limited to, any required by Rule 13 of the AIM Rules for Companies.
- 3.3 The Company shall (and shall exercise all powers vested in it to procure, that each other Member of the Company's Group shall) conduct all transactions, agreements and relationships (whether contractual or otherwise) with the Shareholders and any Member of the Shareholders' Group on arm's length terms and on a normal commercial basis and in accordance with the related party rules set out in the AIM Rules.
- 3.4 The Shareholder shall, to the extent that it is within its power to do so, procure that any Shareholder's Related Director shall not vote or participate in any discussion at any meeting of the Directors or part thereof, or receive any information with respect thereto in relation to any actual or proposed transaction, agreement or matter in respect of which any Member of the Shareholder's Group has any interest other than an interest as a shareholder of the Company in common with all other shareholders or in respect of which the Independent Directors (in their absolute discretion) consider that a conflict of interests exists between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group.
- 3.5 The Shareholders hereby expressly acknowledge that any Shareholders' Related Director will, as a Director of the Company, owe his fiduciary duties to the Company and that, where there is a conflict of interests between these fiduciary duties or the obligations of such Director under the AIM Rules or any other applicable laws or regulations and those the Shareholders' Related Director owe to the Shareholders, the fiduciary duties owed to the Company or the obligations under the AIM Rules or any other applicable laws or regulations respectively shall prevail.
- 3.6 In the event that any Shareholder or any of its Associates shall cease to be a Controlling Shareholder by virtue of a transfer of shares or through any other transaction or arrangement ("**Transaction**") and one of its Associates shall be or become a Controlling Shareholder ("**New Controlling Shareholder**") then, prior to any such Transaction taking effect, such Shareholder shall procure that the New Controlling Shareholder shall enter into a deed in a form acceptable to the Independent Directors to be bound by the provisions of this deed.

#### 4. **Takeover Code**

The Shareholders severally undertake to the Company and the Nomad that they shall not, and shall, to the extent within their control, procure that no member of the

Shareholders' Group nor any party acting in concert (as defined in the Takeover Code) with any of them without the prior consent of a majority of the Independent Directors:

- (a) acquire or offer to acquire shares in, or any other interest in, the relevant securities (as defined in the Takeover Code) of the Company or any other derivative or contract referenced thereto, where such acquisition would result in a mandatory takeover offer requirement arising pursuant to Rule 9 of the Takeover Code;
- (b) make an offer for all or any part of the share capital of the Company;
- (c) announce or take any action which, under the Takeover Code or otherwise, would require any takeover, merger, consolidation or share exchange or similar transaction involving securities of the Company; or
- (d) enter into an agreement relating to shares in or any other interest in the relevant securities (as defined in the Takeover Code) in the share capital of the Company or any derivative or contract referenced thereto, for the express purpose of taking any of the action prevented by this clause 4.

## 5. **Approved Non-Executive Director**

### 5.1 Appointment

- (a) With effect from Admission, if and for so long as the Shareholders' Group holds, in aggregate, interests in Ordinary Shares (assuming all the Warrants held by the Shareholder have been exercised) representing not less than the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares, subject to clause 5.1(b), the Company shall procure such person as may be designated (or otherwise approved) by the Shareholders (an "**Approved Non-executive Director**") shall be appointed to hold office as a non-executive Director of the Company (and if any Approved Non-executive Director shall resign or otherwise cease to hold office as a Director, then the Company shall procure such other person (if any) as may be designated (or otherwise approved) by the Shareholders to act as a replacement Approved Non-executive Director shall be appointed to so hold office as a non-executive Director of the Company).
- (b) The identity of any proposed Approved Non-executive Director shall be discussed between the Company and the Shareholders. The appointment of the Approved Non-executive Director shall be subject to the approval of the Nominations Committee and the Board (which approvals shall not be withheld or delayed, save where the appointment of such Approved Non-executive Director would be unlawful or unreasonable having regard to the fiduciary obligations of the Directors and the regulatory obligations of the Company). For the avoidance of doubt, any nomination for appointment made by the Shareholders under this clause 5.1 shall be subject to the prior written approval of the Company's Nominated Adviser (such approval not to be unreasonably delayed) and only to be refused by the Company's Nominated Adviser if:
  - (i) such appointment would thereby result in the Company no longer being appropriate for admission to trading on AIM; or
  - (ii) such proposed appointee is not a fit and proper person for appointment as a director of a Company listed on AIM; or
  - (iii) such appointment would thereby result in the Company's Nominated Adviser not complying in full with any of its responsibilities under the

The Company's Nominated Adviser will notify the Company of its approval or rejection of any nominee to the Board (with reasons for such rejection, where applicable) as soon as practicable following receipt of such nomination. In such circumstances a further nominee may then be put forward by the Shareholders.

- (c) The first Approved Non-executive Director, whose appointment is expected to be effective, subject to completion of customary appointment due diligence required by the AIM Nomad Rules, as from Admission (or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter) shall be Mahendra Shah.

## 5.2 Re-appointment and removal

- (a) If and for so long as the Shareholders Group holds, in aggregate, interests in Ordinary Shares (assuming all the Warrants held by the Shareholder have been exercised) representing not less than the Trigger Number of Ordinary Shares, and provided always that the obligations contained in clauses 5.2(a)(i) and 5.2(a)(ii) below would not be unlawful or unreasonable having regard to the fiduciary obligations of the Directors and the obligations of the Company under applicable laws, regulations and stock exchange rules:
  - (i) the Company shall use reasonable endeavours to procure that, in respect of any Approved Non-executive Director appointed in accordance with clause 5.1, a resolution of the members of the Company is proposed at the next Annual General Meeting of the Company following the date of his/her appointment and also at each subsequent Annual General Meeting of the Company thereafter at which he/she stands for re-election;
  - (ii) save with the written approval of the Shareholders, the Company shall procure that the Board shall not terminate the appointment of, or remove from office as a Director, any Approved Non-executive Director (other than by reason of any material breach of any duty or obligation owed by that Approved Non-executive Director to the Company or persistent breaches in any 24 month period or a material breach by the Approved Non-executive Director and/or Shareholder of the terms of this agreement); and
  - (iii) if the Shareholders give written notice to the Company retracting its designation (or other approval) of any person then holding office as an Approved Non-executive Director then the Company may, in its sole discretion acting after consultation with the Company's Nominated Adviser, either:
    - (A) then terminate the appointment of, and remove from office as a Director, such Approved Non-executive Director (and the Shareholder shall indemnify the Company for any sum payable to such person in consequence of the termination of such appointment up to an amount not exceeding the amount of fees as may be payable to such person in lieu of any entitlement to receive notice of termination under his terms of appointment (such period of notice not to exceed 3 months)); or
    - (B) elect to retain such person as a Director,

---

and in either case such person shall cease to be designated an Approved Non-executive Director and the Shareholder shall be entitled to designate (or otherwise approve) a replacement Approved Non-executive Director in accordance with clause 5.1(a).

## 5.3 Terms of appointment

- (a) For the avoidance of doubt, the designation (or approval) of an Approved Non-executive Director by the Shareholder shall not be construed as conferring any power or authority on such person to represent or act on behalf of the Shareholder (or any of its affiliates).
- (b) An Approved Non-executive Director shall owe fiduciary duties to the Company in his/her capacity as a Director. The Shareholders agree that an Approved Non-executive Director shall not owe (and hereby waives) any duty or obligation (if any) to the Shareholders (or any of their affiliates) which conflicts with such Approved Non-executive Director's fiduciary obligations to the Company.
- (c) An information-sharing protocol shall be established between the Company, the Shareholders and the Approved Non-executive Director in relation to the Approved Non-executive Director's authority to share certain information in relation to the Company with the Shareholders. The Shareholders acknowledge that certain information in relation to the Company that it receives may from time to time include inside information relating to the securities of the Company and that the Shareholders and/or the Approved Non-executive Director (and the persons the Shareholders and/or the Approved Non-executive Director have disclosed that information to directly or indirectly ("**disclosees**") may be insiders for the purposes of Part V of the Criminal Justice Act 1993 ("**CJA**") and section 118 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (as amended from time to time) ("**FSMA**") and the Market Abuse Regulation ("**MAR**"). The Shareholders and/or the Approved Non-executive Director shall bring to the attention of its disclosees the prohibitions on insider dealing and market abuse as set out in the CJA, FSMA and MAR respectively.
- (d) The full terms of appointment of an Approved Non-executive Director shall be agreed in writing, between such person and the Company (each acting reasonably and in good faith) and in consultation with the Company's Nominated Adviser.

## 6. Procedure on conflict

- 6.1 The Shareholder shall (and shall exercise all powers vested in them to procure, so far as it is properly able, that each Associate shall) provide as soon as reasonably practicable to the Company any information in its (or any of its Associate's) possession or control which the Company reasonably requests for the purposes of ensuring that it is satisfied that all transactions and relationships between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group are at arm's length and on a normal commercial basis.

6.2 The Company and the Shareholders severally agree that any dispute between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholders' Group relating to any such existing or proposed transaction, arrangement or agreement between any Member of the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholders' Group shall be resolved by a decision of the majority of the Independent Directors.

6.3 In event of conflict between the provisions of this agreement and the articles of association of the Company, the provisions of this agreement shall prevail as between the parties to this agreement to the extent permitted by applicable law and regulation.

## 7. **Announcements and confidentiality**

7.1 No party shall make (or in the case of the Company, permit any other Member of the Company's Group or in the case of a Shareholder, permit any of its Associates to make) any announcement or press release concerning the subject matter of this agreement, save as required under the AIM Rules and in accordance with the AIM Nomad Rules or under the Listing Rules of the London Stock Exchange.

7.2 Save as required in connection with Admission, each party undertakes to the others that it shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that any information of a secret or confidential nature received by it from any other party ("**Confidential Information**") shall be treated as confidential by it and its officers, employees, advisers, representatives and agents and shall not be disclosed to any third party.

7.3 Nothing in this clause prevents any announcement being made or any Confidential Information being disclosed:

- (a) with the written approval of the other parties, which in the case of any announcement shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed; or
- (b) to the extent required by law or by the London Stock Exchange or any other competent regulatory body, but a party required to disclose any Confidential Information or make any announcement shall promptly notify the other parties where practicable and lawful to do so, before disclosure occurs and co-operate with the other parties regarding the timing and content of such disclosure or announcement or other action which the other parties may reasonably elect to take to challenge the validity of such requirement.

7.4 Nothing in this clause prevents disclosure of Confidential Information by any party:

- (a) to the extent that the information is in or comes into the public domain (which includes the summary of the terms of this agreement in the admission document to be published by the Company in connection with Admission) other than as a result of a breach of any undertaking or duty of confidentiality by that party;
- (b) to that party's professional advisers, auditors or bankers, but before any disclosure to any such person, the relevant party shall procure that he is made aware of the terms of this clause and shall use its reasonable endeavours to procure that such person adheres to those terms as if he were bound by the provisions of this clause; or
- (c) received in good faith by the recipient from a third party that is not knowingly used or disclosed to others by the recipient party in breach of this clause.

7.5 The Shareholder shall, and shall procure that each of its Associates shall, provide all reasonable cooperation and information which the Company may reasonably require and comply with all other requests which the Company may reasonably make in connection with any announcement which the Company is required to make pursuant to the AIM Rules as a result of any transaction or other relationship entered into between the Company's Group and any Member of the Shareholder's Group.

7.6 The Shareholder acknowledges that all directors of the Company owe fiduciary duties to the Company and shall be obliged to act and vote on all matters pertaining to the Board in what they perceive to promote the success of the Company.

**8. Capacity**

The Shareholders warrant and represent to the other parties that such Shareholder has the power to enter into this agreement and to exercise such Shareholder's rights and perform such Shareholder's obligations hereunder and all corporate and other action required to authorise such Shareholder's execution of this agreement and such Shareholder's performance of its obligations hereunder has been duly taken.

**9. Notices and other communications**

9.1 Where this agreement provides for the giving of notice or the making of any other communication, such notice or communication shall not (unless otherwise expressly provided) be effective unless given or made in writing in accordance with the following provisions of this clause.

9.2 Any notice or communication to be given or made under or in connection with this agreement may be:

(a) delivered or sent by post to the address of the relevant party as set out on the first page of this agreement (such addresses being referred to below as the "**Postal Address**" of the relevant party); or

(b) sent by fax, email or other electronic communication to:

Shareholders	acha@vivocapital.com
Company	XXXX@veronapharma.com XXXX@veronapharma.com
Nomad	XXXX@n1singer.com

9.3 Any notice or other communication so delivered or sent shall (subject to the provisions of clause 9.5(c)) be deemed to have been served when received except that if it is received between 5.30 p.m. on a Relevant Day and 9.00 a.m. on the next Relevant Day it shall be deemed to have been served at 9.00 a.m. on the second of such Relevant Days.

9.4 Where any party has given notice to another party of any different address or number to be used for the purposes of this clause then such different address or number shall be substituted for that shown above.

9.5 For the purposes of this clause:

(a) "**Relevant Day**" means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or a day which is a public holiday at the Postal Address of the receiving party;

(b) any reference to a time is to the time at the Postal Address of the receiving party;

(c) reference to an electronic communication being received shall mean receipt at a server located in any office of the corporate body or partnership which receipt

shall, notwithstanding the provisions of clause 9.3, and in the absence of evidence of earlier receipt, be deemed to have occurred 48 hours after sending; and

(d) “**electronic communication**” has the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2000.

**10. Remedies and waivers**

- 10.1 The single or partial exercise of any right, power or remedy provided by law or under this agreement shall not preclude any other or further exercise of it or the exercise of any other right, power or remedy.
- 10.2 The rights, powers and remedies provided in this agreement are cumulative and not exclusive of any rights, powers and remedies provided by law.
- 10.3 In deciding whether to enforce this agreement against the Shareholders, the Company shall consult with the Company’s Nominated Adviser.
- 10.4 Without prejudice to any other rights and remedies which any party may have, each party acknowledges and agrees that damages would not be an adequate remedy for any breach by any party of this agreement and either party shall be entitled to seek the remedies of injunction, specific performance and other equitable relief (and neither of the parties shall contest the appropriateness or availability thereof), for any threatened or actual breach of any such provision of this agreement by any party and no proof of special damages shall be necessary for the enforcement by any party of the rights under this agreement.

**11. Invalidity**

If at any time any provision of this agreement is or becomes illegal, invalid or unenforceable in any respect under the law of any jurisdiction, that shall not affect or impair:

- (a) the legality, validity or enforceability in that jurisdiction of any other provision of this agreement; or
- (b) the legality, validity or enforceability under the law of any other jurisdiction of that or any other provision of this agreement.

**12. Entire agreement**

This agreement constitutes the entire agreement between the parties about the subject matter of this agreement and supersedes all earlier understandings and agreements between the parties and all earlier representations by any party about such subject matter.

**13. Additional Rights**

- 13.1 If Shareholder is not represented on the Board, Shareholder shall be entitled to consult with and advise management of the Company on significant business issues, including management’s proposed annual operating plans, and management will meet with Shareholder regularly during each year at the Company’s facilities at mutually

agreeable times for such consultation and advice and to review progress in achieving said plans.

- 13.2 Shareholder may examine the books and records of the Company and inspect its facilities and may request information at reasonable times and intervals concerning the general status of the Company's financial condition and operations, provided that access to highly confidential proprietary information and facilities need not be provided.
- 13.3 If Shareholder is not represented on the Board, the Company shall, concurrently with delivery to the Board, give a representative of Shareholder copies of all notices, minutes, consents and other material that the Company provides to its directors, except that the representative may be excluded from access to any material or meeting or portion thereof if the Board determines in good faith, upon advice of counsel, that such exclusion is reasonably necessary to preserve the attorney-client privilege, to protect highly confidential proprietary information, or for other similar reasons. Upon reasonable notice and at a scheduled meeting of the Board or such other time, if any, as the Board may determine in its sole discretion, such representative may address the Board with respect to Investor's concerns regarding significant business issues facing the Company. The Shareholder acknowledges and agrees that it shall continue to be subject to the information-sharing obligation referenced in clause 5.3(c) during the period that this clause 13 remains in effect. The Shareholder shall bring to the attention of its disclosees the prohibitions on insider dealing and market abuse as set out in the CJA, FSMA and MAR respectively.
- 13.4 The provisions of this clause 13 will terminate and be of no further force or effect upon the earlier to occur of (i) the consummation of the sale of the Company's securities pursuant to a registration statement filed by the Company under the Securities Act, in connection with the firm commitment underwritten offering of its securities to the general public, or (ii) the date upon which Shareholder ceases to hold at least fifty per cent. (50%) of the New Ordinary Shares purchased by Shareholder in the fundraising referenced in recital (A) of this agreement.

**14. Miscellaneous**

- 14.1 Each party shall bear its own costs incurred in connection with this agreement.
- 14.2 This agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts each of which when executed and delivered is an original, but all the counterparts together constitute the same document.
- 14.3 This agreement may only be varied in writing signed by or on behalf of each of the parties.

**15. Governing law and jurisdiction**

- 15.1 This deed shall be governed by, and construed in all respects in accordance with English law.
- 15.2 The parties agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of England and Wales.

The parties to this deed have executed and delivered this deed as a deed on the date shown on the first page.

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**VIVO VENTURES FUND VII, L.P.**

By: Vivo Ventures VII, LLC  
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha  
Name: Albert Cha  
Title: Managing Member

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**VIVO VENTURES VII AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.**

By: Vivo Ventures VII, LLC  
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha  
Name: Albert Cha  
Title: Managing Member

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**VIVO VENTURES FUND VI, L.P.**

By: Vivo Ventures VI, LLC  
Its: General Partner

By: /s/ Albert Cha  
Name: Albert Cha  
Title: Managing Member

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**VIVO VENTURES VI AFFILIATES FUND, L.P.**

By: Vivo Ventures VI, LLC  
Its: General Partner

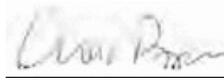
By: /s/ Albert Cha  
Name: Albert Cha  
Title: Managing Member

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**VERONA PHARMA PLC**  
acting by a director  
in the presence of:

)  
)  
)  
)



(Witness signature)



(Witness name)

CAROL BRENN

(Witness address)

5 NEW STREET SQUARE

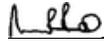
(Witness occupation)

MANAGER, CE WA STW

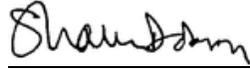
FINANCE DIRECTOR

**EXECUTED** as a deed by  
**NPLUS1 SINGER ADVISORY LLP**  
acting by:

)  
)  
)



\_\_\_\_\_  
Director, Corporate Finance



\_\_\_\_\_  
Member

**VERONA PHARMA PLC  
2017 INCENTIVE AWARD PLAN**

**ARTICLE I.  
PURPOSE**

The Plan's purpose is to enhance the Company's ability to attract, retain and motivate persons who make (or are expected to make) important contributions to the Company by providing these individuals with equity ownership opportunities. Capitalized terms used in the Plan are defined in Article XI.

**ARTICLE II.  
ELIGIBILITY**

Service Providers are eligible to be granted Awards under the Plan, subject to the limitations described herein.

**ARTICLE III.  
ADMINISTRATION AND DELEGATION**

3.1 Administration. The Plan is administered by the Administrator. The Administrator has authority to determine which Service Providers receive Awards, grant Awards, set Award terms and conditions, and designate whether such Awards will cover Ordinary Shares or ADSs, subject to the conditions and limitations in the Plan. The Administrator also has the authority to take all actions and make all determinations under the Plan, to interpret the Plan and Award Agreements and to adopt, amend and repeal Plan administrative rules, guidelines and practices as it deems advisable. The Administrator may correct defects and ambiguities, supply omissions and reconcile inconsistencies in the Plan or any Award as it deems necessary or appropriate to administer the Plan and any Awards. The Administrator's determinations under the Plan are in its sole discretion and will be final and binding on all persons having or claiming any interest in the Plan or any Award.

3.2 Appointment of Committees. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, the Board may delegate any or all of its powers under the Plan to one or more Committees or officers of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. The Board may abolish any Committee or re-vest in itself any previously delegated authority at any time.

**ARTICLE IV.  
SHARES AVAILABLE FOR AWARDS**

4.1 Number of Shares. Subject to adjustment under Article VIII and the terms of this Article IV, Awards may be made under the Plan covering up to the Overall Share Limit. As of the Plan's effective date under Section 10.3, the Company will cease granting awards under the Prior Plans; however, Prior Plan Awards will remain subject to the terms of the applicable Prior Plan. Shares issued under the Plan may consist of authorized but unissued Shares, Shares purchased on the open market, treasury Shares or ADSs.

4.2 Share Recycling. If all or any part of an Award or Prior Plan Award expires, lapses or is terminated, exchanged for cash, surrendered, repurchased, canceled without having been fully exercised or forfeited, in any case, in a manner that results in the Company acquiring Shares covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award at a price not greater than the price (as adjusted to reflect any Equity Restructuring) paid by the Participant for such Shares or not issuing any Shares covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award, the

---

unused Shares covered by the Award or Prior Plan Award will, as applicable, become or again be available for Award grants under the Plan. Further, Shares delivered (either by actual delivery or attestation) to the Company by a Participant to satisfy the applicable exercise or purchase price of an Award or Prior Plan Award and/or to satisfy any applicable tax withholding obligation (including Shares retained by the Company from the Award or Prior Plan Award being exercised or purchased and/or creating the tax obligation) will, as applicable, become or again be available for Award grants under the Plan. The payment of Dividend Equivalents in cash in conjunction with any outstanding Awards or Prior Plan Awards shall not count against the Overall Share Limit.

4.3 Incentive Option Limitations. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, no more than 5,000,000 Shares may be issued pursuant to the exercise of Incentive Options.

4.4 Substitute Awards. In connection with an entity's merger or consolidation with the Company or the Company's acquisition of an entity's property or stock, the Administrator may grant Awards in substitution for any options or other equity or equity-based awards granted before such merger or consolidation by such entity or its affiliate. Substitute Awards may be granted on such terms as the Administrator deems appropriate, notwithstanding limitations on Awards in the Plan. Substitute Awards will not count against the Overall Share Limit (nor shall Shares subject to a Substitute Award be added to the Shares available for Awards under the Plan as provided above), except that Shares acquired by exercise of substitute Incentive Options will count against the maximum number of Shares that may be issued pursuant to the exercise of Incentive Options under the Plan. Additionally, in the event that a company acquired by the Company or any Subsidiary or with which the Company or any Subsidiary combines has shares available under a pre-existing plan approved by shareholders and not adopted in contemplation of such acquisition or combination, the shares available for grant pursuant to the terms of such pre-existing plan (as adjusted, to the extent appropriate, using the exchange ratio or other adjustment or valuation ratio or formula used in such acquisition or combination to determine the consideration payable to the holders of common stock of the entities party to such acquisition or combination) may be used for Awards under the Plan and shall not reduce the Shares authorized for grant under the Plan (and Shares subject to such Awards shall not be added to the Shares available for Awards under the Plan as provided above); provided that Awards using such available shares shall not be made after the date awards or grants could have been made under the terms of the pre-existing plan, absent the acquisition or combination, and shall only be made to individuals who were not Employees or Directors prior to such acquisition or combination.

## **ARTICLE V. OPTIONS AND SHARE APPRECIATION RIGHTS**

5.1 General. The Administrator may grant Options or Share Appreciation Rights to Service Providers subject to the limitations in the Plan, including any limitations in the Plan that apply to Incentive Options. The Administrator will determine the number of Shares covered by each Option and Share Appreciation Right, the exercise price of each Option and Share Appreciation Right and the conditions and limitations applicable to the exercise of each Option and Share Appreciation Right. A Share Appreciation Right will entitle the Participant (or other person entitled to exercise the Share Appreciation Right) to receive from the Company upon exercise of the exercisable portion of the Share Appreciation Right an amount determined by multiplying the excess, if any, of the Fair Market Value of one Share on the date of exercise over the exercise price per Share of the Share Appreciation Right by the number of Shares with respect to which the Share Appreciation Right is exercised, subject to any limitations of the Plan or that the Administrator may impose and payable in cash, Shares valued at Fair Market Value or a combination of the two as the Administrator may determine or provide in the Award Agreement.

5.2 Exercise Price. The Administrator will establish each Option's and Share Appreciation Right's exercise price and specify the exercise price in the Award Agreement. The exercise price will not be less than 100% of the Fair Market Value on the grant date of the Option or Share Appreciation Right.

5.3 Duration. Each Option or Share Appreciation Right will be exercisable at such times and as specified in the Award Agreement, provided that the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right will not exceed ten years. Notwithstanding the foregoing and unless determined otherwise by the Company, in the event that on the last business day of the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right (other than an Incentive Option) (i) the exercise of the Option or Share Appreciation Right is prohibited by Applicable Law, as determined by the Company, or (ii) Shares may not be purchased or sold by the applicable Participant due to any Company insider trading policy (including blackout periods) or a "lock-up" agreement undertaken in connection with an issuance of securities by the Company, the term of the Option or Share Appreciation Right shall be extended until the date that is thirty (30) days after the end of the legal prohibition, black-out period or lock-up agreement, as determined by the Company; provided, however, in no event shall the extension last beyond the ten year term of the applicable Option or Share Appreciation Right. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Participant, prior to the end of the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right, violates the non-competition, non-solicitation, confidentiality or other similar restrictive covenant provisions of any employment contract, confidentiality and nondisclosure agreement or other agreement between the Participant and the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, the right of the Participant and the Participant's transferees to exercise any Option or Share Appreciation Right issued to the Participant shall terminate immediately upon such violation, unless the Company otherwise determines. In addition, if, prior to the end of the term of an Option or Share Appreciation Right, the Participant is given notice by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries of the Participant's Termination of Service by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries for Cause, and the effective date of such Termination of Service is subsequent to the date of the delivery of such notice, the right of the Participant and the Participant's transferees to exercise any Option or Share Appreciation Right issued to the Participant shall be suspended from the time of the delivery of such notice until the earlier of (i) such time as it is determined or otherwise agreed that the Participant's service as a Service Provider will not be terminated for Cause as provided in such notice or (ii) the effective date of the Participant's Termination of Service by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries for Cause (in which case the right of the Participant and the Participant's transferees to exercise any Option or Share Appreciation Right issued to the Participant will terminate immediately upon the effective date of such Termination of Service).

5.4 Exercise. Options and Share Appreciation Rights may be exercised by delivering to the Company a written notice of exercise, in a form the Administrator approves (which may be electronic), signed by the person authorized to exercise the Option or Share Appreciation Right, together with, as applicable, payment in full (i) as specified in Section 5.5 for the number of Shares for which the Award is exercised and (ii) as specified in Section 9.5 for any applicable taxes. Unless the Administrator otherwise determines, an Option or Share Appreciation Right may not be exercised for a fraction of a Share.

5.5 Payment Upon Exercise. Subject to Section 10.8, any Company insider trading policy (including blackout periods) and Applicable Laws, the exercise price of an Option must be paid by:

- (a) cash, wire transfer of immediately available funds or by check payable to the order of the Company, provided that the Company may limit the use of one of the foregoing payment forms if one or more of the payment forms below is permitted;
- (b) if there is a public market for Shares at the time of exercise, unless the Company otherwise determines, (A) delivery (including telephonically to the extent permitted by the Company) of an irrevocable and unconditional undertaking by a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company sufficient funds to pay the exercise price, or (B) the Participant's delivery to the Company of

a copy of irrevocable and unconditional instructions to a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company cash or a check sufficient to pay the exercise price; provided that such amount is paid to the Company at such time as may be required by the Administrator;

- (c) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, delivery (either by actual delivery or attestation) of Shares owned by the Participant valued at their Fair Market Value;
- (d) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, surrendering Shares then issuable upon the Option's exercise valued at their Fair Market Value on the exercise date;
- (e) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, delivery of a promissory note or any other property that the Administrator determines is good and valuable consideration; or
- (f) to the extent permitted by the Company, any combination of the above payment forms approved by the Administrator.

**ARTICLE VI.  
RESTRICTED SHARES; RESTRICTED SHARE UNITS**

6.1 General. The Administrator may grant Restricted Shares, or the right to purchase Restricted Shares, to any Service Provider, subject to the Company's right to repurchase all or part of such shares at their issue price or other stated or formula price from the Participant (or to require forfeiture of such shares) if conditions the Administrator specifies in the Award Agreement are not satisfied before the end of the applicable restriction period or periods that the Administrator establishes for such Award. In addition, the Administrator may grant to Service Providers Restricted Share Units, which may be subject to vesting and forfeiture conditions during the applicable restriction period or periods, as set forth in an Award Agreement. The Administrator will determine and set forth in the Award Agreement the terms and conditions for each Restricted Share and Restricted Share Unit Award, subject to the conditions and limitations contained in the Plan.

6.2 Restricted Shares.

(a) Dividends. Participants holding Restricted Shares will be entitled to all ordinary cash dividends paid with respect to such Shares, unless the Administrator provides otherwise in the Award Agreement. In addition, unless the Administrator provides otherwise, if any dividends or distributions are paid in Shares, or consist of a dividend or distribution to holders of Restricted Shares of property other than an ordinary cash dividend, the Shares or other property will be subject to the same restrictions on transferability and forfeitability as the Restricted Shares with respect to which they were paid.

(b) Certificates. The Company may require that the Participant deposit in escrow with the Company (or its designee) any certificates issued in respect of Restricted Shares, together with a stock transfer form endorsed in blank.

6.3 Restricted Share Units.

(a) Settlement. The Administrator may provide that settlement of Restricted Share Units will occur upon or as soon as reasonably practicable after the Restricted Share Units vest or will instead be deferred, on a mandatory basis or at the Participant's election.

(b) Shareholder Rights. A Participant will have no rights of a shareholder with respect to Shares subject to any Restricted Share Unit unless and until the Shares are delivered in settlement of the Restricted Share Unit.

(c) Dividend Equivalents. If the Administrator provides, a grant of Restricted Share Units may provide a Participant with the right to receive Dividend Equivalents. Dividend Equivalents may be paid currently or credited to an account for the Participant, settled in cash or Shares and subject to the same restrictions on transferability and forfeitability as the Restricted Share Units with respect to which the Dividend Equivalents are granted and subject to other terms and conditions as set forth in the Award Agreement.

**ARTICLE VII.  
OTHER SHARE OR CASH BASED AWARDS**

Other Share or Cash Based Awards may be granted to Participants, including Awards entitling Participants to receive Shares to be delivered in the future and including annual or other periodic or long-term cash bonus awards (whether based on specified Performance Criteria or otherwise), in each case subject to any conditions and limitations in the Plan. Such Other Share or Cash Based Awards will also be available as a payment form in the settlement of other Awards, as standalone payments and as payment in lieu of compensation to which a Participant is otherwise entitled. Other Share or Cash Based Awards may be paid in Shares, cash or other property, as the Administrator determines. Subject to the provisions of the Plan, the Administrator will determine the terms and conditions of each Other Share or Cash Based Award, including any purchase price, performance goal (which may be based on the Performance Criteria), transfer restrictions, and vesting conditions, which will be set forth in the applicable Award Agreement.

**ARTICLE VIII.  
ADJUSTMENTS FOR CHANGES IN SHARES  
AND CERTAIN OTHER EVENTS**

8.1 Equity Restructuring. In connection with any Equity Restructuring, notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Article VIII, the Administrator will equitably adjust each outstanding Award as it deems appropriate to reflect the Equity Restructuring, which may include adjusting the number and type of securities subject to each outstanding Award and/or the Award's exercise price or grant price (if applicable), granting new Awards to Participants, and making a cash payment to Participants. The adjustments provided under this Section 8.1 will be nondiscretionary and final and binding on the affected Participant and the Company; provided that the Administrator will determine whether an adjustment is equitable.

8.2 Corporate Transactions. In the event of any Equity Restructuring, dividend or other distribution (whether in the form of cash, Shares, other securities, or other property), capitalization, share issue, offer, subdivision, reorganization, merger, consolidation, combination, amalgamation, repurchase, recapitalization, liquidation, dissolution, or sale, transfer, exchange or other disposition of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, or sale or exchange of Shares or other securities of the Company, Change in Control, issuance of warrants or other rights to purchase Shares or other securities of the Company, other similar corporate transaction or event, other unusual or nonrecurring transaction or event affecting the Company or its financial statements or any change in any Applicable Laws or accounting principles (any "*Corporate Event*"), the Administrator, on such terms and conditions as it deems appropriate, either by the terms of the Award or by action taken prior to the occurrence of such transaction or event (except that action to give effect to a change in Applicable Law or accounting principles may be made within a reasonable period of time after such change) and either automatically or upon the Participant's request, is hereby authorized to take any one or more of the following actions whenever the

Administrator determines that such action is appropriate in order to (x) prevent dilution or enlargement of the benefits or potential benefits intended by the Company to be made available under the Plan or with respect to any Award granted or issued under the Plan, (y) to facilitate such transaction or event or (z) give effect to such changes in Applicable Laws or accounting principles:

(a) To provide for the cancellation of any such Award in exchange for either an amount of cash or other property with a value equal to the amount that could have been obtained upon the exercise or settlement of the vested portion of such Award or realization of the Participant's rights under the vested portion of such Award, as applicable; provided that, if the amount that could have been obtained upon the exercise or settlement of the vested portion of such Award or realization of the Participant's rights, in any case, is equal to or less than zero, then the Award may be terminated without payment;

(b) To provide that such Award shall vest and, to the extent applicable, be exercisable as to all shares covered thereby, notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Plan or the provisions of such Award;

(c) To provide that such Award be assumed by the successor or survivor corporation, or a parent or subsidiary thereof, or shall be substituted for by awards covering the equity securities of the successor or survivor corporation, or a parent or subsidiary thereof, with appropriate adjustments as to the number and kind of shares and/or applicable exercise or purchase price, in all cases, as determined by the Administrator;

(d) To make adjustments in the number and type of shares (or other securities or property) subject to outstanding Awards and/or with respect to which Awards may be granted under the Plan (including, but not limited to, adjustments of the limitations in Article IV hereof on the maximum number and kind of shares which may be issued) and/or in the terms and conditions of (including the grant or exercise price), and the criteria included in, outstanding Awards;

(e) To replace such Award with other rights or property selected by the Administrator; and/or

(f) To provide that the Award will terminate and cannot vest, be exercised or become payable after the applicable transaction or event.

8.3 Administrative Stand Still. In the event of any pending Corporate Event or other similar transaction, for administrative convenience, the Administrator may refuse to permit the exercise of any Award for up to sixty days before or after such transaction.

8.4 General. Except as expressly provided in the Plan or the Administrator's action under the Plan, no Participant will have any rights due to any subdivision or consolidation of Shares of any class, dividend payment, increase or decrease in the number of Shares of any class, issue, rights issue, offer or dissolution, liquidation, merger, or consolidation of the Company or other corporation. Except as expressly provided with respect to an Equity Restructuring under Section 8.1 above or the Administrator's action under the Plan, no issuance by the Company of Shares of any class, or securities convertible into Shares of any class, will affect, and no adjustment will be made regarding, the number of Shares subject to an Award or the Award's grant or exercise price. The existence of the Plan, any Award Agreements and the Awards granted hereunder will not affect or restrict in any way the Company's right or power to make or authorize (i) any adjustment, recapitalization, reorganization or other change in the Company's capital structure or its business, (ii) any Corporate Event or (iii) sale or issuance of securities, including securities with rights superior to those of the Shares or securities convertible into or exchangeable for Shares. The Administrator may treat Participants and Awards (or portions thereof) differently under this Article VIII.

**ARTICLE IX.**  
**GENERAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO AWARDS**

9.1 **Transferability.** Except as the Administrator may determine or provide in an Award Agreement or otherwise for Awards other than Incentive Options, Awards may not be sold, assigned, transferred, pledged or otherwise encumbered, either voluntarily or by operation of law, except by will or the laws of descent and distribution, or, subject to the Administrator's consent, pursuant to a domestic relations order, and, during the life of the Participant, will be exercisable only by the Participant. References to a Participant, to the extent relevant in the context, will include references to a Participant's authorized transferee that the Administrator specifically approves.

9.2 **Documentation.** Each Award will be evidenced in an Award Agreement, which may be written or electronic, as the Administrator determines. Each Award may contain terms and conditions in addition to those set forth in the Plan.

9.3 **Discretion.** Except as the Plan otherwise provides, each Award may be made alone or in addition or in relation to any other Award. The terms of each Award to a Participant need not be identical, and the Administrator need not treat Participants or Awards (or portions thereof) uniformly.

9.4 **Termination of Status.** The Administrator will determine how the disability, death, retirement, authorized leave of absence or any other change or purported change in a Participant's Service Provider status affects an Award and the extent to which, and the period during which, the Participant, the Participant's legal representative, conservator, guardian or Designated Beneficiary may exercise rights under the Award, if applicable.

9.5 **Withholding.** Each Participant must pay the Company, or make provision satisfactory to the Administrator for payment of, any taxes (which includes any social security contributions or the like) required by law to be withheld or paid by the Company or by an Subsidiary that is the employing entity of the Participant in connection with such Participant's Awards by the date of the event creating the tax liability. The Company may deduct an amount sufficient to satisfy such tax obligations based on the minimum statutory withholding rates (or such other rate as may be determined by the Company after considering any accounting consequences or costs) from any payment of any kind otherwise due to a Participant. Subject to Section 10.8 and any Company insider trading policy (including blackout periods), Participants may satisfy such tax obligations (i) in cash, by wire transfer of immediately available funds, by check made payable to the order of the Company, provided that the Company may limit the use of the foregoing payment forms if one or more of the payment forms below is permitted, (ii) to the extent permitted by the Administrator, in whole or in part by delivery of Shares, including Shares retained from the Award creating the tax obligation, valued at their Fair Market Value, (iii) if there is a public market for Shares at the time the tax obligations are satisfied, unless the Company otherwise determines, (A) delivery (including telephonically to the extent permitted by the Company) of an irrevocable and unconditional undertaking by a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company sufficient funds to satisfy the tax obligations, or (B) delivery by the Participant to the Company of a copy of irrevocable and unconditional instructions to a broker acceptable to the Company to deliver promptly to the Company cash or a check sufficient to satisfy the tax withholding, provided that such amount is paid to the Company at such time as may be required by the Administrator, or (iv) to the extent permitted by the Company, any combination of the foregoing payment forms approved by the Administrator. If any tax withholding obligation will be satisfied under clause (ii) of the immediately preceding sentence by the Company's retention of Shares from the Award creating the tax obligation and there is a public market for Shares at the time the tax obligation is satisfied, the Company may elect to instruct any brokerage firm determined acceptable to the Company for such purpose to sell on the applicable Participant's behalf some or all of the Shares retained and to remit the proceeds of the sale to the Company or its designee, and each Participant's acceptance of

an Award under the Plan will constitute the Participant's authorization to the Company and instruction and authorization to such brokerage firm to complete the transactions described in this sentence.

9.6 Amendment of Award; Repricing. The Administrator may amend, modify or terminate any outstanding Award, including by substituting another Award of the same or a different type, changing the exercise or settlement date, and converting an Incentive Option to a Non-Qualified Option. The Participant's consent to such action will be required unless (i) the action, taking into account any related action, does not materially and adversely affect the Participant's rights under the Award, or (ii) the change is permitted under Article VIII or pursuant to Section 10.6. Notwithstanding the foregoing or anything in the Plan to the contrary, the Administrator may not, except pursuant to Article VIII, without the approval of the shareholders of the Company, reduce the exercise price per share of outstanding Options or Share Appreciation Rights or cancel outstanding Options or Share Appreciation Rights in exchange for cash, other Awards or Options or Share Appreciation Rights with an exercise price per share that is less than the exercise price per share of the original Options or Share Appreciation Rights.

9.7 Conditions on Delivery of Shares. The Company will not be obligated to deliver any Shares under the Plan or remove restrictions from Shares previously delivered under the Plan until (i) all Award conditions have been met or removed to the Company's satisfaction, (ii) as determined by the Company, all other legal matters regarding the issuance and delivery of such Shares have been satisfied, including any applicable securities laws and stock exchange or stock market rules and regulations, and (iii) the Participant has executed and delivered to the Company such representations or agreements as the Administrator deems necessary or appropriate to satisfy any Applicable Laws. The Company's inability to obtain authority from any regulatory body having jurisdiction, which the Administrator determines is necessary to the lawful issuance and sale of any securities, will relieve the Company of any liability for failing to issue or sell such Shares as to which such requisite authority has not been obtained.

9.8 Acceleration. The Administrator may at any time provide that any Award will become immediately vested and fully or partially exercisable, free of some or all restrictions or conditions, or otherwise fully or partially realizable.

9.9 Additional Terms of Incentive Options. The Administrator may grant Incentive Options only to employees of the Company, any of its present or future parent or subsidiary corporations, as defined in Sections 424(e) or (f) of the Code, respectively, and any other entities the employees of which are eligible to receive Incentive Options under the Code. If an Incentive Option is granted to a Greater Than 10% Shareholder, the exercise price will not be less than 110% of the Fair Market Value on the Option's grant date, and the term of the Option will not exceed five years. All Incentive Options will be subject to and construed consistently with Section 422 of the Code. By accepting an Incentive Option, the Participant agrees to give prompt notice to the Company of dispositions or other transfers (other than in connection with a Change in Control) of Shares acquired under the Option made within (i) two years from the grant date of the Option or (ii) one year after the transfer of such Shares to the Participant, specifying the date of the disposition or other transfer and the amount the Participant realized, in cash, other property, assumption of indebtedness or other consideration, in such disposition or other transfer. Neither the Company nor the Administrator will be liable to a Participant, or any other party, if an Incentive Option fails or ceases to qualify as an "incentive stock option" under Section 422 of the Code. Any Incentive Option or portion thereof that fails to qualify as an "incentive stock option" under Section 422 of the Code for any reason, including becoming exercisable with respect to Shares having a fair market value exceeding the \$100,000 limitation under Treasury Regulation Section 1.422-4, will be a Non-Qualified Option.

**ARTICLE X.  
MISCELLANEOUS**

10.1 No Right to Employment or Other Status. No person will have any claim or right to be granted an Award, and the grant of an Award will not be construed as giving a Participant the right to continued employment or any other relationship with the Company. The Company expressly reserves the right at any time to dismiss or otherwise terminate its relationship with a Participant free from any liability or claim under the Plan or any Award, except as expressly provided in an Award Agreement.

10.2 No Rights as Shareholder; Certificates. Subject to the Award Agreement, no Participant or Designated Beneficiary will have any rights as a shareholder with respect to any Shares to be distributed under an Award until becoming the record holder of such Shares. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan, unless the Administrator otherwise determines or Applicable Laws require, the Company will not be required to deliver to any Participant certificates evidencing Shares issued in connection with any Award and instead such Shares may be recorded in the books of the Company (or, as applicable, its transfer agent or stock plan administrator). The Company may place legends on certificates issued under the Plan that the Administrator deems necessary or appropriate to comply with Applicable Laws.

10.3 Effective Date and Term of Plan. Unless earlier terminated by the Board, the Plan will become effective on the day prior to the NASDAQ Listing Date and will remain in effect until the tenth anniversary of the effective date, but Awards previously granted may extend beyond that date in accordance with the Plan. If the Plan is not approved by the Company's shareholders, the Plan will not become effective, no Awards will be granted under the Plan and the Prior Plans will continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms.

10.4 Amendment of Plan. The Administrator may amend, suspend or terminate the Plan at any time; provided that no amendment, other than an increase to the Overall Share Limit, may materially and adversely affect any Award outstanding at the time of such amendment without the affected Participant's consent. No Awards may be granted under the Plan during any suspension period or after Plan termination. Awards outstanding at the time of any Plan suspension or termination will continue to be governed by the Plan and the Award Agreement, as in effect before such suspension or termination. The Board will obtain shareholder approval of any Plan amendment to the extent necessary to comply with Applicable Laws.

10.5 Provisions for Foreign Participants. The Administrator may modify Awards granted to Participants who are foreign nationals or employed outside the United States or establish subplans or procedures under the Plan to address differences in laws, rules, regulations or customs of such foreign jurisdictions with respect to tax, securities, currency, employee benefit or other matters.

10.6 Section 409A. The following provisions only apply to Participants subject to tax in the United States.

(a) General. The Company intends that all Awards be structured to comply with, or be exempt from, Section 409A, such that no adverse tax consequences, interest, or penalties under Section 409A apply. Notwithstanding anything in the Plan or any Award Agreement to the contrary, the Administrator may, without a Participant's consent, amend this Plan or Awards, adopt policies and procedures, or take any other actions (including amendments, policies, procedures and retroactive actions) as are necessary or appropriate to preserve the intended tax treatment of Awards, including any such actions intended to (A) exempt this Plan or any Award from Section 409A, or (B) comply with Section 409A, including regulations, guidance, compliance programs and other interpretative authority that may be issued after an Award's grant date. The Company makes no representations or warranties as to an Award's tax treatment under Section 409A or otherwise. The Company will have no obligation under this Section 10.6 or otherwise to avoid the taxes, penalties or interest under Section 409A with respect to any Award and will have no liability to any Participant or any other person if any Award, compensation or other benefits under

the Plan are determined to constitute noncompliant “nonqualified deferred compensation” subject to taxes, penalties or interest under Section 409A.

(b) Separation from Service. If an Award constitutes “nonqualified deferred compensation” under Section 409A, any payment or settlement of such Award upon a termination of a Participant’s Service Provider relationship will, to the extent necessary to avoid taxes under Section 409A, be made only upon the Participant’s “separation from service” (within the meaning of Section 409A), whether such “separation from service” occurs upon or after the termination of the Participant’s Service Provider relationship. For purposes of this Plan or any Award Agreement relating to any such payments or benefits, references to a “termination,” “termination of employment” or like terms means a “separation from service.”

(c) Payments to Specified Employees. Notwithstanding any contrary provision in the Plan or any Award Agreement, any payment(s) of “nonqualified deferred compensation” required to be made under an Award to a “specified employee” (as defined under Section 409A and as the Administrator determines) due to his or her “separation from service” will, to the extent necessary to avoid taxes under Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, be delayed for the six-month period immediately following such “separation from service” (or, if earlier, until the specified employee’s death) and will instead be paid (as set forth in the Award Agreement) on the day immediately following such six-month period or as soon as administratively practicable thereafter (without interest). Any payments of “nonqualified deferred compensation” under such Award payable more than six months following the Participant’s “separation from service” will be paid at the time or times the payments are otherwise scheduled to be made.

10.7 Limitations on Liability. Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Plan, no individual acting as a director, officer, other employee or agent of the Company or any Subsidiary will be liable to any Participant, former Participant, spouse, beneficiary, or any other person for any claim, loss, liability, or expense incurred in connection with the Plan or any Award, and such individual will not be personally liable with respect to the Plan because of any contract or other instrument executed in his or her capacity as an Administrator, director, officer, other employee or agent of the Company or any Subsidiary. The Company will indemnify and hold harmless each director, officer, other employee and agent of the Company or any Subsidiary that has been or will be granted or delegated any duty or power relating to the Plan’s administration or interpretation, against any cost or expense (including attorneys’ fees) or liability (including any sum paid in settlement of a claim with the Administrator’s approval) arising from any act or omission concerning this Plan unless arising from such person’s own fraud or bad faith.

10.8 Lock-Up Period. The Company may, at the request of any underwriter representative or otherwise, in connection with registering the offering of any Company securities under the Securities Act, prohibit Participants from, directly or indirectly, selling or otherwise transferring any Shares or other Company securities during a period of up to one hundred eighty days following the effective date of a Company registration statement filed under the Securities Act, or such longer period as determined by the underwriter.

10.9 Data Privacy. As a condition for receiving any Award, each Participant explicitly and unambiguously consents to the collection, use and transfer, in electronic or other form, of personal data as described in this section by and among the Company and its Subsidiaries and affiliates exclusively for implementing, administering and managing the Participant’s participation in the Plan. The Company and its Subsidiaries and affiliates may hold certain personal information about a Participant, including the Participant’s name, address and telephone number; birthdate; social security, insurance number or other identification number; salary; nationality; job title(s); any Shares held in the Company or its Subsidiaries and affiliates; and Award details, to implement, manage and administer the Plan and Awards (the “Data”). The Company and its Subsidiaries and affiliates may transfer the Data amongst themselves as necessary to

10

---

implement, administer and manage a Participant’s participation in the Plan, and the Company and its Subsidiaries and affiliates may transfer the Data to third parties assisting the Company with Plan implementation, administration and management. These recipients may be located in the Participant’s country, or elsewhere, and the Participant’s country may have different data privacy laws and protections than the recipients’ country. By accepting an Award, each Participant authorizes such recipients to receive, possess, use, retain and transfer the Data, in electronic or other form, to implement, administer and manage the Participant’s participation in the Plan, including any required Data transfer to a broker or other third party with whom the Company or the Participant may elect to deposit any Shares. The Data related to a Participant will be held only as long as necessary to implement, administer, and manage the Participant’s participation in the Plan. A Participant may, at any time, view the Data that the Company holds regarding such Participant, request additional information about the storage and processing of the Data regarding such Participant, recommend any necessary corrections to the Data regarding the Participant or refuse or withdraw the consents in this Section 10.9 in writing, without cost, by contacting the local human resources representative. The Company may cancel Participant’s ability to participate in the Plan and, in the Administrator’s discretion, the Participant may forfeit any outstanding Awards if the Participant refuses or withdraws the consents in this Section 10.9. For more information on the consequences of refusing or withdrawing consent, Participants may contact their local human resources representative.

10.10 Severability. If any portion of the Plan or any action taken under it is held illegal or invalid for any reason, the illegality or invalidity will not affect the remaining parts of the Plan, and the Plan will be construed and enforced as if the illegal or invalid provisions had been excluded, and the illegal or invalid action will be null and void.

10.11 Governing Documents. If any contradiction occurs between the Plan and any Award Agreement or other written agreement between a Participant and the Company (or any Subsidiary) that the Administrator has approved, the Plan will govern, unless it is expressly specified in such Award Agreement or other written document that a specific provision of the Plan will not apply.

10.12 Governing Law. The Plan and all Awards will be governed by and interpreted in accordance with the laws of the United Kingdom, disregarding any state’s choice-of-law principles requiring the application of a jurisdiction’s laws other than the United Kingdom.

10.13 Claw-back Provisions. All Awards (including any proceeds, gains or other economic benefit the Participant actually or constructively receives upon receipt or exercise of any Award or the receipt or resale of any Shares underlying the Award) will be subject to any Company claw-back policy, including any claw-back policy adopted to comply with Applicable Laws (including the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and any rules or regulations promulgated thereunder) as set forth in such claw-back policy or the Award Agreement.

10.14 Titles and Headings. The titles and headings in the Plan are for convenience of reference only and, if any conflict, the Plan’s text, rather than such titles or headings, will control.

10.15 Conformity to Securities Laws. Participant acknowledges that the Plan is intended to conform to the extent necessary with Applicable Laws. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Plan and all Awards will be administered only in conformance with Applicable Laws. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, the Plan and all Award Agreements will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.

10.16 Relationship to Other Benefits. No payment under the Plan will be taken into account in determining any benefits under any pension, retirement, savings, profit sharing, group insurance, welfare

or other benefit plan of the Company or any Subsidiary except as expressly provided in writing in such other plan or an agreement thereunder.

10.17 **Broker-Assisted Sales.** In the event of a broker-assisted sale of Shares in connection with the payment of amounts owed by a Participant under or with respect to the Plan or Awards, including amounts to be paid under the final sentence of Section 9.5: (a) any Shares to be sold through the broker-assisted sale will be sold on the day the payment first becomes due, or as soon thereafter as practicable; (b) such Shares may be sold as part of a block trade with other Participants in the Plan in which all participants receive an average price; (c) the applicable Participant will be responsible for all broker's fees and other costs of sale, and by accepting an Award, each Participant agrees to indemnify and hold the Company harmless from any losses, costs, damages, or expenses relating to any such sale; (d) to the extent the Company or its designee receives proceeds of such sale that exceed the amount owed, the Company will pay such excess in cash to the applicable Participant as soon as reasonably practicable; (e) the Company and its designees are under no obligation to arrange for such sale at any particular price; and (f) in the event the proceeds of such sale are insufficient to satisfy the Participant's applicable obligation, the Participant may be required to pay immediately upon demand to the Company or its designee an amount in cash sufficient to satisfy any remaining portion of the Participant's obligation.

## **ARTICLE XI. DEFINITIONS**

As used in the Plan, the following words and phrases will have the following meanings:

11.1 **"ADSs"** means American Depositary Shares, representing Ordinary Shares on deposit with a U.S. banking institution selected by the Company and which are registered pursuant to a Form F-6.

11.2 **"Administrator"** means the Board or a Committee to the extent that the Board's powers or authority under the Plan have been delegated to such Committee.

11.3 **"Applicable Laws"** shall mean any applicable law, including without limitation: (a) the requirements relating to the administration of equity incentive plans under U.S. federal and state securities, tax and other applicable laws, rules and regulations, the applicable rules of any stock exchange or quotation system on which the Shares are listed or quoted and the applicable laws and rules of any foreign country or other jurisdiction where Awards are granted; and (b) corporate, securities, tax or other laws, statutes, rules, requirements or regulations, whether U.S. federal, state, local or foreign, applicable in the United Kingdom, United States or any other relevant jurisdiction.

11.4 **"Award"** means, individually or collectively, a grant under the Plan of Options, Share Appreciation Rights, Restricted Shares, Restricted Share Units or Other Share or Cash Based Awards.

11.5 **"Award Agreement"** means a written agreement evidencing an Award, which may be electronic, that contains such terms and conditions as the Administrator determines, consistent with and subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan.

11.6 **"Board"** means the Board of Directors of the Company.

11.7 **"Cause"** means (i) if a Participant is a party to a written employment or consulting agreement with the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or an Award Agreement in which the term "cause" is defined (a **"Relevant Agreement"**), "Cause" as defined in the Relevant Agreement, and (ii) if no Relevant Agreement exists, (A) the Administrator's determination that the Participant failed to substantially perform the Participant's duties (other than a failure resulting from the Participant's Disability); (B) the

Administrator's determination that the Participant failed to carry out, or comply with any lawful and reasonable directive of the Board or the Participant's immediate supervisor; (C) the occurrence of any act or omission by the Participant that could reasonably be expected to result in (or has resulted in) the Participant's conviction, plea of no contest, plea of nolo contendere, or imposition of unadjudicated probation for any felony or indictable offense or crime involving moral turpitude; (D) the Participant's unlawful use (including being under the influence) or possession of illegal drugs on the premises of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or while performing the Participant's duties and responsibilities for the Company or any of its Subsidiaries; or (E) the Participant's commission of an act of fraud, embezzlement, misappropriation, misconduct, or breach of fiduciary duty against the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

11.8 "**Change in Control**" means and includes each of the following:

- (i) a Sale; or
- (ii) a Takeover.

The Administrator shall have full and final authority, which shall be exercised in its sole discretion, to determine conclusively whether a Change in Control has occurred pursuant to the above definition, the date of the occurrence of such Change in Control and any incidental matters relating thereto; provided that any exercise of authority in conjunction with a determination of whether a Change in Control is a "change in control event" as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5) shall be consistent with such regulation.

11.9 "**Code**" means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations issued thereunder.

11.10 "**Committee**" means one or more committees or subcommittees of the Board, which may include one or more Company directors or executive officers, to the extent Applicable Laws permit. To the extent required to comply with the provisions of Rule 16b-3, it is intended that each member of the Committee will be, at the time the Committee takes any action with respect to an Award that is subject to Rule 16b-3, a "non-employee director" within the meaning of Rule 16b-3; however, a Committee member's failure to qualify as a "non-employee director" within the meaning of Rule 16b-3 will not invalidate any Award granted by the Committee that is otherwise validly granted under the Plan.

11.11 "**Company**" means Verona Pharma plc, registered in England and Wales with company number 05375156, or any successor.

11.12 "**Consultant**" means any person, including any adviser, engaged by the Company or its parent or Subsidiary to render services to such entity if the consultant or adviser: (i) renders bona fide services to the Company; (ii) renders services not in connection with the offer or sale of securities in a capital-raising transaction and does not directly or indirectly promote or maintain a market for the Company's securities; and (iii) is a natural person.

11.13 "**Control**" shall have the meaning given in section 995 (2) of the UK Income Tax Act 2007, unless otherwise specified.

11.14 "**Designated Beneficiary**" means the beneficiary or beneficiaries the Participant designates, in a manner the Administrator determines, to receive amounts due or exercise the Participant's rights if the Participant dies or becomes incapacitated. Without a Participant's effective designation, "Designated Beneficiary" will mean the Participant's estate.

- 11.15 “**Director**” means a Board member.
- 11.16 “**Disability**” means a permanent and total disability under Section 22(e)(3) of the Code, as amended.
- 11.17 “**Dividend Equivalents**” means a right granted to a Participant under the Plan to receive the equivalent value (in cash or Shares) of dividends paid on Shares.
- 11.18 “**Employee**” means any employee of the Company or its Subsidiaries.
- 11.19 “**Equity Restructuring**” means a nonreciprocal transaction between the Company and its shareholders, such as a share dividend, share split, spin-off, rights offering or recapitalization through a large, nonrecurring cash dividend, that affects the number or kind of Shares (or other Company securities) or the price of Shares (or other Company securities) and causes a change in the per share value of the Shares underlying outstanding Awards.
- 11.20 “**Exchange Act**” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.
- 11.21 “**Fair Market Value**” means, as of any date, the value of Shares determined as follows: (i) if the Shares are listed on any established stock exchange, its Fair Market Value will be the closing sales price for Shares as quoted on such exchange for the last day preceding such date during which a sale occurred, as reported in The Wall Street Journal or another source the Administrator deems reliable; (ii) if the Shares are not traded on a stock exchange but is quoted on a national market or other quotation system, the closing sales price on the last date preceding such date during which a sale occurred, as reported in The Wall Street Journal or another source the Administrator deems reliable; or (iii) without an established market for the Shares, the Administrator will determine the Fair Market Value in its discretion. Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Award granted on the pricing date of the Company’s initial public offering, the Fair Market Value shall mean the initial public offering price of a Share as set forth in the Company’s final prospectus relating to its initial public offering filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission.
- 11.22 “**Greater Than 10% Shareholder**” means an individual then owning (within the meaning of Section 424(d) of the Code) more than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of equity securities of the Company or its parent or subsidiary corporation, as defined in Section 424(e) and (f) of the Code, respectively.
- 11.23 “**Incentive Option**” means an Option intended to qualify as an “incentive stock option” as defined in Section 422 of the Code.
- 11.24 “**NASDAQ Listing Date**” means the first date upon which the Shares are listed (or approved for listing) upon notice of issuance on the NASDAQ Global Market.
- 11.25 “**Non-Qualified Option**” means an Option not intended or not qualifying as an Incentive Option.
- 11.26 “**Option**” means an option to purchase Shares.
- 11.27 “**Ordinary Share**” means an ordinary share of £0.05 each in the capital of the Company.
- 11.28 “**Other Share or Cash Based Awards**” means cash awards, awards of Shares, and other awards valued wholly or partially by referring to, or are otherwise based on, Shares or other property.

11.29 “**Overall Share Limit**” means the sum of (i) 6,333,000 Shares; (ii) any Shares which are subject to Prior Plan Awards which become available for issuance under the Plan pursuant to Article IV and (iii) an annual increase on the first day of each calendar year beginning January 1, 2018 and ending on and including January 1, 2027, equal to the least of (A) 4% of the aggregate number of Shares outstanding on the final day of the immediately preceding calendar year and (B) such smaller number of Shares as is determined by the Board.

11.30 “**Participant**” means a Service Provider who has been granted an Award.

11.31 “**Performance Criteria**” mean the criteria (and adjustments) that the Administrator may select for an Award to establish performance goals for a performance period, which may include the following: net earnings or losses (either before or after one or more of interest, taxes, depreciation, amortization, and non-cash equity-based compensation expense); gross or net sales or revenue or sales or revenue growth; net income (either before or after taxes) or adjusted net income; profits (including but not limited to gross profits, net profits, profit growth, net operation profit or economic profit), profit return ratios or operating margin; budget or operating earnings (either before or after taxes or before or after allocation of corporate overhead and bonus); cash flow (including operating cash flow and free cash flow or cash flow return on capital); return on assets; return on capital or invested capital; cost of capital; return on shareholders’ equity; total shareholder return; return on sales; costs, reductions in costs and cost control measures; expenses; working capital; earnings or loss per share; adjusted earnings or loss per share; price per share or dividends per share (or appreciation in or maintenance of such price or dividends); regulatory achievements or compliance; implementation, completion or attainment of objectives relating to research, development, regulatory, commercial, or strategic milestones or developments; market share; economic value or economic value added models; division, group or corporate financial goals; customer satisfaction/growth; customer service; employee satisfaction; recruitment and maintenance of personnel; human resources management; supervision of litigation and other legal matters; strategic partnerships and transactions; financial ratios (including those measuring liquidity, activity, profitability or leverage); debt levels or reductions; sales-related goals; financing and other capital raising transactions; cash on hand; acquisition activity; investment sourcing activity; and marketing initiatives, any of which may be measured in absolute terms or as compared to any incremental increase or decrease. Such performance goals also may be based solely by reference to the Company’s performance or the performance of a Subsidiary, division, business segment or business unit of the Company or a Subsidiary, or based upon performance relative to performance of other companies or upon comparisons of any of the indicators of performance relative to performance of other companies. The Committee may provide for exclusion of the impact of an event or occurrence which the Committee determines should appropriately be excluded, including (a) restructurings, discontinued operations, extraordinary items, and other unusual, infrequently occurring or non-recurring charges or events, (b) asset write-downs, (c) litigation or claim judgments or settlements, (d) acquisitions or divestitures, (e) reorganization or change in the corporate structure or capital structure of the Company, (f) an event either not directly related to the operations of the Company, Subsidiary, division, business segment or business unit or not within the reasonable control of management, (g) foreign exchange gains and losses, (h) a change in the fiscal year of the Company, (i) the refinancing or repurchase of bank loans or debt securities, (j) unbudgeted capital expenditures, (k) the issuance or repurchase of equity securities and other changes in the number of outstanding shares, (l) conversion of some or all of convertible securities to Shares, (m) any business interruption event (n) the cumulative effects of tax or accounting changes in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, or (o) the effect of changes in other laws or regulatory rules affecting reported results.

11.32 “**Plan**” means this 2017 Incentive Award Plan.

11.33 “**Prior Plans**” means, collectively, the Verona Pharma plc EMI Option Scheme, the Verona Pharma plc Unapproved Share Option Scheme and any prior equity incentive plans of the Company or its predecessor.

11.34 “**Prior Plan Award**” means an award outstanding under the Prior Plans as of the Plan’s effective date in Section 10.3.

11.35 “**Restricted Shares**” means Shares awarded to a Participant under Article VI subject to certain vesting conditions and other restrictions.

11.36 “**Restricted Share Unit**” means an unfunded, unsecured right to receive, on the applicable settlement date, one Share or an amount in cash or other consideration determined by the Administrator to be of equal value as of such settlement date, subject to certain vesting conditions and other restrictions.

11.37 “**Rule 16b-3**” means Rule 16b-3 promulgated under the Exchange Act.

11.38 “**Sale**” shall mean the sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company.

11.39 “**Section 409A**” means Section 409A of the Code and all regulations, guidance, compliance programs and other interpretative authority thereunder.

11.40 “**Securities Act**” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

11.41 “**Service Provider**” means an Employee, Consultant or Director.

11.42 “**Share**” means an Ordinary Share or the number of ADSs equal to an Ordinary Share.

11.43 “**Share Appreciation Right**” means a Share Appreciation right granted under Article V.

11.44 “**Subsidiary**” means any entity (other than the Company), whether domestic or foreign, in an unbroken chain of entities beginning with the Company if each of the entities other than the last entity in the unbroken chain beneficially owns, at the time of the determination, securities or interests representing at least 50% of the total combined voting power of all classes of securities or interests in one of the other entities in such chain.

11.45 “**Substitute Awards**” shall mean Awards granted or Shares issued by the Company in assumption of, or in substitution or exchange for, awards previously granted, or the right or obligation to make future awards, in each case by a company acquired by the Company or any Subsidiary or with which the Company or any Subsidiary combines.

(a) “**Takeover**” shall mean if any person (or a group of persons acting in concert) (the “**Acquiring Person**”):

(i) obtains Control of the Company as the result of making a general offer to:-

(A) acquire all of the issued ordinary share capital of the Company, which is made on a condition that, if it is satisfied, the Acquiring Person will have Control of the Company; or

(B) acquire all of the shares in the Company which are of the same class as the Shares; or

(ii) obtains Control of the Company as a result of a compromise or arrangement sanctioned by a court under Section 899 of the UK Companies Act 2006, or sanctioned under any other similar law of another jurisdiction; or

(iii) becomes bound or entitled under Sections 979 to 985 of the UK Companies Act 2006 (or similar law of another jurisdiction) to acquire shares of the same class as the Shares; or

(iv) obtains Control of the Company in any other way.

11.46 “*Termination of Service*” means the date the Participant ceases to be a Service Provider.

\* \* \* \* \*

**VERONA PHARMA PLC  
2017 INCENTIVE AWARD PLAN**

**OPTION GRANT NOTICE**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Option Grant Notice (the “*Grant Notice*”) have the meanings given to them in the 2017 Incentive Award Plan (as amended from time to time, the “*Plan*”) of Verona Pharma plc (the “*Company*”).

The Company has granted to the participant listed below (“*Participant*”) the option described in this Grant Notice (the “*Option*”), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Option Agreement attached as **Exhibit A** (the “*Agreement*”), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

**Participant:**

**Grant Date:**

**Exercise Price per Share:**

**Shares Subject to the Option:**

**Final Expiration Date:**

**Vesting Commencement Date:**

**Vesting Schedule:** [To be specified in individual award agreements]

**Type of Option** [Incentive Option/Non-Qualified Option]

By Participant’s signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**PARTICIPANT**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
[Participant Name]

**OPTION AGREEMENT**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

**ARTICLE I.  
GENERAL**

1.1 **Grant of Option.** The Company has granted to Participant the Option effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice (the “*Grant Date*”).

1.2 **Incorporation of Terms of Plan.** The Option is subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

**ARTICLE II.  
PERIOD OF EXERCISABILITY**

2.1 **Commencement of Exercisability.** The Option will vest and become exercisable according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice (the “*Vesting Schedule*”) except that any fraction of a Share as to which the Option would be vested or exercisable will be accumulated and will vest and become exercisable only when a whole Share has accumulated. Notwithstanding anything in the Grant Notice, the Plan or this Agreement to the contrary, (i) unless the Administrator otherwise determines, the Option will immediately expire and be forfeited as to any portion that is not vested and exercisable as of Participant’s Termination of Service for any reason and (ii) upon a Change in Control, the Option will vest and become exercisable in full immediately prior to such Change in Control, so long as Participant remains continuously a Service Provider from the date hereof through the date of the Change in Control.

2.2 **Duration of Exercisability.** The Vesting Schedule is cumulative. Any portion of the Option which vests and becomes exercisable will remain vested and exercisable until the Option expires. The Option will be forfeited immediately upon its expiration.

2.3 **Expiration of Option.** The Option may not be exercised to any extent by anyone after, and will expire on, the first of the following to occur:

- (a) The final expiration date in the Grant Notice;
- (b) Except as the Administrator may otherwise approve, the expiration of three (3) months from the date of Participant’s Termination of Service, unless Participant’s Termination of Service is for Cause or by reason of Participant’s death or Disability;
- (c) Except as the Administrator may otherwise approve, the expiration of one (1) year from the date of Participant’s Termination of Service by reason of Participant’s death or Disability; and
- (d) Except as the Administrator may otherwise approve, Participant’s Termination of Service for Cause.

---

**ARTICLE III.  
EXERCISE OF OPTION**

3.1 Person Eligible to Exercise. During Participant's lifetime, only Participant may exercise the Option. After Participant's death, any exercisable portion of the Option may, prior to the time the Option expires, be exercised by Participant's Designated Beneficiary as provided in the Plan.

3.2 Partial Exercise. Any exercisable portion of the Option or the entire Option, if then wholly exercisable, may be exercised, in whole or in part, according to the procedures in the Plan at any time prior to the time the Option or portion thereof expires, except that the Option may only be exercised for whole Shares.

3.3 Tax Withholding.

(a) The Company has the right and option, but not the obligation, to treat Participant's failure to provide timely payment in accordance with the Plan of any withholding tax arising in connection with the Option as Participant's election to satisfy all or any portion of the withholding tax by requesting the Company retain Shares otherwise issuable under the Option.

(b) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the Option, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the Option. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or exercise of the Option or the subsequent sale of Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure the Option to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

**ARTICLE IV.  
OTHER PROVISIONS**

4.1 Adjustments. Participant acknowledges that the Option is subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.

4.2 Notices. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant (or, if Participant is then deceased, to the person entitled to exercise the Option) at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.

4.3 Titles. Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.

4.4 Conformity to Securities Laws. Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.

4.5 Successors and Assigns. The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.

4.6 Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement and the Option will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

4.7 Entire Agreement. The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.

4.8 Agreement Severable. In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.

4.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights. Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the Option, and rights no greater than the right to receive the Shares as a general unsecured creditor with respect to the Option, as and when exercised pursuant to the terms hereof.

4.10 Not a Contract of Employment. Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without Cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.

4.11 Counterparts. The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Law, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

4.12 Incentive Options. If the Option is designated as an Incentive Option:

(a) Participant acknowledges that to the extent the aggregate fair market value of shares (determined as of the time the option with respect to the shares is granted) with respect to which options intended to qualify as "incentive stock options" under Section 422 of the Code, including the Option, are exercisable for the first time by Participant during any calendar year exceeds \$100,000 or if for any other reason such options do not qualify or cease to qualify for treatment as "incentive stock options" under Section 422 of the Code, such options (including the Option) will be treated as non-qualified options. Participant further acknowledges that the rule set forth in the preceding sentence will be applied by taking the Option and other options into account in the order in which they were granted, as determined under

Section 422(d) of the Code. Participant also acknowledges that if the Option is exercised more than three (3) months after Participant's Termination of Service, other than by reason of death or disability, the Option will be taxed as a Non-Qualified Option.

(b) Participant will give prompt written notice to the Company of any disposition or other transfer of any Shares acquired under this Agreement if such disposition or other transfer is made (a) within two (2) years from the Grant Date or (b) within one (1) year after the transfer of such Shares to Participant. Such notice will specify the date of such disposition or other transfer and the amount realized, in cash, other property, assumption of indebtedness or other consideration, by Participant in such disposition or other transfer.

\* \* \* \* \*

**VERONA PHARMA PLC  
2017 INCENTIVE AWARD PLAN  
RESTRICTED SHARE GRANT NOTICE**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Restricted Share Grant Notice (the "*Grant Notice*") have the meanings given to them in the 2017 Incentive Award Plan (as amended from time to time, the "*Plan*") of Verona Pharma plc (the "*Company*").

The Company has granted to the participant listed below ("*Participant*") the Restricted Shares described in this Grant Notice (the "*Restricted Shares*"), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Restricted Share Agreement attached as **Exhibit A** (the "*Agreement*"), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

**Participant:**

**Grant Date:**

**Number of Restricted Shares:**

**Vesting Commencement Date:**

**Vesting Schedule:** [To be specified in individual award agreements]

By Participant's signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**PARTICIPANT**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
[Participant Name]

**RESTRICTED SHARE AGREEMENT**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

**ARTICLE I.  
GENERAL**

1.1 Issuance of Restricted Shares. The Company will issue the Restricted Shares to the Participant effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice and will cause (a) a certificate or certificates representing the Restricted Shares to be registered in Participant's name or (b) the Restricted Shares to be held in book-entry form. If a certificate representing the Restricted Shares is issued, the certificate will be delivered to, and held in accordance with this Agreement by, the Company or its authorized representatives and will bear the restrictive legends required by this Agreement. If the Restricted Shares are held in book-entry form, then the book-entry will indicate that the Restricted Shares are subject to the restrictions of this Agreement.

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan. The Restricted Shares are subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

**ARTICLE II.  
VESTING, FORFEITURE AND ESCROW**

2.1 Vesting. The Restricted Shares will become vested Shares (the "*Vested Shares*") according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice except that any fraction of a Share that would otherwise become a Vested Share will be accumulated and will become a Vested Share only when a whole Vested Share has accumulated.

2.2 Forfeiture. In the event of Participant's Termination of Service for any reason, Participant will immediately and automatically forfeit to the Company any Shares that are not Vested Shares (the "*Unvested Shares*") at the time of Participant's Termination of Service, except as otherwise determined by the Administrator or provided in a binding written agreement between Participant and the Company. Upon forfeiture of Unvested Shares, the Company will become the legal and beneficial owner of the Unvested Shares and all related interests and Participant will have no further rights with respect to the Unvested Shares.

2.3 Escrow.

(a) Unvested Shares will be held by the Company or its authorized representatives until (i) they are forfeited, (ii) they become Vested Shares or (iii) this Agreement is no longer in effect. By accepting this Award, Participant appoints the Company and its authorized representatives as Participant's attorney(s)-in-fact to take all actions necessary to effect any transfer of forfeited Unvested Shares (and Retained Distributions (as defined below), if any, paid on such forfeited Unvested Shares) to the Company as may be required pursuant to the Plan or this Agreement and to execute such representations or other documents or assurances as the Company or such representatives deem necessary or advisable in connection with any such transfer. The Company, or its authorized representative, will not be liable for any good faith act or omission with respect to the holding in escrow or transfer of the Restricted Shares.

(b) All cash dividends and other distributions made or declared with respect to Unvested Shares ("*Retained Distributions*") will be held by the Company until the time (if ever) when the

---

Unvested Shares to which such Retained Distributions relate become Vested Shares. The Company will establish a separate Retained Distribution bookkeeping account ("***Retained Distribution Account***") for each Unvested Share with respect to which Retained Distributions have been made or declared in cash and credit the Retained Distribution Account (without interest) on the date of payment with the amount of such cash made or declared with respect to the Unvested Share. Retained Distributions (including any Retained Distribution Account balance) will immediately and automatically be forfeited upon forfeiture of the Unvested Share with respect to which the Retained Distributions were paid or declared.

(c) As soon as reasonably practicable following the date on which an Unvested Share becomes a Vested Share, the Company will (i) cause the certificate (or a new certificate without the legend required by this Agreement, if Participant so requests) representing the Share to be delivered to Participant or, if the Share is held in book-entry form, cause the notations indicating the Share is subject to the restrictions of this Agreement to be removed and (ii) pay to Participant the Retained Distributions relating to the Share.

2.4 **Rights as Shareholder.** Except as otherwise provided in this Agreement or the Plan, upon issuance of the Restricted Shares by the Company, Participant will have all the rights of a shareholder with respect to the Restricted Shares, including the right to vote the Restricted Shares and to receive dividends or other distributions paid or made with respect to the Restricted Shares.

### **ARTICLE III. TAXATION AND TAX WITHHOLDING**

3.1 **Representation.** Participant represents to the Company that Participant has reviewed with Participant's own tax advisors the tax consequences of the Restricted Shares and the transactions contemplated by the Grant Notice and this Agreement. Participant is relying solely on such advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its agents.

3.2 **Section 83(b) Election.** If Participant makes an election under Section 83(b) of the Code with respect to the Restricted Shares, Participant will deliver a copy of the election to the Company promptly after filing the election with the Internal Revenue Service.

3.3 **Tax Withholding.**

(a) The Company has the right and option, but not the obligation, to treat Participant's failure to provide timely payment in accordance with the Plan of any withholding tax arising in connection with the Restricted Shares as Participant's election to satisfy all or any portion of the withholding tax by requesting the Company retain Shares otherwise deliverable under the Award.

(b) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the Restricted Shares, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the Restricted Shares. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or payment of the Restricted Shares or the subsequent sale of the Restricted Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure this Award to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

**ARTICLE IV.  
RESTRICTIVE LEGENDS AND TRANSFERABILITY**

4.1 Legends. Any certificate representing a Restricted Share will bear the following legend until the Restricted Share becomes a Vested Share:

THE SHARES REPRESENTED BY THIS CERTIFICATE ARE SUBJECT TO FORFEITURE IN FAVOR OF THE COMPANY AND MAY BE TRANSFERRED ONLY IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE TERMS OF A RESTRICTED SHARE AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE COMPANY AND THE SHAREHOLDER, A COPY OF WHICH IS ON FILE WITH THE SECRETARY OF THE COMPANY.

4.2 Transferability. The Restricted Shares and any Retained Distributions are subject to the restrictions on transfer in the Plan and may not be sold, assigned or transferred in any manner unless and until they become Vested Shares. Any attempted transfer or disposition of Unvested Shares or related Retained Distributions prior to the time the Unvested Shares become Vested Shares will be null and void. The Company will not be required to (a) transfer on its books any Restricted Share that has been sold or otherwise transferred in violation of this Agreement or (b) treat as owner of such Restricted Share or accord the right to vote or pay dividends to any purchaser or other transferee to whom such Restricted Share has been so transferred. The Company may issue appropriate "stop transfer" instructions to its transfer agent, if any, or make appropriate notations to the same effect in its records.

**ARTICLE V.  
OTHER PROVISIONS**

5.1 Adjustments. Participant acknowledges that the Restricted Shares are subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.

5.2 Notices. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.

5.3 Titles. Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.

5.4 Conformity to Securities Laws. Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.

5.5 Successors and Assigns. The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in this Agreement or the Plan, this

Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.

5.6 Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement and the Restricted Shares will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

5.7 Entire Agreement. The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.

5.8 Agreement Severable. In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.

5.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights. Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the Award.

5.10 Not a Contract of Employment. Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.

5.11 Counterparts. The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Law, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

\* \* \* \* \*

A-4

**VERONA PHARMA PLC  
2017 INCENTIVE AWARD PLAN**

**PERFORMANCE RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT GRANT NOTICE**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Performance Restricted Share Unit Grant Notice (the "**Grant Notice**") have the meanings given to them in the 2017 Incentive Award Plan (as amended from time to time, the "**Plan**") of Verona Pharma plc (the "**Company**").

The Company has granted to the participant listed below ("**Participant**") the Performance Restricted Share Units described in this Grant Notice (the "**PRSUs**"), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Performance Restricted Share Unit Agreement attached as **Exhibit A** (the "**Agreement**"), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

**Participant:**

**Grant Date:**

**Number of PRSUs:**

**Vesting Commencement Date:**

**Vesting Schedule:** [To be specified in individual award agreements]

By Participant's signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

**PARTICIPANT**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
[Participant Name]

**PERFORMANCE RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT AGREEMENT**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

**ARTICLE I.  
GENERAL**

1.1 Award of PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents.

(a) The Company has granted the PRSUs to Participant effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice (the “*Grant Date*”). Each PRSU represents the right to receive one Share or, at the option of the Company, an amount of cash, in either case, as set forth in this Agreement. Participant will have no right to the distribution of any Shares or payment of any cash until the time (if ever) the PRSUs have vested.

(b) The Company hereby grants to Participant, with respect to each PRSU, a Dividend Equivalent for ordinary cash dividends paid to substantially all holders of outstanding Shares with a record date after the Grant Date and prior to the date the applicable PRSU is settled, forfeited or otherwise expires. Each Dividend Equivalent entitles Participant to receive the equivalent value of any such ordinary cash dividends paid on a single Share. The Company will establish a separate Dividend Equivalent bookkeeping account (a “*Dividend Equivalent Account*”) for each Dividend Equivalent and credit the Dividend Equivalent Account (without interest) on the applicable dividend payment date with the amount of any such cash paid.

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan. The PRSUs are subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

1.3 Unsecured Promise. The PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents will at all times prior to settlement represent an unsecured Company obligation payable only from the Company’s general assets.

**ARTICLE II.  
VESTING; FORFEITURE AND SETTLEMENT**

2.1 Vesting; Forfeiture. The PRSUs will vest according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice except that any fraction of an PRSU that would otherwise be vested will be accumulated and will vest only when a whole PRSU has accumulated. In the event of Participant’s Termination of Service for any reason, all unvested PRSUs will immediately and automatically be cancelled and forfeited, except as otherwise determined by the Administrator or provided in a binding written agreement between Participant and the Company. Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will vest or be forfeited, as applicable, upon the vesting or forfeiture of the PRSU with respect to which the Dividend Equivalent (including the Dividend Equivalent Account) relates.

2.2 Settlement.

(a) PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will be paid in Shares or cash at the Company’s option as soon as administratively practicable after the vesting of the applicable PRSU, but in no event more than sixty (60) days after the PRSU’s vesting date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may delay any payment under this Agreement that the

---

Company reasonably determines would violate Applicable Law until the earliest date the Company reasonably determines the making of the payment will not cause such a violation.

(b) If an PRSU is paid in cash, the amount of cash paid with respect to the PRSU will equal the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date. If a Dividend Equivalent is paid in Shares, the number of Shares paid with respect to the Dividend Equivalent will equal the quotient, rounded down to the nearest whole Share, of the Dividend Equivalent Account balance divided by the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date.

### **ARTICLE III. TAXATION AND TAX WITHHOLDING**

3.1 Representation. Participant represents to the Company that Participant has reviewed with Participant's own tax advisors the tax consequences of this Award and the transactions contemplated by the Grant Notice and this Agreement. Participant is relying solely on such advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its agents.

3.2 Tax Withholding.

(a) The Company has the right and option, but not the obligation, to treat Participant's failure to provide timely payment in accordance with the Plan of any withholding tax arising in connection with the PRSUs or Dividend Equivalents as Participant's election to satisfy all or any portion of the withholding tax by requesting the Company retain Shares otherwise issuable under the Award.

(b) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the PRSUs and the Dividend Equivalents, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the PRSUs or Dividend Equivalents. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or payment of the PRSUs or the Dividend Equivalents or the subsequent sale of Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure the PRSUs or Dividend Equivalents to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

### **ARTICLE IV. OTHER PROVISIONS**

4.1 Adjustments. Participant acknowledges that the PRSUs, the Shares subject to the PRSUs and the Dividend Equivalents are subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.

4.2 Notices. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.

4.3 Titles. Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.

4.4 Conformity to Securities Laws. Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.

4.5 Successors and Assigns. The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.

4.6 Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement, the PRSUs and the Dividend Equivalents will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

4.7 Entire Agreement. The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.

4.8 Agreement Severable. In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.

4.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights. Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents, and rights no greater than the right to receive cash or the Shares as a general unsecured creditor with respect to the PRSUs and Dividend Equivalents, as and when settled pursuant to the terms of this Agreement.

4.10 Not a Contract of Employment. Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without Cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.

4.11 Counterparts. The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Law, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

\* \* \* \* \*

A-3

---

VERONA PHARMA PLC  
2017 INCENTIVE AWARD PLAN

RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT GRANT NOTICE

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Restricted Share Unit Grant Notice (the "*Grant Notice*") have the meanings given to them in the 2017 Incentive Award Plan (as amended from time to time, the "*Plan*") of Verona Pharma plc (the "*Company*").

The Company has granted to the participant listed below ("*Participant*") the Restricted Share Units described in this Grant Notice (the "*RSUs*"), subject to the terms and conditions of the Plan and the Restricted Share Unit Agreement attached as **Exhibit A** (the "*Agreement*"), both of which are incorporated into this Grant Notice by reference.

**Participant:**

**Grant Date:**

**Number of RSUs:**

**Vesting Commencement Date:**

**Vesting Schedule:**

[To be specified in individual award agreements]

By Participant's signature below, Participant agrees to be bound by the terms of this Grant Notice, the Plan and the Agreement. Participant has reviewed the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement in their entirety, has had an opportunity to obtain the advice of counsel prior to executing this Grant Notice and fully understands all provisions of the Plan, this Grant Notice and the Agreement. Participant hereby agrees to accept as binding, conclusive and final all decisions or interpretations of the Administrator upon any questions arising under the Plan, this Grant Notice or the Agreement.

VERONA PHARMA PLC

PARTICIPANT

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
[Participant Name]

---

**RESTRICTED SHARE UNIT AGREEMENT**

Capitalized terms not specifically defined in this Agreement have the meanings specified in the Grant Notice or, if not defined in the Grant Notice, in the Plan.

**ARTICLE I.  
GENERAL**

1.1 Award of RSUs and Dividend Equivalents.

(a) The Company has granted the RSUs to Participant effective as of the grant date set forth in the Grant Notice (the “**Grant Date**”). Each RSU represents the right to receive one Share or, at the option of the Company, an amount of cash, in either case, as set forth in this Agreement. Participant will have no right to the distribution of any Shares or payment of any cash until the time (if ever) the RSUs have vested.

(b) The Company hereby grants to Participant, with respect to each RSU, a Dividend Equivalent for ordinary cash dividends paid to substantially all holders of outstanding Shares with a record date after the Grant Date and prior to the date the applicable RSU is settled, forfeited or otherwise expires. Each Dividend Equivalent entitles Participant to receive the equivalent value of any such ordinary cash dividends paid on a single Share. The Company will establish a separate Dividend Equivalent bookkeeping account (a “**Dividend Equivalent Account**”) for each Dividend Equivalent and credit the Dividend Equivalent Account (without interest) on the applicable dividend payment date with the amount of any such cash paid.

1.2 Incorporation of Terms of Plan. The RSUs are subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and the Plan, which is incorporated herein by reference. In the event of any inconsistency between the Plan and this Agreement, the terms of the Plan will control.

1.3 Unsecured Promise. The RSUs and Dividend Equivalents will at all times prior to settlement represent an unsecured Company obligation payable only from the Company’s general assets.

**ARTICLE II.  
VESTING; FORFEITURE AND SETTLEMENT**

2.1 Vesting; Forfeiture. The RSUs will vest according to the vesting schedule in the Grant Notice except that any fraction of an RSU that would otherwise be vested will be accumulated and will vest only when a whole RSU has accumulated. In the event of Participant’s Termination of Service for any reason, all unvested RSUs will immediately and automatically be cancelled and forfeited, except as otherwise determined by the Administrator or provided in a binding written agreement between Participant and the Company. Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will vest or be forfeited, as applicable, upon the vesting or forfeiture of the RSU with respect to which the Dividend Equivalent (including the Dividend Equivalent Account) relates.

2.2 Settlement.

(a) RSUs and Dividend Equivalents (including any Dividend Equivalent Account balance) will be paid in Shares or cash at the Company’s option as soon as administratively practicable after the vesting of the applicable RSU, but in no event more than sixty (60) days after the RSU’s vesting date. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company may delay any payment under this Agreement that the

---

Company reasonably determines would violate Applicable Law until the earliest date the Company reasonably determines the making of the payment will not cause such a violation.

(b) If an RSU is paid in cash, the amount of cash paid with respect to the RSU will equal the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date. If a Dividend Equivalent is paid in Shares, the number of Shares paid with respect to the Dividend Equivalent will equal the quotient, rounded down to the nearest whole Share, of the Dividend Equivalent Account balance divided by the Fair Market Value of a Share on the day immediately preceding the payment date.

### **ARTICLE III. TAXATION AND TAX WITHHOLDING**

3.1 Representation. Participant represents to the Company that Participant has reviewed with Participant's own tax advisors the tax consequences of this Award and the transactions contemplated by the Grant Notice and this Agreement. Participant is relying solely on such advisors and not on any statements or representations of the Company or any of its agents.

3.2 Tax Withholding.

(a) The Company has the right and option, but not the obligation, to treat Participant's failure to provide timely payment in accordance with the Plan of any withholding tax arising in connection with the RSUs or Dividend Equivalents as Participant's election to satisfy all or any portion of the withholding tax by requesting the Company retain Shares otherwise issuable under the Award.

(b) Participant acknowledges that Participant is ultimately liable and responsible for all taxes owed in connection with the RSUs and the Dividend Equivalents, regardless of any action the Company or any Subsidiary takes with respect to any tax withholding obligations that arise in connection with the RSUs or Dividend Equivalents. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary makes any representation or undertaking regarding the treatment of any tax withholding in connection with the awarding, vesting or payment of the RSUs or the Dividend Equivalents or the subsequent sale of Shares. The Company and the Subsidiaries do not commit and are under no obligation to structure the RSUs or Dividend Equivalents to reduce or eliminate Participant's tax liability.

### **ARTICLE IV. OTHER PROVISIONS**

4.1 Adjustments. Participant acknowledges that the RSUs, the Shares subject to the RSUs and the Dividend Equivalents are subject to adjustment, modification and termination in certain events as provided in this Agreement and the Plan.

4.2 Notices. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to the Company must be in writing and addressed to the Company in care of the Company's Secretary at the Company's principal office or the Secretary's then-current email address or facsimile number. Any notice to be given under the terms of this Agreement to Participant must be in writing and addressed to Participant at Participant's last known mailing address, email address or facsimile number in the Company's personnel files. By a notice given pursuant to this Section, either party may designate a different address for notices to be given to that party. Any notice will be deemed duly given when actually received, when sent by email, when sent by certified mail (return receipt requested) and deposited with postage prepaid in a post office or branch post office regularly maintained by the United States Postal Service, when delivered by a nationally recognized express shipping company or upon receipt of a facsimile transmission confirmation.

4.3 Titles. Titles are provided herein for convenience only and are not to serve as a basis for interpretation or construction of this Agreement.

4.4 Conformity to Securities Laws. Participant acknowledges that the Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement are intended to conform to the extent necessary with all Applicable Laws and, to the extent Applicable Laws permit, will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to Applicable Laws.

4.5 Successors and Assigns. The Company may assign any of its rights under this Agreement to single or multiple assignees, and this Agreement will inure to the benefit of the successors and assigns of the Company. Subject to the restrictions on transfer set forth in the Plan, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the heirs, legatees, legal representatives, successors and assigns of the parties hereto.

4.6 Limitations Applicable to Section 16 Persons. Notwithstanding any other provision of the Plan or this Agreement, if Participant is subject to Section 16 of the Exchange Act, the Plan, the Grant Notice, this Agreement, the RSUs and the Dividend Equivalents will be subject to any additional limitations set forth in any applicable exemptive rule under Section 16 of the Exchange Act (including any amendment to Rule 16b-3) that are requirements for the application of such exemptive rule. To the extent Applicable Laws permit, this Agreement will be deemed amended as necessary to conform to such applicable exemptive rule.

4.7 Entire Agreement. The Plan, the Grant Notice and this Agreement (including any exhibit hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the parties and supersede in their entirety all prior undertakings and agreements of the Company and Participant with respect to the subject matter hereof.

4.8 Agreement Severable. In the event that any provision of the Grant Notice or this Agreement is held illegal or invalid, the provision will be severable from, and the illegality or invalidity of the provision will not be construed to have any effect on, the remaining provisions of the Grant Notice or this Agreement.

4.9 Limitation on Participant's Rights. Participation in the Plan confers no rights or interests other than as herein provided. This Agreement creates only a contractual obligation on the part of the Company as to amounts payable and may not be construed as creating a trust. Neither the Plan nor any underlying program, in and of itself, has any assets. Participant will have only the rights of a general unsecured creditor of the Company with respect to amounts credited and benefits payable, if any, with respect to the RSUs and Dividend Equivalents, and rights no greater than the right to receive cash or the Shares as a general unsecured creditor with respect to the RSUs and Dividend Equivalents, as and when settled pursuant to the terms of this Agreement.

4.10 Not a Contract of Employment. Nothing in the Plan, the Grant Notice or this Agreement confers upon Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or any Subsidiary or interferes with or restricts in any way the rights of the Company and its Subsidiaries, which rights are hereby expressly reserved, to discharge or terminate the services of Participant at any time for any reason whatsoever, with or without Cause, except to the extent expressly provided otherwise in a written agreement between the Company or a Subsidiary and Participant.

4.11 Counterparts. The Grant Notice may be executed in one or more counterparts, including by way of any electronic signature, subject to Applicable Law, each of which will be deemed an original and all of which together will constitute one instrument.

\* \* \* \* \*

Dated 27th March 2017

**VERONA PHARMA PLC**

- and -

**RICHARD HENNINGS**

---

**EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

---



## INDEX

1	DEFINITIONS	3
2	APPOINTMENT	4
3	PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT	4
4	DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE	4
5	COMPANY POLICIES	5
6	INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY	5
7	CONFIDENTIALITY	6
8	DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY	7
9	REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS	7
10	EXPENSES	7
11	BENEFITS	8
12	BONUS	8
13	SHARE SCHEMES	8
14	CHANGE OF CONTROL	9
15	WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS	9
16	ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY	9
17	TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT	10
18	PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE	11
19	POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS	12
20	EXCISE TAX	13
21	TAX EQUALISATION	14
22	DATA PROTECTION	14
23	STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT	14
24	THIRD PARTIES	15
25	NOTICES	15
26	INTERPRETATION	15
27	GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION	15

## Employment Agreement

THIS AGREEMENT is made on 27th March 2017

### BETWEEN:

- (1) VERONA PHARMA PLC, with its principal office at 3 More London Riverside, London SE1 2RE (the “Company”); and
- (2) RICHARD HENNINGS of 2 Albury Heights, 8 Albury Road, Guildford, Surrey, GU1 2BT, UK (the “Executive”).

IT IS AGREED as follows:

### 1 DEFINITIONS

1.1 In this Agreement, unless the context otherwise expressly requires, the following expressions shall have the following meanings:

“Agreement” means this Agreement;

“Board” means the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorised committee of the Board;

“CEO” means the Chief Executive Officer of the Company;

“Change of Control Event” means:

- (a) a shareholder, or a group of associated shareholders, becoming entitled to sufficient shares in the Company to give it or them the ability and that ability is successfully exercised, in a general meeting, to replace all or a majority of the Board;
- (b) in relation to a takeover bid in respect of shares in the Company, during the “Bid Period” as defined the Companies Act provided that where a takeover bid is publicly announced prior to the service of a bidder’s statement on the Company in relation to that takeover bid, the Bid Period shall be deemed to have commenced at the time of that announcement; and
- (c) on an application under the Companies Act if a court orders a meeting to be held concerning a proposed compromise or arrangement for the purposes of or in connection with a scheme for the reconstruction of the Company or its amalgamation with any other company.

“Commencement Date” means 27 March 2017;

“Companies Act” means the Companies Act 1985;

“Company” means Verona Pharma plc, a company incorporated under the laws of England and Wales with registered number 05375156;

“Employment” means the employment established by this Agreement;

“Group” means the Group Companies collectively;

“Group Company” means the Company, and any company which is from time to time a subsidiary of the Company, the holding company of the Company or a subsidiary of such holding company;

“holding company” and “subsidiary” shall have the respective meanings ascribed to such expressions by section 736 of the Companies Act 1985;

“Holiday Year” means the period of twelve consecutive calendar months commencing on 1 January in each year; and

**“Intellectual Property Rights”** means rights in ideas, know how, confidential information, inventions, discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data, products, patents, designs, trademarks, database right or copyright work or any right to prevent reproduction whether or not any of these is registered and including applications for any such right, matter or thing or registration thereof and all rights or forms of protection of a similar nature or having equivalent or similar effect to any of these which may subsist anywhere in the world.

## **2 APPOINTMENT**

**2.1** The Company appoints the Executive and the Executive agrees to serve the Company as Commercial Director, or in such other capacity as the Company may reasonably require (such other appointment not to be of a lower status than the Executive’s appointment under this Agreement).

**2.2** The Executive hereby warrants to the Company that he will not be in breach of any former terms of employment, whether express or implied, or of any other obligation, arrangement, order or contract binding on the Executive, by reason of his entering into this Agreement.

**2.3** The Executive hereby warrants that he knows of no circumstances which may result in proceedings being brought against him by the Financial Services Authority, under the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“FSMA”) or any similar regulatory authority, whether in the UK or otherwise and that no such proceedings have been threatened or commenced against him.

## **3 PERIOD OF APPOINTMENT**

**3.1** The Employment shall begin on the Commencement Date and, subject to Clause 17, shall continue until it is terminated by either party giving to the other not less than six months’ written notice.

## **4 DUTIES OF EXECUTIVE**

**4.1** The Executive shall be Commercial Director of the Company and, subject to the directions of the CEO, or such other person nominated by the CEO as the Executive’s manager, shall carry out such duties in relation to the Company as are consistent with the Executive’s position and as may from time to time be assigned to the Executive by the CEO or anyone else authorised by the CEO. The Executive shall, at the request of the CEO or his nominee, and without additional remuneration, act as an officer or employee of any Group Company.

**4.2** The Executive shall faithfully and diligently serve the Company as Commercial Director and shall act at all times in the best interests of the Company. The Executive shall perform diligently such duties and exercise such powers consistent with his employment under this Agreement as may from time to time be assigned to or vested in him and, in his capacity as Commercial Director, shall obey the reasonable and lawful directions of the CEO or his nominee.

**4.3** The Executive shall not, during the course of the Employment, whether alone or jointly with another and whether directly or indirectly, carry on, or be engaged or concerned in, or (except as the owner for investment of securities dealt in on a recognised stock exchange and not exceeding 3% in nominal value of the issued securities of any class or otherwise as approved in writing by the Company from time to time) be interested in, any other business which competes with the business of the Company or the Group.

**4.4** The Executive shall at all times keep the CEO or his nominee, promptly and fully informed (in writing if so requested) of his conduct of the business or affairs of the Company or the Group and provide such explanations as the CEO may require in connection therewith.

**4.5** The Executive shall comply with (a) every rule of law; (b) every regulation of the London Stock Exchange or of the Alternative Investment Market or any other Recognised Investment Exchange as defined in the FSMA and including the NASDAQ Stock Market; (c) every rule or regulation of any competent regulatory authority; and (d) every regulation of the Company for the time

being in force in relation to dealings in shares or other securities of the Company or any other member of the Group.

**4.6** The Executive's initial place of employment shall be the principal office of the Company stated in this Agreement. The Executive agrees that the Company may change the Executive's place of work to anywhere in the United Kingdom, provided that, if this requires the Executive to relocate, reasonable relocation expenses are paid by the Company. In addition, the Executive will be required to travel and work on the business of the Company both inside and outside the United Kingdom.

## **5 COMPANY POLICIES**

**5.1** The Executive shall comply with all Company policies, rules, systems and procedures as shall be in force from time to time.

## **6 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY**

**6.1** All Intellectual Property Rights devised, developed or created by the Executive during the period of his employment with the Company or any Group Company and relating to the business of the Company shall belong to, and be the absolute property of the Company or such Group Company as the Company may nominate. To the extent that such Intellectual Property Rights are not otherwise vested in the Company, the Executive hereby assigns the same to the Company, together with all related past and future rights to action.

**6.2** It shall be part of the normal duties of the Executive to consider in what manner and by what new methods or devices, products, services, processes, equipment or systems of the Company and each Group Company might be improved, and promptly to give to the CEO, or such person nominated by the CEO, full details of any invention, discovery, formula, technique, design, improvement or other matter or work whatsoever in relation thereto which the Executive may from time to time make or discover during the course of the Employment, and to further the interests of the Company in relation to the same.

**6.3** The Executive shall at the request and cost of the Company do all things necessary or desirable and execute all and any documents required to give the Company, or such other member of the Group as the Company may nominate, title to the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1. The obligation contained in this Clause 6.3 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.

**6.4** The Company may edit, copy, add to, take from, adapt, alter and translate the product of the Executive's services in exercising the rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

**6.5** To the full extent permitted by law, the Executive irrevocably and unconditionally waives any moral rights the Executive may otherwise have under sections 77 to 85 inclusive of the Copyright Designs and Patents Act 1988 and any equivalent provisions of law anywhere in the world, in relation to the rights referred to in Clause 6.1.

**6.6** The Executive must not knowingly do or omit to do anything which will or may have the result of preventing the Company from enjoying the full benefits of ownership of the Intellectual Property Rights vested or assigned under Clause 6.1.

**6.7** The Executive must not at any time make use of the Company's property or documents or materials in which the Company owns the Intellectual Property Rights for any purpose which has not been authorised by the Company.

**6.8** Each of the provisions of this Clause 6 is distinct and severable from the others and if at any time one or more of such provisions is or becomes invalid, unlawful or unenforceable (whether wholly or to any extent), the validity, lawfulness and enforceability of the remaining provisions (or the same provision to any other extent) of this Clause 6 shall not in any way be affected or impaired.

## 7 CONFIDENTIALITY

**7.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will have access to and become aware of information which is confidential to the Company. Without prejudice to his common law duties, the Executive undertakes that he will not, save in the proper performance of his duties, make use of, or disclose to any person, (including for the avoidance of doubt any competitors of the Company), any of the trade secrets or other confidential information of or relating to the Company, or any user of the Company's services or any company, organisation or business with which the Company is involved in any kind of business venture or partnership, or any other information concerning the business of the Company which he may have received or obtained in confidence while in the service of the Company. The Executive will use his best endeavours to prevent the unauthorised publication or disclosure of any such trade secrets or confidential information.

**7.2** This restriction shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment without limit in point of time but, both during the Executive's employment and after its termination, shall cease to apply to information ordered to be disclosed by a Court or Tribunal of competent jurisdiction or otherwise required to be disclosed by law or to information which becomes available to the public generally (other than by reason of the Executive breaching this Clause 7). Nothing in this Clause 7 will prevent the Executive making a "protected disclosure" within the meaning of the Public Interest Disclosure Act 1998.

**7.3** For the purposes of this Agreement confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to:

- (a) the Company's corporate, business development and marketing strategy and plans;
- (b) budgets, management accounts, bank account details and other confidential financial data of the Company;
- (c) know-how and products being developed by the Company, including inventions and discoveries, biological and chemical formulations, research and development methods and processes, scientific techniques and formulas and results of experimentation and testing including, without limitation, clinical, biological, pharmaceutical, toxicological and pre-clinical and clinical test data;
- (d) reports, confidential aspects of the Company's computer technology and systems, confidential algorithms developed or used by the Company, confidential information relating to proprietary computer hardware or software (including updates) not generally known to the public;
- (e) confidential methods and processes, information relating to the running of the Company's business which is not in the public domain, including details of salaries, bonuses, commissions and other employment terms applicable within the Company;
- (f) the names, addresses and contact details of any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and their requirements for any of the Company's products or services. Without prejudice to the foregoing, this includes personal information provided to the Company by visitors to and users of any of its websites;
- (g) the terms on which the Company does business with any existing or prospective customers, suppliers or business partners of the Company and the terms of any partnership, joint venture or other form of commercial co-operation or agreement the Company enters into with any third party;
- (h) software and technical information necessary for the development, maintenance or operation of any of the Company's websites and the source code of each website; and
- (i) any other information which the Company is bound by an obligation of confidence owed to a third party, in particular the content of discussions or communications with any prospective customers, suppliers or business partners.

**7.4** In this Clause 7, any reference to "Company" includes any "Group Company" as defined in Clause 1.1 and the Executive's undertaking to the Company in Clause 7.1 is given to the Company for itself and as trustee for each Group Company.

7.5 The provisions of this Clause 7 shall be without prejudice to the Executive's duties at common law.

## **8 DELIVERY UP OF THE COMPANY'S PROPERTY**

8.1 The Executive shall not, except in the proper performance of his duties, or with the Company's permission, remove any property belonging or relating to the Company or any Group Company from the Company's or Group Company's premises, or make any copies of documents or records relating to the Company's or any Group Company's affairs.

8.2 Upon the Company's request at any time, and in any event on the termination of the Employment, the Executive shall immediately deliver up to the Company or its authorised representative, any plans, keys, mobile telephone, security passes, credit cards, equipment, documents, records, papers, computer disks, tapes or other computer hardware or software (together with all copies of the same), and all property of whatever nature in the Executive's possession or control which belongs to the Company or any other Group Company or relates to its or their business affairs. The Executive shall, at the Company's request, provide the Company with a written statement that he has complied with this obligation.

8.3 If the Executive has any information relating to the Company or the Group or work he has carried out for the Company or any Group Company which is stored on a computer or laptop computer, whether or not the computer or laptop computer is owned by the Company or a Group Company, the Company shall be entitled to download the information and/or supervise its deletion from the computer or laptop concerned.

## **9 REMUNERATION AND DEDUCTIONS**

9.1 The Executive shall receive during the Employment a salary at the rate of £155,000 per annum (or such higher rate as may be agreed in writing). The Company shall review the Executive's salary within a reasonable time after, and with effect from, 1 January 2018 and thereafter annually with a change in any year effective from 1 January of that year. Such undertaking of a salary review does not confer a contractual right (whether express or implied) to any increase in salary, and an increase in salary one year will not guarantee an increase in salary in any subsequent year or years.

9.2 The Executive's salary will accrue on a day-to-day basis payable by equal monthly payments in arrears no later than the last day of each month. Such salary shall include any sums receivable as director's fees or other remunerations from any Group Company.

9.3 Payment of salary to the Executive may be made either by the Company or by another Group Company and, if by more than one company, in such proportion as the Board may from time to time decide.

9.4 At any time during the Employment, or, in any event, on the termination thereof howsoever arising, the Company shall be entitled to deduct from the Executive's remuneration any monies due to the Company from the Executive, including, but not limited to, any outstanding loans, advances, the cost of repairing any damage or loss to the Company's property caused by the negligence of the Executive (and of recovering the same), excess holiday pay and any other monies owed by the Executive to the Company.

## **10 EXPENSES**

The Company shall refund the Executive all reasonable expenses wholly and exclusively incurred by him in the proper performance of the Company or the Group's business provided that the Executive produces to the Company such evidence of actual payment as the Company reasonably requires. Any credit card or similar facility supplied to the Executive by the Company shall be used solely for expenses incurred by him in the course of the Employment.

7

---

## **11 BENEFITS**

11.1 The Company shall, if so requested by the Executive during the Employment, provide membership of a private medical insurance scheme for the Executive and his spouse. If the Executive is not accepted at standard rates of premium, the Executive shall be responsible for any excess premium.

11.2 The Company shall provide the Executive access to a workplace pension scheme and make contributions in accordance with the Company's policy from time to time, which at the date of this agreement includes an undertaking by the Company to match the Executive's pension contributions to such pension scheme during the Employment up to a maximum Company contribution rate of 6% of the Executive's salary.

11.3 The Company shall maintain for the Executive Directors' and Officers' insurance in respect of those liabilities which he may incur as a director or officer of the Company or any other Group Company for which such insurance is normally available to the Company in respect of its directors and officers.

## **12 BONUS**

12.1 The Executive shall be entitled to receive a discretionary bonus of up to 35% of the Executive's salary under Clause 9.1, dependent on performance objectives to be agreed by the Company and the Executive.

12.2 Any bonus scheme operated by the Company will not constitute a contractual term and bonus payments (if any) will be paid at the absolute discretion of the Company. The Executive shall not be eligible to be considered for a bonus if the Employment of the Executive is terminated under Clause 17.2(b). In addition, as the bonus is paid as an incentive to employees to remain in the employment of the Company, payment of any bonus is conditional on the Executive remaining in the employment of the Company and not having given notice to the Company to terminate his employment at the date that any bonus is payable.

## **13 SHARE SCHEMES**

13.1 The Executive shall be entitled to participate in the Company's share and share option schemes in place from time to time (the "Share Schemes"). With respect to any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme:

- (a) the number and value, vesting schedule, circumstances of exercise and all other terms and conditions of any award will be as determined in the Company's sole discretion and set out in a separate letter from the Company to the Executive;
- (b) the award may be subject to the Executive entering into a joint election approved by HM Revenue & Customs with respect to secondary national insurance liability;
- (c) the making of any award under a Share Scheme shall not entitle the Executive to any further award or right to participate in any other Share Scheme;
- (d) subject to Clause 13.1(e), the Executive's rights under or in relation to this Agreement are separate from and shall not be affected by any participation in the Share Schemes, and his participation shall be subject to the Share Schemes' rules from time to time;
- (e) subject to Clause 14, if the Employment is terminated for whatever reason and whether lawfully or unlawfully, the Executive agrees that he shall not be entitled by way of damages for breach of contract, dismissal or compensation for loss of office or otherwise to any sum, shares or other benefits to compensate him for the loss or diminution in value of any actual or prospective rights, benefits or expectations under or in relation to the Share Schemes.

**13.2** As soon as reasonably practicable after the Commencement Date having regard to the Company's Share Dealing Policy and any relevant approvals by the Company's shareholders, the Company shall grant to the Executive, under the Company's Incentive Award Plan, equity-based incentives in the Company comprising, in the discretion of the Remuneration Committee of the Board, 160,000 share options with an exercise price equal to the Company's NASDAQ listing price and restricted stock units equivalent to an approximate value of £40,000.

#### **14 CHANGE OF CONTROL**

Notwithstanding any other terms and conditions of this Agreement, if a Change of Control Event occurs:

- (a) any award made to the Executive under a Share Scheme referred to in Clause 13 will automatically vest and may be exercised prior to the award's expiry date; and
- (b) the Executive will be entitled to receive his full bonus under Clause 12 without any obligation to purchase shares in the Company referred to in Clause 12.2.

#### **15 WORKING HOURS AND HOLIDAYS**

**15.1** The Executive shall devote the whole of his time, attention and abilities to his duties hereunder during the Company's usual business hours and such additional hours as may from time to time be reasonably necessary for the proper performance of his duties. This may include working in the evenings outside normal office hours, at weekends or on public holidays. The Executive shall not be entitled to receive any additional remuneration for work outside the Company's usual business hours.

**15.2** The Executive hereby agrees to disapply Regulation 4 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 to the effect that the 48 hour limit on average working time will not apply in respect of his employment by the Company, subject to his right to revoke this election by 13 weeks' notice by the Executive to the Company.

**15.3** The Executive shall (in addition to normal UK public holidays) be entitled to 25 working days' holiday at full salary in each Holiday Year during the Employment to be taken at such reasonable time or times as the CEO may approve. Holiday may only be taken during the notice period if either the Company so requires or the CEO has approved the holiday after notice has been served.

**15.4** Holiday entitlement shall accrue pro rata during each Holiday Year. Any entitlement to holiday remaining at the end of any Holiday Year may not be carried forward to the next succeeding Holiday Year, except that with the prior written approval of the CEO up to 5 days holiday entitlement may be carried forward to the first quarter of the following year, and any such holiday entitlement not used by 31 March of that following year will be forfeited. The notice requirements in relation to statutory annual leave, as provided by Regulation 15 of the Working Time Regulations 1998 shall not apply to this Agreement.

**15.5** If the Executive has holiday entitlement accrued but not taken, the Company may, in its sole discretion, require him to take some or all of his holiday entitlement during his notice period or pay him a sum in lieu of accrued holiday on termination. If, on the termination of the Employment, the Executive has exceeded his accrued holiday entitlement, this excess will be deducted from any sums due to the Executive from the Company. A day's holiday pay for these purposes shall be 1/260 of the Executive's annual basic salary in accordance with Clause 9.1.

#### **16 ILL-HEALTH OR INJURY**

**16.1** During any period of absence on medical grounds, the Executive shall be paid such contractual and statutory sick pay as the Executive may be entitled to receive under the Company's sick leave policy from time to time.

**16.2** If the Executive is absent from work on medical grounds, he is required to notify the Company by telephone on the first morning of his absence or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. If the Executive is absent from work for more than seven consecutive days, he must submit to the Company a medical certificate signed by a practising medical practitioner. Thereafter, the Executive shall submit further medical certificates to cover the whole of his period of absence.

**16.3** In the event that the Executive is incapacitated by reason of ill health or accident from performing his duties hereunder for a period or periods exceeding 130 working days in any 12 month period then:

- (a) the Company shall automatically become entitled to appoint a temporary successor to the Executive to perform all or any of the duties required to be performed by the Executive under the terms of this Agreement and the Executive's duties shall be amended temporarily accordingly;
- (b) subject to (c) below, the Employment of the Executive may be subject to termination by the Company giving to the Executive not less than thirteen weeks' notice in writing; and
- (c) nothing in this Clause 16.3 shall prejudice any rights that the Executive may have under the provisions of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995.

**16.4** It is a condition of the Employment that the Executive consents to an examination by an independent doctor nominated by the Company should the Company so require. The Executive hereby authorises the Company to have unconditional access to any report or reports (including copies of and documents referred to in such reports) prepared as a result of any such examination and authorises the doctor(s) to discuss the same with the Chairman of the Company.

**16.5** The Company reserves the right to suspend the Executive on medical grounds, if, at any time, in the Company's reasonable opinion, the Executive is incapable on grounds of ill-health of performing some or all of his duties under this Agreement. During any period of suspension on medical grounds, the Executive will be subject to the same rights and duties as apply to employees on garden leave, as set out in Clause 18.2 of this Agreement.

## **17 TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT**

**17.1** The Employment may be terminated by either party by notice given in accordance with Clause 3.1.

**17.2** The Employment of the Executive shall be subject to termination by the Company (but without prejudice to any of the Executive's continuing obligations hereunder):

- (a) pursuant to the provisions of Clause 16.3 above;
- (b) immediately by notice in writing if the Executive shall:
  - (i) have committed and repeated or continued (after warning) any material breach of his obligations hereunder; or
  - (ii) have been guilty of conduct calculated or likely or tending to bring himself or any Group Company into disrepute or otherwise prejudicially to affect the interests of any Group Company; or
  - (iii) have a bankruptcy order made against him or enter into a voluntary arrangement within the meaning of the Insolvency Act 1986 or enter into a Deed of Arrangement under the Deeds of Arrangement Act 1914 or make any composition with some or all of his creditors; or
  - (iv) be convicted of any arrestable criminal offence, other than an offence under the Road Traffic legislation in respect of which a non-custodial sentence or penalty is imposed.

**17.3** The Company may terminate the Employment if, in the opinion of the CEO, the Executive's performance of his duties is below the standard required of him. Such termination will not usually occur without at least one prior written warning to the Executive of the possibility of such termination.

**17.4** If the Company becomes entitled to terminate the Employment pursuant to Clause 17.2 above, it shall be entitled (but without prejudice to its rights subsequently to terminate the Employment on the same or any other ground) to suspend the Executive on full payment of salary for so long as it may think fit.

**17.5** The Executive shall have no claim against the Company if this Agreement is terminated by reason of the liquidation of the Company for the purpose of reconstruction or amalgamation and the Executive is offered employment with any concern or undertaking resulting from such reconstruction or amalgamation in a similar position and on terms which are substantially the same as the terms of this Agreement.

**17.6** On the termination of the Employment, howsoever arising, the Executive shall forthwith or at any time thereafter at the request of the Company, resign from any offices held by him in any Group Company together with any other offices or memberships held by him by virtue of the Employment. Should the Executive fail to resign within seven days of being so requested, the Company is irrevocably authorised to appoint some person as his attorney to sign upon his behalf any document or do anything necessary or requisite to give effect thereto.

**17.7** The Executive shall not at any time during or after the termination of the Employment make any untrue or misleading statement in relation to the Company or the Group nor, in particular, after the termination of the Employment represent himself as being employed by or connected with the Group.

**17.8** Termination of the Employment within this Clause 17 shall be without prejudice to any rights which have accrued at the time of termination and to the provisions of Clauses 6, 7, 8 and 19 which shall remain in full force and effect.

## **18 PAYMENT IN LIEU AND GARDEN LEAVE**

**18.1** The Company reserves the right in its absolute discretion to terminate the Employment at any time with immediate effect by giving written notice to the Executive that the Company shall pay in lieu of notice. The payment shall be calculated at the rate of the Executive's basic annual salary, pro-rated full bonus and contractual benefits prevailing at the time when such notice is given. The Company shall not, under any circumstances, be obliged to make a payment in lieu of notice.

**18.2** If either party serves notice on the other to terminate the Employment, the Company may require the Executive to take "garden leave" for all or part of the remaining period of his employment. If the Executive is asked to take garden leave he:

- (a) may not attend at his place of work or any other premises of the Company and/or any Group Company unless at the Company's written request;
- (b) may not contact any customers, suppliers, partners or contacts of the Company without the Company's prior written permission;
- (c) may be required not to carry out all or any of his normal day to day duties for the remaining period of the Employment or any part thereof;
- (d) may be assigned other duties or have powers vested in him withdrawn;
- (e) must return to the Company all equipment, including, but not limited to, laptop computers and fax machines, all documents, discs and other materials (including copies) belonging to the Company and/or any Group Company containing confidential information; and

(f) must remain contactable by telephone on a daily basis during any period of absence from work under this Clause 18, and may not take holiday, save with the Company's prior written consent, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld.

**18.3** It is expressly agreed between the parties that, during any period of garden leave, the mutual duties of good faith and trust and confidence, and the Executive's duty of fidelity to the Company, shall continue during any period that the Executive is not required to attend work, pursuant to this Clause 18.

## **19 POST-TERMINATION RESTRICTIONS**

**19.1** Within this Clause 19 the following words shall have the following meanings:

“**Competitive Business**” shall mean any business or activity in competition with that carried on by the Company or any Group Company at the Termination Date in which the Executive shall have been directly concerned at any time in the Contact Period;

“**Contact Period**” shall mean the 12 month period ending with the Termination Date;

“**Customer Connection**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation who:

- (a) was at any time in the Contact Period a customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor) of the Company; or
- (b) was at the Termination Date negotiating with the Company with a view to dealing with the Company as customer (including as licensee) or supplier (including as licensor);

provided that this will only include suppliers where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Skilled Employee**” shall mean any person who was:

- (a) employed by the Company; or
- (b) contracted to render services to the Company;

in technical or managerial work during the Contact Period and who was so engaged or contracted on the Termination Date;

“**Supplier**” shall mean any person, company or other organisation supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company or negotiating with the Company at the Termination Date with a view to supplying (including under licence) goods or services to the Company, where alternative sources of supply on equivalent terms would not be generally available to the Company or where the interference with any such supplier may be anticipated to cause damage to the Company;

“**Termination Date**” shall mean the date of termination of the Executive's Employment under this Agreement; and

“**Territory**” shall mean any member country of the European Union.

**19.2** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, either on his own account or otherwise, canvass or solicit business in competition with the Company from any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment.

**19.3** The Executive shall not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, either on his own account or otherwise, do business in competition with the Company with any Customer Connection with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his Employment.

**19.4** The Executive will not during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, in competition with the Company, either on his/her own account or otherwise, accept the supply of goods or directly or indirectly interfere with or seek to interfere with the continuance of the supply of goods to the Company from any Supplier with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the Contact Period in the course of his employment.

**19.5** The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, directly or indirectly, induce or seek to induce any Skilled Employee, with whom the Executive shall have had material dealings in the course of his duties hereunder in the Contact Period, to leave the Company's employment, whether or not this would be a breach of contract on the part of such Skilled Employee or offer employment or an engagement to any such Skilled Employee.

**19.6** The Executive shall not, during the period of 6 months after the Termination Date, carry on or be interested in Competitive Business in competition with the Company in the Territory whether as principal, agent, director, partner, proprietor, employee or otherwise.

**19.7** The period of time of the restrictions under this Clause 19 shall be reduced by the length of any period of garden leave the Executive may be required to take pursuant to Clause 18.2 above. In the event that the period of the restrictions is so reduced, the Contact Period shall mean the 12 month period ending with the date on which the Executive's garden leave commences.

**19.8** The Executive agrees that he will, at the request of the Company, enter into a direct agreement or undertaking with any Group Company whereby he will accept restrictions corresponding to the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 (or such of them as may be appropriate in the circumstances) in relation to such products and services and such areas and for such period as such Group Company may reasonably require for the protection of its legitimate interests.

**19.9** Each of the restrictions contained in this Clause 19 are considered reasonable by the Company and the Executive as being no greater than is required for the protection of the goodwill of the business of the Company and the Group and are intended to be separate and severable. In the event that any of the said restrictions shall be held void, but would be valid if part of the wording thereof were deleted, such restriction shall apply with such deletion as may be necessary to make it valid and effective.

## **20**     **EXCISE TAX**

**20.1** If any payment or benefit that Executive would receive following a Change of Control Event or otherwise ("Payment") would (i) constitute a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), and (ii) but for this sentence, be subject to the excise tax imposed by Section 4999 of the Code (the "Excise Tax"), then such Payment shall be reduced to the Reduced Amount. The "Reduced Amount" shall be either (A) the largest portion of the Payment that would result in no portion of the Payment being subject to the Excise Tax or (B) the largest portion, up to and including the total amount, of the Payment, whichever of the amounts determined under (A) and (B), after taking into account all applicable federal, state and local employment taxes, income taxes, and the Excise Tax (all computed at the highest applicable marginal rate), results in the Executive's receipt, on an after-tax basis, of the greater amount of the Payment notwithstanding that all or some portion of the Payment may be subject to the Excise Tax. If a reduction in payments or benefits constituting "parachute payments" is necessary so that the Payment equals the Reduced Amount, reduction shall occur in the following order: reduction of cash payments; cancellation of accelerated vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme; and reduction of employee benefits. In the event that acceleration of vesting of outstanding awards under a Share Scheme is to be reduced, such acceleration of vesting shall be undertaken in the reverse order of the date of grant of the Executive's outstanding equity awards.

**20.2** All calculations required to be performed under this Clause 20 shall be made by a public accounting or employee benefits consulting firm with a national practice selected by the Company (the "Accounting Firm"). The Accounting Firm shall provide detailed supporting calculations on the applicable matter to both to the Company and the Executive. All fees and expenses of the Accounting Firm shall be borne solely by the Company. Any determination by the Accounting Firm shall be binding upon the Company and the Executive.

## **21 TAX EQUALISATION**

**21.1** During the course of the Employment, the Executive will be liable for UK income tax and employee's National Health Insurance contributions ("UK Tax"). In addition, the Executive may be liable to pay US federal and state income taxes in respect of earnings from work carried out in the US. The Company intends to minimize the effect of the different rate of US and UK tax rates and leave the Executive in a net after-tax position substantially equivalent to what the Executive would experience if Executive were subject only to UK Tax during this period. The Company shall tax equalise the Executive so that the income and employment tax burden to the Executive on his remuneration and other amounts payable pursuant to this Agreement (including any remuneration with respect to the Share Schemes and including the tax equalisation payments made pursuant to this Clause 21.1), exclusive of any taxes under Section 409A, Section 457A or Section 4999 of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") or any other provisions of the Code relating to excise taxes, penalties or interest, is neither substantially greater nor less than the UK Tax that the Executive would have paid had Executive performed all of Executive's duties to the Company in the UK, subject to the terms of any tax equalisation policy adopted by the Company, as it may be amended by the Company from time to time in the Company's sole discretion ("Tax Equalisation"). Such payments, if any are payable pursuant to this Clause 21.1, shall be made within 60 days after the actual US tax amounts due are paid by the Executive for any applicable tax periods. To the extent that payments pursuant to this Clause 21.1 exceed the amount that was required to achieve Tax Equalisation, the Executive will repay to the Company an amount equal to the overpayment on demand by the Company and agrees that the Company may deduct amounts equal to any overpayment from the Executive's salary or other payments due from the Company to the Executive. The Executive shall cooperate with the Company in determining any Tax Equalisation and in seeking any tax refunds owed on taxes paid by the Company pursuant to this Clause 21.1 in accordance with applicable tax rules and regulations. This Clause 21.1 shall continue to apply after the termination of the Executive's employment with the Company without limit in point of time.

## **22 DATA PROTECTION**

**22.1** In order to keep and maintain records relating to the Employment it shall be necessary for the Company to record, keep and process personal data (including sensitive personal data) relating to the Executive. This data may be recorded, kept and processed on computer and in hard copy form. To the extent that it is reasonably necessary in connection with the Employment and the performance of the Company's responsibilities as an employer, the Company may be required to disclose this data to others, including other employees of the Company, Group Companies, the Company's professional advisers, the Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs and other authorities. The Executive consents to the recording, processing, use and disclosure by the Company of personal data relating to the Executive as set out above. This does not affect the Executive's rights as a data subject or the Company's obligations and responsibilities under the Data Protection Act 1984 and/or the Data Protection Act 1998. For the purposes of these Acts, the Company has nominated the Chairman as its representative.

## **23 STATEMENT OF TERMS OF EMPLOYMENT**

**23.1** The information in this Agreement constitutes a written statement of the terms of employment of the Executive in compliance with the provisions of the Employment Rights Act 1996.

## **24 THIRD PARTIES**

**24.1** This Agreement may be enforced by any Group Company subject to and in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement confers on any other third party any benefits under the provision of the Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

## **25 NOTICES**

**25.1** Notices by either party must be in writing addressed:

- (a) to the Company at its principal office for the time being; and
- (b) to the Executive at his place of work or at the address set out in this Agreement or such other address as the Executive may from time to time have notified in writing to the Company for the purpose of this Clause.

**25.2** Notices will be effectively served:

- (a) if delivered by hand-delivered letter, on the day of receipt where such letter is received on a business day before or during normal working hours, or on the following business day where such letter is received either on a business day after normal working hours or on any other day;
- (b) if delivered by email, upon the recipient, by an email sent to the email address of the sender or by a notice delivered by another method in accordance with this clause, acknowledging having received that email;
- (c) if posted from within the United Kingdom by first class prepaid mail, on the second business day following the day of posting; or
- (d) if posted from outside the United Kingdom by prepaid airmail letter, on the fifth business day following the day of posting.

## **26 INTERPRETATION**

**26.1** The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and are not to be used as an aid to construction of this Agreement.

**26.2** Reference to provisions of statutes, rules or regulations shall be deemed to include references to such provisions as amended, modified or re-enacted from time to time.

## **27 GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION**

**27.1** This Agreement shall be governed by, and interpreted in accordance with, English law and the parties hereby submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts and tribunals of England and Wales.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF this Deed has been executed by the duly authorised representatives of the Company and by the Executive the day and year first above written.

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof )  
by the Company )  
acting by: ) /s/ JA Karlsson  
Director

In the presence of: ) /s/ PJ Morgan  
PJ Morgan

**EXECUTED AND** )  
**DELIVERED AS A DEED** )  
on the date hereof ) /s/ Richard Hennings  
by the Executive ) R. Hennings 28/3/17

In the presence of: ) /s/ S. George  
S. George, PA to CEO Verona Pharma plc



Our Ref:4286AB/CCW/hg  
Your Ref:

20 December 2016

**UHY Hacker Young LLP**  
Quadrant House  
4 Thomas More Square  
London E1W 1YW

Phone +44 20 7216 4600  
Fax +44 20 7767 2600  
Email london@uhy-uk.com  
Web www.uhy-uk.com

PRIVATE & CONFIDENTIAL

Securities and Exchange Commission  
Washington, D.C. 20549  
USA

Dear Sirs

We were previously the statutory auditors for Verona Pharma plc and, on 11 May 2015, we reported on the consolidated financial statements of Verona Pharma plc as of and for the year ended 31 December 2014. At Verona Pharma plc's Annual General Meeting of shareholders on 11 June 2015, we did not offer ourselves for re-election as Verona Pharma plc's statutory auditors and were therefore not reappointed as auditors of the company. We have read Verona Pharma plc's statements included under the heading "Auditors" in its Form F-1 dated November 23, 2016, and we agree with such statements.

Yours faithfully,

/s/ UHY Hacker Young

UHY Hacker Young

---

Name: Colin Wright  
Title: Partner

UHY Hacker Young LLP is a limited liability partnership registered in England and Wales with Registered Number OC327384.

A list of members' names and their professional qualifications is available for inspection at the Registered Office at the above address.

Registered to carry on audit work in the UK and Ireland and regulated for a range of investment business activities in the UK by the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales.

A member of the UHY Hacker Young Group of independent partnerships.

A member of UHY international, a network of independent accounting and consulting firms.

---

SUBSIDIARIES OF VERONA PHARMA PLC

<u>Legal Name of Subsidiary</u>	<u>Jurisdiction of Organization</u>
Verona Pharma, Inc.	Delaware
Rhinopharma Ltd	Canada

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We hereby consent to the use in this Registration Statement on Form F-1 of Verona Pharma plc of our report dated March 2, 2017 relating to the financial statements, which appears in such Registration Statement. We also consent to the reference to us under the heading "Experts" in such Registration Statement.

/s/ PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP  
Reading, United Kingdom  
April 3, 2017

---

Verona Pharma  
3 More London Riverside  
London SE1 2RE  
United Kingdom

January 27, 2017

Securities and Exchange Commission  
Division of Corporation Finance  
Office of the Chief Accountant  
100 F Street NE  
Washington, DC 20549

**Re: Verona Pharma plc Registration Statement on Form F-1 (CIK No. 001657312) Application for Waiver of Requirements of Form 20-F, Item 8.A.4**

Ladies and Gentlemen:

I am the Chief Executive Officer of Verona Pharma plc, a public limited company incorporated under the laws of the England and Wales (the “Company”). In connection with a proposed initial public offering of the Company’s American Depositary Shares, we hereby respectfully request that the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “Commission”) waive the requirement of Item 8.A.4 of Form 20-F, which states that in the case of a company’s initial public offering (“IPO”) the Registration Statement on Form F-1 (the “Registration Statement”) must contain audited financial statements of a date not older than 12 months from the date of the offering unless a waiver is obtained. See also Division of Corporation Finance, Financial Reporting Manual, Section 6220.3.

At the time of initial confidential filing on November 23, 2016, the Company’s Registration Statement satisfied Item 8.A.4 of Form 20-F, which is applicable to the Registration Statement pursuant to Item 4(a) of Form F-1, because it contained audited financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2015 prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards except as otherwise stated in the Registration Statement. However, because the Company’s audited financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2016 will not be available until approximately March 1, 2017, at the time of the First Amendment on January 27, 2017, the Company’s Registration Statement contains only audited financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2015 and unaudited financial statements for the six months ended June 30, 2016 and 2015, in each case prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards except as otherwise stated in the Registration Statement. Additionally, the Company may need to make at least one amendment after the date hereof and prior to the availability of the audited financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2016 containing the same financial statements as those that are contained in its most recent filing.

---

The Company is submitting this waiver request pursuant to Instruction 2 to Item 8.A.4 of Form 20-F, which provides that the Commission will waive the 12-month age of financial statements requirement “in cases where the company is able to represent adequately to us that it is not required to comply with this requirement in any other jurisdiction outside the United States and that complying with this requirement is impracticable or involves undue hardship.”

See also the Commission’s November 1, 2004 release entitled International Reporting and Disclosure Issues in the Division of Corporation Finance (available on the Commission’s website at <http://www.sec.gov/divisions/corpfin/internatl/cfirdissues1104.htm>) at Section III.B.c, in which the Commission notes:

“the instruction indicates that the staff will waive the 12-month requirement where it is not applicable in the registrant’s other filing jurisdictions and is impracticable or involves undue hardship. As a result, we expect that the vast majority of IPOs will be subject only to the 15-month rule. The only times that we anticipate audited financial statements will be filed under the 12-month rule are when the registrant must comply with the rule in another jurisdiction, or when those audited financial statements are otherwise readily available.”

In connection with this request, on behalf of the Company, I represent to the Commission that:

1. The Company’s ordinary shares are traded on AIM, a market of the London Stock Exchange, under the symbol “VRP”.
  2. The Company is not required by the AIM Rules for Companies or any jurisdiction outside the United States to prepare, and has not prepared, financial statements audited under any generally accepted auditing standards for any interim period.
  3. Compliance with Item 8.A.4 is impracticable and involves undue hardship for the Company.
  4. The Company does not anticipate that its audited financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2016 will be available until March 1, 2017.
  5. In no event will the Company seek effectiveness of the Registration Statement if its audited financial statements are older than 15 months at the time of the offering.
-

We will file this letter as an exhibit to the Registration Statement pursuant to Instruction 2 to Item 8.A.4 of Form 20-F.

Please do not hesitate to contact our Chief Financial Officer, Piers Morgan, at XXXX@veronapharma.com if you have any questions regarding the foregoing or if we can provide any additional information.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Jan-Anders Karlsson  
Chief Executive Officer

---